

THE CAVALRY JOURNAL

Devoted to the Interests of the Cavalry,
to the Professional Improvement of Its
Officers and Men, and to the Advance-
ment of the Mounted Service Generally

EDITOR

Lieutenant-Colonel W. V. MORRIS, Cavalry

Copyright, 1927, by
The United States Cavalry Association

Published quarterly by the United States Cavalry Association. Editor, Lieutenant-Colonel W. V. Morris, Cavalry. Entered as second-class matter at the post-offices at Washington, D. C., and Hanover, Pa., under the Act of March 3, 1879. Acceptance for mailing at special rate of postage provided for in section 1103, Act of October 3, 1917, authorized May 29, 1920.

Office of Publication, Hanover, Pa.

Editorial Office, Washington, D. C.

\$2.50 per year; single copy, 65c.

Foreign Postage, 25c Additional

DONT STOP HERE




READ OUR ADVERTISEMENTS

U. S. Army Officers And Men
Are Invited to Make This Store Their Store
When in El Paso

THE WHITE HOUSE

The Department Store of Service
EL PASO, TEXAS

The Hotel Baltimore



in Kansas City

500 Rooms

Single Room with Bath—\$12.00 and up
Double Room with Bath—\$14.00 and up
Marble Coffee Shop
TABLE D'HOT
Lunch • • • • • 25c
Dinner • • • • • 45c
Breakfast • • • • • 25c

THOROUGHbred TYPES
Only 100 Copies Left
The plates of this fine book have been
destroyed and it can never be reprinted.
The price will remain \$15.00
Order now from
U. S. CAVALRY ASSOCIATION
1624 H S., N. W. Wash., D. C.

Forty-six Consecutive Years
of Banking
STABILITY
FIRST NATIONAL BANK
EL PASO, TEXAS
Capital and Surplus
\$1,200,000.00

HOTEL
PASO DEL NORTE
PAUL HARVEY, Manager
EL PASO, TEXAS
MEMBERS
ARMY AND NAVY STORES

THE POTOMAC
Window and Office Cleaning Co.
WHITE HELP RESPONSIBILITY
H. BRYANT, EX-GM., U. S. NAVY
Manager
CALL FRANKLIN 8074
Room 414 Evans Bldg.
1420 New York Ave., N. W., Washington, D. C.

KERNAN and RHEINHARDT
15 FRANKLIN STREET W. BALTIMORE MD.
ORIENTAL RUG STUDIO
MODERN AND ANTIQUE ALL SIZES BEST PRICES



The MARTIAL
A Spur of Distinction
for
MILITARY WEAR



Booklet
on Request

Made of solid nickel, a white metal,
will not turn brassy, guaranteed
rust proof & strong as steel.

N. S. MEYER INC.
43 East 19th St. New York.

At your dealer or post ordering

CAVALRY TRAINING REGULATIONS

Regulations marked "R" are for cavalry officers assigned to rifle units only; those marked "M" for cavalry officers assigned to machine gun units only; those marked "RM" for both.

T. R. No.

RM 10-5, Doctrines, Principles and Methods	.05	R 200-10, Scouting and Patrolling, Mounted	.15
RM 25-10, Officers' Instruction with Saber	.05	RM 225-10, Pitching Shelter Tents	.05
RM 50-15, Instruction Dismounted without Arms	.05	RM 225-15, Pitching Common, Wall and Pyramidal Tents	.05
RM 50-20, Instruction Dismounted with Rifle and Automatic Rifle	.10	M 240-10, Machine Guns, Direct Laying	.10
RM 50-45, Instruction Mounted without Arms	.10	M 240-15, Machine Guns, Indirect Laying	.35
RM 50-50, Instruction Mounted with Rifle	.05	M 240-20, Machine Guns, Combat Practice	.05
RM 50-55, Instruction Dismounted with Pistol	.05	M 240-30, Machine Guns, Mathematics	.05
RM 50-60, Instruction Mounted with Pistol	.05	RM 300-50, Equipment, Field Ranges	.05
RM 50-65, Instruction with Saber	.05	RM 320-10, Weapons, Rifle	.10
R 50-70, Saber Exercises	.05	RM 320-15, Weapons, Pistol	.05
R 50-75, Instruction with Machine Rifle	.05	R 320-25, Weapons, Automatic Rifle	.10
RM 50-95, Display of Equipment	.05	R 320-35, Weapons, Machine Gun	.15
RM 112-5, First Aid	.10	RM 360-5, Care of Animals	.05
RM 113-5, Personal Hygiene	.05	RM 360-10, Training Remounts	.05
RM 135-10, Guard Mounting	.05	RM 360-20, Training Pack Animals	.05
RM 135-15, Interior Guard Duty	.05	RM 425-15, Cavalry Drill, General Principles, etc.	.05
R 145-5, Musketry	.10	RM 425-20, Drill and Combat Signals	.05
RM 150-5, Marksmanship, Rifle, Individual	.10	R 425-25, Cavalry Rifle Squad	.05
RM 150-10, Marksmanship, Rifle, General	.05	R 425-30, Cavalry Rifle Platoon	.05
RM 150-25, Marksmanship, Pistol, Mounted	.05	R 425-35, Cavalry Machine Rifle	.05
R 150-30, Marksmanship, Automatic Rifle	.10	R 425-45, Cavalry Rifle Troop	.05
M 150-35, Marksmanship, Machine Gun	.15	R 425-50, Cavalry Rifle Squadron	.05
RM 160-5, Signal Communications	.15	R 425-55, Cavalry Regiment	.05
RM 162-5, Visual Signaling	.05	M 425-60, Duties of Machine Gun Personnel	.05
RM 190-5, Map Reading	.10	M 425-65, Cavalry Machine Gun Squad	.10
RM 190-10, Conventional Signs	.30	M 425-70, Cavalry Machine Gun Platoon	.05
RM 190-15, Military Sketching	.10	M 425-75, Cavalry Machine Gun Troop	.05
RM 190-20, Panoramic Sketching	.10	M 425-80, Cavalry Machine Gun Squadron	.05
R 195-30, Explosives and Demolitions	.15	RM 425-85, Cavalry Brigade	.05
R 200-5, Scouting and Patrolling, Dismounted	.10	R 425-100, Cavalry Service Troop	.05
		M 425-110, Employment of Cavalry Machine Guns	.30
		RM 425-130, Cavalry Ceremonies and Inspections	.05
		RM W. D. Doc. 1050, Pistol Marksmanship	.15
		RM Kalamazoo Binder	\$2.10

Total price of regulations, with Kalamazoo binder, for rifle unit officers \$6.00

Total price of regulations, with Kalamazoo binder, for machine gun officers \$6.20

Total price of all cavalry regulations, with two Kalamazoo binders \$9.45

Order From United States Cavalry Association

1624 H. St., N. W.

Washington, D. C.

CONTENTS FOR JANUARY, 1927

VOL. XXXVI, No. 146

WITH INDIAN AND BUFFALO IN MONTANA	Page 7
Brigadier General E. J. McClernand.	
THE RACE TO THE SEA	55
Transcription from <i>Rerue de Cavalerie</i> .	
Captain Royden Williamson, Cavalry.	
CHINESE CAVALRY PRODUCE A DECISIVE VICTORY	64
Brigadier General Henry J. Reilly, O. R. C.	
THE 1926 CAVALRY LEADERSHIP TESTS FOR SMALL UNITS	77
Captain W. B. Bradford, Cavalry.	
THE CAVALRY'S CAVALRY	90
Major Paul R. Davison, Cavalry.	
THE 1926 ENDURANCE RIDE	96
Captain John A. Weeks, 3d Cavalry.	
ANNUAL REPORT OF CHIEF OF CAVALRY	105
IMPROVISED RADIO EQUIPMENT FOR NATIONAL GUARD CAVALRY	109
Captain Kramer Thomas, Cavalry.	
THE CAVALRY SCHOOL HUNT RACE MEETING	113
Major E. M. Whiting, 2d Cavalry.	
THE NATIONAL WESTERN ENDURANCE RIDE	113
Colonel H. R. Richmond, 13th Cavalry.	
EDITORIAL COMMENT	122
MAJOR GENERAL ROBERT LEE HOWZE—THE STUDY OF LANGUAGES—HELP OUR INTERNATIONAL RIFLE TEAM—A MEMBERSHIP RECORD—WINNER OF GOODRICH TROPHY.	
TOPICS OF THE DAY	126
THE CAVALRY SCHOOL HUNT RACE MEETING—CAVALRY BOARD NOTES.	
FOREIGN MILITARY NOTES	130
HORSE SHOWS	132
FIRST CAVALRY DIVISION HORSE SHOW—CHATTANOOGA—SIXTH CAVALRY HORSE SHOW—ARMY TEAM AT FALL HORSE SHOWS—THE NATIONAL HORSE SHOW.	
THE NATIONAL GUARD	147
NOTES ON VISITS TO NATIONAL GUARD CAVALRY CAMPS	
Lieut. Colonel A. F. Commiskey, Cavalry.	
THE ORGANIZED RESERVES	151
NOTES ON A RESERVE TRAINING CAMP	
Lieut. Claude F. Baker, 324th Cavalry.	
NEW BOOKS REVIEWED	160
FOREIGN MILITARY JOURNALS	163
CAVALRY SCHOOL NOTES	165
REGIMENTAL NOTES	166

The United States Cavalry Association

DESIGN

1. The aim and purpose of the Association shall be to disseminate knowledge of the military art and science, to promote the professional improvement of its members, and to preserve and foster the spirit, the traditions, and the solidarity of the Cavalry of the Army of the United States.

ARTICLE III of the Constitution.

Organized November 9, 1885

OFFICERS

President

Major General MALIN CRAIG

Vice-President

Colonel HAMILTON S. HAWKINS, (Cavalry) G. S. C.

Secretary and Treasurer

Lieutenant Colonel W. V. MORRIS, Cavalry.

EXECUTIVE COUNCIL

Colonel F. S. FOLTZ, U. S. A. Retired

Colonel T. A. ROBERTS, Cavalry

Colonel L. B. BALLANTYNE, 102d Cavalry

Colonel W. M. CONNELL, (Cavalry) G. S. C.

Colonel JOHN PHILIP HILL, Cavalry Reserve

Lt. Col. DANIEL VAN VOORHIS, Cavalry

Lt. Col. A. B. COXE, Cavalry

Major A. R. CHAFFEE, 3d Cavalry

MEMBERSHIP AND SUBSCRIPTION TO THE CAVALRY JOURNAL

Membership shall be of three classes, which, together with the conditions of eligibility therefor, are as follows:

- (1) Active, for which all general officers of the Army of the United States and all commissioned officers of the Cavalry of the Army of the United States shall be eligible.
- (2) Associate, for which all present and former commissioned, warrant, and non-commissioned officers of honorable record of the military or naval services of the United States not included in class I shall be eligible.
- (3) Honorary.

Application for membership, showing present or former military status, should be addressed to the Secretary, U. S. Cavalry Association, 1624 H Street N. W., Washington, D. C., and be accompanied by remittance of dues for one year.

There is no initiation fee. Annual dues, payable in advance, \$2.50, which includes subscription to the Cavalry Journal, 60% thereof being so designated.

Any person or organization not eligible for membership may subscribe for the JOURNAL at the regular subscription rates of \$2.50 per year. Canadian and foreign postage, 25 cents additional.

Members and subscribers are requested to give prompt notice in advance of change of address.

THE CAVALRY JOURNAL

Vol. XXXVI.

JANUARY, 1927

No. 146

With The Indian and The Buffalo In Montana

By

Brigadier General EDWARD J. McCLEARNAND

ABOUT the first of February, 1876, a number of adventurous spirits who had entered the Yellowstone country from the west in search of wealth, without any definite idea as to how it was to be obtained, found themselves besieged in a hastily built stockade on the north bank of the Yellowstone River not far from the mouth of the Big Horn. My recollection is that there were about one hundred in the party. Before building the stockade which they named Fort Pease after a former agent of the Crow Indians, they had passed over much of the country on the south side of the river between the Big Horn and the Rosebud, and were vigorously attacked by the Indians near the latter. One of their party, an unusually reliable man, George Herendeen, who will appear again in this story, told me the Sioux charged them recklessly and that he doubted for some time if they could be stopped. These adventurers hoped to establish a trading post at Fort Pease, but the Indians continued hostile and seemed determined either to kill or to drive them from the hunting grounds. One night a courier managed to elude the vigilance of the besiegers and hastened to Fort Ellis to ask for help. The squadron went promptly to the rescue of the hard pressed garrison and after a month's difficult marching in the midst of snow and cold, brought these men back to the settlements.

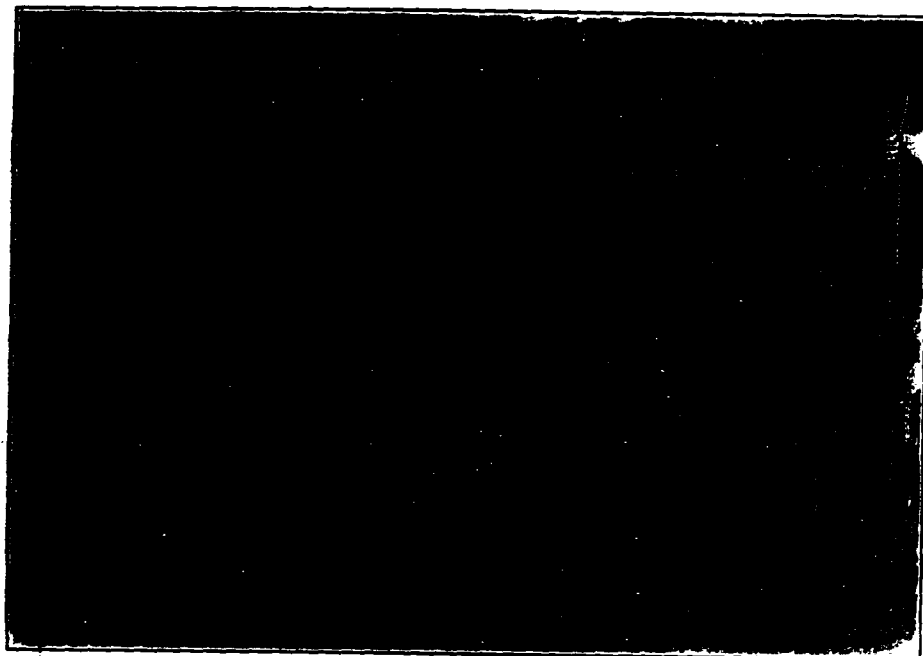
It is believed that this was the first movement made against the Sioux in 1876, antedating as it did by about six weeks, the attack by Colonel Joseph J. Reynolds from the Department of the Platte, on Crazy Horse and his band in

*The first installment of General McClelland's reminiscences was contained in the October number of the CAVALRY JOURNAL, and dealt with the period from his graduation at West Point in 1870 to the close of 1875, when he was stationed with a squadron of the Second Cavalry at Fort Ellis, Montana.—Editor.

Major General Charles P. Summerall
Chief of Staff, United States Army

the Powder River country on March 17th. *

Scarcely had the squadron of the Second Cavalry from Fort Ellis returned to its station, when it was called upon to join in that memorable campaign in which without winning a single fight, if we except the rather indecisive affair



The Sun Dance

Medicine men made incisions in the skin and flesh of the chest or back of the dancers, inserted therein and tied a rawhide thong which was fastened to the top of the pole. The warriors dance and plunge until the thong tears through the flesh.

at Slim Buttes, our forces broke the backbone of the Indian power in the north. In this determined effort to subdue the Sioux, Cheyennes and Arapahoes, who as already stated, were known to camp along the lower Yellowstone and its tributaries, the government sent troops from the Department of the Platte under General George Crook and from the Department of Dakota under General Alfred H. Terry; in the latter's command General George A. Custer came from Fort Abraham Lincoln, near Bismarck, with the Seventh Cavalry, and General John Gibbon with six companies of the Seventh Infantry from

*Colonel Joseph J. Reynolds with ten troops of the Second and Third Cavalry, surprised and took possession of Crazy Horse's camp on Powder River, on the morning of March 17, 1876. He withdrew however, following a counter attack by the Sioux, and the Indians after pursuing the command for some distance, recaptured their pony herd.

The conduct of this affair by Colonel Reynolds was much criticized, all the honors being said to have rested with Crazy Horse, and the hostiles were greatly encouraged.—Error.

Fort Shaw, Montana, and the four troops (F, G, H and L) of the Second Cavalry from Ellis, Major James S. Brisbin, commanding. Gibbon's command came to be known as the "Montana Column."

The cavalry left Ellis on the first of April; the six companies of the Seventh Infantry had already passed the post and were several days march in advance.

The route followed brought us to the Yellowstone just above the big bend, where the river changes from its northerly to its northeasterly course, a short distance above the mouth of Shield's River. A few miles farther on we ascended the foot hills of Sheep Mountain. From this point the view is both extensive and grand. Crazy Mountain lying back of Sheep Mountain, is detached from the main range across the Yellowstone and standing alone, it serves as a rallying point for the clouds, great masses of which usually hover around its lofty peaks rising to an altitude of 10,000 feet. Thousands of springs trickle down its rugged sides and are the sources of numerous streams. To the south, across the river, lies a range of high and rugged peaks frequently called "The Yellowstone Range," whose summits stand out in bold relief against the sky.

Ninety-seven miles from Ellis we overtook the infantry, and the united commands, under General Gibbon, then commenced the campaign in earnest. All along the Yellowstone, until the mouth of Clark's Fork was passed, great numbers of trout were caught; in fact the command almost lived on this delicious food.

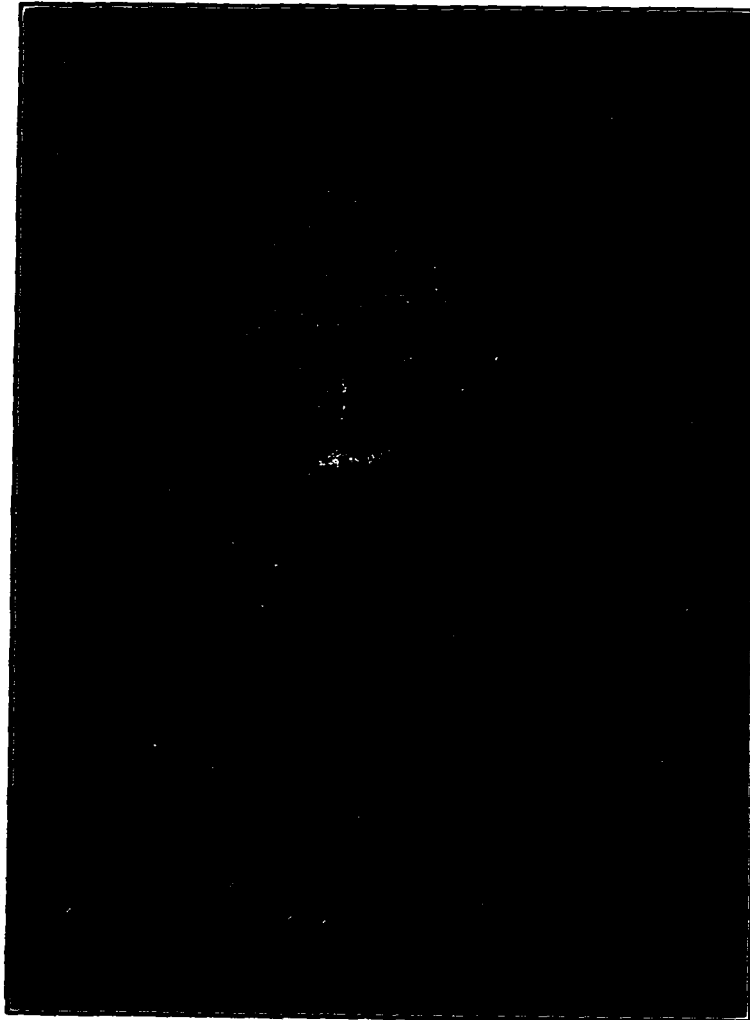
A Narrow Escape

A short distance below "Baker's Battle Ground," previously described* it became necessary to cross to the south side of the river. Probably no one ever entered its swift current without wishing he would never be called upon to repeat the task. The ford was deep and swift. Lieutenant Charles B. Schofield's horse lost his footing, and both man and horse disappeared beneath the rapidly flowing waters. They were now above and now below the surface. It seemed that Schofield would be drowned. He lost his seat, but caught and clung desperately to one stirrup. Loaded down as he was with clothes and arms, it was impossible to swim. After drifting about a hundred yards, the horse regained his footing, and friends rushed in and rescued Schofield none too soon. He told me afterwards that he said to himself, "drowned in the Yellowstone—by etc."

Twenty-four miles below "Baker's Battle Ground," on the south side of the Yellowstone, there is a remarkable rock called "Pompey's Pillar," so named in 1806 by Captain William Clark, of Lewis and Clark fame. Nearly cylindrical in form, it can be ascended only from one point, the face elsewhere being vertical. It is of a gritty sandstone and 160 feet high, by 200 in diameter. From the top there is a grand view, especially to the east, south and west.

* See CAVALRY JOURNAL, October, 1926.

On the north side of the river, the view is somewhat limited by the bold, rugged sandstone bluffs about the same height as the pillar, and to which undoubtedly it was formerly attached. A few miles back, these bluffs break into rolling hills covered with scrubby pines presenting a most barren and



Brigadier General E. J. McClernand

uninviting appearance. These hills, extending back to the Musselshell River, and running along the Yellowstone for 40 miles, constitute its poorest section. The valley to the south is bordered by pretty foot hills, these in their turn,

rising to Pryor's Mountain, and to the snow covered range of the Big Horn farther to the south.

At a point on the Yellowstone 216 miles from Ellis and a short distance below the mouth of the Big Horn River, a courier overtook us with a dispatch for General Gibbon, directing him to halt at Fort Pease and there await further orders, giving the information that the columns under General Crook and General Custer would not take the field for some weeks. We moved on to Fort Pease a distance of two miles and went into camp immediately outside of it.

The next day was spent in policing the fort, of which it stood in great need. It was built of rough cottonwood logs, and was about 75 feet square with a bastion on the northeast and southwest corners.

A Scout to the South

While lying here, on the 24th of April, Captain Edward Ball with two troops (H and F) of the Second Cavalry, was ordered on a scout via the valley of the Big Horn, old Fort C. F. Smith, and Tullock's Fork. I did not belong to either troop, but as Acting Engineer Officer of the District of Montana, I was permitted to accompany the scouting party.

It was not desired that Captain Ball should engage the Indians, but only to discover, if possible, their whereabouts, at the same time keeping his command as well concealed as practicable.

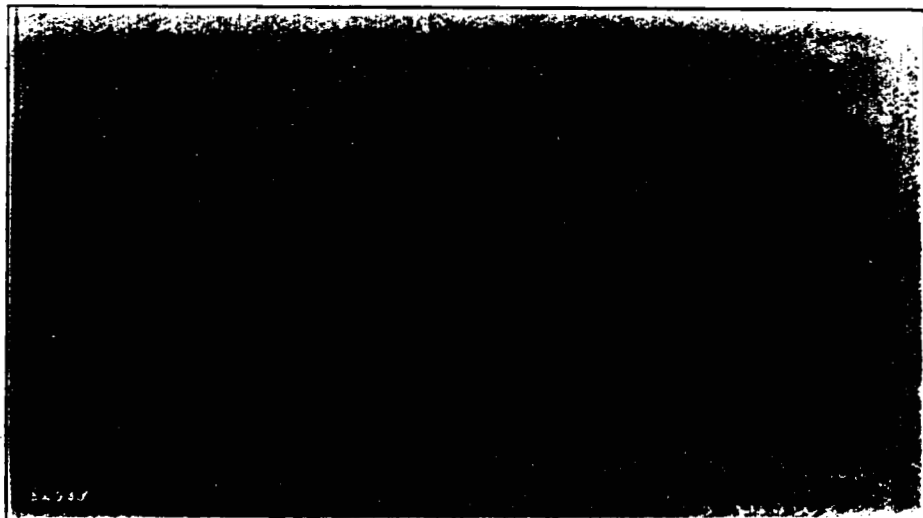
The first night out our route passed through a very broken country. Frequently it became necessary to wind around and around to turn a precipice, or to cross a deep ravine. Our Crow Indian guide, however, was equal to the emergency and won the admiration of all by the masterly manner in which he conducted us in the darkness through these rugged hills. The next day while the command rested hidden among large cottonwood trees, a band of elk walked in among our horses, loose but hobbled, and quietly joined them in a friendly nibble on the green grass. That night we marched until midnight, and then halted to rest on the right bank of the Big Horn. There were only four officers in the command, and fearing that the enemy might be met with in overwhelming numbers, Captain Ball decided that, in addition to the customary sentinels, two officers should stand guard day and night; even while marching it was made their special duty to be on the lookout.

During the night last mentioned while Lieutenant Charles F. Roe, (later commander of the National Guard of New York) and I were on watch, a splashing was heard in the river, followed by a noise on the gravelly beach, such as ponies might make. We determined not to be stampeded, but to wait and learn more about the cause of the noise before awakening the command. Nothing could be seen, and finally the sound died away. The next morning it was discovered that a band of elk had crossed about 200 yards below us.

On the next day the 26th, while resting, buffalo in little bands of from ten to thirty, could be seen feeding in the valleys and foothills in all directions.

Some of them coming within a few yards of camp enabled us to procure meat with little trouble.

Old Fort Smith was reached on April 27th. This post was abandoned at the dictation of Red Cloud's defiant savages in 1868. The walls built of adobe were still standing, but the roofs had been burnt. The flagstaff lay across the parade ground, and from the manner in which it was cut, we supposed that it had been felled by Indians. The cemetery was least injured of all around



The Ruins of Old Fort C. F. Smith

the place, although a monument erected to Lieutenant Sigismund Sternberg and fifteen soldiers killed near the post, had been chipped by the Indians.* This monument standing alone in the wilderness and erected by sorrowing friends, was the last token of love for those who slept here beneath the sod, waiting long and perhaps in vain for the country they served to avenge their death.

Moving on towards the Little Big Horn River, (known to the Indians as "Greasy Grass") we passed through as fine a grazing country as can be found anywhere, combining hills and valleys, with everywhere a perfect mass of nutritious grasses. Numerous streams, fed by the melting snows of the Big Horn Mountains, (to the south) furnish clear and pure water at short intervals. At the time spoken of, the country was alive with game—elk, deer, buffalo, and antelope were seen in great numbers. It was a hunter's paradise.

*Lieut. Sternberg was killed in the celebrated Hayfield fight of August 1, 1867, in which a small detachment successfully resisted the attacks of a greatly superior force of Sioux, Cheyennes, and Arapahoes, and inflicted heavy losses.—EDITOR.

A Prophetic Taunt

While in bivouac on the Little Big Horn, near the spot where less than two months later Custer found the big village and made his last charge, an Indian scout took an empty cracker box and with a piece of charcoal made a lot of drawings thereon. "This," he said, "will tell the Sioux we are going to whip them;" and then filling the cracks with green grass, he added, "this will tell them we will do it this summer." Considering the hundreds of miles marched during that long campaign, it is a little strange that this taunt should have been left on the spot where the one desperate fight took place. In a conversation here with George Herendeen (previously mentioned), who accompanied us as a scout, I expressed the opinion that it would be as well for Captain Ball to meet and fight the Indians, but Herendeen demurred and said they might beat us. Later he was with Custer, but in Reno's part of the battle, and following that, we continued this talk, as will be related further on, in connection with what he saw there.

This scout ended on the 1st of May, without our seeing any Indians. The constant vigilance required of the officers told upon all, and we returned utterly tired out.

On the night of the 2nd and 3rd, the Crow scouts who, contrary to orders, failed to tie up their ponies, had them stolen by a small party of Sioux from down the river.

After the return of Captain Ball, as just related, and while awaiting the arrival of Crook and Custer in the field of operations, General Gibbon moved slowly down the Yellowstone to a large bottom opposite the mouth of the Rosebud. From this point I was sent as a member of a small detachment to reconnoiter down the north bank of the river to discover, if possible, the whereabouts of the enemy. Of course, we kept concealed as much as practicable, while keeping our eyes open and our field glasses in frequent use. A few miles out from camp, we espied a small war party of six or eight, moving covertly through the hills back of the bluffs toward Gibbon's camp. They apparently did not see us and we assumed that they were bent on stealing horses. Their presence did not give us much concern for, although our animals at camp were turned out to graze, hobbles or sidelines were placed on the horses, and the mules were held between the latter and the tents. Moreover, we had lived in the Indian country too long to be caught napping in guarding our stock.

Our reconnaissance was continued for several days and to a point opposite the mouth of Tongue River. Here we hid our horses and crept along on our stomachs to the edge of the high bluff and peered down upon the valley where later Fort Keogh and Miles City were built. Our position permitted us to see a long distance up Tongue River, but no Indians were in sight. Considerable

disappointment was felt, as we had cherished the hope that a large village would be found here.

As our absence had been prolonged beyond expectation, and as our rations were running low, we took the back trail. In fact, real hunger was making itself felt, when a deer was killed, and the meat roasted over an open fire. To accomplish this we cut some willow twigs, and sharpening the smaller ends ran them through strips of meat, with pieces of fat between the lean. The large end of the twig was then forced into the ground at such a distance from the fire as to permit the meat, the weight of which bent the switch, to hang over and just above the live coals. It was cooked deliciously and no king ever had a better supper.

Soon after the scouting party last referred to, returned to Gibbon's camp, the General learned through his Crow scouts that there were strong indications of a large village of hostiles a short distance up the Rosebud. He decided to cross the Yellowstone and attack. Due to the spring floods the river was much too high to be forded, and the current was swift and the water cold. Difficulty was experienced in making the cavalry horses take to the water and swim across, and finally a number were tied head and tail, with a lariat fastened into the halter ring of the first horse. The other end of the lariat was held by a man in a row boat, of which we had several. The fastened animals were thus led into the stream, but as soon as the horse on the lariat entered the main current, he pulled loose from the soldier in the boat and turned down stream, followed, of course, by those in rear. To make a long story short, they were soon swimming in a circle and six or eight were drowned, when the attempt to cross was reluctantly given up.

During this period, small parties of hostile Indians hovered around camp from time to time, but scampered off at the first signs of pursuit. On June 5th. Gibbon's march down the Yellowstone valley was renewed in order to meet troops that our information by mail via Fort Ellis, led us to believe would be coming up the valley about this time, and was continued beyond the mouth of Tongue River to a point a little below Buffalo Rapids, where, on the 9th, General Terry arrived on the steamboat *Far West*. He informed us that General Custer was on Powder River, and would move up the south side of the Yellowstone. We were ordered to take the back trail and take position opposite the mouth of the Rosebud. The distance to be covered was about fifty miles. The rains were heavy, and Sunday Creek was difficult to cross. The cavalry of the Montana Column reached its assigned position on the 13th, and the infantry the following day.

While Gibbon's command was lying at this point, that is, opposite the mouth of the Rosebud, on the 17th of June, the Crow scouts reported a big dust on the Rosebud. Shortly afterward a number of horsemen appeared on the opposite bank of the Yellowstone, two and one-half miles above. By means of signals, General Gibbon learned that it was Major Marcus A. Reno with six troops of the Seventh Cavalry. The river was so broad that we had to use

field glasses to read the signals. They had been scouting on Powder and Tongue Rivers, and on Rosebud Creek. No Indians had been seen, but a large trail had been found leading toward the Little Big Horn.*

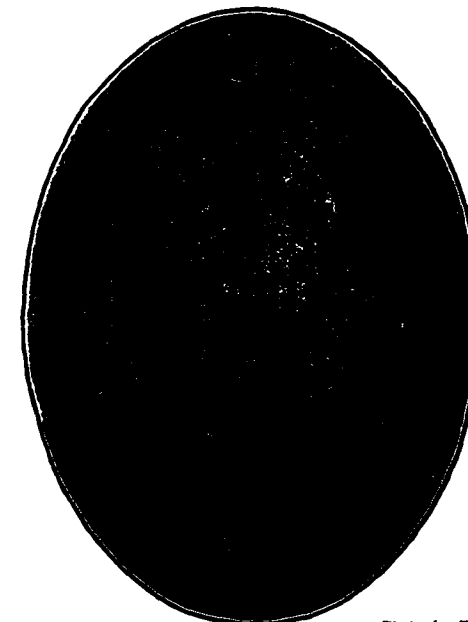


Photo by Barry

Major Marcus A. Reno

At the close of the Civil War, Major Reno was mustered out as a colonel of cavalry; appointed Major, 7th Cavalry in 1868. Dismissed by sentence of a G. C. M., April 1, 1880.

*On this day, June 17, General Crook, less than fifty miles distant, was having his indecisive fight on the Rosebud with Crazy Horse's band of Cheyennes and Sioux. Crazy Horse attacked Crook's force early in the morning and the fight lasted a good part of the day. The Indians were eventually repulsed and driven back and Crook camped for the night on the battlefield. The next morning he withdrew to his supply camp on Goose Creek (south fork of Tongue River) to await re-enforcements.

Cyrus Townsend Brady says: "The battle was in one sense a victory for the white soldiers in that they drove the Indians from the field, forcing them back at least five miles. In another and a more definite sense, it was a decided victory for Crazy Horse. He had fought Crook to a standstill; he had forced him back to his base of supplies; he had stopped the further progress of that expedition; he had protected his villages, and had withdrawn his army in good order."

Incidentally, Crazy Horse, with about 1500 warriors, was enabled to effect a junction with the large body of hostiles on the Little Big Horn in time to defeat the Seventh Cavalry just eight days later. General Terry heard nothing of this Rosebud fight for several weeks.

Crook's force consisted of ten troops of the Third Cavalry under Colonel A. W. Evans, and five of the Second under Major H. E. Noyes, the whole, some 900 in number, being commanded by Colonel William B. Royall of the Third. There were also three companies of the Ninth Infantry and two of the Fourth, a total of 200. Crook, in addition, had 280 Crow and Shoshone Indian scouts.—EDITOR.

Arrival of General Custer

On the 21st, the *Far West*, with General Terry on board, arrived, and orders were given us to proceed at once to Fort Pease. General Terry commanded the Department of Dakota, and therefore he also commanded both Gibbon and Custer. This movement had in part been anticipated, and we were all packed and ready to start. While passing the mouth of the Rosebud on this day soon after our start, a big dust was seen in the direction of Big Wolf Mountains, and soon General Custer with the Seventh Cavalry was seen coming over the hills on the south bank of the Yellowstone. As compared to the showing made by Gibbon's force when on the march, Custer's column looked large and imposing.

Terry, Gibbon and Custer held a conference on the boat.

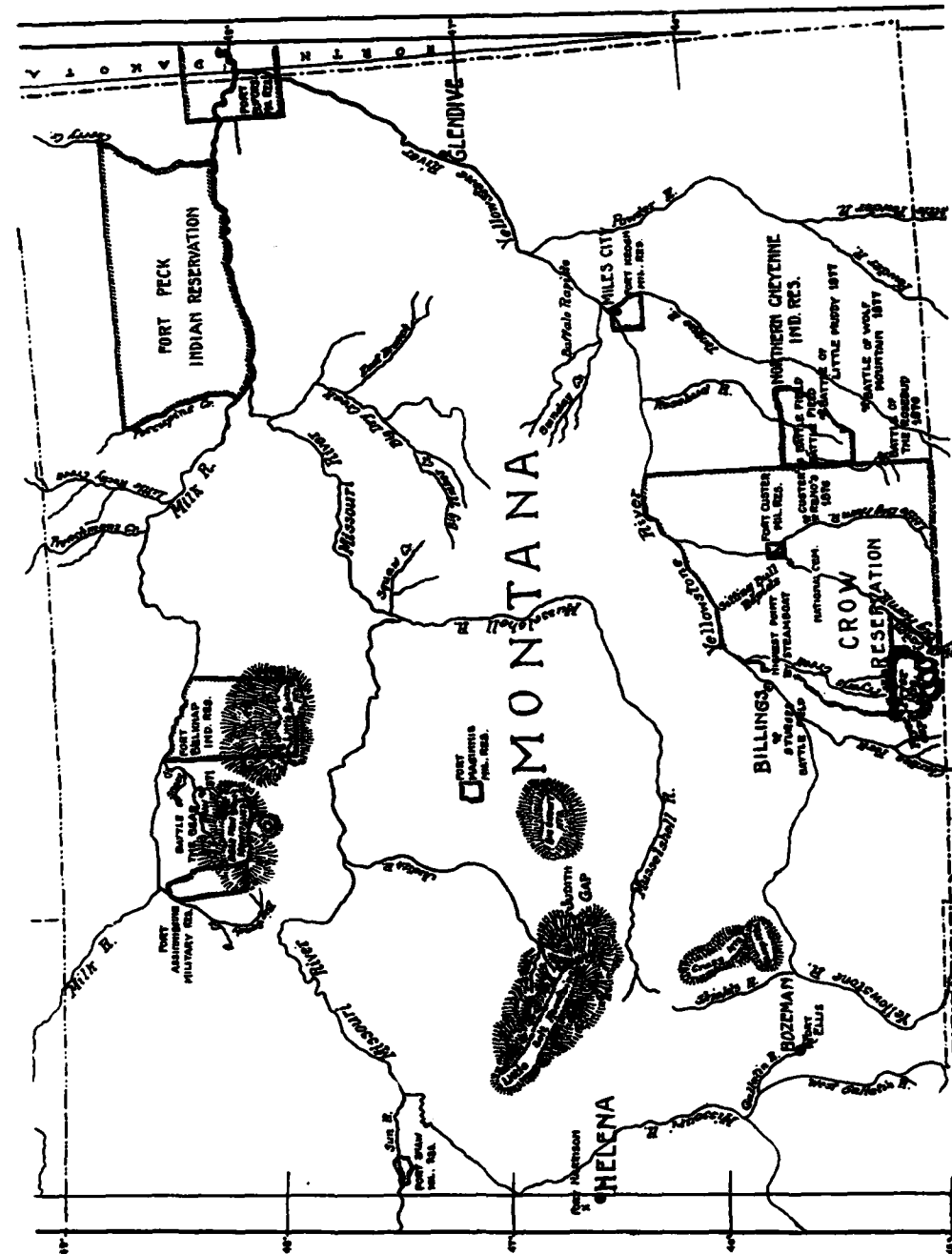
It had been learned that the Indian trail led from the Rosebud toward the Little Big Horn.* General Custer was ordered to follow the trail, with certain instructions added, while General Gibbon was to march back along the north bank of the Yellowstone and to cross that river, on the *Far West*, a few miles below the mouth of the Big Horn, General Gibbon told me that just as the conference broke up, he said in substance to General Custer—"Now Custer do not be selfish, give us a chance to get into the fight." General Custer laughed but made no reply. Each command made immediate preparation for the march. My understanding as a staff officer to General Gibbon was, that after crossing the Yellowstone, he (Gibbon) was to push for the Little Big Horn near its mouth, so as to get below the Indians, if on that stream, while General Custer struck them from above.

Before breaking camp, Gibbon loaned Custer several scouts, including George Herendeen, already mentioned, several Crow Indians and Mitch Bouyer, a half-breed, whose mother was, if I remember correctly, a Sioux, while his father was a French-Canadian. Mitch had married a Crow woman and lived with her tribe. He had an extensive knowledge of the habits of the Northern Indians, and had been valuable to us. He said on many occasions in 1876 and previously, that if we ever attacked a large Sioux village, we would do well to prepare for a big fight.**

*Major Reno had followed that trail about forty miles above the mouth of the Rosebud and then returned. This was the latest information. We passed his farthest south, on our second day's march, June 23.—E. S. GODFREY. (This and subsequent comments by General E. G. Godfrey were made after reaching the manuscript of this article.—EDITOR.)

**I feel sure that General Custer was obsessed with the idea that the hostiles would not "stand," knowing that Crook was in the field; that they probably knew Terry's and Gibbon's columns had united; that Gibbon's column had not been seriously menaced during the two and one-half months it had been in their vicinage; were factors that made him feel that the hostiles had not been strongly re-enforced from the agencies, and that they would scatter and break for the agencies.

Here comes up a remarkable situation.—May 29th, General Sheridan wired Crook: "Have already anticipated movement of Indians from Agencies, and have made application



Fort Pease was at the mouth of the Big Horn River. Buffalo Rapids was the farthest point reached by the Montana column.

The Montana column had the longer route assigned to it and a big and high river to cross, and few, if any, in it thought that General Custer would wait for us or indeed for any one not under his command. A battery, or perhaps I should say, a platoon of Gatling guns, under Lieutenant William H. Low, Jr., of the infantry, an excellent officer, was transferred at Custer's request from his force to Gibbon's because he feared it would delay him.** He could have taken the guns as easily as Gibbon, for the latter crossed a more difficult country, and their presence might have been of incalculable value in the catastrophe that followed.

The *Far West* arrived at 6:00 A. M. on June 24th, General Terry was aboard and announced his intentions of accompanying our column.

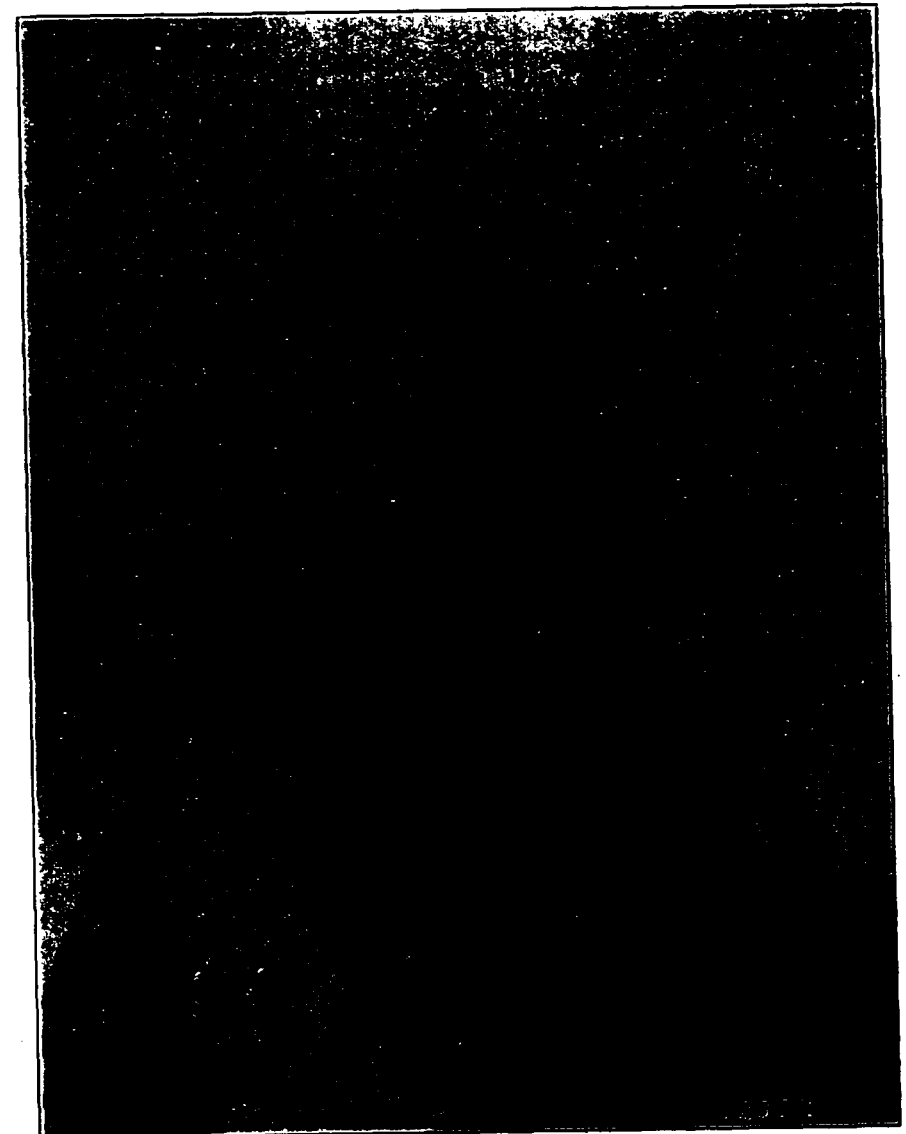
Gibbon detached one company to guard his trains near Fort Pease and crossed the Yellowstone with the balance of his command, on the 24th at 5:30 P. M. We made camp on Tullock's Fork near its mouth, about four miles from Pease. General Gibbon, due to temporary illness, remained on the *Far West* which was ordered to proceed up the Big Horn if possible, and meet us at the mouth of the Little Big Horn. Pack transportation only was taken.

Up the Big Horn

Starting at 5:45 A. M. on the 25th, Terry with the Montana column moved up Tullock's Fork. The General used me as a staff officer, and as I had recently passed over the ground, directed me to select the trail. It was my intention to follow along the little stream to a point three or four miles short of where Captain Ball struck it on April 29th, during his scout previously mentioned, then turn to the right and cross the divide between Tullock's Fork and the Little Big Horn River, so as to reach the latter stream about five miles above its junction with the Big Horn. Along that route the distance from our camp of the night of the 24-25th, to the Little Big Horn, would have been about 47

to General Sherman to be permitted to control Indians at all Agencies, so that none can go out and no hostiles or families can come in except in unconditional surrender."***** The following despatch was sent June 6: Headquarters Military Division of the Missouri, Chicago, Illinois, June 6, 1876, Ruggles, Major Geo. D., St. Paul, Minn. Courier from Red Cloud Agency reports at Laramie yesterday that Yellow Robe arrived at Agency yesterday, six days from hostile camp. He says that eighteen hundred lodges are on the Rosebud and about to leave for Powder River below the point of Crazy Horse's fight. (March 17) Says they will fight and have about three thousand (3000) warriors. This is for your information. M. V. Sheridan, Lt. Col., A. D. C. Captain John G. Bourke relates that on June 8 General Crook received information of the heavy exodus of warriors from the Agencies. General Terry did not receive that information until July 14, nearly three weeks after the battle, and just five weeks later than by Crook! Why this delay? I have never heard any explanation. In his *Galaxy Magazine* articles and his *My Life on the Plains* (1874), General Custer had scathingly arraigned the "Indian Ring" for our "Indian Troubles." Was this delay manipulated by the "Indian Ring" for a sinister purpose?—E. S. GODFREY.

**These gatling guns were hauled by condemned cavalry horses and could not possibly keep up with the cavalry command for any length of time.—E. S. GODFREY.



General George Crook

Known as "Nantan Lupan" (Grey Wolf) to the Indians, became a major general of volunteers during the Civil War. After the war he was appointed a major of infantry, and by 1873 had risen to the grade of brigadier general, which he held until 1888, when he was promoted to a major generalcy. His force from the Department of the Platte was supposed to co-operate with those of Terry and Gibbon in the 1876 campaign, but his practical defeat by Crazy Horse on the Rosebud, June 17, 1876, eliminated him from the campaign for almost two months.

or 48 miles, and to the top of the divide between it and Tullock's Fork, considerably less; probably about forty miles or less.

I am dwelling somewhat upon details here in view of the tragedy we are now approaching. With fair marching we would have reached the summit of the said divide by not later than 10:00 o'clock on the morning of the 26th; the cavalry probably would have been there by 8:00 o'clock. From the summit we would have commanded an excellent view for 12 or 15 miles up the valley of the Little Big Horn, and with our glasses would have been able, I think, to pick up sections of the Indian village, about 10 miles away, attacked the day before by the Seventh Cavalry. We would have been too late to save Custer, but probably the sight of our near approach would have caused the enemy to cease the attack on Reno some hours earlier than he did.

The trail we were following along Tullock's Fork crossed that small stream frequently, but was nevertheless quite a good one, although the battery of Gatling guns found some trouble now and then at the crossings; nothing though that caused serious difficulty or delay. However, after passing up the creek for 3.3 miles General Terry sent word to me that he intended to ascend the divide between the Fork and the Big Horn River, and follow it to the mouth of the Little Big Horn. In adopting this course the General accepted the advice of a civilian scout, "Muggins" Taylor, in Gibbon's employ. Taylor was not familiar with the trail along the Fork, or with the country between it and the Big Horn. He was, in general terms, a good and brave man, who had long lived near the Indian frontier, but mostly in small towns, and was in no sense an experienced "plainsman."

It is only fair to say that usually a good trail can be found along the top of a divide between two streams, but this rule does not apply where "bad lands" intervene, as was the case in the country selected by Taylor. Once having reached the summit of the divide, it became absolutely necessary to follow it, although it was very narrow and tortuous. Rough ravines, hundreds of feet deep, and filled with scrubby pines, ran back almost to the summit from both sides. The day was excessively warm, and the infantry, toiling along over the rough ground, suffered greatly for water, which was not found at any place on the divide.

After marching 21.35 miles, and after descending a long and precipitous hill, where it was necessary to fasten many lariats together, tie them to the Gatling gun carriages, and then lower the latter by hand, the cavalry reached the Big Horn where the troopers and their mounts first quenched their own intense thirst, after which many canteens were filled and sent back to the weary and even more thirsty foot troops.

After a few minutes delay the cavalry again moved forward, climbed a high hill and halted in a large grove of cottonwood trees on the east bank of the Big Horn to await the arrival of the infantry. When the latter came up it was evident that they were completely exhausted after the day's march of

23.65 miles. It was not the length of the journey that drained, temporarily, their vitality, but the many ascents and descents of high hills, and the absence of water.

At 4:30 P. M. rain began to fall heavily, but nevertheless, General Terry, who was anxious to get in the immediate vicinity of the Little Big Horn as soon as possible, decided to push on with the cavalry and the battery, leaving the infantry to follow the next morning. At 5:15 P. M. we were again in the saddle. Our course took us over rough hills and across deep ravines. Night came on very dark and the rain continued to fall dismally until 10:30 P. M. It was difficult for those parts of the column in rear to see those in their front. The battery, especially, had great difficulty in keeping up. Several times it was lost and only brought back by repeated trumpet calls. It was impossible, due to the darkness, to follow a straight course even when the nature of the country would have permitted it, and the General decided that we were taxing the strength of the command to small gain. At midnight, he halted where some water was standing in holes, and near which the grass was fortunately tolerably good, for our animals were in sore need of food. There was also a little wood nearby, but to prevent all danger of signaling our approach, no fires were permitted, and we passed what remained of the night sitting or tramping about in the mud, chilled to the bone in our wet clothing. We had marched 12.10 miles after parting from the infantry, and 35.75 during the day.

When daylight came, fires were authorized and coffee made, to the great benefit of the command. We delayed in bivouac to permit the infantry to somewhat close the gap between us, and did not take up the march until 9:15 A. M. The column soon reached quite a broad valley, destitute of trees, and in which there was doubtless a considerable stream in the early spring, fed by the melting snows, but at the time of our visit the water course was dry, except for such moisture as might be expected from the rain of the night before. Nevertheless, Scout Taylor told General Terry that the ravine in our front was the Little Big Horn River, the water of which sank near its mouth, or as he expressed it,—“which ran dry at its mouth.” To this statement I strongly protested, and said to the General that while I had not actually gone to the mouth of the river on the scout under Captain Ball some two months earlier, we were within ten or twelve miles of its junction with the Big Horn, and that from the divide to the east I had, with the aid of my field glasses, followed its course to the junction of the two rivers, and that beyond question it was a fine flowing stream, and well timbered. My statements were so positive that the General was convinced, and we again moved forward, and from the top of the next ridge, two or three miles in advance, we looked down upon the beautiful little valley and clear running stream we had been seeking, with the junction of the two rivers but a short distance to our right and front. General Terry seemed much pleased, saying in substance,—“Well! I have kept faith with Custer; I promised to be here today.”

First News of Custer

While on the ridge just mentioned, Lieutenant James H. Bradley, Seventh Infantry, in charge of scouts, brought in word that two of our Crow Indians who had been sent with Custer, when the commands parted at the mouth of the Rosebud, were on the opposite side of the Big Horn, and had called across

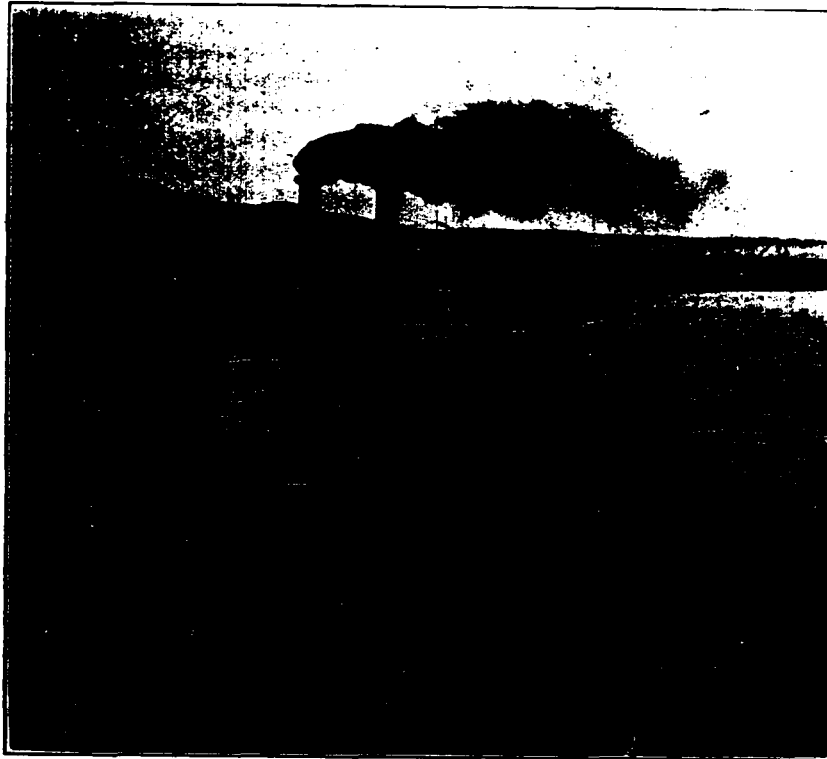
**A Prototype of the Far West**

Photo by Barry

The *Far West*, after the wounded from the battle were put aboard, left on the morning of June 30 and steamed 53 miles to the mouth of the Big Horn, arriving there in the afternoon. It lay there until the late afternoon of July 3 in order to ferry General Gibbon's command to the opposite bank of the river. Leaving at 5:00 P. M. July 3, it made, in order to save the wounded, a record breaking trip down the Yellowstone and the Missouri. Going at full speed, day and night, in a narrow and crooked channel with no shore lights, bumping into the shore, caroming off sand bars, it arrived at Bismarck, a distance of nearly one thousand miles, at 11:00 P. M. July 5. This time of 54 hours, so far as known, has never been equalled on the Missouri or any of its tributaries. Grant Marsh, the skipper of the *Far West*, was a well-known Missouri River captain and the pioneer navigator of the Big Horn.

that General Custer's command had been badly beaten the day before, and he had been killed, in a fight about 18 miles away up the Little Big Horn. They said that his men were shot down like buffaloes, and urged us to go no farther,

saying that the Sioux would kill all of us. They refused to rejoin.

At this time a big smoke was seen up the valley of the Little Big Horn, but the report of the Crows was not generally believed. Many thought that the smoke arose from the Indian village and that Custer was burning it. The Crows said the Sioux had fired the grass.

As said, the statement of the two Crow scouts was not generally accepted. Many in our column were willing to admit that Custer's advance guard might have been driven back, but scoffed at the idea of his entire regiment's having been beaten. In fact, Custer commanded the admiration and excited the enthusiasm of most of the young men in the Army. His well known reputation for courage and dash was contagious and caught the fancy even of those among us who had never met him. It is recalled that one young officer attached to General Terry's Headquarters, Lieutenant Thompson of the Sixth Infantry, if I remember correctly, announced that of course Custer had beaten the Indians and was now fifty miles away in pursuit. Many undoubtedly thought likewise. My Captain, James N. Whelan, fell into general disfavor because he insisted that the Crows were reliable and that their report should be accepted. I do not know what General Terry thought; so far as I know he kept his opinion to himself.

General Gibbon came up from the *Far West* about this time and reported that the steamboat with 160 tons of freight was ascending the Big Horn without difficulty. The infantry arrived about 11:00 A. M., and Gibbon's united command moved down the little divide and started up the valley of the Little Big Horn. The column halted, as nearly as I can remember, at 1:00 P. M. about three miles from the mouth of the river, where we had something to eat. The river was about twenty yards wide and two and one-half feet deep and there were beautiful groves of cottonwood and ash along the banks.

The infantry had marched 18.85 miles during the morning. The distances I am giving here were determined by two odometers under charge of Sergeant Becker of the Engineer Corps, one fastened to either wheel of a light cart. He acted as my assistant, and was a thoroughly reliable man as well as an expert topographer. He made a sketch of the route followed each day and submitted it for approval. In this way the character of the country was impressed upon my mind and is readily recalled. Moreover, Fort Custer was built in 1877 and 1878 on the bluffs just above where the rivers unite, and I was stationed there from the summer of 1878 to June, 1879. Naturally, I availed myself of the opportunity this offered to study the topography and to refresh my memory of the country marched over on June 26, 1876, and the day following. Again, many of the details I am now reciting are taken from my official report as Engineer Officer of the District of Montana, submitted in the form of a journal in the autumn of 1876, and published in the report of the Chief of Engineers of the Army for the fiscal year ending June 30, 1877. For these

reasons I can, perhaps, claim unusual accuracy for my statements concerning the days under discussion.

General Terry's Anxiety

While Gibbon's column was thus halted in the valley some three miles above the mouth of the Little Big Horn. General Terry doubtless expected and had every reason to expect, that Custer, as his successor in command, would spare no effort to communicate with him. He seemed surprised and mystified by the fact that no report had been received, and was unmistakably anxious. He finally determined to try and communicate by courier with Custer. Two officers, each without the knowledge of the other, volunteered to attempt to get through with his message, but he would not consent, saying that the law and the customs of the service did not provide any adequate reward for such risk on the part of an officer, and that he preferred to make it a matter of monetary consideration. It may be said here that commissioning by brevet and the award of the Medal of Honor, the only medal known at that time, had both practically fallen into disuse, and that a sense of duty performed and the approbation of his comrades, was the only compensation an officer could reasonably expect for the performance of unusual and hazardous service.

The General then offered a reward of \$500.00 for the delivery of a message to Custer, and Muggins Taylor undertook the task. Taylor was riding a strong horse in fair flesh, but not fast. He tried to exchange him for a fleetier animal, but did not succeed. In fact, most of the horses of the Second Cavalry, largely because of long field service and short rations of grain, were low in flesh and more or less unfitted for a long and rapid gallop.

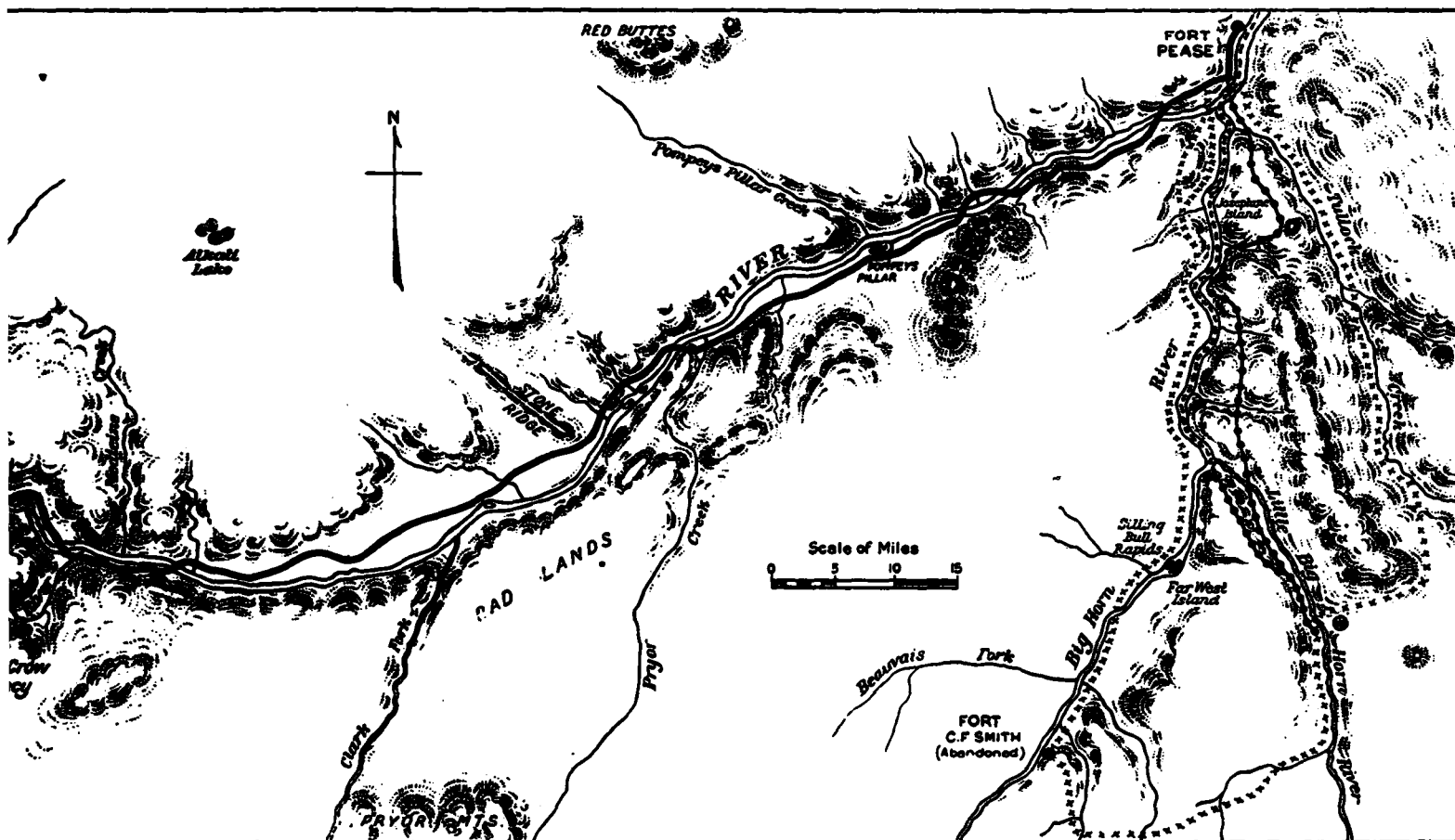
Taylor started about 3 P. M. and afterwards told me that in his advance he kept hidden as much as possible in the hills of the divide to the west. His statement is not repeated here in any spirit of criticism, for in truth the success of his mission, as well as his personal safety, depended upon his avoiding any party, or parties, of the enemy interposed between the two parts of Terry's command. In a measure, however, it does account for his not getting much farther up the valley than Terry himself went that evening.

The Advance Resumed

The infantry having rested their legs and the horses having had a nibble of the luxuriant grass, the Montana column, at 5:00 P. M. renewed its advance. Our route took us through the beautiful valley to the west of the river, and for miles from up the stream, the column was in plain view of anyone who cared to look. After advancing about five miles, twelve or fifteen ponies were found grazing in the valley; shortly afterward several Indians were seen hovering around our front, and a few shots were fired at Troop F, under Lieutenant Charles F. Roe, which had been sent up on the low hills or bluffs



The heavy line indicates the route of the Montana column eastward from Fort Ellis. The big bend of the escape from drowning occurred just west of the mouth of Pryor's Creek where the heavy line indicating the route by crosses. That of General Gibbon's column south from Fort Pease in the Little Big Horn expedition is indicated by a broken line. The scene of the battle is indicated by a circle with spokes.



Courtesy of Mr. Robert Bruce

Fort Ellis. The big bend of the Yellowstone referred to in the text is north of the Yellowstone Mountains. Lieut. Schofield's narrow trail, indicated by a heavy line, crosses the Yellowstone. The route of Captain Ball's scout to old Fort C. F. Smith is indicated by a heavy line broken by small circles. The course of the Far West up the Big Horn is indicated by a dotted line.

to the west, to cover the right flank of the column.

Our pace while marching was fairly good, but frequent halts were made to enable the officers with the Headquarters to sweep the country with their field glasses in the hope of sighting Custer, or failing in that, at least to pick up the main body of the enemy, if still nearby.

As the evening advanced several officers saw through their glasses on the hills farther up and across the river, objects that suggested to them buffaloes lying down. As twilight, aided by smoke and possibly dust, was enveloping us, there appeared in the distance to the right and front, something looking like a long column of cavalry. Gibbon, who exercised the immediate control of our troops, held his small force well in hand, prepared to fight it, if need be, as a unit and for all it was worth; and here let me say that many of us expected, in case of battle, that our Gatling guns would have a marked demoralizing effect on the enemy.

It was rapidly growing dark when Muggins Taylor returned and said what we saw in the distance was Custer and his cavalry. He was angry and excited, saying that some of Custer's Indian scouts had ridden out from the column and fired on him, and he swore he would kill them when we joined forces. Captain Hughes of General Terry's staff said to his chief,—“For God's sake, General, let us push on.” The General replied,—“No, Hughes, if that supposed column be Custer's and he is in the same doubt that we are, we may fire into each other in the night.”

Night entirely overtook us before anything definite was learned of Custer's fate, but even the most sanguine commenced to doubt that he had been victorious. Sometime between 8:00 and 9:00 P. M., we turned from near the hills well into the center of the valley and went into bivouac. The infantry had covered during the day, 29.10 miles, a very considerable part of the distance having been across steep hills.

The command formed a hollow square with the Gatling guns placed to the best advantage to repel a possible attack. The troops of cavalry were sent one at a time to water at the river, a half mile or more away. Each troop carried utensils with which to bring back water. After supper, such as it was, the entire command settled down for the night to await anxiously for daylight and what the next day might bring forth. Whatever the result of Custer's fight had been, everyone anticipated another on the morrow.

The night passed quietly and dawn found us astir. No report had been received from Custer or his command, notwithstanding that on the previous afternoon, our column had passed several hours in the open valley, and all was uncertainty. General Terry decided to move farther along the river, with scouting detachments on the hills on either side. From the position of our bivouac the view up the valley was shut off a mile and a half or so away, by the trees that bordered the river as it swept completely across the valley we were in, from the high bluffs on the east to the lower ones to the west,

and then turned back again to run along the eastern bluffs. These trees had likewise limited our view on the afternoon of the day before.

Making an early start on the 27th, we soon approached the timber along the river as it crossed and re-crossed the valley, and here a little delay occurred as the advance guard reconnoitered among the trees to avoid a possible ambush. Advancing again we had gone but a short distance when two tepees were seen through the trees, and ascending the low sandstone bluffs at the extreme western sweep of the Little Big Horn, we saw in our immediate front a large bottom where an immense Indian village had stood but a few hours before. A few tepees were still standing, in which several dead Indians were found. The enemy had evidently left in haste; numerous buffalo-robes, blankets, tepee-poles, and camp utensils were scattered over the ground, together with great quantities of dried meat. Fifty or sixty ponies had also been left behind. A buckskin shirt, a garment much affected on the plains in those days by some officers, was found with the name "Sturgis" on it. It was discolored by blood stains, and had been pierced in two places by a bullet. It was assumed to have been the property of Lieutenant James G. Sturgis of the Seventh Cavalry. I sighted a large American horse grazing about one-fourth of a mile away in the valley, and as my horse was thin and weak, I galloped over to the free animal intending to transfer my saddle to him, but found that he had been wounded and was unserviceable. He was branded "U.S." I also observed that many trails of pony tracks and lodge poles converged into a wide ravine that led away in the general direction of old Fort Smith.

A Tragic Message

On returning to Headquarters I found my friends turning their field glasses on the hills in every direction in the hope of discovering friend or foe, or both, but without avail. The fate of Custer was now more puzzling than ever. Our chief, General Terry, was calm but serious. He evidently was weighing the situation seriously.

All were horrified by a message received about this time from Lieutenant Bradley, our chief of scouts, saying that he had counted 196 dead cavalrymen on the hills across the river. The objects seen the day before looking like buffaloes lying down, were probably dead comrades and their horses.

The situation, gloomy as it had been, was made immensely more so by Bradley's report. The responsibilities of our General increased, and it is thought that the sympathy of all present went out to him as he pondered the course to pursue. The stronger of his two commands had evidently met with a grave defeat; 196 were accounted for, but where were the others, and were they living or dead? If his stronger column had been defeated, what would be the result if the fight should be renewed with the weaker one? All felt that General Terry was more than willing to act, and to fight if opportunity offered, but who could say where he should go, and what had become of the victorious enemy.

Now two horsemen are seen dashing toward us from up the valley. Apparently we had at last made our presence known to our surviving comrades of the Seventh Cavalry, but not before we had stood upon the battlefield and had counted their dead on the hills across the river, and were entering into the bottom where the village had stood the day before. As the hurrying riders drew nearer, we discovered they were riding bare-back, then that they were white men, and finally two lieutenants, George D. Wallace and Luther R. Hare, sent by Major Reno, second in command to Custer, to tell of the desperate fight by his own detachment, and to point out their present position on the bluffs up, and across, the river.

"Where is Custer," they were asked. Wallace replied, "The last we saw of him he was going along that high bluff (pointing in a general direction to a point on the bluffs down stream from the position where he had located Reno), toward the lower end of the village. He took off his hat and waved to us. We do not know where he is now." "We have found him," said General Terry, his eyes filling with tears, for all now felt the truth of the statement shouted to us by our Crow scouts from across the Big Horn, and fully expected to find Custer's remains on the stricken field discovered by Bradley.

Reno's messengers sat their horses aghast at the information given them, and seemed slow to grasp the fact that their detachment had not played the major role in the drama that had been enacted.

Leaving Custer and his companions in death on the hills where we had found them, we placed ourselves under the guidance of Wallace and Hare to be taken to those of our comrades who had survived the catastrophe. They led us along the valley for some three and a half or four miles, where the village had stood the day before, toward some timber that stretched nearly across the bottom above, much as did that already described cross the valley at the lower end of the village, and which as stated, had obstructed our view on the previous afternoon. There was perhaps a quarter or half mile of smooth, open ground between the extreme western sweep of the timber we were approaching and the bluffs to the west, and we were told that it was through this opening that Reno's men first saw the village. The bluffs spoken of as lying to the west, may perhaps be more properly mentioned as hills, for their ascent was gradual and their surface grass covered, while those on the right bank of the stream were not only high but quite precipitous, especially opposite what had been the upper end of the village; toward the middle of the Indian camp their slopes became more gradual, and descended into a broad coulee, that led to a good crossing of the river, while at the extreme lower end of the village the eastern bluffs were also comparatively low, at least as compared with those above and opposite where Reno first sighted the Indian camp ground.

Thus the village had been quite well concealed from observation at a distance by the bluffs to the east and west, and the timber immediately above and below it in the valley. It is important that the reader carry this picture

in his mind, and for his further information it may be added that the general direction of the Little Big Horn River is northeasterly as far as the battlefield, where it changes and follows a northwesterly course to its junction with the Big Horn. Between these two streams lies a plateau of undulating prairie, while between the Little Big Horn and the Rosebud, the divide, which was crossed by Custer in his advance toward the savages, is rough and broken, of considerable elevation, with precipitous hills and deep, narrow gulches.

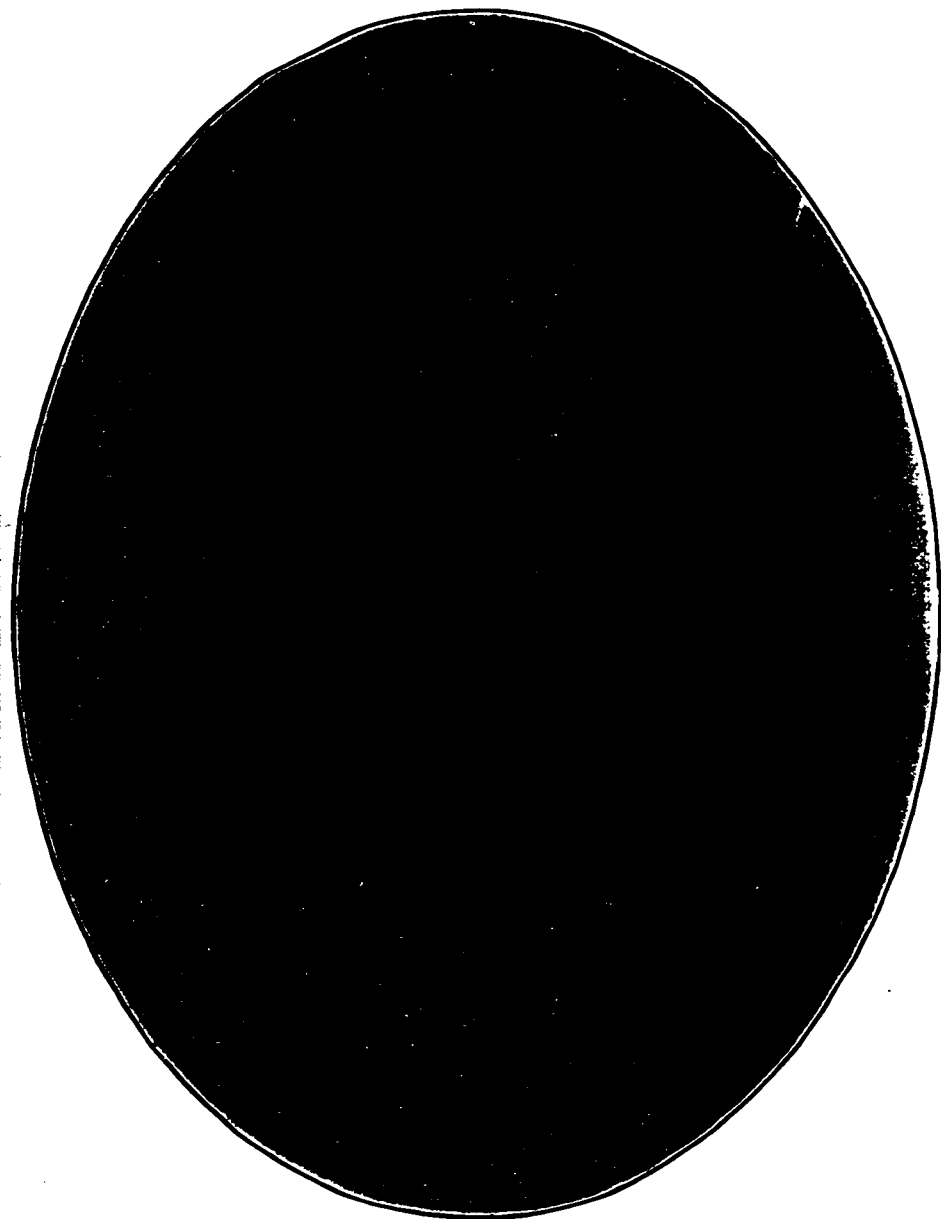
As our conductors led us over the former camp ground, they informed us that Reno's fight had opened in the valley and that the point of timber we were approaching marked the extreme down stream limit of his advance. Along the line of Reno's retreat to the hills, from his first position in the bottom, was a sickening sight. The dead were horribly mutilated.

Much was said later by Major Reno and others about their ability to have taken care of themselves without Gibbon's assistance, but this I know, strong men exhibited every evidence of joy as we ascended the bluff and took them by the hand, and one friend told me that he had never expected to see another sun go down.

As our readers are now following with us across part of the battlefield, it will be well to go back a little and place ourselves under the leadership of Custer, and accompany him in his fairly rapid march from the time he parted from Gibbon at the mouth of the Rosebud to the point on the bluffs where, as Wallace told us, he was last seen. To that point we may follow with sufficient detail, but beyond that, all that has been written is largely conjecture. The writer has no intention of giving a minute account of the battle of the Little Big Horn, and is content to leave the details of that sanguinary conflict to be told by Godfrey and others of the Seventh Cavalry who faced death there. Nevertheless, what the Montana column found on the 26th and 27th on the banks of that stream is a part of the column's own history and can properly be told here.

General E. S. Godfrey was a lieutenant and a troop commander under Custer in his march against the Indians, and all who wish to make a close study of the fight that followed will do well to read his account under the title of "General George A. Custer and the Battle of the Little Big Horn." * All who know Godfrey will accept implicitly his statement of facts that fell under his observation, and as I know of no better source than the statements of Wallace and Hare to General Terry, and Godfrey's printed story, from which to gather information about what actually befell Reno's command, I shall follow them quite closely. As the account of Custer's death struggle has never been written by an eye witness, and as I was among the first to examine his battlefield while the dead still rested where they fell, perhaps my con-

*Published in the *Century Magazine*, January, 1892. Attention is also invited to the very comprehensive account by Lieutenant Colonel W. A. Graham J. A. G., entitled *The Story of the Little Big Horn*, which was published in the *CAVALRY JOURNAL* of July, 1926, five months after the death of General McClelland.—EDITOR.



General John Gibbon

Courtesy of Mr. Robert Bruce

Commander of the Montana column, was mustered out at the end of the Civil War as a major general of volunteers and then was appointed colonel of infantry, which grade he held until 1885, when he was promoted to a brigadier generalcy.

lecture of what occurred after he separated from his comrades who survived may be as good as another's; or at least it may be of interest to those who wish to study the engagement from every point of view.

I was not only among the first to visit the fatal field where Custer fell, but I also superintended the making of a considerable portion of the map thereof that will be found with the report of Lieutenant Edward Maguire, Chief Engineer, Department of Dakota, printed with the report of the Chief of Engineers of the Army for 1876. It is perhaps the best map that has been made of the field. I started the survey immediately upon the completion of our short march with Wallace and Hare to the foot of "Reno Hill," and instructed my assistant, Sergeant Becker, as to the ground to be covered. He commenced the work at once and had covered about one-third of the territory concerned, when my superior, Lieutenant Maguire, said to General Terry that he thought the mapping of the battlefield should be under his own (Maguire's) supervision. The General assented and I was verbally relieved as Assistant Engineer Officer. I had a little feeling about this for I recognized that some distinction might accrue from making the map, and as I had started the survey and, moreover, had superintended for several months, the work of mapping our trail and writing up the journal of our marches, it did seem that I might have been permitted to complete the task in hand. However my disappointment was less than it would have been had the duties of Engineer Officer of the District of Montana been congenial to me. Notwithstanding my high regard and affection for General Gibbon, the Commanding Officer of the District, I did not find them so and in truth was glad to part with them. The reader will appreciate my feelings when told that I was put back on my old job as soon as the map of the battlefields was finished. With the exception of one slight error the Maguire map is good.

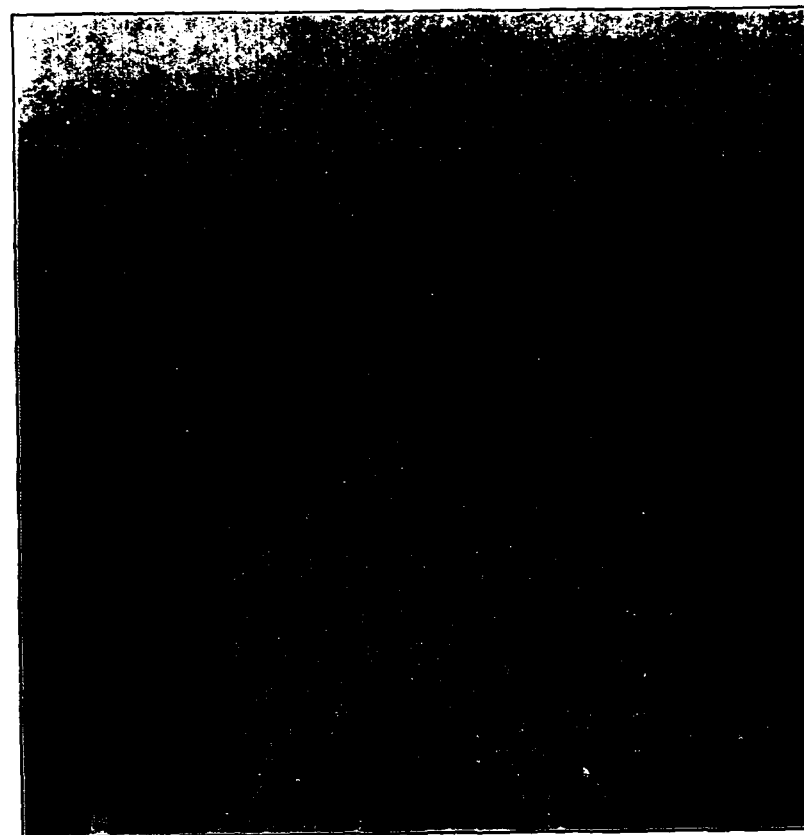
March of Custer Column

It will be recalled that Gibbon and Custer parted at the mouth of the Rosebud on June 22nd, and that the former pursued his way to the mouth of the Little Big Horn via the north bank of the Yellowstone, Tullock's Fork, and the ridge between the latter and the Big Horn, while Custer's route passed up the Rosebud, a rather insignificant stream, and then turned to the right, or west, and crossed the divide lying towards the Little Big Horn.

Immediately after the conference previously mentioned between Terry, Gibbon and Custer, the latter ordered that fifty rounds of carbine ammunition per man be carried on the pack mules, with one hundred more by each trooper on his person and in his saddle bags, together with 24 rounds of pistol ammunition.

About sunset on the 22nd, Custer told his officers that they might meet between one thousand and fifteen hundred warriors; that General Terry had offered him the squadron of the Second Cavalry, but that he had declined it because he felt sure that the Seventh Cavalry could whip any force he might

meet. He also said that he had decided not to take the Gatling guns for fear that they might hamper his movements at a critical moment "because of the inferior horses used and of the difficult nature of the country to be passed over," and added that the marches would be from 25 to 30 miles per day.



Dull Knife

This Cheyenne chief took part in the Rosebud fight against Crook on June 17, 1876, and also participated in the battle of the Little Big Horn. On November 25, 1876, in the Big Horn Mountains, he was killed and his village captured by a force under Colonel R. S. MacKenzie.

In his conversations with his officers on the marches that followed, Custer unbosomed himself and made concessions in a manner that was unusual for him. "His manner and tone usually brusque and aggressive, or somewhat curt," was conciliatory and subdued. In what he said there was "something akin to an appeal, as if depressed." An officer who was present was so impressed that he expressed the belief that he, Custer, would be killed, and

when asked why, replied, "because I have never heard him talk that way before."

Perhaps a better explanation of his conciliatory bearing may be found in a desire to enlist the enthusiastic support of all in the fight which was anticipated. In this connection, it is worthy of mention that Mitch Bouyer, the half-breed interpreter loaned to Custer by Gibbon, said to one of the officers of the Seventh Cavalry, "Well I can tell you we are going to have a damned big fight," and there is abundant evidence that the general attitude of the Indian scouts with the regiment expressed this conviction. All were impressed by the extent of the former camping grounds of the Indians along the Rosebud, while the Crow scouts were very active and efficient in the examination and interpretation of the camp grounds and trails.

The distances that are said to have been covered in Custer's advance were necessarily estimated and were perhaps rather in excess of those actually marched. At least that seems to be the general case on long and tiresome marches. It is said that on June 22nd he marched 12 miles; on the 23rd, 33, and on the 24th about 28 by sundown, when the command went into camp under cover of a bluff to remain hidden as much as possible, with orders to be ready to resume the march at 11:30 p. m. However, the officers were assembled about 9:30 p. m., and told that they would march at once; that the trail led over the "divide" to the Little Big Horn; that he (Custer) was anxious to get as near the top of the divide as possible before daylight, and place the command in concealment while he studied the country, located the Indian village and made his plans for attack on the 26th. It will be recalled that Terry said he promised Custer to have Gibbon on the Little Big Horn on the 26th.

As indicated in the preceding paragraph, the march was resumed and after advancing about 10 miles, a halt was ordered a little after 2:00 a. m. on the 25th. Sometime before eight o'clock of the same morning, Custer made known that the village had been located in the valley of the Little Big Horn, some twelve or fifteen miles beyond the top of the divide and ordered the command to march at eight. About this time he is said to have replied to a statement of an Indian scout that "we will find enough Sioux to keep us fighting two or three days," with, "I guess we will get through with them in one day." Little did he realize that the "one day" would sound "taps" for him and those who rode with him as the day declined.

On the march again at 8:00 a. m., the regiment advanced about ten miles and halted in a ravine at 10:30 a. m.

Custer had followed the enemy's trail up a branch of the Rosebud to within, say, a mile of the summit. To his right (north) lay the little divide between Tullock's Fork and the Little Big Horn, and farther on to the north and west, the divide between the former and the Big Horn, along which the

Montana column advanced.

While his troops were concealed in the ravine last mentioned, Custer went to the point on the summit from which the scouts had previously discovered smoke rising from the village and pony herds grazing in the valley of the Little Big Horn, some 12 or 15 miles away. Because of the high bluffs on the east (near) side of the river, which screened the village, it was impossible for him to discover more of the enemy and his immediate surroundings than had been reported, and no better point for observation was found until the battle was about to open.

A pack had been lost from a mule during the march of the previous night, and a sergeant who had been sent back for it, reported that he found an Indian opening one of the boxes of crackers in the pack, and that as soon as the savage saw his detachment approaching, he galloped away out of rifle range and then moved along leisurely. General Custer recounted this incident to his officers, and added that several Indians had also been seen moving along the ridge overlooking the valley through which the command had advanced, as if observing its movements; that the troops had been discovered and that he would move at once to attack the village; explaining at the same time that he had not intended to attack until the next morning, the 26th, but the discovery of the column made it imperative to act at once, as delay would allow the village to scatter and escape. He evidently was under the delusion that the Indians would try to escape. His plans for battle, such as they were, were based on this supposition, which, being erroneous, invited the disaster that followed.

Division of the Regiment

The regiment was soon enroute; crossed the summit a little before noon, and followed down the middle branch of Sun Dance Creek. Shortly after passing the summit it was divided into squadrons, as follows: the advanced squadron, consisting of three troops (A, G and M) and the Indian scouts, under Major Reno; a second squadron of three troops (D, H and K) under Captain F. W. Benteen, and a third of five (C, E, F, I and L) under the immediate control of General Custer.* The pack train was guarded by the

*The troop officers were as follows: A—Captain Myles Moylan, Lieut. Chas. C. de Rudio; B—Captain Thomas McDougal; C—Captain Tom W. Custer, Lieut. H. M. Harrington; D—Captain Thomas B. Weir, Lieut. W. S. Edgerly; E—Lieut. A. E. Smith, Lieut. J. G. Sturgis; F—Captain G. W. Yates, Lieut. W. Van W. Rely; G—Lieut. Donald McIntosh, Lieut. Geo. D. Wallace; H—Captain F. W. Benteen, Lieut. F. M. Gibson; I—Captain Myles W. Keogh, Lieut. J. E. Porter; K—Lieut. E. S. Godfrey; L—Lieut. James Calhoun (Custer's brother-in-law), Lieut. J. J. Crittenden; M—Captain Thomas H. French.

The Indian Scouts were under Lieutenants Chas. A. Varnum and Luther R. Hare. Lieut. W. W. Cooke was regimental adjutant and Lieut. B. H. Hodgson, acting adjutant of the Reno squadron. Medical officers were Doctor G. E. Lord with Custer, and Doctors J. M. DeWolf and H. R. Porter with Reno.

Civilians who were killed were "Boston" Custer (brother of the General), Arthur Reed (the General's nephew), Mark Kellogg (correspondent), Mitch Bouyer (scout), Charles Reynolds (scout), F. E. Mann, Isiah Dorman (negro interpreter from Fort Rice).

Indian scouts killed were Bloody Knife, Little Soldier, Bobtailed Bull.—Editor.

twelfth, or remaining, troop, (B) commanded by Captain Thomas McDougall.

Reno's squadron marched down the middle branch mentioned; Custer's column followed Reno's closely, bearing to the right and rear, while Benteen was ordered to the left and front, to a line of high bluffs about three or four miles distant, and if when he reached them he did not see the enemy, he was instructed to continue on to the next line of bluffs, and so on until he could look into the valley of the Little Big Horn.

One may ask here if this wide flank movement was assigned to Benteen on the supposition that the Indian village extended along the river for miles farther than was actually the case, or was Custer uncertain as to whether it was above or below him; or was it suggested by the thought that the Sioux and his allies would stampede and try to escape towards the south, that is, towards the Big Horn Mountains, or did all these suppositions enter his mind? No one can tell, but if Benteen had carried out his orders strictly, his subsequent junction with Reno would have been materially delayed and possibly entirely prevented. As it was, Benteen found the country so broken and the corresponding tax on his horses so great, that he decided to incline to the right and pick up the trail of his comrades on that side, which he finally did, just in advance of the pack train. The reader will understand that the routes followed at this period of the advance, led to the river considerably above the Indian camp or village.

During Benteen's march to the left his men could occasionally see Custer's squadron marching at a rapid gait. After reaching the trail to his right, as stated, Benteen halted at a little stream to water, and while there heard some firing in advance, but did not ascertain its cause. He passed a tepee in which a dead warrior was found, who evidently had been dead several days. He was still several miles from the Little Big Horn.

The squadron in advance under Custer and Reno did not meet any Indians until arriving at the tepee of the dead warrior, later found by Benteen as previously stated. Here a few were seen, who withdrew as the troops advanced, making no effort to delay Custer and Reno, and keeping far enough in advance to be safe, with the purpose possibly, of inviting pursuit.

Reno was now ordered to move forward at as rapid a gait as he thought prudent, and charge the village afterwards and was told that the whole outfit would support him. He interpreted this order to mean that the balance of the regiment would act in close co-operation with him, and not at a far distant point. He was not only justified in that interpretation, but doubtless such was Custer's intention when he gave the order.

Reno, following the Indian trail, crossed the Little Big Horn, when he sent word to his commanding officer that the enemy was in his (Reno's) front, and strong. Custer had moved off to the right, being separated from Reno by a line of high bluffs and the river. It does not follow that Custer intended to so separate himself from his subordinate when he informed him that the whole

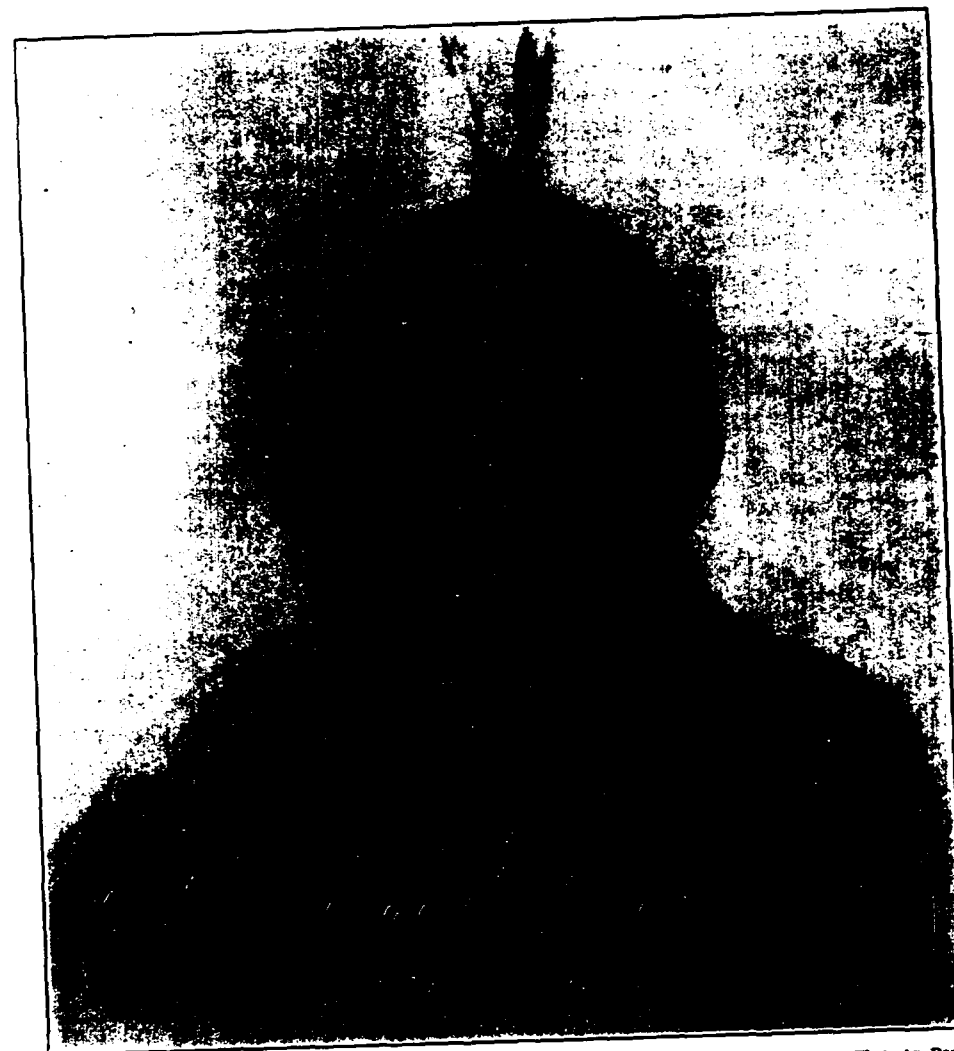


Photo by Barry

Sitting Bull

The host of the hostiles at the battle of the Little Big Horn and a powerful and influential "medicine man." While his fame is based principally upon this battle, he actually took no part in the fight, Gall, Crazy Horse, Crow King, Two Moons, and Dull Knife being the principal war chiefs. To the day of his death, Sitting Bull had for the Whites an intense and unrelenting hatred. After the Little Big Horn fight, he and Gall with a large band made their way to Canada. Sitting Bull returned and surrendered at Fort Buford in July, 1881, Gall having come in some time previously. Sitting Bull was killed by Indian Police who were attempting to arrest him December 15, 1890, on the Standing Rock Reservation, North Dakota, at the time of the Messiah excitement which culminated in the Sioux War of 1890-91. In the fight which followed the death of Sitting Bull, 43 police fought off 160 of his adherents, killing eight and wounding five. Six Indian police were killed.

outfit would support him. It is easy for a column marching rapidly over a rough country to be deflected from its selected line of direction, and knowing the terrain in question, I can understand how this may have occurred. It will be recalled that some distance back, Custer's squadron was said to have followed Reno's closely, bearing to the right and rear. This slight deviation might easily have grown into a big one in an attempt to select the easiest line of advance without following immediately in Reno's rear.

After fording the river, Reno moved at a trot down the valley. The trees that grew nearly across the bottom just above the village, from the river to near the hills to the west, as previously described, prevented him from seeing the Indian camp until he reached the point of timber that marked his farthest advance down stream as formerly stated.

About half a mile below the ford, Reno formed the column of fours into line, with the scouts on the left flank, and about a mile farther on, deployed the squadron as skirmishers. The enemy, whose numbers constantly increased, retired in good order, firing occasionally, but making no earnest attempt to check the advance of the troops. It was probably about this time that Custer was seen, by some members of Reno's command, on the bluffs waving his hat, as reported by Lieutenant Wallace to General Terry.

A little later the Indians in opposition rapidly increased in numbers, and with a brisk rifle fire they dashed mounted toward the foothills, when the Indian scouts on the left flank of the squadron ignominiously fled. In his report Reno says of this period of the action, that he saw he was being drawn into some trap and was satisfied that the enemy would fight harder as he neared the village, which was still standing. "I could not see Custer or any other support, and at the same time the very earth seemed to grow Indians. They were running towards me in swarms and from all directions." He adds that he saw that he must defend himself, "and give up the attack mounted. This I did."

When the hostiles moved around the left flank of the squadron and the *Ree* scouts fled, Reno's left fell back until the command found itself on the defensive in the timber, dismounted behind the bank of a former bed of the river. While from Reno's report it might be inferred that he ordered his men to assume this new attitude, I did not learn that he exercised any influence in bringing the change about, unless, indeed, through lack of aggressive and controlling leadership, he allowed his troops to slip from the offensive to the defensive. Thus far he had none killed, and only one man wounded.*

*Reno gave up the attack without the loss of a single man, except one wounded. I doubt if Reno had ever before seen a hostile Indian; he certainly had not been in any campaign with the Seventh Cavalry. Scout Herendeen, McClernand's old friend, in a letter dated January 4, 1878, and published in the *New York Herald*, January 22, stated: "The number of Indians that attacked Reno's command on the flat on the 25th of June could not have exceeded two hundred warriors." This reminds me of the story of Lieut. S. M. Robbins, commanding Troop D, Seventh Cavalry, detailed as escort of a wagon train going to Fort Wallace for supplies. Not feeling well, he was riding in an ambulance. The

The timbered area was too large for a force as small as a squadron of three small troops to hold indefinitely, but it was a strong position and one in which Reno might have maintained himself for a considerable period, possibly several hours. How long he actually remained there is uncertain. Some said a few minutes, while others thought about an hour. The hostiles had him nearly surrounded, but nevertheless while he remained in the woods his casualties were few. George Herendeen, the scout, who was with him, told me that Reno's nervousness was evident and that it excited and stampeded his men. His incapacity to command was commencing to manifest itself. A man was killed close to him and he decided to leave the timber and get to the bluffs. He (Herendeen) said Reno gave the order to mount and that before the troopers were fairly in their saddles he countermanded that order and directed them to dismount, and again commanded "mount" about the time they were reaching the ground; that his excitability imposed itself on the men, and that the retreat that started in column, quickly degenerated into a mad race for the bluffs, in which, it seems, Reno led.

The Indians were encouraged when the fire slackened as the men started to mount, and doubtless the movement was visible between the trees to some of them, who then commenced to close in and fight more actively. Again Reno's orders were not heard by all of the members of the squadron; many did not start to mount until they saw other comrades departing, making it necessary for them to hurry to catch up and this only added to the confusion. At it was, a small number remained concealed in the woods until the Indians left and then came out, while four actually remained there until the night of the 26-27th.

The enemy pushed close up to the column as Reno tried to regain the bluffs east of the river, and thus cut off the possibility of retreat to the ford where he had entered the valley. In fact the dead men and horses lying along the line of retreat as we passed with Wallace and Hare, showed plainly that the flying troopers just skirted the timber. This may or may not have been Reno's intention. I am forced to the opinion that he did not give the matter much thought, but was controlled by a wild desire to reach the hills in order to get away if possible, from the foe. He made a dash for a pony trail leading

train was attacked by Indians. The driver yelled "Indians! Indians!!" Robbins got out of the ambulance, surveyed the situation and said: "Huh! Must be two or three hundred of them." The driver leaped from his seat and cried out, "Two or three hundred! My God, if there's one there's a million of 'em!"

The point is to compare Herendeen's statistics with those of some other writers of later times. Herendeen had been with the "Bozeman Gold Hunting Expedition" a year or two previous which was pursued and repeatedly attacked by the Sioux until the expedition was compelled to abandon the country, the same region where the military operations in 1876 took place. Reno's strength, as near as I can make out from the muster rolls of Troops A, G and M, was about 140. All men of Troops A and M had nine months or more of service, having had no recruits since October, 1875. G Troop received twenty recruits in April, and had twenty absentees at the supply camp.—E. S. GOSNEY.

up a narrow ravine in his front to the top of the bluffs. On reaching the stream he plunged in, crossed, and hastened up the ravine to the top.

It was fortunate indeed that he happened to find such a ravine in his front, for the bluffs generally were too precipitous to be climbed under the fire of the rapidly pursuing enemy. As it was, it must be considered remarkable that the majority of the command escaped, for while the little river offered but slight difficulty to crossing almost anywhere, the squadron by the time it was reached, had lost all semblance of organization. There does not appear to have been any organized resistance during this disorderly retreat, although it is understood that a man here and there fired at the pursuers. In truth little could have been expected with such a leader. It was said that as Reno emptied his revolvers, he threw them away. A fine example to set to his men!

Death of Lieutenants McIntosh and Hodgson

Lieutenant Donald McIntosh was killed close to the edge of the woods, and his horribly mutilated body was identified as we passed. Dr. J. M. De Wolf fell while climbing the bluffs a short distance from the command. My classmate at West Point, Lieutenant B. H. Hodgson was wounded in the leg as his horse leaped into the ford and fell dead. Hodgson grasped the stirrup of a passing comrade and was pulled across the stream, only to be shot dead on reaching the farther bank.

Reno's casualties were now three officers, including Dr. De Wolf, and twenty-nine enlisted men and scouts killed; seven enlisted men wounded, and one officer, one interpreter and fourteen soldiers and scouts missing. Nearly all of the casualties occurred during the race for the hills. The Crow scouts remained with the command, but the Rees continued their flight to the Powder River supply camp.

As Reno's disorganized units regained the bluffs they had a breathing spell, for about this time the foe began to withdraw to meet, as it was later learned, Custer's onslaught. It may be too much to say that Custer prevented the annihilation of Reno's command at this period, but certainly his blow fell none too soon to prevent further disorganization and probably additional heavy losses. Had Reno shown a bolder spirit in the timber and greater confidence in his leader, he might at this moment from that position have changed the fortunes of the day; at least he might have saved Custer's command from annihilation without incurring his own. He left the woods at the worst possible time, both for himself and Custer. Even though the latter had not moved to his immediate support, he should have known that his Chief would strike soon. It was not in the nature of the man to turn his back to the foe, and a diversion on any part of the field would have contributed to his lieutenant's relief.

A short advance through the woods from the old bed of the river, would have enabled Reno to fully see the village into which a withering fire might have been poured while many of its defenders were confronting Custer, and

with a most demoralizing effect.

In point of time our narrative should now turn to Custer's fight to the death, but as lack of leadership on the part of his principal subordinate undoubtedly accounts in a large measure for his utter destruction, we will best understand what befell those whose bodies Gibbon found lying on the bleak hills, by continuing the story of the squadrons he (Custer) detached under others.

We have followed Reno to the top of the bluffs, and will leave him for a moment while his officers and men are busy bringing order out of chaos, with little or no assistance from their squadron commander, and turn to Benteen and his squadron. They had not yet appeared, nor had McDougall's troop with the packs.

Benteen's Movements

Not long after leaving the place where he gave his horses a drink, previously mentioned, Benteen met a sergeant bearing a message from Custer to the officer in charge of the pack train, directing him to hurry. Whether or not this incident prevented Benteen from following Reno's trail into the valley, the writer cannot say, but at all events he continued his march on the bluffs and was soon met by a trumpeter with an order signed by the Adjutant, Lieutenant W. W. Cooke, reading "Benteen, come on. Big village. Be quick. Bring packs," with a postscript saying to "bring packs."* The repetition of the instructions to bring the packs shows some not unnatural excitement on the part of the writer of the dispatch, and possibly on Custer's part, some emphasis about the probable need of the reserve ammunition on the pack mules. No information was given to Benteen about Reno's earlier report that he had everything in front of him, and that the enemy was strong. Custer had evidently given up the intention, if he ever had it, of giving immediate support to Reno and doubtless thought that all needed support would be afforded if the village be vigorously attacked at another point.

It is thought Custer should now have informed Reno that neither he, Benteen or McDougall, would give him the close support that he had a right to expect from the order previously cited, i. e. to move forward at as rapid a gait as he thought prudent, and charge the village afterward, and the whole outfit would support him. Possibly he reasoned that his (Custer's) contemplated early attack would answer every purpose, but if Reno had been told to expect no relief from the rear, that it would come elsewhere, he might have remained in the bottom longer, waiting for the attack that did a little later draw the foe from his front as he gained the bluffs.

The messenger to Benteen volunteered the erroneous information that the Indians had abandoned the village and "skedaddled." How he gained this idea I cannot say, but it probably reflected Custer's earlier optimism.

*Both Sergeant Knipe and Trumpeter Martin met Benteen a couple of miles before reaching the place where Custer diverged to the right.—E. S. GODFREY.

When met by the trumpeter, Benteen had been marching at a trot and walk, according as the ground was smooth or broken. If he had been informed promptly of the earlier order to Reno to charge the village and of that officer's report that he had everything in front of him and that the enemy was strong, he might have been able at times to hurry his march. He certainly would have been keenly alert for the sound of battle.*

In describing this period of the day, Godfrey says, "We now heard firing, first straggling shots, and as we advanced the engagement became more and more pronounced and appeared to be coming towards us," and adds, "the column took the gallop with pistols drawn to meet the enemy whom we thought Custer was driving before him, never suspecting that our forces had been defeated." As the two messengers from Custer had met Benteen we may infer that the latter was either on, or comparatively near to the route followed by the regimental commander, and that he (Benteen) had no thought that Reno was rushing into action, if not already engaged. Custer seems to have been singularly negligent in linking up his separate squadrons; in establishing team work. He apparently utterly underestimated the numbers, courage and mental abilities of his opponents, than whom no finer mounted infantry existed.

When the members of Benteen's squadron were able to look down into the valley of the Little Big Horn, they saw horsemen dashing about in clouds of dust. There was also smoke from the burning grass which the Indians had fired, possibly to help drive out the soldiers as well as to cover their own movements, and this by restricting vision, added to the confusion that began to envelop the members of Benteen's command. They saw a body of troops engaged on the bluffs to their right, but an engagement appeared to be going on in the valley too, although because of the distance, smoke and dust they

*It was the "sound of battle" that gave Captain Weir such concern that he urged Benteen to move out; Benteen, not heeding this urge, Weir came to me and asked me to go with him to urge Benteen to move. I told him I was only a lieutenant and probably would be told to mind my own business. Weir returned to his troop, paced nervously back and forth for awhile, then came to me and said, "well, I am going, anyway," mounted his troop and moved off, and a little later Benteen gave the order to mount and followed Weir, and from then Weir had the lead and set the gaits until we came to Reno's command on the bluff. I assume that the firing we heard at the watering place came with Reno's first contact, and the lull that followed was when he fell back to the timbered old river bed. It was after we crossed Reno Creek that we glimpsed the melee, or confused rapid riding of horsemen, but owing to smoke and dust, could not distinguish friend or foe. It was soon after this that I saw Half-Yellow-Face, Crow scout, with a few loose ponies, coming from the bluffs. I rode up to him and said: "Soldiers," and pointed to the valley and then to the bluffs. He faced to his right rear, pointed to the bluffs, and said: "Soldiers!" This information I communicated to Benteen. We ascended the bluffs and met Reno at the top. The firing had almost ceased. Soon after we halted we discovered some Indians sneaking up ravines dismounted. We opened fire and they disappeared, and all firing ceased. All units crossed "Sun Dance" or Reno Creek at the same ford; Custer diverged to the right soon after crossing.—E. S. GODFREY.



Reproduced by permission from a map loaned by Robert Bruce, New York

The point where Custer was last seen by members of Reno's command is indicated by A. This was also the farthest north reached by Reno's command, when it advanced from its first position on the bluffs, which was between words "Reno" and "Hill." The broken line leading along the bluffs from Reno Creek is Custer's route as traced by some authorities. General Godfrey believes that it was much farther away from the river. At B is where the troops of Keogh and Calhoun were dismounted to fight on foot. Near C were found the remains of some of the members of the troops of Captain Yates and Tom Custer, most of whom were killed on Custer Hill above. At D in the ravine, were found the remains of many of the men of Lieut. A. E. Smith's troop.

could not positively locate friends there. Godfrey says, "there was a short time of uncertainty" about the proper direction to take until several Crow scouts, who were driving a herd of ponies before them, came by and one of them motioned to the right and said "soldiers." Acting on this information they joined Reno's squadron, which was still firing. Reno having lost his hat, had a handkerchief tied around his head, and was plainly excited. Benteen's men formed a dismounted skirmish line on the edge of the bluffs, overlooking the valley. The Indians soon withdrew from the attack, and Reno stood still.



Courtesy of Mr. Robert Bruce
Captain Frederick W. Benteen

At the end of the Civil War, Captain Benteen was mustered out as a colonel of volunteers and was then appointed a captain of cavalry, which grade he held until 1882, when he was promoted to the grade of major.

Benteen was too good a soldier not to have informed Reno that but a short time before joining him he had received an order from Custer to come on and "be quick, bring packs." Reno himself had been ordered to charge the village, but he had not done so. Custer's instructions to his lieutenants indicated that he contemplated positive and aggressive action. So far as they were concerned he did not get it. No one who knew him could have doubted that he intended to push the fighting. Such was his nature. Not having supported his Chief in the valley, every rule of warfare dictated that

Reno should strike hard when he gained the top of the bluffs. He now had half of the regiment with him, and McDougall's troop coming on; in all seven troops against Custer's five. His own squadron was, it is true, badly shaken, but neither Benteen nor McDougall had been engaged. Reno stood still. His energy at the time went no further than to make a futile attempt to recover the body of Lieutenant Hodgson at the ford, and to fill a few canteens with water. Some of his officers looking down from the edge of the bluff at the large number of mounted warriors in the bottom below, observed that the enemy suddenly started down the valley, and that in a few minutes scarcely a horseman was left in sight. Reno's front was practically cleared of the enemy.

Among the officers on the bluff the question of "what's the matter with Custer, that he does not send word as to what we shall do?" was being asked. If Custer could have heard and replied we may imagine his saying, "I was counting on aggressive and helpful action from Reno, and but a short time ago Benteen was ordered to come on, to be quick, and to bring the packs. The extra ammunition as you know, is on the packs. You hear heavy firing in the direction in which I disappeared. You must know I am fighting. You know it is my rule to act quickly and vigorously in battle. You are my subordinates. Why do you not observe the spirit of my instructions and act?"

It is not sufficient to say that there was no serious doubt about Custer's being able to take care of himself. He had gone down stream with five troops; heavy firing was heard in that direction; it was evident that a fight was on, for neither Custer nor the Indians could be wasting ammunition by shooting at a mark, and yet Reno with six troops and another approaching, stood still, thus ignoring the well known military axiom to march to the sound of the guns.

Benteen's squadron was directed to divide its ammunition with Reno's. In view of the little firing Reno had done, this may not have been necessary, but the thought at least, should have impressed that officer with the significance of Custer's last order, to bring the packs and be quick. Was it not possible that Custer might need additional ammunition? Heavy firing was heard down the river, if not when the distribution of ammunition was made, at least soon after.

After Benteen had joined Reno, firing was heard for a long time in the direction Custer had gone. Godfrey says, "we were satisfied that Custer was fighting the Indians somewhere," and he adds, "we heard two distinct volleys which excited some surprise," and continuing, he says, "I have but little doubt now that these volleys were fired by Custer's orders as a sign of distress and to indicate where he was." Whether or not the volleys were construed by Reno as signals of distress, they did tell him that his Chief with fewer organizations than he had, was engaged in battle, and this at a time when the enemy had practically withdrawn from in front of his own position.

Captain Thomas B. Weir and his Lieutenant, W. S. Edgerly, after driving

away the comparatively few Indians in their front, became impatient at the delay, and the former started to get permission to move in the direction of the firing. The troop had in fact commenced the advance, when Weir observing a large number of the enemy move toward it, halted the movement, but he and Edgerly remained in the advanced position for a considerable period without serious molestation. The incident is only of importance here because it shows that some of Reno's officers appreciated the situation at its true value, and their duty to Custer. Weir saw the savages riding and firing over the field where later the Montana column found Custer and his dead.

McDougall now came up with his troop and the pack train, and reported the firing he had heard in the direction Custer had taken. There is fair reason to believe that this was near 4:20 P. M., and about the same time Scout George Herendeen and thirteen men, who had been unable to accompany Reno in his flight from the valley, rejoined the command. Several were wounded. As they were leaving the timber they repulsed an attack made by five Indians who fired upon them, but the mere fact that they were able to leave their cover, ford the river, and ascend the bluffs (dismounted for they had lost their horses) is quite good evidence that there was no serious opposition confronting Reno.*

It is Godfrey's recollection that Benteen joined Reno about half past two, and that it was about 5:00 P. M. when the latter finally decided to advance to the support of his Chief. Thus two and a half precious hours had been dawdled away, when time was the essence of the situation.

It may not be amiss here to go back a little and say that when Reno first entered the valley, there were immense herds of ponies grazing on the hills to the west. Little has been said in the printed accounts of the fight about these herds, but when we reached our lately besieged friends, I was much impressed by the various statements concerning them. It was said that as Reno's squadron moved down the valley from the ford where it first crossed, the Indians commenced driving the loose ponies down stream. This seems logical. I was told that the rapidly moving herds raised a great cloud of dust, and it occurred to me then that Custer doubtless saw from the high bluffs to the east of the river, this dust and fleeing ponies, and was further confirmed in his opinion that the Indians would not stand for a stiff fight. Is it possible that this sight caused Custer to be less cautious than he would otherwise have been in widely separating his own and Reno's squadrons, and may it in part explain his apparent indifference toward notifying his lieutenant that his support would be given, not in his immediate vicinity, but at considerable distance, out of sight, near the middle of the village and on the opposite side of the river?

*Reno had advanced not more than a half mile we saw the dismounted men crossing the valley. Reno halted the command and waited for them to rejoin. These men ascended the bluffs nearly a mile below us; then considerable time was consumed in mounting them.—E. S. GODFREY.

Reno advanced to a high point, from which he could see, through the dust-laden air, stationary groups of horsemen and also single horsemen moving about. These horsemen were in the direction from which the firing had been heard and where later Bradley found Custer's dead. The manner of grouping and the way in which the riders sat on their horses showed that they were Indians. Occasional shots were heard, some at a great distance. The observers concluded that Custer had been defeated, and that the distant shots were fired by his rear guard as he was driven from the field.

The firing last mentioned ceased, and Reno was now to pay dearly for not joining his Chief while the latter was fighting, for through clouds of dust the Indians converged toward the hesitating commander and once more, due entirely to his own inactivity, he was to fight without Custer's support. This piecemeal fighting fitted admirably into the plans of the savages—to first protect their families in the village, and then to overwhelm in succession the detachments of their enemy.

Reno now dismounted his command to fight on foot, but made no determined effort to oppose the foe before commencing to fall back. Again his order for withdrawal was not communicated to his entire command, for Godfrey says that while he was busy posting his men and giving directions about the use of ammunition, he "was a little startled by the remark that the command was out of sight," and apparently all the other troops except Weir's and French's had disappeared and the Indians were attacking them. Godfrey now received an order to rejoin the main command. I do not know whether Weir and French were similarly ordered, but after retiring some distance, Godfrey looked back and saw their troops coming back in hot haste, with Edgerly near the top of the bluff trying with difficulty to mount his excited horse, driven frantic by seeing the other horses rushing away.

The Indians opened fire from the top of the hill on the retreating troops, killing one man and wounding others, and then started in pursuit.

Besieged

The hasty withdrawal and close pursuit, if it had been unchecked, might have brought disaster to the entire command, but fortunately Godfrey properly appraised the situation, and dismounting his one troop, of Reno's seven, he opened fire, compelling the enemy to halt and take cover. He received a second order to rejoin, and slowly retreated, firing as he fell back. The enemy's fire was increasing and soon Indians began to appear from cover. Godfrey's men began to "bunch," slacken their fire and move faster; and to prevent their getting out of hand, he ordered a halt, required "intervals" to be re-taken, and the fire to be delivered with greater calmness. After once more forcing the Indians to take cover, he renewed the retreat and finally reached the main lines, the establishment of which must have been aided materially by his taking upon himself the checking of the pursuit.

Reno was now to have a taste of what his indecision or worse, had forced

upon the smaller detachment under his Chief, for the Indians soon surrounded him and by 7:00 o'clock he was fighting for his life. The enemy continued his fire until nearly dark, possibly to near half past eight or nine o'clock, for the days in Montana in June are long. "Everyone was wondering about Custer, the general opinion seemed to prevail that he had been defeated and driven down the river, where he would probably join General Terry and with whom he would return to our relief." The remaining members of the Seventh Cavalry evidently retained their faith in Custer's inherent aggressiveness, and the opinion expressed was also possibly an indirect compliment to Terry, for it assumed a disposition on his part to act, and not to imitate Reno in his hesitation to move to the relief of his regimental commander.

While darkness, with its accompanying cessation of the enemy's rifle fire, brought relief to our hard pressed friends, yet the Indians rendered the night hideous with the noise of their "tom-toms" and demoniacal yells.

Soon after darkness settled down an attempt was made to learn something of the five missing troops, but the scouts sent out for this purpose returned after a short absence and reported the surrounding country full of Sioux. Great confusion prevailed, and the wish being father to the thought, many imagined they could see or hear, relief columns approaching. It was even suggested that Crook was at hand. Stable and other familiar calls were sounded as signals for the supposed re-enforcements. As no relief came, the command went seriously to work to dig in. As only three or four shovels and spades were at hand, anything that would loosen dirt, such as hatchets, knives, tin cups, forks, etc., were used to construct rifle pits. This intrenching was still in progress when the enemy opened fire at early dawn on the 26th, probably soon after 3 o'clock. As dawn advanced to daylight, the firing became continuous on the part of both friend and foe. The horses and mules, more exposed than the men in their rifle pits, suffered severely.

The rear of Benteen's troop was exposed to long range fire from the hills to the north, and as the situation on his front was critical he went to Reno and asked for re-enforcements. The latter, running true to form, hesitated and delayed in his decision, but finally ordered Captain Thomas H. French with a troop to the other side. A little later Benteen charged and drove the Indians on his front nearly to the river.

A Counter Attack

The firing slackened for a time, but later recommenced with greater intensity. Benteen again went to Reno and said if something was not done the Indians would run into the lines, but as this statement failed to arouse his Chief, he added, "This won't do, you must drive them back." Thus urged, Reno directed that preparations be made for a charge, and told Benteen to give the word. This the latter did with vigor, and four troops went forward with a hurrah. The opposing Indians broke as soon as the charging line started. Benteen's attitude revived temporarily the old aggressiveness of his

subordinate officers and men, but when they had advanced about one hundred yards, Reno called out "get back men, back," and back they came.

As the day advanced and the heat of the sun increased, the thirst of the members of the command became maddening, for although a clear and sparkling river was near by, it could not be reached.

About 11:00 A. M. the enemy's fire slackened again, and parties were organized to get water. Several soldiers were wounded by shots from the nearby woods in the valley, but sufficient water was procured to meet the immediate needs of the members of the command. By one o'clock, the Indians, with the exception of some warriors apparently detached to guard the river, left Reno's immediate front, but at about two o'clock they came back and drove the besieged to their trenches. At 3:00 P. M. the firing ceased and was not renewed.

It is significant that the hour 11:00 A. M., when the enemy's fire slackened after their vigorous attack of the morning, is the same as that when the infantry of the Montana column joined its cavalry on the ridge overlooking the Little Big Horn and its valley. The united column was in plain view to any observer in the valley below the battle ground or through glasses from the bluffs near the village. Again the hour stated—about 2:00 o'clock—when they came back and drove Reno's men to their trenches, is but little later than when Terry halted for the long mid-day rest. Any Indian observing Terry's column would naturally delay a short time in order to determine what the halt meant; whether it was for a temporary rest, or to make camp, before riding off to report upon the subject.

Terry halted at about 1:00 P. M. The Indians renewed their attack for a short time at about 2:00 P. M. The difference in time between observing the halt, if it were observed, and the attack, may be explained by the possible difference in watches; by the fact that the time of the attack is not placed at 2:00 o'clock, but about that hour, and by the time it took the observer to report, if he did report. It does not seem reasonable to assume or believe, that the Indians were ignorant of Terry's advance after he appeared on the ridge overlooking the valley. To believe that they were, is to ascribe to the Sioux and their allies the most careless and indifferent observation imaginable. Such carelessness and disregard of the first principles of security and information were contrary to their nature and habitual practice. It is interesting to ask if Terry's halt encouraged the Indians in lessening their haste in getting away and in temporarily renewing their attack, thus giving their squaws more time for packing their tepees and property, or if other reasons dictated their action. The reader may judge for himself if the sight of Terry's column or Reno's defense when his men were driven to their trenches, about 2:00 P. M., caused the Indians to definitely discontinue their fire about 3:00 P. M., and prepare for the retreat that will be mentioned below.

Late in the afternoon our weary comrades on Reno Hill saw in the valley, a few horsemen who were apparently left in observation. The grass was set

on fire about 7:00 P. M., and through the smoke screen our friends saw an immense moving mass crossing the plateau, going toward the Big Horn Mountains. It was estimated that the moving mass was five or six miles away. Undoubtedly the "mass" mentioned was the retiring enemy seen by the Montana column at about the same hour, and at about the same or perhaps at a little less, distance, and reported by Muggins Taylor later as being Custer's command. Terry was now not much farther from Reno than from the "moving mass," for that night he bivouacked eight and three-quarters miles from the foot of the hill occupied by that officer, measured along our line of march followed the next day, but probably not more than six and three-quarter miles in an air line.

No effort, so far as known, was made during the night to inform the Department Commander of the situation, although it was surmised that Custer might have met Terry and that both were moving to the relief of the larger fraction of the former's regiment. It was during this night of June 26-27 that Lieutenant Charles C. De Rudio, Sergeant Thomas O'Neil, F. F. Girard, an interpreter, and a half breed scout named William Jackson, who had been left in the bottom when Reno made his dash for the hills on the 25th, and who in the meantime had concealed themselves in the brush, ascended the bluffs and entered Reno's lines. It would seem that their ability to do this would have suggested to Reno his plain duty to make strenuous efforts to communicate with Terry, supposed to be near with a command considerably smaller than the one Custer originally had, and inform him how roughly the larger detachment had been driven from the field, and the urgent necessity for him (Terry) to be on his guard. It would seem that even a proper regard for the interests of his own command would have dictated the propriety of such an earnest attempt, and his failure to do so can only be explained on the supposition that terror, aided by physical exhaustion, had paralyzed his faculties.

Reno as a Commander

The writer does not feel called upon to discuss the question of Reno's personal courage, but only to weigh his qualifications for an independent command. It is not unlikely that under the immediate supervision of Custer he would have performed his duties as a subordinate in a way that would not have invited comment, but the courage to follow is one thing, and that to lead, something very different. The first may dispense with all idea of responsibility for the movement about to be attempted, while the latter must assume it, and also demands a courage of convictions that is not to be shaken by the thought of the lives about to be sacrificed, or by the suggestions, always ready, of associates, that it might be well to delay, to side step as we say. It was in leadership that Custer's lieutenant seems to have failed, and that he had so failed and that Benteen was the man who stood between utter destruction and such safety as was found, was heard on all sides from his subordinates when



A Quartette of Indian Chiefs

Above—left, Gall; right, Two Moons. Below—left, Short Bull; right, Kicking Bear. Gall, Hunkpapa Sioux chief, took the most prominent part in the destruction of Custer's command, and is usually given credit for the Indian victory. Two Moons was head chief of the Northern Cheyennes, and participated in both the Rosebud fight and that of the Little Big Horn. He, with his band, surrendered to General Nelson A. Miles at Fort Keogh, Montana, April 22, 1877. Short Bull and Kicking Bear were at the Little Big Horn, but were not particularly noted at that time. They became so later by reason of their connection with the threatened uprising of 1890-91. Kicking Bear, a Minneconjou Sioux, initiated Sitting Bull into the mysteries of the Messianic Cult. As a result of his activity in this movement, Sitting Bull was killed while resisting arrest.

Terry arrived. Many of the criticisms heard were severe. Later, before the Court of Inquiry which followed, many were toned down.

Custer's Movements

We may now turn to the lost five troops found by Gibbon's chief of scouts on the morning of the 27th, and follow their movements as best we may from the mute evidence derived from the groupings of the dead bodies where they fell on the hillsides, and from the meager statements as I recall them, of their comrades with Reno, made on the morning of the 27th, and from statements written since by them and others.

It will be recalled that the Seventh Cavalry crossed the dividing ridge between the Rosebud and Little Big Horn rivers a little before noon on the 25th, and that shortly before this, Custer told his officers that the Indians had discovered their presence, and that although he had not intended to attack until the next morning, the 26th, the day Terry had promised to be on the Little Big Horn, their discovery made immediate action imperative. In the division of the regiment that was made soon after crossing the summit, Custer took five troops, Reno three, and Benteen three. McDougall took one, together presumably with the troopers detailed as packers and in addition a detachment of one non-commissioned officer and six men from each troop—that is, 84 men from the 12 troops. Recall that Benteen's squadron was ordered to the left, either apparently because Custer thought the village extended farther to his left than was the case, or on the supposition that the Indians would run up the valley and Benteen would be in position to head them off. Reno went in toward the burning tepee and the river while Custer with his squadron followed Reno closely, at the same time bearing to the right. Reno was told to attack and that the whole outfit would support him.

As previously stated, these instructions probably contemplated close support, and Reno so interpreted them. But, either because Custer thought it desirable to gain some distance to the right in order to intercept the enemy if, instead of trying to escape up stream he should run down the valley from Reno's assault, or because the nature of the terrain threw him farther to the right than he contemplated, the fact remains that his squadron became widely separated from the balance of the regiment, and he lost control over the greater portion of his command. If we accept the theory that he bore to the right with a view to intercepting the flight of the Indians down the valley, it is by no means necessary to conclude that he imagined such a wide interval would become necessary, for he probably did not foresee that the steepness of the bluffs below the point in the river towards which Reno was headed would be such as to prevent his (Custer) descending to the valley at a point comparatively nearby. However, his squadron bore off to the right and was lost to view, although he, with a companion or two, were seen by members of Reno's command later on the bluffs overlooking the valley. His actions and waving of his hat, seem to imply that he was encouraging to vigorous action.

Possibly, as previously stated, Custer was misled by seeing the vast pony herd being driven down stream along the plateau across the river and being thus further encouraged in the belief that the Indians would not stand to meet his attacks, was less cautious than he might otherwise have been. At all events, his command continued the down stream advance at a considerable distance back from the river.

The Fight on Custer Hill

When the battlefield was carefully gone over and studied by Gibbon's command and the remnants of the Seventh Cavalry, I cannot recall that there was any dissenting opinion about Custer's having descended from the bluffs by following down a large coulee that led to the river not far from the center of the village. If he entertained any intention to strike at the hostiles or their camp, when he reached this coulee it certainly invited him to descend, for it offered the first good opportunity for his command to reach the valley after it commenced to bear to the right from Reno's column. He did not reach the river but that he did enter the coulee and turn toward the river was shown by the positions of the dead, so that there is apparently only to decide whether or not the positions of the bodies marked the farthest advance toward the Little Big Horn.

Godfrey holds, after careful talks in after years with some of his previous enemies, that Custer was never nearer the river than the position on the ridge on which he was found, and I doubt if he was any nearer than where the extreme right of his small line rested, but I am still of the opinion that he was farther down the coulee than where we found the remains of Calhoun's and Keogh's troops. The trails I saw and the dispositions indicated by the positions of the dead men and horses, incline me to the belief that he went farther down this coulee with the intention of crossing, but was deterred therefrom by the Indians as they commenced to arrive in great numbers after having temporarily disposed of Reno. He then decided that he must withdraw slightly and take the best attainable position on the higher hills to his rear. The pressure of the arriving Indians on his left flank, as he moved toward the river—that is, up stream—nearest Reno's position—and who naturally arrived first, forced his now retiring column to his new left—that is, down stream—from the coulee marked as "Gall's Approach" on Godfrey's map, and he first halted and dismounted Calhoun's troop to hold them in check until he could place the balance of his command. This is apparent from the fact that nearly all the men and horses of this troop were killed here.

Apparently Calhoun's troop was not equal to the task imposed upon it, and he added Keogh's a little farther on. I am of the opinion that an appreciable interval of time must have elapsed between the order for Calhoun to fight on foot and the similar order given Keogh, for if they had been dismounted by the same command, then the dead led horses of the two troops would have been found closer together.

In his withdrawal, Custer moved his command between Calhoun's position and "Custer Hill"—that is, the knoll on which he died—and dismounting on it, deployed the major part of what remained of his command, as dismounted skirmishers along the ridge running from the said knoll toward the river, and most of the men turned their horses loose. Those near Custer killed theirs in a circle about 30 feet in diameter, which was not badly formed. Possibly at the same time, some of Smith's troop on the higher ground extended toward Keogh's position. These skirmishers towards the river were evidently told to turn their horses loose as no dead animals were lying along this line, although there were dead horses on their left toward Custer Hill.

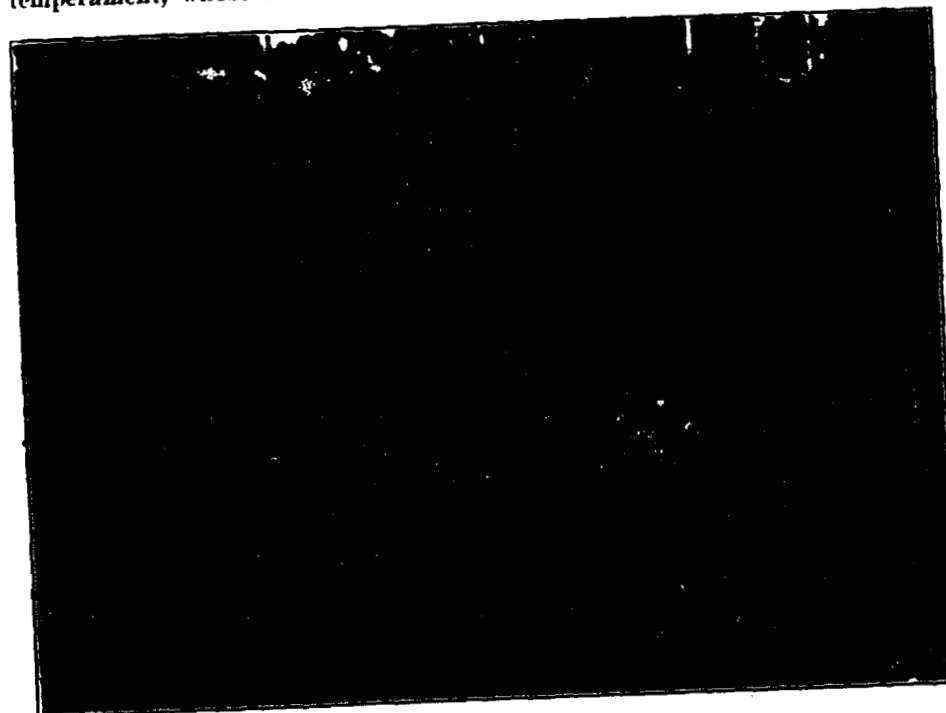
Evidently Custer, who, facing death had found himself and was thinking clearly and acting quickly, had decided that here they must fight to the death, or until Reno or Benteen brought relief. The position taken was the best obtainable. The line he established on the ridge mentioned, running from this position toward the river showed more care taken in deploying and placing the men than, in my opinion, was shown on any other part of the entire field, including of course, Reno's several positions.

The intervals between the dead skirmishers were remarkably regular—so regular that the deployment of the line must have had the close supervision of some officer. My recollection is that the body of no officer was found on this line, which I do not understand. It is possible that officers were originally with the men there, but were among the last to survive, and in the end joined Custer and others on the knoll. At the lower end of the line—toward the river—in a deep coulee, slightly to the front and right of the line of skirmishers, a number of bodies, twenty-eight I believe, were found. They belonged to Smith's and other troops originally placed farther to the left. I am of the opinion that these men were at one time at the right of the skirmish line, having been sent there as they drifted to Custer's knoll from Smith's and other troops to the left, and when the end was approaching, as they were farthest from Custer, or the living controlling force on the knoll, they broke from the skirmish line in the hope of escaping observation in the deep coulee.

Calhoun's troop practically, if not entirely, died where placed on the left of the line. Keogh himself was found about midway between Calhoun's position and Custer's, and considerably nearer Custer Hill than where the troop dismounted. This does not necessarily imply that the troop broke and stampeded to Custer. I am inclined to think that when the latter had established himself, he ordered Keogh and what was left of his troop to come here, and it is not unlikely that he shifted the remnants of Smith's troop at the same time.

A dead horse about 100 or 150 feet, more or less, from Custer Hill in the direction of Keogh's and Calhoun's positions, was pointed out to me as the animal ridden by Custer. The animal fell with his head towards the knoll, and from the position of his legs I judge that he was traveling rapidly when he fell. If it was Custer's horse, which I have no reason to doubt, Custer was

evidently making for the knoll when his mount was shot, and it occurred to me at the time that the loss of his horse might have determined Custer to stand on the said knoll and mentioned ridge when he gained them, instead of trying to gain the still higher hills farther toward the divide. I do not say that such was the case, for it is probable that the pressure of the Indians was already too great to permit of a retreat much longer prolonged, or further delay in establishing a firing line, especially to a man of Custer's aggressive temperament, whose custom had always been to throw himself upon his foe



A Mule Litter

Litters of this kind were improvised after the battle of the Little Big Horn when it was ascertained that the transportation of the wounded to the Far West by hand litter was impracticable.

like a hound on a rabbit. The thought at least suggests itself. He was dismounted, and doubtless many of his men also; the enemy was pressing, and here was a position on which they could stand and strike back, probably without hope of victory, but at least with the possibility of holding on until Reno or Benteen came, or of dying like brave men.

Around Custer, thirty or forty men fell, some of whom evidently had used their dead horses as a breastwork. Several officers were lying near him. On this part of the field the mutilation of the dead was comparatively slight.

I think no thoughtful and unprejudiced man could have examined the last

positions held by Custer as marked by the dead, without being convinced that he was thinking clearly, fast and courageously. I said to myself, as did others doubtless, "here a hero died." That his was the spirit of battle seemed clear from those who choose to die on the knoll with him. Undoubtedly other brave men died on the knoll, but to my mind at least it seemed clear that Custer was the strong man whose support was sought as the shadow of death was quickly closing down upon those heroes of the Seventh Cavalry.

To return to our own activities, the next day was passed in burying the dead, bringing the wounded down to camp from Reno Hill and making hand litters for their transportation.

As we had but a few spades, the burial of the dead was more of a pretence than a reality. A number were simply covered with sage brush. Yet we did our best.

At 6:30 P. M. on the 28th, the hand litters being finished, the command was put in march for the mouth of the Little Big Horn, where the *Far West* was supposed to be, but the difficulty of carrying the wounded by hand was so great, that although the march was continued until near midnight, we only covered a little over four and one-half miles.

The inefficiency of hand litters having been demonstrated, the next day, June 29th, was spent in constructing mule litters. The credit for these, which worked well, is due to Captain G. C. Doane of the Second Cavalry.

The hide was taken from dead animals, cut into strips or ropes, and tied to two poles about 22 feet long. The ropes were placed sufficiently close to make a comfortable bed when covered with blankets, and were long enough to permit a pole to be fastened to either side of a saddle placed on a mule. These shafts, if I may so call them, were then hitched in front to one mule and in rear to another, and a wounded man carried between.

At five o'clock P. M. we again started for the boat. The night was dark, the road unknown and the care of the wounded a difficult task.

When the Big Horn was reached, we found ourselves on a high plateau, and were at loss to find a way to descend. Finally fires were started in a gully, and by this light the wounded were taken down and at 1:30 A. M. placed on the boat.

The command followed to the banks of the river, and, tired out, each man threw himself down to sleep. I was one of the last to leave the bluff, and on reaching the bottom my horse in the darkness, struck a man lying on the ground a pretty hard blow with his foot. Whoever he was he did not seem to like it, and said he hoped that blank—blank fool riding that horse would stumble next time into the river. I did not join him in his wish, but considering his provocation, made no reply and quietly stole away.

[to be concluded]

The Race to the Sea

(Excerpts from Notes made during the first months of 1914, by Captain de Cosse-Brissac, 15th Chasseurs) Translated from *Revue de Cavalerie*

By

Captain ROYDEN WILLIAMSON, Cavalry, D. O. L.

Immediately after the Battle of the Marne and the approximate stabilisation of the fronts between the opposing armies north of the Aisne, the French High Command aimed to envelop with all its available forces the enemy's right wing.

It engaged in this maneuver the greater part of its cavalry divisions. To these fell the role of covering the armies which were successively assembled as the front was prolonged from the Somme to the sea; then that of establishing contact with the German advance guards seeking to outdo them in speed in order to prevent this turning movement.

In the notes that follow, made from day to day by its commander, we see how a squadron of chasseurs of the 5th Cavalry Division was employed in its various missions as it participated in the extensive strategic maneuver known as "The Race to the Sea."

With this squadron we shall follow the vicissitudes of the struggle between the advance guards during the various phases of this war of movement in which the French cavalry performed prodigies of achievement, ruining unsparingly its effectives in order to facilitate the deployment of the French and British Armies on the terrain where they formed an impenetrable barrier to the invader.

Maps: Amiens, Lille, Dunkerque, 1-200,000

Amiens, Arras, Cambrai, Douai, Lille, Dunkerque, 1-80,000

I.

Operations north of the Somme, September 25th-October 3rd. Combats at Bapaume, September 26th; Monchy le Preux, October 1st; Arras, October 2nd.

SINCE break of day, reconnaissances have been operating toward Bapaume where some German patrols have been reported. At 9:00 A. M. the Division assembled on the east bank of the Ancre. It is going to move to Peronne and, if possible, to reoccupy the bridges there. I have the mission of protecting with my squadron the left flank of the Division during its march.

While I am reconnoitering Morval, the main body reaches Le Forest. No enemy in Morval, but toward Lesbenfs a patrol of German cavalry. I open fire at 1500 meters and it withdraws rapidly, less some of its troopers brought down by our shots. Almost everywhere, toward Gergicourt, Sailly-Saillisel, on the road from Peronne to Bapaume, machine guns and rifle shots are heard. These indicate isolated engagements between reconnoitering parties and patrols of the two armies.

Toward 3:00 P. M. I receive orders to rejoin my regiment in the vicinity of Le Priez Farm. The artillery of the Division is in position there, interdicting access to the Peronne road and sweeping the edges of the Bois de St. Pierre-Vaast. The German artillery is retaliating in its turn on the same road; it is shelling with shrapnel Colonel Robillot's brigade, which is making an uncovered movement. But the German fuses are poorly set and produce but little effect.

We have an impression that other German forces are coming into line north of those that last evening seized Peronne. Everywhere we have met with resistance; it has been impossible to force the screen of the enemy's covering forces and we already have encountered numerous batteries which seem to be opening the way for the hostile advance guards.

This evening we are quartered in Combles. Our squadron mess is installed in the house of some excellent people who are overjoyed to receive us. The family consists of an infirm old man, his daughter and granddaughter, the latter about 20 years of age. She left Combles at the end of August at the moment of the first passage of the Germans and she is persuaded, her parents as well, that the invader will never be seen again. That evening we, too, shared her optimism.

Some important forces are arriving; we are convinced that a skillful maneuver against the enemy's flank will drive him away. Alas! the next morning at the first hour, the reality was to open our eyes.

September 26th. Scarcely, in fact, had we left Combles at 7:00 A. M. when shells began falling on the border of the Bois des Bouteaux, 1 kilometer west of that locality. What has become of our poor hosts whose home the enemy entered so soon after our departure? We proceed to a position between Guillemont and Longueval where dispositions are made to defend the edges of the woods.

Toward noon the infantry arrives. And in what numbers! On all the roads leading from the west, are seen its columns in long ribbons. As soon as they have passed us, a new mission is reserved for us which we soon receive. The 5th Cavalry Division passes under the orders of General Conneau who takes command of the Cavalry Corps. The 10th Cavalry Division, General de Contades, joins us. The corps must with all speed locate the extremity of the German right wing and turn it. Our distant objectives are Bapaume and Cambrai; we take up the march at once.

I despatch a reconnaissance toward Morval where we were yesterday. An hour later it rejoins me. Lieutenant Bardet, who accompanied it, was able by crawling to approach Morval unseen. He arrived just as many howitzer batteries were going into position. This information indicates that this locality would become one of the pivots of the impending battle. New intelligence in the same vein is soon brought in by Captain de Chalaïn who, with two squadrons, has been determining some other important points near Bapaume.

A big action is already opening between Baucourt and Riencourt-les-Bapaume. Some territorial divisions commanded by General Brugere are resisting the enemy's drive as he attacks in force along the Cambrai road. Our horse artillery intervened toward the end of the day, and we held the Cambrai road between Bapaume and Fremicourt until 10:00 A. M. in order to allow some very hard pressed divisions to withdraw in good order.

Now it is our turn to leave. The Germans, in an impetuous dash, have broken the last barriers, the ultimate territorial units having been obliged to give way. With their retreat assured, our mission is ended; we have been called back on Puisieux-au-Mont.

September 27th. What a weary night march! A time of uncertain steps, long halts due to the many moving columns of infantry and convoys using our road. In spite of the fatigue, unalterable good humor obtains everywhere. For trials but stimulate French wit. It sparkles even in the most tragic moments. One flog, which has since become famous, was for the first time heard that night.

"What regiment's that?" our troopers ask in passing a column.

A voice in the darkness, followed by a bellow replies:

"We're the terrible bulls."

This epithet became legendary. The territorials acquired the name that night by the voice of one of their own men.

At 6:00 A. M. we arrive at Puisieux-au-Mont and leave again at 8:00 A. M., retracing a part of our way, for we have orders to move on Achiet-le-Grand to guard the Arras line.

I had to abandon some horses at Puisieux. These marches are ruining our effectives. My squadron now numbers but fifty-seven men mounted. Some horses have such saddle galls that they are becoming unserviceable. Their appearance is awful and they leave behind them such a putrid odor, that it makes us all sick.

The German's impenetrable covering screen behind which their masses prepare their offensive movements, is continually being prolonged northward before our front. Reconnaissances and patrols cannot pass; they are stopped by posts skillfully concealed in the borders of woods or in the neighborhood of road crossings. Machine guns interdict the surroundings, and in the intervals which appear to be free, great detachments of cavalry suddenly reveal themselves. Their tactics are simple; they fall back before us, enticing our horsemen into ambushes prepared in advance, whence these are fired at and whence they never return. As for the enemy cavalymen, on the other hand, there is never any isolated aggression. The German offensive occurs only in masses, with very powerful means of action, at a time selected by their command. The principal indication of this, is the engagement in action of the guns. They begin to be heard at nightfall near Achiet-le-Grand, but the energetic *riposte* of our batteries silenced them. The day for the decisive attack at that point has not yet arrived.

That evening we occupy with great vigilance the outposts near Douchy-les-Ayette. This, however, does not keep our young folks from exchanging jokes with the troops returning to our lines:

"Hey! you fellows, are you regulars or reservists?"

"Have you seen any Boches?"

"Have you killed many of 'em?"

"Are they very handsome?"

Such is the sort of questions launched by them in the darkness. Replies anonymous, sometimes ironic, sometimes bitter, according to the mentalities of those who make them, excite their hilarity. We don't mind this by-play; it serves to keep the men awake.

September 28th. The exploration continues to extend ever northward, as far as the outskirts of the railroad to Boiry St. Martin and Boislens-au-Mont. For my squadron patrol duty, I have sent parts of it in all directions and remain almost alone. But here comes important news. A man comes to us from the vicinity of Cambrai. He had been taken prisoner by the Germans and locked up in the old barracks of the 4th Cuirassiers in that town. With two of his fellow citizens he managed to escape, gained Douai and returned to us. During the night of his evasion he saw great quantities of artillery passing through the city toward Bapaume. Cambrai is thronged with troops of all arms, having detrained there. North of the city the Germans are digging trenches as far as Ain-le-Noble. In all probability they are keeping some sad surprises in store for us in that quarter.

By the end of the day we were all reunited, squadron and regiment, at Neuville-Vitasse. Dinners, even though taken at a late hour, vary between 9:00 p. m. and midnight; they are truly a moment of relaxation after the tension of such long, hard days. As on hunting nights, each of us recounts his prowess. The operations in which we are taking part afford many occasions to the lieutenants for independent action. The intimacy of meals in the mess encourage the recital of their adventures. Today, Lieutenant de Gasset paid the Germans in their own coin. He found himself with a small detachment in sight of a German squadron. Allowing himself to be pursued, he led it on to some troopers whom he had carefully hidden in a beet field. Some well adjusted volleys threw this squadron into frightful disorder and the survivors quickly disappeared. By the account of this exploit, we were greatly diverted.

September 29th. A rainy, monotonous day, passed in long waits in the fields. In reserve until evening, we then returned to our cantonments of the previous day.

September 30th. Resumption of the movement northward. Some reconnaissances, commanded by Lieutenants de Bourmont and Gillois, are sent north of the Scarpe, on the forward road from Cambrai, Arleux and the Sensee canal. They could not gain their objectives, and returned that evening after a thousand experiences, encounters, and exchange of shots with hostile patrols hidden in posts cunningly dissimulated, pursued by whole squadrons which are jealously watching the terrain. Ever the impenetrable screen!

We must now guard the passages of the Scarpe. With my squadron I am, at 10:00 a. m., at Pelves. There I remain all day. Some inhabitants inform me of a singular incident: During the morning two British officers crossed

Pelves, asking in several places if English troops had been seen. Their inquiries completed, they left in the direction of Hamblain. Near a mill, some troopers, suspected of being German cavalymen, were awaiting them. Then, nothing more, they having mysteriously disappeared upon our approach.

That evening we learn that the 27th Dragoons had encountered the evening before, the 28th, a serious check at Courcelles-le-Conde. Directed to occupy that village, in which the enemy was reported, the regiment advanced in line of skirmishers, the colonel leading, but with no careful reconnaissance or artillery preparation. A machine gun concealed in the church tower suddenly opened fire and literally riddled the attack. Many were killed or wounded. The case was cited of a young subaltern recently graduated from St. Cyr who was one of the first victims. He had joined the regiment that noon, was immediately assigned to the command of a platoon and at 1:00 p. m. he was killed. He was, alas, the son of my major who, but a few days before, had been rejoicing at having him soon join us at the front.

October 1st. All night and this entire day we have been in Pelves. From the first hour of the morning, however, a strong cannonading has been going on in the direction of Douai. Is it a French or a German attack? We cannot tell. Toward 3:00 p. m. some squadrons of the 5th Chasseurs arrived in the Bois du Sart and reconnoitered some movements of the enemy reported in the direction of Boiry-Notre Dame. We reinforce our posts. At 5:00 a. m. a hot fusillade, accompanied by shouts and hurrahs, is heard on the side of Monchy-le-Preux. Some bullets even fall on the roofs of the first houses of Pelves. The Germans, under cover, had arrived on the edge of Monchy-le-Preux and were attempting to carry it in a brusque attack. The infantry regiment occupying it resists energetically.

Unfortunately we were ignorant then of the liaison of all arms which later came to be usual; and we knew nothing of what was taking place 3 kilometers away. We are at the mercy of erroneous information, and our posts, which had been seeing some small infantry groups retire, told us that Monchy-le-Preux was taken. In these circumstances our situation in Pelves is critical. If the enemy sweeps north of Monchy, the bridge at Roeux, the only one by which we can fall back, will be taken under the enemy's fire. The command must have considered our situation at Pelves accordingly, for at 7:00 a. m. an order arrives for us to cross to the left bank of the Scarpe. By following the towpath of the canal, that I had had reconnoitered during the day, we arrive at the bridge at Roeux in a few minutes. There, new orders. The regiment goes to Freanes-les-Montauban. My squadron is to occupy the outposts at Vitry-en-Artois.

With a few cyclists at my disposal, I form an advance guard. By night they can advance rapidly and silently, dropping at the least alarm into a ditch and sending back word without delay. Near Plouvain one of my cyclists returns. He has heard German being spoken near a mill and declares

he has seen armed men. As I want to be certain, I send him back again. Some mounted men move forward and soon bring in two young persons. They are of Plouvain and had gone out, they said, to see the fires started through the countryside by the enemy. A singular and culpable distraction! I admonish them and have them conducted home.

We cross Plouvain and Biache without difficulty. An absolute silence reigns, our march favored by magnificent moonlight. I direct the advance guard to reconnoiter the exits of Vitry-en-Artois, for we cannot venture blindly into this agglomeration of structures. Some detonations startle the night. Lieutenant de Gasset and his advance guard have run into barricades. The enemy holds Vitry.

We fall back on Biache where we occupy the bridges over the Scarpe and the canal, after having warned the regiment that it is impossible for us to enter Vitry-en-Artois.

October 2nd. All night on the *qui vive*. Some French patrols pass and re-pass through Biache. In all directions shots are heard. At 4:00 A. M. we are ordered to withdraw on Fampoux. There we find the remainder of the regiment, which had been obliged to evacuate Fresnes-en-Montauban in all haste. The enemy is advancing everywhere north of the Scarpe. Yesterday he occupied Douai, today he marches on Arras.

At Fampoux we recross to the right bank of the Scarpe. The entire Division is assembled there. Dispositions are made to fight on foot and we hold the crests between Fenchy and the Cambrai road.

The battle engages on a large front. Monchy-le-Preux has fallen; Beaurains, Tilloy are shattered by shell. It must be the same north of the Scarpe. The German heavy artillery scatters its great projectiles on Athies and the dismounted combatants of the 1st Cavalry Division. Solidly, we await the coming of the hostile infantry, but it does not appear yet. The precursory bombardment of our front lines prepares its coming. This shelling is intense and our frail covering force will not hold long, unless we are promptly succored. Happily, by the end of the day, important infantry reinforcements arrive from Arras, relieving us on our positions, positions destined to mark the front until the last months of the war.

In the night we regain our horses. They are carrying us to the rear in order to move northward the next day. The traversing of Arras at midnight is lugubrious. It is a desert, the feet of our horses resounding on the pavement, covering the sound of distant explosions of big shells which fall nearer and nearer the city.

Another atrocious march! After several nights without sleep, it is impossible to keep awake. One feels as if taken by an invincible vertigo, losing the notion of existence until one wonders how one managed in such moments to retain one's seat in the saddle.

Toward 2:00 A. M. we reach Noyelles. There rations await us. It

requires all the energy of officers and non-commissioned officers to supervise the issues. The men are all in, but, cost what it may, we oblige them to make a meal, else they would sink on the ground without eating. Amenable, however, to the orders of their leaders, they obey without a murmur. These duties fulfilled, we, in our turn, take a quick repast, and then a very short repose.

II.

In the mining basin of Lens—Combats about Lens—Entry into line of the 21st Army Corps, October 6th—Combats on the Lys—New and Old Berquin—La Gorgue—Covering the British Army—Combats of Fosse—Merville—Sailly sur la Lys—Withdrawal of the German Army before the British.

October 3rd. At 11 o'clock in the morning the Division is at Loos. General de Mitry reviews us. He has just been assigned to command a second cavalry corps, to which the Division is attached. He is surprised at our distressing condition, horses broken down, packs poorly made, clothing dirty, shakos broken in, all this sorry equipment the consequence of several weeks without a rest, but for which we are not to be blamed. A long halt this afternoon between Loos and Lens. Only the reconnoitering parties are working. One of these I sent toward Pont-a-Vendin; it returns late in the evening with important information: three enemy batteries of artillery have arrived late this afternoon and went into cantonment at Pont-a-Vendin where they are poorly guarded. The *maréchal des logis* who made this reconnaissance succeeded in reaching close to where they are parked. He received several shots as he was leaving, but with all his troopers got away along the railway track under cover of the darkness without being disturbed.

The sum of the information received by the end of the day, confirms the estimate that the enemy is attacking on a very wide front, north and south of Lens. The 1st Cavalry Division, south of the 5th, reports that heavy columns are marching from Henin-Lietard on Billy-Montigny. Before them the 70th Division, General Fayolle, is slowly falling back on Vimy.

October 4th. We have been passing the night in readiness in Mazingarbe. At the first hour, the light brigade marches as advance guard of the Division on Loison. A German post occupies the Loison railway station. From the last houses of the city of the Grand Conde my troopers open fire on this post. There is no reply. But upon leaving the town of Saint Auguste, the squadrons behind me come under fire of the batteries reported the evening before at Pont-a-Vendin. Their advance is halted, and I receive orders to turn back and hold the railway crossing west of Lens at the crossroads of the Bethune and La Bassée highways. While this action is going on, the enemy violently attacks the passages of the Canal de la Deule and the Lens railway station. These points are held by the cyclist group and the dragoons of the 3rd Brigade, who resist vigorously in spite of severe losses. But toward mid-day they are obliged to abandon Lens, the enemy having turned the city on the south and is marching on Lieven. Shells are falling on Loos on the Bethune road and on neighboring localities.

We withdraw on Bully-Grenay, where the artillery remained in position until the end of the day. Colonel Cochin, commanding the 16th Dragoons, was seriously wounded this morning in front of the Lens railway station, his regiment and the cyclists having been sorely tried.

It is a sorrowful sight, during our march in retreat, on this, as on all the roads to the west of Lens. A panic stricken crowd is rushing along, composed largely of people on foot carrying in bundles and on baby carriages, their most cherished possessions. Carriages, handcarts, and innumerable vehicles of all sorts overloaded with bedding and furniture, seized in haste from homes abandoned. Old people, the sick, the infirm are perched on these tottering loads. Others, less fortunate, are being carried in wheelbarrows. Shrapnel is bursting above this throng and creating terror. Women and children flee through the fields, stumbling and falling into ditches. Families are separated and little ones are abandoned. The scene is heartrending. Cursed be the barbarous people that have loosed this cruel war upon the world!

Night falls. Some groups of these poor folk stop in the fields beside the road; they seem to be stunned by Destiny, resigning themselves in advance to worse tribulations yet to come.

October 5th. From Barlin, where we passed the night, we again move onward. With my reduced squadron, for I now have but fifty men mounted, I am assigned as support to a battery of artillery which has the mission of interdicting access to the Bethune road. Having taken position at the exit of Noeux, this battery has been firing without interruption from 10:00 A. M. until 9:00 P. M. Thanks to it, the enemy has not been able to debouch from Aix-Noulette and cannot reach Petits Sains. The precision of its fire has inflicted severe damage upon him, all due to the initiative of Lieutenant de Gassart, my first lieutenant. Climbing to the top of a high factory chimney, he observed the fire with his glasses, while a telephonist at the base of the chimney transmitted to the battery commander his observations of the shots. Every movement made by the enemy was promptly noted, and each time a fraction attempted to engage on the road, it was at once dispersed by well directed salvos. Gassart returned to us delighted with his day, a day indeed well spent.

While the enemy has been stopped on the side of Neux-les-Mines, toward Bouvigny, to the south, serious engagements are taking place. A squadron of the 29th Dragoons has been almost completely destroyed there, its commander, Captain Claire, being killed. Charging in front of the enemy as foragers, mounted, they fell upon a line of skirmishers concealed in the vegetation. A few volleys at point blank range, turned this squadron into a frightful carnage.

By the end of the day, the 10th Cavalry Division had prolonged our line to the north, the enemy not having made any effort in that quarter.

October 6th. Still on advance guard duty. From Saily-Labourse where we passed several hours during the night, I am directed on Mazingarbe-les-Brebis. Impossible to cross the railway line, as it is occupied by some enemy

posts. Shots and skirmishes without results. Then a halt in a work pit under construction. I had never imagined the possibility of a war waged in the mining district, in the midst of the miners' houses, factories and spur tracks. Yet this is what is occurring today. Movements are difficult here, the circulation awkward, with ambushes lurking everywhere.

At 2:00 P. M. the entry into line of the 21st Corps is announced. Its artillery is already in action toward Bouvigny; in rear of us, entering Bully-Grenay, are some chasseur battalions, followed closely by batteries ready to co-operate in the artillery duel which is developing violently along the entire front. The mission of the cavalry here is finished. They are awaiting us with impatience farther north where the main forces of the German cavalry have been reported. It is imperative that the detraining of the British Army now going on in the region of Hazebrouck-Saint Omer, be covered at all costs.

October 7th. A night and a morning of rest at Annequin, 4 kilometers from Bethune. Via Vielle Chapelle we gain La Gorgue. At 10:00 P. M. I receive an order to send two platoons on outpost: one of them, commanded by the Sous-Lieutenant Saint Paul, is charged with occupying the railway station of Steenwerck; the other, under Lieutenant Gillois, goes to Erquinghem. I remain with only a few troopers, while to provide these two detachments I am obliged to use almost my entire squadron.

October 8th. The light brigade moves on Vieux-Berquin. Some important forces of German cavalry coming from Belgium are advancing north of the Lille-Hazebrouck railroad. Their scouts are already in contact with our reconnoitering parties on the railway line. Saint Paul, by rifle fire, has been holding them at a respectful distance all through the night and morning, but their numbers are growing; on the point of being overwhelmed he falls back on us as we arrive. Shots are heard on all sides; it is impossible to tell whence they come. And what can cavalry do formed in column on these narrow roadways bordered by ditches full of water that cross innumerable pastures?

After having been sent to establish the liaison at La Rue-du-Bois with the units of the 4th Cavalry Division, I rejoin my regiment for the night at La Gorgue. It is charged with holding the bridges of the Lys. I am guarding the bridge over the canal. These measures of security have been taken under the menace of large forces of infantry appearing behind the cavalry, and cost what it may it is necessary to stop the enemy on this natural cut. But our withdrawal leaves the field free to the enemy who advances as far as the Lys.

[to be concluded]

Chinese Cavalry Produce a Decisive Victory-- Defeat and Death of General Kuo Sun-Lin

By

Brigadier General HENRY J. REILLY, O. R. C.*

PICTURE a sandy plain, with groups of bushes here and there, ground and foliage covered by snow; sand and snow blowing in clouds which limit the sight to a few hundred yards, and an occasional vision of a thousand at the most. The thermometer is well below zero, Fahrenheit.

A hundred yards or so to the west, are the straggling buildings which mark the western edge of the town of Hsin Min-fu. Here and there to the north and south, small groups of individual infantry soldiers can occasionally be seen. Not more than a hundred yards to the west, is a column of field guns and caissons moving south. The horses have their heads down and the drivers are crouched in their saddles, both man and beast struggling to make headway against the bitter wind and the sand and snow which it carries into their faces. The cannoneers, stumbling alongside the carriages, from time to time have to grab the wheel spokes to help the horses pull the guns and caissons out of ruts and over minor ridges which obstruct their progress.

A Chinese colonel of field artillery, with a few of his staff officers, is talking to an American (the author), who, with a Chinese companion, is in civilian clothes. An occasional burst of machine gun fire, rifle shots here and there, and from time to time, reports of field guns and the screech of a shell, followed by the explosion, are heard. The heavy machine gun, infantry, and artillery fire which has persisted throughout the night, has died down. It is that period of relative calm which always follows a successful or unsuccessful attack, during which both sides readjust themselves to the new situation.

The attack of General Kuo Sun-lin's army on the troops of the Manchurian war lord, Marshal Chang Tso-lin, entrenched along the Liao Ho (River) about forty miles west of Mukden, had been stopped. During the late afternoon and early evening of the day before, they had captured the advanced positions, but by shortly after dawn had been held up everywhere in their assault on the main position just across the frozen river.

A Cavalry Coup

Suddenly, an increased number of pistol shots and yells are heard in the town of Hsin Min-fu, the streets of which are full of artillery and other trains of the troops to the immediate front. Around the corner of the nearest

*U. S. M. A., 1904; 2d, 13th, and 15th Regiments, U. S. Cavalry, 1904-14: Colonel, Commanding 149th F. A. and 83d Inf. Brigade, 1917-1919.

CHINESE CAVALRY PRODUCE A DECISIVE VICTORY 65

building suddenly emerges a young cavalry officer followed by his men, all at a gallop, with their pistols out. The blue cloths around their necks show them to be the enemy's cavalry. The officer and several of the men fire their pistols at a nearby group of mounted soldiers, who are hit, or, considering discretion the better part of valor, fall off their horses. Spying the Colonel with his group of officers, they turn quickly towards them. In a few jumps they surrounded the group while pointing their pistols at them.

At the same time other groups of galloping cavalry appear through the blowing snow and sand. Spying the moving artillery column, they soon surround and capture it. The artillerymen and officers, nearly frozen, worn



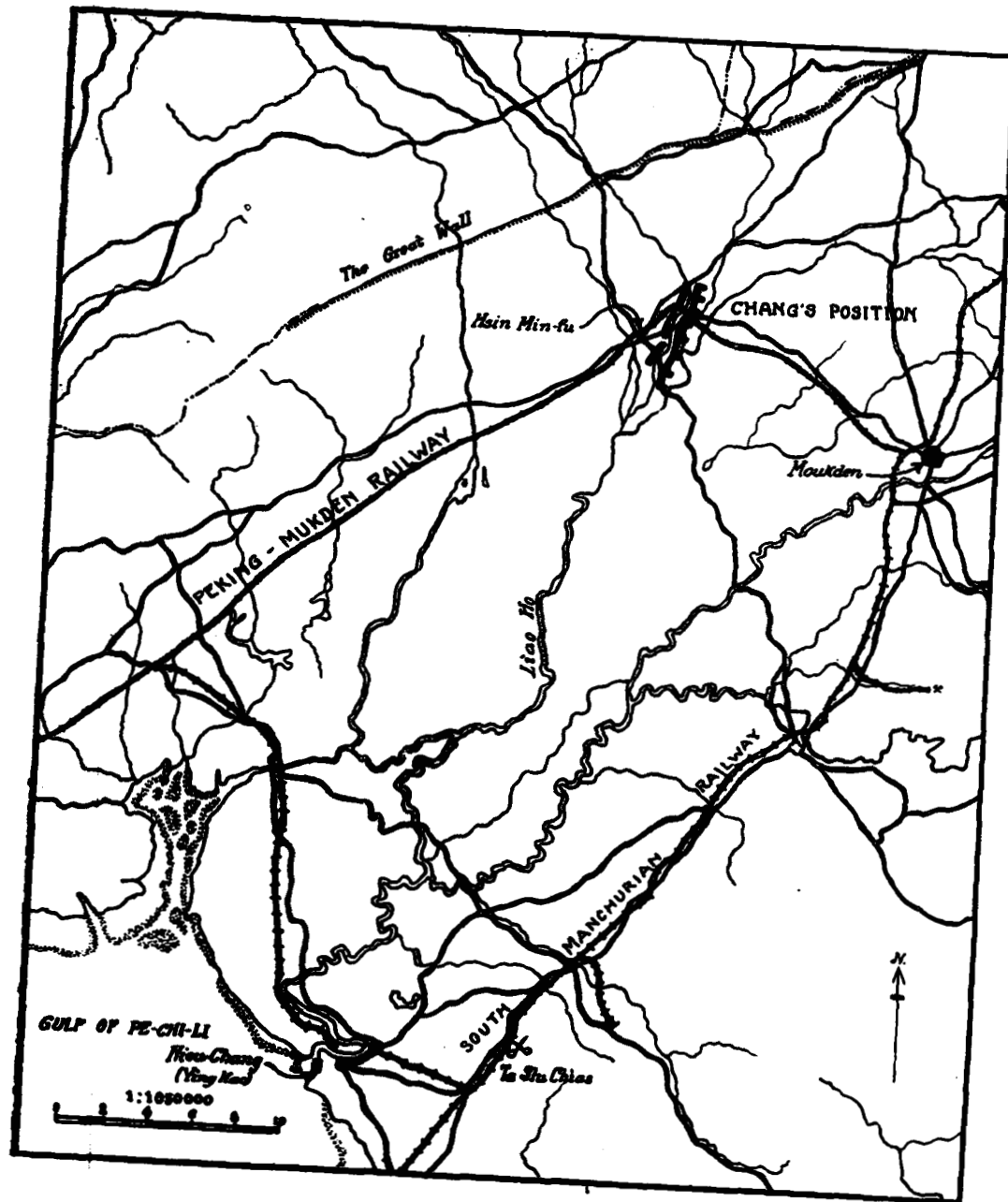
After the Charge

Enemy cavalry, mounted and dismounted, relieving the Colonel and the Adjutant of field artillery regiment, of maps, orders and arms.

out with several day's fighting and marching without shelter of any kind, and very little food, make virtually no resistance.*

Pistol and other shots, with yells here and there from parts of the battlefield out of sight because of the wind storm, indicate that similar scenes are taking place.

*The author after showing his American passport and having the Chinese interpreter who was with him tell the young officer that he was an American newspaper man merely there to see what a Chinese battle looked like, and stated that he would like to go to a nearby mission, which could be distinguished because of the Red Cross flag flying over its hospital, was turned loose when the cavalry went off with its prisoners.



What had happened? The same thing which has occurred again and again and again when true cavalry leaders followed by men and animals capable of surviving any hardship, have used their forces to fight and destroy the enemy, regardless of every other consideration. A negative victory which would have resulted in a period of stabilization, has been turned into a decisive victory which ends a campaign.

Kuo Sun-lin, with 80,000 infantry and 80 guns, and very little cavalry, had started to march from the neighborhood of Shanhaikwan where the Great Wall of China comes down to the Gulf of Pe-Chi-li north to drive Marshal Chang Tso-lin from his capital at Mukden and his control of Manchuria. After passing the head of the Gulf of Pe-Chi-li, he had planned to approach Mukden from the south along the line of the South Manchurian Railway. The population along this route is denser than that along any other line of approach, and their houses would have given him a good chance to shelter his men and animals, and to supplement the food and forage supplies which he could carry with him. Also, the country along this line is hilly here and there, affording some cover for troops in the maneuvering prior to, and during an attack.

However, the Japanese would not permit Kuo to cross into this territory. As they had greatly reinforced the railway troops always present, and as they plainly indicated that they would use force to keep him out, if necessary, he followed the line of the Peking-Mukden Railroad. The last 150 miles of this road runs over a barren plain north to Hsin Min-fu, at which town it turns east to Mukden, forty miles to the east.

Historic Terrain

About half way between Hsin Min-fu and Mukden, the Liao Ho, with several branches, flows south, ultimately to empty into the Gulf of Pe-Chi-li at Nieu-chang, now called Yingkiao. All this territory is historic. The outskirts of Nieu-chang were the scene, during the Russo-Japanese War, of the Russian General Mischenko's cavalry raid. The Japanese were given sufficient warning of this raid by the present Marshal Chang Tso-lin, then a leader in Japanese pay, of Hung-huzes, irregular Chinese cavalry.*

*While on leave from the Philippines in 1906, the author was permitted to visit Port Arthur and then the rear of the Japanese army. The Russo-Japanese War was then in its final stage. During his trip he met and spent some time with a Japanese who had grown a pigtail and lived for a number of years in Manchuria prior to the Russo-Japanese War. This young Japanese throughout the war had led a force apparently varying from 500 to several thousand, in raids far to the rear of the Russian army. Besides destroying some culverts and bridges on the railroad, he had made himself a decided pest by attacking wagon trains, small detachments, and the many other groups which exist in the rear of a large army, and which are necessary for its maintenance. His men, apparently, with the exception of a few Japanese officers and non-commissioned officers, who had also grown pigtails, were a mixture of Hung-huzes, Mongolians, and the other more or less wild mounted men found all over this part of the earth.

The plains around Hsin Min-fu were, in general, the scene of the flank attack made by General Nogi, with the troops which, after the surrender of Port Arthur, he brought north to take a successful part in the battle of Mukden.

Knowing that the Japanese would not permit General Kuo Sun-lin to enter the zone of the Southern Manchuria Railway, Marshal Chang Tso-lin entrenched his force just east of the Liao Ho, the center being at the point where the railway from Hsin Min-fu to Mukden crosses that river. This position, parallel to and not far from the eastern edge of the Japanese railway zone, insured his rear's being protected and left only a relatively small space on



A Battery Commander

With his detail, he is taking up an observation position just prior to action.

either flank in which troops could operate to turn them. To the west of the Liao Ho he prepared a first position, not strongly held, but designed to delay and break up the units of the attacking force.

Kuo's Plan of Battle

General Kuo's plan was based on the assumption that his force was sufficiently superior in numbers to that of the enemy, to enable him to attack their whole position from the front, thus pinning them down, while at the same time, his left and right flanks turned their flanks. While his force was superior in numbers, he underestimated the length of line which his opponents would entrench and would be able to hold, due to a considerable reinforcement

of machine guns and a number of batteries of field artillery unexpectedly obtained by them at the last moment. Also, Kuo's force was so deficient in cavalry strength that he did not have enough to thoroughly scout both flanks, much less resist any enemy cavalry which might appear. The few aviators with whom he had started, had either found some excuse to remain behind at one of the last camping points, or had flown to Mukden, Chang's headquarters, the place at which they were trained, and from which Kuo had taken them when he revolted from Chang Tso-lin some weeks before.

The attack of the infantry well supported by the field artillery, was successful in wiping out the first position. The attack on the second and main position was stopped by the fire coming from it. At this moment, a considerable force of Mukden cavalry turned Kuo's left or north flank and rear. The result of the cavalry attack, which was pushed home, was, that with the exception of some infantry and artillery on Kuo's right or south flank, which successfully retreated to the south, Kuo's entire force was killed, wounded, captured, or dispersed. He was captured and subsequently shot.

A Mongol Chieftan

Some of this cavalry belonged to the troops maintained by Marshal Chang Tso-lin in and around Mukden. The greater part of it came from Heilungking, the northern province of Manchuria, just south of the Amur River; and from along the more or less indefinite Mongolian-Manchurian frontier. It was commanded by the Tupan or Military Governor of Tsitsihar, a tough, typical old mounted soldier, who is a worthy descendant of Ghenghis Khan's conquering army.

Some days after the battle, when the "old man" had the opportunity, he gave a banquet at which a great many toasts were drunk. Amongst other things he said that the recent battle had proven what he had always maintained—that good cavalry animated by the spirit of Ghenghis Khan could always get the better of all these new-fangled contraptions, such as artillery, flying machines, armored trains, and all the other machinery which might be fine for men who really did not know how to fight, but could always be overcome by true, rough, fighting soldiers.

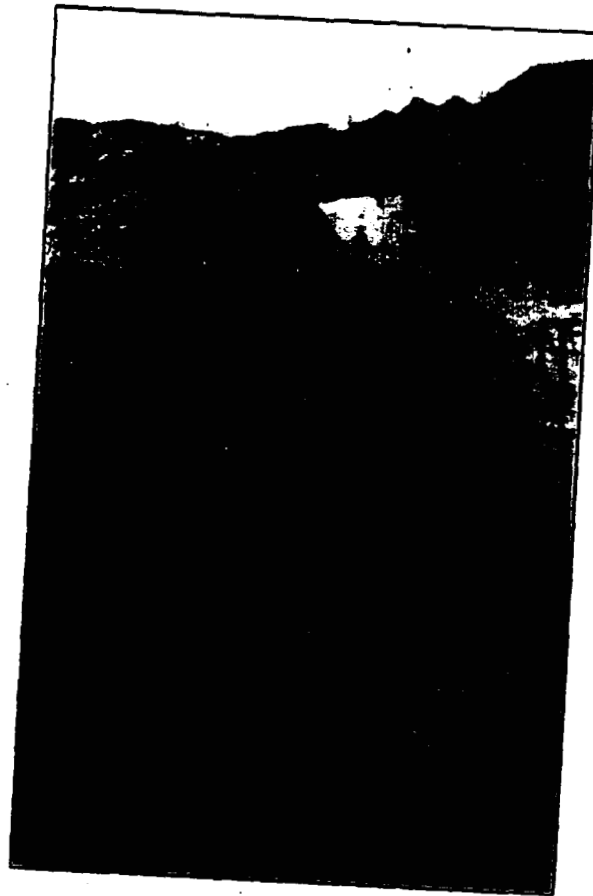
His force had come partially by rail and partially by marching from Tsitsihar, the capital from which he administered Heilungking. Where moved by rail, the horses were in open gondola cars; the men sometimes in box cars, but in many cases, also in gondola cars. While marching, both men and horses were in the open practically continuously. The only transportation available was that of country carts, requisitioned from peasants before starting out. Being of limited number and capacity, a relatively small amount of forage was carried.

Yet, all animals seen were full of energy and in first class spirits, many of them showing a disposition to get out of hand when at the gallop during the attack. As far as could be seen a considerable number were unshod. With

their long hair, uncared for forelocks, manes, tails, and fetlocks, the general appearance of the majority was that of wild horses recently caught.

The small horses or ponies of North China and Mongolia average from something over twelve hands to fourteen hands, with a weight around 700 pounds. Like our western broncho, they are inured to both excessive cold and heat, and know how to pick up a living where a well bred horse would be in grave difficulties.

The armament, as far as could be seen, consisted of a rifle for every man, an automatic pistol for all officers and a large proportion of the men, with



Transportation of Animals

Typical method of transportation by rail; no stalls, no shelter, and little or nothing under foot.

here and there an automatic rifle. Chinese troops everywhere take to the

automatic pistol and will always carry two if they can get them. Every general has a mounted body guard armed with automatic rifles as well as pistols.

Budenny and His Cavalry

The part played by the Manchurian cavalry in this campaign was as decisive as that of Sheridan's cavalry during the week which culminated in Appomattox. The success of the cavalry recalled to the author's mind the decisive part played by the Russian Cavalry General Budenny in bringing about the retreat of the Poles from the line of the Dnieper River in the summer of 1920. The subsequent decisive defeat on the Vistula led to the surrender or dispersal of the greater part of the Russian army. However, Budenny with his relatively small force of 20,000 continued to be such a thorn in the side of the Poles, that one of their best and most determined leaders, General Sikorski, whom the author accompanied, was sent out with a special command to capture him. Though Budenny delayed to make a final attack on Zamosc, he was too quick for the Poles, the greater part of whose force consisted of artillery and infantry. With his whole command, he escaped the trap set for him.

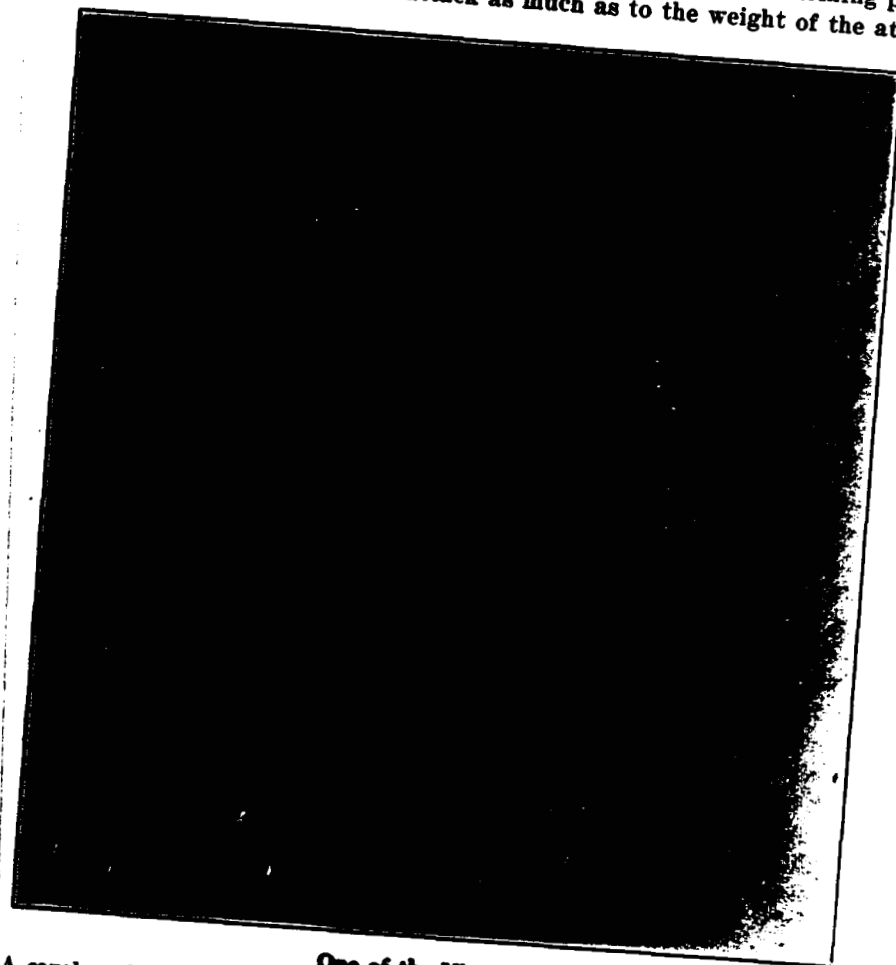
If Budenny, an illiterate sergeant of cavalry under the Czar's regime, and the Tupan of Heilungking, an equally illiterate, tough old Tartar, who fought his way to the top, could produce such results, each with a force of about 20,000, what vistas of future cavalry successes must open to cavalry leaders who have had the advantage of extensive military education, and a properly organized, armed, and equipped force, backed up by the resources of a first class power such as the United States.

As delighted as any cavalryman may well be with such demonstrations of the fact that the power of modern fire arms has not placed his arm with the Macedonian phalanx in the museum of military antiquities, the mentally honest cavalryman cannot but ask himself if the continued fall in the general estimate as to the value of cavalry is not largely the fault of cavalry itself. Every cavalryman the world over insists that his arm is a combat one. While doing so, have we sufficiently studied the changes which modern weapons have brought about, or are we too inclined to believe the horse the first consideration?

From the horse point of view, Sheridan's cavalry in the last year of the Civil War, with its many poor riders and many men mounted, not only on poor horses, but even on mules, would have made a poor showing by comparison with the splendid cavalry which rode so gallantly to its death on the battlefields of the Franco-Prussian War. However, Sheridan's cavalry was successful, while the French cavalry only furnished targets for the German infantry and artillery. The cavalry with which the powers started the Great War was splendidly horsed, yet in the early days preceding the First Battle of the Marne, and in the subsequent race to the sea, the cavalry failed to play a

dominant part. Also, their horses, unable to withstand hardship, died in such numbers that whole regiments found themselves on foot.

History shows that the days in which cavalry has been most considered are those in which it played a prominent part in combat. In those days its two main characteristics were striking power and mobility. Its striking power was not due to the speed of its attack as much as to the weight of the attack.



One of the Victors

A cavalry officer with Mauser pistol drawn, as he came to a halt at the end of the charge, resulting in the capture of a regiment of field artillery. Long centuries elapsed before the charge at an extended gallop became the accepted mode of assault. In other words, history shows the first point to be considered is how to damage the enemy, not how to stick to formations and methods which succeeded in the past, and then give up because they no longer

work. Or, putting it differently, are we living up to the age-old maxim that methods of application must constantly change, but the principles of war remain immutable?

The last few years we have heard a great deal of fire and movement. However, there is nothing new in the use of fire, coupled with movement, to produce success. The British owed their victories over the French in the Hundred Years' War to using fire of arrows and subsequent attacks of mounted men, to meet the headlong mounted attacks of the French chivalry.

Subatai and his Mongols successfully invaded Europe in the 13th century.



A Regimental Wagon Train

This is made up of commandeered country carts and drivers, but under charge of officer and detail, and is parked in fields as regiment enters action.

We know now that history generally woefully exaggerates his numbers. He beat the Christian armies because his strategy and tactics were far superior. Excellent reconnaissance, wide turning movements to effect the concentration desired for battle, and fire and movement on the battlefield, gave him victory. His mounted archers "shot up" the men and horses of the Christian forces for a considerable period of time before the mounted assault was made by the units armed with hand weapons.

The Mongol cavalry like that of every race, born, living and dying mounted, used tough animals capable of standing every hardship and fending largely for themselves. Through the Middle Ages, and well beyond, cavalry was more interested in having animals which could successfully carry the

weight of the riders, arms and equipment than in any other consideration. In other words, armament was not subordinated to mobility. Mobility was subordinated to striking power. The kind of horse used was the one which could do the work under war conditions. What had to be done in battle was the starting point from which arms, equipment, kinds of mounts, etc. were deduced.

Civil War Methods

During the Civil War and afterwards, we used the same method. It is true that the appearance of our cavalry, and in particular its mounts, made a poor showing alongside the brilliant, dashing, and well mounted European cavalry. However, this same European cavalry which had subordinated power to damage the enemy when met up with to mobility, and limited the number of men they could put in battle to the number of excellent horses they could obtain in peace, failed to produce any decisive effect.

The whole initial German movement in France depended for its success upon a marching and fighting right flank. Von Kluck with his infantry made a gallant effort, but failed, due to lack of mobility. The German cavalry with him failed because of lack of numbers and sufficient combat power for the numbers they had.

Would Sheridan with 50,000 to 100,000 of his type of cavalry, who put fighting as their first and last objective, have failed, even though their speed would have been less than that of the German cavalry, and many of their mounts farm horses of all types and ages, and some mules? The Russo-Japanese War and the Great War show that more than ever, two immense armies of infantry and artillery tend to neutralize each other.

The so called "race to the sea" in the fall of 1914, is an excellent example of how infantry forces, even with railways and good roads, cannot outflank each other. Step by step, the Allied and German forces slowly arrived, checking each other until the British Channel was reached. No decision resulted, only the trench line already existing from Switzerland to the Oise River was extended until a natural obstacle halted the attempt of each side to outflank the other.

Marshal Foch in creating his strategic reserve by using tremendous numbers of motor trucks, tried to give it the mobility necessary to insure its presence at the point desired. In this country we have the trucks but not the roads to insure their timely use. Also, the steady development of "attack" aviation is going to make the use of well marked roads as difficult as is the use today of a railway line within artillery range. Not only mobility, but mobility across country is essential. This can only be had by cavalry. However, a strategic reserve to be of value must have numbers, must be able to strike a real blow when used, and must not have dissipated its power of mobility by previous use.

Numbers mean large quantities of horses. There can be no doubt that our cavalry of twenty years ago needed many improvements in the horse line. No

serious cavalryman can question the necessity for, and excellence of the work done, by the Cavalry School at Riley and our Remount Service. Neither can the benefits to be derived from polo and horse shows be doubted. On the other hand, the older cavalry officers are rapidly passing from the active list. They are the men who knew the days of long continuous marches, of months in the field with no great transportation facilities, who knew and used tough types of animals, who believed in and were taught that cavalry units must have man power. There are some indications that this knowledge is passing with them and that the new generation inclines towards the European cavalry type.

Undoubtedly long continued excessive economy demands the small cavalry units of today. On the other hand, are we breeding cavalry officers who, like the Europeans, are satisfied because of the ease with which they can be handled, instead of being dissatisfied because of their small combat power?



The Fate of the Defeated

A Chinese general captured after defeat, and with his wife, shot.

Similarly, is there not a tendency towards small calibre weapons, relatively small numbers of automatic rifles and machine guns, and decidedly limited ammunition supplies, all on the ground of mobility? Are we planning and training from the point of view of delivering a successful attack against infantry when we meet it? If not, is not the infantry justified in believing the usefulness of cavalry to be increasingly limited?

The field artillery passes through successive periods of increasing mobility at the cost of combat power. These periods are always coincident with peace. A dashing regiment of artillery with a mounted band, the cannoneers on the chests, unimpeded by too much ammunition, too many intrenching tools, telephones, heavy reel carts, camouflage for gun positions, and equipped with carriages light enough to be gracefully swung around a riding hall at a gallop, necessarily delights every mounted artilleryman.

A regiment with its horse power concentrated primarily in pulling on the march at a walk and into position at a trot at the most; its carriages carrying

ample ammunition, plenty of good size intrenching tools; telephones heavy enough to always work, wire enough to provide real liaison with the infantry, and camouflage to prevent early discovery by the enemy, thus insuring fire for the infantry when they most need it; is the regiment which helps the infantry forward or protects it from the enemy, the only excuse for the existence of artillery.

Should we not start with the weapons necessary to meet infantry on equal terms and provide horses heavy enough to carry them? Such cavalry will still be more mobile than infantry, while really able to fight it when met. If our present highly mobile type of cavalry is also necessary, why not go back to the old division into light and heavy cavalry?

The cavalry screen, particularly with the wide front covered by modern armies, necessitates such a dispersion of the cavalry that it is doubtful if it can be assembled in time to participate in a rencontre battle. Even if the concentration is affected, the chances are the animals will be worn out by the long, hasty marches made.

With airplanes for strategic reconnaissance and the power of modern infantry by the volume and range of its fire to protect itself from surprise attack, cannot the tactical reconnaissance be performed by small bodies of scouts attached to infantry divisions or army corps?

The preliminary artillery duel in which one artillery was to vanquish the other, has never worked out. The air service readily admits that the much-talked-of preliminary air battle will never take place. Is there any more likelihood of the preliminary decisive combat between the opposing cavalries? In the last war the French cavalry sought it. The Germans avoided it while shooting up the French cavalry wherever it showed itself in considerable bodies.

The abolition of the cavalry screen would free the cavalry to be concentrated in the rear as a strategic reserve in the hands of the general commanding the armies in the field. Its proper armament even at the cost of some of its mobility, plus numbers, would insure a cavalry force capable of producing decisive results.

That cavalry has no place on a battlefield where two opposing infantries have heavily entrenched themselves, and their respective artilleries have pock marked the whole countryside, is a foregone conclusion. However, it takes time for infantry to so settle itself. Cannot a large mobile *FIGHTING* cavalry force threatening one flank or the other, or the weak center of a widely flung line, prevent its so settling? Cannot a combination of attack aviation, artillery, and heavy machine gun fire support, and deployment in depth as well as breadth, insure the repetition today of General French's famous and successful mounted break through the Boer line in the South African War?

Prince Hohenlohe, when asked the first three duties of artillery, replied, "The first is to hit, the second to hit, and the third to hit."

Are not the first three duties of cavalry the same as they were in the days when cavalry was the master of the battlefield—to fight, to fight, to fight!

The 1926 Cavalry Leadership Test For Small Units

By

Captain W. B. Bradford, 9th Cavalry

SMILED upon by fortune and favored by the usual superb fall weather of Fort Riley, the 1926 Cavalry Leadership Test For Small Units was brought to a successful conclusion. Of the six competing platoons from the lettered troops of the Second Cavalry, that of Troop C, led by Lieutenant Daniel F. J. DeBardeleben, placed first. Though this platoon by no means surpassed all others in all phases of the test, yet its uniform excellence throughout was such as to win the general praise of all.

The scores of each platoon in each phase of the test are shown in the following table.

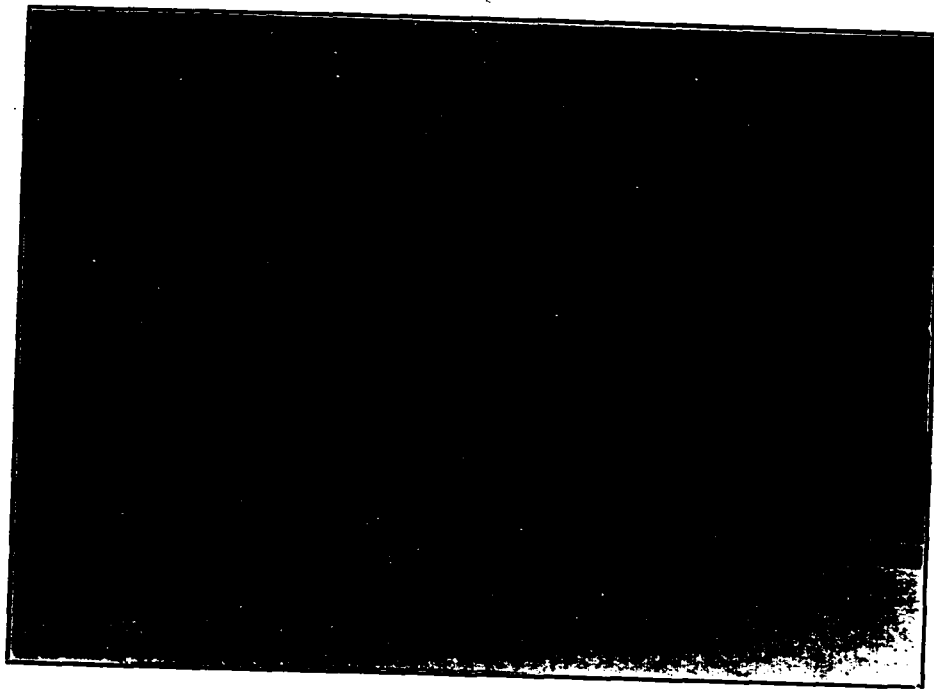
Platoon Leader	Lieut. O'Shea Troop A	Lieut. Phillips Troop B	Lieut. DeBardeleben Troop C	Lieut. Ames Troop E	Lieut. Walters Troop F	Lieut. Purvis Troop G	Possible Score
Individual Phase							
Officers	4.00	5.00	4.00	4.00	5.00	5.00	5.00
N. C. Os	2.73	2.49	2.61	2.64	2.76	2.91	3.00
Privates	6.41	6.35	6.59	5.47	6.78	6.38	7.00
Total	13.14	13.84	13.50	12.11	14.54	14.29	15.00
Leadership Phase							
Situation 1 March	14.75	14.28	14.09	13.85	13.24	10.60	15.00
Situation 2 Concealment from air observation	4.32	3.70	4.77	3.53	4.65	2.33	5.00
Situation 3 Mounted Combat	11.56	11.64	11.79	11.93	11.87	11.45	13.00
Situation 4 Reconnaissance of Chapman	10.82	10.54	11.65	9.84	10.48	10.66	14.00
Situation 5 Camp	12.10	11.90	12.50	12.82	12.53	10.14	13.00
Situation 6 Reconnaissance of Alida	3.86	3.86	4.09	4.44	4.41	4.14	5.00
Situation 7 Dismounted Combat	8.68	8.84	11.39	13.75	9.80	10.81	15.00
Condition of Animals	4.00	4.25	4.59	4.86	4.30	4.89	5.00
Total	70.09	69.01	75.77	75.02	71.28	65.02	85.00
Grand Total	83.23	82.85	89.27	87.13	85.82	79.31	100.00

Lieutenant DeBardleben's platoon is composed of the following named enlisted men:

Sgt. Raymond Holmes
Sgt. Alfred A. Soule
Cpl. Trow W. Demmitt
Cpl. Glen A. Schwinger
Cpl. Claude J. Tuttle
Pvt. Samuel A. Clements
Pvt. Blair C. Minthorn
Pvt. Homer L. Janey
Pvt. Velmer V. McClellen
Pvt. Arthur H. McLean
Pvt. Walter Statkus
Pvt. Tony Caynewski
Pvt. Robert Flinchum
Pvt. Walter C. Wieland

Pvt. Charles H. McClure
Pvt. Raymond D. Witherell
Pvt. Charles W. Cox
Pvt. Clifford J. Meister
Pvt. Bessel Sebastiano
Pvt. Pat R. Riley
Pvt. Floyd H. Hunt
Pvt. William E. Fredericks
Pvt. Robert D. Woodruff
Pvt. Melvin B. Williams
Pvt. James D. Simpson
Pvt. Ambruce J. Van
Pvt. Patrick C. Hanrahan

Let us pause now and look back somewhat into the history and raison d'être of this "Leadership Test." There are many, no doubt, who are asking: "Just what is this test? Who began it? Why does it exist?"



Lieut. Daniel F. J. DeBardleben, 2d Cavalry
Commander of the winning platoon.

Several years ago, a cavalry officer of the Reserve came to Fort Riley and attended the Reserve Class at the Cavalry School. This officer had perhaps always been a good cavalryman, but it is certain that he left Fort Riley strongly imbued with the teachings of the school and enthusiastic as to the

possibilities that have been opened for the use of cavalry as a result of the World War. Subsequently, he conceived the idea of a competitive test in "The Combat Leadership of Small Cavalry Units." The January, 1924 issue of the CAVALRY JOURNAL announced a prize essay contest to determine the best plan for carrying out this idea.

Fourteen essays were received. The judges were of the opinion that none was in itself complete, yet many contained excellent suggestions which later served as a basis for the plan actually decided upon.

In the fall of 1924, boards were convened at The Cavalry School, and a test was prepared as had been desired. In the spring of 1925, this test was successfully conducted within the 2nd Cavalry. The prize of \$1000.00, donated by the sponsor of the idea, was won by the platoon from Troop F, 2nd Cavalry, Lieutenant J. W. Wofford, commanding.

This year a similar prize was offered, and the Chief of Cavalry directed that the event again be staged at Fort Riley. Boards were convened, and the details arranged of a contest that was essentially similar to that of 1924, but which benefitted appreciably from the experiences of the previous year.

The object of the test, as announced, was to encourage and test the training, courage, and physical development of men and mounts and the combat efficiency of the units. The test was divided into two phases: the first, an individual test for both officers and men; the second, a test of the unit as a whole. Only rifle troops of the 2nd Cavalry were eligible to compete. These were permitted to enter one platoon each, consisting of two rifle squads, one machine rifle squad, and platoon headquarters. The winner was to be that platoon scoring the highest number of points in both phases combined. Prizes were plate for the officer and checks for the enlisted men as follows: each sergeant, \$47.50; each corporal, \$40.00; each private, \$30.00.

The Individual Phase

The Individual Phase, which was given a value of 15% of the whole, was begun on October 7th and completed the following day. For officers, it consisted of a cross country ride of about five miles over a flagged course. The going was rather rough, through Magazine, Coyote, and Forsythe Canyons. There were fourteen prepared obstacles and many natural ones, among which were included Magazine Canyon and 22nd Battery Hill Slides. Interspaced along the route in unexpected groups, were seven pistol targets and six saber heads, which contestants were expected to attack at the gallop. At the completion of the ride, there was a flagged dismounted course of two miles that had to be run in a maximum time of twenty-four minutes. The route selected was across country, over very difficult terrain. Its finish marked the end of the Individual Phase for officers.

For enlisted men, the conditions were different. As a preliminary qualification, all entries were required to measure up to the standards of physical development prescribed in Paragraph 6a of Cavalry Memorandum

No. 3. They then demonstrated their proficiency in the use of pistol and saber by galloping over a prepared course in squad groups and attacking pistol targets and saber heads as they were encountered. Their proficiency in cross country riding was tested by passing each man individually over the mounted course that had been arranged for officers. A greater time allowance was given.

All scores were on the basis of 100. Of the 15% allotted for the Individual Phase, 5% was for officers, 3% for non-commissioned officers, and 7% for privates. The standard prescribed for officers was as follows: (1) mounted course to be completed in thirty minutes; (2) four hits out of a possible seven to be made with the pistol; (3) three penetrations out of a possible six to be made with the saber; (4) all obstacles on the mounted course to be negotiated; (5) the dismounted course to be completed in not to exceed twenty-four minutes. For each element in which the standard was not attained, a penalty of twenty points in a possible one hundred was imposed.

The standard for enlisted men was: (1) one hit in a possible three on pistol targets—value fifteen; (2) the saber head penetrated—value fifteen; (3) the mounted cross country course to be completed in thirty-five minutes—value thirty; (4) all obstacles on the mounted course to be negotiated—value forty. Failure in any requirement resulted in a penalty corresponding to the assigned value.

The Individual Phase was creditably completed by the two hundred officers and men of the 2nd Cavalry. The results were as noted in the tabulated score sheet previously shown. The conditions are thought to have been fair and sufficiently difficult to indicate the differences that existed in the units concerned. The Committee is of the opinion that no basic changes are necessary in future tests of a like nature.

The Leadership Phase

The Leadership Phase, with a value of 85%, was planned in such a way that the platoon would travel upon the circumference of a figure somewhat elliptical in shape. Along this route were seven control points through which the competing units would be required to pass, and at which were special umpires, each of whom was charged with preparing and staging a certain special situation. As the platoons passed, these special umpires scored each on its ability to cope with the situation presented, as shown by the actions and orders of the platoon leader and the men under his command. Accompanying each platoon was a platoon umpire, a different one each day, whose mission, though unknown to the competitors, was purely one of co-ordination. For the convenience of umpires and the Committee in following the problem, the long axis of this elliptical figure was placed coincident with the one paved highway passing through Fort Riley. The platoons carried full field equipment, including ammunition. In general, the enemy was actually represented, though in some cases flags and targets were employed to indicate units of certain strengths. Though directed to pass through all control points shown

THE 1926 CAVALRY LEADERSHIP TEST FOR SMALL UNITS 81

on the maps furnished them, platoons were given perfect liberty of action and unhampered freedom in choice of route between these points. From the receipt of warning orders to the end of the test, they were compelled to consider the situation exactly as represented. Leaders and men were judged entirely by their actions and orders. In no case was an officer or soldier permitted to say: "I would do so and so." The rule was: "Do it." And a good rule it proved to be.

The scoring system adopted, including that for the Individual Phase, is shown below in abbreviated form. For each situation, this table was appreciably amplified by providing each special umpire with an expressly prepared detailed score sheet, which he was not permitted to alter without the approval of the Committee.

The Scoring System		Value
<i>Situation</i>		
<i>Individual Phase</i>		5
Lieutenants		10
Enlisted men		15
<i>C. P. 1. Marching.</i>		2
March discipline		2
March conduct		1
Care of animals		1
Equipment		5
Security		2
Reconnaissance		2
Orders		15
<i>C. P. 2. Concealment from air observation</i>		5
Dispositions taken		5
<i>C. P. 3. Mounted combat</i>		3
Orders		10
Tactics		13
<i>C. P. 4. Reconnaissance of Chapman</i>		6
Reconnaissance		3
Security		3
Decision		2
Dissemination of information		14
<i>C. P. 5. Camping</i>		1
Selection of camp site		2
Going into camp		4
Security		3
Breaking camp		2
Concealment from air observation		1
General		13

<i>C. P. 6. Reconnaissance of Alida</i>		
Reconnaissance of town	2	
River crossing:		
Decision to cross	1.5	
Manner of crossing	1.5	
	5.0	5
<i>C. P. 7. Dismounted combat</i>		
Fire effect	0	
Conduct of platoon	0	
	15	15
<i>Condition of animals</i>		
Condition at finish	5	
	5	5
Final Total Score		100

The Leadership Phase began on October 9th and ended on October 15th. One platoon marched each day, camped about forty miles away that night, and returned over a distance of thirty miles the following day.

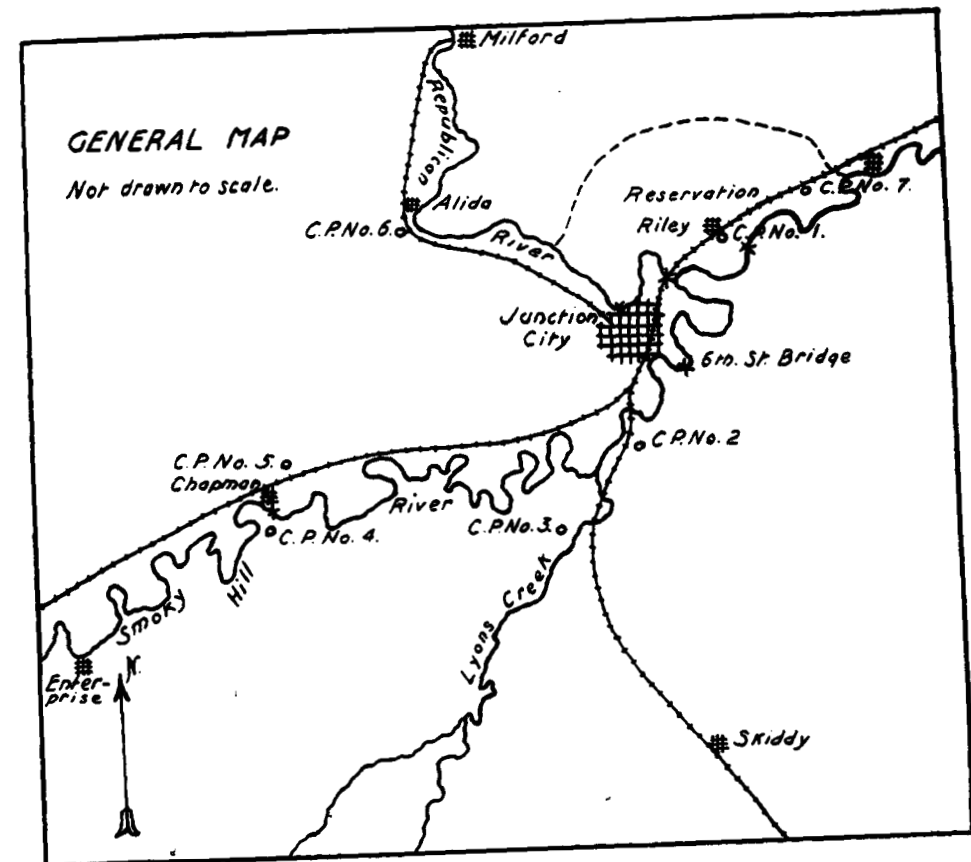
Tactical Situation

The tactical situation assumed was that of two hostile armies facing each other along an east and west line through Topeka, Kansas. Their western flanks were covered by cavalry operating principally between Manhattan and Junction City. The Blue command, on the south, directed a reconnaissance around the enemy right to determine the truth of airplane reports of a projected hostile envelopment. This reconnaissance was performed by the platoons competing in this test. They were directed to reconnoiter the Lyons Creek Valley, Chapman, and Alida—all enemy territory. Identifications were ordered. Maps were furnished showing the area to be investigated, and on which were marked the control points.

At 5:00 P. M., each day, beginning with October 8th, one of the platoon leaders was summoned by the platoon umpire assigned him. He was given the general and special situations and a warning order to the effect that he would go on reconnaissance the following morning at 6:20 A. M.; that he would be away at least two days; that complete maps and orders would be given at his picket line one half hour before the time of departure. The following morning they were joined by the special umpire for marching, and the platoon leader was given all necessary maps and orders.

The special umpire remained with the platoon as far as Control Point No. 2, a distance of about 16 miles. He was present during the estimate of the situation, map reconnaissance, issuance of orders, and initiation of the march. He graded the platoon especially on those points listed on the score sheet previously shown.

An interesting feature of this march was the hostile situation and the road net. Junction City was known to be strongly garrisoned by the enemy. Consequently, it was logical to assume that its approaches would be under fire. A map was given the special umpire with the outer limits of this enemy beaten zone accurately plotted. Should a platoon enter this zone, he pronounced it



under fire. Should it persist in its advance, he penalized the leader on his decision and ruled casualties, which later automatically affected the result of the dismounted fire problem. Since the shortest route to Control Point No. 2 lay through the outskirts of Junction City, platoon leaders who had failed to make a careful estimate of the situation invariably took this road, with resultant calamity. Three of the six came under enemy fire and were repulsed. One persisted so strongly that he received fire three times, was given the maximum number of casualties, and marched six miles more than was

necessary in reaching his first objective.

Platoon leaders in general seemed to understand the system of marching by bounds, but it was insufficiently practiced. In several cases, many miles of marching were saved by a careful study of the map prior to leaving the stables. In one or two instances, platoon leaders showed lack of ability in map reading. They were poorly oriented as to both roads and terrain and were saved either by good fortune or through the efforts of their non-commissioned officers. The rate of march was so retarded by making the necessary reconnaissances that few platoons completed the first forty miles in less than ten hours, halts included.

Soon after Control Point No. 2 was passed, an enemy airplane appeared in the distance, flying at 2,000 feet and reconnoitering the area through which the platoon was moving. Platoons were judged entirely from their actions as seen from the ground. For the purposes of the problem, discovery by the air observer was considered of little importance as the terrain varied in each case. In some instances, there was cover; in others, there was none.

The dispositions taken by platoons were generally good, though often squads were too bunched. In several instances, observers were unable to differentiate between enemy and friendly planes, and there was one case in which the plane approached with no warning given. In some cases, platoons were immobilized more than was necessary by the presence of an enemy ship in the air.

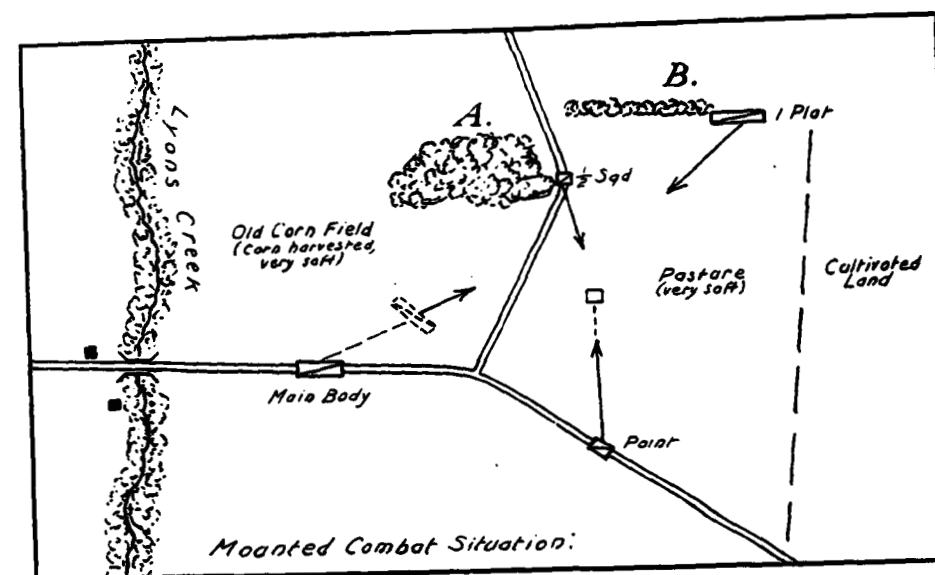
It is of especial interest to note that, though enemy planes appeared at times when practically no cover was available, yet almost without exception, the cavalry platoons were able to avoid discovery by following the instructions laid down in our regulations governing the conduct of commands under such situations.

Mounted Combat Situation

The mounted combat situation was presented a few miles beyond Control Point No. 3. As the advance element of each platoon arrived at the point indicated in the sketch shown in Plate 2, an enemy platoon, represented by flags carried by mounted men, delivered an attack from Woods A and B. Umpires rode with the Blue point and with the platoon leader and described the situation as it developed, and as it could be seen. For example, as the first enemy group appeared, the umpire with the point would state: "There is an enemy half squad breaking out of those trees." That was all. The enemy advanced, and the point leader was left to his own devices. The umpire with the platoon leader gave no information whatever until the latter had advanced sufficiently to actually see for himself. He then gave his information in a manner similar to that just described. This system worked well in all situations. It resulted in action on the part of the platoon.

The attacks were well carried out. Without exception, platoons appreciated the import of their missions and promptly attacked mounted. Point leaders generally showed their initiative by charging without orders, though in one case confusion was caused in a platoon by the retreat of this element. The enemy advance group having been dispersed, points usually moved to a flank and joined in the attack of the main body. One corporal, well imbued with the spirit of the offensive, continued his attack against the enemy main body.

All attacks were made mounted, but two platoon leaders directed their machine rifles to support the action from positions on the road. Though the idea of combined action is good, this attack was so hastily prepared that there was extreme danger in permitting any element to dismount. The



mobility of the machine rifle squads should have been retained.

The greater number of platoon commanders demonstrated that they had not forgotten their missions, by demanding identifications immediately upon completion of the combat.

At Chapman, the feature of primary importance was the reconnaissance of the town, though the situation included a river crossing, capture and disposal of prisoners, transmission of information, and a problem in decision and security. Several umpires were employed here in order that one might be available for accompanying each separate element into which the platoons might be divided. Enlisted men were used to represent enemy stragglers.

Chapman was assumed to have been abandoned by the enemy only eight hours before the arrival of the Blue patrols. As the platoons approached the bridge over the Smoky Hill River on the road leading into town from the south, they were fired on by mounted stragglers from the opposite side of the river. As a rule, the Blue points very properly attacked, mounted at once and captured these enemy soldiers. Their platoons followed closely and the town was secured. In two cases, however, where the attacks were made dismounted, much time was lost, and the enemy stragglers escaped.

After the capture of the town and posting suitable march outposts, the railway station, telegraph, telephone, and post offices and all other places which might give information were investigated. Additional prisoners were seized at the railway telegraph office. These, together with the two previously taken, all gave valuable information when questioned concerning their units. This, of course, they had been carefully coached in. The platoon leaders now had the double problem of disposing of prisoners and disseminating the information obtained. This was generally done by impressing automobiles and sending both back over the route that had been followed that morning. Unsuccessful attempts were also made to employ both telegraph and telephone.

Camp

Soon after leaving Chapman, a new special umpire joined and informed the platoon that a camp for the night might be made. He remained at this camp during the night and graded the platoon as indicated on the score sheet under his phase. One hour before dawn, he woke the platoon leader and gave him information which caused his immediate departure.

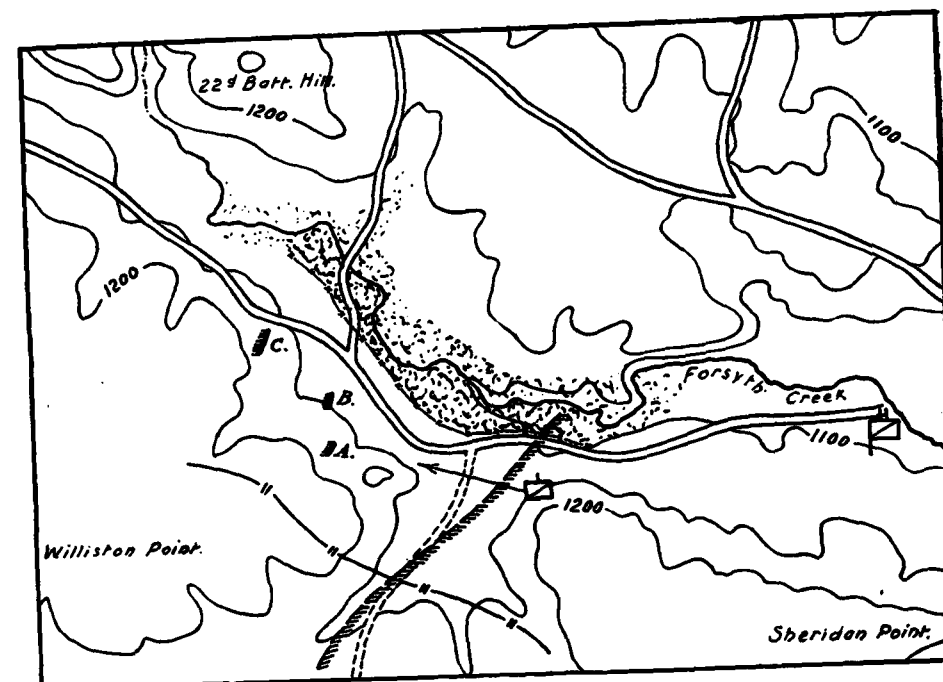
All camp sites were well selected and in no cases were discovered by the airplanes sent to reconnoiter for them. The platoons usually bivouacked, as was considered advisable. Security measures were good, though in two cases, too large a percentage of men was kept awake on this duty. In one or two instances, insufficient attention was given to a good defensive system within the platoon camp itself. With one or two exceptions, there was no confusion in breaking camp, though the failure of several contestants to feed and water was evidenced in the condition of their animals at the finish.

At Alida, other umpires were met, the town reconnoitered, and information gained which led the patrols to return to Fort Riley by way of the bridges at Junction City. A river crossing by swimming had been intended, but the flooded condition of streams at the time of the contest prevented this.

Dismounted Phase

At Control Point No. 7, four special umpires were met who were to conduct the platoons through the dismounted phase. The situation was simple. As part of a general offensive, a squadron dismounted attack was to be made up Forsythe Canyon (on the Fort Riley reservation). The platoons received orders at Squadron Headquarters and more detailed instructions at

Troop Headquarters. They dismounted, led horses were placed under cover in the rear, and the men conducted to positions just in rear of the line of departure (outpost line). Here platoon leaders were shown their objectives, boundary lines designated, and five minutes allowed for preparing platoons before zero hour. Scouts had barely gained positions to the front, and platoons begun to advance, when they were fired on from enemy Position A. Here, many made their mistake. They dropped in place, opened fire, and began an advance in the direction of the enemy by squad or half squad rushes directly across open, level terrain. Not more than two made any real attempt to utilize the cover afforded.



The situation was ideal for maneuver. There was a small hill on the platoon left front which could be reached by a covered approach, and which was only 200 yards from the enemy position. Along the right platoon boundary, the ground was rolling and slightly wooded. The action, as clearly indicated, was for the left squad to work to the left front under cover of the hill, and there take up a firing position; the right squad to advance by infiltration along the right boundary line after the left squad had opened fire. Thus, a position directly on the enemy flank could have been gained, and he

would have been forced to retire at little cost of life to the attackers. Yet so few realized this. Platoon after platoon, with no thought of maneuver or infiltration or making use of cover afforded by the ground, engaged in the out-of-date, parade ground rushes. This phase brought forth the one weak spot in the training of the six platoons.

The problem was terminated by an examination of mounts upon arrival at the stables. The veterinarian based his scores primarily on the number of sore backs, cinch sores, cases of lameness, and fatigue. The fact that 80% was the lowest score given in this phase is indicative of the effective march training of the regiment.

There were two changes in the test this year that definitely affected the final outcome. The first was in the Individual Phase. Previously, this was only a qualification phase with no value assigned. Enlisted men did not compete. Officers were either qualified or not. Those who failed to qualify were deprived of their platoons and substitute commanders designated. This resulted in several units being led by officers strange to the men, failed to take into account the individual training and physical fitness of the soldier, and placed certain platoons at a great disadvantage.

This year, both officers and men were required to participate in a severe individual test. The groups of individual scores were given a value of 15% of the whole, and final results accordingly affected.

A second change was in the umpire system. Formerly, the umpire who marched with each platoon gave his platoon a certain definite score on its march conduct. This time, however, the general rule was: "Each umpire who assigns a score will judge every platoon in the same phase." Thus, though platoon umpires were retained, they acted merely in the capacity of agents of the Committee for assuring the smooth running of the contest.

Recommendations

As a result of the experiences of the past two years, there are several matters in connection with the staging of a contest of this kind which are thought worthy of mention.

(1) The Individual Phase can be improved by scoring the refusals experienced by contestants at each obstacle. This year, there was a difference of eleven refusals between two different platoons in passing over the mounted course. One was evidently better than the other and should have received credit for this.

(2) The advisability of having the same umpire judge all the contesting units in a given situation was demonstrated.

(3) A co-ordinating umpire to accompany each unit throughout the problem was of great assistance to the Committee charged with staging the test. They should take no part in the scoring.

(4) Platoon leaders should not know definitely what situations will be presented, in what order the situations will occur, what umpires will be

charged with scoring, and what the method of scoring will be. This plan serves to keep the unit commander and his men alert at all times, as they are unaware of how or when they will be scored.

(5) Special umpires should be given score sheets prepared in detail in advance.

(6) Special umpires must be given latitude in presenting or staging their situations. They must have imagination in order that this may be well done.

(7) The number of umpires allowed for each situation is regulated so that there will be one to accompany the unit leader, and one for each of the elements which it is estimated might be detached.

(8) Competing elements must be required to act. Umpires intervene only to insure the smooth progress of the problem.

As conducted this year, the contest is believed to be satisfactory in all major details. Another time, the terrain and situations should both be varied. The framework is sound. The officer who originated the idea and provided the means for encouraging its execution has done our branch a great service. He has shown the way. It is towards this idea that our training methods and tests should trend.

The Cavalry School teaches that the training of cavalry should be, as far as facilities permit, along the lines described in this article, and that, in order to accustom troops to meet the situations that arise in war, this training should be habitual, not exceptional.



The Cavalry's Cavalry

A study of armored cars, their powers and limitations, and some notes as to their tactical employment.

By

Major PAUL R. DAVISON, Cavalry

Instructor in Tactics, The Cavalry School

THE armored car, in so far as our army is concerned, is in the formative stage. Our experience in the use of these auxiliaries is so limited as to be of practically no value in determining their proper tactical use. It is necessary to draw upon the experience of our allies during the World War in order to arrive at sound tactical principles to be applied in future conflicts to the use of these valuable and formidable engines of warfare.

A three cornered combination, composed of air corps, armored cars, and cavalry, can be of untold value to a commander in any situation that has not degenerated into the shambles of trench warfare, such as occurred in western Europe during the late unpleasantness.

As every self-propelled, wheeled vehicle is a potential armored car, it will be seen that armored cars will grade from open Ford touring cars with machine guns, mounts and crews aboard, to the expensive, highly developed armored cars built as such. Armored cars grade gradually into the tanks which become the armored cars of trench warfare.

A car of the type of the reconnaissance car, being experimented with by the Ordnance Department and consisting of a Ford chassis, bucket seats, equipped with large wheels and tires, could be quickly converted into an armored car by having the local blacksmith add a steel shield or two and mount a machine gun. This vehicle is able to negotiate all roads, and to travel to a considerable extent across country, in any locality to be found on this continent. There will be times when rains will hold up its operations for a short length of time, but a light car of this kind will be able to get about soon after the wetting, and long before heavier cars can move. The rolling fortresses of from six to ten tons weight, can only operate over concrete or heavily metalled roads, or in dry weather, over such roads as our ordinary supply trucks will use. Because of the road limitations, armored car organizations should be made up of different types and weights of cars within the unit, to enable them to be prepared to meet all emergencies.

Armored cars have no independent role. They habitually work in conjunction with one of the basic arms, cavalry or infantry. The tactics of the armored car units, or the manner in which they engage an enemy, is no different from that of any other combat unit. They employ the most basic tactics of all combat. Two small boys, absolutely ignorant of tactics and, as a matter of fact, without prearranged formations or agreement, when annoyed by a larger boy, will deploy themselves so that one boy delivers a frontal or

holding attack, while the other maneuvers to a flank or rear and there attacks the larger boy with a weapon, or tackles him. The same principles apply to squads, regiments, divisions, corps, and armies. Armored cars attempt to bring cross fire on to their enemy. They engage him in front and if possible, maneuver a part of the unit so as to bring fire upon his flank or rear. As their role is more often offensive than defensive, the armored cars are best used on a flank or with a maneuvering force.



An Armored Fighting Car

Heavy French type. Limited to paved or very hard and dry dirt roads. Practically useless across country.

In the early stages of operations, before the main forces come in contact, the armored cars are best employed on reconnaissance. Here we find the value of the triumvirate before mentioned. The air corps will report the location of the enemy mass of troops, point out the roads he is using, and the direction in which he is moving. Armored cars are despatched in the given direction to locate the smaller, more advanced elements of the enemy, and to obtain negative information. When the enemy is encountered, his weak advanced elements may be driven back, and by means of encircling movements, the rough extent of his front is determined. The cavalry follows behind the armored cars at its most effective rate of march, for the purpose of furthering the reconnaissance of the armored cars, or for combat, as the situation may require. Based on the information obtained by the armored cars, the cavalry can plan its operations with an understanding of the situation and with the

minimum expenditure of horses and men. As the forces close with each other, the cars move to the flank with the cavalry and operate with security detachments or against the enemy flank and rear.

From a study of the above it will be seen that the armored cars bear a relation to the cavalry similar to the relation that the cavalry bears to the infantry. The armored cars become the cavalry of the cavalry.

The basic organization of the armored cars will of necessity be the squad. The squad will consist of one car and its crew. The basic tactical unit should be the platoon with its quota of motor cycles and tenders. A four car platoon is preferable to a three car platoon for the same reasons that all four unit organizations are more flexible than those composed of three.

Armored cars should not be divided into units smaller than a platoon when they are given missions that require them to move beyond the support of the cavalry. For local reconnaissance, single cars may be used, but when they are sent forth on distant missions, the platoon should be the smallest independent unit. History shows that single cars have been used on distant missions, and in the majority of cases they have broken down mechanically, bogged, or have been captured. Some accomplished their missions after a fashion. Most of those that did return, accomplished nothing. In almost every case the mission would have been a complete success had a platoon been assigned to the duty. The cars rely upon mutual assistance, as their vision is very limited and they are difficult to conceal. By mutual fire support they are able to progress farther and consequently secure greater and more accurate information.

Armored cars should be given distinct missions of a limited nature. They should habitually move and be moved, by bounds within zones, prescribed in advance by the commander of the force to which they are attached. They should never be given roving commissions in the front or on the flank of the cavalry or infantry. Their position should be known to the commander of the cavalry at all times so that he may recall them in order to despatch them on other missions as emergencies arise.

When armored cars attack, they do so by direct, surprise fire from concealed points that offer good observation. They strive to enfilade the enemy and bring to bear on him the cross fire of two or more cars. The cars are always halted when firing weapons of larger caliber than machine guns. Machine guns are fired at the halt whenever possible, as running fire is so inaccurate that it can only be used in emergencies.

Reconnaissance

One of the most valuable functions of armored cars is that of reconnaissance. Strategical reconnaissance has already been discussed. There will be many times when, due to fog, rain and other causes, the air corps will not be able to obtain the desired information. The cars can obtain information as to whether towns, woods and other localities are occupied by the enemy. The

cars will usually operate directly from the headquarters of the whole force and will make their reports to that headquarters. They will, unless otherwise ordered, give such information as they have been able to secure, to their own troops as they pass through them on the return trip.

When distant reconnaissance detachments are sent out, there should be a platoon or more of armored cars attached to the detachment. When staff officers are sent out with the armored cars, it is advisable that they make the trip in their own motor cars, until contact is gained, and then seek shelter within the armored cars. Staff officers will be able to see more of the terrain, will not crowd the passenger capacity of the armored cars, and will be able to return to their headquarters with greater speed in this way. When the cars arrive at a distant point, reconnaissance off the roads can be carried much farther if there are horses available. In enemy country, saddle horses may be commandeered, and in friendly country, saddle horses may be borrowed or requisitioned. In India the British intend to carry a saddled horse in a trailer.



A British Car

British Rolls-Royce fighting car on reconnaissance in Mesopotamia. This car can maneuver to a considerable extent across country.

It is problematical how this will work out. In searching a town or woods to determine if it is occupied, the usual method is to send one car rapidly into the town, one car to each flank of the town, and hold one car back to cover the assembly.

With Advance Guards

Armored cars attached to a cavalry advance guard will satisfactorily perform front and flank reconnaissance that is too distant for mounted or dismounted patrols. A great saving of time and horse flesh will be the result.

The cars can investigate woods and villages and hold important terrain features until the cavalry arrives. They assist the infantry in the same manner. When attached to advance guards, the cars march in the interval between the main body and the advance guard so that they will not be required to take the same rate of march as the cavalry or infantry. They move within this interval by bounds.

In Pursuit

Pursuing cavalry will find armored cars extremely useful, especially in the parallel and strategical pursuit. In this type of action, all forces can act more boldly and with more abandon, than in any other. The cars may be sent on wide detours to the enemy flank and rear to find points where the enemy can be harassed or his progress impeded by destroying bridges or holding defiles.

Delaying Action

The cars, operating in conjunction with cavalry or infantry, may operate in front of, or on the flanks of the advancing enemy. They may withdraw by bounds, delaying by fire from good observation points, or they may act aggressively against the enemy's flanks.

Raids

Raiding cavalry can use armored cars to deliver fire on, or to block avenues of approach leading to, the objective of the raid. They are a valuable means of maintaining liaison between the raiding force and the main body from which the raiding force was sent.

Outpost and Counter Reconnaissance

The cars, when assigned to forces performing these missions, are best used to block avenues of approach and as distant standing patrols.

Protection of and Against Armored Cars

Armored cars are practically proof against .30 caliber rifle and machine gun fire. They fear, and are good targets for, the .50 caliber machine guns, one pounders (37 mm. cannon), anti-tank guns, and artillery. Their protection is in their ability to quickly seek concealment when fired upon by the above mentioned weapons. Troops armed with the ordinary shoulder rifle and machine gun cannot stop armored cars. The troops can place oil on concrete, and water on dirt, road turns, to cause the cars to skid into the ditch. The troops should strive to entice the cars into a trap and by barricading in front of and behind the cars, hold them there until troops arrive that have weapons capable of handling the situation or until sheer force of numbers force the cars to surrender.

At Night

Armored cars are of little value at night except for outpost work. They are constantly in need of minor repairs and overhauling, due to the arduous duties they perform. They are usually called in at night, behind the cavalry, where they meet their supply and maintenance sections and are subjected to thorough inspections. Minor repairing, restocking and refilling, if done every twenty-four hours, will add greatly to the longevity and usefulness of the cars.

Supply

It is needless to say that armored cars need gas, oil, and water above all things. In order to get these necessities to the cars, their supply vehicles should be of two types: heavy cargo carrying trucks that travel with the division service trains, and light delivery type trucks that operate between the heavies and the forward car parks. Call the light trucks the combat train, if desired, and let it accompany the fighting cars as far forward as safety will permit.

Orders

The orders issued by a commander to the armored car commander, differ in no way from orders issued to any other combat unit, except that when they are in writing, they should contain no mention of the plans or mission of our own troops. Armored cars are much like reconnaissance detachments in that they are liable to fall into the hands of the enemy, and should the orders carried by them contain information of our own forces, their capture would be of great assistance to the enemy's intelligence sections.

Training

Armored car personnel must be trained in the handling and minor repairing of their motor cars. It is not difficult to find this type of personnel in a country like ours where the motor car is so extensively used. The first military requisite of armored car personnel is a trained eye for the ground. It is essential for the leaders, and necessary even down to the privates, that they be able to tell at a glance the condition of the roads and the ground on either side of the road, and know whether or not it will carry the load of the cars. The weather, color and nature of the soil, and a study of grades and ditches will tell the car personnel whether they can with safety use roads or terrain for maneuver. The car personnel must all be highly trained in scouting, observation, and intelligence duties.

Armored cars are a new and valuable adjunct to a fighting force and no officer who aspires to higher command or would win battles in future wars, can consider his military education complete unless he has a thorough knowledge of their powers and limitations and the principles of their tactical employment.

The 1926 Endurance Ride

By
Captain JOHN A. WEEKS, Third Cavalry

THE eighth annual Endurance Ride, sponsored by the American Remount Association, Arabian Horse Club of America, Horse Association of America, Kentucky Jockey Club, Thoroughbred Horse Association, Morgan Horse Club, and the United States Cavalry Association, was held October 11-16, 1926, at Brandon, Vermont.

The officials of the Ride were: Mr. Wayne Dinamore, Secretary and Treasurer, Chicago, Illinois; Mr. Lenox D. Barnes, Recorder, Fitzwilliam, New Hampshire; Dr. L. H. Adams, Veterinarian, Montpelier, Vermont; Dr. Herman Phillipsen, Assistant Veterinarian, Brandon, Vermont; Major C. A. Benton, Route Master, New York, New York; Mr. E. H. Moore, Assistant Route Master, Brandon, Vermont; Mr. F. E. Backus, Weigher, Brandon, Vermont.

The judges were: Mr. Allan Case, Toronto, Canada; Dr. W. W. Townsend, Burlington, Vermont; Judge A. F. H. Seeger, of the New York Supreme Court.

While seventeen horses were entered for the ride, two were scratched and one was eliminated on account of lameness, when they appeared for the preliminary examination on Sunday, October 10th.

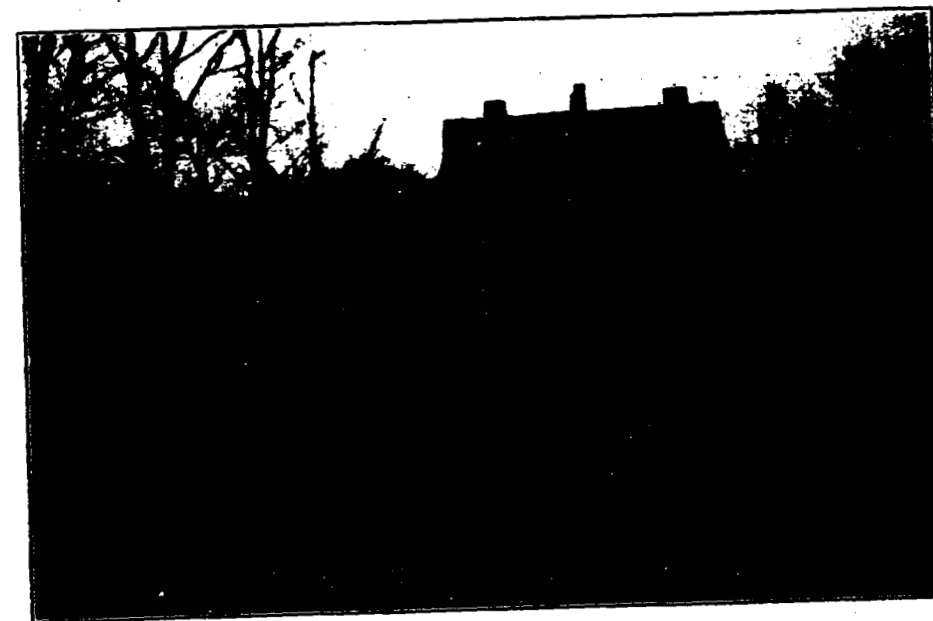
Fourteen horses passed the preliminary examination. They were as follows:

Moccasin. Roan Gelding; grade Thoroughbred; 9 years; height 15-3; weight 1030; sire, *Hermitage*; owner, Captain H. R. Springer, Q. M. C.; rider, 1st Lieut., C. R. Chase.
Stockings. Bay Gelding; grade Thoroughbred; 11 years; height, 15-1; weight, 1075; sire, *Apron Face*; owner, 1st Squadron, 3rd U. S. Cavalry; rider, Sergeant Stanley Blawiecki.
Bunny Boy. Bay Gelding; grade Thoroughbred; 8 years; height, 15-2½; weight, 1045; sire, *Kid Str*; owner, 1st Squadron, 3rd U. S. Cavalry; rider Corporal John Nickerson.
Blue Bell. Chestnut Mare; grade Thoroughbred; 9 years; height, 15-2½; weight, 1035; sire, *Belfroy*; owner, U. S. Remount Service; rider, Sergeant John C. Currie.
Mark Hal. Bay Gelding; Standard Bred; 5 years; height, 15-2½; weight, 1090; sire, *Empire Hal*; Dam, *Hallie Brown*; owner, R. T. M. McCready; rider, James McCready.
Res Ryedyk. Golden Dun Gelding; American Saddle Bred; 8 years; height, 15-3½; weight, 925; sire, *Res Morne*; Dam, *Marigold*; owner, R. T. M. McCready; rider R. T. M. McCready.
Peggy. Bay Mare; grade Thoroughbred; 13 years; height, 15-2½; weight, 1010; sire, *Genadore*; owner, Troop F, 3rd U. S. Cavalry; rider, Sergeant Anthony Quatickey.
Rusty. Buckskin Gelding; Morgan; 13 years; weight, 785; Sire, *Hind's Ethan Allen*; owner, Dr. H. L. Frost; rider, Dr. H. L. Frost.
Babe. Bay Mare; grade Thoroughbred; 10 years; height, 15-2½; weight, 930; sire, *District Attorney*; owner, Headquarters Detachment, 2nd Squadron, 3rd Cavalry; rider, 1st Lieut. G. B. Hudson.
Miss Brandon. Bay Mare; grade Thoroughbred; 8 years; height, 15-1½; weight, 980; sire, *Cock of the Walk*; owner, Service Troop, 3rd U. S. Cavalry; rider, Corporal S. J. Matheson.
Lady Luck. Brown Mare; grade Thoroughbred; 10 years; height, 16-½; weight, 1110; sire, *Foot Print*; owner, Service Troop, 3rd U. S. Cavalry; rider, Sergeant A. E. Rathburn.

THE 1926 ENDURANCE RIDE

Lillian Russell. Chestnut Mare; grade Thoroughbred; 12 years; height, 15-3¼; weight, 1080; bred by British Remount Service; owner, Captain John A. Weeks, 3rd Cavalry; rider, Captain John A. Weeks.
Dolly. Bay Mare; grade Thoroughbred; 7 years; height, 15-3; weight, 1100; sire, *Wilton Lackey*; owner, 16th Field Artillery; rider, Sergeant Anthony Yanonski.
Donicell. Bay Gelding; Morgan; 10 years; height, 15-2; weight, 1020; sire, *Castor*; owner, Captain John C. McDonald; rider, 1st Lieut., Francis P. Tomkins.

In this list of entries it is noted that all but three are from the U. S. Army. On Sunday, October 10th, the preliminary judging took place. All entries were given a thorough examination by the Judges and Veterinarian. They were weighed, measured and all blemishes and minor defects noted and recorded. *Major S.*, a Morgan, which had participated in the 1925 Endurance



Miss Brandon, Winner of the Ride

Ride was found to be lame and was eliminated. The remainder of the entries were then shown under the saddle at the walk, trot, canter, and extended gallop, when any peculiarities of gaits or manner of traveling were noted.

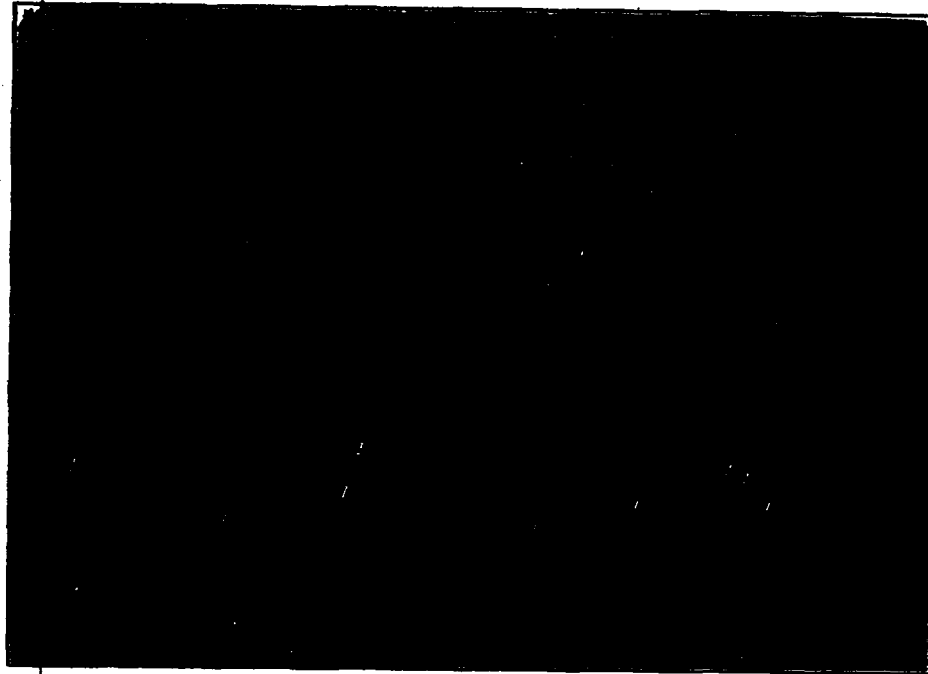
The course covered a distance of 300 miles to be made in five days, an average of 60 miles per day. Each horse carried 225 pounds weight. Nine hours was allotted for completion of each day's ride in perfect time. A penalty of one point was imposed for each 7½ minutes that a contestant was late. The maximum time limit was 11 hours. Each day's course was over a different route. The start each day began in Brandon and after following a circuitous route terminated at the same point. Control stations were established approximately every fifteen miles. At each such station every contesting

horse was stopped long enough for his physical condition to be determined by the Judges.

First Day

The five days ride began Monday morning, the 11th. Fourteen horses and riders left their stables between 7:15 and 7:45 A. M. Lieutenant Tomkins on *Donnell* started promptly at 7:15, followed at intervals by the others. Sergeant Quatickey on *Peggy* checked out at 7:45 and brought up the rear of the procession.

The route led over a hilly section past Lake Dunmore, through East Middlebury and via New Haven Mills to the Morgan Horse Farm a distance of 35.5 miles where the noon day halt of approximately fifteen minutes was



Stockings, Awarded Second Place

made. The return to Brandon was made by way of Middlebury and Leicester Junction. All entries finished on time. *Lady Luck* developed colic and was not started the following morning.

Second Day

Tuesday, the route was much up and down hill and passed through Chittenden and by way of Meadow Lake to Rutland where the noon halt was made at the Rutland Country Club. The return trip was made via Florence

to Brandon.

Moccasin showed evidence of great weakness in the afternoon and Lieutenant Chase withdrew him from the ride about the 38 mile post. Shortly after this *Rusty* fell with his rider, Dr. Frost, and started down the road in the opposite direction at a dead run. An automobile was impressed into service to capture him and when he was brought back Dr. Frost, with a fractured ankle from the fall, painfully mounted and brought his mount in on time. Twelve horses finished in minimum time. Several of them were showing the effects of the grind. *Babe* came in apparently in excellent condition. However, in the early evening it was found that she was lame from some unaccountable injury near the off hock.



Rex Rysdyk, Mr. R. T. M. McCready up, Awarded Third Place

Third Day

On Wednesday *Babe* was unable to start. *Mark Hal* showed such signs of fatigue that he was withdrawn by his owner, Mr. McCready. *Donnell* was foundered and did not start. The route followed by the nine horses remaining was through Sudbury and Orwell Village to Shoreham where the noon halt was made. Dr. Frost attempted to continue the ride but the injury received the previous day became so painful that he was forced, after fifteen miles, to turn his mount over to Lieutenant Chase to complete the ride. The return route was made via Cornwall and Salisbury. All horses came in on time

except *Dolly*, which had been ridden a few miles off the course during the morning and came in 20 minutes late.

Fourth Day

Thursday, the day was a real test. There were two mountains with an altitude over 2100 feet to climb. The route was mostly up hill during the morning over Rochester and Bread Loaf mountains. *Dolly* and *Rusty* showed such great evidence of fatigue at the noon halt that they were withdrawn. The return to Brandon was mostly down hill and via Leicester Junction. *Lillian Russell* developed a strained tendon which caused her to favor her off



Peggy, Awarded Fourth Place

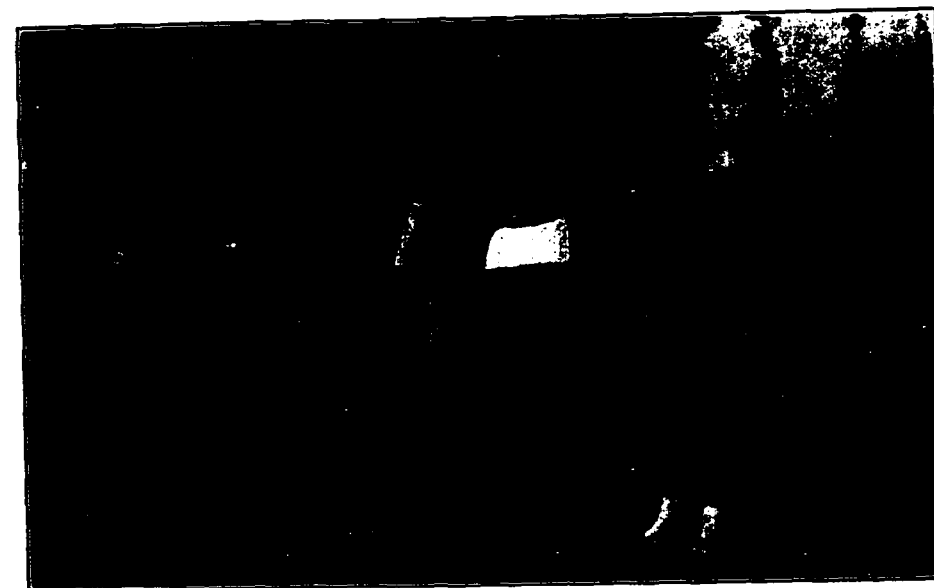
fore when traveling over rough going. *Peggy* fell at about the 56 mile post, caused by loose gravel on a sharp decline on the crest of the road rolling her foot over. She received cuts over the eye, on the point of the shoulder, and knee. The other horses showed marked evidence of the severe strain. All finished on time.

Fifth Day

Friday, the final day of the ride, saw seven horses start on the last 60 miles of the 300 mile test. The route led via Beebe Lake, Hubbardton, Bomo-seen Village, Castleton Corners, Hydeville, and to Mountain View Stock Farm where the noon halt was made. The return trip was made through Orwell

Village, Abels Corners and by Lake Hortonia, and over Breakneck Hill into Brandon.

At the 42 mile post *Blue Bell* showed signs of excessive fatigue and was withdrawn. Six horses finished. They had made the 300 mile journey in the minimum time of 45 hours. All had a perfect score of 40 for time. As there were six prizes to be awarded it was certain that all six entries had placed. As soon as the horses got in they were again weighed but the weight at this



Bunny Boy, Awarded Fifth Place

time was not given out by the judges.

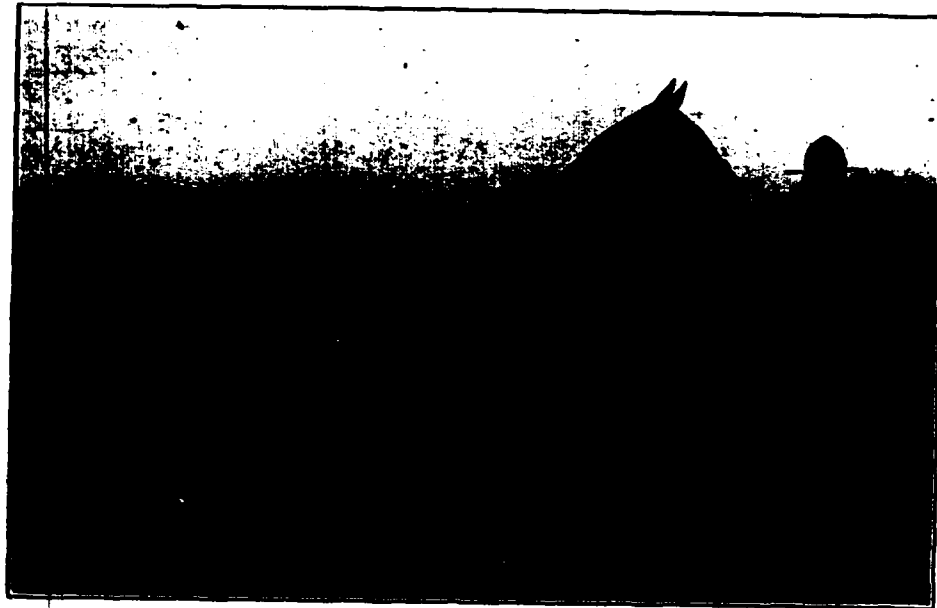
Final Judging

At 7:00 A. M., Saturday, October 15th, the final judging began. The horses individually were led up from the stables on the halter and shown at the walk and trot. Some stepped along very lively while others showed considerable evidence of stiffness. Up to this time no rider, groom or owner had been allowed access to the horses, the feeding and watering having been done by the guard under the supervision of the Judges. The horses were then groomed and later weighed, after which they were shown under the saddle at the walk, trot, canter, and extended gallop.

Dr. Paul Moody, President of Middlebury College, announced the winners and presented the trophies in the Public Square of Brandon.

The awards were as follows:

- First, *Miss Brandon*—Speed 40, Condition 59. Total 99.
 Second, *Stockings*—Speed 40, Condition 55. Total 95.
 Third, *Rex Rysdyk*—Speed 40, Condition 53. Total 93.
 Fourth, *Peggy*—Speed 40, Condition 51. Total 91.
 Fifth, *Bunny Boy*—Speed 40, Condition 44. Total 84.
 Sixth, *Lillian Russell*—Speed 40, Condition 40. Total 80.



Lillian Russell, Awarded Sixth Place

The prizes were as follows: First prize \$600.00, the Second Mounted Service Cup, Arabian Horse Club Medal, The Morgan Horse Club Medal, and the Morgan Horse Club Trophy; second prize, \$500.00, and the Morgan Horse Club Trophy; third prize, \$400.00, and The Morgan Horse Club Trophy; fourth prize, \$300.00; fifth prize, \$200.00; sixth prize, \$100.00.

There was a prize of \$100.00 in gold to the rider who showed the best horsemanship during the ride without regard to his position at the finish. This prize was awarded Corporal Samuel J. Matheson, Troop F, 3rd U. S. Cavalry, the rider of *Miss Brandon*. A prize of \$100.00 in gold was given by Mr. and Mrs. R. J. Gladdings of Providence, Rhode Island, for the rider bringing his horse home in the best condition. This prize was also awarded Corporal Matheson.

It may be of interest to note the effect of the ride on the horses as regards weight. The following in sequence is the weight of the horses at the

preliminary judging, at the completion of the ride, and at the final judging.

<i>Miss Brandon</i>	930— 895— 895—total loss, 35 pounds,
<i>Stockings</i>	1075—1010—1020—total loss, 55 pounds,
<i>Rex Rysdyk</i>	925— 890— 890—total loss, 35 pounds,
<i>Peggy</i>	1010— 980— 995—total loss, 15 pounds,
<i>Bunny Boy</i>	1005— 950— 965—total loss, 40 pounds,
<i>Lillian Russell</i>	1080—1050—1060—total loss, 20 pounds,

By *Miss Brandon's* success the Third United States Cavalry becomes the permanent possessor of the Mounted Service Cup, it having been won by *Peggy* in 1924 and 1925.

This was the initial Endurance Ride for *Miss Brandon*, *Stockings* and *Bunny Boy*; the second for *Rex Rysdyk*, he having won 4th place in 1925; and the third for *Lillian Russell*, she having won 3rd place in 1924 and 1925. *Peggy* has the unique distinction of being the only horse to have won the cup twice.

In training horses for the Endurance Ride, a regular schedule of exercise and feed is essential to properly condition the animals.

The schedule which has been used by the 3rd Cavalry team at Fort Myer, Virginia, during the past three years, and which was prepared by Captain Jean R. Underwood, V. C., and to whom most credit is due for the Fort Myer team winning during the last three years, is shown below.

1st and 2nd Week:

- A. M. Monday, Wednesday, Friday. Eight miles at six miles per hour.
 Tuesday, Thursday, Saturday. Twelve miles at six miles per hour.
 175 pounds up.
 P. M. One hour walk. 15 minutes grazing. Sunday, one hour walk, 15 minutes grazing.

3rd Week:

- A. M. Monday, Wednesday, Friday. Walk one mile. Trot and canter 3 miles (1-3 canter, 2-3 trot), then 6 miles at 6 miles per hour.
 175 pounds up.
 Tuesday, Thursday, Saturday. 12 miles at 6 miles per hour.
 Sunday. One hour walk. 15 minutes grazing.
 P. M. One hour walk. No extra weight.

4th and 5th Week:

- A. M. Monday, Wednesday, Friday. One mile walk, 3 miles trot and canter (1-3 canter, 2-3 trot), then 6 miles at 6 miles per hour.
 175 pounds up.
 Tuesday, Thursday, Saturday. 15 miles at 6 miles per hour. 190 pounds up.
 P. M. One hour walk. Sunday, one hour walk. No grazing. No extra weight.

6th Week:

A. M. Monday, Wednesday, Friday. Walk one mile, trot and canter 3 miles (1-3 canter, 2-3 trot), then 6 miles at 6 miles per hour. 175 pounds up.

Tuesday, Thursday, Saturday. 15 miles at 6 miles per hour. 200 pounds up.

P. M. One hour walk. No extra weight.

7th Week:

A. M. Sunday, Tuesday, Thursday. Walk one mile, trot and canter 3 miles (½ canter, ½ trot), then 8 miles at 6½ miles per hour. 175 pounds up.

Monday, Wednesday. 18 miles at 6½ miles per hour with 205 pounds up.

Friday. 40 miles in 6 hours with 225 pounds up. Weigh horses before starting and after finishing. Give Veterinary examination.

Saturday. Inspect, weigh, and give two hours walk.

P. M. One hour walk except Friday. Further training should be same as 6th week, except full weight should be carried on days when no cantering is done.

The horses were fed in accordance with each animal's individual need up to 14 pounds of oats and 14 pounds of hay. The animals were fed oats four times daily—at 6:00 A. M., 11:30 A. M., 4:30 P. M., and 8:30 P. M. Hay was fed—2 pounds at 11:00 A. M., and 12 pounds at 4:00 P. M. A small quantity of bran was also fed during the first two weeks of training.

Prior to the ride all horses were clipped, except a small patch on the back corresponding to the size of the saddle blanket which gave additional padding for the saddle.

In shoeing it was found best to use light shoes. The shoes on the hind feet were prepared with a clip, while on the front feet the rocker toe was used.

As regards equipment, the training saddle or officers field saddles were used. Weight was made up by use of weight pads with pockets in which lead slabs were inserted, or weight was placed in the pommel pockets. In some cases lead plates were placed around the stirrups and this covered with leather. In this way a pair of stirrups could be made to weigh 15 pounds. McClellan stirrups with the hood removed were used.

In the eight rides which have been held, first place has been won several times by mares and only once by a gelding.

The requirements are that the Mounted Service Cup must be won three times by an owner's entries before he becomes the permanent possessor of the cup. In 1923 the First Mounted Service Cup was awarded permanently to Mr. W. R. Brown, who won the cup three times with Arab entries. The Second Mounted Service Cup which was awarded permanently to the Third United States Cavalry this year was won three times by grade thoroughbreds.

Extracts from the Annual Report of the Chief of Cavalry

SINCE reporting for duty as Chief of Cavalry I have inspected all cavalry units of the regular establishment, and, in general, found them to be in an efficient and satisfactory condition.

In general, I believe that the cavalry of today is a better cavalry than that of pre-World War days, and I believe this condition is due entirely to the Cavalry School. I believe our equipment is better and is being better cared for, horses better trained, and tactical knowledge vastly superior to pre-war days.*****

Formerly the impression prevailed that all horses should have earth standings and not those of brick or concrete. It now seems to be an almost universal impression that more foot trouble develops from the old type earth stall than develops with the brick or concrete stall. In future construction this should be borne in mind and, when funds permit, this condition should be corrected wherever it exists in our present stables by providing permanent picket line and stable standings.****

Marching and the care of the horse and the soldier in the field are a most important part of a cavalryman's training. I believe it could well be emphasized to the exclusion of less important phases of training. Due to present-day conditions we have far less of it than formerly.***

An extensive study of the present organization is now being made with a view to reducing to a minimum the overhead personnel.***

The efficiency of the cavalry has been furthered during the past fiscal year, by the replacement of many unserviceable animals; progress in the supply of Phillips standard pack saddles which were adopted during the fiscal year 1925; the development, adoption and supply of the cavalry combat pack loads fitted to these saddles; and the replacement of the Browning automatic rifle with the Browning machine rifle.

The replacement of unserviceable animals with an excellent grade of remounts, has been accomplished through close co-operation with the Remount Service, Quartermaster Corps. The issue and development of pack loads and accessories fitted to the Phillips standard pack saddles has met with such progress that the Cavalry Division has been furnished practically its entire quota of pack equipment. The replacement of the Browning automatic rifle with the Browning machine rifle has been completed during the past fiscal year, and all cavalry organizations are now equipped with the latter type of weapon.

Work has been carried on in an effort to increase efficiency at a minimum expense, the consideration of new articles and designs being a step towards the revision of tables of allowances which will result in a reduction or elimination of unnecessary equipment. In this connection, profitable tests were conducted covering important items of equipment. During all projects a strict economic program has been carried out in accordance with the wishes of the Chief Executive.

The Cavalry School

Brigadier General Edward L. King was relieved as Commandant of The Cavalry School, Fort Riley, Kansas, June 30, 1925, and was succeeded by Brigadier General Ewing E. Booth. Under the administration of General Booth, the Cavalry School has maintained throughout the year its high state of morale and efficiency. As in the preceding year, there were courses conducted as follows: Advanced Course; Troop Officers' Course; Special Advanced Equitation Course; Advanced Course for National Guard and Reserve Officers; Troop Officers' Course for National Guard and Reserve Officers; Horsehoers' Course; and Saddlers' Course. The last two courses named, are for enlisted men. They have not been worked to capacity on account of the lack of transportation funds. It is believed that more men from other branches should be sent to attend these courses. Excellent progress has been made in all departments of the Cavalry School, and the results can be seen throughout the cavalry service.

The Cavalry Board has performed much important work in the preparation and revision of training regulations and the development and testing of equipment. The Board has handled also many miscellaneous questions which have arisen. It has been of great assistance in all work pertaining to training, armament and equipment.

The Cavalry Division

Although the Cavalry Division is not directly under the jurisdiction of the Chief of Cavalry, it has performed such excellent work during the past year in conjunction with the work of the Cavalry Board, directed towards the development, testing, improvement, and adoption of equipment, and suggestions on organization and various phases of training, that it is desired in this report to invite attention to its splendid achievements. The Cavalry Division has maintained a state of high efficiency and readiness for field service. It has proved to be a splendid school of instruction for all commanders. The *esprit* of the division has kept pace with its other accomplishments.

The maneuvers held in 1923 have fully repaid for the expense involved. Every effort should be made to secure funds to hold these maneuvers annually, and to make available transportation funds in order that officers

from the Cavalry School and from other cavalry regiments may attend and be benefitted as observers and used as umpires.

The Organized Reserves

There are at present ninety-nine Regular cavalry officers on duty with the Organized Reserves. Of this total, substantially more than half are on duty with the Cavalry Organized Reserve. This office has exercised great care in the selection of officers for this duty. The result can be seen in the extensive, intelligent, and truly patriotic labors of the officers selected. Many means to arouse and maintain interest have been utilized. Especially during the inactive training period is it necessary to resort to diversified methods. Attractive bulletins have been published. Horse show and polo teams have been organized. Correspondence courses have been encouraged. Rifle and pistol competitions have been held, and many other means employed to maintain interest. In this connection, it is desired to invite attention to the helpful influence of National Guard organizations, as well as the Regular cavalry regiments, all of which have contributed to the instruction and pleasure of the Reserve Officers by making available for their use, equipment, armories, and even mounts. During the year, 429 Cavalry Reserve officers received training at camps or posts. 14 enlisted men from the 26th Cavalry, Philippine Scouts, are among those holding Cavalry Reserve commissions.

A paragraph from the last annual report of the Chief of Cavalry on this subject is quoted below, in view of the fact that it is believed to express the very best method of training Reserve officers—a method which should be encouraged at all cavalry stations: "The most efficient and economical method of training Cavalry Reserve officers on active duty is to send them to cavalry posts and require the Reserve officers to perform the actual duties incident to training and administration appropriate to their rank, under the supervision of Regular Army officers. During the latter part of the period of such instruction it has been found possible to turn over to the Reserve officers the entire administration and training of the appropriate units without any serious detriment to the organizations concerned."

The National Guard

Liaison has been maintained with the Militia Bureau in regard to organization and training of National Guard cavalry. Reports indicate that the forty-eight cavalry officers of the Regular Army on duty with the National Guard are accomplishing satisfactory results. Two National Guard cavalry officers attended the Advanced Course, and thirteen the Troop Officers' Course at the Cavalry School.

Cavalry Reserve Officers' Training Corps units throughout the country, except the New Mexico Military Academy at Roswell, New Mexico, have been inspected and made the subject of a separate report. The travel expense involved precluded the making of an inspection of the New Mexico Military

Academy. All of the units inspected were found to be in a satisfactory condition. An officer from this office was a member of the War Department Board inspecting twenty-seven colleges in the Third Army Area for the purpose of determining Distinguished Colleges. During the year 196 students from the Reserve Officers' Training Corps were commissioned in the Reserve. As the War Department study contemplates a necessary annual replacement of 381, it can be seen that either additional enrollment or more units are required. In the two preceding reports of the Chief of Cavalry, the establishment of three additional mounted units has been recommended. This recommendation is repeated. As the present appropriation bill prohibits the establishment of additional mounted units, it would be necessary to have the prohibition omitted from the bill.

The curtailment of advanced course enrollment has had an injurious effect on the entire Reserve Officers' Training Corps project. The reduction of the number of men on the Detached Enlisted Mens' List has caused reductions in the number of men on duty with Cavalry R. O. T. C. units, with a consequent failure to keep horses and equipment in the condition desired. It must be recognized that the impression Reserve Officers' Training Corps students receive in regard to care of animals and equipment will be a lasting one, and accordingly there should be sufficient men to maintain animals and equipment in proper condition. There are approximately sixty horses to each unit, and a detachment of seventeen men is necessary—1 stable sergeant; 1 horseshoer; and fifteen privates. This allotment gives each private the care of four horses and equipment, in addition to fatigue details, such as stable police, etc. As horses are used several times daily, a detachment of smaller size results in insufficient care of both horses and equipment.

The work of the Citizens' Military Training Camps has produced satisfactory results. While the Reserve Officers' Training Corps may produce, on the whole, better trained officers, the Citizens' Military Training Camps retain their immense popularity with the public, and open the way towards a commission to young men not fortunate enough to receive college training. It is believed that when young men indicate their desire to attend a Cavalry Citizens' Military Training Camp, it is done in anticipation of much riding and instruction in riding. Insistence on the actual fundamentals of horsemanship should be the keynote to cavalry instruction in Citizens' Military Training Camps. Adequate equipment and a sufficient number of animals should always be made available for such use.

Improvised Radio Equipment for National Guard Cavalry

By

Captain KRAMER THOMAS, Cavalry

WHEN spring came this last year, with resumption of the mounted season and preparation for camp, the 105th Cavalry found itself again confronted with the same old problem; no suitable radio equipment. The economy program had denied us, in common with all other National Guard cavalry, anything in the nature of modern portable radio. In considering plans for camp we had decided to undertake some squadron and regimental problems that would illustrate likely employments for modern cavalry; but modern cavalry requires modern radio, so here was our problem. Knowing the impossibility of getting through regular supply channels, pack-type radio sets that would work, it seemed like a hopeless proposition until two enlisted men of the regiment, Sergeant Hatch and Private Pergande, said that they could build sets that would be portable, reliable and inexpensive. The Regimental Commander gave these men permission to go ahead, and the results obtained are, I believe, of interest to the National Guard cavalry generally.

Three sets were built, one for the Headquarters Troop and one for each Squadron Headquarters Detachment. The total cost of the three sets was about one hundred dollars. Each outfit consisted of a set-box measuring 12 inches x 12 inches x 18 inches, containing one tube and the necessary "innards" of a radio set. The "A" battery power was supplied by four ordinary two volt dry cells of the type used for operating door bells, etc. The "B" voltage was supplied by six Signal Corps dry cells issued for the purpose. The ground was a counterpoise wire about thirty feet long, and the antennae was a similar wire held up on one end by a mast made of three five foot sections of three-quarter inch and two five foot sections of half inch G. I. water pipe. Two light cotton guy ropes in addition to the antennae wire, support the mast.

The set is carried on one horse. In fact it is so light that in addition to the radio set, each squadron detachment carried all its signal equipment on the same horse. Two pack boxes were used on each horse, suspended from an improvised engineer saddle secured to an issue aparejo. Quarterstraps and a cincha secured the boxes down snugly. Each box was fitted with compartments to hold its particular article. Thus in the squadron outfits, there were compartments for the radio set box, telephones, batteries, buzzers, telephone

wire, antennae, guy ropes, etc. The loads were evenly balanced between the two boxes and the knocked-down mast sections were secured to brackets under the off pack-box. The total load on each horse is about one hundred seventy-five pounds. Were airplane panels issued to the Regiment, they could be carried as a top load. The Headquarters Troop had two packs, carrying between them a switchboard, three spools of wire, a radio set, telephones, buzzers, repair kits, breast-reels, telephone grounds, etc. In addition, one of the packs was rigged up with a carriage so that wire could be reeled out from the animal's back. With this equipment, the Regiment and both the squadrons had immediately available their complete signal equipment for use on the march or in combat.

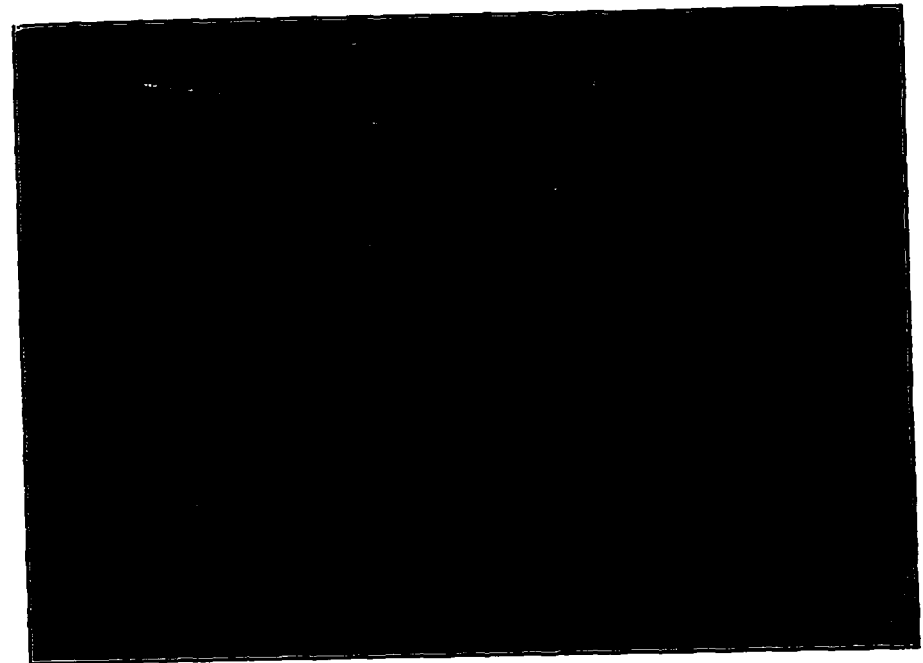


The Pack

The pack carries the complete radio set, two buzzers, a telephone, a spool of wire, repair kit, spare batteries, etc. The sections of pipe shown are the mast.

The radio sets are of the short wave, low loss type and operate on forty meters wave length. While no real distance tests have been made as yet, the sets have given excellent results at all distances used, communication having been easily established at about ten miles without apparent diminution of volume or clarity. Signals from broadcasting stations have been heard over the sets from distances of more than five hundred miles. The same set and tube operates as a sending or receiving unit at the turning of a small switch.

The set is much simpler to operate than is the Army SCR 127 set, is smaller and lighter, and requires considerably less time to put up or take down, besides requiring a smaller crew. The fact that it requires but one pack horse is significant to the Guard where horses are usually very limited in number.

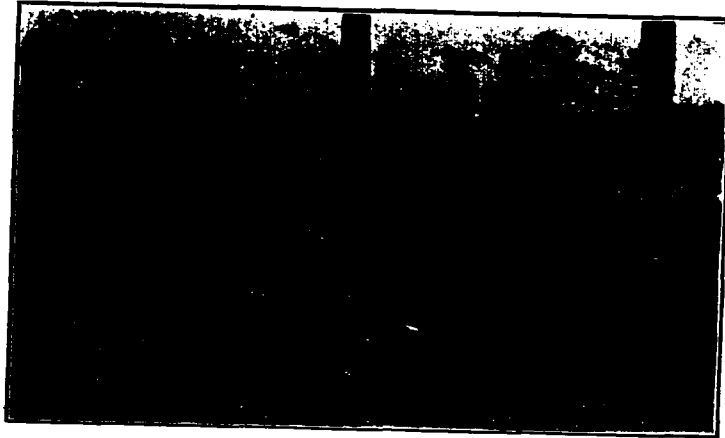


The Set in Operation

This light, one tube, radio set, operating entirely on dry batteries and requiring only one horse to carry it, lends itself well to the needs of National Guard Cavalry.

With this equipment at camp much interest was shown by all communications specialists and they were given a very thorough course in their respective tasks. At the end of camp, a regimental march was undertaken involving a communications problem, the radio phase of which is worth recording as illustrative of what the radio sets will do. The Regiment was assumed to have been detailed to march east to guard the crossings of a nearby river against a large Red force known to be marching west. One radio set was left in camp with an officer and represented the balance of the Brigade. The Regiment marched to a point covering what the Regimental Commander deemed to be the most likely crossing for the enemy, while one troop with a radio set attached, was sent by another route to a crossing several miles down river.

When these positions had been reached, the sets were set up and communication was promptly established from Regimental Headquarters to the detached troop and Brigade Headquarters. Messages, written by the instructors, and up to that time kept secret, were then given to the different units, as though received from patrols, etc., indicating that, the enemy would attempt a crossing at a point between the Regiment and the detached troop. This information was promptly gotten to the Regimental Commander by radio



A Message Coming In
Regimental Commander and his staff awaiting a message.

and by him radio-ed to the Brigade. He then decided to march at once to the threatened crossing with the Regiment, directing the detached troop by radio to meet the command there. Another radio message informed the Brigade commander of the Regimental Commander's decision, and a replying radio-gram stated that the Brigade would march at once to reinforce the Regiment. The march distances and gaits were so nicely judged that the heads of the three columns met simultaneously at the rendezvous, the location of which, and the time of assembly having been designated solely by radio. All messages went through quickly and correctly.

The Cavalry School Hunt Race Meeting and the Training of Steeplechasers

By

Major E. M. WHITING, Second Cavalry

THE Cavalry School Hunt Race Meeting on October 21st and 23rd was quite successful in many important respects. Its mission was to provide a variety of mounted sport that would be new to the school and the community, to provide a race course that would be creditable to the school, to demonstrate the schooling and conditioning of horses for steeplechasing, to raise funds for general athletic purposes, and to stimulate the breeding of good horses locally.

The first three parts of the mission were fully accomplished; the heavy expense of the second part, together with the amount of money expended for suitable prizes, precluded the accomplishment of the fourth part, while time alone will show whether or not the fifth and last part has been accomplished. The community, represented largely by the neighboring town of Junction City, supported the project wholeheartedly, closing all stores on the first afternoon of racing and attending en masse. There is no doubt of the popularity of racing in Junction City.

The total paid admissions were about \$2000.00, which was sufficient to cover all expenses and leave a profit of about \$250.00. The second and third prizes for the officers' steeplechases, which were four in number, cost \$300.00, and the cash purses for the four flat races and the enlisted men's steeplechase amounted to \$415.00. It should be stated in the beginning that the four handsome pieces of plate for the winners of the officers' steeplechases presented by Lieut. Col. Pierre Lorillard, Jr., QM-ORC, Mr. John McE. Bowman, President, United Hunts Racing Association, Mr. Richard H. Williams, President, American Remount Association, and that internationally known horseman and sportsman, Mr. Thomas Hitchcock, went far toward stimulating the interest of officers in the meeting. Seldom do winners of steeplechases receive such handsome trophies, and the fact that men of such prominence in the field of mounted sports approved the project, gave it a powerful impetus.

Having decided to hold a race meeting, the Commandant placed a field officer in charge of all arrangements, which included the conditioning and schooling of the horses, the construction of the course, the arrangement of the program, and the actual supervision of the racing, which was held under the sanction and rules of The Hunts Committee of The National Steeplechase and Hunt Association.

On the morning of September 1st, a non-commissioned officer and six privates of the Second Cavalry reported as attendants; on the afternoon of the

same day, the horses arrived, were placed in a vacant stable set apart for the purpose, and the work begun.

The first question asked by a trainer of the owner of newly arrived horses, is of what work they were doing immediately prior to arrival at the training stable. This question was quickly answered. With the exception of the two private horses of the trainer, they had been doing nothing, having been brought in from pasture the day before, and on account of a poor season for grass, all were thin. All of the horses were three-quarter bred or better; all but three had received more or less schooling, though not at speed; the three unschooled ones were cast-off runaway polo ponies whose only schooling had been over the backboards of the polo field. Over the past performances of this embryo racing stable, it is best to drop a veil of obscurity, and state that though of ripe years, all were maidens.

The conditioning of a prospective race horse must be built up by proper feeding and road work before he may be galloped on a track, so the entire stable was given from ten to fifteen miles daily on the road and across the fields, grazed for an hour in the afternoon, and fed three pounds of crushed oats five times daily. At the end of fifteen days road work, the rate of travel increasing gradually from six to ten miles per hour, the horses showed signs of fitness, and were ready for their first schooling over low jumps. On the 16th day of training, the entire stable was taken to one of the school courses for green jumpers, consisting of a three foot hedge, a three foot post and rail, and three small ditches. Led by the known jumpers, the whole stable went slowly over these jumps, traveling in the direction away from stables. The three ex-polo ponies looked over the jumps as they approached them, and followed their stable companions cheerfully enough. After a half mile warming gallop, the horses were divided into three groups of five each, each group in turn being taken up at the walk to look at the first jump, then given a galloping start—and their heads. All doubts as to the ability of the ex-polo ponies were quickly dispelled when each took the lead of her respective group and jumped in real racing form—running.

Two days later, this schooling was repeated, and on the 20th day of training, the horses were taken one by one over a schooling course consisting in order, of a hedge, three feet eight inches high; a Liverpool or open ditch, consisting of a hedge of the same dimensions as the first, but with a ditch five feet wide and one foot deep, guarded by a single rail, in front of the hedge; the third and last jump being a water jump, eight feet wide with a two and a half foot hedge in front of it, just high enough to conceal the water until the horse is about to rise for the jump. These jumps were placed about two hundred yards apart. The horses were taken up together and shown the first two jumps, then all were taken to a point about a hundred yards beyond and directly opposite the water jump, the riders dismounted and one at a time, each horse was given a short warming gallop and sent over the three jumps, thus galloping toward his stable companions who apparently watched the

performance with interest.

Each horse having demonstrated his ability to jump the course, they then were sent over the course twice a week in pairs, in order to accustom them, after a fashion, to jumping in company. These three schooling jumps were too narrow for more than two green horses to take at a time. After going over the small schooling course in pairs, three times on as many different days, including one morning when the going was very wet and slippery, resulting in one fall and much slipping by all, schooling was begun on the regular course, which by that time was ready. It consisted of four ordinary hedges, four feet high, three feet wide; Liverpool or open ditch, consisting of a ditch five feet wide, two feet deep, guarded by an oak board, one foot high and three inches thick, with a regular hedge on the landing side; and a regular water jump, twelve feet wide, with a two foot, eight inch hedge on the take-off side. The water was two feet deep on the side next the hedge, and tapered off to no depth on the landing.

As this course was unfortunately between four and five miles distant from the stable, this distance had to be considered in determining the length of gallop and number of jumps to be taken in the twice-a-week schooling, so that the first schooling included only the first two hedges, and the number of jumps taken was increased each time until they finally went a turn of the field. It is worthy of note here, that while the horses were shown the jumps before being sent over them, they were never shown the water jump, and they got their first view of that jump while approaching it in company and at high speed. Once a horse has jumped water, he will seldom hesitate afterward, if he is sent at it fast, but once a horse has taken a dislike to a type of jump, he may never be depended upon to go over that jump afterward. First impressions are lasting. Another point to be stressed is, that when a good jumper refuses, there is generally some cause for the refusal. He should be ridden once more at the jump immediately after the refusal, and if he refuses again, do not get up a fight with him, but take him quietly away, and try to discover the cause of refusal. The chances are that he will jump all right the next time he is schooled. An unwilling jumper never will win a steeplechase; he may go a mile or so, but as soon as he tires, he will run out or refuse.

But to return to the training. At the beginning of the third week of training, the long slow gallops so essential to steeplechasers were begun. Since horses should not be worked, or required to make an effort more often than twice a week, and the fact that the nine and a half miles to be traversed in going to and returning from the course, made the trip and the schooling combined, quite an effort, great care had to be taken not to overdo the galloping on the flat on other than schooling days. A compromise had to be made. They were given from two to three miles slow gallop on the well turfed Smoky Hill flat, with from a quarter to a half mile breeze at the end of each slow gallop. Here, also, existed a situation unlike that at a regular race track. The only possible galloping ground was nearly a mile and a half from the

stable, and shortage of riders and grooms made it impossible to give the horses that immediate quick rub and massage of muscles and tendons given at a regular race track after a gallop.

The cavalryman must adapt himself to conditions as he finds them; so did these riders adapt themselves. Immediately upon pulling up, the rider dismounted, loosened the girths, and led out toward stables. After leading half a mile, he remounted and rode the remaining mile at the walk, and generally, the horses were nearly cool upon arrival at the stable. Upon arrival at the stable, the horse was given about five minutes vigorous rub with a piece of rough towel, given a few swallows of water, covered with a light cooling blanket well pinned about the throat and chest, walked about the corral until cool within as well as without. During the walk, they were given water, a few swallows at a time, so that by the time the walk was over, the water lost by sweating had been replaced. Later, all horses were given a thorough grooming. In training, the condition of coat is one of the best guides to a correct estimate of the general health and fitness. Although the conditioning of these horses began in extremely hot weather, and ended in quite cold weather, there was not a single case of cold among them. The brisk exercise and rubbing kept the hair short, so that they cooled quickly, and were kept in motion while cooling.

At the termination of the fifteen days of roadwork, when schooling and faster work began, and on account of the risk that some horse might through accident be fed grain too shortly before or after a gallop, it was decided to return to feeding three times daily, instead of five, and the amount fed was regulated only by the appetites of the individual horses—they were given all that they would eat, the amounts varying from sixteen to twenty pounds of oats daily; the amounts consumed varying with amount of work done and the size of the horse.

Great care was taken that no horse was saddled for work until an hour had elapsed after feeding, nor was any horse fed grain until perfectly cool. Hay may be given immediately after work, but not grain. The amount of hay fed was gradually decreased during the last two weeks of work, until only about two-thirds of the normal amount was fed, and on the evening before a workout or race, no hay at all was fed, and only a half feed of grain given for the feed next preceding a work-out or race. A full feed of grain followed too closely by fast work is one of the surest ways of producing bleeders. Zinc feed boxes were used, and kept scrupulously clean at all times. Whenever a horse failed to eat all of his grain, the matter was looked into immediately. Loss of appetite indicates something wrong, and something must be done about it; among other things, the work must be reduced until his appetite returns.

For the first three weeks of training, the horses were shod with the lightest issue shoes available, on account of the long slow road and cross country work, and at the end of three weeks, they were shod with the light rim steel shoes that are used on the School polo ponies, and without heels on

the hind shoes. Omitting the heels or caulks behind was an ill-advised experiment, the only hope of success of which was the possibility that the rim steel would provide sufficient grip for the take-off. As long as the shoes held their sharp edge, and the going was just right, no difficulty was encountered, but the first time the going was slippery, it was found that like most departures from long established and well tried customs, the omission of heels or caulks was a mistake. The proper shoeing of all horses is of the utmost importance, particularly the shoeing of race horses, and failure to keep their feet comparatively short by means of shoeing at three week intervals, will invariably result in damaged tendons. The feet should be kept perfectly clean at all times, and the shoes inspected before and after work, in order that a loose shoe may receive prompt attention.

It is not possible to cover in any one article the subject of the care and training of racehorses, nor was it possible under the conditions to develop the power and speed of each of these horses to the maximum, but it is a fact that these horses were able to stand a hard drive of a two mile steeplechase the first day, and either a two and a quarter or three mile steeplechase the next racing day, which was the second day following the first racing day, and they carried weights of from 161 to 165 pounds over jumps that loomed up big to horses of their small size and limited experience. And further, with the exception of one horse that was injured on a jump on the first racing day, every horse was ready to start again after a day of rest following the second day of racing.

There is one unalterable principle governing the preparation of horses or any other animal, man included, for any sort of test, and that principle is *building up* instead of *using up* the strength and endurance of the animal, and remember in the case of race horses, that many a race is lost by too many long fast trials. Never work your horse to the limit of his power, and on the day of the race, in that last bitter half mile, that reserve that you have carefully built up and conserved, will take him to the finish at the maximum pace of which he is capable, and an angel can do no more than that.

It is not possible to learn horsemanship by reading books or looking at pictures, but one can add greatly to his store of practical information by study of the experience of others, and his own actual experience will enable him to quickly recognize and understand what he reads or sees. A careful study of photographs of professional steeplechase jockeys in action, will indicate the correct seat, length of rein, etc., and after the novice has ridden a race or two, he will find that the way of the professional with a horse is for the purpose the correct way.

The outstanding characteristics of a good steeplechase rider are courage, alertness and patience. Cavalry led by officers possessing these characteristics will uphold the honorable traditions of The Mounted Service.

The National Western Endurance Ride---1926

By

Colonel H. R. RICHMOND, 13th Cavalry

THE National Western Endurance Ride for 1926, was held at Colorado Springs, Colorado, during five consecutive days, from September 13th to 17th, inclusive. On the morning of the 18th the judges rendered their decision, the time factor counting 40%, the condition of horses, 60%.

The following were the judges: Mr. Richard Waring, of New York and Texas; Mr. Charles Carey, of Cheyenne, Wyoming; Mr. John Williams, of the Department of Animal Husbandry, Washington, D. C.

The following were the entrants:

From Troop A, 13th Cavalry: *Tomahawk*. Bay Gelding; 8 years; height 15-3½; weight, 1150; sire *Lebold*; dam, a half Morgan and half Standardbred mare; rider, Sergeant Thomas Garrity.

From the 4th Cavalry, Fort Meade:

Abject, ridden by Captain Norman E. Fiske.

Stella, ridden by Sergeant Krokaski.

Betty, ridden by Corporal Cardin.

Whistler, entered as a substitute.

From Fort Riley: *Vamp*, ridden by Private Del Harris, Veterinary Corps.

From Colorado Springs: *Ranger*, ridden by Mr. W. Johns.

From St. Mathews: *Irene Castle*, ridden by Mr. Phillip Cole.

From Cripple Creek: *Prince*, ridden by Mr. Frank Gerard.

In the 1925 ride, *Tomahawk*, ridden by Sergeant Garrity, had won third place; he might have won first place had he not suffered a loss of thirty-five pounds in weight, and a sore back due to the breaking of the dee ring of one stirrup strap during the fourth day, which caused his rider to have to ride several miles with one stirrup only. With the experience gained, however, Sergeant Garrity came home in 1925, determined to enter for 1926 and to win first place.

In March, 1926, Sergeant Garrity commenced to condition and train *Tomahawk*. In the stall he kept hay and fresh water available for the horse at all times. Oats were fed four times a day, working up to a total of fourteen pounds daily; three pounds at 5:30 A. M.; three at 11:30 A. M.; four at 4:30 P. M. (boiled oats at this feed, adding a little salt and a little bran), and four pounds at 8:00 P. M. During the training period, close attention was given to the horse's legs; a total of four bottles of absorbine and about three gallons of witch hazel, mixed, with a little vinegar and saltpeter added, was used for washing and hand rubbing the legs. After each washing and hand rubbing, loose bandages were kept on the legs for three hours.

The horse was taken out daily, at the walk, the distance each day varying from ten to thirty miles, according to the condition and action of the horse.

118

Then followed walks of three and one-half hours duration daily, with stripped saddle; followed by the same with the saddle packed, less rifle and saber. This was followed by a thirty day period of walking and trotting, covering a distance of about eighteen miles a day at the rate of about five miles an hour. Then, six days out of each week, over a period of thirty days, the horse was trotted from eight to ten miles without a stop. During the next period of thirty days, the same general procedure was followed, introducing, in addition, an occasional fifty mile trip in eight hours. As a result of a fifty mile trip, the horse's legs filled in the side gaskins; so the shoes were pulled, the tendons and hocks were blistered, and the horse turned out in the regimental pasture for a period of complete rest. At the end of twenty days he returned to work, looking game and feeling fine, his legs clean.



The Winner

Sergeant Garrity, Troop A, 13th Cavalry, and *Tomahawk*. Photo taken in 1925 showing them receiving the prize for third place.

Training was at once resumed, walking for four and five hours daily at five miles an hour for a week, and then long trots again for two weeks, followed by another fifty mile trip in eight hours. The horse was then turned loose again in the pasture for ten days, from which he returned in sound condition. From then on up to August 25th, trips of fifteen miles were taken daily, chiefly at the trot, and carrying 215 pounds weight. For a few days the horse was allowed a rest period. This rest period was used in making preparations for

the trip from Fort D. A. Russell to Colorado Springs. The distance is 188 miles, which was covered in six days, by marching. After arrival at Colorado Springs, the time remaining prior to the actual start of the Endurance Ride, a distance of ten miles was covered, daily.

During the progress of the test it was noted that the horse traveled better when not allowed to drink all the water he wanted. Arrangements had been made for watering, every seven miles after leaving the fifteen mile post. *Tomahawk* was allowed but one bucket full of water at each stop. The noon stop and the evening stop, were preceded by walking during the last mile, so that the judges found on examination morning, noon, and night that temperature, respiration and pulse were normal. The whip or spur was never used to urge on the horse. His face was protected from flies and gnats by a piece of gauze and by a horsetail switch carried by his rider. On the last day of the ride the horse appeared fresh and eager to go on, and traveled better on the last day than on the first.

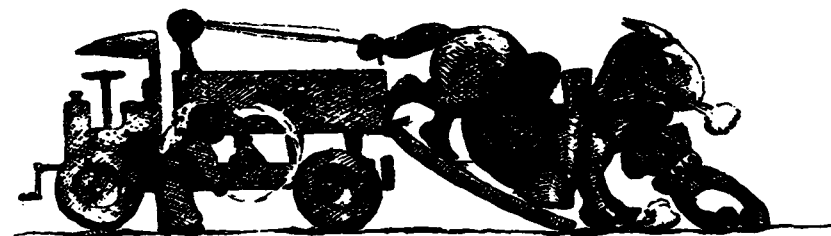
The morning following the finish of the ride, September 18, 1926, *Tomahawk* came from the stables at the appointed time and was brought before the judges. He showed no signs of lameness, and after a careful examination by the judges his condition was found to be perfect (60%) and his time 35.4%; a total of 95.4%. So *Tomahawk*, ridden by Sergeant Thomas Garrity, Troop "A", 13th Cavalry, Fort D. A. Russell, Wyoming, was given first prize; *Stella*, second; *Vamp*, third; and *Prince*, fourth.

Both in 1925 and 1926, the entire personnel of the regiment took great interest in the conditioning and training of *Tomahawk* by Sergeant Garrity, and were proud of the record made in both years. Upon his return from Colorado Springs in 1925 a regimental parade and review was tendered him and his horse.

Upon Sergeant Garrity's return in 1926, there was an assembly of all the officers, non-commissioned officers and specialists of the regiment, with Sergeant Garrity and his horse present as the guests of honor. An address was made by the regimental commander on the subject of conformation and breeding, horsemanship and horsemastership, and an explanation of the problems involved in the selection, conditioning, training, and management of a horse in preparation for an endurance ride. This was followed by a most instructive talk by Sergeant Garrity himself, during which he answered all sorts of questions from officers and non-commissioned officers as to management preparatory to the ride and during the actual test.

Upon the request of Sergeant Garrity, *Tomahawk* will not again be entered in the Colorado Endurance Ride; the regiment would like to enter him in an eastern ride, if satisfactory financial arrangements could be made with regard to expense. Plans are being made, however, to enter certain other selected horses in the Colorado Endurance Ride for 1927.

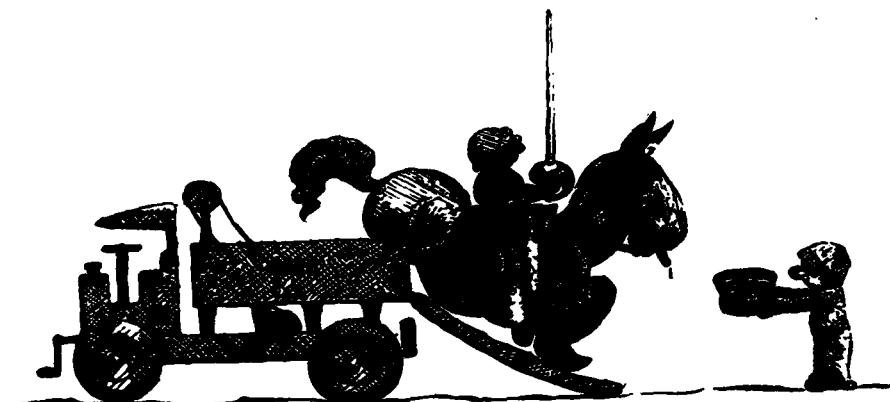
The Regiment feels that Sergeant Garrity is a horseman and horsemaster, *par excellence*; to officers and men alike, his work with *Tomahawk* during the past two years has been an example and an inspiration.



PORTEE CAVALRY - ENTRUCKING



PORTEE CAVALRY - APPROACH MARCH



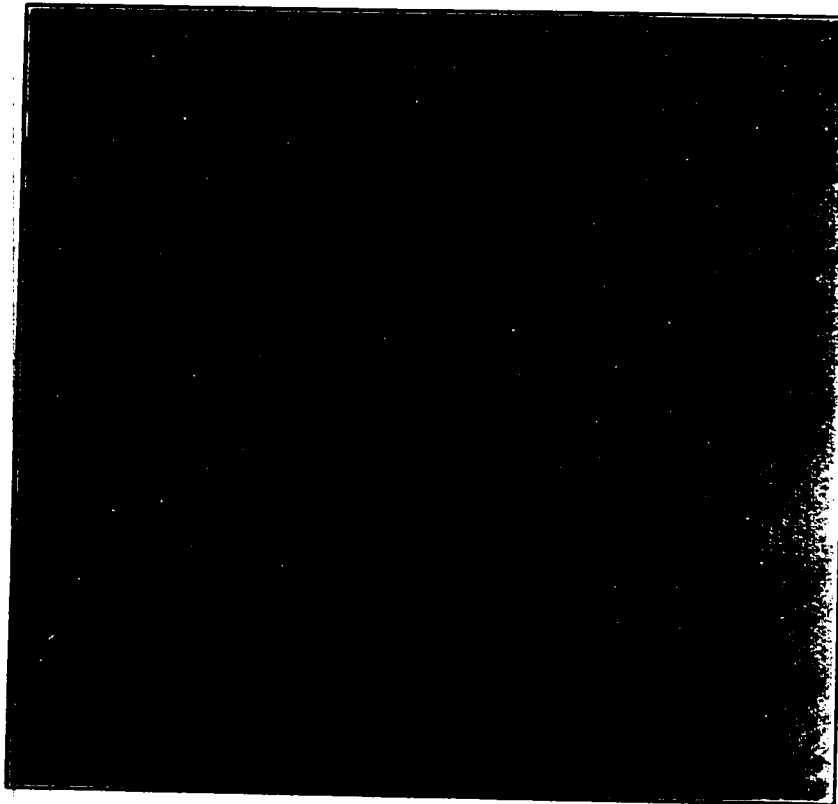
PORTEE CAVALRY - DETRUCKING

Dedicated to those who believe that at times the Cavalry, in order to increase its mobility, may find it desirable to follow the example of the Field Artillery and utilize the well-known Q. M. conveyance.

Editorial Comment

MAJOR GENERAL ROBERT LEE HOWZE

The death on September 19, 1926, of Major General Robert Lee Howze, took from our midst an officer of the highest personal qualities and pro-



Major General Robert Lee Howze

essional attainments whom the army and the nation could ill afford to lose. An enthusiastic and gifted cavalryman, his career will always be an inspiration for those who follow in his footsteps.

The careers of few officers have been as varied and as full of honors as

has that of General Howze who served his country in an Indian campaign, as well as in Cuba, the Philippines, Porto Rico, Mexico, France and Germany.

He was awarded the Medal of Honor: "For gallantry in repulsing the attacks of hostile Sioux Indians on the north bank of the White River near the mouth of Little Grass Creek, North Dakota, Jan. 1, 1891."

Awarded two silver star citations by the War Department as follows:

1st Citation: For gallantry in action against Spanish forces at the battle of Santiago, July 1, 1898.

2d Citation: For gallantry in action in the pursuit of superior forces of the enemy, under the insurgent General Tinio, in Northern Luzon, P. I., Dec. 4-18, 1899, through a most dangerous and difficult country, through hardships and exposure, thereby forcing the enemy to liberate twenty-two American prisoners held by him Dec. 18, 1899.

Awarded the Distinguished Service Medal: "For exceptionally meritorious and distinguished services. As commander of the 3d Division on its march to the Rhine and during the occupation of the enemy territory, he proved himself energetic and capable, exhibiting superb qualities of leadership. He maintained an unusually high standard of efficiency in his unit, rendering eminently conspicuous services as a division commander."

Awarded French Croix de Guerre with palm; and French Legion of Honor (officer).

All who were fortunate enough to be associated with General Howze in a personal or official capacity, regret the passing of a loyal friend and a true soldier.

THE STUDY OF LANGUAGES

The study of languages by military men has always been encouraged in this country on account of its giving access to a large reservoir of military literature, and also in order to fit officers for special and important duties which frequently, by virtue of their official position, they are called upon to perform. It is believed, however, that the individual officer does not give this subject the attention to which it is entitled. It is true that those who graduate at the Military Academy are given a ground work in French and Spanish, but how few make any systematic effort to continue the good work thus begun, with a view to making themselves proficient in one or both of these important tongues.

Many officers who read this have doubtless had frequent occasion to regret that they had neglected to pursue further a study which had begun so auspiciously; a neglect which probably placed them at a great individual disadvantage or seriously handicapped them in the performance of some duty requiring a knowledge of one of these languages. Transacting business through an interpreter is always unsatisfactory, and it is a well known fact that dependence upon an interpreter has frequently resulted in misunder-

standings and embarrassment.

Although English is making great strides, French is still the language of diplomacy, and will always be important for officers stationed in Europe or Asia. For the officer stationed at any of the capitals on this hemisphere, a knowledge of Spanish is desirable. A large force of cavalry is stationed on our southern border and contact with the Mexican authorities and people is almost constant. An officer thus stationed who is fluent in Spanish, is unquestionably of much greater value to his government than is one without that qualification.

Our relations with all of the republics to the south of us are bound to be more intimate as the years go by, and a thorough acquaintance with their language will be of immeasurable assistance in cultivating a better understanding between our respective governments and peoples. The visit of the Pan-American journalist who recently toured this country, demonstrated the benefits of a closer acquaintance between the so-called Latin American republics and ourselves, and has brought home to many the realization, that a mutual knowledge of our languages is a great asset.

The subject of military literature has already been mentioned. There are many important military works in French, Italian, German, and Spanish, which are never translated into English, and the military periodicals in these languages contain many articles of great professional value. While some may feel that our own authorities on the art of war are sufficient, the fact remains that history has demonstrated that no one nation is the sole repository of military knowledge and prowess.

HELP OUR INTERNATIONAL RIFLE TEAM

The National Rifle Association has sent out a call for financial assistance for the International Rifle Team of 1927, which it is hoped will be heeded by all citizens who are interested in our retaining the prestige of being the leading rifle shooting nation of the world.

As a result of our participation in the matches of the International Union in 1921, we took the world's title and the Argentine Cup from the Swiss, the first defeat they had suffered in twenty-one years. The United States retained the trophy and title against constantly improving competition for four years, but last year the Swiss Rifle Team defeated our team and regained the championship of the world.

A Herculean effort is necessary if we are to defeat the Swiss team in the spring of 1927. The prospective candidates must be immediately assembled at central points for preliminary training. The best shots must then be assembled for the final tryout and the team selected and transported to Rome, where the 1927 shoot will be held.

To accomplish all of the above requires considerable effort and some financial assistance. Concerted effort on the part of those who believe in preparing the youth of the nation for its defense, will make it possible for

America to be represented in Rome in 1927, by a team of real championship caliber.

No contribution is too small and none too large. Send your contribution to the National Rifle Association, 1108 Woodward Building, Washington, D. C.

A MEMBERSHIP RECORD

As an example of the interest in their profession and their arm evinced by National Guard units, attention is invited to the membership in the Cavalry Association, of the 1st Squadron, 106th Cavalry, National Guard of Michigan. In addition to all of the officers being members, the number of enlisted men enrolled as members and subscribers to the CAVALRY JOURNAL is as follows: Headquarters Detachment, 5; Troop A, 20; Troop B, 10; Troop C, 19.

This is a record which it is believed has never been equaled in any branch of any component of the army.

The commanding officer of this squadron is Major Harold T. Weber. Major H. T. Aplington, Cavalry, is the instructor on duty with it.

At date of going to press, the following regular organizations are 100 per cent in Association membership: 2d Cavalry, 4th Cavalry, 6th Cavalry, 12th Cavalry, 13th Cavalry, 14th Cavalry and the Cavalry School.

WINNER OF GOODRICH TROPHY

Troop F, Third Cavalry, stationed at Fort Myer, Virginia, and commanded by Captain Jess G. Boykin, is the winner of the Goodrich Trophy for the year of 1926. This trophy was donated by Mr. L. E. Goodrich, of Miami, Florida, to the Cavalry service for annual competition.

The competition for the trophy was held during the past Fall, and was open to all the cavalry of the Regular Army. Troops were selected to represent regiments and detached squadrons by virtue of their excellence in routine duties covering the last year. The following organizations were designated as the best troops available in their respective commands, and, as such, took part in the final test: Troop F, Second Cavalry; Troop B, Third Cavalry; Troop F, Third Cavalry; Troop A, Fourth Cavalry; Troop C, Sixth Cavalry; Troop F, Tenth Cavalry; Troop A, Thirteenth Cavalry; Troop A, Fourteenth Cavalry; Troop F, Fourteenth Cavalry.

The test was essentially practical and was based on training standards for routine work in the use of the rifle, pistol, saber, and machine rifle, in combat firing, and in the care and equipment of animals and equipment. It included a fifty mile march with an imposed time limit of from eleven to fifteen hours, for its completion. Each competing troop was also required, among other things, to solve a problem in combat firing.

The winner of the trophy was determined as a result of a very careful and detailed system of rating. In the rating Troop F, Third Cavalry, was awarded a score of 951 points, with its nearest competitor following at 928.

The trophy is a bronze figure of a horse designed and sculptured by Mr. A. Phimster Proctor, a prominent American Sculptor of animals, many of whose figures are well known in Washington and New York. Mr. Proctor is at present in Rome where the trophy is being completed.

Topics of the Day

THE CAVALRY SCHOOL HUNT RACE MEETING

THE Cavalry School Hunt with its very successful Race Meeting held October 21 and 23 at Fort Riley, has initiated a sporting event which it is hoped, may become a semi-annual feature at the Cavalry School.

The Meeting, which was sanctioned by the Hunts Committee of the National Steeple Chase and Hunt Association, and actively supported by Brigadier General E. E. Booth, the Commandant, aroused much interest at Fort Riley and vicinity. Each day's racing was witnessed by several thousand spectators.

Much of the credit for the success of the Meeting is due Major E. M. Whiting who was the moving spirit back of the enterprise, as well as being in charge of the training of the service entries. Attention is invited to his interesting and instructive article in this number of the CAVALRY JOURNAL.

The following account of the two day's racing is taken from the *Junction City Union*.

First Day

The first event was a quarter mile flat race open to all and was won by *Interview*, Daugherty up. *Skylark*, Harrison up, was second, and *Dean*, Major Franklin up, was third. Time, 0:26.

The Remount Service steeplechase, with a piece of plate presented by R. H. Williams, President of the American Remount Association as the capital prize, was won by *Lady Finn*, a Department of Horsemanship horse, Capt. H. N. Beeman up. *Diplomat*, from the Second Cavalry polo stables, Lieut. Wofford up, finished second and *Descendant*, owned and ridden by Major Whiting, third. Time, 4:12¾. *Potomac*, Capt. Duke up, one of the Department horses, went down on one of the jumps and was quite badly cut about the breast. The horse has been withdrawn from Saturday's races as a result.

The third event, the Mounted Service Steeplechase, with government owned horses ridden by enlisted men, proved the most exciting of the meet with several spills, and a horse, fondly denominated by the men of the troop as the ugliest animal at Fort Riley, leading the field by a wide margin.

Pvt. Baumgardner, Troop B, Second Cavalry, on *Tony Winchester*, took two spills but finished the race. *Holdover*, Headquarters Troop, Second Cavalry, went down on one of the jumps, and his rider, Pvt. Jeremiah Garrison, sustained a broken nose and lacerated head, but is reported at the hospital to be in no danger.

Spike, Troop G, Second Cavalry, the aforesaid "ugliest" horse, Corp. Lardrup up, finished first, *Buffalo Bill*, of the same outfit, Pvt. S. Zikoski up, second, and *Chance*, Troop C, Second Cavalry, third. Time, 3:38¾.

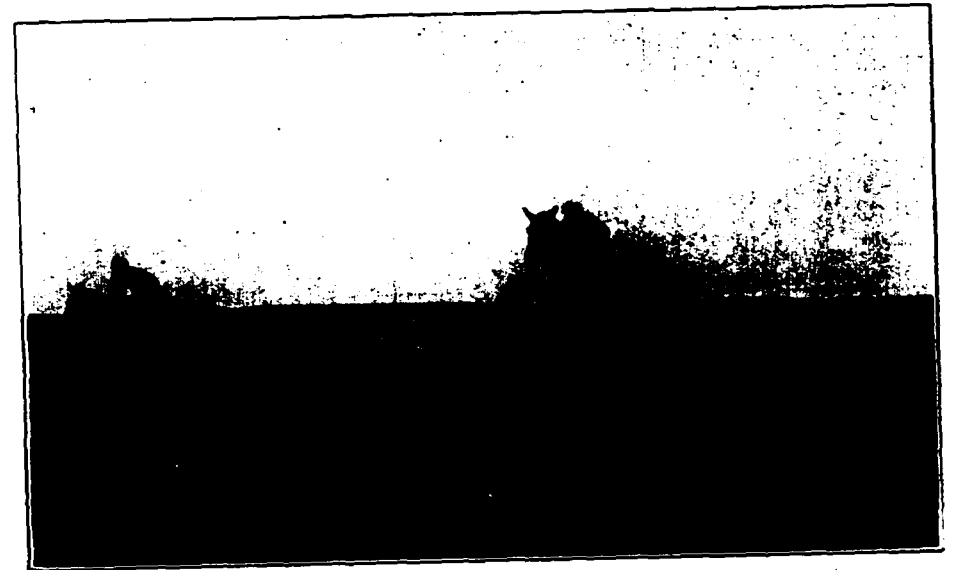
The fourth race, a half mile free for all, developed a neck and neck finish. *Bill Sportas*, Capt. Duke up, finished first; *Miss Maddux*, Capt. Beeman up, second; *Justine E.*, Lieut. F. O. Dewey up, third. Time, 0:54.

126

The final race, the Cavalry School Steeplechase, for the Lorillard plate, was won by *Helen*, Major Franklin up, with *Elaine*, Lieut. Wofford up, finishing second, and *Hastings*, Capt. Wharton up, third. *Lough Doris*, Major Whiting up, took a nasty spill on the third jump when a shoe crumpled. Major Whiting was badly shaken up but not injured. The horse ran three miles across the reservation before being caught and may be incapacitated for Saturday's meet.

Second Day

Four horses fell with their red-coated riders, in the five and a half minutes of the spectacular three-mile steeplechase which brought the Autumn race meet of the Cavalry School Hunt to a dramatic close. Gray skies and cold winds had lessened the number of spectators but not their enthusiasm,



In the Air

and Captain Wharton was heartily acclaimed as he galloped in alone on *Hastings*, the only horse to triumph over the seventeen stiff jumps. *Helen*, winner of the Lorillard plate on Thursday, came to grief over the Liverpool jump in the first mile, and the crowd breathed relief when Major Franklin rose uninjured. For two miles and a half *Descendant*, Major Whiting's big chestnut, looked an easy winner, setting a fast pace for the three who followed closely bunched. At the fourteenth jump *Diplomat* tired and went down with Lt. Wofford. *Descendant* struck the next fence and spilled Major Whiting, who was riding with one rib already broken by his fall on Thursday, but sustained no additional injuries yesterday. *Lady Finn* was over the last jump and rounding into the home stretch barely a length behind *Hastings*, but turned down toward the water jump by mistake; and as Captain Beeman swung her around, she blundered into the rail and was thrown into a complete somersault, leaving her rider on the ground unconscious. Captain Beeman revived in a few minutes and was able to walk in to the finish with the other contestants to congratulate Captain Wharton as he received from

General Booth the large silver platter presented by Mr. John McEntee Bowman, president of the United Hunts Racing Association.

The first race was a consolation quarter-mile, open to all except the winners of the half and quarter miles on Thursday. The winner on Saturday was *Babe Jones*, owned and ridden by Mr. Jones of Salina. Second, *Dean*, Major Franklin up, the Second Cavalry polo pony which took third on Thursday. *Rusty*, owned and ridden by Lt. F. O. Dewey, third. Time: 0:26 $\frac{1}{4}$.

The Thomas Hitchcock Cup steeplechase opened with a false start, in which *Flying Yank* and *El Supremo* made a complete turn of the field, adding almost a mile to the official distance of two and a quarter miles. The mishaps of Thursday thinned the field, causing *Potomac* and *Lough Doris* to be scratched. The worst spill of the day occurred at the first jump, as the favorite, *El Supremo*, arriving half a length behind the other two horses, took off with them and struck the jump, rolling over and over with his rider, Captain Ellis, who was painfully but not seriously bruised and strained. *Flying Yank* and *Elaine* continued a neck-and-neck race up to the last jump, when Lt. Wofford's mare pulled away to finish fifteen lengths ahead of Captain Wharton's mount, for the handsome Hitchcock cup. Time, 4:40.

Salina triumphed again in the consolation half-mile flat race, when Mr. Jones' *King Tut*, Malen up, finished half a length ahead of the Cavalry School Polo Stables' *Miss Maddux*, ridden by Captain Beeman. *Justine E.*, owned and ridden by Lt. Dewey, was third. Time, 0:53 $\frac{3}{4}$. *Vamp*, owned by Captain Beeman and ridden by Pvt. Harris, V. C., furnished amusement for the crowd when he ran the half mile alone from a false start.

CAVALRY BOARD NOTES

THE following list of the more important items that have been acted upon by the Cavalry Board during the past six months has been furnished by Major J. J. O'Hara, Recorder of the Board.

a. *Training*.—T. R. 500—30 Applicatory Training Exercises, T. R. 435—30, Tactical Employment of Anti-aircraft Service, and T. R. —Methods of Training were reviewed by the board, which recommended approval of the first two, with certain suggested changes, and which proposed in place of the last a revised training regulation entitled T. R. —Training Management.

b. Armament.—

(1) *Hotchkiss Automatic Arms*.—A light machine gun and an automatic rifle, both of Hotchkiss type, 30 caliber, were given an informal test. It was found that these guns possessed no advantages worth considering over the Browning automatic rifle and machine rifle.

(2) *Cavalry saber, experimental*.—The saber tested consisted of a blade identical with that on the British cavalry saber, and a hilt similar to, though somewhat larger than, our present model. The experimental saber was found superior to our issue saber as to balance and wrist support, and as to general handiness; but its weight, 51 ounces, was believed excessive. The blade proved stronger and more rigid, and its penetration greater than was the case with our present saber. The hilt also was found to be an improvement upon the issue hilt, but it is still too large and heavy. A modified experimental saber was recommended for additional tests. A metal olive drab scabbard was also recommended.

(3) *Sight for Browning Machine Gun*.—Upon request of the Ordnance Department the board submitted its views as to the requirements of a

rear sight for the Browning Machine Gun, Model of 1917. A sight of the type used on the Schwarzlos Machine Gun was recommended for test, provided such a sight can be adapted to the Browning Gun.

c. Equipment.—

(1) *Duralumin and woven felt for Phillips Saddles*.—As a result of tests Duralumin was recommended as a substitute for steel in certain parts of the Phillips saddle; and woven felt was found superior to calfskin for saddle pad lining.

(2) *Pioneer Pack*.—The pioneer pack developed by the Eighth Cavalry and manufactured by the Corps of Engineers was, as a result of test, found suitable for adoption. This experimental pack has been shipped to the 1st Cavalry Division for comparative test with a similar pack developed by the 7th Cavalry.

(3) *Watches, Elgin, 7-15 Jewel*.—Two pocket watches, and two wrist watches were recorded as satisfactory after a six months service test. A time interval recorder proved defective.

(4) *Lensatic Compasses*.—A number of lensatic compasses that had been reconditioned or modified were subjected to test. It was recommended that a more satisfactory bubble trap be designed.

(5) *Jack-o-lite Lantern*.—The Jack-o-lite lantern is a unique electrical device that produces light without the use of a battery, but depends upon an induction type generator, driven by a phonograph spring, for the power to operate a small flashlight bulb. The lantern was considered too heavy and too unwieldy for cavalry purposes.

(6) *Batteries BA-10*.—The board concurred in the recommendations of the Signal Corps as to the substitution of Batteries BA-17 in place of the BA-10 type.

(7) *Cavalry Wire Requirements*.—The Signal Corps Board has recommended the abandonment of types W-43 and W-44, and the reduction of the number of types of field wire for tactical use to two, i. e., a heavy twisted pair of diameter and weight not greater than W-40, and a light twisted pair of about the same weight as old type W-46. As a result of the above action the Cavalry Board has recommended for cavalry units, the size of a brigade or smaller, a medium sized wire between the present issue outpost twisted pair and the light twisted pair recommended by the Signal Corps,—the proposed wire to be issued both as twisted pair, for brigade headquarters use, and as single conductor, for lower units. It was also recommended that a new type German wire be subjected to test. This last is a single conductor wire, which though less flexible than the present outpost types, has a tensile strength double that of the outpost single conductor, and has also less weight per unit.

(8) *Motor Vehicle Development*.—The board concurred with the Quartermaster Technical Committee as to the method of standardizing motor vehicles. It was recommended that the using service should merely specify their requirements, and that the Engineer section at Camp Holabird should conduct the necessary tests and select designs of vehicles as will best fulfill the specified requirements.

c. *Annual Report*.—On November 26, 1926 the board submitted to the Chief of Cavalry its annual report on adopted types of armament and equipment. Once each year the board holds special meetings for the purpose of considering each article of cavalry equipment and armament with a view to suggesting improvements in defective articles or of eliminating unnecessary ones.

Foreign Military Notes

FURNISHED BY THE MILITARY INFORMATION DIVISION, G. S.

CHINA

Organization and Operation of Bandit Bands

FOR years banditry in China has been accepted by both the Chinese and foreigners as an institution which had to be reckoned with in any undertakings, especially those away from the treaty ports. In fact, it might be said with equal truth that the institution of banditry goes back for centuries, for most of the ancient, isolated towns in North China are either surrounded by walls for protection against bandits, or have in their immediate vicinity, strongholds to which the population may retire on occasions.

There is a somewhat wide-spread impression among foreigners, fostered by the Chinese, that banditry in China is the occasional occupation of a limited number of lawless people, and as such, is of no greater significance than the activities of similar persons in other countries. This is not correct however, for, on the contrary, it is a highly organized industry which has existed since time immemorial, including in its ranks many former officers and soldiers of the army. In addition, many of the members of the bandit bands on occasions, transfer either as individuals or as units of companies, battalions or more and are duly incorporated into the army.

While in general the equipment of the bandit bands is inferior, occasionally organisations are met with which are extremely well equipped. Recruits have always been easily obtained from amongst younger sons whose inheritance in lands is insufficient for their support, and from ex-soldiers, deserters, outlaws and captives. Arms and ammunition are secured by purchase, by theft, or from deserters from the army.

While it is impossible to arrive at any accurate estimate of the number of bandits in China, it is probably safe to state that there are at least 200,000 in all, armed and, partially at least, equipped.

These robber bands are known by different names in different parts of China, the most famous being the *Hung Hu Tzu* or Red Beards which is the common name for the Manchurian bandit. Another well-known name is that of *Tu-fei* or robber.

In general these bands have a systematic organisation, maintaining in population centers, agents with whom the leaders have excellent means of communication. From these agents information is obtained of the income and financial condition not only of individuals, but of entire communities,

who may be either selected for robbery or pillage or for large-scale blackmail operations.

Bandits have played an important part in many of China's wars, both foreign and domestic. The Japanese made use of them as partisan bands in the Russo-Japanese War. In civil warfare, army commanders frequently enter into alliances with bandit chiefs, and on other occasions many of the so-called armies are in reality made up of temporarily unified bandit organizations.

An opportunity recently presented itself for a rather extensive observation of one of these bands in Eastern Yunnan which it is believed is fairly typical. The strength of this band was approximately 170 of whom some 70 men were armed with edged weapons only. There were approximately twelve modern military rifles and carbines in the band, the rest of the bandits carrying converted muzzle loaders, caliber 60, Mauser single-shot, low velocity breech loaders, caliber 45, and Mauser tubular magazines, bolt action, low velocity repeating rifles, caliber 45, in about equal numbers. Ammunition consisted on an average, of some 40 rounds per man. There were but four pistols and revolvers; no machine-guns or automatic rifles.

The band was organized into a battalion of two companies of three platoons of three squads, of approximately eight men each. The officers consisted of a commander, chief of staff, executive officer, battalion commander, company commanders, platoon leaders, and squad leaders.

Most of the men were young, active Chinese, distinguished only by physical fitness and averaging probably about 23 years of age. There were, however, a number of boys under 16. All of the officers and a large proportion of the men had had military experience. The senior officers were all men in their thirties and the chief, executive, and chief of staff formed a sort of council for directing the band. Discipline was purely a personal matter. The only one whose orders were obeyed immediately and unquestioningly, was the chief. The rest of the officers when issuing orders, did so in a good-natured manner and were obeyed slackly. The outposts, however, were apparently keen and alert and battle discipline seemed very good.

In general, the tactics of the band in its operations, followed the ordinary principles of minor tactics. March discipline was poor and no effort was made to preserve military formation. This particular band did not seem to have any base for supplies or any general rendezvous. They lived on the country and traveled from place to place as the will of the commander seemed to dictate.

Horse Shows

First Cavalry Division Horse Show

By

Major STEPHEN M. WALMSLEY, Signal Corps

IN enumerating the advantages which a divisional organization presents to the Cavalry service, not the least is the opportunity it provides for mounted competitions, such as horse shows and polo tournaments. Competition stimulates interest, and interest stimulates hard, intelligent effort. The keener the competition, the keener the interest, and the greater the effort. An officer or enlisted man who works to carry off a ribbon in a squadron or regimental contest, will put forth even greater efforts, when he knows that he has to meet the competition which develops in a horse show, such as that staged by the First Cavalry Division at Fort Bliss, Texas on the 26th-28th and 30th of October, 1926. And what holds true for individuals, holds true for teams.

The polo tournament which was held during the two weeks leading up to and including the horse show dates, brought together eleven teams to struggle for the Senior and Junior championship cups. No other organization in the Army can bring together so many competitors. Four cavalry regiments, two machine gun squadrons, a battalion of horse artillery and the various staffs and special troops, provide an unequaled field from which to draw. The forty-five classes called out more than eight hundred entries and gave a place to every type of animal, vehicle and animal mastery that the military service requires, in addition to the always interesting ladies', children's and polo classes.

The show was the fifth which has been staged by the First Cavalry Division, and if any proof is needed of the improvement which the annual competition has brought about, it may be deduced from the remark of Major Richard Waring, O. R. C. from San Angelo, Texas. Major Waring has a national reputation as a horse show judge and had judged at former First Cavalry Division shows, but not at the two shows preceding the one held this year. In commenting on the performances he said, "I wouldn't know it was the same army." Commenting further he said, "I've sent jumpers to Madison Square Garden that couldn't perform with the horses here, and I only remember having judged two polo pony classes that equaled yours. One was on Long Island, and the other at Colorado Springs at the time of a big tournament."

As is almost always the case, the jumping events aroused the most

132

interest and brought out the most contestants. In the Enlisted Men's Jumping over a course of 8 jumps at 3 feet 6 inches, eleven of the twenty-nine entries made a perfect performance, and the second trial left three perfect performers to fight for the first places over the "touch and out" route.

The officers' Jumping class brought out seventy-eight entries but the added six inches on the jumps brought a much lower percentage of perfect performances on the initial trip, than did the enlisted men's class. Lieutenant Kendall, First Cavalry, riding *Chick*, a government mount finally beat *Bunkie*, a Fifth Cavalry horse with Lieutenant Carr up and the famous 8th Cavalry horse. *Peanuts*, Lieutenant Frierson, 8th Cavalry, up, by lasting the longest over the "touch and out" route. *Bunkie* and *Peanuts* were second and third respectively. In the Open Jumping which had 51 entries, none of



Pair Jumping

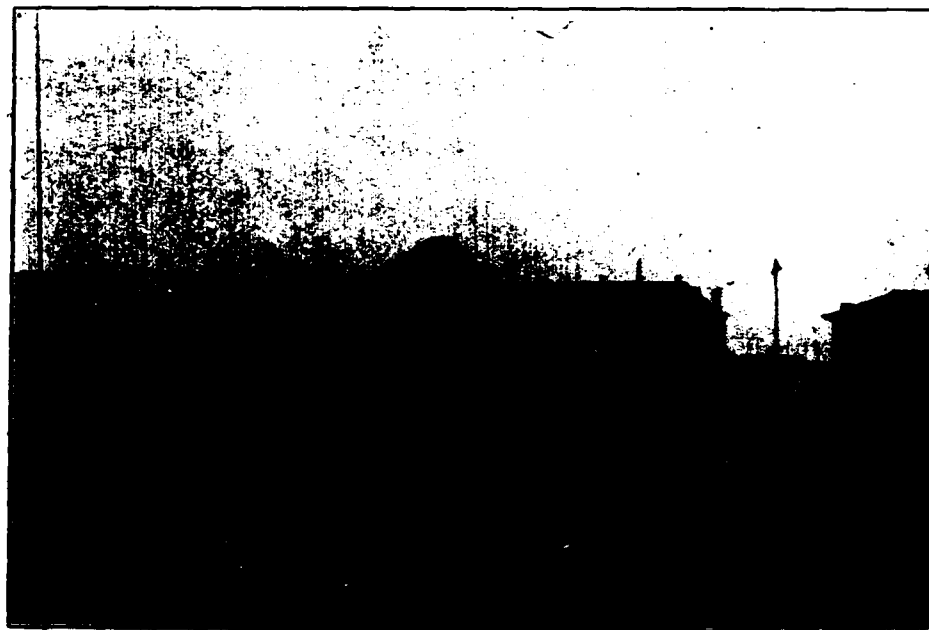
Captain Creed and Lieutenant Carr on *Big Ben* and *Pop Over*.

the horses named above were able to place, although they all tried. *Rebel*, another famous 8th Cavalry horse, Lieutenant Bennett up. *Squire*, Lieutenant True's mount, ridden by Captain Garrison, and *Storm King*, the private mount of his rider, Major A. L. P. Sands, F. A., carried away the ribbons in order.

But what *Peanuts* lost in these events, he made up for in others, winning the Handy Hunter class, the Three Man Hunt Team with the assistance of *Rebel* and *Woodrow*, the Pair of Jumpers with *Rebel*, and the Corinthian

class again with his veteran team-mates, *Woodrow* and *Rebel*.

Peanuts is entitled to more than passing notice. He was the outstanding horse of the show from the point winning standpoint and the four firsts, one second, and three thirds which he won in this show, raised to 112 the grand total of ribbons which he has accumulated in his eleven years in the military service. He came to the 8th Cavalry as a six year old remount in 1915, when that regiment was in the Big Bend district. Almost at once he began to demonstrate his aptitude for jumping, and although he is a scant 15-1 in height, he has cleared six feet eight inches in competition, and six feet six, several times. In addition to his high jumping ability, he has always been a careful and fearless jumper over all sorts of obstacles. Tables set with chairs and dishes, a man seated in a chair and holding a newspaper, a kneeling firing

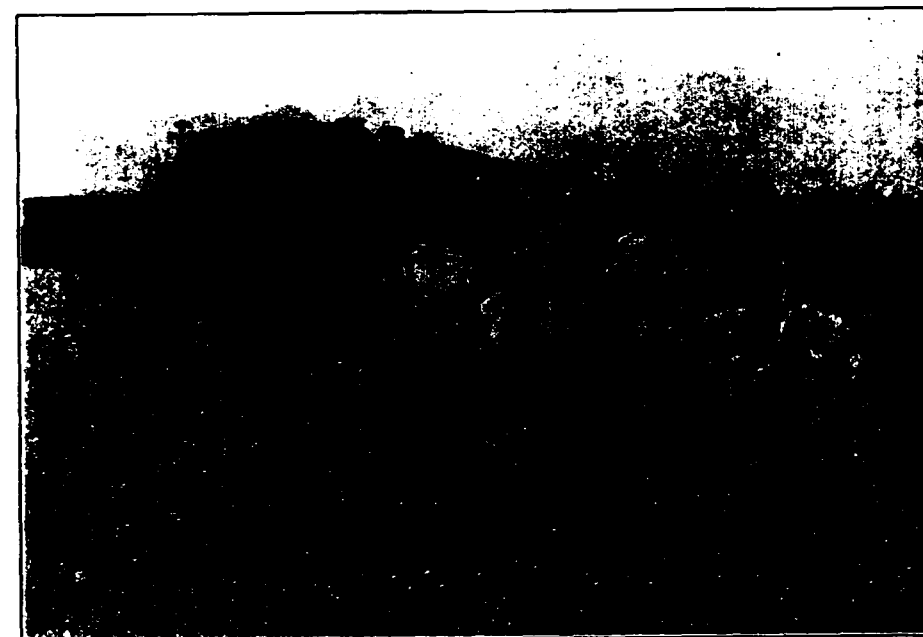


Stake Race

line, another horse, all the trick jumps in the category, have been exactly to his taste. Nor is he simply a show ring horse. In 1919 when Mexican bandits had captured American aviators, *Peanuts* was in the rescue party and marched 287 miles in five days, on a half grain ration and no hay. And only second to *Peanuts* is the 8th Cavalry white horse *Rebel*, who has been a team-mate and stable mate to *Peanuts* in much of his career. *Rebel* joined the 8th Cavalry at the same time *Peanuts* did, and although his list of trophies is not as large as *Peanuts*', he is almost as steady a performer over the horse show

courses as is his more famous companion. He also accompanied *Peanuts* on the 287 mile march.

The only official notice taken of total scores by organization was in the contest for the new trophy presented by the 1st Cavalry Brigade to be competed for annually. The classes in which scoring for this trophy was considered, were limited to those in which the visiting organizations would be in a position to compete. They included the Remount Cup Contest (of which more later), Jumping events, Polo Pony classes, Officers' Chargers, and Enlisted Men's Mounts, and the Recruit Class, but excluded draft animals and vehicles. The trophy was won by the 8th Cavalry, with the Seventh second, and the Fifth third.



Escort Wagon Class

Entry of Service Troop, 8th Cavalry, awarded the red ribbon.

The most formidable individually owned group of contenders, was that entered by Lieutenant Frank L. Carr, 5th Cavalry. *Pluto*, *Mithridates*, (an imported French horse) *Seth*, and *Pop Over*, would show well in any company. Showing those four horses and a government horse, *Buddy*, Lieutenant Carr made twenty-three appearances in the ring, four more than his nearest competitor, Captain Creed, also of the Fifth. Lieutenant Carr's privately owned entries carried away 3 blue ribbons, 5 reds, and 1 yellow. In the polo pony class, Captain Bridges, V. C., 82nd F. A., was the high winner, carrying off

four blue ribbons with his string composed of *Hussie, Bob Bird, Scotty*, all excellent animals.

As a test of military horsemanship, the Remount Cup Contest was the outstanding event of the show. The contest was primarily for teams from the various organizations, but individual entries were permitted. The contest was continued over the three days of the show, the first day being allotted to showing the schooling of the animals in the ring, the second day to sixteen miles over roads, paths and across country, part at steeplechase speed, and part at marching gaits, and the third day to ring jumping. The first day's work permitted a possible 230 points, the second day's 1,050 points and the third day's 460 points. The contest was won by the 7th Cavalry with 4,857 points, and the highest individual score made by Captain C. E. Davis, 8th Cavalry, with 1,681.

In the ladies events, Mrs. Creed, wife of Captain Creed, 5th Cavalry, was high point winner with a blue in the Ladies Novice class, a blue in the Pair of Hacks, riding with her husband, a blue in the Ladies Jumping, and a red in the Ladies Saddle class.

As individual scorers, Lieutenant Frierson, 8th Cavalry, Captain Creed, 5th Cavalry and Captain Davis, 8th Cavalry, collected 22 points each on the 3-2-1 method of scoring. Captain Bridges, V. C., and Lieutenant Carr followed with 20 points each.

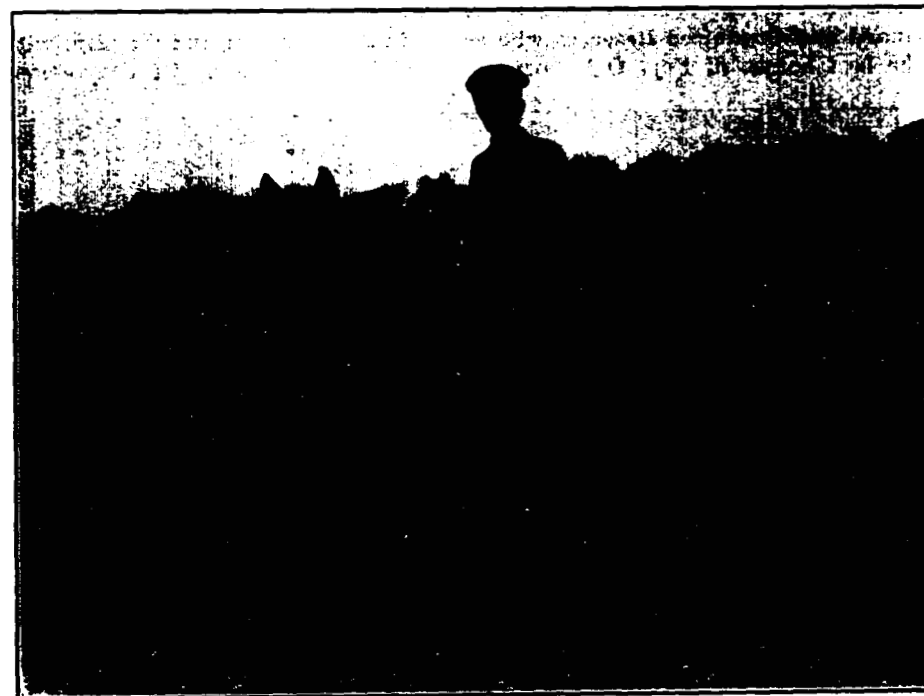
Leaving the more spectacular events, the classes for escort wagons, light wagons, and especially pack radio sections, were unusually excellent, the type and matching of animals, appearance and going, being extremely showy. Nor was the setting for the show neglected. The Howze Stadium, named for the late Major General Robert L. Howze, who played such an important part in the building of the First Cavalry Division, was put into first class shape with paint, bunting, pennants and flowers and presented as extremely attractive appearance.

Excellent attendance from the El Paso townspeople obtained throughout the show and at all the week-end polo games.

In the polo tournament, the 8th Cavalry made a clean sweep in both the Senior and Junior tournaments. The Senior team defeated the 82nd F. A. Bn. and the 5th Cavalry and the Juniors, defeated the Division Hq. and the 1st Cavalry. The 7th Cavalry which had been looked upon as a serious contender, was disrupted by the injury to Major Surles, the team captain, just before the tournament opened, and the Garry Owens were defeated in their first game against the Artillery. The First Cavalry Senior team won the Consolation Trophy.

Chattanooga-Sixth Cavalry Horse Show

THE annual Chattanooga-Sixth Cavalry Horse Show at Fort Oglethorpe, Georgia, held this year on the afternoon of Friday, November 12th, and all day Saturday, November 13th, was generally conceded by all participants and spectators to be the most successful and largest attended horse show that has ever been given at Fort Oglethorpe. Colonel George C. Barnhardt, commanding the Sixth Cavalry at Fort Oglethorpe, Lieutenant Colonel



Colonel George C. Barnhardt, 6th Cavalry

Winner on *Miss Springtime* of classes—Horses suitable to become hunters, and horses suitable to become officers' mounts.

Harry N. Cootes who was charged with the preparations for the horse show, and the members of the various committees of officers and ladies who were delegated the various features of the preparations, are all highly elated and enthused over the results. The committees composed of enthusiastic members were kept up to untiring efforts during the weeks of preparations by the encouraging support and valuable advice given them by Colonel Barnhardt and Lieutenant Colonel Cootes, who both have the advantage of years of

experience in handling the many diversified details of preparing for, and staging horse shows, and who both possess personalities and characteristics that cause subordinates to loyally work together in the accomplishment of their particular tasks towards a common end.

As indicated by the name, the Chattanooga-Sixth Cavalry Horse Show is a combined civilian and military undertaking. While it is held at the Post and sponsored by the Sixth Cavalry, the purpose is to bring together at the show all the best horses owned by civilians, and members of the National Guard and Organized Reserves who reside in Chattanooga and vicinity, with the best horses of Fort Oglethorpe and neighboring posts. Of the various



Colonel Henry Dickinson, 109th Cav., Tenn. N. G.
Winner of Officers' Riding Class on *Huster*.

classes, some are open to all, others are open only to civilians, others are open only to members of the Organized Reserves and National Guard, and others are open only to members of the Regular Army, National Guard or Organized Reserves.

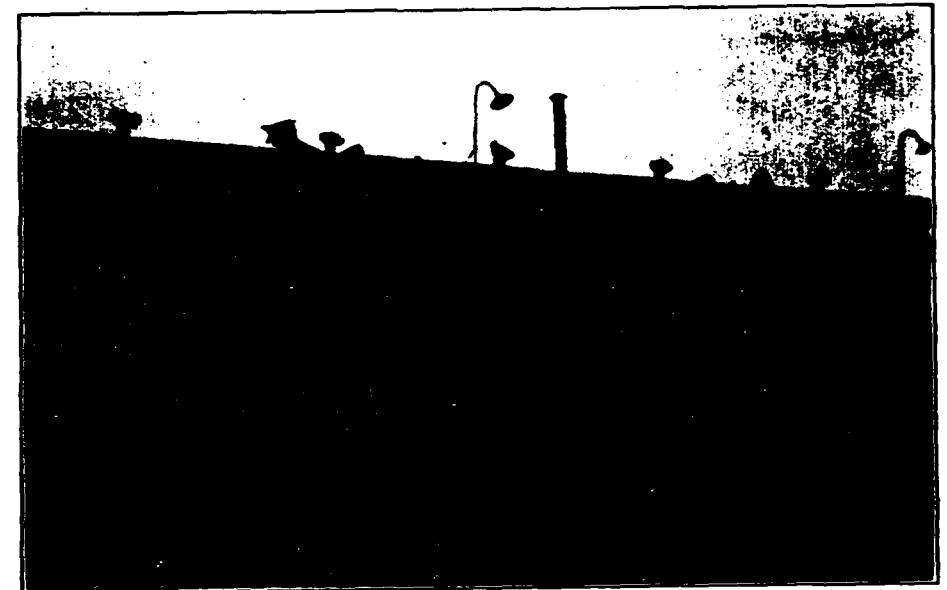
The forty classes included three gaited and five gaited saddle horse, pony, hunter, jumping, polo pony and military classes and a plantation class. An illustration of the idea of the show was the Sixth Cavalry challenge cup which was open only to members of the Lookout Mountain Hunt Club.

Thirty civilians each entered from one to three of their personal horses. In addition, twenty some members of the National Guard and Organized Reserves participated, some riding their own mounts and others mounts furnished by the Sixth Cavalry. Fort Benning, Georgia, was represented by

six officers who brought their own horses, the types of which are shown by the results of many of the classes in which they carried off several of the choice prizes.

The prizes, some cash, others cup or plate, some of which carried accompanying cash, varied in value for the different classes up to one hundred dollars for first, fifty dollars for second, and twenty-five dollars for third. The total value of the prizes was twenty-four hundred dollars.

The crowds from Chattanooga and vicinity that attended, filled all of the thirty-eight boxes, the grandstand and all parking spaces surrounding the ring.



Lt. Col. A. W. Bucholtz, 109th Cav., Tenn. N. G.

Colonel Henry C. Whitehead, Chief of the Remount Service, came from Washington to act as judge. He judged all classes except the five gaited and plantation classes, which were judged by Mr. L. A. Mitchell of Chattanooga. The judging was done most satisfactorily. The awards in military events follow:

Class 1, Three gaited saddle horse.—Won by *By Jingo*, Major A. Mitchell, V. C.; second, *Miss Michelina*, Capt. O. Porter; third, Capt. McClure, Inf.

Class 2, Three gaited saddle horses, ladies to ride.—Won by *Dana*, Mrs. C. H. Murphy; second, *Mickey*, Mrs. H. McE. Pendleton; third, *Diana*, Mrs. T. Q. Donaldson, Jr.

Class 3, Three gaited saddle horse, gentleman to ride.—Won by Capt. McClure, Inf.; second, *Miss Michelina*, Captain O. Porter; third, *Mickey*, Major H. McE. Pendleton.

Class 4, Pairs of three gaited saddle horses, one horse to be ridden by lady and other

by gentleman.—Won by Mrs. Kimball and Colonel Cootes; second, Mrs. Donaldson and Lieut. Donaldson; third, Mrs. Murphy and Capt. Geer.

Class 8, Road hacks.—Won by *Mickey*, Mrs. H. McE. Pendleton; second, *By Jingo*, Major A. Mitchell, V. C.; third, *Diamond Dick*, Capt. E. N. Harmon.

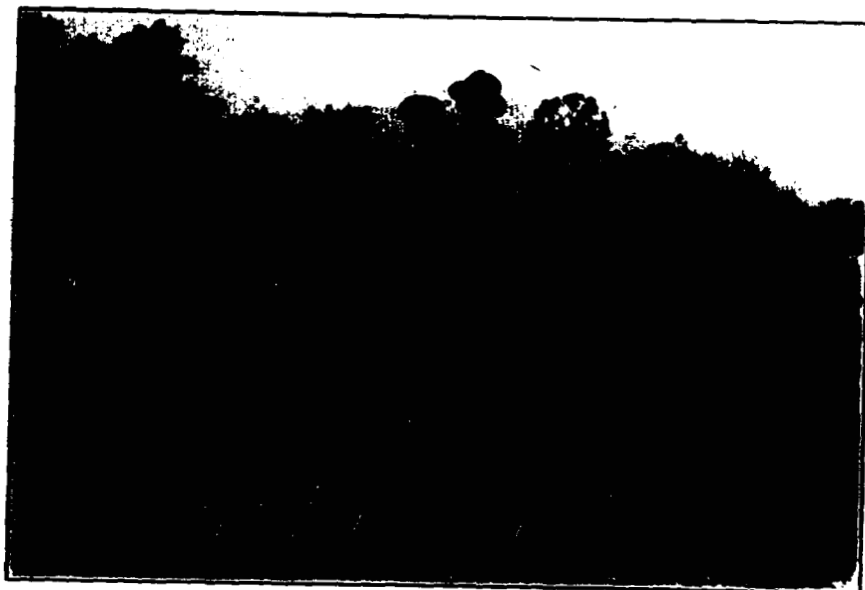
Class 9, Championship three gaited saddle horses.—Won by Captain McClure, Inf.; second, Major Mitchell, V. C.

Class 13, Ponies, open to children under 15 years of age.—Won by *Riley*, Ernest Thomas, Jr.; second, *Red Dawn*, Miss Mildred Kimball; third, *Buddie*, Patsy Patton.

Class 14, Hunters, open to all.—Won by Lt. Moon, Inf.; second, Capt. Burress, Inf.; third, Capt. Whisner, Inf.

Class 15, Novice hunter.—Won by Lt. Ireland; second, *Storm King*, Major H. McE. Pendleton; third, *The Woodburner*, Capt. O. Porter.

Class 16, Horses suitable to become hunters.—Won by *Miss Springtime*, Colonel G. C. Barnhardt; second, Major Mitchell, V. C.; third, *Nice Horse*, Capt. O. Porter.



Lt. Col. H. N. Cootes and Mrs. R. H. Kimball
Winners of class—Pairs of three gaited Saddle Horses.

Class 17, Jumping over eight jumps, not exceeding four feet.—Won by *Boney*, Sgt. Williams, Troop C; second, Capt. Burress, Inf.; third, Capt. Wise, Inf.

Class 19, Jumping, obstacles not exceeding 3 feet 6 inches, open only to ladies.—Won by *Boney*, Mrs. C. H. Murphy; second, *Buddy*, Mrs. J. B. Wise, Jr.; third, *Diana*, Mrs. T. Q. Donaldson, Jr.

Class 20, Touch and out jumping.—Won by *Boney*, Sgt. Williams, Troop C; second, *Missouri*, Lt. H. A. Boone, third, Capt. McClure, Inf.

Class 21, Pair Jumping.—Won by Corp. Cavalho, Hqrs. Troop and Sgt. Williams, Troop C; second, Captains Wise and Whisner, Inf.; third, Captains McClure and Burress, Inf.

Class 22, Garnet Andrews Challenge Cup.—Won by *Storm King*, Mrs. H. McE. Pendleton; second, *Boney*, Mrs. C. H. Murphy; third, *Diana*, Mrs. T. Q. Donaldson, Jr.

Class 24, Sweepstakes, over eight jumps not exceeding 4 feet.—Won by Sergt. Williams, Troop C; second, 1st Sergt. Townsend, Troop B; third, Lt. Moon, Inf.

Class 26, Polo ponies.—Won by *Lady*, Lt. R. E. Ireland; second, Capt. Burress, Inf.; third, *Sugar*, Lt. H. T. Sutton.

Class 27, Ponies suitable for polo.—Won by *Diamond Dick*, Capt. E. N. Harmon; second, *West Wind*, Lt. R. E. Ireland; third, *Diana*, Lt. T. Q. Donaldson, Jr.

Class 28, Pony suitable to become polo pony, five years and under.—Won by *Cole*, Capt. O. Porter; second, *Diana*, Lt. T. Q. Donaldson, Jr.; third, *Twinkle*, Lt. Donaldson.

Class 29, Bending Race.—Won by Lt. Moon, Inf.; second, Capt. Whisner, Inf.; third, Capt. Burress, Inf.

Class 30, Officers' chargers.—Won by Capt. McClure, Inf.; second, Major Smith, Cav.; third, Capt. M. H. Patton.

Class 31, Horses suitable to become officers' mounts.—Won by *Miss Springtime*, Colonel G. C. Barnhardt; second, *The Woodburner*, Capt. O. Porter; third, *Miss Michelena*, Capt. Porter.

Class 32, Officers' riding Class.—Won by Colonel Henry Dickinson, 109th Cavalry; second, Major Frazier, 317th F. A.

Class 33, Best trained cavalry mount.—Won by *Mickey*, 1st Sergt. Townsend, Troop B; second, *Mickey*, Sergt. Eggert, Troop E; third, *Rajah*, Sergt. McCaslin, Troop B.

Class 34, Cavalry remount.—Won by *Pony*, Corpl. E. J. Cole, Troop G; second, *Hogan*, Sergt. Lee Corum, Troop F; third, *Toney*, Corpl. Able, Troop B.

Class 35, Best turned out trooper's mount.—Won by *Woodrow*, Corpl. O. F. Howard, Troop F; second, *Sadie*, Pvt. K. Carver, Troop F; third, *Skeeball*, Corpl. Freeman, Troop C.

Class 36, Enlisted men's jumping.—Won by Corpl. Patterson, Troop E; second, *Garyon*, Corpl. Carvalho, Hqrs. Troop; third, *Boney*, Sergt. Williams, Troop C.

Class 37, Pair jumping, open to enlisted men only.—Won by Pvt. Bonds and Corpl. Carvalho, Hqrs. Troop; second, Sergt. Williams and 1st Sergt. Thomas, Service Troop; third, Corpl. Howard and Pvt. Roberts, Troop F.

Class 38, Recruit Riding Competition.—Won by *Betty*, Pvt. Crawford, Troop E; second, *Stupid*, Pvt. Koontz, Troop C; third, *Buddy*, Pvt. Vance, Troop G.

Class 40, Jumping for officers of 63d Cavalry Division riding class.—Won by 1st Lt. Anderson, 463d F. A. Bn.; second, Corpl. Lattimore, 317th F. A.; third, Corpl. Meek, 503d Cav. Sq.

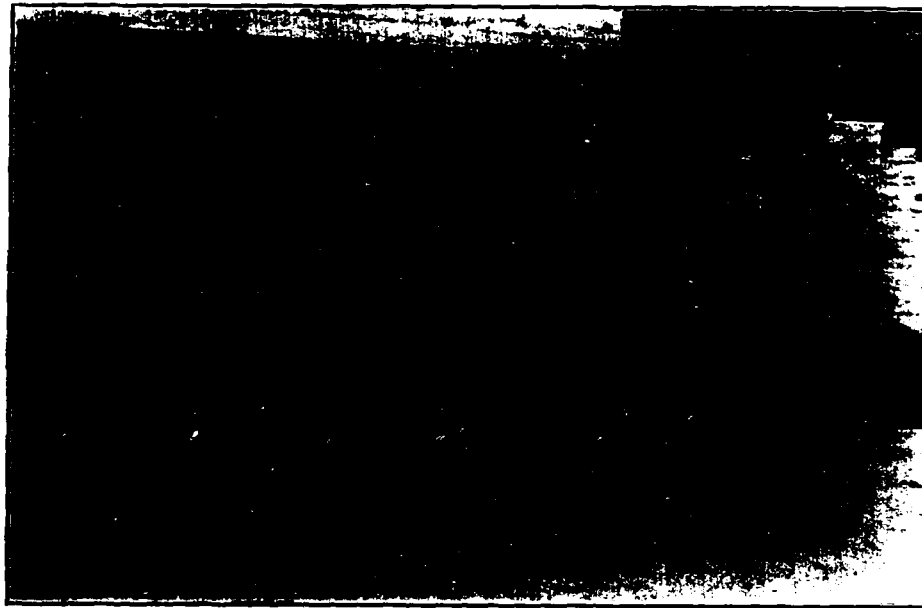
ARMY TEAM AT FALL HORSE SHOWS

FOR the second successive season, the Army was represented on the Fall Circuit of Horse Shows by a team that attended the New York State Fair and Horse Show at Syracuse, New York and the Rochester Exposition and Horse Show at Rochester, New York, extending over a period from August 30th to September 11th.

An account of these shows would be incomplete without a foreword as to the men and animals that made up the team, and of their training in preparation for the trip.

On July 10, the Army team, composed of Captain F. H. Waters, Captain W. B. Bradford, and Lieutenant W. H. W. Reinburg, all Cavalry and Captains W. H. McMahon and W. H. Colbern, Field Artillery, commenced active training at Fort Riley, Kansas. Thirty horses comprised the original number,

from which the following eighteen were selected: *Nigra*, blk. m. a.; *Jacksnipe*, br. g. a.; *Proctor*, b. g. a.; *Blackboy*, blk. g. a.; *Mr. Green*, ch. g. a.; *Miss America*, b. m. a.; *Anita*, b. m. eight; *Logical*, ch. m. a.; *Buckaroo*, br. g. a.; *St. Paul*, b. g. eight; *Joe Aleshire*, b. g. seven; *Babe Wartham*, b. g. seven; *Dick Waring*, b. g. eight; *Fred Harvey*, b. g. four; *Hindustan*, ch. g. five; *Dick*, b. g. a.; *Joffre*, b. g. a.; and *Felsenter*, ch. g. six. Of these, *Nigra*, *Jacksnipe*, *Proctor*, *Blackboy*, *Miss America*, *Dick*, *Buckaroo*, and *Joffre* are old competitors, and their names are familiar to most cavalymen. The others are young horses, mostly by Remount stallions, halfbred or better. *Joe Aleshire* is the only one of other than thoroughbred sire, he being a thoroughbred—saddle cross. *Logical* and *Felsenter* are thoroughbreds. The latter is a private mount, having been purchased in Germany by Lieutenant Reinburg.



The Cavalry School Team

The training schedule included jumping the horses under stripped saddle and under weight, galloping, and working up and down steep grades. Altogether the schedule was such that, at the time of shipment, both horses and men were in excellent condition. A further benefit was derived from the arrival of the horses at the first show five days previous to opening.

On arrival at Syracuse, the horses were given gentle exercise, some use

being made of the arena for the purpose of accustoming them to the surroundings.

The Syracuse show was held at night in the Coliseum. The arrangements were splendid, and the prizes excellently arranged. However, because the fairgrounds were some distance from the city, and the majority of the crowds attended the daylight events only, the show was rather poorly attended by the public. The jumps at this show were the usual post and rail and brush fences, from which special courses were constructed.

The performances of the team at the Syracuse show were very satisfactory, the following results being attained: *Mr. Green*, first, novice jumping class; *Buckaroo*, first, open jumping class; *Dick*, first, five foot class; *Mr. Green* and *Buckaroo*, first, Sesqui-Centennial Plate; *Nigra*, first, jumping class and triple bar class; *Blackboy* and *Buckaroo*, placed. Jumper Stake; *Proctor*, third, Hunter Stake.

All military classes were clean sweeps, *Hindustan* being the outstanding charger. A total of forty ribbons were won at this show.

The Rochester show was a daylight affair, held outside in a very beautiful show ring, and attended daily by thousands. A permanent and varied course had been constructed; special mention should be made of the five foot course, which was extremely difficult. A triple bar, bank jump, and water jump were included in every class.

In addition, the competition at this show was keener than at Syracuse, and *Buckaroo*, one of the best performers in the string, refused absolutely to go in any of his classes. *Nigra*, however, won two open jumping events; *Proctor* and *St. Paul* won the Pair of Hunters with *Mr. Green* and *Anita* second; *Dick* won the pen jump with *Proctor* second; *Jacksnipe* staged a comeback and was second to *Nigra* in the classes that she won. The team of three jumpers, *Nigra*, *Jacksnipe*, and *Blackboy*, won their class handily. *Proctor* won the charger class, was second in the middleweight class, and was reserve to the champion (middleweight hunters). A number of other seconds and thirds were won.

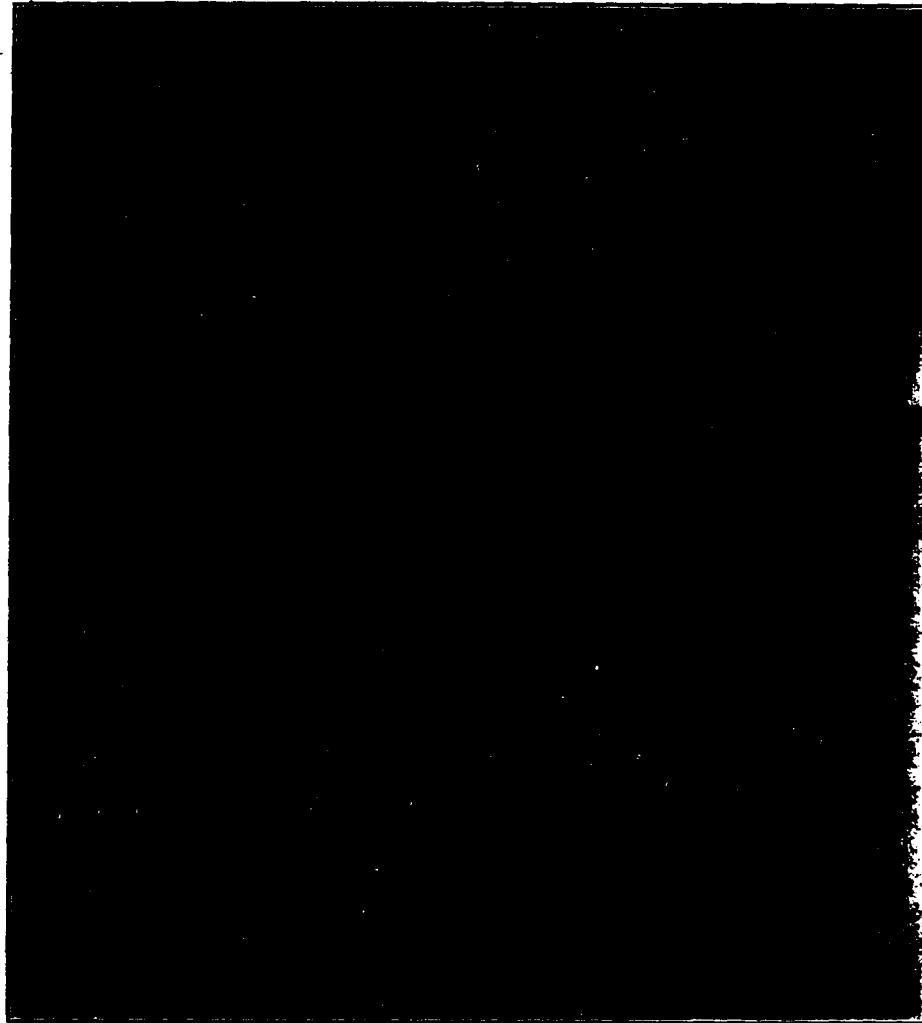
The generosity of Major C. L. Scott of the Remount Service in lending *Nigra*, a sensation in 1923 and of Colonel Pierre Lorillard, Jr., in lending *Hindustan* and *Buckaroo* was greatly appreciated, and assisted materially in the success of the team.

On the return trip to Fort Riley, *Logical* was hurt in the car and is out for the rest of the season.

THE NATIONAL HORSE SHOW

THE recent National Horse Show was unique by reason of the international aspect given to it by the unusually large number of competitors from foreign countries. Canada, France, Poland, Spain, Belgium, and Holland,

were each represented by a team of three officers who participated in both individual and team events. Our service was represented by teams from the Cavalry School and the Third Cavalry, with individual entries from other



The Polish Team at the National Horse Show

Photo by International News Reel Corp.

Left to right, Capt. Adam Krolkiewicz, Maj. Michael Tocsek, and Lieut. Kasimir Szosland. organisations of the Regular Army, National Guard, and Organized Reserves.

Results in classes having military entries follow:

International Military Trophy. Won by the Polish team; 2d, the French team; 3d,

the Belgian team.

Jumping for Officers. Won by *Laitue*, Lieut. G. J. deFollongue, France; 2d, *Black Prince*, Captain S. C. Tate, Canada; 3d, *Jacek*, Captain Adam Krolkiewicz, Poland; 4th, *Keepsake*, Lieut. J. Misonne, Belgium.

Pair Jumping for Officers only—Plaza Hotel Cup. Won by *Nigra* and *St. Paul*, Captains F. H. Waters and N. J. McMahon, Cavalry School; 2d, *Nacelle* and *Reveuse*, Lieuts. Y. M. P. Freminville and G. J. deFollongue, France; 3d *Dick* and *Black Boy*, Lieut. W. H. W. Reinburg and Capt. W. B. Bradford, Cavalry School; 4th, *Brown Boy* and *Flash*, Lieut. P. McD. Robinett and Captain J. G. Boykin, 3d Cavalry.

Class 169—Jumpers, (first division). 2d, *Zicart Griet*, Capt. J. M. de Kruijff, Holland; 4th, *Roland*, Capt. de Kruijff.

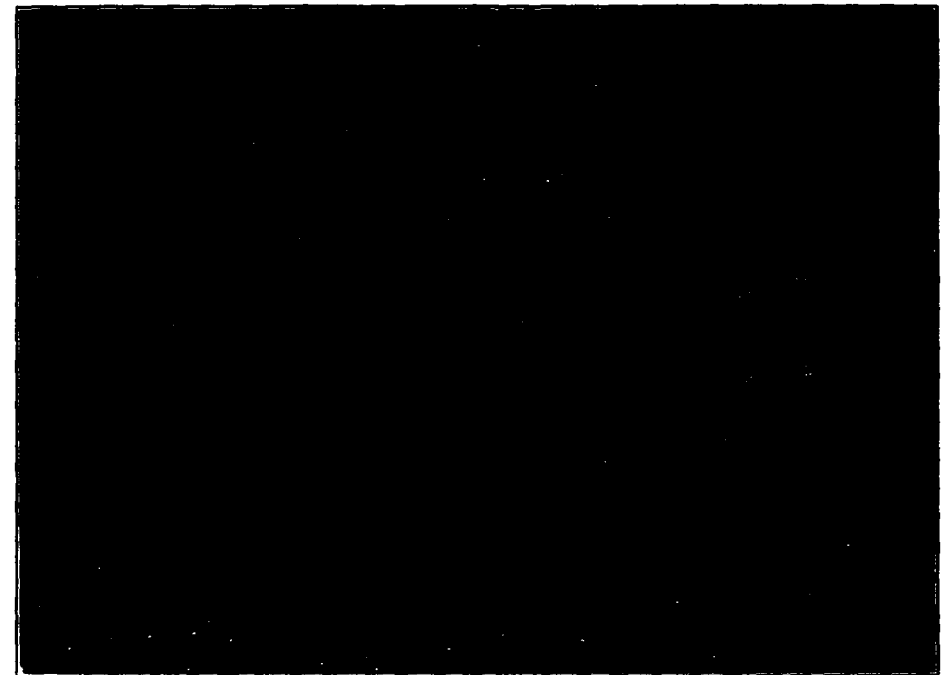


Photo by International News Reel Corp.

The French Team at the National Horse Show

Left to right, Lieut. Clave, Lieut. de Fremenville, and Lieut. de Follongue.

Class 169—Jumpers, (second division). Won by *Keepsake*, Lieut. J. Misonne, Belgium; 2d, *Hamlet*, Major M. Tocsek, Poland; 3d, *Hands Up*, Capt. J. Mesmackers, Belgium; 4th, *Acrobat*, Lieut. J. de Brabandere, Belgium.

Class 170—Jumpers (first division). Won by *Black Boy*, Cavalry School; 2d, *Gamin*, Capt. C. H. Labouchere, Holland.

Class 170—Jumpers (second division). Won by *Nacelle*, Lieut. Y. M. P. Freminville, France; 2d, *Jacek*, Capt. Adam Krolkiewicz, Poland; 3d, *Faucoryt*, Major M. Tocsek, Poland.

Squadron A Challenge Cup. Won by *Mandella*, Captain N. J. McMahon, Cavalry School; reserve, *Anita*, Captain W. B. Bradford, Cavalry School.

Remount Service Cup. Won by *Pair II*, Lieut. Y. M. P. Freminville, France; 2d, *Reveuse*, Lieut. G. J. de Follongue, France; 3d, *Ringledt*, Lieut. Casimir Szosland, Poland; 4th, *valamero*, Capt. Sr. Marques de los Frujillos, Spain.

Officers' Chargers, DuPont Cup. Won by *Gamin*, Capt. C. H. Labouchere, Holland; 2d, *Irish Crystal*, Squadron A, N. Y. N. G.; 3d, *Pathfinder*, Remount Service; 4th, *Hindustan*, Cavalry School.

The Bowman Challenge Cup, Officers' Chargers (not open to officers of foreign armies). Won by *Proctor*, Cavalry School; 2d, *Felsenter*, Lieut. W. H. W. Reinburg.

Qualified Hunters (to be ridden by ladies). 4th, *Proctor*, Cavalry School.

Horses suitable to become Hunters. 4th, *Hindustan*, Cavalry School.

Hunters or Jumpers over five foot jumps. Won by *Laitue*, Lieut. G. J. de Follongue, France; 3d, *Honds Up*, Capt. G. Mesmackers, Belgium; 3d, *Dick*, Cavalry School; 4th, *Veronique*, Lieut. G. de Brabandere, Belgium.

Horses suitable to become Light Weight Hunters. 3d, *Felsenter*, Cavalry School; 4th, *Hindustan*, Cavalry School.

\$1,000 Jumper Stake. 4th, *Unigeno*, Captain Adam Krollkiewicz, Poland.

Heavy Weight Polo Mounts (mares suitable for breeding polo ponies). Won by *Quinnie*, U. S. M. A.; 2d, *Virginia*, Captain J. S. Tate, 16th F. A.; 3d, *La Paloma*, Lt. M. E. Jones.

Three Hunters or Jumpers. Won by Cavalry School; 3d, Cavalry School; 4th, French team.

Teams of Three Jumpers (Westchester Challenge Cup). 2d, Cavalry School Team; 3d, Cavalry School team.

Light Weight Polo Mounts (ridden by officers). Won by *P. D. Q.*, Squadron A, N. Y. N. G.; 2d, *Miss Kitten*, Major A. R. Chaffee, 3d Cav; 3d, *Belle of New York*, Capt. J. H. Mulcahy, Reg.; 4th, *Contessa*, U. S. M. A.

Heavy Weight Polo Mounts (ridden by officers). Won by *Carry the News*, Capt. J. S. Tate, 16th F. A.; 2d, *Quinnie*, U. S. M. A.; 3d, *La Paloma*, Lt. M. E. Jones, Cav. 4th, *Dusty*, Capt. Frank P. Lum.

Polo Mounts up to Carrying 190 pounds. 4th, *Carry the News*, Capt. J. S. Tate, 16th F. A.

Troopers Mounts. Won by *Peggy*, 3d Cavalry; 2d, *Grey Lady*, Squadron A, N. Y. N. G.; 3d, *Miss G*, Westfield Troop Association; 4th, *Applejack*, 3d Cav.

Troopers Mounts (actually used by troopers). Won by *Peggy*, 3d Cav.; 2d, *Cautious*, Squadron A, N. Y. N. G.; 3d, *Grey Lady*, N. J. N. G.; 4th, *Applejack*, 3d Cav.

Triple Bar Class—3d, *Firejump*, Capt. J. H. Irving, 3d Cav.



The National Guard

Notes on Visits to National Guard Cavalry Camps

By

Lieut. Colonel A. F. COMMISKEY, Cavalry

DUE to the limiting factors, time and money, my visits to National Guard cavalry organizations during the last field training season, were restricted to Rhode Island, Pennsylvania, and New Jersey.

Rhode Island

Having called upon the Adjutant General of Rhode Island in Providence, he took me in his motor car to the camp of 1st Squadron, Rhode Island Cavalry, which was located in a field, near a stream, a short day's march south of Providence, the squadron's home station. This camp was the last overnight stop of the squadron which was making a seven days' march as a part of its summer training, the first half of the training period having been spent in the training camp at Quonset Point.

The horses were standing on the picket lines, having been groomed and fed. Stable sergeants and farriers were attending to the usual bumps and bruises incident to marching, and the shoeing was being looked over. It was apparent that the care of animals was not being neglected and that they were being looked after in a very satisfactory manner.

The men had finished setting up their shelter tents and were occupied with the usual tasks which must be gone through with on going into camp; such as arranging the interior of the tent, cleaning arms and saddle equipment, airing the saddle blankets, etc.

The cooks and kitchen police were busy preparing the evening meal. The whole camp created the impression of having things well organized. Everybody seemed to have learned what his particular duties were, and was going about doing his part without confusion. It all indicated that the previous two week's training had, as to fundamentals, been thorough. This impression of efficiency in basic training was further strengthened the next day when I had a chance to see the squadron finishing its march at the Armory in Providence.

I believe that the training received on a properly conducted march, where advantage is taken of the many opportunities for small tactical problems in security, etc., is one of the best uses to which at least part of the two week's field training, can be put.

There is a story in which an orchestra leader was forced to apply for a volunteer to play a violin in place of his usual violinist who, at the last minute had failed to appear. A volunteer came forward saying he was willing to do what he could to help out. However, when asked if he could play the violin, he answered: "I don't know whether I can play or not; I've never tried, but I'm willing to try it now."

Marching is perhaps the most necessary preliminary to combat. Without practice, it is most probable that proficiency in this very important part of training, will be lacking. The best way to learn to march is to march.

Two outstanding difficulties were met with during the march made by the Rhode Island Cavalry. The first was a lack of suitable mounts. The hired horses were of poor quality and unsuited for cavalry service. In this highly industrialized section of the country, suitable horses for cavalry purposes are scarce. It is almost impossible to procure them locally, and it does not pay a contractor to bring horses from the West for the short period he can hire them to the National Guard, and for the very moderate rate of hire allowed by the government. The second outstanding difficulty was the lack of proper animal drawn transportation. If the present scheme, of issuing to each troop of National Guard cavalry one spring wagon, is carried out, this difficulty will disappear.

From an organization standpoint, an improvement is possible. The 110th Massachusetts Cavalry at present consists of a regiment, less one squadron. Its complete organization has been arrested by the present limitations imposed by the Federal Government as to further increases in the National Guard. The squadron of the Rhode Island Cavalry is a separate squadron. Its station is about forty miles distant from that of the 110th Massachusetts Cavalry. From the mobilization standpoint, especially under the present plans, it would be a distinct advantage to make the separate Rhode Island Squadron, a part of the 110th Massachusetts Cavalry, thus completing the regiment and absorbing a squadron not a part of any division or brigade as at present organized. In this change, there are many other advantages, too obvious to mention.

Pennsylvania

On reaching Mt. Gretna, Pa. I found the entire 52d Cavalry Brigade in camp there. The reservation, due to its varied terrain, has many advantages as a cavalry training ground. Its natural advantages have been enhanced by carefully planned camp and training facilities of many kinds. Unfortunately, the best of plans could not fortell the weather. There were but three clear days during the cavalry encampment of last summer. In spite of this disadvantage, the training schedule was carried out as pre-arranged. This was a severe test of morale, especially that of the enlisted personnel. However, the ankle deep mud, wet clothes, and damp bedding, deeply muddy picket lines, which made grooming a feat in balancing, in addition to the

usual difficulties pertaining to the job, were all taken as part of the game, and were not permitted to interfere with the task in hand: the training of the Brigade. The Brigade showed the stuff of which it is composed. An atmosphere of earnestness and business-like efficiency pervaded the camp. It extended from the Commanding General's tent to the stable sergeants' shacks at the end of the picket lines. Order, system and discipline were everywhere doing their work.

In common with other mounted organizations, the hired horse problem was apparently not yet satisfactorily solved. Satisfactory cavalry horses again seemed hard to procure under the conditions imposed. I think it may be taken as a fundamentally sound statement that nothing in the way of sudden appropriations or legislation, can produce a five year old horse in less than five years. During these necessary five years of development, the animal must be fed and cared for. If we are to have mobile troops, cavalry, we must have horses, and horses of the proper kind. The team of a trained man on a trained horse, is essential in good cavalry. In order to have available when necessary, the proper kind of horses in sufficient numbers, it is necessary to in some manner, make it worth the farmer's and the ranchman's expense and time in raising them.

One of the present outstanding deficiencies common to all National Guard cavalry, is the lack of machine rifles and the Phillips packs on which to carry them and their ammunition. It is hoped that these can be supplied in the near future. Both for training purposes and as an important part of the mobile fire power of the cavalry, they are necessary. When they are received, the present unsatisfactory automatic rifle and its makeshift carrier can be done away with.

Among the training facilities at Mount Gretna, I was especially interested in a very clever system of target pits connected by telephone to a central control point. This was the combat firing range. It made possible the working out of most practical problems in combat firing for rifle, automatic rifle, and machine gun.

The entire 52d Brigade held a mounted review on the last day in camp. Due to the still muddy condition of the field, rapid gaits were not attempted. The appearance of the Brigade at this review was most creditable.

It was interesting to note while at Camp Gretna that seventy-two Reserve cavalry officers were taking their summer training with the National Guard. The Reserve officers were enthusiastic about the training received. They varied in rank from colonels to lieutenants.

New Jersey

The 102d Cavalry, New Jersey National Guard, held its summer camp at Sea Girt, N. J. The camp with the available surrounding country and the rifle range, makes it possible to train a regiment in the basic principles of

cavalry. Full advantage was taken during the last field training period, of the surrounding country for tactical problems. I had an opportunity to accompany the regiment on an outpost problem. The whole thing was extremely well done. The Regiment reported promptly at the hour set. Uniform and equipment were exactly as ordered. Both staff and line officers understood what they were about to do. The enlisted personnel had been instructed so that they also knew what was to be done and what their part in the problem was; hence they were interested from the beginning and the interest was sustained throughout the problem. Naturally it followed; the work was well done.

Although the hired horses are one of the problems of this organization in common with the rest of the National Guard cavalry, they seemed to have come more nearly to a satisfactory solution of it than the other organizations I have seen. They had better horses, better cared for, and better ridden than is usual. The arms were in excellent condition and the general appearance of the regiment and its camp, were in all respects a credit to the organization. The whole outfit reflected a well commanded, well instructed regiment under discipline which promoted, rather than destroyed, esprit. As to equipment, this organization needs, as do the other National Guard cavalry regiments, the machine rifle and the Phillips packs on which to carry it.

Conclusions

To sum up:—I found the National Guard cavalry which I had a chance to observe last summer, composed of excellent personnel, both commissioned and enlisted, who were earnestly and intelligently working toward fulfilling to their utmost ability, the task assigned them under the National Defense Act. Due to the limited time available for training, to the large turn-over in personnel, and to limited facilities for training, a definite limit is necessarily imposed upon the National Guard in time of peace in the extent to which anything but basic training can be satisfactorily carried. Within these limits great progress is being made. The influence of the Cavalry School at Fort Riley is everywhere apparent in this progress. It reaches the National Guard Cavalry through many channels, most important of which are, National Guard officers who return for duty with their organizations after having taken the National Guard Officers' course at Fort Riley; instructors who are graduates of the Cavalry School; and correspondence schools which are maintained at Fort Riley.

The Organized Reserves

Notes on a Reserve Training Camp

By

Lieutenant CLAUDE F. BAKER, 324th Cavalry

THE 1926 training camp for officers of the 324th Cavalry occupied two weeks during July 4th to 18th. The training occurred at Ft. D. A. Russell, at Gilchrist's Ranch and at Camp Richard W. Young, all of these places being in the vicinity of Cheyenne, Wyoming. Gilchrist's Ranch is approximately 14 miles northwesterly from Ft. D. A. Russell, and Camp Young in the same general direction, about 18 miles farther.

During the training, the 324th officers were given tactical command of the 13th Cavalry for ten days of field maneuvers, involving a real war problem carefully considered, executed and criticized; and the usual orders, both executive and administrative, were timely issued. Staff maps, journals and reports were required and are a part of the permanent files pertaining to the camp. It was the unqualified opinion of all officers in attendance, that the two weeks involved were the most instructive, both practically and theoretically, of any two weeks in their army experience. As was commonly expressed by these officers during the closing days:—"This has been a real camp!"

Active service commenced July 4, 1926.

A large proportion of the main body of officers attending the camp, entrained at Salt Lake City at one o'clock in the afternoon of a gloriously hot Fourth. The temperature at that time and place was officially recorded as 110 degrees Fahrenheit; and of the officers in uniform, bidding their ladies fond farewells, several degrees higher. It was remarked how well acquainted several of these officers were with ladies at the station, and also with ladies on the train. It is difficult to judge whether or not this diversified affectionate acquaintance is individual with the 324th Regiment. However, considerable confusion attended the entraining, because the Adjutant had given several officers' reservations to lady friends, and later refused his military brethren introductions to these friends. This did not disturb the dental officer who was interested solely in the location of the enemy.

On the train, Lieutenant Rosenberg inspected carefully the polish on his new boots, and stood a round of drinks in the buffet car.

At Ogden, at 2:15 P. M. our dental officer inadvertently exchanged his official tool equipment for that of a railroad mechanic, and at camp later was surprised to find that he had brought with him the following articles:—one

hammer, 2 cold chisels, 1 small pliers, 3 pincers (large), and some miscellaneous steel.

The writer retired early and can give no further information until detraining at Cheyenne the next morning at 5:05. Only two officers detrained immediately on arrival, and the conductor was required to hold the train about 40 minutes for the others to be awakened and dress. The first words spoken by the dental officer that morning was an inquiry as to the probable position of the enemy.

Captain Irvin welcomed the detachment on behalf of the 13th. Preparations were in readiness for the short journey to the Fort, and adequate quarters had been prepared for use.

The morning of the 5th was spent in arranging quarters and baggage, undergoing hospital examination, and assembling equipment. Orderlies reported from time to time and assisted greatly in preparations for the trip to camp, which was scheduled to commence the following day. Visits were made to headquarters where Colonel Richmond outlined the prospective training in detail, and the reservists were assigned in tactical command of the 13th with Lt. Colonel Frederic Jorgensen, of Salt Lake City, Utah, commanding, and Lt. Colonel Hartwell Palmer, of Portland, Oregon, Executive Officer, 162nd Cavalry Brigade, attached.

That evening in quarters maps were inspected, led by Lt. Rosenberg. The dental officer inquired as to the position of the enemy.

The next morning, July 6th, Chaplain Brown arrived in good spirits, and was introduced into a blue haze where camp equipment was being assembled against time. The chaplain admitted the language was fully equal to that resulting from a forced evacuation of a Y. M. C. A. in the good old days in France. During the morning the visitors were introduced to their horses; and the horses eyed their riders, and the riders eyed their horses, with skeptical speculation.

Early in the afternoon, the 13th, and reserve officers, marched from Ft. D. A. Russell to Gilchrist's Ranch. The weather was excellent for men and horses, damp and cool, and the march was thoroughly enjoyed. A small, but enthusiastic, delegation of dogs accompanied the movement with zeal. Men, horses and equipment were in proper condition for all purposes. The length of march was variously estimated by reservists from twelve to forty miles. Later it was conceded that the lower estimate was more nearly correct.

Gilchrist's Ranch afforded a good camp site with excellent water available. Here the reserve officers secured practical knowledge of making and breaking camp and necessary preparations for the night, with an outpost established and explained on the ground.

It was early noted that some of the saddles selected by the officers were hardly adequate to the situation. Pulley equipment was necessary to jerk Lieutenant Clifford from his saddle. (Saddle seat 10.5 inches). Several

officers moved about like the Class of '66 in search of orderlies. The evening was damp and cold. The official sleeping temperature was confidently reported to be around zero.

The following morning, July 7th, the dental officer inquired as to the enemy's position; and Lieutenant Clifford omitting underwear, commandeered a shoe horn in order to get into saddle. Several reservists eased themselves into the saddle with an anguished delicacy.

During the march from the Ranch to Camp Young it was noted that the way was steadily up grade, and in some places the route was steep. At the worst part of the way, the main body dismounted and led out up approximately 7 miles of mountain side at the rate of 5.5 miles per hour. This distance and rate were approximated by members of the reserve staff, whose calculations might have been as uneven as their breathing.

The official time of arriving at Camp Young was 11:30 A. M. The dental officer immediately made a personal reconnaissance in a vain attempt to discover the enemy. The day was threatening, and several tents were hurriedly pitched in the teeth of an imminent storm. There was some hurried work with shovel and pick doing necessary trenching about the tents and the rain arrived in a near cloudburst. Fortunately the tents held. At this time a certain senior officer lost his orderly, his tent, and his mess equipment. This officer took the official precipitation data of 3.7 inches of rainfall. Afternoon: falling temperature. Evening: falling temperature. Night: falling temperature. About morning the temperature hit bottom.

July 8th, the position of the enemy was determined on all maps excepting that of the dental officer. There was an hour or so spent in riding and outpost reconnaissance, and in the afternoon there was an opportunity afforded each reservist to make his outpost plans and dispositions in detail.

July 9th there was made a most spirited reconnaissance of the enemy position. Several staff officers of the reserve accompanied by the dental officer rode through marshes and underbrush with care as to sufficient cover, to the neighborhood of the enemy's left flank. Thereupon the dental officer emerged suddenly from cover to high ground in the open, and an enemy patrol close by shot at him several times.

"What was that?" inquired the dental officer.

The joint and several answers of his compatriots cannot be reproduced here. The dental officer had found the enemy.

During the day one of the junior reservists prepared an article for the Salt Lake papers laudatory of sparkling streams, sportive trout and the excellence of the natural bathing facilities at camp. The writer, misled as to the comforts of stream bathing, took a hurried bath in the stream over the hill from the camp, and accurately determined the temperature of liquid air, if not absolute zero. A trooper who watched the bath shivered so hard he became a blur on the horizon. This trooper subsequently required medical attention.

July 10th, there was an informal beard inspection. Considerable cursory argument developed the merits of two methods of handling beards: the one school favored parting in the middle and draping evenly over the shoulders, the other school was all for braiding. There seemed to be a more official suggestion current in favor of shaving. This last suggestion was uniformly adopted.

In the afternoon there was a horse show for enlisted men with cash prizes. The competition was spirited, and the horse show was attended by a good-sized audience.

July 11th, being Sunday, the Chaplain made use of the sunny morning to have open air services. These services were attended by all who were without acquaintances in nearby towns, and the band furnished appropriate music. The Chaplain gave an interesting sermon, and his hearers were without envy for the officers who returned in the evening with reminiscent expressions.

Sunday evening a regimental smoker was held. There were several short addresses, splendid music, and various clever vaudeville numbers. Lieutenant Rosenberg was in good form, and mentioned that he had been around campfires so much that he smelled like a smoked ham. All the numbers were well received. It was an enjoyable evening to everyone, and was one of the many things during the camp that proved the splendid morale existing in the 13th Cavalry.

The following three days, July 12th, 13th and 14th were in many respects the most interesting days of the camp. During these days actual attacks of the enemy position were had in details: the first attack exemplifying a plan of enveloping the enemy's left, and the second attack executing a plan of enveloping the enemy's right. On the 14th it was assumed that the enemy cavalry regiment had been defeated, and the necessary orders were given in the field for the occupation of Tie City Pass, and these orders were immediately executed.

On July 15th the regiment broke camp and returned to Ft. D. A. Russell by the more usual route of travel, an approximate distance of 35 miles, arriving in good order at the Fort in the early afternoon. It was an inspiring sight to see the regiment in full march order crossing the green rolling hills of Eastern Wyoming on the return. The countryside was unusually attractive; there had been a sufficiency of rain; and the hills were covered with rank green, and the valleys were colored with a variety of wild flowers. Any reservist, part of that movement, was indeed insensate, who was not enthused with the cavalry service and the generous hospitality of the officers and men of the 13th.

An uncharitable outsider, making too minute an inspection on the regiment's arrival might have been reminded of Mark Twain's pilgrim in the Holy land, who, after a long journey without bathing or change of clothing, was not considered fit for a drawing room. Razors, soap and water were put

to the best of uses, and dinner that evening at the Officers' Club was a much appreciated event.

July 16th was employed checking in issued equipment, securing travel vouchers and pay, and in the evening the reservists were entertained by the officers of the 13th at a ball. The ball was attended by everyone and was thoroughly enjoyed. It is not impossible to assume that some of the guests are still dancing. The ball was in lively progress when the historian took his train some hours after midnight.

Since the camp a great many expressions have been received from the reservists who attended, and it is the unanimous opinion of all that the two weeks could not have been spent more beneficially. Incidentally one of the larger reservists lost five inches of unnecessary waist line, and is anticipating already the results of another two weeks of camp life in the summer of 1927.

It is always gratifying to recall pleasant memories and experiences, especially where there is involved the making of new friends under circumstances of accomplishment together. It would be impossible to give here in detail the many courtesies and acts of kindness extended the visitors by Colonel H. B. Richmond, and the officers and men of the 13th Cavalry. It is only necessary to say that the reservists were received, instructed and entertained by hospitable gentlemen and capable officers.

Among other things the schedule provided for instruction in the organization and tactical employment of the various elements of the regiment, in halting for the night, in outposts, in advance guard scouting and patrolling, in reconnaissance detachments, in tactical dispositions for an advance, in communication and supply, in command and staff, in march discipline, in general and special situations including estimates, in march and administrative orders, in security, in securing and disseminating information as to the enemy and field reports, in guard duty and orders, in estimating the situation with respect to attack and preparing a detailed plan of action, in actual orders in the field, in actual attack, in pursuit and occupation of position, in camp policing and evacuation, and the care of animals and stable management.

63RD CAVALRY DIVISION

During the period, October 1, 1926 to June 30, 1927, the Division will be busily engaged carrying out the provisions of an inactive duty training program. Many valuable forms of instruction are offered to members of the Division, including Semi-Monthly Tactical Schools, Correspondence Courses and equitation classes. To date the enrollments for the different courses have been very satisfactory. The present enrollment for the correspondence courses is 128 as compared to a maximum of 60 for the 1925-26 school year.

The Annual Chattanooga-Sixth Cavalry Horse Show, an elaborate affair, embracing forty different classes, both civilian and military, was held at Fort Oglethorpe, Georgia, on November 12th and 13th. The weather was ideal and quite a crowd witnessed the show. Among the classes were two for members of the equitation class conducted by these headquarters. One a jumping class and the other to determine the best all-round rider.

In the jumping class the following won places: 1st Lt. R. C. Anderson, 463rd F. A. Bn., first; Corporal D. S. Latimore, 317th F. A., second; Corporal Fleming Meeks, 503rd Cavalry Squadron, third.

In the second event, Colonel Henry Dickinson, 100th Cavalry, took first; Major J. B. Frazier, Jr., 317th F. A., second; and Corporal D. S. Latimore, 317th F. A., third.

Approximately twelve officers participated in each of these events.

These Annual shows do much to foster interest in horses and riding as is evidenced by the number of riding clubs being organized and the increasing number of civilians who compete in the yearly shows.

Major General Johnson Hagood, Commanding the Fourth Corps Area, was the guest of honor at a dinner given by the Reserve Officers' Association of Chattanooga, at the Read House, Friday Evening, November 12th. Approximately sixty members of the Army of the United States and prominent civilians were present and had the pleasure of listening to an interesting address by General Hagood, regarding the needs and future of the Officers' Reserve Corps.

The first session of the 1926-1927 Corps Area Tactical School for members of the Army of the United States in Chattanooga and vicinity was held at the city Y. M. C. A. Building, Wednesday evening, November 10th. Though the attendance was small, those present was very much interested in the conference on organization conducted by Major Oral E. Clark, Infantry D. O. L.

The second session of this school was held on November 24th, and covered the subject of Map Reading. This conference was presented in an interesting and able manner by Major Watkins, District Engineer.

305TH CAVALRY—Philadelphia, Pa.

Colonel W. I. Forbes, Commanding

The 1926-27 Inactive Training period for the regiment, started on October 19th with a two hour ride at the Quartermaster outdoor riding ring, 21st Street and Oregon Avenue. Through the kindness of Major D. F. Munnikhuyzen, instructor in equitation at the Quartermaster School, the regimental equitation class was able to ride outdoors on each of the subsequent Tuesdays in October. During November the equitation class rode each Wednesday at the First City Troop Armory, 23rd and Ronstead Streets.

At these two hour periods of equitation, 1½ hours was devoted to instruction in riding (T. R. 50-40); 15 minutes to points of the horse, conformation, and diseases; 15 minutes to Cavalry Drill and Saber work.

The average attendance for the period mentioned above was 21 officers and enlisted men of the regiment, per ride.

Inactive Training, 1926-27

In addition to the weekly rides, the schedule of Inactive Training calls for bi-weekly meetings on the second and last Wednesday of each month. These meetings will alternately consist of conference or map problems, and rifle and pistol shooting on indoor range. On the scheduled nights the class, after riding, has dinner together at the Aldine Hotel, then returns to the armory for the night session.

During this period of Inactive Training, everything possible will be done to develop troop esprit. The Regimental Commander has donated a silver cup for the troop or squadron detachment having the highest rating during the 1926-27 period of Inactive Training. In arriving at the highest rating the following will count:

- a. Attendance at all activities.
- b. Record of scores at rifle and pistol shoots.
- c. Monthly practical troop test in equitation.

During October and November the following meetings were held:

October 27th—Rifle and pistol shoot at Sergeant Mathiot's farm near West Chester. Twenty officers and enlisted men attended.

November 10th—Conference Map Problem and exercise in issuing combat orders. Attendance, 17 members.

November 24th—Rifle and pistol shoot at First City Troop indoor range. Attendance, 18 members.

The weekly conferences, for officers and enlisted men of the regiment enrolled in the Basic Officers' Correspondence Course, were held each Wednesday during October, and November at Regimental Headquarters from 12:00 noon to 1:00 P. M. Lieutenants Adams, Chew, Ennis, Esler, Fotherall, Hunter, Kirk, Roberts, Taylor, Town, Sergeants Lacey, Mathiot and Ritter regularly attended, and great credit is due them for giving up their noon hour to this work.

Polo

The regimental polo team, through the courtesy and kindness of Colonel John Converse, has again been able to join the 103rd Cavalry Polo Association, and use their ponies and armory for practice and games. This courtesy and kindness on the part of the National Guard is greatly appreciated by the regiment, as polo would not be possible if it were not for their co-operation.



Photo by Philadelphia Evening Bulletin

The 305th Cavalry Team

Left to right, Capt. Brogden, Major Thompson, Lieuts. Bray and Fotherall.

Polo practice started on November 26th, and games with outside teams will be played weekly during December, January, February and March.

Horse Shows

The regimental horse show team competed in the following horse shows with results as shown:

In the Philadelphia Riders and Drivers Association Horse Show on September 16th,

17th and 18th the regimental team composed of Major Thompson, Lieutenants Bray and Fotherall, took the following events:

First place in Military Team Jumping; first, second and third places in Military Jumping (inside course); second, third and fourth places in Military Jumping (outside course).

In the Bryn Mawr Horse Show on September 29th, and 30th, October 1st and 2nd the regimental team composed of Major Thompson, Captain Brogden, Lieutenants Gardiner and Fotherall, took the following places:

Third and fourth places in Military Team Jumping (the regiment entered two teams in this event); second place in the Remount class; third and fourth places in Military Jumping, and fourth place in Officers' Chargers class.

In the Jeffersonville Horse Show on October 16th, the regimental team composed of Major Thompson, Captain Brogden and Lieutenant Fotherall, took first, second, third and fourth places in Military Jumping (over outside course). Lieutenant Fotherall riding two different horses took first and second places in this event. Captain Brogden third, and Major Thompson fourth.



Photo by Philadelphia Evening Bulletin

Left—Gold Bond, Captain Brogden up; right—Manners, Lieut. Fotherall up.

In the Whitelands Horse Show and Race Meet on November 6th, Major Thompson, Captains Brogden and Livingston, Lieutenants Bray and Fotherall, represented the regiment. Lieutenant Bray did exceptionally well at this show and took the following places:

First place in Open Jumping class, second place in Members Jumping class, second place in Flat Race, second place in Pair Jumping class, and was a member of the team that took third place in Hunt Team Jumping class. The 306th team composed of Major Thompson, Captain Brogden and Lieutenant Fotherall took second place in that event. Captain Brogden took third place in the Members Steeplechase and Captain Livingston third place in Members Jumping class.

Great credit is due Lieutenant Fotherall for his kindness in allowing the regiment to enter four of his fine hunters as regimental entries in the above mentioned horse shows. As a result of his kindness and sportsmanship the regiment has a beautiful collection of cups and ribbons on display at regimental headquarters. The regiment is also indebted to Capt. John C. Groome for allowing his fine mare *Tar Baby* to be entered as a regimental entry in the Bryn Mawr Show. *Tar Baby* took a ribbon in every class she was entered.

308TH CAVALRY

"Take the track to the left hand behind Major Cherrington."

The command came from Captain Arthur H. Truxes, executive officer of the 308th Cavalry on the night of October 6th at Hunt Armory, Pittsburgh. His words were music to the ears of some twelve or thirteen "veterans" and five or six "rookies," for they signalled the opening of another season of inactive training.

Most of the "old guard" were there—Major Graham, Lieutenants Beese, Peebles, Goldsworthy and Lynds, and Sergeants Barr, Shearer and Rosenbaum. Lieutenant Fuller, one of the old faithful, was missed.

It was an auspicious opening, for, as the attendance at the following rides indicated, the season of 1926-27 promises to be the most active in the history of the regiment. For the eight rides in October, there was a total attendance of 184 officers and non-commissioned officers and for November, the total attendance was 176.

The rides are being held every Wednesday evening from 7:30 to 9:30 and every Sunday morning from 9:30 to 11:00.

At the third ride, Captain Truxes divided the class into an advanced group and a "rookie" squad. Major Graham put the advanced class through a snappy drill at the walk, trot, and gallop, while Captain Truxes gave the "rookie" squad instructions in the fundamentals of equitation. At subsequent rides, Captain Truxes took the advanced class and assigned the "rookie" squad to veterans from the advanced class.

Jumping Competition

A cup has been given to the 308th riding class to be offered as a trophy for the highest score in the jumping competition. The contest started Nov. 14th, and will continue over a period of three months, November, December, and January. Competitive jumping is scored on the second Sunday morning of each month. Two jumps are taken by each competitor, the total points for the two jumps to be divided by 2 for the score. A competitor absent is given zero. The competitor totaling the highest score for the three months will win the cup.

Regimental Meetings

Nine officers and non-commissioned officers attended the first unit conference held at regimental headquarters October 8th. Combat Orders, the Organization of the 62nd Cavalry Division and the Mobilization Plans of the 308th Regiment were discussed. Each man present was given a thorough understanding of his own personal duties and responsibilities in case of a major emergency.

Thirteen members of the Regiment attended the unit meeting on November 12. Duties and responsibilities of the brigade, regiment and squadron officers in the field were discussed under the leadership of the Regiment's executive officer, Capt. Arthur H. Truxes. The second part of the program was taken up with instruction in advance guard action. This was preparatory to the squadron problem to be worked out at the next meeting on December 10.

New Books Reviewed

Advanced Equitation By BARETTO DE SOUZA. Illustrated. 419 pp. E. P. Dutton & Company, New York. \$7.00.

In this work the author takes up the subject of equitation at the point to which he had carried it in his *Principles of Equitation*, and continues it to a more advanced and artistic stage. The same excellent method of treatment of the subject which characterized the former book, is followed in *Advanced Equitation*. The principles discussed are thoroughly analyzed, and the technique and reasons for each step so clearly set forth, that for the earnest and conscientious student, an instructor may be dispensed with. In this respect, when an instructor is not available, a work of this kind has many advantages over a technical manual of equitation.

While the book goes into the science of equitation to include high school work, there is much that will be of interest and value to those who do not care to continue the training of a horse to this point.

Two chapters are devoted to Jumping. There will be some disagreement with the author's views on this subject. While he starts out with the premise, that theoretically, the rider's torso should be vertical at all times, this is qualified to suit special conditions, even so far as approval of a reasonable degree of leaning forward by the rider as the jump is made. The author does, however, strongly condemn what he calls the "chaise longue" seat, where the rider is practically resting his torso on the horse's neck, with his lower legs extended to the rear. That such an exaggerated seat is common is clear to anyone who follows horse shows, either on the ground or through the medium of the pages of illustrated periodicals.

In addition to many half-tones, the text is profusely illustrated with Mr. Victor Nikoll's drawings.

Smoky By WILL JAMES. Illustrated. 310 pp. Charles Scribner's Sons, New York. \$2.50.

To those who love horses, and few there are who do not, this story of a one-man cow horse, by Will James, will have a strong appeal. It is believed that no writer has more accurately described the probable reactions of a horse to life and his surroundings. Smoky practically tells his own story, although it is not written in the first person.

From the time when, as a wobbly colt, he first saw the light of day on the range with all its dangers in the shape of coyotes, bears and mountain lions, his life history is depicted with a sympathy and an understanding difficult to equal. And the greatest friend of this horse among a thousand, was a man, and also were men his greatest enemies.

His adventures on the range, his first contact with man, the first feel of a rope, his breaking and development into a first-class cow horse, are graphically described. After having been stolen by a half-breed horse thief, Smoky's subsequent life of hardship, culminating in his experiences as a rodeo outlaw, makes him a hater of man and all his works. However, after many tribulations, he finally comes into his own.

Will James' inimitable drawings add much to the interest of the work.

It is with the greatest relief and satisfaction that one reads this book after perusing some of the incredible stories of horses which have recently appeared.

The Fighting Cheyennes By GEORGE BIRD GRINNELL. Maps. 430 pp. Charles Scribner's Sons, New York. \$4.00.

160

This book, by one of the greatest living authorities on the Indian, depicts the history, from the earliest days to the present time, of one of the most warlike of all Indian tribes. Subsequent to 1856, the Cheyennes were usually represented in the Indian wars on the western plains, so this narrative practically covers the history of these wars from that date to 1891. Miles, Crook, Custer and other famous Indian campaigners fought against the Cheyennes and found them to be worthy opponents in every instance.

The author is a friend of the Indian and has an intimate knowledge of his character and psychology. Everyone familiar with the Indian and his history will admit that he has many admirable qualities, and that the record of the dealings of the Whites with him has been marked by injustice, ill-treatment and broken treaties. In the westward course of civilization the Red Man was doomed to disappear, but that many of our Indian wars might have been avoided, is indisputable.

We have had many descriptions of battles with Indians, but few from the Indian standpoint. In this work there are many accounts of such battles from Indian sources. "What the Indians saw in the battles here described," says Mr. Grinnell, "and in many others—I have learned during years of intimate acquaintance with those who took part in them."

In studying the Indian campaign of 1876, one cannot fail to be impressed with the degree of strategical and tactical leadership exhibited by the Cheyenne and Sioux chiefs, and the fighting qualities of their warriors. This campaign was to have been one of co-operation between the commands of General Crook from the Department of the Platte, General Terry from the Department of Dakota, and General Gibbon from the Department of Montana. While on his way to the rendezvous, Crook was eliminated from the campaign by Crazy Horse at the battle of the Rosebud. Crazy Horse then joined the hostiles on the Little Big Horn, where Custer's force from Fort Abraham Lincoln was defeated before it effected a junction with Gibbon's force for the anticipated fight. Further, there exists no better example in history of taking advantage of a division of enemy forces to defeat each in detail, than is illustrated by the Indian tactics at the battle of the Little Big Horn.

Highways and Byways of the Civil War By CLARENCE EDWARD MACARTNEY. Illustrated. 273 pp. Dorrance and Company, New York. \$3.00.

In this work the gifted author of *Lincoln and his Generals* has described some twenty Civil War battles and campaigns from the human interest viewpoint, but with an accurate historical background. No pretense is made at giving a complete or technical account of the various battles, but the discussion in each case is ample for a clear picture of the situation, while the causes leading to victory or defeat are graphically brought out.

Much of the material is new, and the characteristic side lights thrown on prominent personalities of both the opposing forces, make the book unique.

This work and its predecessor, mentioned above, are excellent examples of how history may be made interesting without loss of accuracy.

Air Warfare By MAJOR WILLIAM C. SHERMAN, Air Corps. Illustrated. 303 pp. The Ronald Press Company, New York. \$4.25.

The author's experience as a flyer and as instructor, together with his present position as instructor in Air Tactics at the Command and General Staff School, give this work an authoritative status which should recommend it to all who are interested in this phase of war. The subject matter is intended not only for study by air officers, but also by officers of other arms, and it can be read with profit by all.

In this book we have for the first time a thorough analysis of the principles of air warfare and their practical applications. Observation, attack, pursuit, and bombardment aviation are fully explained, from both the strategical and the tactical viewpoints.

Air Men and Air Craft By MAJOR HENRY H. ARNOLD, Air Corps. Illustrated. 216 pp. The Ronald Press Company, New York. \$3.50.

This is another volume of the Ronald Aeronautic Library, and is primarily intended as an introduction to the subject of flying for those who expect to take up training as pilots. Written in non-technical language, the subject matter is easily understood by the layman, and includes a vast fund of information which should be of great value to all who are interested in air craft and flying. The general reader will especially enjoy the chapters on famous airplane and seaplane flights, and illustrious flyers of the World War.

Chapters on qualifications for air pilots, courses of flying instruction, U. S. Army Air Service, and the U. S. Navy, will benefit those who expect to take up military or commercial aviation.

Leadership. A Manual on Conduct and Administration By WILLIAM COLBY RUCKER. 71 pp. The MacMillan Company, New York.

This little book was written especially for the Public Health Service and the hospital and sanitary field, but all military men will find much of value in the chapters on the basics of character, self-leadership, and leadership of service personnel, wherein the practice of leadership is standardized and useful rules of conduct laid down.

Soldiers of the Plains By P. E. BYRNE. Minton, Barch & Co., New York. \$2.50.

Reviewed by First Lieut. H. Egerud, 14th Cavalry

To one who has read and studied Colonel Graham's article, *The Story of the Little Big Horn*, which appeared in the July issue of the CAVALRY JOURNAL, Mr. P. E. Byrne's *Soldiers of the Plains* will prove most interesting collateral reading; taking up, from the side of the Indians, the campaigns of the sixties and seventies, many interesting side lights are turned on the subject.

Mr. Byrne is a resident of North Dakota and spent many years in research preceding the writing of his book. In addition, the author has spent many years of his life among the Indians, being one of the few white men having an intimate knowledge of the Sioux. He is, therefore, especially qualified to write such a book, in which he gives the Indian his due for the brilliant generalship, military efficiency, fortitude and individual gallantry that characterized so many of his campaigns. Mr. Byrne, in the foreword to his book, makes the statement:—"The Indian was the great soldier of the plains, in many respects the greatest fighter the world has ever known. But, unlike the white man, the Indian had no press agency through which to broadcast his story to the world."

Assuming the role of Indian press agent, Mr. Byrne presents his subject in a most interesting manner. Starting his book with a description of the land of the Sioux, he devotes several chapters to the treaties, the alleged breaking of which led to the opening of the various campaigns. General Crook's winter campaign of 1876 is graphically described. The plan of battle and the details of the Little Big Horn fight are carefully discussed. Interesting word-sketches of the principals, including Generals Terry, Custer, and Gibbon, the Scout Reynolds, Chiefs Rain-In-The-Face, Crazy Horse, Gall, Sitting Bull and many others are interspersed throughout the book. This personal touch lends an element of interest which adds greatly to the value of the work.

Mr. Byrne also describes the Indian tactics, methods of battle and other subjects of interest to a military man. The retreat of the Nez Perce's Chief, Joseph, in 1877 which was afterwards characterized by General Merritt as a "wonderfully conducted withdrawal" is described in great detail. During this withdrawal, Joseph, in his march through wild and exceedingly rough country, resorted to feints, stratagems, ambushes, resolute marches, defense and passage of rivers with all his impediments, including women and children, the meeting and battling with intercepting forces or the avoidance of these, camouflage, etc.

Although written solely from the Indian standpoint with the idea of glorifying and defending the Indian in his wars with the Whites, the book contains much of interest to the student of military history and especially to a cavalryman.

Foreign Military Journals

The Cavalry Journal (Great Britain) October, 1926

By hunting men, and the number in our service is constantly increasing, *The Keeping of a Hunting Diary* by Major T. Preston, M. C. Yorkshire Hussars, may be considered a novel idea, but the author ably demonstrates the value to be derived from it by military men. It would unquestionably teach a man to know country.

In *Nolan and the Light Brigade*, Lieut.-Colonel F. E. Whitton, C. M. G., makes some observations on the charges of the Light Brigade at Balaklava which are of great interest to all cavalrymen. By those whose only knowledge of this tragic event is derived from the poem, Colonel Whitton's article can be read with much profit.

Someone *did* blunder, but the author, admitting that Nolan did so, holds that this was made possible by a series of blunders on the part of the Commander-in-chief.

This is an outstanding article. Its value is enhanced by an excellent sketch of the field of battle.

The Journal of the United Service Institution of India. October, 1926

In "*Scaled Pattern*" *Formations for the Cavalry Squadron in Manoeuvres*, Major A. G. O. Mayne, D. S. E., discusses what in our service are known as "normal formations," a tabooed term. The article is well illustrated with a number of large scale diagrams.

The German side of the war in East Africa has been set forth by General Von Lettow-Vorbeck in his book *My Reminiscences of East Africa*. Colonel G. M. Orr, C. B. E., D. S. O. in 1914-1915, in *East Africa* deals with it from the allied viewpoints. His discussion of the theatre of war, the armed forces, the military problem and operations, afford one a good basis for further study of this campaign.

Revue de Cavalerie (France) Sept.-Oct., 1926

Reviewed by Capt. W. E. Shipp, Cavalry

The Spanish Cavalry. By X. The operations of the Riff have furnished the Spanish Cavalry with strong lessons from which they have vastly profited. The teachings of these campaigns after those of the World War, have brought about progressive transformations that budgetary considerations have somewhat retarded, but the Spanish Cavalry of 1926, while retaining the pomp and panoply of yore, has not exactly kept its soul of 15 years ago.

In the Peninsula, are not raised the sarcasm and doubt that are known in France. The Spanish still remain a cavalier people, partly as a legacy from the Moors, and partly on account of the rugged nature of the country, which is still cut up into vast estates and has few and, often poor roads. In such a difficult country, cavalry has an unusual opportunity to carry out its many roles.

While the Spanish high command has taken cognizance of the lessons from recent campaigns, and has profited from French military doctrines, it is in the cavalry that the realization is farthest removed from the principles in vogue in France.

Of the thirty regiments in the Spanish Cavalry (hussars, lancers, and chasseurs) three are in Morocco and the remainder in the Peninsula. Eighteen regiments will probably be grouped into three cavalry divisions; eight will constitute the divisional cavalry for sixteen infantry divisions; and one will be employed as mountain cavalry.

Five brigades are now actually constituted, but this organization is subject to change, as the organization is in a state of flux. Even the organization of cavalry corps has been studied. An infantry division has one or two squadrons at its disposal but the "reconnaissance groups" of the French have not been used.

Since 1918 a group of instruction has been organized at Carabanchel, composed of three squadrons specially recruited and trained. It is used for experimentation with arms and in tactical exercises and also serves as a model for other units.

Each regiment has a staff, six squadrons (4 sabre squadrons, one automatic arms squadron and a depot squadron, and a combat train. A sabre squadron has four sections of three or four squads each, while an automatic arms squadron has two sections of light machine guns of four guns each, and two sections of machine rifles of six guns each. At present these automatic arms squadrons are far from being thus equipped, as they usually have only two machine rifles of different models in each squadron on account of hesitation in the choice of a model.

Armored car squadrons of four sections of four cars each, each car carrying one machine gun and an infantry cannon are planned, but they are still in an embryonic state.

The regimental organization is rather surprising in that the sabre squadrons are not directly joined with the automatic squadrons. Since peace time maneuvers are slower than those necessitated by the exigencies of war, since the Spanish terrain is so rugged, and since there are so many souvenirs from the Moroccan campaigns of combined action, the Spanish still count much on mounted action, supported by the fire of a sister arm. Moreover, there is a fear of making too many sudden changes in organization and equipment, resulting in confusion and difficulty in instruction.

It is understood that the automatic squadrons will closely follow the sabre squadrons and will reinforce them in case they fight on foot, for which action the sabre squadrons are armed with the rifle and bayonet. Gradually the Spanish will perhaps adopt an organization similar to the French, unifying the types of squadrons. This will, however, depend on time and credits.

All machine guns are carried on pack animals instead of on carts, as the latter are useless in Spain or Morocco.

Elementary instruction is carried on by squadrons, and recruits in groups of about 50, are placed in classes under a lieutenant assisted by NCO's and selected soldiers. The recruit is generally used to riding and quickly becomes a good horseman. At the end of three months of instruction the recruits take part in squadron and regimental exercises and instruction. There are two classes of recruits a year but the previous deductions for the general services are very large. Besides, Guard and other special troops still remain very important, so much so, that the squadrons and regiments have only very inferior effectives in comparison with those authorized, and especially to those it would be wise to maintain in order for instruction to be profitable. The constitution of skeleton squadrons is an unsuitable solution of the problem, consequently, serious reductions of units have been contemplated, but the personnel of the latter are not inactive, as the military world has always played a preponderant role in Spanish politics.

The cavalry of the Peninsula is in principle mounted on native horses, many of which are Andalusians, middle size and rather thin but showing the Arab strain. The remount service is organized similarly to that of the French. It maintains breeding-studs and depots both in Spain and in Morocco. Some purchases are made each year in England and in France by a special commission. During the spring of 1926 there were bought in Spain 1455 saddle, 176 draft, and 58 pack horses, as many as possible being three year olds, at prices ranging from 850 to 1000 pesetas. After purchase the young horses are placed in depots, and then are sent to regiments or schools for training.

The Equitation School of Madrid perfects the training of officers who have already graduated from the School of Valladolid and of NCO's destined to become stable sergeants in infantry regiments or for general staff stables.

Cavalry School Notes

From November 13th-20th, the Cavalry School was represented at the Kansas City American Royal Horse Show by a team consisting of Major E. W. Taulbee in charge, Captain E. A. Williams, Lieutenant P. C. Febiger, and Lieutenant C. C. Jadwin. It was exceptionally well taken care of in the ladies' classes by the splendid performances of Mrs. S. H. Griffin, Mrs. D. H. Blakelock and Mrs. P. C. Febiger.

In a total of fifteen classes, civilians won six, Fort Leavenworth three, and the Cavalry School six. The civilian hunters and jumpers were of much higher quality than those entered in previous years.

Fort Riley was also represented by an artillery drill of Battery A, 9th F. A. which proved to be the greatest attraction of the show. By giving many a thrill, this performance made a great hit with the crowd and received an extended ovation.

Cavalry School Hunt Club

The regular hunt season of the Cavalry School Hunt Club opened with much enthusiasm on October 24. Drag hunts are held twice weekly. A breakfast and dance followed the hunt on Armistice Day, and a supper and dance is scheduled to follow the mid-week run between Christmas and New Year. Nor are the hunts limited to officers and their families; one hunt for soldiers has already been held and several more are scheduled. Keen interest in the sport is taken by the enlisted men and their performances are invariably excellent.

The Fort Riley reservation abounds with good galloping ground and canyons, as well as the regular school jumps and obstacles. These have been augmented by numerous panels placed in the pasture fences, thus opening up an increased variety of courses.

Growing interest is being taken in teaching the individual hounds. The training of several fine litters of puppies has already been started.

What bids fair to be the most successful season in the history of the Cavalry School Hunt Club may be attributed to the enthusiasm and efforts of the following club officers: Captain Robert W. Grow, 2d Cavalry, Master of Fox Hounds; Captain Howard N. Beeman, V. C., Whipper-in; 2nd Lieutenant John W. Wofford, 2d Cavalry, Whipper-in.

Football

A well organized league of eight troop and company football teams played a schedule of twelve games each. Troop G, 2d Cavalry, Major E. L. N. Glass, coach, and Company A, 9th Engineer Battalion, Major D. G. Richart (Cav.) coach, went through the season without losing a game. In the Championship Game played by these two teams on Saturday, December 4, "G" Troop won by a score of 7 to 5.

Basketball

The Fort Riley basketball season opens on December 9, 1926 and closes on or about January 30, 1927. A league consisting of twelve organization teams has been organized. Each team will play each other team once, the league championship to be determined on a percentage basis. A suitable trophy will be awarded.

The Standard

The Standard, the weekly periodical of the Cavalry School started its fifth year under the management of the following officers, all students in the Advanced Equitation Class: Lieutenant W. H. W. Reinburg, Editor; Lieutenant T. T. Thornburgh, Assistant Editor; Lieutenant C. C. Jadwin, Business Manager.

This periodical is published without expense to the government and affords much enjoyment to the Cavalry School as well as the cavalry service in general. Tom's Letters, covering post events, are regular features that are eagerly looked forward to.

Foreign Students

Foreign armies are represented at the Cavalry School during the present school year by the following students: 1st Lieutenants A. B. Bolivar, M. R. Arteaga and M. Villalon, Cuban Army; 1st Lieutenant R. Calderon, Mexican Army.

Lieutenant Bolivar and Calderon are old acquaintances of the Cavalry School. The former completed the Troop Officers' Course last year and is now enrolled in the Advanced Equitation Course; the latter arrived early in 1926 to master the English language prior to entering on his present course with the troop officers.

Fort Riley Golf Club

Through the indefatigable efforts of Major Richard Newman, a 9 hole golf course was planned and constructed around the Godfrey Court area at the northeast side of the post. The course is located over rolling terrain especially well suited for golf. It is 3100 yards long with a par of thirty-six. Par has not yet been equaled by any amateur golfer, neither has it been bettered by any professional. The greens are planted with German bent grass and are declared by many professionals to be the best west of the Mississippi.

The course was opened for play on August 15, 1926. In the first tournament, seventy-two players took part. Golf is very popular and, at the present rate, an additional nine holes will soon be necessary.

Boney Bonebrak, formerly with the Topeka Country Club, has been secured as the Professional, with Frank James as his assistant.

Army-Navy Game

Radio reports of the Army-Navy Game were received at the Godfrey Court Officers' Hop Room by about one hundred seventy-five members of the garrison. Shortly after one o'clock, the Second Cavalry Band, playing appropriate airs, made a tour of the post. It was accompanied by an Army Mule and a Navy Goat, both gaily caparisoned. As the various quarters were passed, each added its quota to the impromptu parade that marched to Godfrey Court where the reports were received and plotted. Music was furnished at intervals by the Second Cavalry Band alternating with the Ninth Cavalry Orchestra. It was a regular cavalry "get-together" the lowest point of which was the tie score.

Regimental Notes

FIRST CAVALRY—Camp Marfa, Texas

Colonel Conrad S. Babcock, Commanding

On August 16th, 1926, the 1st Cavalry left Marfa, Texas by train for San Antonio, Texas, for the purpose of participating in the filming of the "Rough Riders," by the Famous Players Lasky Co.

Arriving in San Antonio on the morning of August 17th, the regiment immediately established camp at "Roosevelt Field," (Old Fair Grounds), near the original location of the camp of the Rough Riders of the Spanish-American War.

While there, the personnel took part in the filming of the following scenes: Enlisting of Recruits; Recruit Drill; Riding wild horses; Review of the Rough Riders by Lieut. Colonel Roosevelt.

On September 17th, the regiment marched to Camp Stanley, Texas, where the Corps Area, Division and Brigade Tactical Inspections were held. On completion of these inspections, the picture work was again taken up. Scenes were taken of the fight at Kettle Hill and San Juan Hill.

Leaving Camp Stanley by train on October 20th, the regiment arrived at Marfa on October 21st.

The Horse Show and Polo Teams were sent to Fort Bliss, Texas to participate in the 1st Cavalry Division Horse Show and Polo Tournament.

Capt. Wm. T. Bauskett won the blue ribbon and a cup for the regiment in the Championship Jumping Class. Lieut. Paul G. Kendall won the blue ribbon and a plate in the Officers' Jumping Class.

The senior polo team won the Consolation prize, and the junior polo team lost a close game in the finals of the Junior Tournament to the 8th Cavalry Junior Team.

The football team has made a good record, beating the town of Marfa team and Fort Stockton twice, and a tie with Wm. Beaumont General Hospital.

Two months in the hot, moist climate of San Antonio, acting as extras for the movies, is, from a military standpoint, the poorest training possible.

As a change from routine work and training, the first month was enjoyed by the regiment. When the command moved to Camp Stanley and was practically marooned on a Texas hillside, with long hours of waiting in the sun for the movie director to receive an inspiration, the regiment decided that the movie game is a very poor occupation for the Regular Army.

SECOND CAVALRY—Fort Riley, Kansas

Colonel L. W. Oliver, Commanding

For the second time, the rifle platoons of the regiment competed for the Draper Trophy, won this year by a platoon of Troop C, commanded by Lieutenant DeBardleben. The details of this very exacting test of a platoon already have been published. A summary, however, of what was required, and the Commandant's comment on the work of the platoons, would seem to be appropriate. Each platoon was self-sustaining in its march of about 60 miles, on the execution of a reconnaissance mission, under assumed war conditions throughout the competition. Each trooper carried on his horse 12 pounds of oats and enough food for four meals. To make up for lack of hay, the animals were grazed at every opportunity, and all returned in good condition. If the troopers learned the value of grazing and nothing else the competition was well worth while.

The Commandant, in an official letter to the Regimental Commander, stated: "The horsemanship of officers and men was excellent. There is no question but that the command is highly efficient in any kind of cross country work which may be required under field service conditions. The physical stamina, shown by officers and men, was most gratifying and is positive proof of their ability to meet practically any physical demand made upon them."

F. Troop, Captain Bruck commanding, was chosen to represent the regiment in the Goodrich Trophy competition, the results of which are as yet unknown.

Troops A, E, F, and G have had the honor, at different times during the last three months of escorting Governor Paulen of Kansas, Governor Baker of Missouri, Senator Means of Colorado, and Generals Crosby, Hagood and Winans. On each occasion the smart appearance of the escort troops was remarked. There is no better way of maintaining the smart appearance of troops than by parading them for distinguished visitors, and by turning them out for such duty by roster of troops available.

During the last two months, the Second Squadron and the 7th Division Air Corps have carried on a number of experiments with the object of determining at what distance a plane could see a squadron, under varying conditions; the effect of hasty camouflage expedients; and the length of time a squadron would be delayed in its march on account of avoiding air observation. The final test was a reconnaissance by an observation plane to locate a squadron and its train on the march, and a surprise attack by three planes flying at an altitude of about a hundred feet. The conclusions of the board detailed to observe these tests will undoubtedly be published later.

Officers and men of the regiment participated in the Autumn Race Meeting of the Cavalry School Hunt Club, which was in charge of Major Edgar M. Whiting of the Second Cavalry. At least one Dragoon placed in every steeplechase but one. Major

Franklin won the Lorillard Cup and Lieutenant Wofford the Hitchcock Cup; Lieutenant Wofford and Major Whiting took second and third respectively in the Remount Service Steeplechase; and Second Cavalry enlisted men finished first, second and third in the Mounted Service Steeplechase, Corporal Lerdrup winning on G Troop's *Spike*.

The football season has been unusually interesting. Each rifle troop and Headquarters Troop have had good teams in the field. At the time of writing, Company A, 9th Engineers alone stands between G Troop and the Post championship; the two teams having played a scoreless tie game earlier in the season, and each being undefeated.

THIRD CAVALRY (Less 1st Squadron)—Fort Myer, Virginia

Colonel William J. Glasgow, Commanding

The Squadron, plus Headquarters and Service Troop, returned from the National Guard, District of Columbia, Target Range at Camp Sims, Anacostia, D. C., on October second, after having spent a month there. Sixteen men qualified as experts with the rifle, Headquarters leading the list with eight experts. As Troop G was still at the Sesqui-Centennial in Philadelphia, it was unable to participate in this year's firing.

Troops E and F each fired twelve men with the machine rifle over the prescribed course, and qualified all as experts.

During the recent visit to Washington of her Majesty, the Queen of Roumania, Troop E acted as her escort from the Union Station to the Roumanian Legation. On the following day, Troop F acted as guard of honor and escort for her Majesty and party to the Arlington Cemetery, during the ceremony of placing a wreath on the tomb of the Unknown Soldier. Her Majesty made some very complimentary remarks about her two mounted escorts.

During the second week in November the District Commander made his annual tactical inspection of the post.

A team of three officers, Captain John H. Irving, Captain Jess G. Boykin, and 1st Lieutenant Paul D. Robinett, with two enlisted men, and eight horses, under the supervision of Major Adna R. Chaffee, participated in the New York Horse Show from November twenty-second to twenty-seventh.

The Third Cavalry Team brought nine ribbons back with them. *Peggy* of Troop F, ridden by Sergeant Anthony Quatichey won two blues: the Jockey Club Sweepstakes prize for remounts, and the Remount Cup. *Peggy* has already won two Eastern Endurance Rides for the Third Cavalry.

Captain Irving, Captain Boykin, and Lieutenant Robinett, on *Firejump*, *Fairfax*, and *Brown Boy*, fourth place in Pair Jumping. Major Chaffee on *Miss Kitten*, won second place in the triple bar class. Captain Boykin and Lieutenant Robinett on *Flash* and *Brown Boy*, fourth place in Pair Jumping. Major Chaffee on *Miss Kitten*, won second place in a Polo Pony class. Sergeant Frank York, riding *Applejack*, won two ribbons in Troopers Mounts classes.

Work is going steadily along in preparation for the winter's riding hall demonstrations that start in January. All the troops are perfecting new stunts, and it is believed that the exhibitions this coming winter will be better than ever before.

FIRST SQUADRON, THIRD CAVALRY—Fort Ethan Allen, Vt.

Lieut. Colonel F. D. Griffith, Jr., Commanding

On Labor Day, Troop A, Captain H. H. Dunn, commanding, marched to Richmond, Vermont, and participated in local exercises.

On September 8th, the Squadron participated in the Fort Ethan Allen Horseshow and Gymkana, and its entries were placed in events as follows:

Troopers Mounts—1st—Private Peloquin, Troop C, on *Rabbit*; 2nd—Corporal Smith, Hq. Det. 1st Sq., on *Two Bits*; 3rd—Private Bolas, Troop B, on *Pomp*.

Musical Chair—1st—Private Gordon, Troop A; 2nd—Private Mathieux, Hq. Det. 1st Sq.; 3rd—Sergeant Pecor, Troop B.

Enlisted Mens Jumping—1st—Sergeant Fenix, Troop B, on *Buster*.

Touch and Out Jumping, Officers, 4 feet—2nd—Captain A. K. deLorimier, on *Lady*; 3rd—1st Lieut. Charles R. Chase, on *Aeroplane*.

Championship Jumping—1st—Captain A. J. deLorimier, on *Lady*; 2nd—Major Frederick Herr, on *Jim*.

Officers' Chargers—3rd—Major Frederick Herr, on *Jim*.

During the week September 5th to 11th, a polo tournament was held at the Post. Four teams participated, two teams composed of officers of the 7th Field Artillery, and this Squadron, one team from the Canadian Cavalry Barracks at St. Johns, P. Q., and a civilian Canadian team from Montreal.

The Squadron entered four horses in the annual Eastern Endurance Ride held at Brandon, Vermont, Oct. 11-15th. One entry developed lameness the week preceding the ride and was scratched. Of the three entries starting, two placed in the money. *Stockings*, Hq. Det. 1st Squadron, ridden by Sergeant Stanley Blazejevski, Troop C, 3d Cavalry, finished in second place, and *Bunny Boy*, Troop B, ridden by Corporal John Nickerson, Troop B, 3d Cavalry, finished in fifth place.

The Squadron completed the annual saber practice with the following results.

	Expert	Excellent	Unquali-	Percentage
	Swordsman	Swordsman	fied	Qualified
Troop A	11	7	14	78.04
Troop B	17	19	13	90.74
Troop C	7	15	15	73.80

On November 22nd, the troops in the Squadron engaged in competition for the cup awarded annually by the Regimental Commander to the troop at this station making the highest aggregate score in special saber contest. The contest was run over the regular qualification course with the time limit reduced to one minute and twenty seconds. The following scores were obtained: Troop A—2001½; troop B—1923½; troop C—1783.

Major General Preston Brown, Commanding the First Corps Area, made his annual tactical inspection of the Squadron during his visit to the Post, September 27th and 28th, 1926.

FOURTH CAVALRY (Less 1st Squadron)—Ft. D. A. Russell, Wyoming

Colonel Osmun Latrobe, Commanding

On August 28th, the Fourth Cavalry left its home in garrison to live a month under canvas in the field, marching to Torrington, Wyoming, thence to Douglas, Wyoming, returning via Wheatland and Chugwater to Ft. Russell. The only men in the regiment not making the march, were several left in charge of barracks and stables, and a few to be discharged before the return of the Regiment.

We arrived at Torrington on August 31st, and on September 1st, 2nd, and 3d, participated in the Goshen County Fair.

Daily organization entries were as follows: Musical drill at a gallop by the Famous Black Horse Troop, Troop F; a cavalry drill at the gallop exhibiting the use of three weapons, the rifle, saber and pistol and the crossing of obstacles mounted, by a full strength troop made up of E and G Troops; a radio demonstration by Headquarters Troop and the Second Squadron Detachment.

Daily individual entries included entries in horse jumping, short races in saddle horse classes, Roman races and rescue races. Many prizes were won by members of the regiment.

On September 5th the regiment resumed the march on to Douglas. After leaving Guernsey, (about 15 miles north of Torrington) the regiment marched along the Old Oregon Trail for over two days until our route joined with the Yellowstone Highway leading to Douglas.

Just fifty years before, the Fourth Cavalry was making part of this same march, marching from Robinson, Nebraska, (now Ft. Robinson) through old Ft. Laramie, Wyo. to Ft. Fetterman, Wyo. (now abandoned for many years) to suppress Indian uprisings in

northern Wyoming. Old Ft. Laramie has been abandoned since 1890, but on Sunday morning, September 5, 1926, the Fourth Cavalry camped on the old parade ground in the shadows of what are now ruins of quarters, barracks and stables. That Sunday evening, Lieut. Davison of the regiment, gave a very interesting talk to officers and men on the history of old Ft. Laramie and of the part the Fourth Cavalry played in the Indian skirmishes in this vicinity in 1876. The next morning, to quote the *Ft. Laramie Scout*: "Boots and Saddles" sounded and the soldiers moved on to Douglas, leaving the old Fort with its crumbling buildings, to peaceful solitude and dreams of departed glory."

Arriving at Douglas on September 8th, the regiment participated in the Wyoming State Fair with about the same exhibitions as given at the Goshen County Fair.

On September 19th the regiment left Douglas, marching on to Ft. Russell through Wheatland and Chugwater, and arriving at the home station on September 24th.

The total distance covered on the march was approximately four hundred miles in fourteen marching days. The entire regiment gained valuable experience and was well received at every town along the route of march. Men and animals completed the march in excellent condition.

In October and November the regiment received eighty-seven remounts which are being trained by Troop F. Many of these animals will make excellent mounts, and some are excellent polo types.

The regimental football team is now in training under Lieut. West.

Many good recruits were received this fall and have completed their recruit training.

FIRST SQUADRON, FOURTH CAVALRY—Fort Meade, South Dakota

Lieut. Colonel R. W. Walker, Commanding

Oh, Sirs, and Comrades! The Editor of the *CAVALRY JOURNAL* asks that these notes be prepared by a commissioned officer, in a creditable manner and with a literary savor. Here, in the far, distant North, where Polar Bears make their lairs in icy caverns, feeding on fishes and walrus—we do enjoy ourselves, once a year or so. But we don't grow literary. Right now with a high wind (forty miles an hour) and a low temperature (fifteen below zero), this literatus has his mind set on the furnace below, rather than loftiness of thought. But we poor Esquimaux always do our poor best.

The past Fall has been a full one, no figure of speech here.

Each of our three troops participated in two of the gala events of the Black Hills, our habitat; said gala events being the Belle Fourche Round Up, the Golden Jubilee Celebration of the Homestead Mine at Lead, the Days of '76 at Deadwood. Contributions from the public spirited managers of these celebrations, together with the proceeds derived from our Post Horse Show, enabled us to take part in sporting events away from home. Our polo team went to the Polo Tournament at Fort D. A. Russell, from which journey our Argonauts returned with some of the Golden Fleece, won from the 4th Cavalry and the 13th Cavalry. We would gladly furnish the names of our players but the Editor says no personal notes or advertisements. We sent a team of four horses (names of riders deleted) to the Colorado Endurance Ride at Colorado Springs. The funds were short but there was enough to get the team there. We counted on winning. We had to. We did! Second place, six hundred Iron Men. *Stella*—may her shadow never grow less—the ill-favored, hammer-headed daughter of *Roly*, won it and got her team-mates home safely and financially sound. *Adject*, gelded son of *Jack the Sailor*, finished but won no money.

Baseball and football have been played with gratifying results to Fort Meade.

Fishing has been unusually gainful, even for the Black Hills. To insure sport and profit for the lay, our ice-pond and reservoir have been stocked with the contents of twelve milkcans of three inch Rainbows from the fish hatchery at Spearfish. The prairie chickens and the ducks have not been as plentiful as last year. But rabbits, both jack and cotton-tail abound.

In this Corps Area each Post helps with the recruiting. We have had pretty good

luck. A recruiting party went to the Standing Rock Agency last month and brought back eight recruits. One of them, Leo Crow Ghost, is a grandson of Sitting Bull. The party covered over five hundred miles, mounted, and accompanied by escort wagons. Quite an adventure in these days of automobiles. Later another party went in an automobile and brought back four. Another party brought back seven from the Rosebud Agency. Two parties are now out, one at the Pine Ridge Agency and the other at the Rosebud Agency. In all, we have twenty-five Sioux Indians and they are very promising young soldiers.

During the period covered by these notes each troop has held a formal Horse Show, giving trophies of value.

Polo, due to the cold weather, has been discontinued for the season. Several promising ponies have been developed. Each cavalry officer owns two mounts and there are some excellent polo prospects among them.

FIFTH CAVALRY—Fort Clark, Texas

Colonel W. B. Scales, Commanding

After staging a great many scenes and furnishing lots of atmosphere for the Famous Players-Lasky Corporation which was filming the picture "The Rough Riders," the entire First Cavalry Brigade on September 17th, marched to Camp Stanley, where it went into another de luxe camp provided by the Movie people.

Starting on September 20th, the annual inspection by the Corps Area Commander, and the annual maneuvers, were held on the Reservation, which proved to be an ideal location for cavalry maneuvers. The amount of action which took place, was equaled only by the continuous warfare waged on the red bugs and the rattlesnakes.

After the maneuvers, the polo and horse show delegation departed for El Paso, the results of their prowess being detailed elsewhere in this issue of the *CAVALRY JOURNAL*. The regiment then resumed the role of Movie extras and charged and recharged up San Juan Hill, until even the Director said we had this battle business down pat.

On October 20th, the 1st Cavalry departed for Marfa via the Pullman Route, and the 5th Cavalry and 1st Machine Gun Squadron started for Fort Clark, making the 150 mile march home in four days. Camp was made at Medina River, D'Hanis and Uvalde, the last day's hike from Uvalde being 45 miles. All the troops made the march in excellent shape, without losing a horse, or leaving any lame animals enroute. Instead of being an arduous march, both officers and men declared it was the most satisfactory march they had ever made.

After several days of policing up, the training started on November 1st. According to our present schedule, all special duty men attend drill until 9:15 and each troop is allowed to leave in three men, so that each organization turns out about 40 to 45 men for drill each day. Policing of corrals and other necessary fatigue is done in the afternoons.

The "Pilot" is about to resume publication and the first issue which will be out the last of November, will contain a full account of the horse races to be held on Thanksgiving Day. Considerable publicity has been given to these races and a large crowd is expected, as there are to be a number of civilian entries.

The remnant of Eagle Pass Camp is to be salvaged by the troops, each troop going down there for a tour of one month. Troop C has started the work.

After all is said and done, there is no place like home, and Fort Clark looks pretty good to all members of the regiment.

SIXTH CAVALRY—Fort Oglethorpe, Georgia

Colonel G. C. Barnhardt, Commanding

The outstanding event of the past quarter has been the Annual Chattanooga-Sixth Cavalry Horse Show which was held at the post November 12th and 13th. A complete new show ring has been built as a permanent feature of the post. Through the courtesy of the Park Commissioner, this ring was constructed on McDonald Field, and is a valuable addition to the facilities of the post. The attendance was excellent and we believe it to

have been the best show ever held here. There was a large representation in the entries from Chattanooga and vicinity. A detailed account of the Horse Show is given elsewhere in this issue.

The post was most fortunate in having been able to obtain the polo team from Fort Benning, Georgia, for an exhibition game held on Sunday as a grand finale to the Horse Show. The game was started at 2:30 P. M. by a parade of the ponies of both teams, lead by the Sixth Cavalry Band playing the Regimental March. Final score: Sixth Cavalry 13; Fort Benning 5.

On November 11th, the 1st Squadron and Band, Major P. L. Thomas commanding, participated in the Armistice Day Parade in Chattanooga. During the march of the parade a representative of each unit was appointed to receive a floral tribute and place same on a cenotaph in front of the Auditorium in honor of the World War dead. The Regimental Commander, in company with a committee of prominent Chattanoogaans, reviewed the parade from the balcony of the Annex Hotel.

A regimental football team was organized and weekly games played with visiting teams during the season. The team is coached by Captain E. N. Harmon, a former West Point athlete. On Thanksgiving Day, the Sixth Cavalry team played the Fort McPherson team from Fort McPherson, Georgia, at Fort Oglethorpe. The final score was 18 to 0, with Fort McPherson on the long end of the score. Although the field was wet and slippery, due to recent rains, both teams played well and the game furnished much entertainment to the crowd witnessing the play. These two teams had previously played each other earlier in the season at Fort McPherson, where Fort McPherson had won 28 to 0.

Supplementary Season with the rifle commenced November 16th and continued throughout the remainder of the month. The 2d Squadron, Major Pendleton, commanding, camped on the range during this practice.

The fall and winter schools for officers and non-commissioned officers are in full swing, and tactical rides for all officers are held weekly.

On October 29th, a regimental review was held in honor of 1st Sergeant Louis Armstrong, Service Troop, who has been placed on the retired list. An interesting feature of 1st Sergeant Armstrong's service, which may well be an inspiration for all recruits, is the fact that throughout his entire service, every discharge given him was with the notation, Character "Excellent."

During the same review, all recruits who have joined the regiment during the last six months, were assembled in front of the center of the regiment and formally presented to the colors.

The regular Sunday and Wednesday polo games have been played during the fall with eleven players participating. Major Pendleton has been appointed Polo Representative for the regiment and Captain Mendor elected Team Captain. The Sixth Cavalry polo team will go to Fort McPherson, Georgia the middle of December to take part in a tournament to be held there during that time. Plans are now being made for the training of new ponies for future use and, when our polo season closes in December, the task of developing new ponies will be taken up.

SEVENTH CAVALRY—Fort Bliss, Texas Colonel Fitzhugh Lee, Commanding

The highlight in the past quarter was the First Cavalry Division Horse Show held in the Howze Stadium, Ft. Bliss, Texas, October 26, 28 and 30. It was the best Horse Show seen here in several years. Entries from all units of the Division participated, and every entry gave a creditable exhibition. The "spoony" equipment, fine animals, and excellent horsemanship, evoked unstinted praise from the several thousand spectators. The Seventh Cavalry achieved a fair share of places, securing 22 blue, 22 red and 22 yellow, ribbons. The team from the Regiment won the Reimount Cup event, the prize event of the Show. In the Polo Pony events, Jumping Classes, Mule events, Ladies' and Children's

classes, Officers' Mounts, Wagon Classes, and Radio Sections, the Seventh made a very creditable showing.

Prior to the Annual Horse Show of the Division, the Regiment conducted a regimental horse show to try out all entries, and prospective entries, for the divisional show. All entries which qualified and secured first, second, and third places, were awarded ribbons and individual prizes. This preliminary show gave a measure of the possibilities of each entry, and served to greatly encourage the riders and exhibitors.

The Senior and Junior Polo teams of the Regiment gave a good account of themselves in the Division Polo Tournament held from October 17 to 31, although the honors went to the 8th Cavalry in both instances.

In September, Major General Ernest Hinds, Corps Area Commander, conducted his annual tactical inspection, lasting several days. After a review and inspection, and an inspection of stables and quarters, a tactical problem was held involving attack and pursuit and protection from aeroplanes. The Regiment received several favorable mentions for its fine work in the problem.

During September and October, a large number of the enlisted personnel were on detail dismantling Camp Furlong, Columbus, New Mexico, and transporting the salvaged material to Ft. Bliss. Those not thus engaged, were occupied with preparations for the Horse Show. Supplementary target season opened on November 8. Three groups fired for record on November 13, 20 and 24. Very satisfactory results were attained, considering weather conditions and the recent cut in ammunition allowance. The finals will be given in next quarter's notes.

In sports, basketball now occupies the stage. A south Area league, comprising the units of the South Area of the Post, 7th Cavalry, 2nd Machine Gun Squadron and the 2nd Cavalry Brigade Headquarters Troop, was formed on November 1, directed by a committee composed of Capt. G. S. Finley, 2nd Cav. Brig. Hqs. Tr., Capt. P. L. Singer, 7th Cav., and 2nd Lt. Joseph Smith, 2nd M. G. Sqdn. Twenty-six games have been played in the league thus far. Troop A, 7th Cavalry, champions for the last three years, now tops the list of wins. The winners of the league will represent the Area in the Post league. Chas. S. Aronson, El Paso, has presented a handsome trophy for the winners of the South Area league, and the Fred J. Feldman Co., El Paso, will give each member of the winning team a beautiful gold watch fob. Much interest and enthusiasm is being shown in the games of this league.

On November 21, the Non-commissioned Officers' Club had a very successful turkey shoot which netted the Club nearly three hundred dollars. These funds are to be utilized in purchasing gifts and giving banquets in the near future to retiring Sergeants.

The Regiment experienced profound sorrow this quarter in the loss by death of Lt.-Col. Victor S. Foster, 1st Cavalry Division, formerly assigned to the Seventh Cavalry, and of Major A. D. S. McCoy, M. C., the Regimental Surgeon. The Regiment extends its heartfelt sympathy to the bereaved families of Col. Foster and Maj. McCoy.

NINTH CAVALRY—Fort Riley, Kansas Lieut. Colonel Kerr T. Riggs, Commanding

On Thanksgiving day the regimental football team closed a successful season with a 0 to 0 tie game with the Bengal Tigers of Kansas City, Mo. The team won the Ripley Football Trophy for the regiment by winning two games from the Fort Leavenworth Detachment. Great credit is due to the coaching of Captain James V. V. Shufelt, Cavalry, former captain of Syracuse University team.

Under the able leadership of First Sergeant M. H. Brown the Ninth Cavalry Band gave a concert to the officers and ladies of The Cavalry School at the Godfrey Court Hop Room on November 30th, 1926. The regimental orchestra of ten pieces, led by Sergeant Clyde O. Andrews, has been kept busy playing for dances at the Post and filling engagements in nearby towns.

A Hallowe'en Masked Ball was held at the Ninth Cavalry Club which was greatly

enjoyed by members of the regiment and their friends. The Club was beautifully decorated and prizes were awarded for couple with best costumes and for couple with the tackiest costumes.

The following old timers have been separated from the regiment by reason of honorable retirement: First Sergeant Arthur Newton and Sergeant Richmond D. Lewis. They were honored by a retirement party and dance at the Ninth Cavalry Club, and presented with handsome gifts by their many friends in the regiment.

TENTH CAVALRY—Fort Huachuca, Arizona

Colonel L. C. Scherer, Commanding

The advanced course, Officers School opened on November 2d with a total enrollment of twenty. Sessions are held twice weekly from 11:30 A. M., to 12:30 P. M., on Tuesdays and Fridays, the present intention being to substitute later for the Friday session, a three hour period on Thursday afternoon to provide time for the drawing up and solution of problems in the field. The course prescribed, under the title of "Instruction in Training Methods," has for its objective the development of a complete guide for the annual training of the Regiment, with the dual aim of first, providing a set of specifications toward which the training of all individuals and units should tend, and of informing each individual as to what degree of training for himself or his unit is to be considered as standard; and secondly; of increasing the efficiency of training, by requiring all officers to thoroughly familiarize themselves with authoritative training documents in regard to objectives, methods, and means of training.

Regimental polo three times a week, started November first with all the officers of the regiment participating. Teams have been formed from the first squadron, second squadron and headquarters and service troops. During Christmas week it is planned to hold a round robin tournament between these three teams.

Four carloads of remounts have been received from Fort Robinson, Neb., with another carload enroute. After finishing quarantine they will be assigned, about fifteen to each line troop.

Immediately upon the close of the C. M. T. C., training and preparation for the annual maneuvers with our friendly enemies of the 25th Foot were expedited; this, since the events had suddenly been moved up a month on the calendar.

The doughboys, camping on the Target Range, caused the maneuver area to be limited to the east end of the reservation in the general vicinity of Garden Canyon. Followed a week (September 5-11) of enterprising maneuver with planes and night problems as diversions. The strenuous maneuvers of the preceding year were not duplicated, much to the joy of the infantry hearts, but what was done proved interesting and beneficial to all concerned.

All this activity culminated in the Corps Area Commander's Tactical Inspection on September 12-15. Unusually favorable reports were made on both regiments.

Fortnight before these maneuvers, arrived our new commanding officer, Colonel Louis C. Scherer. Said he, after watching developments, "It's all very satisfactory to me."

On Friday, October fifth, the First Squadron, commanded by Captain Victor W. B. Wales, left the Post on a five day practice march. Sunday, the seventh was spent at Adobe Canyon, in the Santa Rita Mountains. Officers and men report the hunting excellent in this vicinity. Five large bucks were brought down on this day. Return was made to the Post on Tuesday October ninth.

The Second Squadron, plus the 10th Cavalry Band and trains, left Fort Huachuca on November eighth enroute to Nogales, Arizona, to participate in the Armistice Day celebration at that city. The Squadron reached Nogales on Wednesday, November tenth. The distance from Fort Huachuca to Nogales is about fifty-eight miles.

On the morning of Armistice Day, the Squadron, together with the Second and Third Battalions of the Twenty-fifth Infantry, participated in a parade through the streets of Nogales. The afternoon schedule consisted of demonstrations and exhibitions by the

Twenty-fifth Infantry and the Second Squadron, 10th Cavalry, at the Nogales High School football field.

The Squadron left Nogales on the morning of the fourteenth, making the return trip to Fort Huachuca in two days' marching, arriving back at the Post Sunday afternoon. Major Chas. W. Foster, 10th Cavalry, is Squadron Commander and had charge of the march.

TWELFTH CAVALRY (less 2d Squadron)—Fort Brown, Texas

Colonel William T. Johnston, Commanding

On August 24th, 1926, the Fort Brown garrison marched to Fort Ringgold, Texas, for ten days' combined field maneuvers with the remainder of the regiment and the 4th Field Artillery, Mountain (less 1st Battalion) followed by the Corps Area Commander's Annual Tactical Inspection.

On August 26th and 27th, the Regimental Commander, accompanied by his staff, conducted a tactical inspection of the 2d Squadron, 12th Cavalry. The 4th Field Artillery (less 1st Battalion) arrived at Fort Ringgold on Thursday, August 26th and the Fort Brown garrison on Saturday, August 28th. The 2d Squadron went into camp with the remainder of the regiment and maneuvers began on the following Monday. The Camp Commander, Colonel William T. Johnston, 12th Cavalry, conducted several problems involving the use of cavalry, supported by mountain artillery, which proved highly instructive and which demonstrated conclusively that mountain artillery is sufficiently mobile to accompany cavalry anywhere. Even over the rather unfavorable ground in the vicinity of Fort Ringgold, overgrown with mesquite and cactus, the artillery was able to get into position and support the cavalry attack in ample time. In addition to the tactical exercises, a number of interesting and instructive lectures on the uses, powers and limitations of the several arms, were delivered to assembled officers and non-commissioned officers of all units.

The afternoons were devoted to athletics, including baseball and polo, and a field meet was held on Labor Day. The Fort Brown garrison made a clean sweep, winning four out of five games of baseball, winning one polo game and tying another with Fort Ringgold, and taking six first places in the field meet.

The Corps Area Commander conducted the annual tactical inspection of all units on September 7th, 8th and 9th. September 7th was devoted to inspection of the camp and quarters and barracks in the Post. The 12th Cavalry was inspected on the morning of September 8th, and the 4th Field Artillery in the afternoon. The night of September 8th—9th and the morning of September 9th, were devoted to a field problem involving both the 12th Cavalry and 4th Field Artillery, and on the afternoon of September 9th, the Corps Area Commander conducted a critique of the problem. His very generous remarks on the improvement shown over previous years was not only gratifying, but served as an inspiration for the coming training year.

On September 10th the encampment was disbanded and the 4th Field Artillery and Fort Brown garrisons began the march to their respective stations. The entire period of the encampment was most instructive and was thoroughly enjoyed by all officers and enlisted men. The camp site was excellent and the many conveniences afforded by the Fort Ringgold garrison were greatly appreciated.

The garrison arrived back at Fort Brown, September 14th, and immediately began supplementary rifle, pistol and saber practice, which were completed by November 1st. The Post football team is completing a highly successful season, having won five of the six games played to date against teams of the valley towns. A polo tournament is planned beginning January 10th. It is not yet definitely known what teams will participate, but at least one other military team and one civilian team are expected to compete. Ample funds have been raised by the sale of parking spaces, all arrangements are being rapidly completed, and it is confidently expected that a very successful and enjoyable tournament will be staged.

SECOND SQUADRON, TWELFTH CAVALRY—Fort Ringgold, Texas**Lieut. Colonel C. O. Thomas, Jr., Commanding**

Major Levi G. Brown, after four years at the Staff and Command School, Fort Leavenworth, Kan., was assigned to this station on June 30th. After two months leave reported for duty on August 26th and was assigned to command the Squadron.

The Corps Area Commander's inspection took place on Sept. 8th and 9th. The squadron participated in combined maneuvers with the 1st Squadron from Fort Brown and the 4th F. A. from Fort McIntosh. The inspection was satisfactory and the squadron was especially commended on its showing.

On Sept. 18th and 19th, a rodeo and race meet was held in the Fort Ringgold Athletic Stadium. Corporal Wright of Troop G, won the wild horse riding and Steer riding. A good racing program was put on in addition to calf roping, wild cow milking contest, wild horse race, roping and tying contest. It was a very successful meet and a good time was had by all.

The regular saber practice for the squadron was completed on Oct. 28th. Troop G qualified 83%, Troop E 80%, Troop F 78%. Considering that the squadron was employed the greater part of the year in salvage work, and that a large proportion of the men were recruits, the results obtained were very satisfactory.

The enlisted men's Hallowe'en Masquerade Dance held on Oct. 30th, was a huge success. Many people from the Valley were in attendance. The judges for the best costume, Col. Thomas, Capt. Massie and Capt. Hamilton, experienced great difficulty in selecting the winners. Finally first prize was awarded to Miss Smith for the ladies and to Pvt. Kramer, Sig. Corps for the men.

On Nov. 9th, Troop F, Capt. Fickett commanding, marched to Mission, Texas and took part in the Hidalgo County Fair held on Nov. 11th, 12th and 13th. The monkey drill squad and fancy riding made a great hit. The Troop returned to the post on Nov. 15th.

On Sat., Nov. 13th, a test was held for the squads of Troops G and E, the Radio Sect., Squadron Hq., and the buglers. It was very satisfactory and demonstrated conclusively the efficient manner in which the training of the squadron is being conducted under our new squadron commander. Corporal Gross of Troop G was especially commended by the Squadron Commander on the handling of his squad in an advance, and on the firing line.

Before the largest crowd assembled for an entertainment at the War Dept. Theatre at Fort Ringgold since the World War, the Fort Ringgold Minstrel and Vaudeville Troupe presented an evening of fun on Nov. 20th. The cast was composed entirely of officers and men stationed at Fort Ringgold. The program consisted of the usual black-face circle, black-face vaudeville and a hilarious "skit" entitled "The Battle of Rolling Bones." This show will be taken "on tour" on successive Saturdays to the various larger cities of the Rio Grande Valley, winding up at Brownsville. The routing has been so arranged that no military duty will be missed during the tour.

THIRTEENTH CAVALRY—Fort D. A. Russell, Wyoming**Colonel H. R. Richmond, Commanding**

The period November 1st, 1926 to March 31st, 1927, is being devoted to *Individual Training*; Troop Schools, for officers, non-commissioned officers and specialists; instruction and training in equitation, horse training and care of animals; training of troop horses and remounts; instruction and training of privates and recruits; instruction and training of the personnel pertaining to communications and supply.

The winter period is regarded as the appropriate time for individual instruction and training of every kind; only such unit training to be attempted as the weather will permit.

In the winter the unit is separated into its parts and each part examined, overhauled and repaired; with the beginning of Spring the parts of the whole are restored, the whole then made to run as a co-ordinated, efficient machine.

In the training of individuals and of units, the element of competition is to be utilized; a diversified proficiency of the greatest number, and of each individual according

to his grade and duties, is what is desired, rather than a disproportionate proficiency of individuals, or of units, along preferred and chosen lines.

Specific subjects once taken up are to be continued until finished; the teaching of too many principles at the same time is to be avoided; the subject matter of instruction and training is to be suited to the grade and duties of the officers and enlisted men concerned; officers and non-commissioned officers to be trained for instruction and leadership; specialists (and at least one understudy) in the technique of their work; privates, in the duties of their grade and in habits of efficiency, loyalty and discipline.

Officers, non-commissioned officers and specialists constitute the framework of the regiment, around them all the lesser important and constantly fluctuating elements of the regiment are built and rebuilt.

During the present period the officers of the Advanced Class are taking Correspondence Course "D." The schedule calls for two lecture periods, followed by a map problem, each week. In this manner the first 21 exercises and problems of Correspondence Course "D" will be finished this year; the course to be continued next year in the same manner, until Correspondence Course "D" is completed. Arrangements have been made with Corps Area Headquarters whereby 12 officers have been regularly enrolled for this work, the regimental commander having been designated as the director. Keen interest has been aroused and the officers feel they are getting just what is needed to put their feet on the main road to military education and proper professional qualification; and on the main highway also, which leads eventually to Fort Leavenworth.

The Basic Officers are receiving three hours instruction, and at least one hour of equitation, daily.

Specialists Schools are being conducted with particular stress laid on communication and intelligence personnel and clerks, saddlers, horseshoers and stable sergeants.

By March 31, 1927, officers, non-commissioned officers and specialists of the regiment, will be prepared to enter upon unit training in the Spring; in the Summer they will be prepared to act as instructors according to grade or specialty, for the civilian components of the Army. Troops, squadrons, and the regiment entire, will be prepared to function as associate units in the instruction and training of the Organized Reserves, the National Guard, The Reserve Officers' Training Corps and of organizations at Citizens Military Training Camps.

FOURTEENTH CAVALRY (less 1st squadron)—Fort Des Moines, Iowa**Colonel J. R. Lindsey, Commanding**

During the latter part of September, the Iowa Vigilantes, Sheriffs, Deputies and other law enforcing officers of the state of Iowa, held their fourth annual shoot on the target range at Fort Des Moines. This is an annual event sponsored by the Iowa Bankers Association and brings out several hundred of the best shots in the state of Iowa. While at Fort Des Moines, they were quartered in one of the barracks of the post. Some very excellent scores were made and the shoot was a decided success from every standpoint. The Association was high in its praise for the 14th Cavalry which had charge of the arrangements and conduct of the shoot.

On September 23rd, the troops of the Post participated in the grand review of the Grand Army of the Republic which held its annual convention in the city of Des Moines. This parade was one of the most inspiring ever witnessed in this section of the country. Marching at a reduced cadence, 4,000 aged veterans of the Civil War passed in review before General John B. Inman. In spite of the inclement weather and drizzling rain which fell throughout the parade, nearly half of the veterans insisted upon marching. Colonel Lindsey commanded the Army section of the parade. During the encampment, the majority of the veterans visited Fort Des Moines, where provision had been made to show them about the post.

On September 14-15, the regiment underwent the annual tactical inspection. The 14th was devoted to a minute inspection of troops, equipment, barracks, stables and store

rooms; while the 15th was devoted to an all day problem, embracing the various phases of cavalry action. The inspection was made by Brigadier General A. W. Bjornstad, who was assisted by Major Oliver Allen, Captain L. E. Toole and Lieutenant Ford, all of Corps Area Headquarters. The regiment conducted itself very creditably in all phases of the inspection.

Troop F under command of Capt. John E. Maher, was selected to represent the regiment in the Goodrich competition. The various tests were given by a board of officers consisting of Major E. P. Pierson, Capt. F. M. Harshberger and Capt. F. F. Duggan. The spirit of the men, and the whole hearted and sincere manner in which they conducted themselves throughout the tests, was most gratifying.

Headquarters Troop entered an exhibit of radio and communication equipment in the annual radio show at Des Moines. The equipment was attractively arranged and displayed, and was the center of great interest, the management stating that this exhibit was the drawing card of the show. A detail of men explained and demonstrated the equipment. The 14th Cavalry band which has been broadcasting a weekly program through radio station WHO for the past year, opened the show with a concert.

The winter equitation classes have been started. One class under the direction of Colonel Lindsey, is conducted daily for all officers. There is also one class for remounts. Two ladies classes have also been inaugurated. The beginners are under the instruction of Lieut. N. F. Mc Curdey; while the advanced class receives its instruction from Captain H. J. Fitzgerald. Both classes are exceedingly well attended.

In addition to the officers school, which meets four times a week, a course in public speaking for all officers is given each Saturday. At these meetings, two officers present subjects of special interest. Following the presentation of the subjects, a general discussion of the subject takes place.

FIRST SQUADRON, FOURTEENTH CAVALRY—Fort Sheridan, Ill.

Lieut. Colonel Ben Lear, Jr., Commanding

Upon completion of the C. M. T. C., the Squadron put in a month of strenuous work in preparation for the annual tactical inspection of the Corps Area Commander, which was held on October fifth and sixth. The problem in connection with the inspection, consisted of a reconnaissance mission involving combat with an enemy cavalry force, and the protection of the flank of the 12th Infantry Brigade during its advance to the north.

Troop A, Captain E. M. Barnum commanding, represented the Squadron in the Goodrich Training Trophy Test, the final phase of which was completed during the first week of October. Throughout the test, which was held under adverse conditions, the spirit of the men of the troop was particularly satisfactory.

Troop C, Captain T. W. Ligon, commanding, departed for St. Louis on November fifth to attend the annual St. Louis Horse Show. The troop gave exhibition drills each afternoon and evening during the course of the show, November eighth to thirteenth inclusive, one of the performances being witnessed by the Queen of Roumania. No detail was overlooked by the Horse Show Committee in providing for the comfort of officers and men, and the week's visit in St. Louis was a most pleasant one. The Horse Show authorities were especially complimentary upon the performance of the troop.

On November twelfth, Troop B, Captain Clinton A. Pierce, commanding, marched to Chicago, where, on the thirteenth, it acted as escort to Her Majesty, the Queen of Roumania. During the stay in Chicago, the men and animals of the troop were quartered in the armory of the 122nd Field Artillery. The appearance of the troop upon this occasion received favorable comment from a number of sources.

The Squadron was glad to receive recently twenty-one remounts and fifteen Phillip packs.

THE CAVALRY JOURNAL

Devoted to the Interests of the Cavalry,
to the Professional Improvement of Its
Officers and Men, and to the Advance-
ment of the Mounted Service Generally

EDITOR

Lieutenant-Colonel W. V. MORRIS, Cavalry

Copyright, 1927, by
The United States Cavalry Association

Published quarterly by the United States Cavalry Association. Editor, Lieutenant-Colonel W. V. Morris, Cavalry. Entered as second-class matter at the post-offices at Washington, D. C., and Hanover, Pa., under the Act of March 3, 1879. Acceptance for mailing at special rate of postage provided for in section 1103, Act of October 3, 1917, authorized May 29, 1920.

Office of Publication, Hanover, Pa.

Editorial Office, Washington, D. C.

\$2.50 per year; single copy, 65c.

Foreign Postage, 25c Additional

THREE GREAT NEW BOOKS

THE RHINELAND OCCUPATION.

By Maj. Gen. H. T. Allen Price \$5.00

General Allen's previous book, *My Rhineland Journal*, was a record of his comings and goings, social and official contacts, and problems concerning his own command. *The Rhineland Occupation*, on the other hand, is a journal of armies, commissions, defeated people and the technique of military occupation. It covers the entire subject of the occupation of the Rhine country.

Indeed in any American war reference library of more than three volumes, this book, clear, forceful, honest and soldierly, must find its inevitable place, now and as long as men read history.

CAMPAIGNS OF THE CIVIL WAR.

By Walter Geer Price \$5.00

The object of this book is to give a concise military narrative of the important campaigns of the Civil War, unclouded by the conflict of political differences which occasioned the great contest.

In the Civil War all the principal strategic and tactical developments of the Great War were foreshadowed: half a century earlier America had met most of its problems and brilliantly solved them.

An illuminating book for the layman. An indispensable book for the military student.

THE GREAT CRUSADE

By Maj. Gen. J. T. Dickman Price \$2.50

For description, see advertising section.

Please send _____ copies each of:

NAME _____

ADDRESS _____

Order From

UNITED STATES CAVALRY ASSOCIATION

1624 H St., N. W.

Washington, D. C.

CONTENTS FOR APRIL, 1927

VOL. XXXVI, No. 147

	Page
WITH THE INDIAN AND THE BUFFALO IN MONTANA	191
Brigadier General E. J. McClelland	
THE PRINCIPLE OF MASS	208
Captain W. F. Pride, Cavalry	
GENERAL WILLIAM WOODS AVERELL	215
Brigadier General C. D. Rhodes	
TRAINING	220
Major F. W. Boye, Cavalry	
FAITH IN, AND A DOCTRINE FOR, THE CAVALRY SERVICE	227
"One of the Faithful"	
A GLIMPSE OF THE MEXICAN CAVALRY	232
Major Stephen M. Walmsley, Signal Corps	
THE FIGHT AT VOLCHKOVTSY	241
General N. N. Golovine	
COOPERATION BETWEEN THE NATIONAL GUARD AND ORGANIZED RESERVES	250
Colonel Guy S. Norvell, Cavalry	
EIGHTEENTH CENTURY EQUITATION	261
A RECORD RIDE	274
Major General Charles F. Roe	
THE RACE TO THE SEA	279
Transcription from <i>Revue de Cavalerie</i>	
Captain Royden Williamson, Cavalry	
ECONOMY IN THE MAINTENANCE OF MOUNTED UNITS	286
Major C. L. Scott, Remount Service, Q. M. C.	
A CAVALRYMAN'S LEGACY	290
COMMUNICATION—GROUND TO PLANE	291
Lieutenant John H. Stodter, Cavalry	
TACTICAL USE OF MOUNTED RELAYS	295
Lieutenant Mortimer F. Sullivan, Cavalry	
PROPERTY ACCOUNTABILITY, OR WHY IS A SURVEY	298
Captain Franklin E. Spohn, 103d Cavalry	
MANEUVERS	301
Lieutenant Lowell M. Limpus, 303d Cavalry	
TOPICS OF THE DAY	304
ITALIAN EQUITATION—CAVALRY BOARD NOTES—EASTERN ENDURANCE RIDES	
DISCONTINUED—GROOMING MACHINES—MACHINE GUN ANTI-AIRCRAFT MODIFICATION—BACK NUMBERS WANTED—SANTIAGO SOUVENIR BOOK.	
FOREIGN MILITARY NOTES	311
THE NATIONAL GUARD	314
THE ORGANIZED RESERVES	320
HORSE SHOWS	325
POLO	326
NEW BOOKS REVIEWED	329
FOREIGN MILITARY JOURNALS	333
CAVALRY SCHOOL NOTES	334
REGIMENTAL NOTES AND ROSTERS	335
PROCEEDINGS ANNUAL MEETING, U. S. CAVALRY ASSOCIATION	351

The United States Cavalry Association

DESIGN

1. The aim and purpose of the Association shall be to disseminate knowledge of the military art and science, to promote the professional improvement of its members, and to preserve and foster the spirit, the traditions, and the solidarity of the Cavalry of the Army of the United States.

ARTICLE III of the Constitution.

Organized November 9, 1885

OFFICERS

President

Major General H. B. Crosby

Vice-President

Brigadier General W. J. Glasgow

Secretary and Treasurer

Lieutenant Colonel W. V. MORRIS, Cavalry.

EXECUTIVE COUNCIL

Colonel F. S. FOLTZ, U. S. A. Retired
Colonel E. H. HUMPHREY, Cavalry
Colonel L. B. BALLANTYNE, 102d Cavalry
Colonel JOHN PHILIP HILL, 306th Cavalry
Lt. Col. DANIEL VAN VOOSHIS, (Cavalry) G. S. C.
Lt. Col. A. B. COXE, Cavalry
Lt. Col. A. F. COMMISKEY, Cavalry
Major H. S. BARRETT, Cavalry Reserve
Captain ROYDEN WILLIAMSON, Cavalry

MEMBERSHIP AND SUBSCRIPTION TO THE CAVALRY JOURNAL

Membership shall be of three classes, which, together with the conditions of eligibility therefor, are as follows:

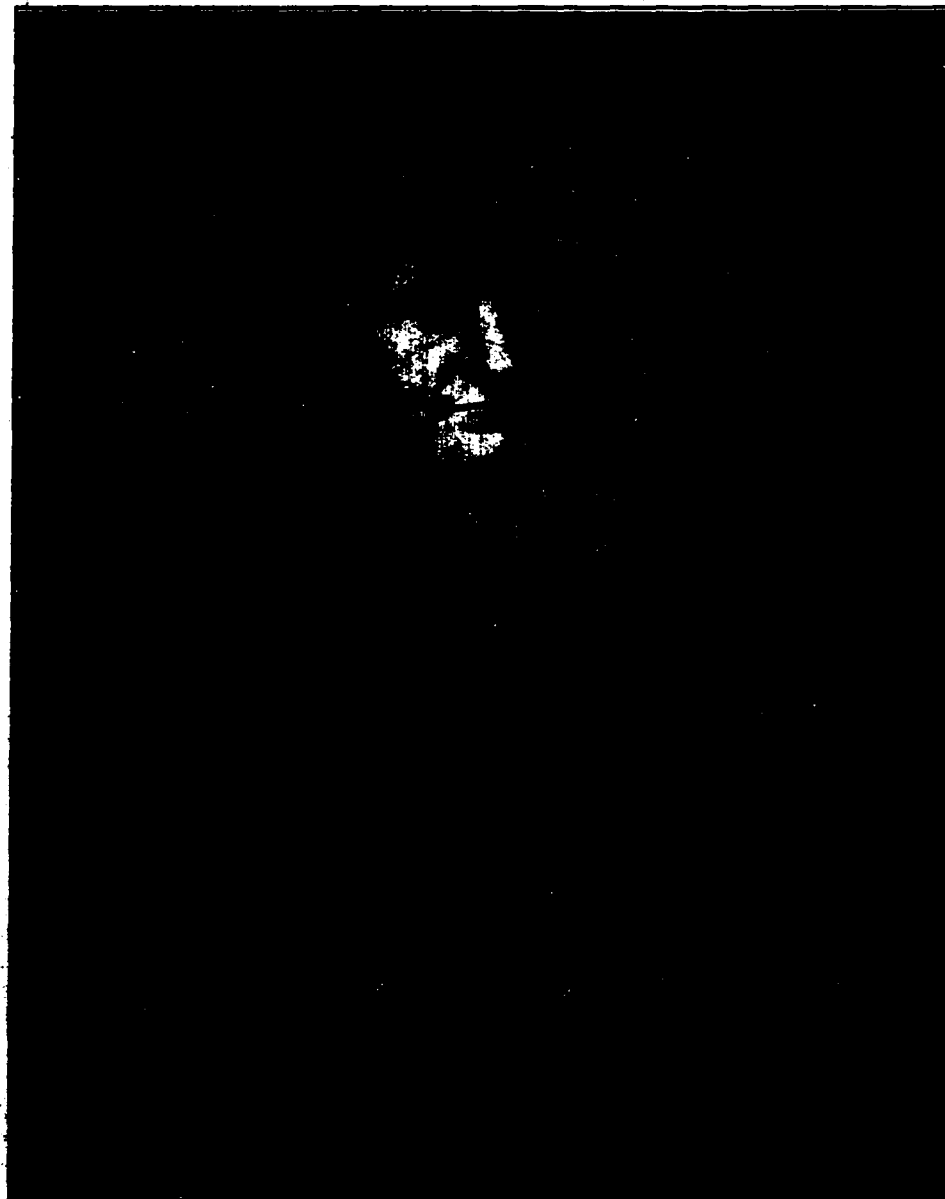
- (1) Active, for which all general officers of the Army of the United States and all commissioned officers of the Cavalry of the Army of the United States shall be eligible.
- (2) Associate, for which all present and former commissioned, warrant, and non-commissioned officers of honorable record of the military or naval services of the United States not included in class I shall be eligible.
- (3) Honorary.

Application for membership, showing present or former military status, should be addressed to the Secretary, U. S. Cavalry Association, 1624 H Street N. W., Washington, D. C., and be accompanied by remittance of dues for one year.

There is no initiation fee. Annual dues, payable in advance, \$2.50, which includes subscription to the Cavalry Journal, 60% thereof being so designated.

Any person or organization not eligible for membership may subscribe for the JOURNAL at the regular subscription rates of \$2.50 per year. Canadian and foreign postage, 25 cents additional.

Members and subscribers are requested to give prompt notice in advance of change of address.



Major General Judson Kilpatrick
From a Civil War Photograph

THE CAVALRY JOURNAL

Vol. XXXVI.

APRIL, 1927

No. 147

With The Indian and The Buffalo In Montana

By

Brigadier General EDWARD J. McCLERNAND

[CONCLUSION]

AFTER placing the wounded aboard the Far West, the entire command, including what was left of the Seventh Cavalry, was marched back to the north side of the Yellowstone to await re-enforcements. The Indians were supposed to have retreated toward the Big Horn Mountains. We did not then know that they had beaten General Crook on the Rosebud more than a week before their fight with Custer.

The commands from the two Departments had made no effort to act together and had permitted the Indians to beat them in detail.

About the middle of July three enlisted men were dispatched by General Terry to find General Crook, if possible; they succeeded and returned to us on the 25th of the same month, with the information that General Crook was on Goose Creek (a southern tributary of Tongue River) and also awaiting re-enforcements.

On the 27th of July we started down the Yellowstone and on the 30th camped opposite the mouth of the Rosebud. Here we found four companies of the Sixth Infantry, two of the Seventeenth, and one of the Seventh Cavalry. Shortly afterwards the Fifth Infantry under General Nelson A. Miles arrived.

Finally, on the 8th of August we started up the Rosebud—1700 strong. Two days later about 11:00 A. M., such of our Indian scouts as were in advance came rushing back crying "Sioux-Sioux," and pointing to a large cloud of dust seen rising behind a hill a few miles up the valley. That the Crow scouts thought the time had come at last to meet their hated enemy in fair battle, was evident from their excited words and actions.

They sprang from their ponies and began stripping for the fight, and daubing their faces with paint. The squaws, even more excited than the braves, went hurriedly to work saddling the war ponies, and all the time screaming and gesticulating in the wildest manner. The command was

promptly deployed, covering our trains in a well chosen position. General Terry, who frequently used me as a staff officer, ordered me to direct General Miles to deploy his regiment the Fifth Infantry, to the right, facing the timber along the Rosebud, and to hold that flank. This was the first time I ever saw Miles, and his poise and alertness greatly impressed me. Every one was eager for the expected fight, which however was not to be, for soon the appearance of the famous Buffalo Bill, (William F. Cody) riding towards us with a few companions, put an end to our warlike demonstrations. He told us that he came from General Crook, whose column consisting of twenty-five troops of cavalry and ten companies of infantry made the dust observed.

Crook Joins Terry

Both commands encamped together on the Rosebud. Here it was decided to send the wagon train back to the Yellowstone under General Miles and his regiment of infantry. Upon reaching the river he was to patrol it with a steamboat and prevent if possible, the Sioux from crossing and escaping to the north. The remaining troops were to follow a tepee trail found by General Crook's scouts, leading towards Tongue River.

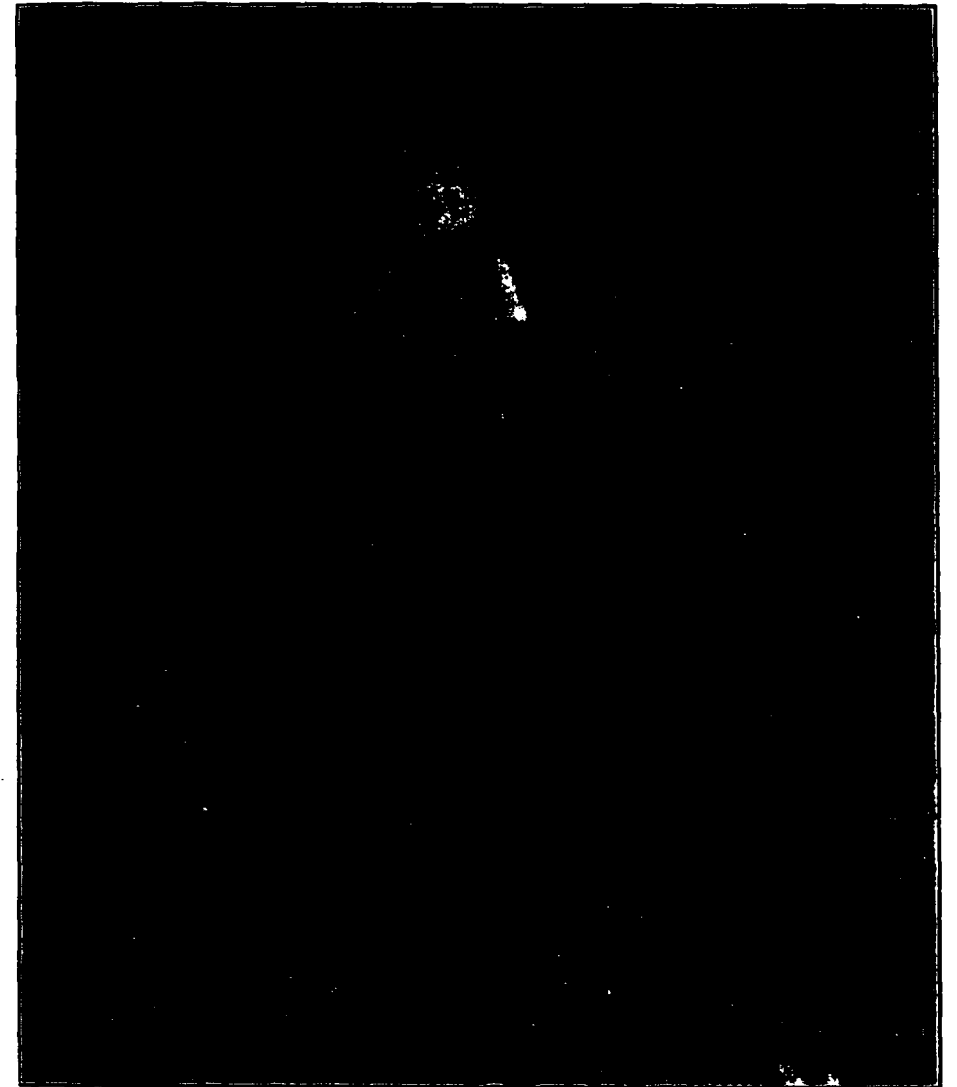
In my humble opinion the cavalry of both commands—thirty-six troops—should have been united and sent rapidly forward to attack the enemy. A good cavalryman, General Wesley A. Merritt, was there to command. The defeat of the Seventh Cavalry had, however, shaken the confidence of many in the ability of cavalry alone to contend successfully with Indians. I am not aware that any such conclusion should have been drawn. The disaster of the Little Big Horn was the legitimate result, not only of the greatly superior strength of the enemy, but of a badly planned battle, badly fought perhaps in many places.

The experience of the next two years showed that cavalry could charge and beat Indians. Besides, we could have fought on foot and have put probably 1500 men in line—exclusive of the horse holders. The Indians were retreating from their favorite hunting grounds, and it is fair to presume that they were not equal to presenting as bold a front as formerly.

Both on the Rosebud under Crook, and at the Little Big Horn, the troops were put in piecemeal and beaten in detail. Fought in that way, either cavalry or infantry, at any time and under any circumstances, will probably be beaten.

Instead of a rapid movement, the united Department commanders marched over to Tongue River, down that stream nearly fifty miles, thence across to Powder River and down to its mouth. This distance was one hundred and twenty-six miles—we were seven days making it, an average of eighteen miles a day. When finished, no one knew where the Indians were. A week before we arrived there on the seventeenth of August, many of General Crook's horses were on their last legs.

From the mouth of the Powder River General Crook was to march towards the Little Missouri, while General Terry was to cross the Yellowstone



William F. Cody (Buffalo Bill)

Buffalo Bill was one of the most noted of the many scouts whose picturesque careers lend much interest to the history of our western frontier. Born in 1845, he had many adventures at an early age, and when fifteen years old, became a pony express rider. During the Civil War he was a scout for the Union forces in the West. From 1866 to 1877 he took part in many Indian campaigns and made a great reputation as a courageous and reliable scout, as well as a skillful buffalo hunter. He later went into the show business and his Wild West performances furnished entertainment to thousands in the United States and England.

and move towards the Big Dry, or the Dry Fork of the Missouri. If the Indians were retreating towards the Black Hills to the south-east, it was thought that General Crook would overtake them, but if they were trying to escape to the British Possessions, General Terry would be pursuing the proper course.

Engagement at Slim Buttes

General Crook's command nearly starved before supplies were reached, many of his animals perished, and I have been told that there was much straggling. He had an unimportant engagement at Slim Buttes (in South Dakota, 120 miles southeast of Miles City) where a portion of his command under Captain Anson Mills, surprised a band of Indians and captured their camp with a large amount of supplies which proved of great benefit to the detachment, and also to the balance of the command when it came up.*

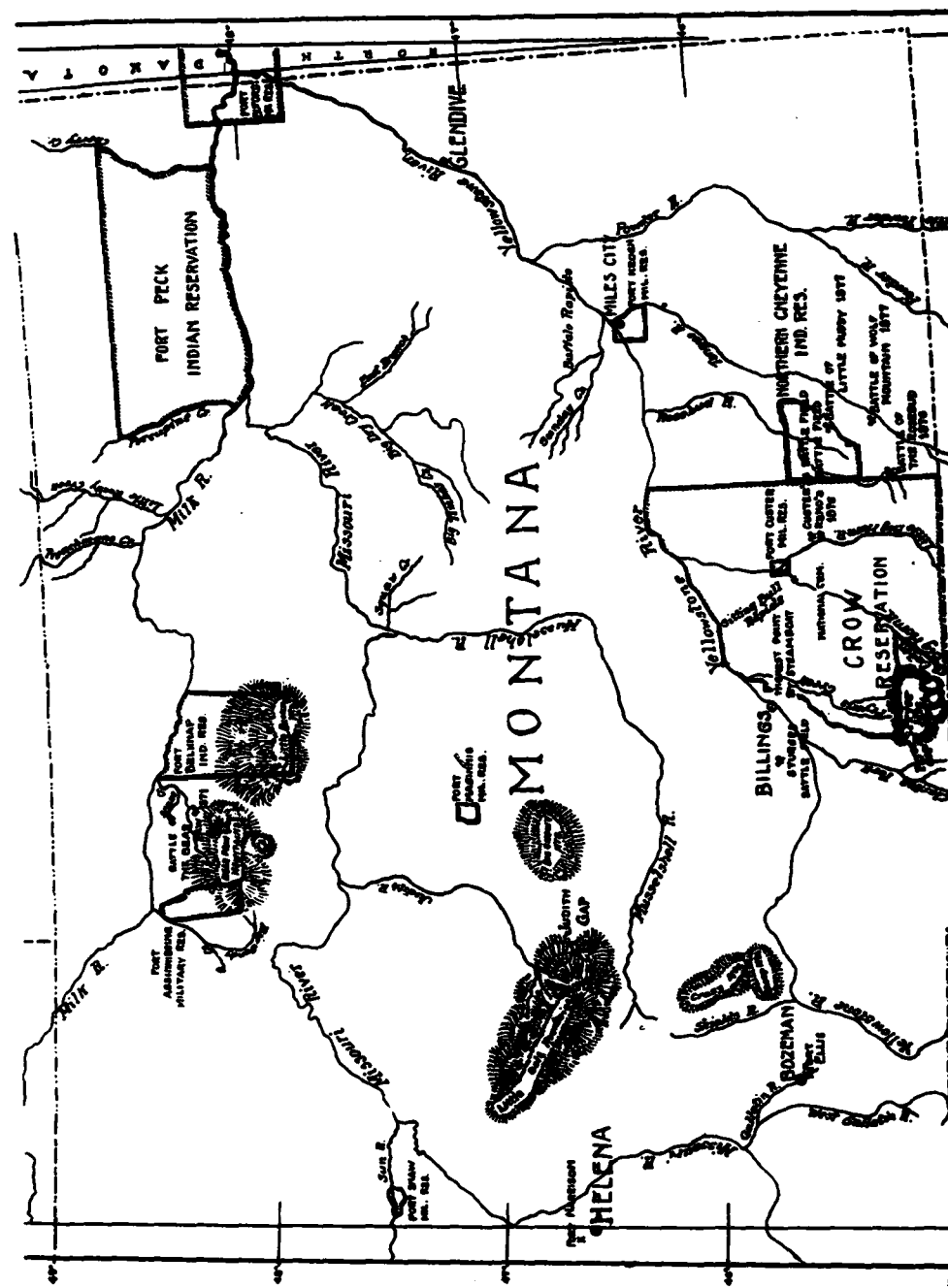
We started on August 24th, and that evening Buffalo Bill brought news from Lieutenant Edmund Rice, opposite the mouth of Glendive Creek, that Indians were hovering around there. Fearing that they would escape to the north, General Terry turned in that direction, and reaching the river near the mouth of O'Fallon's Creek, continued our march towards Glendive Creek.

On the 29th of August, we came upon a large herd of buffalo and a grand hunt took place. Many joined in the sport, and the chase was both successful and exciting, without encountering any Indians. We arrived at the mouth of Glendive Creek on the 31st and went into camp.

By September 6th, as the Yellowstone was falling, and as the boats were being taxed to their full capacity to supply the cantonment at Tongue River, the site of the present Fort Keogh, it was decided to send the troops home. General Gibbon's command had the greatest distance to march, and was started at once.

Fort Ellis was reached on September 29th, just six months after leaving it. The infantry had still farther to go, and reached Fort Shaw on October 6th. The greatest distance marched during the campaign by a company of infantry, was 1835 miles, and by a troop of cavalry, 1798 miles.

*Note: September 9th, a squadron, consisting of one hundred and fifty men of the Third Cavalry, under Captain Anson Mills, after a very trying night march, succeeded at daybreak in surprising the village of American Horse, at Slim Buttes, Dak., capturing the entire village of about thirty-seven lodges, with quantities of supplies, arms and ammunition, and about one hundred and seventy-five ponies. Among the articles taken from this village were a guidon of the Seventh Cavalry, a pair of gloves marked with the name of Colonel Keogh, Seventh Cavalry, who was killed with Custer, and many other things which were recognized as belonging to that command. The squadron of Captain Mills suffered a loss of one enlisted man killed, six wounded, and Lieutenant A. H. Von Luetwitz, Third Cavalry, so seriously wounded in the leg as to require amputation. The loss of the Indians was American Horse, mortally wounded, four Indians killed, and about a dozen captured. The village of Crazy Horse was only a short distance away, and after the first flight from camp, the Indians returned in increased numbers and attacked Mills' command, but the main column of General Crook having arrived, the Indians were worsted in several encounters which took place. (RECORDS OF ENGAGEMENTS).



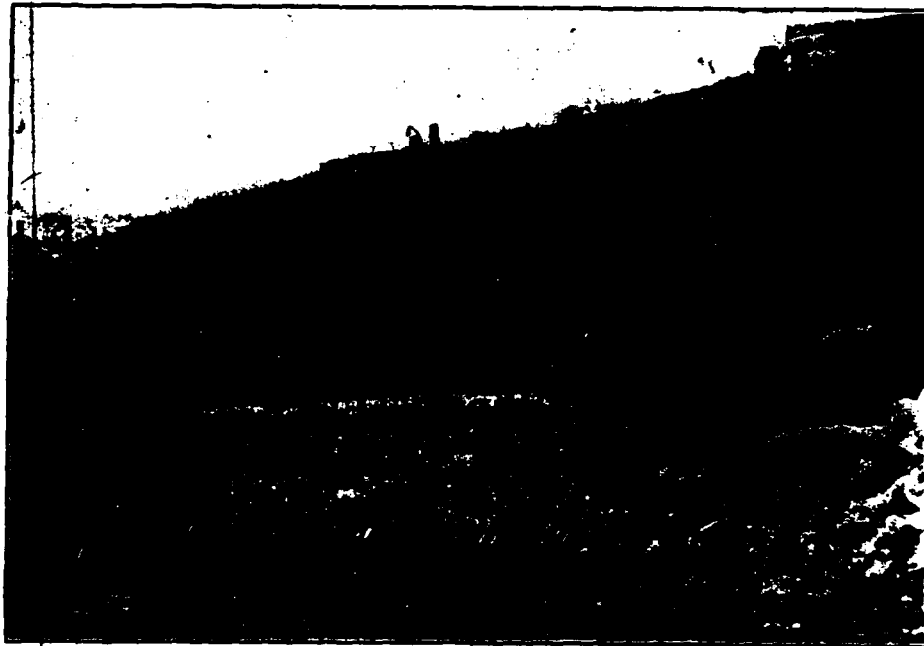
The point marked "Sturgis Battle Field" is where Colonel Sturgis with the Seventh Cavalry intercepted Chief Joseph in his retreat to the north through Judith Gap to the Bear Paw Mountains.

One fatal blow, at least, was given the Indians in 1876—viz: The establishment of Fort Keogh. That post, with Fort Custer built the following year, settled the Indian question on the Yellowstone.

A Surprise

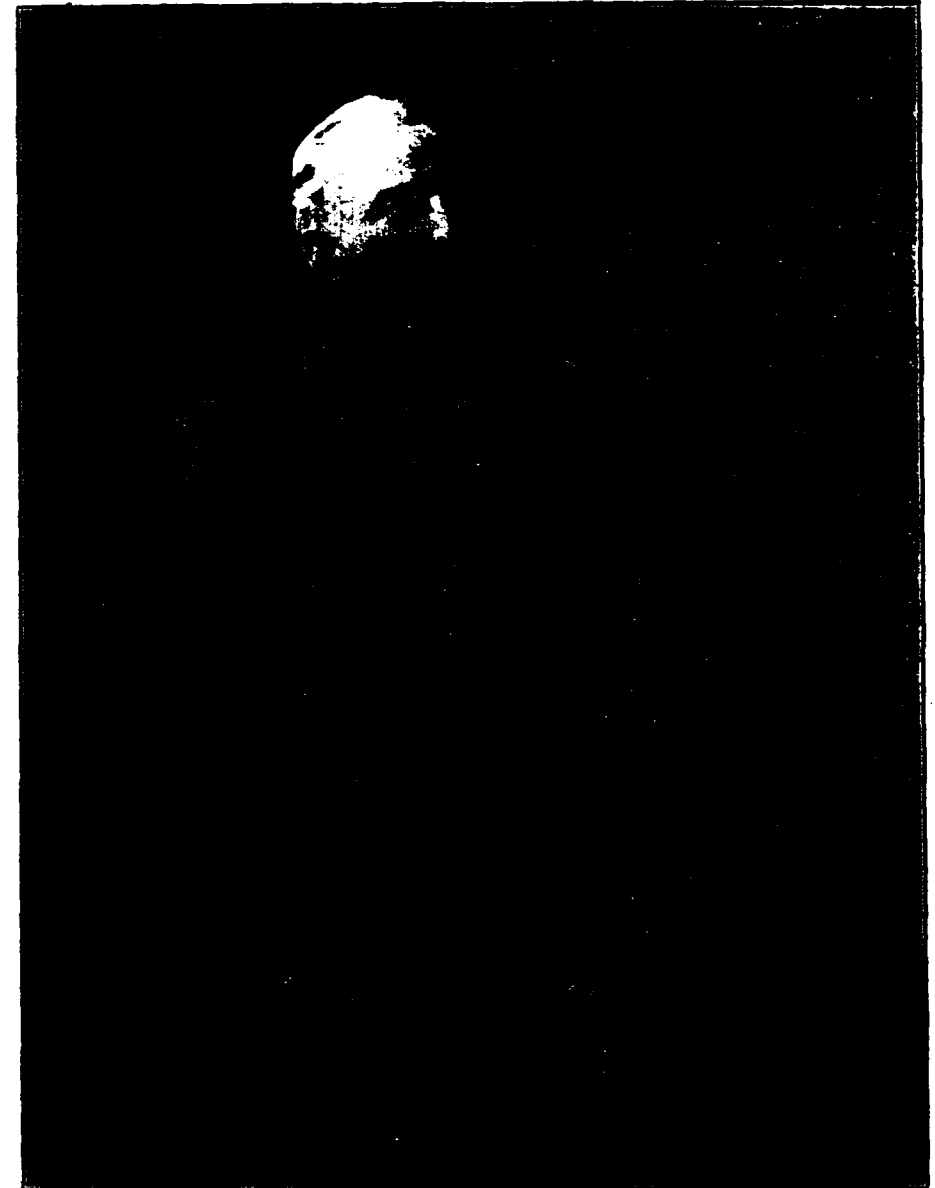
In July of the following year, 1877, I was returning on a boat from a long leave of absence, and upon reaching the cantonment of Glendive on the Yellowstone, I saw two officers on the river bank.

Thinking that I would give them a pleasant surprise, I filled my pockets with cigars and—something else, and went ashore. The surprise, however, landed on the other side, for I immediately called for my baggage, and went into bivouac with a sole leather trunk and my best "cit" clothes.



Cantonment at Mouth of Tongue River, Montana, 1876

The two officers were General Miles and Lieutenant Oscar F. Long. The former said my troop would reach Glendive in a few days and that I could join there as well as at Keogh, where I had expected to report. He asked if I was prepared to take the field. I said yes, but knew that it was not exactly true. However, an officer who was renowned for running about and attending to every one's business except his own, had gone off on a boat for a little trip,



Lieutenant General Nelson A. Miles

Nelson A. Miles was appointed First Lieutenant, 22d Massachusetts Infantry September 9, 1861. He rose to the grade of major general of volunteers by the close of the Civil War, and after demobilization, was appointed colonel of infantry on July 28, 1866. He became a brigadier general December 15, 1880; major general April 5, 1890; and lieutenant general June 6, 1900. In the Indian campaigns that followed the Civil War, General Miles was very successful, both in the Southwest and the Northwest.

and left his field outfit at Glendive. As I knew him well, I supplied myself with his garments. Now, as he was six feet tall and weighed 200 lbs. and I, in those days of campaigning and hard work, only turned the scales at 130, you can imagine the fit was not perfect.

At this place there were twenty men belonging to about as many regiments. I was directed to take command. Boats commenced pouring in supplies for an expedition to be started in a few days, and I began to bemoan the feeling of hospitality which prompted me to treat to the cigars and rum, for I was made Quartermaster and Commissary without any clerical assistance, with scarcely any stationery and wholly without blanks. General Miles and Lieutenant Long stayed around several days but they did not help much. In fact, the General did not seem to understand that I had a bigger contract on hand than I could well fill, and employed me part of the time in drilling the mounted men to fight on foot, each man holding his horse by the lariat. Here let me say, that under certain circumstances this is an excellent method, but it is important that the Ordnance Department should supply us with a hair lariat; something soft, light, and pliable.

From Glendive I was ordered on a march of 700 miles, and acted as Adjutant, Quartermaster and Commissary of the command, consisting of twelve troops and companies, and 50 or 60 packers and Indian scouts. My accounts were kept on old envelopes and such scraps of paper as I could beg, borrow or steal, and were thrown pell-mell into a small grip sack. After reaching Keogh I found it a difficult task to bring order out of such chaos.

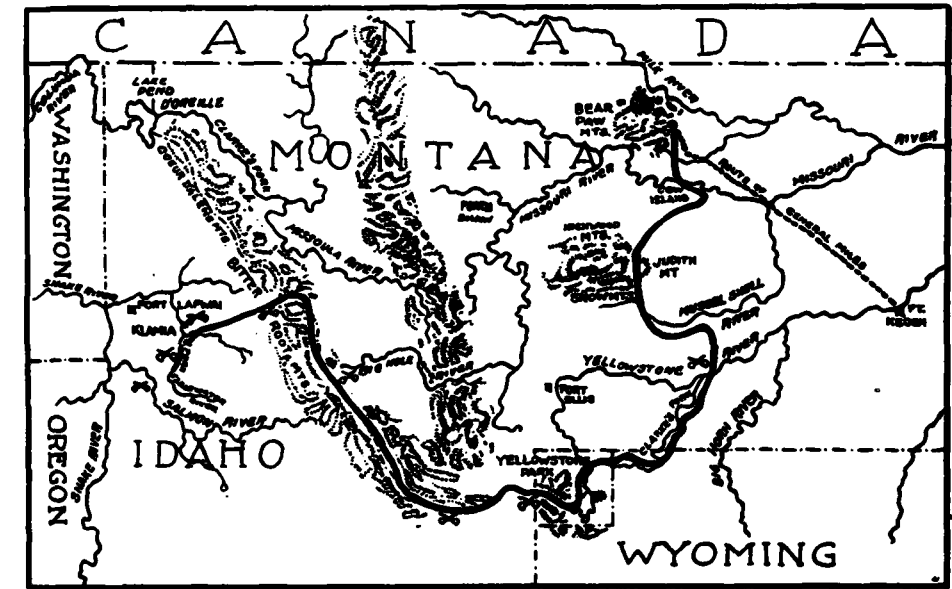
While lying in camp near Keogh, I was directed to find if possible, a ford across the Yellowstone about three miles above the post.

Realising the danger attending the undertaking, I called for volunteers and three men came forward. Taking off our boots and heavy clothing, and selecting good horses, we went in, trying one place and then another, until with a sudden plunge, we found ourselves swimming in deep and swift water. One man was drowned. The rest of us reached a little island. My friends on the bank called loudly to give it up and come back, and it was one occasion where advice proved welcome. I mention this circumstance to call attention to the importance of teaching a cavalryman to swim with his horse. That it would vastly increase his efficiency during a campaign cannot be doubted.

Nes Perce Campaign

My squadron was near Keogh when a courier brought the news to General Miles that the Nes Perce Indians had crossed the Yellowstone near Clark's Fork, and after a fight with part of the Seventh Cavalry, under General Sturgis, had continued their retreat toward the Judith Basin.* General Miles

*Note: This was the final phase of the celebrated retreat of the Nes Perce Indians under Chief Joseph from their ancestral home in eastern Oregon. Hostilities began June 17, 1877, as a result of the Government's attempt to transfer the Nes Perces to the Lapwai reservation in western Idaho. After a few engagements with the troops, the Indians, realizing that they would be defeated in the end, started for Canada, followed



A 1600 Mile Retreat

The heavy black line indicates Chief Joseph's route during his retreat from western Idaho to the Bear Paw Mountains in northern Montana, the scene of his final stand and surrender. Crossed sabers indicate points where engagements took place. General Miles' command was the third force that had intercepted Chief Joseph while General Howard was pursuing. That under General Gibbon from Forts Shaw and Ellis was thrust aside at the Big Hole River; later, Colonel S. D. Sturgis, with the Seventh Cavalry, was ward off at Canyon Creek, a tributary of the Yellowstone.

with his accustomed energy, started at once to cut them off before they could reach the British Possessions. His force consisted of three troops of the Second Cavalry: Tyler's, Jerome's and mine, Captain George L. Tyler, commanding; three troops of the Seventh Cavalry: Hale's, Godfrey's and

by troops under General O. O. Howard. There ensued a number of pitched battles and rear guard actions in which the Indians showed tactical ability and fighting qualities of a high order. The principal engagements were at White Bird Canyon, Clear Water, Big Hole, Camas Meadows, Canyon Creek, and the final battle in the Bear Paw Mountains.

In addition to the pursuing forces under General Howard, General Gibbon, with forces from Forts Shaw and Ellis, intercepted and surprised the hostiles at the Big Hole River. After a desperate fight which lasted all day, Joseph withdrew at night and continued his retreat to the southeast and through Yellowstone Park. Gibbon's loss in killed and wounded was thirty-five per cent of his force.

Colonel Sturgis with the Seventh Cavalry threw himself across Joseph's route beyond Yellowstone Park, but the wily chief outwitted him by a clever feint. As soon as Sturgis found that he had been tricked, he rushed in pursuit with fresh horses and came upon the Nes Perces on Canyon Creek. After a hard fight, Joseph withdrew under cover of darkness and continued his retreat north. Sturgis was in no shape to pursue, as his men and horses were exhausted. (Errors)

Moylan's, Captain Owen Hale, commanding; four companies of the Fifth Infantry: Snyder's, Bennett's, Carter's and Romeyn's, Captain Simon Snyder, commanding; a small detachment of white guides and scouts, and thirty Cheyenne Indian allies under Lieutenant Marion P. Maus, First Infantry; and an infantry detachment with a twelve-pounder Napoleon gun. The Cheyennes were former foes who had surrendered after the Little Big Horn campaign.

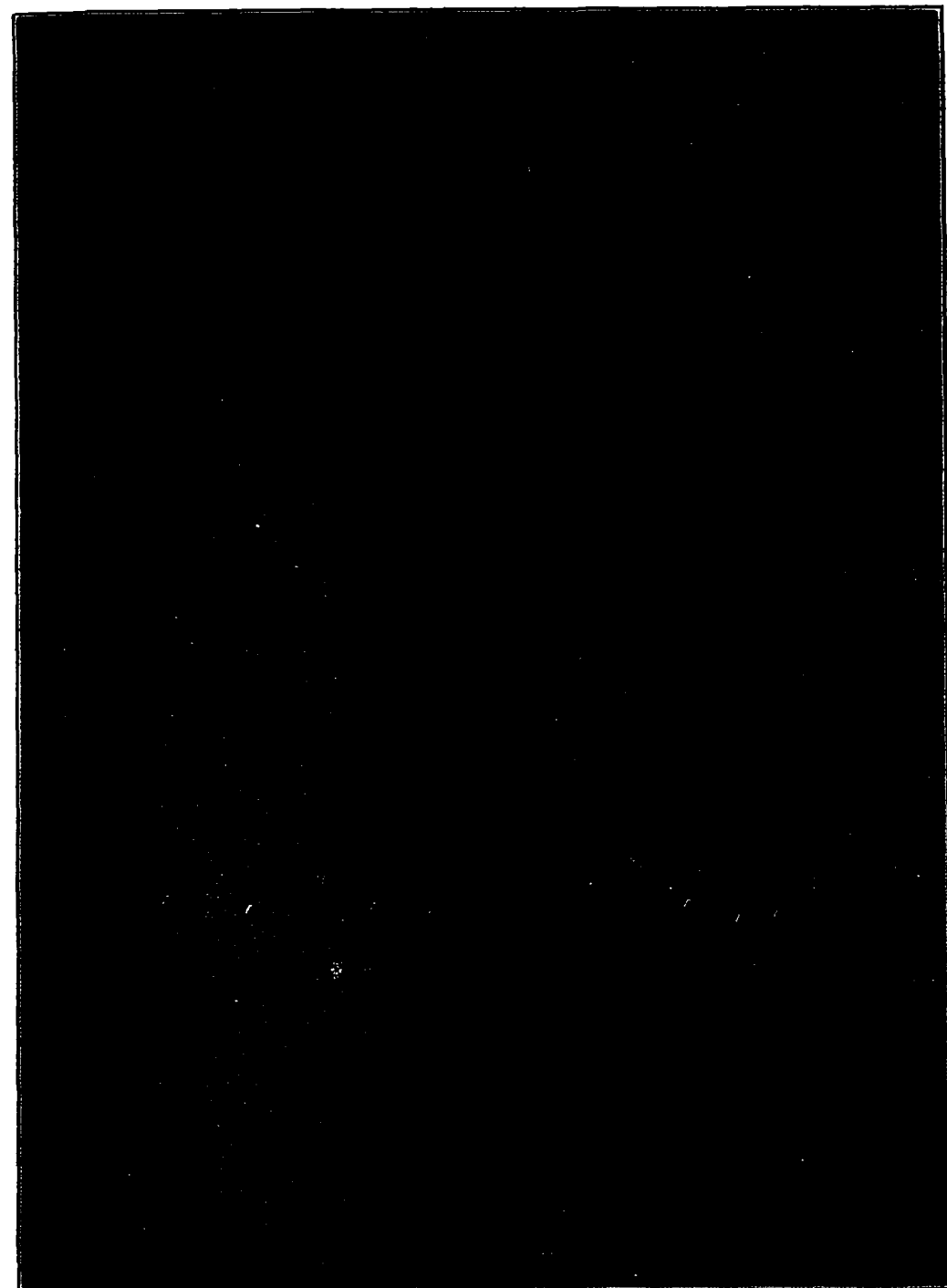
Our route passed up Sunday Creek, over the divide to the Big Dry, across another divide to Squaw Creek, and thence to the Missouri. Two officers were sent ahead to stop any boats that might be passing. We found and stopped two.

Learning that the Indians had crossed the Missouri at Cow Island, some forty miles above, the command was ferried to the north side, and the march continued. The weather was exceedingly disagreeable. On the morning of September 29th, near the Bear Paw Mountains, Lieutenant M. P. Maus, Chief of Scouts, sent back word that the enemy was in camp about five miles ahead.

The Second Cavalry was leading, followed by the Seventh, and they, by the mounted infantry. The infantry proper was a day's march to the rear. Each squadron was ordered to form column of fours, and the Seventh was directed to move to the right of the Second and on a line with it, taking sufficient interval to form left front into line. In this order we started at a brisk trot across the hills. About three miles on, both squadrons of cavalry were ordered to form left front into line, and to take the gallop. Snake Creek, running diagonally across our front, forced the Second to cross to the left bank where for a distance the ground was quite broken. This caused us to fall to the rear of the Seventh and enabled them to open the fight. A mile from the hostile camp we came in sight of the Indians, who were making hurried preparations to get away.

The Second was now some distance to the left and rear of the Seventh and the mounted infantry was brought up to fill the center. As we neared the camp, the rough hills on our side gave way to a pretty valley, and we made a dash for the pony herd just across the creek, and a stone's throw from the camp.

The Seventh was already hotly engaged, and the mounted infantry was just coming up. There were about 500 ponies near the village, and as many more a half a mile or less, beyond. These latter were guarded by sixty or seventy mounted Indians. The ponies were much reduced in flesh and many of them sore footed. It was hard to start them into a run, and I remember taking my foot from the stirrup and kicking some of them, to start them. Of course, this took less time than it does to tell it, for we moved at a full gallop. As we dashed by, driving the ponies before us, I saw the troops on the right bank of the creek fighting desperately. They had been brought to a halt by the deep ravine in which the Indians were encamped, and from which they were firing at short range upon our men, who had dismounted. I recall the vivid flashes from the rifles of our men as we galloped by, and the perfect



stream of fire that came from the Winchesters with which many of the Indians were armed. Our friends had kept the enemy in the village so busily engaged that he did not appear to know of our approach until we were upon him, with the ponies flying before us. He then tried to save the herd, but it was too late, and in a moment we had it securely sheltered behind a hill.

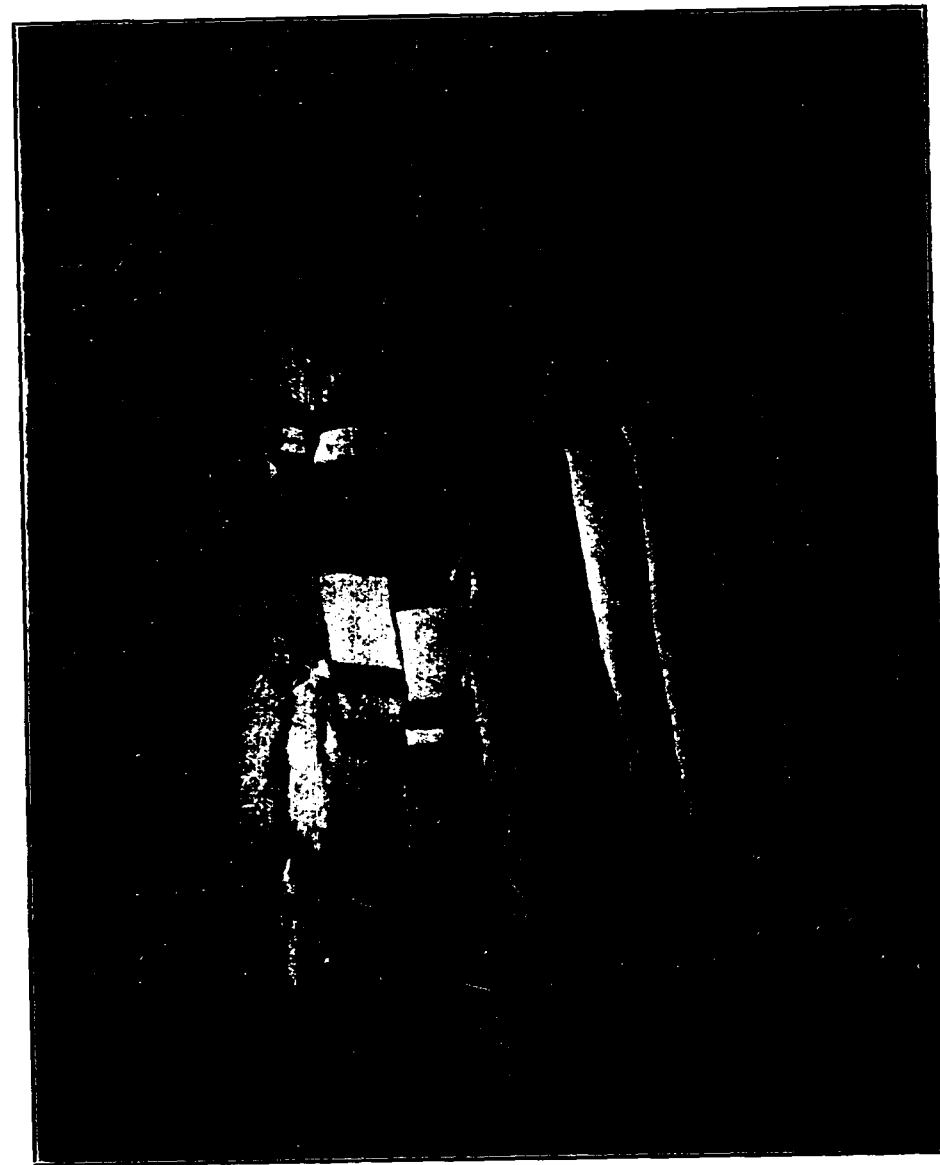
Just at this time, Lieutenant George W. Baird galloped up to Captain Tyler, who commanded my squadron, with instructions from General Miles to send a troop after the mounted Indians in our front, which he called the "squaw herd." Baird was bleeding from a wound in his left arm, and another in the left ear. Tyler directed me to carry out the order with the troop I commanded. We went at them in fine style, but the reception received, convinced us that we had warriors and not squaws to deal with. It was White Bird's band, and although they seemed stunned at first by the rapidity of our advance, they quickly rallied and made a good fight. We had the best of the affair, however, and captured 250 more ponies. White Bird and most of his followers escaped into the British Possessions.

Joseph and his portion of the tribe we had, in the language of the plains, set afoot, and had him a prisoner in the hole where his camp was located. But if he could not get out, neither could we get in, and it soon settled down to a regular siege. Any man on either side, who showed his head over the top of the hill was shot.

A Truce

The morning of the second day, the Indians raised the white flag. They came out of their hole, and we walked around and looked in. Both sides however continued to throw up intrenchments. About the middle of the morning, Joseph, with several of his chief men, came into our camp to see and talk with General Miles. They were kindly received, and commenced to talk about surrendering, but objected to the terms proposed, unconditional I believe. Joseph maneuvered with all the skill of a diplomat for better ones.

Lieutenant Lovell H. Jerome was sent into the camp to see if Chief Looking Glass had been killed, as reported, and perhaps to observe generally. He went and returned all right, but not satisfied with having accomplished all that he was instructed to do, he let his curiosity lead him back again, although the interpreter cautioned him against going, saying that the Indians were talking in an ugly spirit. He nevertheless went into the camp. As the terms were not acceptable, Joseph and his friends arose to go, but General Miles held Joseph's hand and said to the others "Joseph will stay and take dinner with me." One old Indian replied in broken English "Joseph has had his dinner." He was not permitted to go, but the others returned. When Jerome saw them approaching he concluded that it was time to return to his proper post, and started to do so. Just as he was leaving, two Indians stepped up and placing their hands on his shoulders, said "You stay here until Joseph comes" and stay he did. I did not know Jerome had been held until a couple



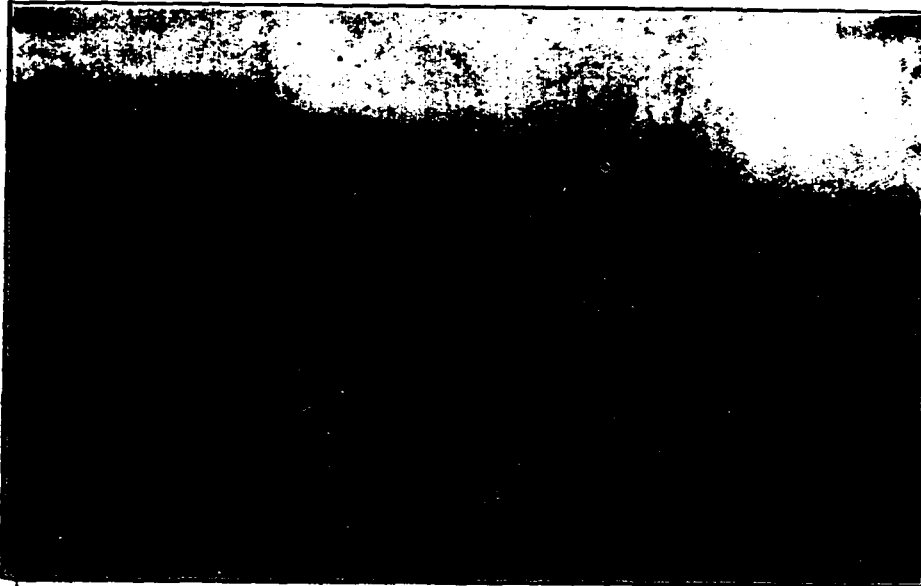
Chief Joseph

This chieftain whose celebrated retreat has been compared to that of Xenophon and his Ten Thousand, was one of the most remarkable Indians of his time. He was the last Indian leader who dared to put up a real fight against civilization, and, considering the relative sizes of the forces engaged, none of his predecessors made such a good showing. After his surrender he lived peacefully among his people on the reservation set aside for the tribe, until he died, September 22, 1904.

of hours afterwards. When the Commanding Officer learned it, he was not pleased. We had a chief—they had an officer.

That night I suffered more than I ever did in my life. The position of the Second was changed after dark, and one was taken up nearer to the Indians than was intended, so near in fact, that we could hear them talking. A little rise in the ground separated us. Some of them tried to get out, but were driven back by a volley.

At this, Jerome states, he was carefully stowed away in a hole dug in the bank. They knew that if he were killed it would be all up with Joseph. We were equally careful of the latter, for like reasons.



Reproduced by permission from "Personal Recollections of General Nelson A. Miles."

The Surrender of Chief Joseph

"From where the Sun now stands, I fight no more against the White Man."

At nine o'clock, it commenced raining, and this at midnight, turned into snow. The men in our squadron did not have their blankets, I had not even an overcoat. Under the circumstances we did not find the bare ground especially warm, as you can well imagine, and next morning, being unable to mount my horse, I was taken to the hospital tent. Here a fire was made from pieces of wagons which had been broken up after the arrival of the train on the second day. There was no wood within ten or fifteen miles, and that was on the mountains.

The next day prisoners were exchanged—that is, Joseph returned to the camp and Jerome to his troop, with which no orders were necessary to keep him thereafter.

On the evening of the 6th day, a Napoleon gun was loaded with a shell and trained on the entrance to the ravine, where the Indians could be seen each night, flitting about in the dark, getting water and preparing their food. Just after dusk the gun was fired; several Indians were killed and more wounded.

That night General Howard with two staff officers, and several orderlies or scouts arrived.

The Surrender

Joseph surrendered early the next morning. Our loss in this engagement was Captain Owen Hale and Lieutenant J. W. Biddle, Seventh Cavalry, and



The Grave of Chief Joseph

twenty-two enlisted men killed; and Captains E. S. Godfrey and Myles Moylan, Lieutenants G. W. Baird and Henry Romeyn, and thirty-eight enlisted men wounded. The Indians lost seventeen killed and forty wounded. There were surrendered eighty-seven warriors, one hundred eighty-four squaws, and

one hundred forty-seven children.*

After the engagement my squadron was ordered to the Northern Boundary, as an escort to General Terry and other commissioners appointed by the government to consult with the British about Sitting Bull and his band. It was on this march that I was first struck with the immensity of the prairies of northern Montana. There are miles upon miles of rolling hills without a tree in sight. We seemed lost in the immensity as a small boat might be in the middle of the ocean.

The squadron returned to Fort Ellis on the first of November, eight months to a day after taking the field. I had left in a snow storm and returned in one, and had marched over 3000 miles.

The summer and fall of 1878 was a season of hard and almost constant marching, but I shall pass it by, and speak of my last campaign in Montana. It commenced in June of the following year and was conducted by General Miles against the Sioux north of the Missouri along Milk River and Rocky Creek.

On July 17, about noon, Captain W. P. Clark in command of one troop of the Second Cavalry, one company of the Fifth Infantry mounted on ponies, and the Cheyenne Scouts, accompanied by Lieutenant Curtis B. Hoppin, was ordered forward as an advance guard. He came upon the enemy unexpectedly on Frenchman's Creek, and with his usual dash, rushed boldly at them; at the same time sending a courier back to notify the main column, which consisted of six troops of the Second Cavalry and six companies of the Fifth Infantry, mounted on ponies.

At first the Indians gave way, but soon rallied and surrounded Clark. We pushed on rapidly to the rescue. For some miles broken hills caused a little delay, increased slightly by two pieces of artillery with us. However, the men realising their importance quickly pulled them out of ravines no matter how deep they were. One of these pieces was a Hotchkiss.

A second courier arrived, his pony panting and covered with foam, bearing a message from Clark saying that he was nearly surrounded and asking for speedy help.

We had now reached smooth ground. Three troops were deployed as skirmishers. In the rear of this line were three more in column of fours, and still farther back were four companies of mounted infantry, also in column of fours. In this order we galloped about 12 miles.

*Note: Joseph, whose force never amounted to three hundred fighting men, had engaged at different times, some two thousand soldiers. Of these, one hundred twenty-six had been killed and one hundred forty wounded. During the long retreat and the hard fighting, Joseph had lost one hundred fifty-seven killed and eighty-eight wounded. He had fought eleven engagements, five being pitched battles, of which he had won three, drawn one and lost one. Some of the troops in pursuit of him had marched sixteen hundred miles. His own march had been at least two thousand miles. This constitutes a military exploit of the first magnitude, and entitled the great Indian to take rank among the great Captains. (BRADY)

Seeing our approach the Indians gave way, keeping up a running fight with Clark and Hoppin who followed close upon their heels. The sight as we galloped over the green and rolling hills was a beautiful one; it was an exciting chase.

The artillery moved with the skirmish line, and in the latter part of the race fired a few shots. The enemy reached and crossed the Milk River without being overtaken, and escaped under cover of the night. Clark's loss was two killed and several wounded.

A few days after this, while in camp just south of the British line, the Commanding Officer sent for me and said he thought the campaign was over, and that I might take advantage, without further delay, of an order directing me to report in New York a month later.

My proposed absence was to be for four years, and when the time came to say good-bye to officers and men with whom I had been closely associated for nine years in pleasures and in hardships, on marches amidst the snows of winter and in the heat of summer; with whom I had formed that intimate friendship only born from sharing privations in the field, I felt loath to leave, even for an eastern station. Together we had labored to open for settlement a vast empire, the fruits of those efforts were beginning to show, and as I mounted my horse to ride away, I carried with me a feeling of pride for the work accomplished by the Second Cavalry.



The Principles of War and Their Application to Small Cavalry Units

III. Principle of Mass

By

Captain W. F. PRIDE, Cavalry

FOCH, in his "Principles of War" states, "The truth is, no study is possible on the battle-field; one does there simply what one *can* in order to apply what one *knows*. Therefore, in order to *do* even a little, one has already to *know* a great deal and to know it well."

In 1866 the Prussians had not fought for fifty years, while the Austrians had fought in 1859 but, as has been stated, "We find, on one side, men who know war without having made it, the Prussians; on the other, men who have not understood war even after waging it." The old theory that we must go to war to learn about war has long been exploded, and in these days of reserve officers and correspondence courses, it is well that it has been. The cavalry officer and the cavalry horse are very much alike in one respect; they are both habit forming, and in a certain situation tend to respond as habit dictates. If by constant study and drill we can inculcate certain principles, then we are more likely to respond correctly when a difficult situation arises. We must form our habits before we get to the battle-field. It will be too late afterwards.

Again referring to Foch, it is of interest to quote a conversation that occurred in 1799 between Bonaparte and Moreau. The conversation was recorded by a witness as follows: "These two generals, who had never yet seen each other, seemed equally pleased to meet. It was observed that during this interview, both, for one moment, looked at each other in silence. Bonaparte was the first to speak; he told Moreau how anxious he had been to make his acquaintance. 'You are just come from Egypt as a conqueror,' answered Moreau, 'and I am just home from Italy after a great defeat x x x.' After giving some explanation of the causes of that defeat, he concluded: 'It was impossible to prevent our gallant army from being overwhelmed by so many combined forces. Big numbers always beat small ones.'"

"'You are right,' said Bonaparte, 'big numbers always beat small ones.'"

"'Still, General,' said I to Bonaparte 'You have often beaten big armies with small ones.'"

"'Even in that case,' he said, 'the small numbers were always beaten by the big ones.'"

This led him to explain his tactics:

"'When, with inferior forces, I was met by a large army,' he said, 'having quickly grouped my own, I fell like lightning on one of the wings, which I routed. I then availed myself of the disorder this maneuver never failed to

produce within the enemy army, so as to attack it in another part, and again with *all* my forces. I thus beat the enemy piecemeal; and the ensuing victory was invariably, as you see, a triumph of the larger number over the smaller.'"

The Principle of Mass is stated as follows in Paragraph 379 of Field Service Regulations: "Concentration of superior forces, both on the ground and in the air, at the decisive place and time, creates the conditions most essential to decisive victory and constitutes the best evidence of superior leadership."

Napoleon's definition of this Principle, which may be found in his *Maxims*, is: "It is necessary and sufficient in order to secure victory to be the stronger on one given point at one given moment." Except for the fact that Napoleon probably never dreamed of aerial forces as an auxiliary to troops on the ground, his statement, made before 1800, and that of the War Department in 1923, are the same.

A study of the Civil War shows that all the successful leaders observed the Principle of Mass. Stonewall Jackson's definition was: "Never fight against heavy odds if, by any possible maneuvering, you can hurl your whole force on only a part, and that the weakest part, of your enemy, and crush it," and Upton in his *Military Policy* said: "The fighting of battles in detail has been, of all others, the most frequent cause of defeat."

Mass, then, means concentration at the decisive point. Concentration necessitates Movement, the act of attacking involves the Offensive, and an attack to be thoroughly successful will come as a Surprise and will involve teamwork or Co-operation. It will be delivered at the weakest part of the hostile line as an Objective. Thus we see, as has been previously pointed out, that the observance and practice of any one Principle of War will involve the observance and practice of others. Studying, reading and re-reading all sorts of actions and campaigns will help us to appreciate the importance of the Principles of War and the close relationship existing between them.

Historical Examples

At the battle of Buena Vista, February 23, 1847, General Taylor had, in round numbers, about 5,000 men, while Santa Anna had about 14,000. The Americans, in addition to being outnumbered, occupied a position much too extensive for their strength, yet they were successful on this day because the Mexicans did not observe the Principle of Mass. Concerning this battle, Steele in his *American Campaigns* states: "After the American line was driven back and turned, it seems almost certain that, if the entire Mexican force had closed in together on the defenders, it could not have failed to defeat and capture them. But by Santa Anna's bringing into the battle, first one column and then another against different points of the position, Taylor was enabled to shift regiments and batteries so as to always check the attacks." The Americans observed and practiced the Principles of the Offensive and Movement while the Mexicans were not thoroughly imbued with the spirit of

the Offensive and disregarded the Principle of Mass.

The Antietam Campaign, September 4-19, 1862, contains many examples of the application and non-application of the Principle of Mass. Hooker's Corps opened the battle on the morning of September 17th, made a gap in the Confederate line, fought there for an hour, and then fell back. Mansfield's Corps next entered the conflict. It fought desperately for over two hours, widened the gap made by Hooker and wore itself out. General Sumner with the Second Corps had been waiting since the battle opened for orders. About seven-thirty in the morning he received them, and at nine o'clock he arrived on the battle-field, found Hooker's Corps defeated, and Mansfield's practically exhausted, so he plunged into the battle. Within a few minutes he lost 2200 men, and the Confederates had repulsed another attack. And so it went. The Federals should have won a decisive victory. But they did not and the reason is apparent. Steele in his *American Campaigns* says, "—there were five separate and distinct attacks by detachments, instead of one single attack by the whole army with a general reserve held back to throw in at the critical moment." Concerning McClellan's tactics Henderson states, "—he had still to grasp the elementary rule that the combination of superior numbers and of all arms against a single point is necessary to win battles."

Concentration does not necessarily mean a close order formation. There is a great deal of difference between making an attack properly with all one's forces against a definite objective, and in making the attack improperly. The military vocabulary has two meanings of the word *mass*, the first of which we have discussed. The second refers to formation and is applied to close order. It is essential that these two meanings should not be confused in the mind of the military student. With the amount of fire power available to all armed forces today, the attack in a massed formation is necessarily a thing of the past, with the possible exceptions of a cavalry attack with pistol or saber against an enemy caught in disorder, or for the purpose of breaking through a mounted line in extended order.

August 12, 1914 at Haelen, Belgium, German cavalry demonstrated clearly that mounted actions, in close order formations, against an enemy in position and in possession of ample fire power are suicidal. Ten times in succession the German lancers charged, and their losses were so severe and the shock to their tacticians so great, that it has been said, the result of this one action affected their employment of cavalry throughout the war. Never again did their cavalry move with such spirit and dash. On the other hand, at Beersheba, El Mughar and throughout the Palestine Campaign, British cavalry successfully charged strong hostile positions because it employed correct methods. The British cavalry observed the Principle of Mass without adopting the formation.

In the first article of this series the writer referred to an incident related by Colonel Hawkins, in which a Corporal Morris of the 4th Cavalry, while in charge of a detachment of fifteen men, was suddenly and unexpectedly con-

fronted by two or three hundred Filipinos at a stream crossing. The corporal charged across the stream and through a cut in the farther bank, killing seven of the enemy without suffering any casualties in his own command. This action illustrates several Principles; Offensive, Movement, Surprise and Mass. The command charged instantly in column of twos, the formation in which it had been marching. Had it taken time to deploy, it might have been less successful, even had the terrain permitted, which it did not. Here was a case in which the formation of *mass*, or close order, and *concentration* coincided.

Lieutenant de Gerard of the 11th Dragoons, French Army, was given the mission of maintaining liaison with an adjacent unit on the 7th of August 1914. He had a small detachment from his squadron with him. In the vicinity of Hirzbach his advance guard saw two or three German cyclists. The lieutenant with five men dashed in pursuit of the Germans and suddenly found himself confronted by an entire escadron of the 5th German Chasseurs. He promptly charged the Germans, passed completely through and around them, and escaped in some nearby woods. Whatever our opinion of the rashness of Lieutenant Gerard in allowing himself to be surprised by so large a force, we must admire his quick decision and bold execution. The lieutenant and two of his men were wounded, but all rejoined their regiment.

On the 9th of August, 1914, Lieutenant Verny and eighteen men of the 20th French Dragoons were operating as a patrol in the vicinity of Leintrey. The point observed a force of German cavalry, of about the same size, a short distance ahead of it, retiring towards the east. Lieutenant Verny rallied his men and charged the Germans. Two of the enemy were killed and seven prisoners were taken. One French cavalryman was wounded.

Non-observance of Principle

The Principle of Mass, that is, concentration at the decisive point, applies with equal force to a platoon or an army. It means simply going at one's objective with all one has. Non-observance of this Principle may manifest itself by a half-hearted effort, by holding out a large reserve which is not employed, or by dispersion. "Avoid sending men into action in dribblets," was a phrase found in our pre-war Field Service Regulations.

Let us assume the case of a platoon operating alone in hostile territory. As it marches along the road it has an advance guard of four men preceding it at about 300 yards. The point bounds ahead from one road bend to the next, and as it arrives at the second bend it is 600 yards ahead of the platoon. The terrain between advance guard and main body is visible to both. The point as it looks around the bend, sees a hostile platoon about 1000 yards away, preceded by a point which is about 400 yards away. Our friendly point has not been observed. Under these circumstances it will probably do one of three things; it will dismount and open fire, it will charge, or it will remain concealed and await the arrival of the main body. The fire of four rifles will not deceive the enemy long. It will warn and prepare him for what is to

come and will probably minimize the platoon leader's chance of success. If the four men charge, with their main body 600 yards to the rear, it will result in the platoon's striking two blows where one would have been sufficient. If the point remains in concealment, signals to the platoon, "Enemy in sight in small numbers," and awaits the arrival of the remainder of the platoon, a single concerted effort may be made with a better chance of success.

A similar situation might arise when the advance guard peers over a hill top, from the edge of a defile, or woods. Of course, it will often happen that the advance guard of a small mounted unit will encounter the enemy at such close quarters, that it has no other alternative but to charge or run. Provided, however, that the time and space factors will permit, it is preferable in combat situations for advance guard and main body of small forces to act as one.

Consider again the platoon operating alone in hostile territory, and assume that it is approaching a town of 15,000 or 20,000 inhabitants, which it has been ordered to reconnoiter. The platoon leader has read his Training Regulations and knows how to reconnoiter a small group of houses, but has had no experience with a large town. He adopts a method similar to the one he has learned, and disperses his force over several streets. One or more of his detachments may be captured or shot up, and the platoon driven out of town and dispersed, before it finds out anything of importance. It is believed that a better method would be for the platoon leader to reconnoiter the town from a point of vantage some distance away with his field glasses. He would pick out an objective in the town, such as a central square, the court house, etc., and a route thereto, and go there with his entire platoon as quickly as possible at the *Raise Pistol*. On arrival at this objective, a more detailed reconnaissance of the town might be conducted. If, on the way to his objective, the enemy is encountered, the platoon leader has his entire force and can act more quickly and to better advantage, either in attacking or escaping, than if it were widely scattered.

Insofar as the conduct of small cavalry units is concerned, Security, Mass and Economy of Force are three very closely related Principles of War. If the leader of a cavalry platoon operating alone in hostile territory secures himself with a large advance guard, sends out frequent patrols during the day's march, and at night establishes numerous sentinel posts to protect his camp, he has observed the Principle of Security, but has violated the Principle of Economy of Force. When a platoon that has been led in this manner encounters a situation requiring its utmost effort, such as a mounted combat, it will be only one-half, or less, efficient due to the condition of its men and animals. Thus we observe another factor entering our discussion of this Principle, i. e., that of efficiency. "Concentration at the decisive point," means concentration of everything we have; men, horses, guns and material of all sorts. By the mere act of concentrating our physical forces, we will also

concentrate our moral forces, and be able to put forth the maximum effort.

When Napoleon said, "An army must be constantly ready to oppose all the resistance it is capable of," he might well have added, "and so must a platoon, a troop, or a regiment." Dispersion of effort and of physical forces has probably lost more battles, both great and small, than any other single factor. The dispersion may occur on the field of battle, or it may have been a dispersion of effort some time prior to the combat, which has resulted in decreased efficiency of the unit concerned.

Concentration, or numerical superiority, without action is useless. Santa Anna's men greatly outnumbered Taylor's, but a large part of them remained idle, and the Mexicans failed to win a victory. Von der Goltz said, "All reserves are dead forces. Reserves are only useful under the condition that they should come into action. One may even imagine a case where one might conveniently abstain from setting up a reserve; such would be the case if one exactly knew the strength of the enemy, and if the latter had already completely deployed." That statement applies to large and small forces alike. A squad held out as a platoon support is useless, unless it takes part in the final melee. The objective of all units, once the decision has been made to attack, is the destruction of the enemy's armed forces by battle. To insure the destruction of the enemy, all our available strength should be utilized.

Teaching the Principle

We may now ask ourselves how our leaders of small cavalry units are to be taught this principle of concentration. There are two factors to be considered. The first is merely the common sense proposition of going at a task with all we have. The second is that of conserving our strength in such matters as local reconnaissance and security in order that we may be able properly to carry out the first.

Let us, then, impress upon the leaders of small units the principle of Napoleon, which we have altered slightly to fit the present discussion; "Any unit must be constantly ready to oppose all the resistance it is capable of." That is merely the statement of a universal truth which has been observed since the beginning of time by man and beast, whether singly or in groups, when in a strange or hostile environment. In order that the small cavalry unit may be constantly ready to oppose all the resistance it is capable of, it must conserve its strength, both numerical and physical. It can do this by practicing economy in the employment of local patrols for its own protection (In the case of a unit the size of a squad or platoon, if a dangerous locality some distance from the line of march must be reconnoitered it is preferable to do it with the entire command); by employing the minimum of security groups, each of a size consistent with the performance of its mission, and by carefully following the correct procedure for the conduct of its marches. All of which is merely a matter of training along common sense lines. Too frequently the leader of a small unit, officer or "non-com" as the case may be, is taught

arbitrarily, that in a certain situation, a patrol of two men is employed, and that in another, four men should be sent. It would be better if the leader were taught first, the axiom of Napoleon and shown how its strength may be frittered away by too much patrolling and too many outpost sentinels. When he has a clear understanding of the necessity for conserving his strength, the matter of local security and reconnaissance might be taught.

At this point in the discussion, the reader may say to himself, "Why, he isn't talking about Mass now. He is talking about the Principle of Economy of Force." The Principle of Economy of Force will be discussed in its proper place, but it is true that the writer is referring to it here, which merely serves to prove the point that the observance of any one Principle of War will involve the observance and practice of others. In order that the Principle of Mass may be observed, in small units perhaps more particularly than in large, it is necessary that the unit be concentrated, i. e., readily maneuverable as an entire unit by its leader, and also that it be in condition to put forth its maximum effort.

Observance of the Principle of Mass in combat is also a common sense proposition, which has to do with finishing the other fellow up as completely and as quickly as possible, in order that we may be ready for the next one. It may be taught by frequent hastily improvised combat situations on the drill field, and by sand table or drill field talks. Due to its size, the only hope of success a small unit has when it suddenly encounters the enemy at close range, lies in concerted action. Remember the case of Corporal Morris, and that of Lieutenant Gerard. Shock is one of the characteristics of cavalry, and it is obvious that the shock of fifteen or twenty horses and riders striking a line or group at full speed and simultaneously, is greater than that of only four or five.

The important thing to consider in all our training, is to remember that, "A horse can be led to water but he can't be made to drink." An officer or non-commissioned officer can be taught the proper commands and formations for a few situations, but he will never learn how to act intelligently in all situations, unless he understands the reasons behind those commands and formations. Training and war are not deep, dark, mysterious secrets, but all too often our training is conducted as if that were the case, particularly the training of non-commissioned officers and junior lieutenants. Ten minutes per day on the drill field spent in an explanation *why*, will be more effective than ten hours employed in pushing the horse up to the trough.

General William Woods Averell (1832-1900)

By

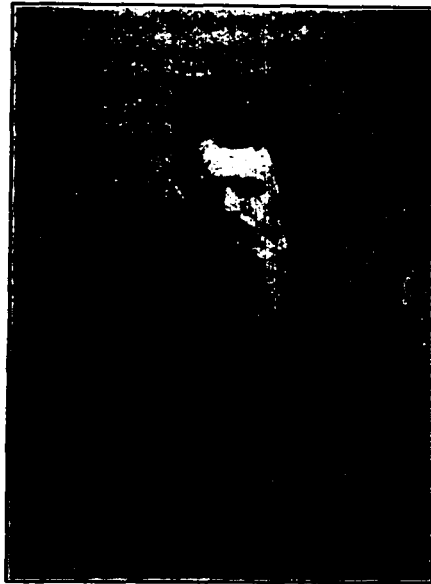
Brigadier General C. D. RHODES, U. S. A.

Of course, any student of the cavalry operations of the Army of the Potomac, has heard of Major General William Woods Averell, but by and large, his achievements during the great Civil War, seem to have been overshadowed, so far as the remembrance of posterity is concerned, by the deeds of Sheridan, Stuart, Merritt, Wilson, and others. Maybe it is because Averell dropped out of sight after the War; went into civil pursuits; while many of our other cavalry leaders continued with the regular army and retained their places in the public eye. Ask most of the cavalry lieutenants of today who Averell was, and they would probably shake their heads.

Recently, it has happened that I have engaged in considerable research regarding Averell's military services to his country; and have been struck anew,—just as I was many years ago, in preparing the Association's prize essay,—*History of the Cavalry of the Army of the Potomac*,—with this cavalry leader's marked ability and qualities of leadership. More than this, he started his cavalry career in just such a way as many lieutenants are now starting their's,—ambitious, but seemingly lacking opportunities for expression; probably growling occasionally at the slowness of promotion, at isolated stations, at the high cost of living. But all the time he was preparing for his opportunity, which he believed would come. And this in spite of wounds which would have caused a less intrepid and less plucky officer, to seek the line of least resistance, and hunt some sinecure job with "well earned rest." He was in the Army because he loved it, and he stayed with his cavalry troopers and his mounts, because the cavalry atmosphere was as the very breath in his nostrils. There are many such in our cavalry today,—facing discouragements but carrying on in a spirit of courageous endeavor. All power to them!

Averell was born in 1832, so that when the Civil War began, he was a few months less than twenty-nine years of age. He had graduated from West Point in 1851, and in his ten years of duty with the Mounted Rifles, he had sought every opportunity for field service against Indians. After a tour at the Cavalry School for Practice at Carlisle, Pa., in 1857, (the Fort Riley of those days), he jumped into the Navajo Expedition of 1858, and was in fights with the Kiowas and the Kyatanos. In an Indian night attack, Averell was severely wounded. He was then only twenty-six years old. All this rough western service,—long marches, conserving the morale of his troopers and the endurance of his mounts; the habit of using initiative and resourcefulness;

the quality of thinking quickly and accurately in a pinch which involved lives; all these things prepared Averell for his subsequent brilliant career in the war between the States. They are equally important now. It is recorded of Averell that after his wound of 1858, he was so reluctant to give up his little command, that he stuck out an additional Indian hike in 1859, before being persuaded to take a sick leave and give his shattered leg a chance to knit. Incidentally, this wound consisted of an oblique fracture of the upper third of the left femur or thigh bone, *resulting in a permanent shortening of the left leg by one and a half inches.* Every cavalryman will appreciate what



General William Woods Averell

this meant to a riding man. When we read of the exhausting raids in which Averell afterwards participated, the cavalryman of today wonders at his fortitude and powers of endurance.

After a short staff tour during the First Bull Run,—when experienced staff officers were sought everywhere in vain, Averell went back to his first love, and became Colonel of the Third Pennsylvania Cavalry. This led to his falling in command of a cavalry brigade in front of the defenses of Washington, and he was honored in 1862 with leadership of the advance troops occupying Manassas, with McClellan's newly organized Army of the Potomac. Thereafter he participated in the severe Peninsular Campaign, and was rewarded with a cavalry brigadier-generalcy when he was still less than thirty

years of age. In the regular army, he was Captain, Third Cavalry.

Following engagements with the Confederate troops at Upperville, Markham, Corbin's and Gaines' Cross Roads, and at Amissville, in Virginia, Averell and his cavalry took part in the sanguinary battle of Fredericksburg. Following this, Averell began a series of small raids into Confederate territory, and the cavalryman of today can best appreciate what his cavalry did, by a laconic extract from one of Averell's official despatches: "*December 21, 1862.—My column has marched, climbed, slid, and swum, three hundred and forty miles since December 8!*"

In enemy's territory, in the middle of a Virginia winter, Averell averaged twenty-six miles a day for thirteen days, and still kept his men and horses fit for the greater cavalry operations which were to follow.

Early in 1863, General Averell took over command of the important Second Cavalry Division, and the division's operations culminated under his leadership, in the great cavalry combat at Kelly's Ford, March 17, 1863. Military students generally agree that this battle really *made* the Union cavalry, and that it was brilliant in conception and in execution. At the time, General Butterfield characterized the engagement as "*the best cavalry fight of the war.*" It changed the hitherto sarcastic assertion of "*whoever saw a dead cavalryman!*" to a feeling of respect and of confidence in the Federal mounted troops.

It is characteristic of the discouragements of military command, that just as Averell was feeling good over the results of his splendid work at Kelly's Ford, his immediate commander General Hooker, accused him of inaction in not following up the advantage. This, with dead and wounded horses, many human casualties, and considerable disorganization. The cavalry of the Army of the Potomac was just finding itself.

Hooker's criticism at the time must have been due to inexact information as to the great moral victory which Averell had gained. For the astute Secretary of War, Stanton, sent Hooker this despatch: "*I congratulate you upon the success of Averell's expedition. You have drawn first blood. . . . It is good for the first lick. . . . Give my compliments and thanks to Averell and his command!*"

For those officers who sometimes view with some asperity, the rewards meted out to successful commanders during the World War, it is interesting to note that for "*gallant and meritorious services*" at Kelly's Ford, a battle which Averell planned and led, and which is conceded to have put new life and courage into our cavalry, General Averell was rewarded with the distinction of "*Brevet Major, Regular Army!*"

Following Kelly's Ford, Averell and his cavalry took part in the famous "Stoneman Raid" towards Richmond, when Averell was transferred to the Fourth Separate Brigade in West Virginia, and in the latter half of the year 1863, fought cavalry combats at Beverly, Hedgeville, Moorfield, Rocky Gap,

and at Droop Mountain. For these fights, Averell was brevetted a lieutenant-colonel.

After a short rest, Averell's cavalry took part in the important "Salem Raid," which cut the Tennessee Railroad and considerably embarrassed General Longstreet, in destroying quantities of his rations, clothing, and equipment. Every effort was made by the Confederate army to intercept Averell, but he successfully slipped through their fingers, and rejoined the Union lines with 200 Confederate prisoners and 150 horses. For this brilliant achievement, Averell received the brevet of colonel.

A short sick leave for General Averell followed, when he resumed command of the Second Cavalry Division, and under the leadership of General Sheridan, participated in the series of cavalry actions which materially hastened the collapse of the Confederacy,—Winchester, Opequon, Fisher's Hill, and Mount Jackson. The importance of these actions is familiar to all military students.

General Averell resigned from the Army, May 18, 1865, with the rank of Brevet Major General, U. S. A. He was actually still a captain of cavalry. He went into civil engineering, invented certain valuable patents, and after twenty years of litigation, the Supreme Court awarded him damages against the Barbour Asphalt Company for certain infringements, amounting to \$700,000. Meanwhile, General Averell had, for ten years, been Assistant Inspector General of the Soldier's Home, at Bath, New York,—which position he resigned, when he became financially independent. He was writing his reminiscences when death overtook him, February 3, 1900.

What has impressed the writer, in the incidents of General Averell's stirring life, has been not only his splendid qualities of cavalry leadership, for which he painstakingly prepared himself during peace, by study and by frequent periods of hard field service with a troop, but by his indefatigable energy and pluck in the face of physical disabilities which might have disheartened a less determined officer.

At the beginning of Averell's Civil War career, he was suffering from the badly fractured leg, the result of the Indian fight, two years before, and which, as has been said, caused a permanent shortening of the leg. With this disability, Averell led his troops on innumerable raids, which demanded the greatest physical endurance. The Salem Raid, lasting for twenty-three days and nights, in December 1863, was not only most fatiguing, but was during the coldest winter weather which Virginia had known for years. Due to the failure of expected co-operation, Averell had to literally cut his way back to the Union lines over a mountainous and roadless country, the streams swollen into well-nigh impassable rivers, with much rain and even hail. Across these streams, Averell swam his cavalry, artillery, and ambulance trains, and a participant states that for days at a time, clothes would be frozen "*stiff as ice itself.*" In fact, for three days, the command was practically without food or fire.

As a result of this, General Averell came down with intermittent fever and had severe hemorrhages of the bowels. To make matters worse, he suffered a broken rib while visiting his night pickets, and also suffered painful neuralgic attacks from a lacerated gunshot wound of the scalp, received at Wytheville, West Virginia. Nevertheless, we find Averell fighting on to the end of the War, gallantly leading his cavalry division, when many officers would have sought rest in a hospital. His example is one which young cavalry officers might well emulate, and might advantageously bear in mind when they feel discouraged, sore at the chances of fate, perhaps sometimes embittered at the turn of luck which seems to have sought them out and followed them. For with Averell, four years of a most distinguished cavalry record in which he commanded divisions, found him not only broken in health, but merely a comparatively insignificant *captain of cavalry*.

In the year 1888, the Military Committee of the House of Representatives, in favorably reporting a bill to restore General Averell to the rank of captain on the army retired list, had this to say of his resignation from the service:

This resignation occurred on the 18th of May, 1865, and not until he had passed through all the perils, exposures, and hardships of the entire war, had seen the complete restoration of peace, had written in his country's history one of its most brilliant chapters, and had learned by his failing health, that he could no longer endure the exposures of the camp, even in time of peace.

We cannot be mistaken in saying that in the innumerable examples of patriotic service furnished by the late war, no one combines in it more of constant and protracted exposure, danger, and exhausting toil; greater demand for vigilance, sagacity, energy, and self-reliant command; more masterly ability both in plan and execution, or more uniform success in campaign or battle, than is shown in the services of General Averell.

Training

By

Major F. W. BOYE, Cavalry

THE ACCOMPLISHMENT of a task involves an analysis and a study of the requirements, a careful weighing of the factors which affect that task, and a decision as to the best method of accomplishing it. What could be more worthy of the consideration of an officer than a comprehensive study of that which occupies the greatest part of his service—training? Battles are not won in the map problem room. Military knowledge and experience must be *applied*, and the training of our organizations, in both peace and war, must be such that correct tactical decision is measured in terms of tactical success. A victorious unit in campaign is one which possesses the knowledge and capabilities of *how* to do, the leaders to tell *what* to do, and the *will* to do. By Training Management is meant the entire process of planning promulgating instructions for, and accomplishing the training of, a command.

Planning

Planning is important. The results obtained in the performance of any task are directly proportional to the time and effort spent on planning. A unit is given a training mission, which may vary from a general directive to a specific training objective which it is to accomplish in the allotted time. The problem of how best to accomplish the training task includes a consideration of the time, the place, the results to be obtained, the personnel with which to work, the many natural and human obstacles which might impede progress, and things of similar character. A regimental commander has, as assistants, officers of varying temperaments, and of varying degrees of intelligence and training. His responsibility, with regard to them, extends far beyond the immediate future, since the education and development of his officers is one of the primary objects of training. The training of any unit must be along basically sound lines, follow correct principles, and be such that its proficiency is assured even though the personnel of command changes. There are two primary points which should be stressed in any study of training; the first, units of the regular army should be ready to take the field at *all* times, and the second, the development of initiative and qualities of leadership in subordinates is a matter of paramount importance.

What effect should the first of the above points have on our consideration of training? It should mean that, at the beginning of the training year, the organization commander should estimate the efficiency of his unit in all of the subjects in which it should be trained, that he should so plan to apply his training hours as to bring his organization up to the standard and that thereafter, by short repetition of training in all subjects, he should *maintain it at that standard* throughout the year. This requires that the training of units of all sizes be conducted concurrently. The regiment assembles a certain

number of times each month for drills, for ceremonies, or for combined exercises illustrating certain phases of combat in which the regiment is assumed to be either acting alone or as part of a larger force. Similarly, squadrons assemble for combined squadron training. So, also, does the troop commander logically combine the training of squads, platoons, and the troop. In this way, all units are able to maintain the standard of proficiency.

The second point has, likewise, an important effect on training, in that plans and methods should be drawn to foster the development of correct qualities in subordinates. This requires careful planning, decentralization of operation, and careful supervision in order to insure that the kind of training prescribed by them and by their subordinates will develop initiative and resourcefulness in all leaders.

The regimental commander is the training director of his unit. He must plan to apply the definite directives of higher units, comply with their policies, enunciate further policies, to accomplish the objectives so as to mould his regiment into an efficient team, develop his leaders, and maintain a high morale. Obviously this requires experience, knowledge, balance, co-ordination, and excellent supervision. How this is accomplished will be shown under the discussion of the "Conduct of Training."

Promulgating Training Instructions

At the present, there is neither a uniform designation of training terms nor a uniform system of promulgating training instructions. In order to provide a common understanding of training terms and a uniform method of expression in orders relating to training, the Cavalry School advocates and teaches a form discussed in the January issue of the 1927 Mailing List. It is a four paragraph order, the general character of the subject matter included in each paragraph of which, is as follows:

Paragraph 1 contains a statement of the training objectives of the unit and such policies of higher command as apply, together with such additional policies as are necessary to outline the general plan to be followed in the attainment of the training mission.

Paragraph 2 contains such details and directions as are necessary for the handling of, or the co-ordination of, the training agencies.

Paragraph 3 contains all of the administrative instructions necessary to the conduct of training. It includes a subparagraph containing a list of such time as is reserved by higher authority for inspection or training.

Paragraph 4 contains a tabulation of the periods of the combined training of the unit as a whole, or in part, and the general character of the exercise or instruction to be given during each period.

Supervision of Training

Supervision is based on a system of certain standards of proficiency, which serve alike as a guide to the one who conducts the training, and to the one who supervises its conduct. Standards are usually established by higher

authority. Where standards have not been established by such authority, each commander establishes them and announces them in his training order.

Examination of the training orders and schedules of subordinate units furnish the primary means of the supervision exercised by a commander. In his own training order, the commander has stated certain policies and certain directions which affect the conduct of training. By a study of the training plans of his subordinate units, as expressed in their training orders and schedules, he is able to judge whether those units are directing their activities in a correct manner and in accordance with his policies. He is, likewise, able to estimate the training value which will be derived from the instruction planned if the proper methods of instruction are followed.

Daily inspections include an examination of the character of training for the day, the observation of the methods employed by instructors, and the method of execution of the training exercises. Interference with subordinates during exercises is avoided.

In addition to their training value, the periods set aside for the combined training of the unit furnish the commander thereof with an important means of supervision. By this means, a system of co-ordination of training is assured.

Conduct of Training

The regimental commander estimates, for example, that the efficiency of the regiment as a unit can be maintained by having it assembled for combined training three times per month. He, therefore, prescribes, in his training order, a reservation of three days per month for regimental training. In order to inaugurate the initial co-ordination of training in his regiment, he designates the dates and assigns to each the subject of the training to be covered. His paragraph 4 starts as follows:

4. Training Conducted by the Regimental Commander

Date	Nature	Subject
Nov. 15-16	Field Exercise and Maneuver.	Involving a cavalry march in two columns; communications; halt for the night in two camps; outposts; a meeting engagement to include development and orders.
Nov. 23	Regimental	Review and Inspection, Equipment "A."
Dec. 7	Field Exercise	Advance guard problem, the regiment acting as a separate force; seizing and holding a position.
Dec. 15	Field Exercise	Rear guard problem, the regiment acting as part of a larger force; forms of delaying action.
Dec. 20	Regimental	Parade and training inspection of troop training.

The squadron commander supervises the training within his squadron

and, in addition, plans for the combined training of the squadron. In this, he is influenced by the above program of the regimental commander. His analysis, from the viewpoint of having the squadron act with skill in the above exercises, leads him to schedule the following, which appears in the paragraph 4 of the squadron training order:

4. Training Conducted by the Squadron Commander

Date	Nature	Subject
Nov. 8	Field Exercise	Involving the mechanics of advance guard action, the squadron acting alone; a meeting engagement.
Nov. 12	Field Exercise	Involving a short march including the mechanics of a halt, the establishment of a camp and the forming of an outpost.
Nov. 20	Squadron Parade and Inspection.	
Dec. 3	Field Exercise	Involving the squadron acting as the advance guard of a larger force, dismounted action.
Dec. 9	Field Exercise	Involving mounted combat, the squadron acting as the maneuvering element in attack.

The troop commander, in the preparation of his training order, bases his plan of training on, first, the policies and directives of higher commanders; second, the list of subjects in which his troop must be trained in order to act efficiently either as a separate unit or as a part of a larger unit; third, the present efficiency of his troop in those subjects; fourth, the number of training hours available and the estimated number of hours required to attain and thereafter maintain the standard in each subject; fifth, the requirements of the training scheduled by higher units.

By a purely mathematical calculation, he is able to determine the number of hours available. Assuming, for example, that there are 552 hours remaining for troop training during the training period, the troop commander determines the number of hours he desires to devote to inspections and the number of hours he allots to the care of animals and equipment.

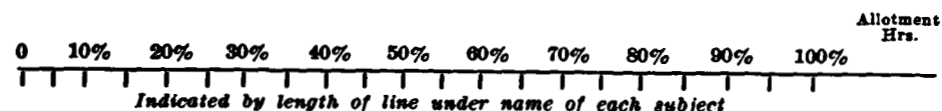
Total hours available	552
Inspection and tests	128
Stables and equipment	70 198

Remaining for training subjects 354 hours

These remaining hours he apportions, tentatively, to subjects in which his troop must be proficient. This list of subjects can only be obtained from a study and an analysis of the functions of a troop in garrison and in the field. The chart on the following page assumes the efficiency of an

organization at the beginning of the training year in a list of subjects in which a troop should be proficient. It shows, in addition, a proposed allotment of time to each subject, such as the troop commander might make in planning his training for the year.

ESTIMATED PERCENTAGE OF EFFICIENCY



A. ELEMENTS OF TRAINING (ROUTINE)

(1) Mounted Instruction

- | | |
|--|---------|
| (a) Close and extended order drill | 28 hrs. |
| This includes deployments, assemblies, rallying, charging, dismounting to fight on foot, handling lead horses. | |
| (b) Marching | 10 hrs. |
| This includes gaits, adjusting equipment, march discipline, conservation of animals, watering, etc. | |
| (c) Riding | 30 hrs. |
| This includes equitation, jumping, riding cross country, making extended marches, using weapons mounted. | |

(2) Dismounted Instruction

- | | |
|--|---------|
| (a) Close order drill and callisthenics | 20 hrs. |
| (b) Musketry | 28 hrs. |
| Including deployments, combat firings, the development of accurate sustained fire. | |
| (c) Organization of the ground | 10 hrs. |

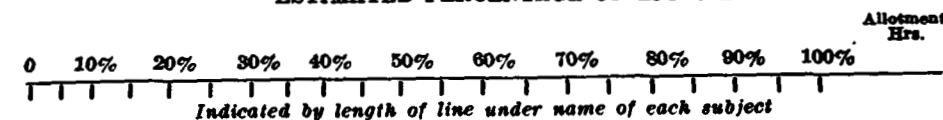
(3) Weapons

- | | |
|--|---------|
| Skill in handling | 10 hrs. |
| Rifle, saber, pistol. (not to include qualification) | |

(4) Elements of Field Service

- | | |
|---|---------|
| Individual Instruction | 20 hrs. |
| Including packing equipment, pitching tents, laying and using field picket line, cooking, 1st aid—men and animals, ordinary field orientation, protection against aircraft, field expedients. | |

ESTIMATED PERCENTAGE OF EFFICIENCY



B. CAMPAIGN FUNCTIONS (FIELD TRAINING)

(1) Combat duties

- | | |
|--|---------|
| (a) Combat mounted | 14 hrs. |
| (b) Combat dismounted | 15 hrs. |
| Includes attack, defense, (deployed, organized and in combination) | |
| (c) Combined mounted and dismounted action | 18 hrs. |

(2) Service of Security

- | | |
|---------------------------|---------|
| (a) Advance guards | 18 hrs. |
| (b) Rear guards | 20 hrs. |
| Forms of delaying action. | |
| (c) Flank guards | 5 hrs. |
| Escort to a convoy. | |
| (d) Outposts | 10 hrs. |
| (e) March outposts | 2 hrs. |

(3) Cavalry Missions

- | | |
|-----------------------------------|---------|
| (a) Reconnaissance | 20 hrs. |
| (b) Counter-reconnaissance | 10 hrs. |
| (c) Seizing and holding positions | 5 hrs. |
| (d) Pursuit and exploitation | 20 hrs. |
| (e) Delaying action | |
| (f) Detached operations | |
| (g) Night operations | |

Total training hours 354 hrs.

The troop commander should not be required to handle recruits until they have learned all of the individual duties of a cavalry soldier, learned to ride with confidence, learned to handle weapons with safety, and are, in a

general way, ready to take their place in platoons. Thereafter, recruits function as part of the troop. The troop commander is guided in the sequence of his training by the requirements of the combined training scheduled for higher units. He is responsible not only that his troop acts correctly and effectively in the squadron and regimental exercises scheduled, but also that the troop maintains a continued general efficiency. Knowing this efficiency in each subject, he alone is the one who can determine the amount of time he must take for direct preparation for those exercises. The main objective, namely, the continued field efficiency of his troop and all of its elements, remains unchanged. During the course of the training year, he is guided by his budget of training hours as expressed in the paragraph 4 of his troop training order. This should not be regarded as inflexible but merely a work sheet which is almost certain of change, since the course of training prescribed will undoubtedly indicate that certain of the original allotments of time are insufficient and that others are excessive.

The troop commander must analyze the training requirements, and determine how each subject can best be handled. This requires consideration and study. There are some subjects in which a troop must always be proficient. In these subjects the instruction should be continuous throughout the year. These include combat and field duty, the use of arms, guard duty, the ability to ride, and to make marches of extended duration. Instruction in the above may be called combat instruction. There are other subjects which are not an end in themselves but only the means to an end. These include the manual of arms, also close and extended order drill. Instruction in these subjects may be called routine instruction. After routine instruction has been thoroughly learned by all troopers, such instruction should seldom be scheduled as the chief purpose of any drill period. The chief purpose should ordinarily be the solution of a field exercise based on assumed conditions which illustrate one or more phases of the employment of cavalry in campaign. The requirements of the exercise should be analyzed in a manner similar to that by which fast action is analyzed by a slow motion picture camera. The units involved, squads, platoons, and troops, should be trained in the routine instruction necessary to enable them to perform those movements, individually or in combination, required for the successful solution of the exercise presented. The chief purpose of the drill is to accustom officers and men to doing those things which they will be called upon to do in time of war and to develop the initiative and resourcefulness of leaders in combat. In this way, leaders gain facility in making rapid estimates of situations, they strengthen their power of decision, and they are soon able to issue clear and comprehensive orders. Both officers and men become accustomed to the various situations they will meet in actual campaign. They give sufficient routine instruction during the course of the exercise to enable individuals and units to perform properly the required duties. Thus instruction is immediately linked with the application of that instruction.

Faith in and a Doctrine for the Cavalry Service

By

"One of the Faithful"

AS CAVALRYMEN, we must have faith in the cavalry service, and we must have a doctrine which will allow other branches to see how well we keep the faith. To the cavalry itself, that faith must be sacred. The doctrine must be sound, the faith a natural by-product. If we have faith founded on sound principle, we will have satisfactory esprit de corps. With enthusiasm in addition, we will then have morale as a natural result. And "morale is necessary to win battles, or for that matter, to survive the perils of peace time service."

While having faith in ourselves, we must understand the characteristics of other branches. We must make ourselves as cavalry, indispensable to the team of which all branches form a necessary part, each in its proper sphere. We must make opportunity and we must embrace opportunity. We must not be prone to consider a task impossible of execution, simply because someone has said it cannot be done. We must expect to be expended to the last horse and man in the last extremity. Modern automatic weapons, air-planes, etc., may be used to the advantage of all branches, and they can be used to particular cavalry advantage. Such improvements and inventions are to be welcomed. They make cavalry no less indispensable. Rather, they relieve cavalry of certain work, so that men and horses are not expended unnecessarily, and thus save them for their important duty after reaching the battle field itself.

Cavalry can attack cavalry in any formation, mounted or on foot. It can attack infantry. A cavalryman can fight as well as any other fighting man, and he has the horse in addition as a close ally and to add to his mobility. Mobility has been stressed by cavalrymen at every turn. Critics have stated that infantry in trucks is as mobile. But even if this be granted, (and it is not granted) mobility on the battle field is more to be stressed and more to be desired by everyone, than is the means of getting to the scene of action.

The faith of the cavalry officer must be based on the possibilities of the arm. He sets the example for the command, and his ability as a cavalryman will stimulate the discovery of more cavalry possibilities all the time. An officer wearing crossed sabers is not in consequence thereof, necessarily a cavalryman. Many of our officers can recognize any make of automobile, and can diagnose what is wrong with its mechanism upon its slightest sign of distress. But some of them cannot tell the characteristics of the thoroughbred, or whether a horse is lame behind or in front. Such officers are a misfit. We

want officers to be proficient in a common sense way. The cavalry officer must have a sense of balance and of proportion. He can be an enthusiastic horseman without discussing the subject at all times. He can be one and pay a great deal of attention to other things. And the good officer must realize the necessity of average development among men and horses.

In the development of the Army today, the agency most emphasized is, beyond question, the school system. It would be considered as rank heresy to criticize our schools. (The intention of so doing is hastily disclaimed). But in passing, it may be said that there is much to be learned elsewhere. We are told that the officer should study at home. Some of them do. The idea that an officer is not up to date because he is not a graduate of a particular school, or of a particular period of a school, is prevalent to an extent. It is sometimes erroneous. While our doctrine must be uniform, there is a positive danger of too much standardization in training. We even have examples of military education indigestion. Standardization when given in over-doses or for long periods of time, may crush initiative and retard development. It may cause teachers to be intolerant alike of the old and of the new. It tends to bigotry by instructors and to blind following by students. Officers should digest various opinions. They should be encouraged to draw their own conclusions.

It is not meant that we owe our good instructors nothing. We do. A real instructor presents his ideas in such manner that his faith is so apparent, it is contagious. At the same time, he points out shortcomings so frankly that instead of combating an idea presented by him, the student may feel like defending it. Arbitrary decisions and instructions are used on the defensive, and by instructors who lack confidence in "putting their teachings over." Instructors should be experienced. And decisions with original ideas should be welcomed.

To properly develop, the cavalry must lack the stamp of a particular mind, while retaining faith and a uniform doctrine. The means of carrying out the doctrine must be diversified, and real faith is never shown exactly alike by any two individuals. While faith is easily discerned, it is not so outwardly marked or stressed as to be offensive. And the cavalryman who seeks to show his faith by the cut of his blouse or by the make of his boots, is a type most ridiculous, and many of the type are a positive detriment.

In any discussion, it is ordinarily necessary to make comparisons in order to arrive at intelligent conclusions. In this discussion, we naturally think of our cavalry of today and are comparing it with cavalry of other days. We ask ourselves if our cavalry is as good as it was, say ten years ago, and we fail to answer, because we do not know. We have something new. It looks good. We do recognize some conditions today that were formerly not habitual. We may even wonder as to their necessity. The most persistent innovation is easily recognized to be the supervising system. It is believed that a result should be required, and the proficiency determined by examination or apparent

result. The means and methods to obtain a result may vary. We have been told how troop commanders and squadron commanders, even regimental commanders, must be allowed latitude. We know of the schedules required today, of the schools everywhere, and we see a result. And we still wonder! How some of us would welcome a return to the days of "uster be" when a squadron was in reality a major's command, and a troop a captain's! If necessary to return to the small posts to realize this condition, it can be pointed out as an argument in favor, that our corps and division commanders of the World War had, for the greater part, only that command experience. How we would like the old time privilege of taking a troop or squadron on a week's independent march!

Perhaps when the newness of peace has worn off, and when our new officers have gained in length of service and in experience, there will be less rigid adherence to routine, a larger opportunity for original thought, and more encouragement for the development of individuals and organizations. Else it may be that the professional soldier will some day learn that if some of the habits which are being instilled are confirmed, and regardless of the length of service, the professional soldier so trained will frequently be the military inferior of the man who has been allowed the privilege of planning and executing with some degree of originality, his daily affairs as an average business man. But it is the professional cavalryman who is not misled, to whom we look for leadership. It therefore behooves the cavalryman to retain to an extent, the privilege of drawing his own conclusions with some degree of originality; and to embrace any opportunity offering individual action.

It is taken as a good omen that in recent literature, etc., issued by high headquarters, the words "latitude, result, initiative, etc." are coming into use again. It is hoped that some of our words like "morale, tact, esprit, program, group systems, charts, etc." for so long overworked, will receive the rest to which they have been entitled for some time. We need morale, for example, but don't let us argue about it.

If the officer personnel is inferior and lacking in cavalry spirit, the cavalry will fail in its mission. The strength of cavalry lies in the way its commander uses it. We have record of few good cavalry leaders. This leads one to believe that the personal equation of cavalry leaders counts for much. It leads us to affirm our belief that the cavalryman must develop along individual lines, following general principles as taught by military history. Such belief is not contrary to a uniform doctrine for the cavalry.

The American cavalry is passing through a critical period in its history. But esprit de corps of the cavalry has caused the arm to survive hysterical outbursts in the past as to its lack of value. The cry of today is not a serious one. And, as in the past, the faith of the cavalryman will commend it to other branches and not only assure its survival, but will broaden its area of usefulness. When the Swiss pikemen and the English archers first did wonderful work, and later, when gun powder, followed finally by the rifled gun, was

discovered, there was question as to the future of the cavalry, or for that matter, the military profession. But cavalry has survived and furnished some of the most brilliant exploits of history.

Having shaken the dust of the World War from our military shoes, we are having time to take stock and to calmly inquire into just what happened. We are learning every day that the cavalry did more and more.

Lessons in the World War are just beginning to have an effect. This delay is due to natural causes. Among the causes may be mentioned:

(1) Cavalry officers served with other branches for the greater part of the World War and our participation in that war was in areas restricted to close warfare.

(2) The difficulty of having anyone realize his own deficiency.

There is no denying that some cavalry officers have needed rejuvenation—a sort of gland treatment. If we lack faith in cavalry, we cannot expect other branches to have faith in us. With the many examples of successful cavalry employments by General Allenby in Palestine alone, we now have sufficient serum with which to inoculate against a recurrence of this lack of faith to do things as cavalry, and these examples also afford sufficient foundation on which to build our doctrine.

In defining cavalry employment, a start was made at the very beginning as evidenced in our new Cavalry Drill Regulations. The role of cavalry is defined as "rapid maneuvers of mounted units supported by an intensive and effective fire." Taking this as a text, so to speak, rules have been made to fit its characteristics.

Cavalry may be used today in a larger number of ways than ever before. Efficient execution of their tasks will in the end be credited those organizations having cavalry spirit.

In *Employment of Cavalry*, the following statement is made:

"The strength of cavalry should be conserved for some positive and indispensable service which may at any time become of paramount importance. Its employment should be limited to those missions suited to its special characteristics. Its mere presence and availability is not an excuse for its use on unnecessary missions."

The essential cavalry missions are, however, sufficiently numerous. They are: reconnaissance; screening; covering detachments for infantry on the march or in battle; seizing and holding advanced positions; delaying the enemy; participation in battle with other forces or alone; exploiting a success in the break through, or in pursuit; to defeat hostile cavalry; maintain liaison with other forces; and minor warfare (guerilla).

While praying for larger regiments, light machine guns to replace the automatic rifle, for one-pounders and armored cars, let us prepare to carry out our mission with what we have. The cavalry can do it! We are to do anything in the ultimate extremity. But other things being equal, we can do it better on horseback. It is for that reason we are mounted. Every military

situation is not to be handled the same. The military profession cannot be guided by rules of thumb. Cavalry is to act boldly but not rashly. Some judgment must be exercised as to whether an action shall be mounted or dismounted.

A good cavalryman will favor mounted action within reason. A prominent cavalryman of our service has said of a small cavalry force: "He who dismounts to fight on foot is either lost or accomplishes nothing." An anecdote is told at the Cavalry School of an officer's solving a map problem in which he had to give orders to a leader of a patrol. He concluded his instructions with, "And Sergeant, if you meet the enemy, for God's sake do not dismount to fight on foot."

In the past, the cavalry has had the means of accomplishing much. It has accomplished much. It could have accomplished more had its leaders had more faith. Today, we have more with which to work than ever before. Cavalry is more indispensable than at any time. It now depends upon the cavalry officer himself as to what the future holds for the cavalry service.

— O —



The Wagons go Rolling Along

A Glimpse of the Mexican Cavalry

By

Major STEPHEN M. WALMSLEY, Signal Corps

Signal Officer, First Cavalry Division

ON DECEMBER 15, 1926, the new military post at Torreon, Mexico, was formally opened. President Calles presided and raised the national flags to the tops of the flag poles in the different troop areas. Among the guests were Brigadier General Edwin B. Winans, commanding the First Cavalry Division at Fort Bliss, with seventeen of his staff and unit commanders. I was fortunate enough to be in the party. The celebration incident to the opening of the post lasted four days—and nights.

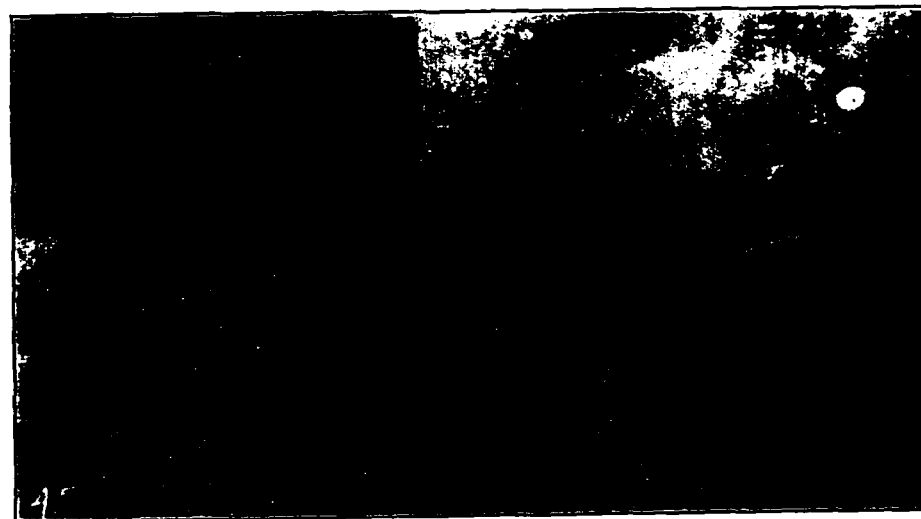
To practically all of the American officers, the attendance at the ceremonies and the stops at Chihuahua City enroute to and from Torreon, presented the first opportunity of viewing at close range, not only a Mexican military establishment of any size, but also Mexican civil communities of the size and importance of Torreon and Chihuahua. The American party included not only the officers mentioned above, but also the 8th Cavalry Band. Mounts for the polo team and the jumping team were also taken, and a few private automobiles. The train provided by the Mexican government comprised two Pullman sleeping cars, three horse cars, one automobile box car, and two box cars for the military guard. Between Chihuahua City and Torreon, much of which distance was traversed at night, a pilot train with an additional military guard, preceded our train at a distance of about a half mile. The trip was made, however, not only in peace, but in comfort.

The train left El Paso at noon on December 13 and reached Chihuahua City the same evening at about eight. An informal reception had been arranged by General Caraveo, commanding the district, and our party was met at the station by a number of Mexican officers. Automobiles were provided and after having been driven about the city, or at least through the better lighted streets, the entire party assembled at the officers club in the Municipal Casino. General Caraveo was host and provided a delightful hour before train time. Our train arrived at Torreon about noon the following day after a run that offered little variety in the way of scenery—flat prairie, broken in the distance by ragged mountains; now and then a small adobe village clustered about the wooden railway station and stone water tank; a few cattle, more goats, and occasionally considerable stretches of cultivated lands under irrigation, with the adobe “casa” of the “hacienda” set in a clump of cottonwoods.

Arrival at Torreon

Our arrival in Torreon was a ceremonial affair. The 43rd Infantry Battalion, part of the Torreon garrison, was drawn up in line opposite the

railway station, and the battalion band and our own band took turns in playing the National Airs of the two countries. General Jose Gonzales Escobar, the official host and a handsome soldier, was there with his officers to welcome General Winans. Surrounding the military was a colorful crowd of some seven or eight thousand civilians. It is to General Escobar's initiative, and administrative and executive ability, that the handsome army post at Torreon owes its existence, for reports from a number of sources stated that he had made no call on the Federal treasury for funds or materials with which to carry out the plan.



Mexican Cavalry Detraining at Torreon

As soon as the ceremonies at the railway station were completed, General Winans' party was taken to their hotel in the center of the city. All of us except the general and his personal staff, were left to our own devices, a privilege which was much appreciated, as the only shortage on the train had been water. Razors, bath tubs, etc., exceeded other things in interest for the time being.

About two hours after the arrival of our train, the presidential armored train preceded by a pilot train carrying the company of infantry which forms the President's Guard, pulled in, and the ceremonies of greeting were repeated, with the civilians playing a considerably more active part than before. General Winans and his personal staff accompanied General Escobar to the welcoming ceremonies. After President Calles left the station with his party, a large parade was formed, headed by the President's Guard which included the company of infantry which had accompanied him, and his own

squadron of cavalry which had arrived some days before, after a month's march from Mexico City. It was our own first glimpse of marching Mexican troops, except small border detachments of a company or less, and also one of the first of a number of surprises.

To enumerate and describe the delightful and interesting *bailes*, receptions, luncheons and banquets, both formal and informal—many beginning formally and ending informally, which were crowded into the four



Inside Main Gate of Military Post, Torreon

days spent in Torreon, would be to wander far afield from the purpose of this article. I leave them for word-of-mouth narrative by those fortunate enough to have attended.

The Military Plant

The first comprehensive view of the military establishment was gained on the morning after our arrival, when the first official visit was made to the new post, which is situated about two miles outside Torreon. The establishment, officially known as the Military Camp of the 25th District of Operations, is a model of its kind and would be a credit to any nation. While it lacks certain details essential to our service, the general plan and its execution leave little to criticize, and present many features decidedly superior to the plans followed in building our own military posts.

The post proper occupies a rectangular area of between two hundred and two hundred and fifty acres, all inclosed by a high wall of plaster-covered adobe. The gateways are between battlemented towers of brick, which give

space for guard houses and *sala de banderas* or rooms for the standards, where the organization colors and standards are kept. A gateway in the main wall faces each of the unit areas. The post houses two regiments of cavalry, the 1st and 18th, and one battalion of infantry, the 43rd. The strength of each of these organizations is approximately the same, since the three squadrons which make up a cavalry regiment are each only a hundred strong. There is no troop organization in the Mexican cavalry service, nor is there any regimental organization in their infantry service.

The arrangement and construction of the unit areas are identical, except that the cavalry areas contain an additional quadrangle for stables.

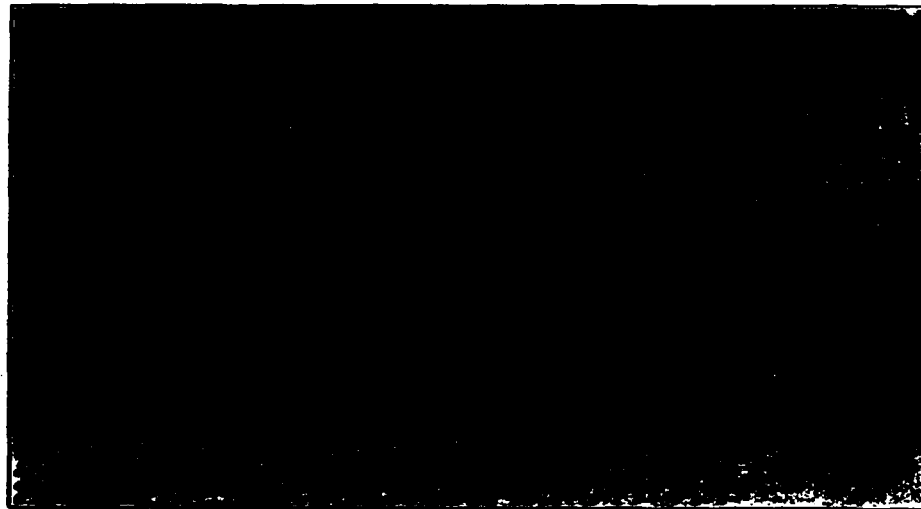
Barracks for the men consist of long, one-story buildings arranged on three sides of a quadrangle, the fourth side of which is occupied by another building of the same size and type, but divided into apartments which house the offices of the adjutant and paymaster, and the battalion store rooms and infirmary. The remainder of the building provides barrack room for the headquarters detachment and the infantry machine gunners. The cavalry has no machine gun detachment. All floors are of concrete, and drinking fountains of the most modern type are installed in the barracks. Cots of canvas and steel, which fold back against the wall, provide comfortable sleeping facilities. Arm racks and lockers for field-equipment are provided, one for each squad. Outside the barracks and facing the area of barracks, are broad concrete walks where the companies and squadrons can be paraded for reveille, retreat, or other formations. All buildings are electrically lighted. Just outside each quadrangle are two bath houses, one for officers and one for enlisted men, equipped with plumbing of the most modern type. Small, separate buildings for regimental and battalion commanders' offices and for officers' assembly and reading rooms, are provided just outside the entrances to the organization quadrangles. The French influence, although not noticeable either in tactics, drill, or equipment of troops, is everywhere evident in mural decorations, as pictures of the "Little Corporal" and engravings of his battle scenes, graced the walls of every office or assembly room that I visited.

The stable quadrangles for the cavalry regiments adjoin the barrack quadrangles, and are almost identical in type and size. The buildings forming the quadrangles are used as saddle rooms, granaries, horseshoeing shops, and veterinary hospitals. Inside the quadrangle, open stables, with raised floors and concrete feed troughs, house the animals. A large concrete water trough and an electrically driven pump provide water, and the remainder of the enclosure gives corral space.

The whole arrangement is convenient and economical. It reduces guard and police to a minimum, and still avoids any appearance of crowding.

Outside the quadrangle areas but inside the camp proper, are a baseball diamond, a football field, a basketball court and a raised boxing ring, to provide for recreation and athletics. A gymnasium and a swimming pool

were under construction, but were not completed at the time of our visit. Training facilities include a reduced distance rifle and pistol range, close order drill field, and an excellent course of jumps, of which, more later. A railroad spur with ample loading platforms and stock chutes, enters the camp at the opposite side from the main entrance and provides excellent loading and unloading facilities. Just outside the wall of the camp proper is a race track, about a mile, I should judge, completely equipped with both inner and outer rails, judges' stand, grand stands and barrier. Inside the track is a polo field. The entire terrain surrounding the post is flat and open and provides drill and maneuver space.



The President's Box

General Escobar, commanding at Torreon, is between President Calles and General Winans.

Officers' quarters had not been provided, and the distance between the post and the city of Torreon seemed almost prohibitive to officers not owning automobiles, but General Escobar stated that an "officers' row" was to be built just outside the wall, and would be completed in six months. So much for the plant itself.

Military and Athletic Events

Immediately after the flag raising by President Calles on the opening day of the ceremonies, the program of military and athletic events began. Infantry, cavalry, artillery, and air service troops took part in the program which extended over the four days. By far the most finished performance of the whole program was the exhibition drill staged by the President's Infantry. The drill ground was rough, dusty, and in places covered with straw, which provided poor footing for marching infantry, but the performance and

appearance of the President's Guard was not surpassed by any infantry organization that I have ever seen, at home or abroad. I know that it was a question whether surprise or admiration was uppermost in the minds of our party.

The artillery performance was creditable and of interest especially, because of the use of small mules as draft animals for guns and caissons, and of the presence of the battery wagon which, among other things, carried an officer's tent. That wagon was the only provision made in the entire equipment of the garrison for the carrying of supplies of any sort.

The air service consisted of five planes, which did some stunt flying, bombing, and machine gunning in a very workman-like manner.



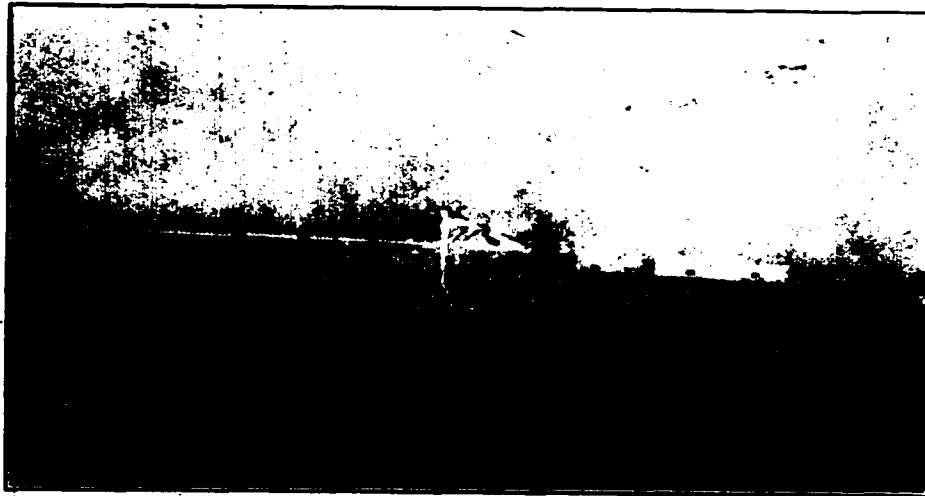
Interior of Stable Quadrangle

The greatest part of the time, however, was given over to cavalry exhibitions, and it was this phase that was of the most interest to the officers from Fort Bliss.

The President's Squadron, with the eight-pointed star insignia and its officers in sun helmets instead of caps, and the 18th Cavalry Regiment were the performers. The 1st Cavalry Regiment which is stationed at Torreon, was in the field against the Yaquis, and so took no part.

Our party was especially interested in the 18th Cavalry, as Brigadier General San Martin, the commanding officer and original organizer of the regiment, commanded the special train which took us to and from Torreon, and became very popular with us all because of his hospitality and genial manner.

The cavalry exhibitions were along the same lines that are followed in our service in putting on such a show. There were close and extended order drills, simulated attacks, both mounted and dismounted, running at heads and individual jumping. Two exhibitions were unique from our standpoint and of much interest to us. The first was the performance of the mounted buglers at a gallop and over jumps. Music by the massed regimental buglers is more of a feature in the Mexican service than in ours, and many of the marches played were more complicated and varied than those attempted by our buglers. As a demonstration of their skill, the buglers were sent around the course individually at a gallop, playing as they rode. The test was to keep the playing continuous, even while the horse was negotiating the jumps.



Mexican Lancer

Not all of the buglers were successful, but when one of them did clear a hurdle without missing a note, the crowd roared its approval.

The other feature of special interest was the individual exhibition with the lance, saber, and pistol. The trooper ran a straight course of about seventy yards at an extended gallop. The first target was a sack on the ground which was attacked with the lance, stabbing vertically. The lance was then swung to the horizontal position and a swinging target attacked. The lance was left in this target. The trooper then drew his saber and cut at two heads, first right and then left. After cutting at the last head, the saber was dropped and hung by the saber knot on the wrist. The trooper then drew his pistol and fired three blank cartridges at a target on his right. Perhaps a dozen troopers ran this course, and most of them finished it

successfully. Nor was it at all an easy one. It required quick and accurate manipulation of the three arms, and meanwhile holding the horse straight on the courses. Just why the lance was used is not known, unless its adoption is under consideration. It appeared nowhere except in this exhibition, the carbine, saber and pistol being the arms carried by the troopers in all the formations which we saw.



Mexican Trooper Equipped for the Field

All the exhibitions were decidedly creditable, and admittedly beyond anything which our party had expected to see. It is not too much to say that the organizations at Torreon could take their places in a column or line of continental or American cavalry, barring perhaps certain crack regiments, without noticeably lowering the average.

Arms and Equipment

The Mexican trooper is armed with the carbine, pistol and saber. The carbine, at all formations which we observed, was carried on the back, as is common in European armies. A carbine scabbard is provided, however, and hangs vertically from the off side of the cantle, although it was not always worn. The saber is hung vertically in practically the same manner as the officers' saber is carried in our service.

The horse equipment consists of the McClellan saddle, with metal stirrups, the double bridle, white tie-rope for ceremonies, and leather halter with halter chain for field service. A felt pad and small gray saddle blanket are worn under the saddle. Cantle and pommel rolls, and a canteen are carried. The

ammunition belt is of leather, and includes both waist and shoulder belts.

The uniform is greenish gray in color. The wool uniform is worn for ceremonies, but a cotton uniform was worn by the soldiers when at work. The only type of headgear seen was the cap, except in the case of the officers of the President's Own Cavalry Squadron, who wore a flat, broad brimmed, sun helmet. The horses were all imported from the United States, and though generally smaller than those used in our service, were not bad types. They seemed generally well fed, but not groomed nor trimmed, and in many cases unshod or shod only in front. Officers' mounts were generally larger and better types than the troopers' mounts, but often showed little more in the way of grooming. There were, however, notable exceptions in the case of some of the horses ridden by the senior officers. The lack of grooming was easily explained, when it was found that no grooming kit is contained in the troopers' equipment, nor is any preserving or cleaning material for leather supplied. The lack of the latter will cost dearly, as most of the leather equipment, although quite new, is rapidly going to pieces.

Officers Jumping

Most interesting of all the military events, because of its competitive and international aspect, was the officers' jumping, in which both Mexican and American officers took part. The course was the regular training course, except that the jumps were raised to heights up to five feet. The average jump was about four feet, six inches. There were thirteen jumps, including a *passage de route* about twenty feet high. The jumps included brush with rail, post and rail, wall with bar, banquette with bar, water, in and out over pickets, and triple bar. The length of the course was about a thousand meters.

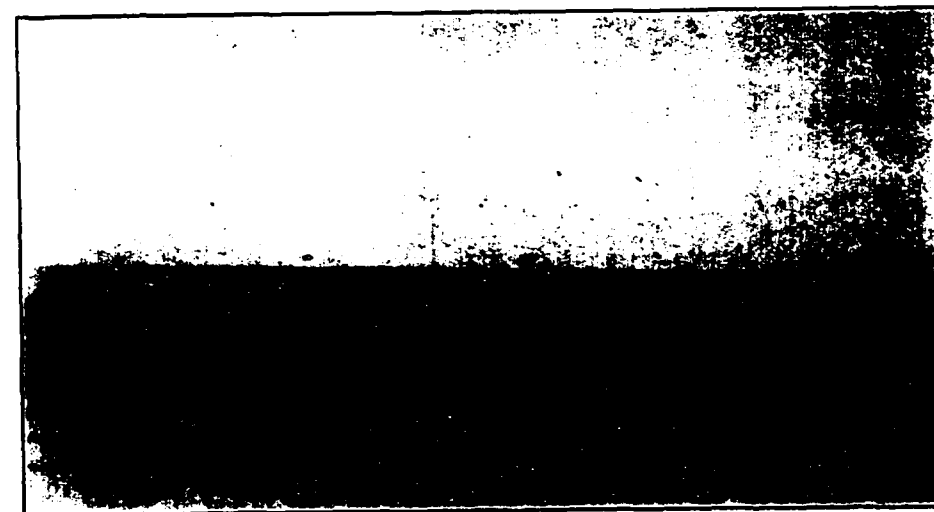
There were about a dozen Mexican entries, including Colonel Rodolfo Casillas, training officer of the 18th Cavalry, who is a graduate of Riley and Saumur (between 1908 and 1912). Colonel Casillas rode twice.

The American entries were Majors J. K. Brown, 8th Cavalry and A. L. P. Sands, 82nd Field Artillery, and Captains C. E. Davis, 8th Cavalry, and I. G. Walker, 2nd Machine Gun Squadron. The American horses were *Woodrow* and *Rebel* from the 8th Cavalry, and *Bugge* and *Bandroll* from the 2nd Machine Gun Squadron.

The course was very difficult, much too difficult for the Mexican entries, and too difficult for our own entries, except the veteran *Woodrow* who, with Major Brown up, turned in a clean performance. No other entry approached Major Brown's score, and a considerable proportion of the Mexican entrants did not finish.

The water jumps were the undoing of our entrants, always excepting *Woodrow*. The terrain around Fort Bliss is not generous in providing water jumps, and the sight of water being allowed to lie unused in a ditch was too great a surprise. As a matter of fact, a combination of a wall and bar

jump and a water jump, is what actually brought grief to our riders. The water jump was placed about ten yards beyond the wall. *Woodrow* was the only horse that took the jump without a refusal. In watching the horses, it seemed that the nearness of the water jump to the wall frightened them. But in spite of the refusals, every member of our team turned in a better score than any of the Mexican team. There was, however, only one prize awarded, a very handsome silver cup, which went to Major Brown and which was presented by President Calles himself.



Squadron of the 18th Regiment of Cavalry

In spite of the fact that the Mexican officers were outclassed by the American team, their performances showed that much hard work and enthusiasm had been applied, and that future improvement may be expected. There was too much "bit and whip" and not nearly enough legs. The use of the whip necessitated holding both reins in one hand, and many run-outs which might have been avoided, resulted. The non-use of the riders' legs as aids, produced the usual results, and few horses negotiated a jump without being struck hard on the mouth with the curb. Practically all of the horses ridden by Mexican officers were raised in the United States, and three of them, to my personal knowledge, have jumping records here that would have made them very formidable contenders had they been better ridden.

In analyzing the contest as a whole, it was quite evident that the officers in charge of the contest, in wishing to make a course that would put our team to a real test, had overestimated the ability of their own riders, and as

a result, practically eliminated them from any chance of high scoring.

Polo

Another feature of the ceremonies which had been looked forward to with much interest, but which proved disappointing, was the polo tournament. General Amaro, the present Secretary of War, is a polo enthusiast of the first order, and through his assistance, four teams had been assembled at Torreon. Three of them came from Mexico City—the War Department team, of which General Amaro is captain, the Mexico City Polo Club team, and the so called Lincoln team, captained by Mr. Stanley Copeland, and made up of employees in his automobile agency. The fourth team was the Fort Bliss team, made up of Lieutenant Colonel M. G. Holliday, Quartermaster Corps,



All Dressed Up to Meet the President

Major J. K. Brown, 8th Cavalry, Major D. A. Surles, 7th Cavalry, and Captain C. E. Davis, 8th Cavalry. It was hoped and expected that there would be some good play. But two serious obstacles intervened. The first was the almost general habit that ceremonial programs have of lagging and failing to keep up to schedule. The second was the condition of the polo field, which was really still under construction, and was little better than a plowed field. The first obstacle, however, proved the really insurmountable one. The first game between the Fort Bliss and Lincoln teams, which had been scheduled to begin at 2:30 P. M. on the second day of the festivities, did not actually begin until 4:45 P. M., and at the end of the fourth period had to be called off because of darkness. The score at that time was 10—0

in favor of Fort Bliss, and had the field been better, the score would have been larger. On the third day the Fort Bliss team was scheduled to play the Mexican War Department team. The game finally got under way at 5:00 P. M. and continued for two periods before darkness intervened. The Fort Bliss team scored once during the play. The Mexican team did not score. It was agreed to finish the play on the following afternoon, but a luncheon given the following noon by General Amaro lasted until 5:00 P. M., and further play was impossible.

Although the comparatively few moments of play were enough to demonstrate the superiority of the American team, the enthusiasm of the Mexicans generally, and especially the keenness of a man in General Amaro's position, augurs well for the growth of the game, and if political conditions in our sister republic permit, the not distant future should provide excellent competitions from that quarter for American teams.

A very interesting side trip provided for General Winans and his personal staff, was a visit with President Calles to the great La Luz hacienda, some fifty kilometers from Torreon. After a very sumptuous breakfast in the handsome ranch house, a rodeo was staged in which remarkable exhibitions of roping and riding were given. At that time, also, General Escobar presented General Winans with a wonderfully handsome Mexican stock saddle and bridle, the former a marvel of saddlers' skill. Mahogany, carved leather, mother of pearl, silver, copper, and tiger skin were combined into a work that would grace the cabinets of a museum.

The American party left Torreon at 2:00 A. M. Saturday. Chihuahua City was reached about noon, and after a luncheon tendered by the mayor of that city, the party was divided into a number of groups which, guided by officers of the garrison spent the remainder of the afternoon in seeing the interesting old town. Many of the outlying districts have not been repaired since Francisco Villa bombarded and captured the city some years ago; and shell-wrecked buildings and bullet spattered walls recalled similar scenes in France.

Our party left Chihuahua City in the early evening and arrived at El Paso the following morning, bringing back with us a greatly increased respect for the Mexican officer and the work he is doing with the material at his disposal and also of his ability to act the host in a thoughtful and delightful manner.

The Fight at Volchkovtsy

Observations Based Upon Recent Data

By

General N. N. GOLOVINE

Translated by Colonel A. M. Nikolaieff

THE CAVALRY FIGHT near Yaroslavitsy" (also referred to as the cavalry fight at Volchkovtsy), writes editorially the well-known German military periodical *Militär Wochenblatt* (No. 11, 1923, p. 371), "is the only example in the World War when a collision took place between larger mounted units; it is therefore, of the greatest historical interest."

A study of that encounter fought on the 21st of August, 1914, between the Russian 10th Cavalry Division (General Count Keller) and the Austro-Hungarian 4th Cavalry Division (General Zarembo) was published in the *CAVALRY JOURNAL* in 1923 (January, April and July issues) under the present author's name.

The above study was based on descriptions written for me, at my request, by Russians as well as Austrians who had taken active part in that famous fight.

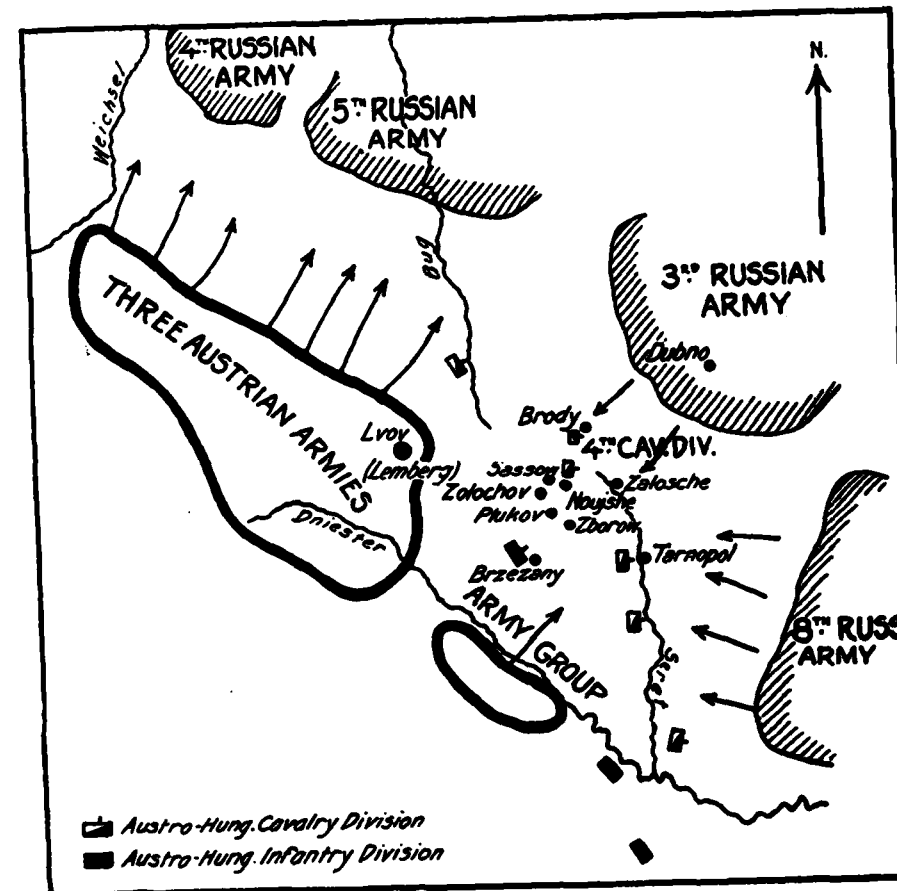
Since the publication of my work, new documents have appeared in the press; letters containing additional information have also been received by me. The object of this article is to make an analysis of the new material with a view to ascertaining what has to be changed in my first description of the fight, and to see whether or not the deductions made by me are borne out by the new data.

The first document we shall take up is the report of the fight submitted to the General Commanding the Army and signed by Count Keller about 6:00 P. M. on August 22d—the day following the fight. According to that report, the disposition of the troops of the Division differs somewhat from that given by Colonel Slivinski (senior general staff officer with Count Keller's division, who published a description of the fight.)

The following units, Count Keller reported, had taken part in the charge: Two squadrons of the Novgorodski Dragoon regiment; three squadrons of

**Note:* Early in August 1914, immediately after the declaration of war, the first task of the Russian High Command, in connection with the advance into Austria of the Third, Fourth, Fifth, and Eighth Russian armies, was to break through the curtain which covered the deployment of the Austro-Hungarian Armies. This mission was assigned to the cavalry.

On August 20th, preparatory to the advance of the Third Russian army in the direction of Lemberg, the cavalry of this army (9th and 10th Cavalry Divisions) seized the bridges on the Seret River. On the 21st, they continued their advance, and the 10th Cavalry Division came into contact with the 4th Austrian Cavalry Division near the village of Volchkovtsy, situated in Eastern Galicia about fifty miles to the east of Lemberg. The resulting action terminated in the defeat and withdrawal of the Austrians. (Errors)



Strategic Situation on August 21, 1914

the Odesski Lancer regiment; two squadrons of the Ingurmanlandski Hussar regiment; troop of the divisional mounted sappers and Count Keller's escort; one *sotnia* (squadron) of the Orenburgski Cossacks (joined at the end of the fight); a total of eight and one-half squadrons.

From the Austro-Hungarian documents we learn that on their side only seven and one-half squadrons (five and one-half of the 15th Dragoon regiment and two squadrons of the 13th Lancer regiment) took part in the mounted charge.

Thus Count Keller's report fully confirms the statement previously made by me to the effect that no collision between cavalry divisions really took place; each of the two forces that met at Volchkovtsy in close formation, was

only a little stronger than a Russian cavalry regiment or about the strength of a German cavalry brigade (a German cavalry brigade had eight squadrons.) The fight, therefore, cannot be considered as a mounted collision of larger cavalry units, despite the fact that the German periodical calls it the only example in the War, of such a collision.

The combat itself is described in Count Keller's report as follows:

By that time seven squadrons of the Division reached the ravine running northwest of Yaroslavitsy. Their position was very unfavorable as they were on the bottom of the ravine while three enemy regiments stood above them near the edge of the rather steep bank of the same ravine. Nevertheless, seeing that the enemy artillery was going to leave its position and might escape. I decided to charge the twelve enemy squadrons with my seven squadrons, and to that end ordered five of the latter (three of the 10th Odesski Lancers and two of the 10th Novgorodski Dragoons) plus the mounted sappers, to attack the front, and two squadrons of the 10th Ingurmanlandski Hussars, the enemy's right flank. At that time the 5th Sotnia of the Orenburgski Cossacks joined us, and with great dash also charged the enemy's right flank. The squadrons of the Odesski Lancers and Novgorodski Dragoons, subjected to a flanking fire of the enemy machine guns, were the first to get at the enemy. Despite their unfavorable position, the enemy having come down on them from the edge of the bank, they checked the enemy's onrush, and, fighting with lance and sabre, prevented the Austrians from breaking through their close formation. The commander of the brigade, the regimental commanders and the officers led the charge at a gallop in front of their regiments. At the same time the second line of the Austrians, four squadrons strong, showed up, and was charged by the Ingurmanlandski Hussar squadrons, led by their regimental commander, and also by the 5th Sotnia of the Orenburgski Cossacks.

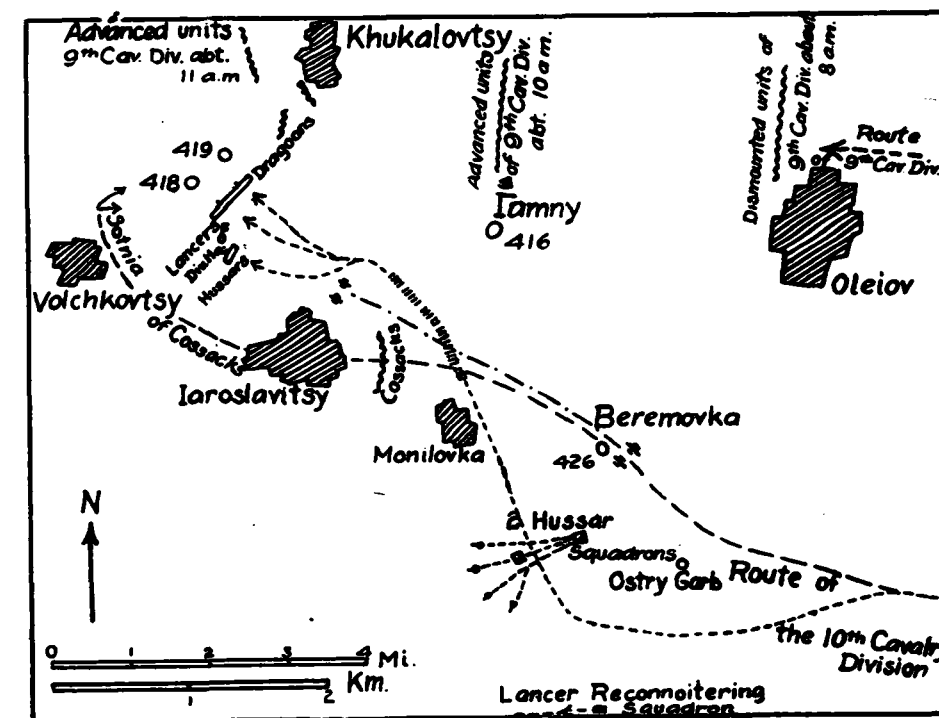
Two squadrons of the enemy second line, in troop formation, having swept through the interval between our Dragoon and Lancer regiments, succeeded in surrounding the 5th Squadron of the Dragoons. This did not give way, however, and fought where it stood against an enemy three times its strength. Having no reserves, I threw in against the rear of those Austrian squadrons all my mounted dispatch riders and a half troop of the Orenburgski Cossacks which formed my escort. They, together with the 5th Squadron of the Dragoons, overthrew and pursued the enemy. Dragoons, Lancers, Hussars and Cossacks, all got mixed up with the enemy and were fighting with lance and sabre; here and there individual horsemen could be seen. Some of our men—I saw it with my own eyes—knocked down three or four Austrians.

When the enemy squadrons finally took to their heels all our squadrons rapidly pursued them. The Hussar regiment captured four field guns; other squadrons and the Cossacks came down on the remaining guns and limbers; the Austrian artillerymen that were not slain were taken prisoners.

Further pursuit, on account of the condition of the horses, had to be given up, but during the retreat the enemy squadrons suffered heavy losses from the well aimed fire of our batteries. Two of the enemy squadrons came up at the village of Volchkovtsy against the 6th and parts of the 2d and 3d Sotnias of the Orenburgski Cossacks which, having ended the pursuit of the enemy infantry, were on their way to join the Division; the Austrian squadrons were almost completely annihilated.

Count Keller's report, as we see, confirms the fact of the breaking

through of his front by the Austrians, which fact is also described in Colonel Slivinski's story of the fight. But, whereas the latter sees the decisive influence on the fight's issue in the charge by Count Keller's escort and the men of his staff, against the Austrians who had broken through, the official report is not so emphatic in that respect.



Deployment of the 10th Russian Cavalry Division

Personally, I am inclined to disagree with Colonel Slivinski and abide by my opinion formerly expressed, which was to the effect that not the impact on the front, but the charge against the right flank and the rear of the Austrians, had a decisive influence on the issue of the fight. That charge, according to documents which were first available, was made by two squadrons of the Ingurmanlandski Hussars, while eight squadrons (four-fifths of the forces) were engaged on the front. The official report gives a somewhat different distribution of the parts of the division during the attack. (See map.) From the official data it is clear that only five squadrons took part in the frontal attack, and as many participated in the action against the enemy's right flank and rear.* In other words, one-half of the total acted

* 2 squadrons of the Ingurmanlandski Hussars, 1 sotnia (the 5th) of the Orenburgski Cossacks, and later the 6th and parts of the 2d and 3d sotnias of the Orenburgski Cossacks.

as a maneuvering force. Thus, the conclusion about the decisive influence of the maneuver against the enemy's flank and rear, finds even more justification in the new data than it had before.

In my first description of the Volchkovtsy fight, with a view to coming to a conclusion in regard to the mechanical and psychological aspects of the collision of two mounted forces, an analysis was made by me of the losses suffered during that fight. At that time, however, full data were available only about the Austrian losses. The figures of those losses received by me through the courtesy of Colonel Waldstetten from the War Department in Vienna are as follows:

	Killed	Wounded	Prisoners
Divisional Staff	2	3	2
15th Dragoon regiment	41	12	76
15th Lancer regiment	4	29	116
Total	47	44	194

But the losses suffered by the Austrians during the charge and melee were, as a matter of fact, considerably smaller because,

First, the above figures include also losses which were suffered during the pursuit; the greater part of the killed in the 15th Dragoon regiment belonged to those squadrons which, having turned back, rushed towards the crossing at Volchkovtsy where, as stated in the official report, they were attacked from the rear by the Orenburgski Cossacks and suffered very heavy losses.

Second, the figures relating to the 13th Lancer regiment represent the losses of the entire regiment, and not only of the two squadrons which, under the command of Major Vidal, took part in the charge. They include, therefore, losses which had been suffered by that regiment when the division, drawn up in reserve formation, had taken up a position to the south of the village of Yaroslavitzy.

Taking all this into consideration, we may conclude that the losses in the seven and one-half Austro-Hungarian squadrons during the charge and melee, were about ten to fifteen killed, and thirty-five to forty wounded.

Count Keller's report contains full data of the Russian losses. They are as follows:

	Officers		Men			Horses		
	Killed	Wounded	Killed	Wounded	Missing	Killed	Wounded	Missing
Dragoons	4	—	37	1	12	13	10	—
Lancers	1	4	53	2	7	24	23	—
Hussars	2	5	12	1	17	2	5	—
Cossacks	2	1	9	27	42	—	—	—
M. sappers	—	1	—	3	1	1	—	—
Total	2	9	18	131	4	79	40	43

Now, let us find out on the basis of the above table what were the losses of the Russian units during the charge and melee. Losses of the Orenburgski Cossacks cannot be taken into account, because they were suffered during the

attack by the Cossacks on the enemy infantry. With regard to the two Hussar squadrons which made the dashing charge against the right flank and rear of the Austrians, we may conclude, on the basis of the evidence of Captain Barbovich who led that charge, (see first description of the fight) that they had not more than fourteen wounded, most of them slightly. Finally, the losses of the Dragoons include also losses suffered from the Austrian machine guns, which opened fire from a position to the east of hill 419 against the right flank of the Russian cavalry. Thus, we may come to the conclusion that the losses in the eight and a half Russian squadrons during the charge were four killed and about one hundred wounded.

The greater part of the wounded Russians undoubtedly belonged to those parts of the fighting line which had been attacked on their flank and in the rear. We feel therefore, justified in saying that during the frontal clash the Russian losses were as insignificant as those of the Austrians. In view of the insignificance of these losses, some doubt arises as to the importance of the "mechanical role" in a charge of cavalry against cavalry. Further down we will take up that question; here we should like only to stress the fact.

We saw that, according to the Russian official report, there took part in the charge twelve enemy squadrons in the first, and four in the second line. But the Austrian documents establish the fact that only seven and one-half squadrons participated in the mounted charge on the plateau 418-419. In this connection, I should like to remind the reader of the remark made by me in the preface to the first description of the Volchkovtsy fight, which was to the following effect: "Owing to the short duration of the phases of a cavalry fight, those taking part in it are not able to check up their impressions. The utmost strain of nerves ... can cause even eye and ear hallucinations." In such a fight, every one acts on the basis of circumstances as they appear to him, and which often greatly differ from what they are in reality.

It is not only with regard to the enemy strength that Count Keller's report is at variance with the Austrian documents. There is no mention in the report of one of the most important episodes of the fight, viz. the action of the horse artillery of the 10th Cavalry Division near the village of Beremovka. When that artillery took up a position near the village, it opened fire, first against the enemy infantry, but later directed it to the south of the village Yaroslavitzy where the 4th Austrian Cavalry Division stood concentrated in reserve formation. The Austrians were thrown into great confusion by that fire and galloped in disorder towards Volchkovtsy. In a valley to the east of that village, the Austrian division was assembled and drawn up again in a reserve column. This episode had a great influence on the issue of the fight.

In the first place, Count Keller's seven squadrons, moving from the Beremovka hill in a north-western direction, were enabled to approach safely

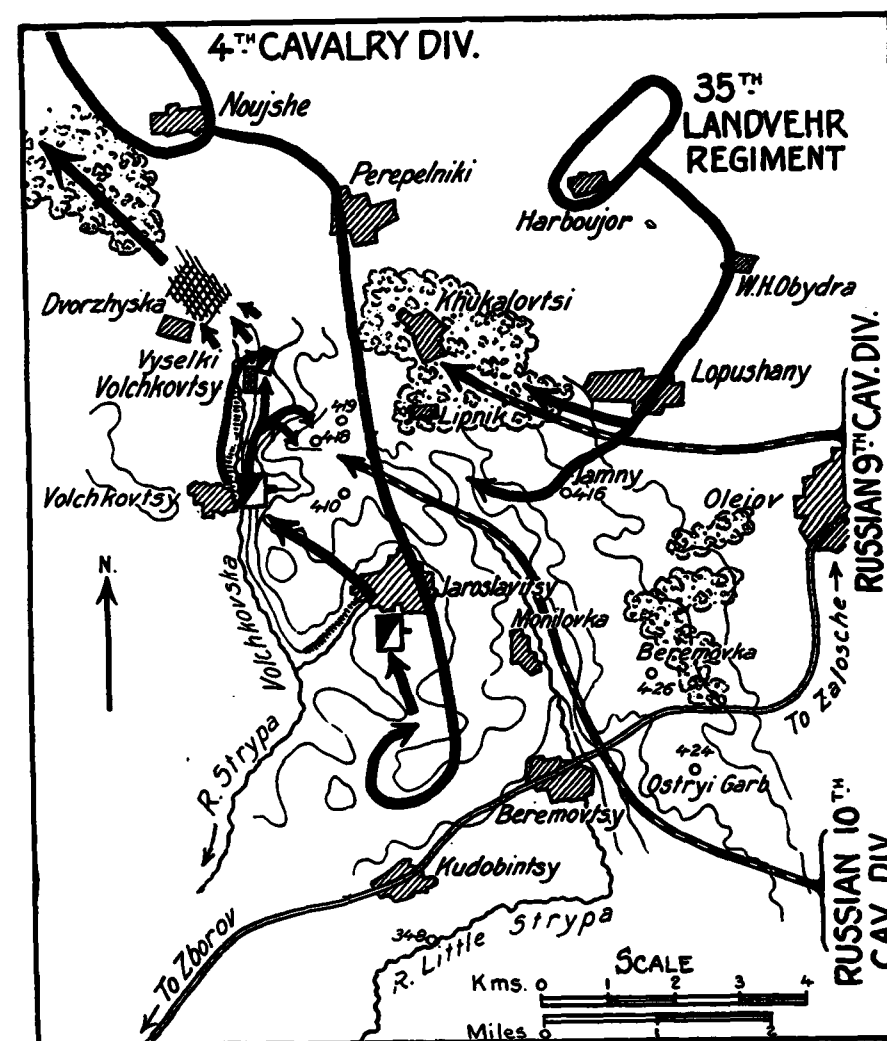
to the Austrian division and to emerge on the plateau immediately in front of the enemy, who, where he was found, had to accept the charge by the Russians.

Secondly, the moral shock caused by the artillery fire had such an effect on the Austrian division, that by the time the charge occurred, the necessary equilibrium had not yet been restored. This can be proven by the Austrian documents. Let us recall some important details. Out of the twenty-two Austrian squadrons concentrated in an area smaller than a square mile, only seven squadrons and a half took part in the charge. As to the remaining squadrons, three galloped away, while eleven waited for orders and did not move from their positions.

Discrepancies, like that between Count Keller's report and the real facts, occur as a rule in every description written in haste by the participants in a fight. An historian, therefore, when he draws certain conclusions, can use such reports only as a part of the entire volume of documents, taken from one as well as from the other side. Moreover, every report also suffers, besides those general defects, from "specific" irregularities. Human nature accounts for it. Count Keller's report is not an exception. For the whole day of August 21st, the squadrons and the artillery of the Austrian 4th Cavalry Division lost not over seventy-five killed. Should we even add the killed in the two battalions of the 35th Landwehr regiment, parts of which fought on that day against the Russian 10th and 9th Cavalry Divisions, the total number of killed still will be less than 110 men. In this connection, one involuntarily recalls the memorable words of Souvoroff. In his staff, after one of his victories over the Turks, a report was being drawn up. The officer charged with that task asked how many killed Turks he should put down. "Why should we spare those *bassourmans* (apostates)?" answered Souvoroff. "The more you put down, the better."

Military science is based on the critical analysis of a large number of documents. One document is only a fragment of a very complicated mosaic into which other fragments often do not fit. In such cases the historian is confronted with contradictions which can be solved only by hypotheses. To such a many-shaded mosaical picture may be likened the evidence of a number of participants which became known after the description of the fight had been written by me. One of these documents is the article by Major B. von Lauer, of the Austrian General Staff, (*Militär Wochenblatt*, No. 11, 1925.), who took part in the fight of the 21st of August, 1914, as a staff officer of a brigade of the 4th Cavalry Division. Let us start by taking up that article.

Major Lauer begins the story of the fight with a description of the situation, which agrees with that given by me. Further on, having explained how the 4th Austrian Cavalry Division, drawn up in reserve formation, had carried out the complicated maneuver to the south of hill 419 (see map), he describes the punishment by fire suffered by the division when it stood in a mass to the south of the village of Yaroslavitsy. If we substitute plain



Movements of the 4th Austrian Cavalry Division on the Morning of August 21

words for Major Lauer's soft phrases, we shall see that the result of that punishment was a disorderly retreat of the whole Austrian division towards the village of Volchkovtsy, to the east of which it was assembled later on.

Right here we learn a new fact relating to the Austrian artillery: While the division was being assembled to the east of Volchkovtsy, the Austrian batteries, having taken up a masked position near hill 410, opened fire. Immediately this fire was answered by the Russian artillery which was posted,

well hidden, in a position near the village of Beremovka. "The Russian shells burst, in close succession, on the batteries; their splinters knock against the gun-shields; shrapnel bullets have whipped up a column of dust." The Austrian artillery according to Major Lauer's words, was placed in a "different position." The following incident may serve as a good illustration of the great moral effect caused by the Russian fire: When the Austrian artillerymen noticed the approaching Russian cavalry, the commander of the group of batteries galloped back in the direction of the divisional headquarters, shouting, while he was galloping, that he was being attacked. It is obvious that the duty of the Austrian commander was, first of all, to direct the fire against the attacking enemy, sending a report to the headquarters. Acting as he did, he showed that he had lost the necessary equilibrium.

No doubt, the subsequent change of position by the Austrian artillery came also as a result of the moral effect which the fire of the Russians had on the commander of the batteries. They were moved by echelons to the edge of the wood west of hill 416 (as indicated by me in my previous description). Owing to this change of position, the Austrian cavalry was deprived of the co-operation of its artillery at the most critical moment. The untimeliness of this "change" which more resembled a "withdrawal," is reflected in Count Keller's report. In it we come across the following words: "Seeing that the enemy artillery was going to leave its position and might escape, I decided to charge the twelve enemy squadrons with my seven squadrons"...

Further on, Major Lauer tells how the 4th Cavalry Division started its advance from the valley east of the village of Volchkovtsy, and was moving in a north-westerly direction round the plateau 418-419. He emphasizes the unexpectedness with which the Russian squadrons, coming up the plateau, made their appearance.

An officer of the divisional staff, he writes, has rushed on the top of the hill-side. With his sabre he makes signals, familiar to every Austrian cavalryman,—*"the enemy."* The divisional staff, which was in the middle of the valley, draws sabres, and the command *"Charge"* is given. The 15th Dragoon regiment which was near at hand does the same; the squadrons climb the steep sandy side of the pit-like valley, their formation resembling a column. The uppermost part of the ascent is so steep that the horses, bending under the weight of the men and packs, move forward with difficulty at a walk. Simultaneously, the 13th Lancer regiment which was marching in a column more to the north, also noticed the Russians coming up at a gallop from the south-east. The commander of the regiment, in order to gain the eastern flank of the enemy, orders the regiment to move forward at a gallop, taking the direction toward the angle of the wood (north-east) near the farm Lipnik. But the Lancers galloped too far to the north, up to the village Perepelniki. Here they turn back, but the favorable moment to join in the hand to hand fight near hill 418 is lost.

Two squadrons which formed the regiment's rear, wheel round at Major von Vidal's command, and, true to the glorious tradition of the *"Trani-*

Lancers"* they rush straight upon the enemy. A few seconds later, five squadrons of the Dragoons, together with the divisional and the two brigade staffs, reach the plateau. In front of them, at a distance of 300 to 400 paces, a mass of horsemen, in the shape of a double column with intervals between platoons, is galloping by. It might have been eighteen squadrons strong. **Their round caps, the earth brown color of their tunics, the shining points of their lances, leave no doubt—they are the enemy. The Russians have been taken unawares by the attack on their flank. They evidently had been under the impression that the Austro-Hungarian cavalry, greatly shaken by the artillery fire, had withdrawn. Shouting hurrah! the 15th Dragoon regiment rushed upon the Russians with all the speed which the tired horses were capable of developing. The enemy had no time to change their front and form a line against us, because the following moment, our horsemen wedged themselves into their formation.

A gigantic melee follows the clash. Elbow to elbow, and knee to knee, our horsemen grapple with the enemy, forming an agitated mass. A moment later the ominous crowd breaks up, leaving open places, but the next moment they are filled up again. All is done without noise... Owing to a dense cloud of dust, only the outlines of the nearest figures can be seen. The white collars of the *"Josefs"* Dragoons and their shining helmets flash in turn with the brown tunics of the Russians. In the first second, the greater part of the fighters on both sides have forgotten to make use of their weapons... The scenes change as in a kaleidoscope. In one of the open spaces, through a cloud of dust, as in a fog, there can be seen a Dragoon chasing a Russian. A moment later another Russian, having galloped up from behind, runs his lance through the Dragoon, but in his turn falls to the ground under the blow of a sabre dealt on his head by another Dragoon.

In the above manner Major Lauer describes what he himself witnessed during the encounter. Now let us quote another of his observations:

For a long time no trace of close formation remained among the participants in the fight. Everyone is fighting for himself only—to save his own life. Under such circumstances, a discovery is made to the effect that the sabre is a very problematical weapon. The pistol is more effective, and its use is much simpler... A disorderly firing started on both sides, during which no discrimination between friend and foe was possible. The fight had scarcely begun, when dismounted Russians could be seen firing their rifles at those engaged in the hand to hand combat."

With regard to the above quoted remarks, reflecting Major Lauer's *personal* impression, it must be said that the lack of confidence in cold steel comes as a result of the inability to use the weapon. The fact that the Austrians were much inferior to the Russians in the use of the sabre, has been noted by Count Keller in his report. As to the *"dismounted Russians"* firing their rifles, they evidently were those whose horses had been wounded or killed.

In view of Major Lauer's not impartial attitude, and also on account of the fact that, from the start of the mounted encounter he was involved in the fray as one of its rank and file participants, his generalizations, as well

* Traditional name of the 13th Lancer regiment given after one of its charges in the wars with Italy.

** In fact there were only five squadrons.

as descriptions of what was going on beyond his field of view, must be taken with reserve. And his field of view was very limited. In the first place, it was limited in the direct meaning of that word. Let us recall his mention of the clouds of dust enveloping the battle scenes. But even more was it limited in the psychological sense. What Major Lauer experienced at that time must have obsessed him to the exclusion of everything else; his attention was fixed on what he saw immediately in front of him. He was in that psychological state when seconds seem minutes, and minutes seem hours; when a small incident experienced personally seems to embrace the whole event. The tendency of eye-witnesses to look upon themselves as the centre of events, has been noticed long ago. In Major Lauer's description this characteristic feature of an eye-witness reaches an extreme.

Major Lauer evidently got into that group of Austrian cavalymen before whom part of the Russians, at the beginning of the fight, turned back. This could have happened either on the Russian right flank where the Russian Dragoons were met by the Austrian machine gun fire from hill 419, or at the point where the Austrians broke through between the Russian Lancers and Dragoons. But in Major Lauer's narrative, that incident—one of secondary importance—assumes the proportions of a defeat of the whole Russian front, and of a complete victory of the Austrians. He describes it in the following words:

A furious rattling of machine guns is added to the rifle and pistol shots. The machine gun section of the 15th Dragoon regiment went forward at full speed, on its own initiative, toward the salient near the farmhouse Lipnik,* on the left side of the charging Dragoons, and opened fire. A rain of bullets mows down with great effect the Russian echelons coming up from the rear.** Those machine-guns contributed greatly to the victorious issue of the hand to hand fight. The Russian horsemen begin, first singly, then in groups, to gallop away in the direction whence they have come. They are closely mixed up with the Austrians who pursue them. All this cavalry mass, enveloped in a huge column of dust, is moving now in the direction of the village of Beremovka, towards the Russian artillery. The latter, having noticed that the fight has taken a turn unfavorable for the Russians, opens a quick fire on the approaching cloud of dust, disregarding the possibility of hitting friends as well as foes. The exhausted Dragoons and Trani-Lancers are no longer in a position to withstand that fire. While the Russians get out of sight in the neighborhood of Yaroslavitsy, our cavalymen, accompanied by furious firing, turn back and head for the place of safety formed by the steep banks of the Strypa river.

Thus, according to Major Lauer, it turns out that it was the Austrian cavalry which won the victory, and the Russians who suffered defeat.

There remains, however, an important fact of which no explanation from Major Lauer is forthcoming. He does not explain why the "victors" cleared away from the battle field, having lost all their guns and about 150 men taken prisoners. And that was not all that they had lost. All Austrian

* Near hill 419.

** There were no such echelons.

limbers, machine guns, as well as the records and files of the Austrian divisional staff packed up in a box, and various equipment got into the hands of the "defeated" Russians.

Furthermore, one feels at a loss to understand another assertion made by Major Lauer. He writes that when, after the charge, the Austrian division was assembling near the village of Dvorzhiska, at a point about two miles away from the battle field, "the Russian artillery appeared on the ridge near the village of Volchkovtsy and, using direct fire, fired from a distance of one kilometer (about two-third of a mile) at the dense mass of the regiments which had been just assembled."

Never in the whole military history did such facts happen: The "defeated" side takes trophies, and it also energetically pursues the "victorious" side.

The lack of impartiality—an express condition of every scientific study—coupled with Major Lauer's inability to base general statements on what took place in reality, considerably diminishes the historical value of his article. However, it contains certain data which are of unquestionable interest. For example, he states that, from the moment when the 15th Dragoon regiment began its charge up to the final turning back of the Austrians, all happened in about ten minutes. From Count Keller's report it is also clear that the whole mounted charge lasted only a few minutes.



Cooperation Between the National Guard and the Organized Reserves

By

Colonel GUY S. NORVELL, Cavalry

THERE is no doubt whatever, that the trend of our military laws and regulations is to emphasize the necessity for the thorough co-operation of the components of the Army of the United States.

Section 1 of the National Defense Act states that the Army of the United States shall consist of the Regular Army, the National Guard while in the service of the United States, and the Organized Reserves, including the Officers' Reserve Corps and the Enlisted Reserve Corps.

Officers of the National Guard are appointed by the Governors of their respective States, and during the process of being extended Federal recognition by the War Department, take the prescribed oath of office to support and defend the Constitution of the United States and of their respective States. They may then be ordered to encampments and maneuvers, camps of instruction, and duty at Service Schools, as specified in the National Act.

In case of certain emergencies, the National Guard may be called into the service of the United States by the President, and the required service is then rendered by the Guard, including the officers, under its militia status. While serving under the call into Federal service, the personnel and organizations of the National Guard are subject to, and are governed by the same regulations and orders as the Regular Army, with certain modifications not necessary to mention here. The Governors of the States still continue to appoint the officers. If Congress authorizes the draft of the National Guard for an emergency, however, the Guard becomes one of the components of the Army of the United States, loses its militia status, and it is necessary that the officers be appointed by the President and have commissions in the Army of the United States. It is primarily to provide for the purposes of the draft that efforts have been made to appoint all officers of the National Guard as officers of the Officers' Reserve Corps. As a result of these efforts, on June 30, 1928, slightly less than seven thousand of the eleven thousand officers of the National Guard had been commissioned in the Officers' Reserve Corps. The remaining four thousand did not hold such commissions on that date, and in case of an emergency requiring the draft of the National Guard, it would be necessary to commission these officers in the Officers' Reserve Corps or they would have no Federal status.

It has been considered appropriate to mention the above stated facts, as they emphasize how close is the relationship between the National Guard and the Organized Reserve, and therefore how desirable and essential it is for a close affiliation between these two components of the Army of the United

256

States. It is apparent that any lack of co-operation detracts that much from the efficiency of the Army.

The missions of the National Guard and the Organized Reserves are as follows:

National Guard:

In time of peace, to provide an adequate, organized, and effective force, sufficiently trained and developed so that it will be available in minor emergencies for employment within the limits of the United States and by the States or by the United States, so that it will be immediately available in major emergencies for employment in the execution of limited missions.

In time of war, or major emergencies, when Congress has authorized the use of troops in excess of those of the Regular Army, to provide an adequate and effective component of the Army of the United States without restriction as to missions or place of employment.

Organized Reserves:

In time of peace, to provide partially organized and partially trained units which may be readily expanded to war strength and completely trained in time of emergency and which in combination with the Regular Army and the National Guard, will provide an adequate, balanced, and effective force sufficient to meet any national emergency declared by Congress.

The primary object of training of all units of the Regular Army, National Guard, and Organized Reserves is first of all to prepare them for prompt and efficient field service. As they all have this same general objective, it is unnecessary to say that the best results can only be obtained by the closest cohesion and co-operation.

The object of training the Reserve officer in time of peace is to prepare him to function efficiently in the assignment he now has, or which he will have on mobilization. His individual training should, therefore, be directed toward preparing him to perform emergency duty in his present grade.

Army Regulations state that the training of the units of the Organized Reserves and of Reserve officers, regardless of duty status, is governed by certain Training Regulations which are provided for the training of the Army of the United States. Responsibility for training is a function of command, and the supervision and control of, and the responsibility for the training of units of the Organized Reserves and of Reserve officers is vested in the Corps Area Commanders or in the Chiefs of Branches for units and officers under their respective jurisdictions.

In the Army training system, provision is made in several ways for the training of Reserve officers, and among the means prescribed are the following:

Active duty with a unit of the Regular Army, or, with the consent of the proper State officials, with a unit of the National Guard for practice in technique and tactics of a branch of the service.

Duty on an inactive status with a unit of the Regular Army, or, with the

consent of the proper State officials, with a unit of the National Guard.

The National Guard falls under the direct command of territorial commanders only when called or drafted into Federal service. At other times, such commanders exercise their powers in accordance with the policies of the War Department as promulgated through the Chief of the Militia Bureau, and the supervision includes all armory and field instruction, the supervision being conducted by means of the Regular Army officers and noncommissioned officers who have been detailed as instructors.

The Militia Bureau is charged with the administration and development of the National Guard in accordance with the approved policies and plans of the War Department, and with the promulgation of orders and instructions to make effective the policies and plans mentioned above, for the instruction and training of the National Guard when it is not in the Federal service. These orders and instructions can, of course, only be carried out through the co-operation of the National Guard authorities of the several States.

General instructions have not yet been published in National Guard Regulations with reference to the training of members of the Officers' Reserve Corps with the National Guard, but special instructions on the subject were issued by the Militia Bureau in 1925, and are still in effect. They included the following:

1. The War Department Training Directive, Training Year 1925 (A. G. 353, 11-17-24), contains the following provisions in Par. 5 c (1) (a):

In order to take advantage of all opportunities for training, reserve officers, upon their own application, accompanied by the recommendation of the National Guard commander, and with the approval of the State Adjutant General may be attached by the Corps Area Commander to a National Guard organization for purpose of inactive training throughout the year. Under similar conditions Reserve officers may be ordered to active duty for 15 day field training period with National Guard units.

2. In order to state more clearly the intent of this provision and prescribe correct procedure in its application, pending its incorporation in National Guard Regulations, the following instructions in application thereof will govern:

a. That such Reserve officers as may desire to be attached to organizations of the National Guard for training throughout the training year will make individual application through the commander of the National Guard organization to which attachment is desired and the Adjutant General of the State to the Corps Area commander concerned, who, subject to their approval may authorize such attachment. When the initiative in attaching Reserve officers to National Guard organizations for either Armory or Field Training is taken by the Corps Area Commander after having previously secured the concurrence of the Reserve personnel concerned, he should submit their names to the State Adjutants General concerned for approval, and for the designation of the particular organization with which such training is to be accomplished.

b. Reserve officers so attached will take active part in such of the armory training of the National Guard organizations as may be mutually agreed upon, and when sufficient funds are available, they will participate in the 15 day field training of the organization.

c. The attachment of such Reserve officers may be terminated upon

application of either the attached officer, the commander of the National Guard organization, and the Adjutant General of the State, or the Corps Area Commander. All such applications should be directed to the Corps Area Commander and final action thereon should be taken by him.

d. The number of Reserve officers who can be attached to a National Guard unit, if mutual benefit is to be derived from such attachment, is dependent upon the state of training of the units concerned. For the present, in no case should the number of Reserve officers attached exceed the actual officer strength of the National Guard organization. Not to exceed 1 captain should be attached to a company or similar unit. Subaltern officers may be grouped, i. e., a National Guard unit whose officer strength includes 1 captain, 1 1st lieutenant and 1 2nd lieutenant might have attached to it 1 captain and 2 subalterns or 3 subalterns. In the field grades the number of National Guard officers, grade for grade, should not be exceeded.

e. As a matter of courtesy extended by the National Guard authorities, encouragement in co-operation and training among elements of the Army of the United States should be developed through practice of the functions of command with State troops by Reserve officers not holding commissions in such State organizations. With a proper understanding of the situation, and with precedent for such command practice as has been heretofore established by National Guard and Reserve officers with respect to organizations of the Regular Army, no difficulties should arise. In no case should the exercise of temporary command by Reserve officers be undertaken unless agreeable to the National Guard commander concerned and the training of the organization be not interfered with.

f. As far as may be practicable and feasible, National Guard authorities should insure to Reserve officers so attached, without prejudice to their own training, the same opportunities for training as are presented to National Guard officers of like grade. The status of Reserve officers, as to their relationship and duties, would be determined by the commanding officer of the organization to which such officers are attached. They should be required to conform to the rules and discipline of the National Guard organization to which attached. It is to be understood that National Guard authorities will report infraction of discipline on the part of Reserve officers, through normal channels, to the Corps Area Commander for action.

General Orders No. 9, War Department, dated May 15, 1926, pertains to *Notes on Training* and makes the following remarks bearing on the training of the National Guard and the Organized Reserves:

After several years of development and improvement, a definite training system of the Army of the United States was established in the calendar year 1925. The marked advance evidenced in this system is being accomplished, first, by developing between local commanders and their surrounding communities, as well as between all elements of the Army of the United States, a better understanding of our National Defense problems, the National Defense obligations of each element and a co-operative desire to meet these obligations; and second, by decentralizing training responsibilities.

A distinct improvement was made in the training of the National Guard.

Due to the development of unit training and to the general application of the associate method of training with the Regular Army, the Organized Reserves made a distinct advance in their training. One of the outstanding

features of the year was the affiliation of the National Guard and the Organized Reserves.

Commanders of units of the National Guard and of the Organized Reserves are naturally very much interested in the training, efficiency, and esprit of their own commands, and as under all rules and regulations they are as far as practicable held responsible for their units in these matters, as well as in many others, it is quite advisable and is, moreover, contemplated that they should be interfered with as little as possible in applying the prescribed methods of accomplishing results.

Officers of both components have two kinds of instruction: armory and field training for the National Guard, inactive and active duty for the Organized Reserves.

As a general rule, the armory training of the National Guard and the inactive training of the Organized Reserves are carried on during the winter months, the one at the armories approximately once a week, and the other at such places as may be available and as often as circumstances will permit, frequently once a week and sometimes more often.

The field training of the National Guard is held for fifteen-day periods during the summer and the active duty training of the Organized Reserves is approximately the same. As the latter have a very limited amount of equipment and supplies, the training is nearly always carried on at either Regular Army posts or at National Guard training grounds. Dependence is therefore placed by the Organized Reserves on the other two components of the Army of the United States for the necessary supplies and equipment. It is quite impracticable, of course, under existing appropriations, to supply the Organized Reserves with complete equipment of their own. This brings about a situation in which the Regular Army and the Organized Reserves and the National Guard and the Organized Reserves are by necessity, brought together. The situation calls for the closest harmony and the greatest co-operation: in the absence of either, there will be a failure of results accomplished and, possibly, disastrous consequences.

It is quite evident from all that has been said above, that it has been a well recognized military fact ever since the National Defense Act was enacted that the closest co-operation should exist between the National Guard and the Organized Reserves. Our laws, regulations, and instructions on the subject all point in the same direction, and provision has been made in them of the manner in which this may be done. It remains for these two components of the Army of the United States to carry out this idea by extending toward each other every assistance that is practicable without interfering with their own training and responsibilities.

Eighteenth Century Equitation

THROUGH THE KINDNESS of Lieutenant Colonel Howard Converse, Cavalry Reserve, we are enabled to present to CAVALRY JOURNAL readers, extracts from a very unique and interesting volume which was published in England in 1778. The work was originally written in 1761. The title follows:

MILITARY EQUITATION

Or, a METHOD of
BREAKING HORSES

AND

Teaching SOLDIERS to RIDE

DESIGNED FOR
The Use of the ARMY

By

HENRY, Earl of PEMBROKE,
etc., etc., etc.

It was dedicated to the King in the following words:

To

The KING

Sir,

When the first regiment of light dragoons was raised under the command of my friend General GEORGE AUGUSTUS ELIOTT, we had frequent occasion to lament together the wretched system of HORSEMANSHIP, that at present prevails in the ARMY: A system disgraceful in itself, and productive in its consequences of the most fatal evils: For troops in their own nature most excellent and brave have been frequently rendered inferior to less powerful ones, both in men and horses, for want of proper instructions and intelligence in this Art. These serious considerations (for indeed they are very much so) induced me to write down and make public the following Lessons, calculated for the use of the Cavalry: They are such as I have always practiced myself; and taught both in the above-mentioned regiment and elsewhere, with constant success. Incited by these reasons, I thus presume to lay at your Majesty's feet this little work, the outlines only of a more extensive, general one, which I intend to make public hereafter, should I find time to finish it: And I am the more encouraged to it from the honour You have often done me of talking to me upon HORSEMANSHIP, as also from this confidence, that if what I here recommend, be deemed in any wise likely to be useful, (as I flatter myself it may, if candidly examined, and judiciously practiced) it will not fail to receive Your MAJESTY'S Royal Approbation and Support. I am,

Sir,

Your MAJESTY'S

Most Dutiful Subject,

And Devoted Servant,

PEMBROKE

Pembroke-House

Feb. 15, 1761.

Chapters I and II, with a portion of Chapter III are given below. The old style s (f) is used in the text. In order to facilitate its perusal, the modern

form of the letter has been substituted throughout. Capitalization and punctuation are unchanged.

*The Method of Preparing Horses to be Mounted,
With the Circumstances Relative to it.*

Though all horses for the service are generally bought at an age, when they have already been backed, I would have them begun and prepared for the rider with the same care, gentleness and caution, as if they had never been handled or backed, in order to prevent accidents, which might else arise from skittishness or other causes; and as it is proper, that they should be taught the figure of the ground they are to go upon, when they are first mounted, they should be previously trotted in a *longe* on large circles, without any one upon them, and without a saddle, or anything else, at first, which might hurt, constrain, tickle, or make them any ways uneasy.

The manner of doing this is as follows: Put an easy *cavesson* upon the horse's nose, and make him go forwards round you, standing quiet and holding the *longe*; and let another man, if you find it necessary, follow him with a whip: All this must be done very gently, and but a little at a time; for more horses are spoilt by over-much work, than by any other treatment whatever; and that by very contrary effects, for sometimes it drives them into vice, madness and despair, and often it stupifies them and totally dispirits them. An excellent way of *longing* horses, who are apt to carry their heads low, (which many do) is to *longe* them with a cord buckled to the top of the head-stall, and passing from thence through the eye of the snaffle into the hand of the person who holds the *longe*.

The first obedience required in a horse, is going forwards: 'Till he performs this duty freely, never even think of making him rein back, which would inevitably render him restive: As soon as he goes forwards readily, stop and caress him. You must remember in this, and likewise in every other exercise, to use him to go equally well, to the right and left; and when he obeys, caress him and dismiss him immediately. A horse, though ever so perfect to one hand only, is but a half dressed horse. If a horse, that is very young, takes fright and stands still, lead on another horse before him, which probably will induce him instantly to follow. Put a snaffle in his mouth; which snaffle should be full, and thick in the mouth-piece, and not too short: and when he goes freely, saddle him, girthing him at first very loose. Let the cord, which you hold, be long and loose; but not so much so, as to endanger the horse's entangling his legs in it. It must be observed, that small circles, in the beginning, would constrain the horse too much, and put him upon defending himself. No bend must be required at first: never suffer him to gallop false; but whenever he attempts it, stop him without delay, and then set him off afresh. If he gallops of his own accord, and true, permit him to continue it; but if he does it not voluntarily, do not demand it of him at first. Should he fly and jump, shake the cord gently upon his nose without jerking it, and

he will fall into his trot again. If he stands still, plunges or rears, let the man, who holds the whip, make a noise with it; but never touch him, 'till it be absolutely necessary to make him go on. When you change hands, stop and caress him, and entice him by fair means to come up to you: for by presenting yourself, as some do, on a sudden before horses, and frightening them to the other side, you run a great risk of giving them a shyness. If he keeps his head too low, heighten your hand, and shake the *cavesson* to make him raise it: And in whatever the horse does, whether he walks, trots, or gallops, let it be a constant rule, that the motion be determined and really such as is intended, without the least shuffling, pacing, or any other irregular gait. A false gait should never be suffered. The trot is the pace, which enables all quadrupeds to balance and support themselves with firmness and ease. When he goes lightly and freely, tie his head a little inwards by degrees: more, and more so, as he grows more supple both in trotting, and galloping, in the *longe*, without any one upon him. Great care must be taken, that he always goes true, and that his head is not kept tied for any time together; for if it was, he would infallibly get a trick of leaning on the rein, and throw himself heavily upon his shoulders, when he grew tired. Every regiment should have some covered place for their riding during the winter, or nothing hardly can be done in the bad season. In good weather, it is full as well, and more pleasant, to work out of doors; and indeed doing so frequently prevents local routines, which horses are sometimes particularly apt to take in shut schools, if great care is not taken. On the other hand, they are more often *distrained*, and apt to lose their attention by various objects, in fields, than they are in a riding-house. It is therefore difficult to decide, either for the one or the other. There is more liberty in the one, than in the other, and horses out of doors grow used to objects they would otherwise fear. In shut schools, work may be more exactly done, perhaps, and the ground there is best. Both are good at proper seasons, and either will do very well, if the Riding-Master is good.

*The Method of Placing the Men, and rendering them firm on
Horse Back; With Some Occasional Instructions for
Them and the Horses; and of Bits.*

'Tis necessary that the greatest attention, and the same gentleness, that is used in teaching the horses, be observed likewise in teaching the men, especially at the beginning. Every method and art must be practiced to create and preserve, both in man and horse, all possible feeling and sensibility, contrary to the usage of most riding-masters, who seem industriously to labour at abolishing these principles both in the one and in the other. As so many essential points depend upon the manner, in which a man is first placed on horseback, it ought to be considered, and attended to with the strictest care and exactness.

The absurdity of putting a man, who perhaps has never before been upon a horse, (or if he has, 'tis probably so much the worse) on a rough trotting

one, on which he is obliged (supposing the horse is insensible enough to suffer it; and if he be not, the man runs a great risk of breaking his neck) to stick with all the force of his arms and legs, is too obvious to need mentioning. This rough work, all at once, is plainly as detrimental at first, as it is excellent afterwards in proper time. No man can be either well, or firmly seated on horseback, unless he be master of the balance of his body, quite unconstrained, with a full possession of himself, and at his ease, on all occasions whatever; none of which requisites can he enjoy, if his attention be otherwise engaged; as it must wholly be in a raw, unsupplied, and unprepared lad, who is put at once upon a rough horse: In such a distressful state he is forced to keep himself on at any rate, by holding to the bridle, (at the expense of the sensibility both of his own hand, and the horse's mouth) and by clinging with his legs, in danger of his life, and to the certain depravation of a right feeling in the horse;—a thing absolutely necessary to be kept delicate, for the forming properly both of man and horse; not to mention the horrid appearance of such a figure, rendered totally incapable of use and action.

The first time a man is put on horseback, it ought to be upon a very gentle one. He never should be made to trot, 'till he is quite easy in the walk, and then on very easy horses at first. Afterwards, as he grows firmer put him on rougher horses, and augment by degrees the velocity of the trot. He should not gallop, 'till he can trot well; because, though the motion of the gallop is the easiest, a horse may be more easily unsettled in galloping than in trotting. The same must be observed in regard to horses: they should never be made to trot, 'till they are obedient, and their mouths are well formed on a walk; nor be made to gallop, 'till the same be effected on a trot. When he is arrived at such a degree of firmness in his seat, the more he trots, (which no man whatever should ever leave off) and the more he rides rough horses the better. This is not only the best method, (I may say, the only right one) but also the easiest and the shortest: by it, a man is soon made sufficiently an horseman for a soldier; but by the other detestable methods, that are commonly used, a man, instead of improving, contracts all sorts of bad habits, and rides worse and worse every day; the horse too becomes daily more and more unfit for use. In proceeding according to the manner I have proposed, a man is rendered firm and easy upon the horse, and, as it were, of a piece with him; both his own and the horse's sensibility is preserved, and each in a situation fit to receive and practice all lessons effectually: for if the man and horse do not both work without difficulty and constraint, the more they are exercised, the worse they become; everything they do, is void of all grace, and of all use. When the man has acquired a perfect firmness on a saddle, he should by degrees be made equally firm on a rug, or on a horse's bare back; so much so, as to be as firm, to work as well, and be quite as much at his ease, as on any demi-pique saddle. Very little patience and attention will bring this about.

Among the various methods, that are used, of placing people on horseback, few are directed by reason. Some insist, that scarce any pressure at all

should be upon the backside; others would have the seat be almost upon the backbone: out of these two contrary, and equally ridiculous methods, an excellent one may be found, by taking the medium. Before you let the man mount, teach him to know, and always to examine, if the curb be well placed, (I mean, when the horse has a bit in his mouth, which at first he should not, but only a snaffle, 'till the rider is firm in his seat, and the horse also somewhat taught) and likewise if the nose-band be properly tight; the throat-band loosish, and the mouth-piece neither too high, nor too low in the horse's mouth, but rightly put, so as not to wrinkle the skin, nor to hang lax; the girths drawn moderately, but not too tight; the crupper, and the breast-plate, properly adjusted, and whether the reins are of equal length. They should be frequently taken off and made so, when they are found not to be so. A very good and careful hand may venture on a bit at first, and succeed with it full as well, as by beginning with a snaffle alone: but such a proceeding will require more care, more delicacy, and more time, than can be expected in a corps, whose numbers are so considerable, and where there are so few, if any good riders: A raw man is much easier taught to do well, than one, who has learnt ever so long, on bad principles; for it is much more difficult to undo, than to do; and the same in respect to the horse. On colts, it is better in all schools whatsoever, to avoid any pressure on the bars just at first, which a curb, though ever so delicately used, must in some degree occasion. Whoever begins a horse with a bridle, must be, in every respect, a very good, delicate rider, and be very careful that the horse does not get and keep his head low, whereby all action in the shoulders is spoiled. I have seen some schools, in France particularly, where a bit was immediately put into a horse's mouth at first; but I have constantly observed in those schools, that their horses carried their heads low, that the motion of their shoulders was not free, but confined. Here and there one horse or so, indeed, there might be, whose fore-hand nature had placed so high, that nothing could bring it down low. Great care must be taken to make the men use their snaffles delicately; otherwise, as a snaffle has not the power which a bridle has upon a horse's mouth, they will use themselves to take such liberties with it, as will quite spoil their hands, and teach the horses to pull, be dead in hand, and quite upon their shoulders, entirely deprived of good action. Whenever any bridles are used, (and they always should be at a proper time, when the horse's heads are high, and they are well determined, light in hand, and free in their motions) they must be all the same; for though different mouths require different sorts of bits, it is absolutely necessary that some general uniform sort should be used throughout a whole regiment. They should differ only in breadth, according to the breadth of each horse's mouth. There needs no great variety of sizes for biting a whole regiment. The best I could ever pitch on, after repeated trials, is one made after this drawing (omitted). The weight of the bit, without the curb, is about fourteen ounces three quarters, the curb alone weighs about four ounces and a quarter, and the little chain to prevent

horses taking the branches in their mouth, (which is a trick very many horses get) three quarters of an ounce. The whole together weighs one pound, three ounces, and three quarters. The rings to the branches should be fixed, and the reins buckled to them, to prevent the latter from twisting. The mouth-piece is of a proper shape, height, and substance, and is fixed. All such as are not so, and move in the joint, have a bad, uncertain effect. Thin curbs are bad, and apt, if at all roughly used, (a thing very difficult to prevent at all times in some people's hands) to cut, and damage the horse's mouth very much. They should be flat, broad, and easy, that they may not hurt the horse's *barbe*, but they must not be thick, or heavy. This bridle is calculated for light troops. Heavier corps, who have larger horses, and of another kind, may have the branches a quarter of an inch longer, and the whole bridle somewhat, but very little more substantial. Bridles should never be used with raw recruits, or with raw horses, at first: a plain mouthed, smooth snaffle, does much better: the twisted, sharp, cutting ones, are barbarous, callous making instruments at best; the single ones, as well as the double rein ones, are often very useful, and agreeable even with dressed horses upon all airs whatsoever, if they are apt to get their heads low. When these necessary precautions have been all taken, let the man approach the horse gently near the shoulder; then taking the reins and a handful of the mane in his left hand, let him put his left foot softly into the left stirrup, (but not too far in) by pulling it towards him, lest he touch the horse with his toe, which might frighten him; then raising himself up, let him rest a moment on it with his body upright, but not stiff: and after that, passing his right leg clear over the saddle, without rubbing against any thing, let him seat himself gently down. The same precautions must also be taken in dismounting. He must be cautious not to take the reins too short, for fear of making the horse rear, run, or fall back, or throw up his head; but let him hold them of an equal length neither tight nor slack, and with the little finger betwixt them. 'Tis fit that horses should be accustomed to stand still to be mounted, and not stir 'till the rider pleases. The man, who holds the horse to be mounted, must not do it by the bridle, but only by the cheeks of the head-stall, and gently, otherwise the same inconvenience might arise, as from the rider's holding the reins too short himself in mounting. All soldiers should be instructed to mount and dismount equally well on both sides, which may be of very great use in times of hurry and confusion. Place the man in his saddle, with his body rather back, and his head held up with ease, without stiffness; seated neither forwards, nor very backwards, with the breast pushed out a little, and the lower part of the body likewise a little forwards; the legs and thighs turned in without constraint, and the feet in a strait line, neither turned in nor out: By this position, the natural weight of the thighs has a proper and sufficient pressure of itself, and the legs are in readiness to act, when called upon: they must hang down easy and naturally, and be so placed, as not to be wriggling about, touching and tickling the horse's sides, but always near them in case they should be wanted, as

well as the heels.

The body must be carefully kept easy and firm, and without any rocking, when in motion; which is a bad habit very easily contracted, especially in galloping. The left elbow must be gently leant against the body, a little forwards; unless it be so rested, the hand cannot be steady, but will be always checking, and consequently have pernicious effects on the horse's mouth: and the hand ought to be of equal height with the elbow; if it were lower, it would constrain and confine the motion of the horse's shoulders, which must be free. I speak here of the position of the hand in general; for as the mouths of horses are different, the place of the hand also must occasionally differ: a leaning, low, heavy fore-hand, requires a high hand; and a horse that pokes out his nose, a low one. The right hand arm must be placed in symmetry with the left; only let the right hand be a little forwarder or backwarder, higher or lower, as occasions may require: in order that both hands may be free, both arms must be a little bent at the elbow, to prevent stiffness.

A soldier's right hand should be kept unemployed in riding; it carries the sword, which is a sufficient business for it: In learning therefore to ride, the men should have a whip or switch in it, and hold it upwards, that they may thereby know how to carry their swords properly, keeping it downwards only, when they mount or dismount, that the horse may not be frightened at the sight of it.

The hand must be kept clear of the body, about two inches and a half forwards from it, with the nails turned opposite to the waistcoat buttons, and the wrist a little rounded with ease; a position not less graceful than ready for slackening, tightening, and moving the reins from one side to the other, as may be found necessary.

A firm and well balanced position of the body, on horseback, is (as has already been said) of the utmost consequence; as it affects the horse in every motion, and is the best of helps: whereas on the contrary, the want of it is the greatest detriment to him, and an impediment in all his actions. Many people make a great difference about saddles, as a serious object of firmness; but nobody can be truly said to have a seat, who is not equally firm on flat, or demi-piqued saddles, on the true principles of equilibrio, and ease. When the men are well placed, the more rough trotting they have, without stirrups, the better; but with a strict care always, that their position be preserved very exactly. As for those unfeeling fellows, who continue sticking by their hands, in spite of all the teacher's attention to prevent it, nothing remains to be done, but to make them drop the reins quite on a safe going horse, and to keep their hands in the same position, as if they held them. In all cases without exception, but more especially in this, great care must be taken to hinder their clinging with their legs: in short, no sticking by hands or legs is ever to be allowed of at any time. If the motion of the horse be too rough,

slacken it, 'till the rider grows by degrees more firm: and when he is quite firm and easy on his horse in every kind of motion, stirrups may be given him; but he must never leave off trotting often, and working often without any.

The stirrups must be neither short nor long; but of such a length that when the rider, being well placed, puts his feet into them, (about one-third of the length of the foot from the point of it) the points may be between two and three inches higher than the heels; longer stirrups are bad, and would make it very difficult for the rider to get his leg over the baggage, forage, cloak, etc. which are fastened on behind upon the saddle: and shorter would be bad in every respect, and answer no end at all. The length I mentioned above, is just the right one, and is to be taken in the following method: make the rider place himself upon the saddle, even, upright and well, with his legs hanging down, and the stirrups likewise: and when he is in this position, raise the rider's toe to an equal height with his heel, and take up the stirrup, 'till the bottom of it comes just under the ankle-bone. The stirrups must be exactly of an equal length. The rider must not bear upon his stirrups, but only let the natural weight of his legs rest on them: for if he bore upon them, he would be raised above, and out of his saddle; which should never be, except in charging sword in hand, with the body inclined forwards at the very instant of attacking. Spurs may be given as soon as the rider is grown familiar with stirrups, or even long before, if his legs are well placed.

Delicacy in the use of the hands, as well as in the use of the legs, may be given by the teacher to a certain degree; but 'tis nature alone that can bestow that great sensibility, without which neither one nor the other can be formed to any great perfection. A hand should be firm, but delicate: a horse's mouth should never be surprised by any sudden transition of it, either from slack to tight, or from tight to slack. Everything in horsemanship must be effected by degrees, and with delicacy, but at the same time with spirit and resolution. That hand, which by giving and taking properly, gains its point with the least force, is the best; and the horse's mouth, under this same hand's directions, will also consequently be the best, supposing equal advantages in both from nature. This principle of gentleness should be observed upon all occasions in every branch of horsemanship. Hard, bad mouths, may appear soft and good to an insensible hand; so that it is impossible to form any judgment of a horse's mouth by what anybody tells you of it, unless you know the degree of sensibility, and science that person is possessed of in horsemanship, or ride the horse yourself. Sometimes the right hand may be necessary, for a moment, upon some troublesome horses, to assist the left; but the seldomer this is done the better; especially in a soldier, who has a sword to carry, and to make use of.

The snaffle must on all occasions be uppermost, that is to say, the reins of it must be above those of the bridle, whether the snaffle or the bit be used separately, or whether they be both used together. When the rider knows

enough, and the horse is sufficiently prepared and settled to begin any work towards suppling, one rein must be shortened according to the side worked to, (as is explained in its proper place) but it must never be so much shortened, as to make the whole strength rest on that rein alone; for, not to mention that the work would be false and bad, one side of the horse's mouth would by that means be always deadened; whereas on the contrary, it should always be kept fresh by its own play, and by the help of the opposite rein's acting delicately in a smaller degree of tension, the joint effects of which produce in a horse's mouth the proper, gentle, and easy degree of *appui* or bearing, to preserve which, when obtained, the horse must not be overworked; if he is, he will, besides other bad consequences, throw himself on his shoulders into the rider's hand, like a tired post-horse on the road. Colts indeed, as well as men, at first must be taught the effect of the reins taken separately, for fear of confounding them in the beginning with mixed effects of them at once. Avoid working in deep, bad ground; besides its spoiling a horse's paces, it obliges him to throw himself on his shoulders upon the rider's hand, and teaches him to toss his head about disagreeably.

A coward and a madman make alike bad riders, and are both alike discovered and confounded by the superior sense of the creature they are mounted upon, who is equally spoilt by both, though in very different ways. The coward, by suffering the animal to have his own way, not only confirms him in his bad habits, but creates new ones in him: and the madman, by false and violent motions and corrections, ruins the horse, and drives him, through despair, into every bad and vicious trick that rage can suggest.

All horses heads must be kept very high, 'till they are quite determined, and free in the motions of their shoulders.

It is very requisite in horsemanship, that the hand and legs should act in correspondence with each other in everything; the latter always subservient and assistant to the former. Upon circles, in walking, trotting, or galloping, (I mean only where nothing more is intended) the outward leg is the only one to be used; and that only for a moment at a time, in order to make the horse go true, if he be false; and as soon as that is done, it must be taken away again immediately. If the horse is lazy, or anyways retains himself, both legs must be used, and pressed to his sides at the same time together; if after having tried softer methods, such as a gentle pressure of the thighs, and putting the legs back, they should fail, but not before. The less the legs are used in general, the better. Very delicate riders, in regular well attended good schools, never want their help; and horses so dressed, are by far superior to all others: they obey the smallest touch on the rein, or the least weight of the body thrown one way, or the other, imperceptibly, as may be necessary: the horse and man seem one, and the same, and such is the practice and teaching of great masters, but that perfection in the feeling of either man, or horse, is not to be expected in the hurry which can not be avoided in a regimental school, where the numbers are so great. By the term outward, is understood

the side which is more remote from the center; and by inward, is meant the side next to the center. In reining back, the rider should be careful not to use his legs, unless the horse backs on his shoulders; in which case, they must be both applied gently at the same time, and correspond with the hand. If the horse refuse to back at all, the rider's legs must be gently approached, 'till the horse lifts up a leg, as if to go forwards; at which time, when that leg is in the air, the rein of the same side with that leg, which is lifted up, will easily bring that same leg backwards, and accordingly oblige the horse to back: but if the horse offers to rear, the legs must be instantly removed away. The inward rein must be the tighter on circles, so that the horse may bend and look inwards; and the outward one crossed over a little towards it; and both held in the left hand, that soldiers may not have their right employed, which, as has before been observed, must be left free for other more necessary uses.

Let the man and horse begin all lessons whatsoever on very slow motions, that they may have time to understand, and reflect on what is taught them; but though the motions are slow, they must not be dull, but determined, and without hesitation. In proportion as the effects of the reins are better comprehended, and the manner of working becomes more familiar, the quickness of motion must be increased. Every rider must learn to feel, without the help of the eye, when a horse goes false, even in the most speedy, and the most violent motions, and remedy the fault accordingly: this is an intelligence, which nothing but practice, application, and attention, can give, in the beginning on slow motions. A horse may not only gallop false, but also trot and walk false. If a horse gallops false, that is to say, if going to the right, he leads with the left leg; or if going to the left, he leads with the right; or in case he is disunited, by which is meant, if he leads with the opposite leg behind to that which he leads with before, stop him immediately, and put him off again properly: the method of effecting this, is by approaching your outward leg, gently, and putting your hand outwards, still keeping the inward rein the shorter, and the horse's head inwards, if possible; but if he should still resist, then bend and pull his head outwards also. Replace it again, bent properly inwards, the moment he goes off true. The help of the leg in this, and indeed all other cases, must not be made use of at all, 'till that of the hand alone has proved ineffectual. A horse is said to be disunited to the right, when going to the right, and consequently leading with the right leg before, he leads with the left behind; and is said to be disunited to the left, when going to the left, and consequently leading with the left leg before, he leads with the right behind. A horse may at the same time be both false and disunited; in correcting both which faults, the same method must be used. He is both false and disunited to the right, when in going to the right he leads with the left leg before, and the right behind; notwithstanding that hinder leg be with propriety more forward under his belly, than the left, because the horse is working to the right: and he is false and disunited to

the left, when in going to the left, he leads with the right leg before, and the left behind; notwithstanding, as above, that hinder leg be with propriety more forward under his belly than the right, because the horse is working to the left.

Care must be taken, that horses, in stopping on the gallop, stop true, behind particularly, which they are very apt not to do; especially in the longe, and bent, without anyone on them.

In teaching men a right seat on horseback, the greatest attention must be given to prevent stiffness, and sticking by force in any manner upon any occasion: stiffness disgraces every work; and sticking serves only to throw a man (when displaced) a great distance from his horse, by the spring he must go off with: whereas by a proper equilibrating position of the body, and by the natural weight only of the thighs, he cannot but be firm, and secure in his seat.

As the men become more firm, and the horses more supple, 'tis proper to make the circles less, but not too much so, for fear of throwing the horses forwards upon their shoulders.

No bits should be used, 'till the riders are firm, and the horses bend well to right and left; and then too always with the greatest care and gentleness. The silly custom of using strong and heavy bits, is in all good schools with reason laid aside, as it should be likewise in military riding: they pull down the horse's head, keep it low, thereby obstruct the action of the fore parts, and harden as much the hand of the rider, as the mouth of the horse, both which becoming every day more and more insensible together, nothing can be expected but a most unfeeling callousness both in one and the other. Some horses, when first the bit is put into their mouths, if great care be not taken, will put their heads very low; which low position of the head, provided the top of the head, and the nose, be nearly perpendicular, some ignorant people call a good one; without considering, that the higher the top of the head is, provided that it is nearly perpendicular with the nose, the better the position is on every account. If the top of the head is low, the position is a bad one, notwithstanding the head and nose being nearly perpendicular, because it obstructs the action of the fore parts. With such horses, raise your right hand with the *bridoon* in it, and play at the same time with the bit in the left hand, giving and taking. A strong bit, indeed, will flatter an ignorant hand, just at first; but it will never any other, nor even an ignorant one for any time together; for the horse's mouth will soon grow callous to it, and unfeeling, and the hand the same. Most horses, whose heads are heavy, are apt to stumble.

On circles, the rider must lean his body inwards; unless great attention be given to make him do it, he will be perpetually losing his seat outwards, every rapid or irregular motion the horse may make. 'Tis scarce possible for him to be displaced, if he leans his body properly inwards.

Instructions, both to man and horse, in riding, are of the greatest importance and consequence; as the success of actions in a great measure depends upon them. Squadrons are frequently broken and defeated through the ignorance of the riders, or horses, but most commonly of both together. Many and various are the disasters, that arise from the horses not being properly prepared and suppled, and from the men not being taught firm seats, independent of their hands, and the mouths of their horses. Were the men rightly instructed how to keep the mouths of their horses fresh and obedient, and thereby maintain a cadenced pace, (be it ever so fast, or ever so slow) ranks would of course be always dressed, and unshaken, and consequently always powerful. The stoutest, and by nature, the best of cavalry, is often broken, and thereby rendered inferior far to much weaker and less respectable bodies than themselves, for want of being properly informed in the above mentioned, and such-like particulars. This is a matter worthy of a serious inspection, consideration, and amendment, the neglect of which has upon many occasions been very fatal. 'Tis to be hoped, that some person of sufficient authority and knowledge will contrive to introduce many alterations, that appear very necessary in cavalry. To what purpose is cavalry loaded with such monstrous heavy boots and firelock? a lighter, yet full as strong, and much more serviceable boot might be easily contrived. A light carbine would suit them far better. A hat seems to me a silly and useless piece of dress in a soldier: it is continually falling off, especially in action; nor can it ever serve as a protection against blows, etc. or bad weather, which are circumstances of great consequence: whereas a cap has no inconveniences at all attending it, may be made very ornamental and of a martial appearance, and in such a manner, as to be a good fence against blows, rain, snow, and stormy winds, and also convenient to sleep in.

The Method of Suppling Horses, With Men Upon Them, by the EpauLe en Dedans etc. With and without a Longe, on Circles and on Strait Lines; and of Working Horses in Hand.

When a horse is well prepared and settled in all his motions, ('till when nothing more must be attempted) and the rider firm, (which is also as absolutely necessary) it will be proper then to proceed on towards a farther suppling and teaching of both. In regiments, especially those that are young, there are but very few, if any, tolerable horsemen; which makes the greatest exactness and gentleness absolutely necessary in the instructing of both: and more particularly so in this case, as horse and man are both ignorant, and must be both alike taught together; which is a difficulty, that does not exist in schools; for there a young rider is put upon a made, or at least a quiet horse; nor do any, but able riders ever mount a raw one.

In setting out upon this new work, before which the horse should be taught to go well into the corners, both with his fore and hinder parts, on a walk, (without being bent, for that cannot be yet expected, though it will be soon) and be very light in hand; when he does it, begin by bringing the horses head a little more inwards than before, pulling the inward rein gently to you by degrees. When this is done, try to gain a little on the shoulders, by keeping the inward rein the shorter, as before, and the outward

one crossed over towards the inward one. The intention of these operations is this: the inward rein serves to bring in the head, and procures the bend; whilst the outward one, that is a little crossed, tends to make that bend perpendicular, and as it should be; that is to say, to reduce the nose and the forehead to be in a perpendicular line with each other: it also serves, if put forwards, as well as also crossed, to put the horse forwards, if found necessary; which is often requisite, many horses being apt in this, and other works, rather to lose their ground backwards, than otherwise, when they should rather advance: if the nose were drawn in towards the breast beyond the perpendicular, it would confine the motion of the shoulders, and have other bad effects. All other bends, besides what I have above specified, are false. The outward rein, being crossed, not in a forward sense, but rather a little backwards, serves also, when necessary, to prevent the outward shoulder from getting too forwards, which facilitates the inward leg's crossing it; which is the motion that so admirably supple the shoulders. Care must be taken, that the inward leg pass over the outward one, without touching it: this inward leg's crossing over must be helped by the inward rein, which you must cross towards and over the outward rein, every time the outward leg comes to the ground, in order to lift and help the inward leg over it: at any other time, but just when the outward leg is come to the ground, it would be wrong to cross the inward rein, or to attempt to lift up the inward leg by it: nay, it would be demanding an absolute impossibility, and lugging about the reins and horse to no purpose; because a very great part of the horse's weight resting upon the inward leg would render such an attempt, not only fruitless, but also prejudicial to the sensibility of the mouth, and probably oblige him to defend himself, without being productive of any suppling motion whatsoever.

When the horse is thus far familiarly accustomed to what you have required of him, (but by no means before he is entirely so) then proceed to effect by degrees the same crossing in his hinder legs. By bringing in the fore legs more, you will of course engage the hinder ones in the same work: if they resist, the rider must bring both reins more inwards; and, if necessary, put back also, and approach his inward leg to the horse: and if the horse throws out his croup too far, the rider must bring both reins outwards, and if absolutely necessary, (but not otherwise) he must also delicately make use of his outward leg for a moment, in order to replace the horse properly; observing, that the croup should always be considerably behind the shoulders, which in all actions must go first; and the moment that the horse obeys, the rider must put his hand and leg again into their usual position. In this lesson, as indeed in almost all others, the corners must not be neglected: the horse should go well, and thoroughly into them. Bring his fore parts into them, by crossing over the inward rein towards the outward one, (but without taking off from the proper bend of the head, neck, and shoulders) and bring them out of the corner again by crossing over the outward rein towards the inward one. These uses of the reins have also their proper effects upon the hinder parts.

A Record Ride

By

Major General CHARLES FRANCIS ROE

SOMETIME in the summer or fall of 1869 I was serving at Camp Harney as Second Lieutenant, 1st U. S. Cavalry, and was post adjutant, under Major Elmer S. Otis. One evening about 6:30, the post commander sent for me, saying he had received a message from Department Headquarters, Portland, Oregon, by courier from Canyon City, (75 miles distant and the nearest telegraph office); and that he was ordered to send the enclosed message to the commanding officer of Camp Warner with all possible haste, as it was important to proceed at once to Fort Bidwell, California, to endeavor to prevent an Indian outbreak.

Major Otis directed me to detail two or three cavalymen to get ready at once. I said, "I will volunteer to carry the message, if you wish." He replied, "I would be glad to have you go, but would not ask it. How soon could you be ready?" I said, "About half an hour," and started away, sending to Troop F for detail of a good private and to Troop H for a good sergeant—to report mounted, with two days' rations and nose-bag full of oats, as soon as possible. Then I sent for my own horse, some ground coffee, a few hard tack and a piece of bacon; changed to my riding clothes and reported in the half hour that we were ready.

The three troop horses were purchased by the Government in western Oregon, at an average price of \$175. They were about 15-3 in height, weighed about 1,000 lbs. each, and were usually ridden at drills and in garrison duty generally. Equipment was the McClellan saddle, with saddle bags, two days' rations inside, the Army head halter and strap, nose-bag full of grain, a quart tin cup, saddle blanket, overcoat rolled and fastened on saddle.

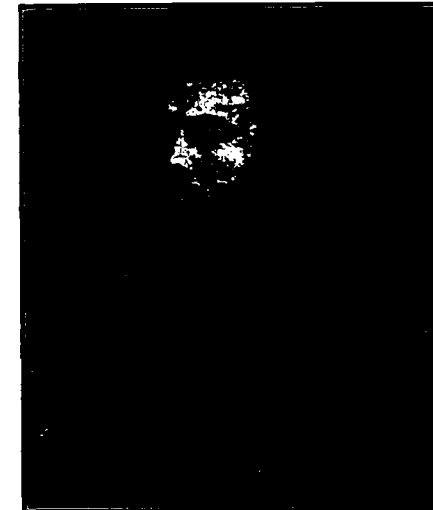
I, the officer, weighed about 180 lbs. and was six feet two inches in height. The sergeant, Troop H, weighed about 140 lbs. and stood about 5 ft. 6 in. The private Troop F, weighed about 150 lbs. and was about 5 ft. 8 in.

The post commander handed me the messages and directed me to go to Camp Warner as quickly as possible without regard to horse flesh. Officers of the post gathered about, and those who were familiar with the country decided that the distance was about 150 miles. One officer asked: "When will you reach there?" I answered: "I shall try to make it by early the second morning." This officer said, "I will give you 36 hours."

It was just eight o'clock in the evening when we rode out of the garrison. There was a sort of a road made by Government wagons passing through the country—a natural road, that is, not made or worked. The first 25 miles was through Silver's River Valley, the next 40 or 50 miles through volcanic rocks, and then 40 or 50 miles over an alkali and sage brush desert, passing near

Warner Lake (alkali water), and the next 30 miles near the mountains. There was not a human habitation the entire distance.

As soon as we started, I made up my mind that for long distance the trot was the natural gait of the horse. So if we should make 6 or 7 miles an hour and keep it up, we could cover the distance in a short time. We rode 60 miles by about five o'clock the next morning, stopped at Buzzard Canyon, unsaddled and fed the horses the grain left in the nose-bags, about three pounds each; made a small fire, boiled a cup of coffee, broiled a piece of bacon on a stick, and remained there just one hour.



Charles F. Roe

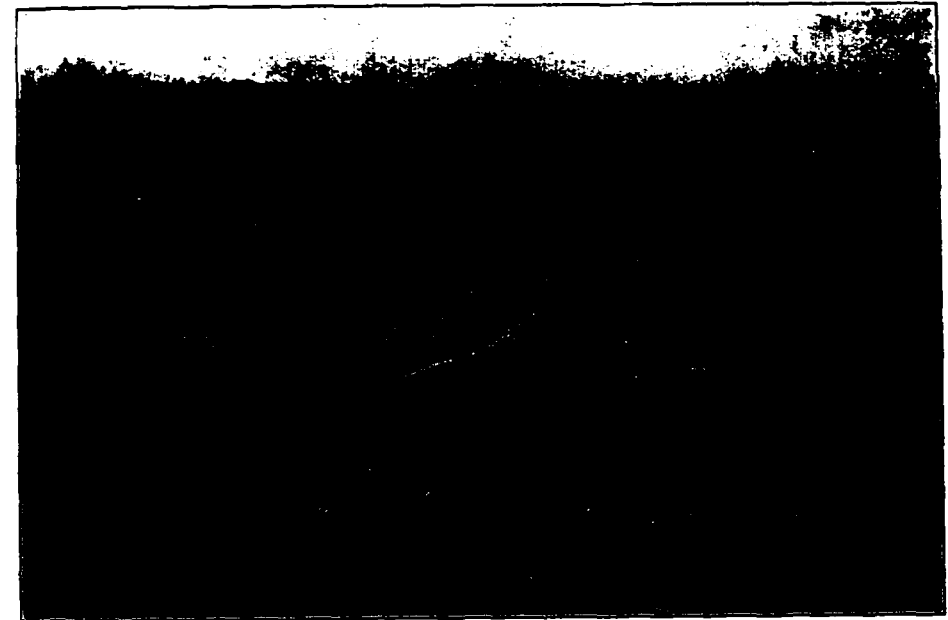
Photograph taken probably in 1868 or 1869, in the full dress uniform of a lieutenant of cavalry prior to 1872.

Started again about 6 A. M., and then began the most difficult part of the journey, as the road was rocky. Through alkali and sand and for many miles the horses would sink into the sand up to their fetlocks. After we had been traveling three or four hours, the weather being hot, I found one of the men suffering from thirst; so decided to go to a spring three miles off the road. This spring was alkali, and I calculated that we lost about half an hour in getting back. Drinking this water proved to be an aggravation as it only made us more thirsty and compelled us to drink frequently from Warner Lake (also alkaline) when we came to and traveled along it, taking skin off our lips and the inside of the mouth. We kept on persistently at the trot and averaged 6½ to 7 miles an hour.

About two miles from Camp Warner, we heard the trumpeter sounding the first call for tattoo, and rode into the garrison just as tattoo was sounding off, eight o'clock P. M. at that season of the year. I asked for the commanding

officer's quarters and reported my arrival, with orders, to Captain Hall, First Cavalry, the post commander. The officers returning from tattoo rollcall came to the commanding officer's house and, of course, wanted the particulars as soon as they learned I had left Camp Harney the previous evening at 8 o'clock.

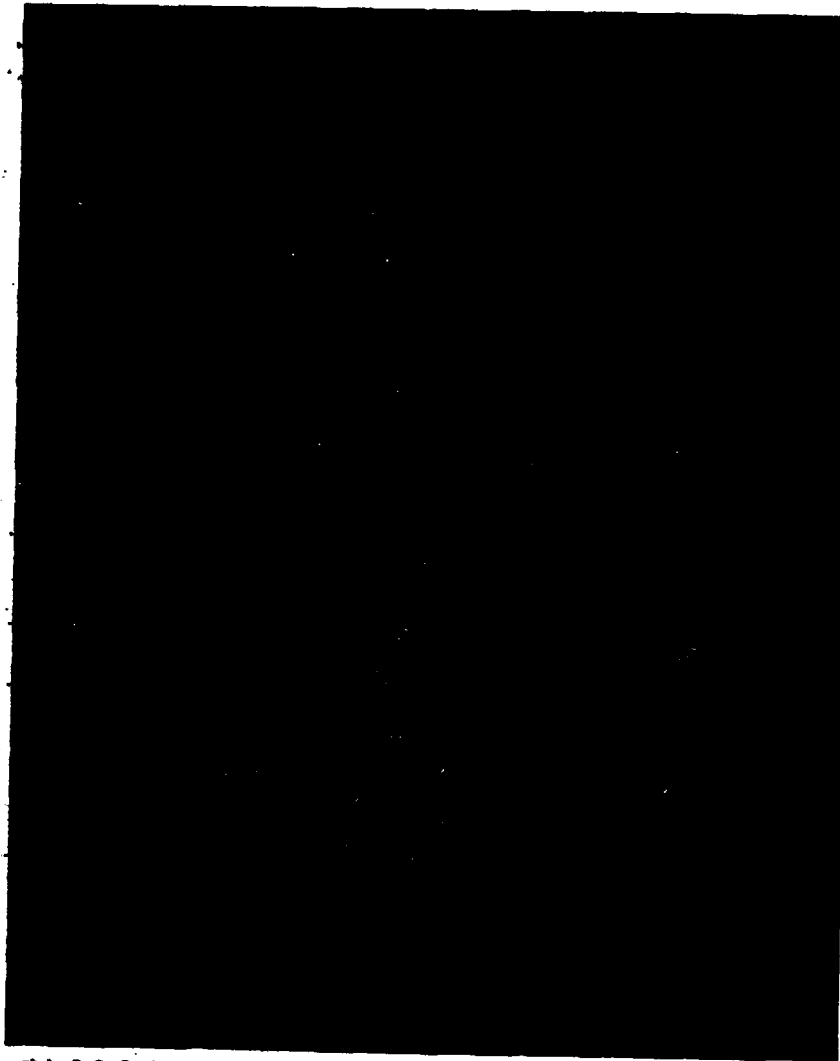
The detachment of sergeant, private and myself all came in together, having been on the road just 24 hours. Deducting one hour for breakfast and rest at Buzzard Canyon, and half an hour lost going off road to the spring, the actual riding time between the two garrisons was 22½ hours.



Camp Harney, Oregon, in 1872

I was kept up till midnight and at 6 o'clock the next morning started with Captain Hall in an open wagon and two good horses to Fort Bidwell, California, 60 miles. Leaving my detachment at Warner, we were escorted by an interpreter and a couple of Indians on ponies.

We arrived at Bidwell that same evening, and found that the commanding officer, recently from an eastern station, had placed two or three Indian chiefs of the Snakes or Piutes in the guard house and in irons. The tribe had come in demanding the release of the chiefs, and threatening to kill settlers. Captain Hall directed the release of the Indians (as their being confined was an error of judgment), issued rations, and the trouble ceased at once. Captain Hall and I remained two days and drove back to Warner in one day.

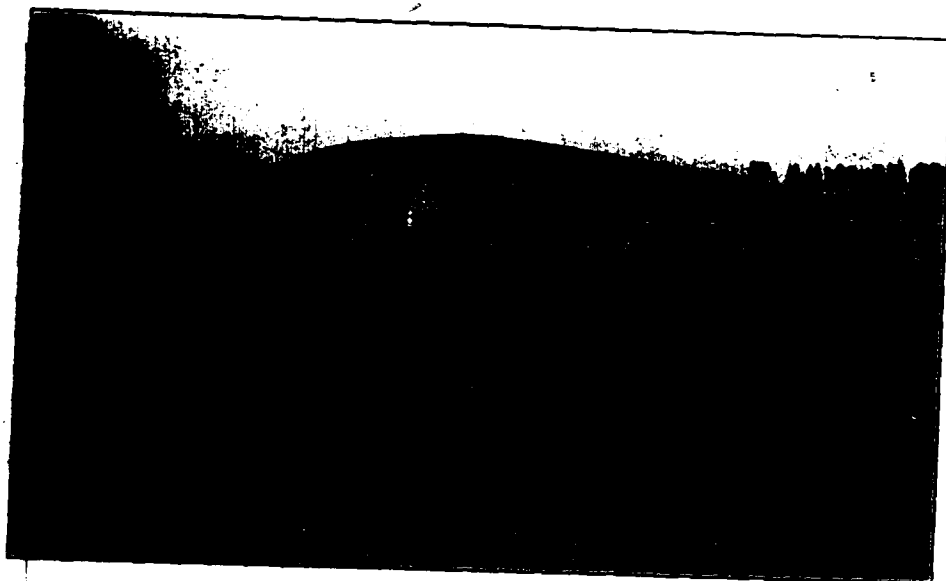


Photograph by J. G. Sanford, New York

The Late Charles Francis Roe

Graduated from the United States Military Academy June, 1868, after which he was on active service in the regular army for the greater part of the time to January 31, 1884, when he resigned and entered business in New York City. He took a prominent part in the National Guard, State of New York, rising to its chief command with the title of Major General, from February 9, 1898, until mustered out on account of the retiring age limit, May 1, 1912. Died at Highland Falls, N. Y., December 1, 1922, at the age of 74 years.

The officers at Warner told me the horses we rode from Harney had been brought up for inspection the day I left and were found to be in excellent condition, the private's horse having a sore back. Mine, they said, reared and plunged as he was led by. I remained at Warner one day and then we started back, the sergeant and myself riding the same horses, and the private another, leading his own with a sore back. This was the sixth day after our long ride.



Camp Warner, Oregon, in 1873

Leaving in the morning, we made the distance back by the following evening—about 36 hours—bivouacking out over night. The principal points are:

- 1.—The ride was made without any previous training whatever, on the part of either horse or man.
- 2.—Nearly the whole distance was made at a trot—not fast but continuous.
- 3.—The road was rough and the country uninhabited.
- 4.—The entire party of three went through—and returned.
- 5.—The only injury to any of the horses was a sore back to one.
- 6.—Result: saved the lives of three hundred settlers, men, women and children.

These same horses were with the troop for several years afterwards performing their regular duties. I rode mine for a year or more, and on another occasion made 45 miles in five hours.

(Reprinted by Permission, from "The Rider and Driver")

The Race to the Sea

(Continued)

Excerpts from Notes by Captain de Cosse-Brissac, 15th Chasseurs, as published in *La Revue de Cavalerie* and transcribed

By

Captain ROYDEN WILLIAMSON, Cavalry

OCTOBER 9. All day on bridge guard, digging trenches and emplacing machine guns. The bridge, an iron portcullis, is ready to be lifted at the first signal, watchers being kept constantly at hand. At noon we begin to be bombarded. An enemy battery has opened fire from the edge of Neuf-Berquin. But it is soon located by our horse artillery, one of whose officers, from the belfry of Estaires, directs fire upon it which quickly puts it out of action.

After the enemy battery's retirement, Lieutenant Rigot, a young officer of the 5th Chasseurs, wishing to judge for himself of the efficacy of our 75's, goes over to its former location. He finds that of the caissons, surrounded by bodies of many dead horses, not one had been removed. His venturesome curiosity brings him from the Colonel, an admonition for having gone to the enemy position alone and without orders, together with congratulations upon his temerity.

No other battery has repeated the attempt, so the night promises to be calm. About 11:00 p. m. my regiment is relieved by the 5th Chasseurs; after a long march we regain Lestrem where, since the evening before, our horses have been stationed. Withdrawing them whenever we are called upon to defend some important point by fighting on foot with our rifles, is getting to be a habit.

October 10. We find our horses at last about two in the morning; an error in direction misguided them as they were led up to meet us. We march until dawn and in great haste, for we must reach the La Bassee Canal to hold its crossings. The British Army, coming from the Aisne front, is concentrating in the region of Norrent-Fontes, Aire, St. Omer, and it is necessary to protect its assemblage. The day proves a tranquil one; we spend it in the rich, verdant fields of Flanders, close to well ordered farms where, at the breakfast hour, we readily obtain all we need. It is so, too, for our posts on the Canal, undisturbed by any alarms.

At 4:00 p. m. orders arrive to assemble the main body of the regiment at La Croix-Marmuse. The road to this point proves a painful one, with many obstructions on the road to Zelabe. From some kilometers eastward, come the sound of battle and the glare of fires. We reach La Croix-Marmuse only at 8:00 p. m. to find the hamlet evacuated, its inhabitants having fled. Here one feels the proximity of the enemy. Under the protection of our

outposts guarding the bridge over the Lawe at Fosse and of patrols out beyond the stream, we sleep with one eye open.

October 11. The night, however, proved calm. From the first hours of the morning occur indications of imminent action. Gunshots are frequent, messengers and patrols pass the Lawe, denoting the arrival of enemy advance guards. Machine guns are going into action. A detachment under Captain de Chalais returns, followed by the Germans at some hundred meters. The entire light brigade, during these preludes to the struggle, is dismounted and deployed between the Lawe and La Croix-Marmuse, defending the approach to the bridge. Farther south, our 7th Brigade is holding Vieille Chapelle; a squadron of the 9th Dragoons is in liaison with us in the fields bordering the Lawe; the light brigade of the 4th Cavalry Division prolongs our front to the north, toward Lestrem, while behind us our batteries are in position.

Some bold hostile patrols have been attempting to reach the bridge by surprise. They have not succeeded, but they have managed to reach and enter the church and have installed machine guns in the belfry. With these murderous instruments in place, access to the road that leads to the bridge becomes impossible. Whoever presents himself there is a dead man. Our combatants are flattened behind their walls and the tower by an intermittent fire which interdicts all passage. Colonel Delecluse, during a lull, crossed the road, the bullets falling about him like hail. He was lucky to get off with a ball in the arm. Captain de Chalais, moving nearby from one of his groups to another, has fallen mortally wounded. Lieutenant Trinquant exposes himself to give an order and he, too, is killed.

Our artillery, ordered to destroy these machine guns, bombards the belfry violently with H. E. The fire, under this bombardment, suspends, only to begin again the moment our men in the line show themselves too much.

At the same time the enemy, notwithstanding the number of his sharpshooters who have managed to gain the opposite bank, is making no progress. Our rifles are holding him in respect. On the side of Vieille Chapelle, which is being heavily shelled, it is otherwise, however. The dragoons there are unable to hold; some German infantrymen have crossed the canal on foot bridges and are threatening to surround them.

Toward nightfall General Allenou, who for four days has been replacing General Lallemaont in command of the 5th Cavalry Division, arrives at La Croix-Marmuse crossroads. The passage of Fosse must be held at all costs until the arrival of promised re-enforcements. Our artillery continues to distribute its shells over Fosse and in the face of its volleys the enemy dares not attempt the crossing of the bridge.

During the night, a battalion of chasseurs comes to relieve us. For we have a new mission. In order not to arouse the enemy's suspicion, Colonel Hennocque orders at the moment of our departure, a rapid fire for several minutes as the withdrawal of the 15th Chasseurs takes place. The squadron of dragoons beside us does likewise. I am kept with my squadron to hold

the crossroads during the withdrawal.

Sheltered by a fold of the ground, beneath the bullets which, passing over our heads, are lost in the fields, we stay there all day. At 10:00 P.M. I, too, retire with my combatants, and after a march of an hour on foot, we find our horses at Cornet-Malo. In compliance with orders and to avoid fruitless movement close to the firing line, the led horses are being taken back farther and farther to the rear. It is a wise precaution. Late that night, in a thick fog, we arrive at Calonne-sur-la Lys, which for some hours is our cantonment.

October 12 and 13. Days of marches and counter-marches in a narrow zone, interspersed with long halts. The British Army is entering the line and establishing contact with the enemy. Its movements, coincident with the retreat of our units that have been covering it, create an immense circulation on all the roads. This is well regulated and causes no confusion. The enemy continues to hold obstinately to his positions; he is bombarding Merville and has gained a footing in that town. He holds La Gorgue and Estaires-sur-la Lys. In the direction of Vieille Chapelle the guns are beginning to resound violently; a British division is attacking in that quarter and with success.

October 14. North of Lys our situation is improving. The 6th Cavalry Division has retaken Merville and is driving the enemy back. The entry into the line of a British army corps north of the forest of Nieppe causes the German troops to fall back on Bailleul and even beyond. They are holding fast in order to protect their retreat along the line, Neuf Berquin-Vieux Berquin, but the fire of several groups of artillery and the pressure of a part of the 5th Cavalry Division on Neuf Berquin, compels them during the course of the afternoon to abandon it.

Our brigade has not had to intervene. We traversed Merville this morning and have gained the hamlet of Vierhouck where we are resting in reserve. During this halt Colonel Allenou had the brigade officers presented to him. This lovely autumn day and the excellent turn the operations have taken have put us all in fine spirits. One of my troopers, a witty Parisian, modeled from a beet, the head of the Kaiser and succeeded so well that everyone, particularly General de Cornulier, was moved to hilarity. Delighted by such manifestations of gaiety on the battlefield, the General summoned the artist and felicitated him upon his talent and his morale.

Toward the end of the day, the enemy cedes ground to us. But he leaves us nothing else, taking care to remove his dead. The 5th Chasseurs enter Neuf Berquin and establish the outpost there; the 15th, close by, take up a position in readiness around Robermetz. My squadron takes position in a small farm house near the road. The place is intact but has been horribly sacked and soiled. Everything is helter-skelter. Ordinarily we would never dare to enter such a filthy hole, but the need to settle down to eat and sleep is so imperative that it overcomes every feeling of disgust.

Yet, to enter such a mess and sleep in one of its remaining infected beds, called for courage. Before entering the house we searched it from cellar to garret. The last enemy defenders of it had left just before our arrival and stragglers might have remained, resolved to sell their lives dearly, or perhaps might have set some traps of explosives, skillfully hidden. Nothing suspicious appeared until we opened an outhouse door when I was confronted by the corpse of a trooper of the 13th Chasseurs. He had a wound in the head and had just expired. Near him, within reach of his hand, were letters of his, covered with blood. He seemed to have been viewing them a last time before he died. Was he trying to re-read the writing of a dear one, or was he seeking to make certain his identification? It was a mystery, but the drama that agitated the unfortunate man in his last moments was never revealed to us. I was about to prepare his burial, when one of my troopers and his comrades volunteered to dig a grave during the night, we to render at dawn the next morning, before we left, the last honors.

October 15. All was ready for the funeral ceremony, the troopers were gathered about the grave, and I, in the absence of the Division Chaplain, was about to read the prayers for the dead, when an order from the Colonel was handed to me to report at once. Calling upon one of my officers to replace me, I left with regret.

Re-enforcements in men and animals had reached the regiment, and assignments of them to squadrons had to be made immediately. We were to mount up in pursuit of the enemy in retreat. They had abandoned La Gorgue and Estaires, but still held Saily-sur-La Lys. North of the line Hasebrouck-Lille, they were retiring rapidly before the British troops that had retaken Bailleul and were marching on Armentieres.

Via Neuf Berquin we reached Douliou, which during the night had been evacuated by the rear guard that had been holding it. A halt permitted us to examine the ingenious defense works for this important crossroads, built by the Germans in a few hours. In a hedge beside the road a deep ditch had been dug; this was covered over with foliage and at ten meters was invisible. A few men with a machine gun could have held up a numerous force indefinitely. Near by, a ruined brewery had been organized for defense, its exits barricaded with sacks of earth and its roof braced up. This structure might have been held for a long while.

Against such defenses as these what could we, poor cavalymen, have done, even with machine guns and 75's, if the enemy had decided to remain there? When we learned that these works had been erected by a cavalry unit, our wonder grew. If, at maneuvers before the war, we had been asked to dig in the earth and to construct trenches, what would we not have said? We would have thought ourselves disgraced.

For a week we have been fighting against important forces of cavalry. This we know from prisoners and from the testimony of inhabitants, but from our point of view it is difficult to credit it. We have seen no troops

mounted, and nowhere anything but organized positions, hearing shots of rifle and machine gun. This war is upsetting all expectations. And to think that theories of mounted combat and of charges *en masse* were still being taught in July! Yet should not the experiences of recent wars have caused us to reflect more upon fire power and the methods of modern action?

From Douliou we advance to the Lys whence the enemy must be driven. First stop at La Bretagne Farm, orders to engage on foot. The lesson learned at Douliou proves profitable; we drop into a ditch. It is but ten meters in front of our 75's and is not the place prescribed; but happily the enemy is obliging, he does not retaliate on our pieces. We get off with some disagreeable shocks to our ears and, luckily, without any premature bursts.

With my squadron, some thirty combatants, I change position. My major calls me toward Saily, where a part of the brigade, already dismounted, is seeking to force the passage. The Germans are still holding a bridgehead on the left bank.

We start off in single file following the ditches along the road, which is being swept with bullets. Upon arriving at a group of houses from which Colonel Hennocque is directing the operation, orders are to advance via the hedges across country. We are fired upon from all sides, with some shots probably coming from our own side. In such a concentric movement, where the hedges preclude seeing anything beyond fifty meters, this is more than likely. Moreover the enemy artillery on the right bank sees us and sprinkles us with shrapnel. To escape it, we take cover in the ditches, but some, failing to reach this shelter in time, are hit. I have some wounded men beside me. We resume our progress as soon as it grows calm until, near Maison Rouge, a new halt in the ditches is made. Liaison with the cyclists who have filtered along the canal is established. We are now in a dead angle; shrapnel passes over our heads to scatter sudden death and destruction amid a herd of cattle peacefully grazing not far from our ditch.

About nightfall, a lively fusillade occurs near us, interrupted by violent clamors. It is a British regiment that, in a sudden assault, has turned the defenses of Saily and carried that place. Our halt sometime before, was in order not to impede its entry into action.

Few now are the shots from the right bank; fewer still are the last cannon shots. As night comes on, silence succeeds an isolated cannon report, sharper than the rest, marking the closing of this sanguinary afternoon. In our moist ditches we sit a long time, until at last a dragoon regiment from another division comes to relieve us. A march of an hour afoot to rejoin the horses, another hour horseback in the fog, and then, between midnight and 1:00 A. M., we reach a farm at la Rue-Pruvost, where we are well received by the farmer's wife and children. She had harbored two nights before, a squadron of Uhlans but, save for the humiliation of the conqueror's protection, had not been ill treated. The squadron commander had taken the children on his knee, telling them and their mother with much ostentation, how happy

he was to turn them into good little Germans. We in our turn were happy at changing them back into good little Frenchmen.

Our conversation with these good people lasted until late, long past our supper hour. For we were eager to learn from them just how this Uhlan squadron operated during our attack. They told us that our bombardment had not disturbed the Germans, who grumbled irascibly when they received orders to withdraw, for they saw no necessity for doing so. This astonished me.

October 16. We march on Estaires and occupy that place, remaining there all day. The shops open and receive their first customers. Those who were the first to leave, are boasting of being the first to return. The long halt here allows me to inspect my men. Among the latest replacements to arrive, I find one whom I had twice evacuated. He was ailing, clumsy and utterly incapable of field service, yet the depot has for the third time sent him back to me, dressed and equipped anew and mounted on an excellent horse.

I immediately made him exchange it for a lame one, knowing that thus the fellow would not remain long with me, but scarcely had I made this arrangement than he was completely dispoiled. In the twinkling of an eye, his comrades made him change his clothes for their rags. With the transformation effected, he returned, like the daw in the peacock's feathers, in tatters and on his poor old "skate" to the trains.

For the first time in many a day we arrive at our cantonment in Regniers at the appointed supper hour. Rumor has it that tomorrow we shall enter Belgium. The British Army, which has just retaken Armentieres, is to open the way for us. Elated at the prospect of a big move forward and of ultimate success for our arms, we retire to sleep with lightened hearts.

III.

The Entry into Belgium, October 17; The Capture of Roulers, October 18; The Retaking of Roulers by the Germans, October 19; Combats of Staden, Retreat to the Yser, October 20-21.

Our expectations of yesterday are realized; we enter Belgium. Crossing Bailleul, occupied by British troops, we clear the frontier and after effecting a long march of more than fifty kilometers, halt at the end of the day between Westleteren and Oostleteren, to billet at Crombeke. As to the situation, we have only the vaguest notions; we learn that Antwerp has fallen, but don't know where the Belgian Army may be. It seems that along the coast a Belgian division has pushed a German advance guard back toward Middelkerke, and that between Saint Pierre Cappelle and Leke, the Belgian troops are making a splendid showing. Enroute today we overtook two French divisions on the march coming from Dunkerque.

But to form an idea of what is going on from all these odd bits of information, is impossible. Moreover, with the fatigue of these long days on the road, one lives without comprehending or without caring to know anything save whether we are advancing or retreating. For two days now we have

been advancing. This is a good sign; it satisfies us.

October 18. We are still advancing. We pass the Yser. On its banks some temporary field fortifications have been constructed and some trenches dug, for the Belgian engineers are working there desperately. We cross Langemarck, Staden. A Belgian division is holding the edges of the Forest of Houthulst and is putting them in a state of defense.

It has been a lovely autumn day. In all the localities passed through, the inhabitants from their door steps, look at us with curiosity, but nowhere is there any sign of anxiety. At Staden we meet some regiments of the 7th Cavalry Division and learn that three squadrons of the 20th Chasseurs, which some days before, had been detached in the direction of Lille, have been captured. Reconnaissances soon report firing on the crests toward Hoogleda and Roulers; we are in contact with the enemy outposts.

Under the command of Commandant Saint Martin, the 3rd and 4th Squadrons of the 15th Chasseurs, with the remainder following, move to the attack of Roulers, which seems to be unoccupied. After an exchange of a few shots here and there, we enter Roulers, gathering in some fifteen prisoners, pioneer cyclists surprised by our arrival.

The natives in the course of the conversation betrayed some singular revelations, expressing astonishment at having seen traversing their village at but a few hours' intervals on the same afternoon successive detachments of all the belligerent armies: Belgian troops, then British, then the troops coming from the east, then German reconnaissance parties, and finally ourselves. Nor could we comprehend the reason of these comings and goings, being ignorant of the presence at Antwerp of a British naval brigade which was falling back before the enemy and seeking to rejoin the remainder of their army.

In Roulers great animation obtains. It is Sunday and the shops are thronged with people. We are welcomed with joy and the departure of the vehicle taking our prisoners to the rear is vociferously applauded. Unfortunately, we too are soon obliged to leave Roulers. Our patrols having observed close to the town a complete outpost line, it is decided to leave after nightfall only sentinels, so we leave the place as we entered it, to billet in the farms along the Staden road. We are, however, quite content with our day's work. Believing that we hold the German right wing and are beyond it, we have visions of being in Bruges and Ghent and in this radiant hope I am off to sleep.

[to be continued]

Economy in Maintenance of Mounted Units

By

Major C. L. SCOTT, Remount Service, Q. M. C.

THE STRENGTH of the mounted units of our Army is governed, to a large extent, by the expense involved in their maintenance. Officers of the Army, therefore, who are serving with such units should bear this in mind and constantly endeavor to reduce the cost of upkeep of such units.

Forage Largest Expense

By far the largest single factor involved in the maintenance of mounted units is that of forage. Our normal replacements of animals in the Army would cost yearly not more than \$650,000, while the yearly value of forage fed is approximately \$5,400,000. A pound or so of hay and grain saved daily on each animal would provide for replacements.

New Ration for Horses and Mules

Due to the fact that the Army animal has been subsisted for over three years now on a reduced ration, the Quartermaster General was called upon to make a report on a change in the ration and submitted the following:

1. Replying to letter of your office dated June 22, 1926, on the foregoing subject, the following is submitted:

(a) Due to the necessity for the utmost economy in the handling of Quartermaster Corps appropriations, and due also to the enforced saving ordered to be made in the forage ration for horses and mules, this office, for the past three years, has devoted much study and attention to the question of forage. From this careful study, from the opinion of the Quartermaster Corps officers experienced in animal management, and from data obtained from a number of the best officers of the mounted branches of the Army, the following conclusions have been reached: first, that the grain component of the ration for both horses and mules is more than sufficient to meet the needs of work in garrison; second, that the hay component of the ration is about what it should be for work in garrison and in the field; third, that the allowance of bedding (one hundred pounds per month per animal) is not sufficient in garrison and is not necessary or used in the field, except in permanent camp, in which case the garrison ration would apply.

(b) The method of effecting savings in the forage ration through the medium of a yearly order, in the opinion of this office, is a most unsatisfactory way of enforcing economy. When such instructions are complied with literally, under varying conditions, without intelligent administration and proper care and attention to feeding and handling of the ration, hardship and abuse of both horses and mules are likely to result. If, therefore, the ration for horses and mules is to be reduced in the interest of economy, and if the experience of the past three years, as would seem to be the case, shows that no general harmful effects have resulted from such reduction, this office believes that it would be both good and proper administration to change the ration allowance of both horses and mules so as to effect economy, and at the

same time obviate the present objections to enforced savings made regardless of varying conditions in garrison and in the field.

(c) Before fixing a ration for a horse, there are two factors which govern the amount of grain necessary; viz. (1) the size and weight of the animal; (2) the amount of work required of the animal. In civilian life one pound of grain for every one hundred pounds of live weight of the horse is considered essential for an animal in reasonably hard work. Fourteen pounds of hay and sufficient bedding to keep the animal comfortable in its stall are also provided. Experience in this office and observations of the method of feeding animals in civilian life, therefore, lead to the belief that this general rule is correct, and can be applied to the Army so as to effect considerable economy, and at the same time keep the horses in the Army in proper condition.

In considering the effect the application of this rule will have on the present Army ration and using ordinary common sense, we will see glaring faults in our present ration allowance. For instance, no horseman thinks that a 1280 pound horse needs only as much grain as a horse weighing 950 pounds, or that a horse weighing 1300 pounds needs two more pounds than a 1280 pound horse weighing only 20 pounds less. The present forage ration therefore provides too much grain for the ordinary Army riding horse whose average weight is about 1,000 lbs., and slightly less than is needed for an Artillery (draft) horse whose average weight is about 1250 pounds. Also, in the present Army ration the fact has been overlooked that by keeping a horse comfortable in his stall at all times and warm in winter, much of his energy can be conserved and less grain may be fed. It has been determined recently in experiments by careful and experienced officers, that a five-pound bedding allowance (being an increase of 12-3 pounds per animal per day) will permit of a reduction of one pound of grain and keep the horse in better condition, both as to flesh and appearance. As a pound of oats is worth slightly more than 21-3 pounds of bedding, a considerable saving can be effected and beneficial results obtained by such a change.

(d) In regard to the ration for the mule, the present prescribed ration of grain is much less than that for a horse, and a mule, to be kept in proper shape, must have plenty of roughage (hay). In garrison it is believed that the grain ration can be reduced one pound if extra bedding is allowed, but experience shows that a mule in the field needs more grain than a 9 pound ration, and at least 14 pounds of hay.

(e) The ration for the small horse or pony now used in the Philippine Islands has been the subject of close study by this office ever since the supply of these small horses was authorized. It is believed that the grain ration for this class of horse in garrison should be fully five pounds less than the present grain ration prescribed for horses, and should not exceed nine pounds in the field. This belief is substantiated by the records of the forage ration which is prescribed by the Department Commander and now being fed in the Philippine Islands. These records show that six pounds of grain and 16 pounds of hay and grass have been sufficient to properly maintain this class of horse. The present Director of the Veterinary Corps, Office of The Surgeon General, returned from the Philippine Islands in 1923, and during his tour in the Islands made a close study of this subject, and he states it as his belief and experience that 7 pounds of grain in garrison and 9 pounds in the field, with 14 pounds of hay, would be quite sufficient, provided authority for variation in the ration to meet local conditions is prescribed.

The savings that could be effected for the 626 horses of this class now on

hand in foreign possessions, based on the cost of the ration in 1926, is about \$20,000 per year, and as the larger type of old horses now on hand die or are disposed of, replacements with small horses will occur, and the total number of animals which will be fed this ration will eventually number 1500, at a yearly saving of \$45,000 to \$50,000.

(f) In fixing a ration for a horse or mule at a very close minimum under average work, great latitude should be allowed commanding officers in the handling of the rations. Savings effected at certain times of the year when the work required of horses and mules is at a minimum, should be used in the periods of the year when the work of the animals would be increased.

(g) In the case of idle animals, the grain component of the ration can be reduced as much as 50% and applied to feed those animals that need more than the average ration, or else turned in as a saving.

2. Because of the facts stated above, this office believes:

(a) That a garrison and a field ration could be adopted at considerable saving to the Government.

(b) That the amounts of the various components for each class of animal should be:

	<i>Garrison Ration</i>			
	Small horses for Foreign Poss.	Horses under 1150 pounds	Draft Horses over 1150 pounds	Mules
Grain	7 Lbs.	10 Lbs.	12½ Lbs.	8 Lbs.
Hay	14 Lbs.	14 Lbs.	15 Lbs.	14 Lbs.
Straw	5 Lbs.	5 Lbs.	5 Lbs.	5 Lbs.
	<i>Field Ration</i>			
Grain	9 Lbs.	12 Lbs.	14 Lbs.	10 Lbs.
Hay	14 Lbs.	14 Lbs.	15 Lbs.	14 Lbs.

(c) That the various classes of horses and mules in the Army are supposed to, and usually do, perform the same class of work, regardless of what particular branch of the Army they may be assigned to, and that there should be no variation of ration because of assignment. In case less work is required in some particular instance, less grain is needed and should be saved by proper administration.

(d) That the advantages of the proposed change in ration are as follows:
1—Effects economy in Regular Supplies of \$300,320.00, as is shown by tabulation in sub-paragraph (f) below.

2—Requires closer supervision of feeding and animal management by officers and non-commissioned officers, and promotes thrift and economy.

3—Provides a better bedding allowance, which has long been needed in the Army.

(e) That the disadvantages in the proposed ration allowance are as follows:

1—In certain instances it may work hardship on certain classes of animals which may be over the average weight, or which are required to do more than the average amount of work; such as the animals at service schools. It is thought, however, that such instances can be corrected as they arise, by proper administrative action.

(f) The British are recognized the world over as superior horsemasters, and the British Manual of Animal Management states as follows in regard to the amount of feed necessary:

"The weight of food required by a hard-working horse varies from about 24 to 32 pounds, of which about half is generally corn, and the remainder must make a sufficiently

bulky ration for the class of animal. Bulk is an essential for a horse's diet; concentrated foods, no matter how nourishing, will not maintain condition alone, and although an unlimited supply of corn will sensibly diminish the amount of fodder consumed, it cannot take its place, and the digestion will not permit an unlimited corn ration unless a sufficient bulk of fodder accompanies it. This is a notable fact in the practical feeding of horses, and must not be lost sight of. Horses in moderate work require 20 to 24 lbs. of which 10 to 12 lbs. should be corn. As a subsistence ration, half this amount of corn and a full allowance of hay should be allowed."

Feeds and Feeding, by Henry and Morrison, which is a recognized text book used in practically all agricultural colleges in the United States and in many other parts of the world, states, "In computing rations, the following will help to show the proportions of concentrates and roughages for the various classes of animals:

Mature idle horses and mature cattle and sheep being maintained at constant weight may be fed chiefly or entirely on roughage, unless it is of poor quality, when some grain must be used.

Horses at work should be given 2 to 2.5 lbs. of feed (dry roughages and concentrates combined) daily per 100 lbs. live weight, the concentrates ranging from about 0.7 to 1.4 lbs. per 100 lbs. live weight for horses at medium to hard work."

In addition to the above studies made on authorities on feeds and feeding, this office has consulted with the Bureau of Animal Husbandry, Department of Agriculture, and that office states that the amounts of forage as prescribed in paragraph 2 (b), above, for the various classes of animals, are *liberal*.

This proposed change in the forage ration was approved by all the Chiefs of interested branches, and will be published in Army Regulations to be effective July 1, 1927.

Use of Veterinary Officers as Forage Inspectors

The Veterinary Division of the Surgeon General's Office has been sending Veterinary officers, as rapidly as possible, to take the forage course given at various points throughout the United States by the Department of Agriculture. Those officers who pass the course of instruction satisfactorily are given licenses as Federal forage inspectors. These graduates, if properly utilized throughout the Army, can assure the Army of better forage at a less cost than it has ever received in the past. Many officers in the Army know good forage from bad forage, musty hay from fresh hay, etc., but no one who has not had schooling and experience in the grading of forage, can properly distinguish between the various grades. The difference in prices between the various grades is considerable, and the feeding value also makes it worth while to have the acceptance of forage closely supervised. The Quartermaster General, with the consent of the Surgeon General, has therefore instructed all purchasing Quartermaster officers to use Veterinary officers wherever they are available for the inspection of forage.

Variation in Forage Permissible

In the Army Regulations to be published on the new ration, provision has been made for variation in the components of the ration to meet local needs upon request of the commanding officers of posts or stations; the only

limitations to this variation being: (a) The assurance that a balanced ration is secured—(b) that the cost of the ration for the station concerned is not increased by variations requisitioned for.

Conclusions

It is believed that the new ration and the new provision for variations will effect not only considerable economy in the maintenance of horses and mules in the Army, but will also provide a better and more satisfactory ration allowance than has prevailed in the past.

A Cavalryman's Legacy

(With apologies to Strickland Gillilan)

OH, SON OF MINE, of a gasoline age, you may be rich some day,
That is to say, as men count wealth, in a cold, commercial way;
But you will be poor in your heart of hearts, when the years their course
have run,
If you should die and never know the love of a horse, my son.

You've never heard the friendly whinnies, when feeding time's at hand,
Nor seen the twinkle in coltish eyes, as the yearlings roll in the sand;
You've never felt on the back of your hand, a flutter of breath like balm,
Nor the roguish nudges of velvet lips, as a soft nose seeks your palm.

I've seen in France, the bloated remains of yesterday's beautiful beasts,
Along the roads where the dough boys plod and vultures make their feasts,
An army needs guns and tractors and tanks, and aeroplanes, of course,
But after all, the sinews of war are ever man—and the horse!

If you never know the thundering stride of the hunter approaching his fence,
Nor the sob at the death of the wee red fox that tears your heart with a wrench,
The click of a mallet on polo ball, as it starts on its long swift flight,
Nor the feel of a pony between your knees, as he carries you into the fight;

If you never know the thoroughbred's speed, as the racer spurns the track,
Nor feel beneath you the rippling play of muscles along his back,
Then you'll never know a horse's love, that will carry you 'til he dies,
Nor know the thrill that his courage imparts, as he looks you straight in the
eyes.

If you never know these, my son, as you carry your earthly load,
And purr your fifty-an-hour away on a smooth macadam road,
Oh, son of mine, of a gasoline age, you'll die with great remorse,
A son of mine, who never has known the wonderful love of a horse!

Communication-Ground to Plane

By

Lieutenant JOHN HUGHES STODTER, Cavalry

THE PROBLEM of co-operation between friendly aircraft and ground troops has never been solved to the satisfaction of both. While communication from plane to ground is made simple, rapid, and certain by means of dropped messages, that from ground to plane, by the methods now prescribed, is slower, more involved, and always subject to error.

Especially in co-operation with mounted troops, is some system of ground to plane communication needed which shall be rapid and complete.

With these considerations in view, Major John B. Thompson, 26th Cavalry (PS), with the enthusiastic co-operation of the Air Squadron at Clark Field, initiated at Camp Stotsenburg, P.I., a series of experiments. The experiments covered about three months in the summer of 1926, during which time, the use of flash signals by colored and white lights, alternately exposing and concealing panels, and the pick up method, were all tried out.

Of these, the last method was by far the most satisfactory. It required very little special equipment, and that of simple and readily available materials. It was rapid, in that it involved no tedious encoding, decoding, and alphabetic signal transmission. It was unmistakable, since the observer received the actual material message or map as prepared by the commander of troops on the ground.

The "pick up" method is simply a system whereby, upon appropriate signal from the ground troops, the observation plane swoops down over a properly marked spot, and by means of an apparatus let down from the plane, hooks up a message tied to a line stretched by the troops, horizontally above the ground.

Experiments were first conducted on the open plain at Clark Field, the De Haviland type of observation plane being used throughout. The Headquarters Detachment, Second Squadron 26th Cavalry (PS) performed the ground work.

The first apparatus made for picking up the messages, consisted of a heavy hook or anchor made of four three-eighths inch iron rods welded together in a bundle for about two-thirds of their length, the free ends then being bent outward to form four radial prongs. This "anchor" stood about a foot high and was quite cumbersome to carry in a plane. The rope used was one-fourth inch hemp (shelter tent rope) for the anchor hook, and the same for the horizontal ground line which, later, had tent pegs attached at the ends for weights.

The Air Corps quickly proposed lighter apparatus and Lieutenants Kimble and Wolf, A.C., who did the air work in these experiments, got up a

unique arrangement which was very satisfactory.

They decided that the hook was unnecessary, and that the lead weight known from its shape as a "fish" (which is issued to weight the end of the copper wire radio antenna let down from the plane) was sufficient to secure the message. When the antenna wire was used, however, it broke whenever it received a hard jerk, so that string (ordinary carpenter's chalk line) with the "fish" attached, was wound on an antenna reel on the side of the observer's cockpit, and proved to be the most satisfactory apparatus tried so far.

The line for the ground message was soon changed to light string also, and the principle of weighting the ends was given up, as the line broke frequently when caught. The idea of using a continuous loop was tried out and adopted, as it gave the best results.

During these experiments, numerous messages were picked up from poles and from men on the ground. Both methods worked well, but the method with the men holding the line was most satisfactory, where the plane had plenty of space to get down and up.

Several demonstrations were staged, the procedure adopted being as follows: The Air Squadron was notified that at a certain hour the Second Squadron identification panels would be displayed somewhere in the vicinity of Camp Stotsenburg. The Second Squadron Headquarters Detachment marched out two or three miles and selecting an open field, cleared roadway, or high point, displayed its panels at the designated hour. They were quickly located by the plane.

Near the identification panels, five panels were laid end to end in a straight row, orange side up, (orange showed up better than white.) This row was laid across the direction of the wind, and when all was ready, a single panel was laid across in the center. Meanwhile, the message was written and placed in a first aid pouch. This was fastened to the string, which was tied in a continuous loop and laid along the row of panels, the message in the center on the cross panel. A single panel, or some other simple and appropriate sign, might have done as well.

Opposite each end of the row of panels, a man was stationed, the two being about forty feet apart (the length of the loop string).

When the plane appeared, heading into the wind so as to cross the row of panels flying low, the two men raised the loop and, allowing the side of the loop with message on to lie on the panels, stretched the other half of the loop taut between them, and held it between forefinger and thumb at arm's length over their heads.

The observer in the plane had meanwhile unreel forty to fifty feet of line, weighted by the lead fish, which slanted of course to the rear, and was kept by the observer about three feet off the ground by means of his reel.

As the weighted line from the plane struck the ground line, the latter was pulled from the fingers of the men and carried off with the message. The

plane then gained altitude slowly, while the observer reeled in the line as rapidly as possible. Quick turns or banks were avoided on account of the possibility of entangling the line in the controls.

The message was drawn aboard, read, and reply prepared. This was dropped with the string and message pouch on the identification panel.

Where necessary to elevate the ground line above cogon grass or bush, poles twelve to fifteen feet long were used. For convenience, the sectional radio poles of the pack set, SCR 127, were used. However, in wooded country, poles could easily be cut which might be more satisfactory. The bases of the poles were held opposite the ends of the looped string, and about a yard farther out than the men had stood before. The tops were slanted back equally about 30 degrees from vertical in the direction the plane would go, (i.e. into the wind) and were inclined in toward each other about 20 degrees. The string was allowed to hang loosely across a shoulder near the top of the pole.

During the experiments there were several failures, due to missing the ground line or the breaking of it.

The missing was, except in one instance, caused by the pilot's going too high, or the observer's not letting out the right amount of string. Only once did the flying "fish" go by past the end of the ground line. Lieutenant Kimble with Lieutenant Wolf, several times dove down in a spiral and caught the message string.

For the troops on the ground, the first time at holding the string is somewhat thrilling. Though the plane comes very low, it must be disregarded and all attention concentrated on the weighted string which is coming at great speed. Men must be prepared to dodge the weight and center the message cord on it.

The native soldiers of the Squadron Detachment after watching officers hold the line once or twice, were able to do their part with perfect steadiness. The adjutant and the sergeant major of the Detachment were both taken up as observers, and the adjutant allowed to catch a message.

It being known that the observation squadron at Camp Nichols had been experimenting along the same lines, a plane was requested from there by Clark Field to co-operate with the cavalry in a demonstration of the "pick up" system.

This plane was equipped with an anchor hook similar to the one previously described, and cord about one-half inch thick, of elastic material as used for airplane shock absorbers. The cord was only about twenty-five feet long at most, which required the plane to get very close to the ground loop to make a "pick up." It missed four times, going too high each time before the pick up was successful. The loop was elevated on poles.*

*Note: This squadron has subsequently, with perfected equipment, become expert in picking up messages.

From the above it seems that the best apparatus developed so far for the airplane, consists of from seventy-five to one hundred feet of strong light line (fish line) weighted at one end with the lead fish or a small weighted hook, the other end being attached to a regular radio antenna reel in the observer's cockpit.

For the ground troops, the same kind of line will do. It should be made into a continuous loop about thirty-five feet long. If too long, it is difficult for the observer to handle; if too short, it becomes dangerous to the men on the ground.

The pick up system is well known and practiced in the British service. They, however, seem to favor a pole let down under the plane to engage the message cord.

The applications of the system of ground to plane communication are numerous, and present many advantages. For instance, a commander desires an accompanying plane to make a special reconnaissance of a certain area. He draws a red line around the area on a map, and sends it up to the observer by the "pick up" method. The observer fills in any information of the enemy on the map, and drops it back to the commander on the ground.

It becomes necessary to send an important message to a distant point or over a difficult or impassable obstacle: the message is given directly to the plane by the "pick up" method and dropped at its destination without having to be coded and decoded. An answer might be returned the same way.

In short, here is a practical system of ground to plane communication which, developed and applied, should greatly improve and extend our use of aircraft.



The Tactical Uses of Mounted Relays

By

Lieutenant MORTIMER F. SULLIVAN, Cavalry

THE FIRST ESSENTIAL of any system of communication is that it must be practicable under the conditions that prevail in combat. To be practicable, it must be safe, certain, and speedy, as well as economical in personnel and material. In addition to the above, the cavalry with its ever increasing load of equipment and its limited transportation facilities, must always consider the weight of the agency of communication in question, before its value can be definitely settled. Then finally, the old axiom always applies, that any system of communication is only as valuable as the help it can render combat troops under combat conditions. }

With the above essentials in mind, any system must have the acid test of the above stated requirements applied before its real merit from a tactical viewpoint can be determined. The system of mounted relays for communication between units from the brigade down, has a decided advantage over all electrical and mechanical means when the matter of weight is considered, because no extra equipment is needed under the scheme. Relays, while not as safe as radio, are much safer than wire, unless code is used, in which case wire communication is slowed up to the point of seriously impairing its usefulness. Due to the fact that returns of the signed delivery sheet can be secured, relays are quite certain in that the signed delivery sheet is a receipt for the message, indicating that the message has reached its correct destination and has been received by the addressee. While not as speedy as wire, where messages are sent in the clear, information can be sent back by mounted relay at the rate of eighteen miles per hour. The volume of information that any one messenger can carry is practically unlimited, so far as ordinary needs go. Experience has proven that individual messengers, due to the fact that they lose their way, skulk, or use poor judgment, are not a successful agency of communication. Relays cut the human element factor to the minimum, because messengers work over the same route time after time and cannot lose their way. Likewise, the question of judgment does not enter where the relays are used, since the messenger only has to follow the same route between two known points a relatively short distance apart. Relays may be mounted or dismounted, or partly mounted or dismounted, depending on the character of the country and the nature of enemy operations. The only disadvantage of the system of mounted relays lies in the fact that several troopers are needed to man the posts of the relay chain.

The question then is, whether the expenditure of men and animals required to operate a relay chain, is commensurate with the advantages gained by a swift, certain, safe method of communication that is always available.

NOTE. Various types of mounted relays were discussed by the author in the CAVALRY JOURNAL for October, 1926.—EDITOR.

Additional advantages are that it requires no transportation; its operation requires no technical skill, and it is available in all kinds of weather by day or by night. It is not contended that relays are to take the place of the electrical agencies, but that men should be trained in relay operation so that when the electrical agencies are unable to function, due to the speed of action in combat, or to mechanical or electrical defects, relays can be used to supplement them and take over the burden of keeping the channels of communication open when all other means have failed; always however with the provision that the distances over which the relays are to work are not too great.

This training of personnel can only be accomplished by actual practice by day and night, over varied terrain. All of the men in the headquarters troop can be trained to thoroughly understand the functioning of the various types of relays, i. e., directed and time controlled, single or double post, and likewise the technique of posting and closing the relay chains, whether the system maintains communication between a stationary CP and forces moving forward, either in attack or on a march, between two parallel or semi-parallel columns on the march, or where it maintains communication between outposts or from lines of stationary units. The type of relay to be used and whether it is to be directed or time controlled, depends on the tactical situation: number of men available; length of relay chain; geographical characteristics of the country; day or night; amount of communication necessary; weather; roads; whether or not inhabitants are friendly or unfriendly; whether territory is known or unknown; and finally and most important of all, the mission of the command. Considering the missions cavalry is usually called upon to perform, a few examples of situations where relays can be used advantageously are given below.

I. *In an advance or attack where a relay chain can be posted between moving columns and a stationary CP.* The speed of action here is so rapid that the electrical agencies cannot be used, so a relay offers an excellent agency of communication. The next problem is the type of relay to be selected and what the distance between posts is to be. Assuming the terrain to be average, the double post system with long legs is preferable to the single post system under the above circumstances. Due to the fact that no one knows how long the relay chain will be needed, a directed relay is preferred to the time controlled scheme of closing the chain, in that continuous communication is assured until the commanding officer decides it is no longer necessary. Normally, posts would be from a quarter or half a mile to a mile apart in an attack, while in an advance, posts may be as far as three miles apart. It is recommended that relays should never be used for distances over thirty miles where traffic is heavy and messages long, and not over ten miles where traffic is slow and radio is available. Finally, just as soon as the electrical agencies can take over the job, the relay should be closed and the burden of keeping communication should be transferred to them. The task of the men and animals operating the relay chain is quite fatiguing, and they

should not be used after the electrical agencies can take over the burden.

II. *The same general scheme as above applies in the usual type of cavalry attack, that is, a combined dismounted frontal fire attack and a mounted attack on the flanks.* Under this type of action, a dismounted relay can be used advantageously between the firing line and the CP, in addition to the one between the mounted attack and the CP, because as a rule, the speed of action is so rapid that wire can not be laid to any advantage, even for so short a distance.

III. *Between parallel or semi-parallel columns.* In this situation the problem is usually one of opening laterals and closing the legs as they become no longer necessary to maintain the relay chain. Single post relays work very well here, and can be time controlled if a march schedule can be maintained by the two columns. Traffic is usually light, and the distance between posts can be longer than usual. In fact, two to three miles apart on the chain itself, and one to two miles apart on the lateral, is not excessive. The laterals must be posted by an officer or by an experienced non-commissioned officer who can read a map and who will not get lost. The usual fault is, that the person who is in charge of posting the lateral, will miss the column toward which he is running the lateral, and the leg will be closed before he is successful in locating the column he is looking for, thus breaking the chain of communication. The senior unit is responsible for opening and closing the legs of the relays. If the units are of the same grade, the responsibility for opening and closing laterals lies with the unit in the right.

IV. *Between the elements of an outpost system themselves and between the various posts of the outpost and the unit CP.* Either a single or double post system may be used to advantage in this case, mounted when the distances are great, or dismounted when the distances are short. The directed system will be the best type for use in work of this character. At night in strange country, double post systems will probably work the best. Two men keep each others' spirits up and alleviate mutual nervousness. Also, where two men are on a post, one man can sleep during the period when both are present at the post, thus reducing the fatigue occasioned by relay work. There is the added advantage of short legs in the relay chain where two men are on duty.

Finally it may be said that the mounted relay is only used to supplement the electrical agencies whenever the need arises and where from a tactical view point, the expenditure of men and horses is justified by the results to be attained. It may be noted that a very liberal expenditure of the above can easily be justified when it is considered that if communication is lost, troops soon get out of control, the leader loses all command and knowledge of the tactical situation, he has no idea where his troops are located, what they have accomplished, or what their needs might be. During the World War one brigade used an entire battalion in dismounted relay chains, with the result that contact between units was always maintained and the brigade commander always had exact information as to the tactical situation, thus insuring the success of the attack in question.

Property Accountability, or Why is a Survey

By

Captain FRANKLIN E. SPOHN, 103d Cav., N. G. of Pa.

PROPERTY is, in the writer's humble opinion, and it is believed in the opinion of most unit commanders, the worst nuisance a unit commander in the National Guard has to put up with. It is worse than the problem of recruiting, for recruits we can get. Worse than parades, for parades are always more awful in anticipation than in performance. Worse than inspections, for these sometimes show you how good your unit is, as well as how rotten it might be. Property is something you have to have, whether you want it or not; something which is yours on paper, but issued to, or used by somebody else, and over which your control is limited.

Of, course, ostensibly and theoretically, an organization commander has absolute sway over his property. Its use is restricted by order, and it is kept under lock and key in lockers, chests, racks and supply rooms. But, how does this work out? Ask any unit commander and see him foam at the mouth.

Men lose hats, leggings, pistols—everything. In spite of all instructions as to care and so forth, they park them where some light fingered, knowing bird pounces on them, have their lockers broken into,—in fact, in every conceivable way, get separated from it.

Aha! but we are told to get busy and prepare a Report of Survey with the necessary affidavits, and, if the said R. of S. is approved, all will be well and the unit commander cleared. Say that quick, and it is a simple matter.

In the Guard, a Report of Survey must be made in nine copies, with nine copies of exhibits, affidavits, etc. Over an item which may be trifling, the unit commander to be relieved has to take a good bit of time, which might be better used for the training and betterment of his organization. "Get your Supply Sergeant to do it." Anybody who would trust the average supply sergeant to get up a Report of Survey with the present attitude of the Finance Department as it is, either has a God-send in the form of a Supply Sergeant, or should have his head examined. It takes the brain of a man wearing from two to four stars on each shoulder to concoct one of those things and get it through the first time, and thus relieve the unit commander's bank roll from very insistent attack and loss.

Well, anyway, somebody has to make up these nine samples of everything and nine copies mean double work on a typewriter.

If plenty of affidavits, iron-clad ones, made in nine copies, are not made—as it is assumed that the unit commander is a liar by nature, in addition to being the goat—the unit commander does not get cleared, but has a large portion of the works sent back to him by letters on which are pinned from ten to fifteen endorsements, and is told that he will have to further prove that he used proper measures, according to NGR 1922, per paragraph so-and-so, and that he must show that he wet-nursed the missing property, even if he had to

call off drills to do it.

If the unit commander is a truthful individual by nature, the methods used in the Finance Department would tend to create in him a Dr. Jekyll-Mr. Hyde nature. They would make him appear to be meticulously truthful, but actually a twelve-cylinder liar. If he tells the unvarnished truth in a simple straightforward way, the Finance Department figures out that he is a mighty careless individual, and congressional appropriations being short anyway, here is a simple minded soul who should buy the Government a nice new shiny punch, revolving, 6-tube, and send a check for the munificent sum of \$1.50. Further, it must be a certified check, no regular check being deemed suitable from an officer and gentleman. However, rather than be too hard on him, they write and give him a chance to collect some more sets of affidavits, all made nine fold, and this time to prove beyond doubt that the unit commander is not an Ananias, senior grade.

In passing, it might be said that the writer's troop had stolen from it, just such a punch, 6-tube, revolving, in 1925. Somebody had made love to it when the troop was at drill, and, the punch being of a passive nature, and not caring who owned it, meekly submitted to the wiles of someone who had lost his. When the light-fingered one sidled up to it, the punch evidently leaped into his pocket, and thenceforward had a new and less deserving home.

The shortage was discovered, a Report of Survey started, and nine copies of affidavits gotten up and duly sworn to. Nobody could accuse the Finance Department of not being careful, for that little punch might have been a horse, an aeroplane, or even one of those disappearing marvels called a pistol, automatic, Cal. 45. For they wrote me a five paragraph letter which seemed to indicate that the troop commander should have personally dropped everything, and slept with the punch, 6 tube, revolving, anticipating its theft, and that he was very derelict in his duty in not posting a guard over it. Enough effort, time, paper, typewriter ribbon, ink, postage and "cuss" words had been expended on that fool punch to clear a man of equipment enough for the entire United States Army, as far as punches are concerned.

Up until Friday night, December 3, 1926, several months after the Report of Survey was started, the Commanding Officer of Headquarters Troop, 103d Cavalry had felt that the Finance Department was of the opinion that he was a liar, thief, and villain of the deepest dye. However, on that date, December 3, 1926, he nearly collapsed when the Survey, approved, fell out of the envelope in which it came. Think of the effort wasted, and the time spent on the part of everyone concerned, on account of that lousy \$1.50 punch? It may be all right from the standpoint of the Finance Office, which works all day, six days a week, but from the standpoint of a National Guard officer, who has something else to do most of the time, the remedy was worse than the disease.

I had a man in my troop who, when discharged, was short of property which had been issued to him. He was a useless individual as far as the

troop was concerned, could not attend drills, as he then ran a trolley car at night. He was in poor circumstances financially, was married, was always having a new baby on the way, a battle with his mother-in-law, or some other catastrophe. He was the sort it would be just about impossible to collect from, and not cause somebody else to suffer. I hooked him for drill checks to the amount of about \$12.00, and religiously made out the Report of Survey in its infernal nine copies. After the Finance Department got through with it, they wrote me for \$8.12 to be paid personally by me, as I had not collected from the man—it being so recommended by the Survey Officer as I should not have discharged him without getting the property or the cash. The property was lost, the man was broke, and working when he could get work, so it was a hopeless mess all around. I had told the truth, that he was short when he was checked out. Inspections had been made and apparently his locker was O. K., but the fact was, that when he checked, he was short. What I should have done was to have cooked up some marvellous tale, and had the stuff miraculously vanish from a locked locker in a hermetically sealed supply room, submitting nine copies of the locked locker, and of the hermetically sealed supply room, in evidence.

I have brought these two little incidents into this narrative in order to see if there is some means of making property accountability less dangerous to the bank roll of a unit commander. It is absolutely unjust that he should have to pay personally for property lost by enlisted men. True, it helps the Government when he does, but the powers that be lose sight of the fact that the National Guard commander cannot, in the limited time most of us can give the Guard, accomplish the important work he has to do in enlisting and training men in a thoroughly conscientious manner, and at the same time give too much time to the writing of letters and getting affidavits, having them sworn to, etc. It is not fair to put National Guard property accountability on the same plane, or to hold it to the same standards, as are in force with the Regular Army. The Regular service has its men seven days a week, the National Guard commander has his men from one and one-half hours to two hours every week, and he almost never has 100% on any one night.

If the present method of getting cleared from property lost or stolen, is the only way, then it would seem that the Finance Department should realize that the average unit commander is honest, that he did not lose the property on purpose, and that in a sense, it weakens his efficiency when he is nagged after and pestered with a lot of childish correspondence over trivial amounts.

From a standpoint of personal pride in service, we who are in the Guard, get a certain satisfaction in doing what we deem our duty. As a matter of financial return, there is little in it. Therefore there should be a disposition on the part of higher authorities to refrain from penalizing unit commanders for things they at times run into, and simply cannot help. There should be a greater co-operation, confidence and assistance by the powers that be, in regard to the relief of a unit commander of property which has been lost or stolen.

Maneuvers

Lieutenant LOWELL M. LIMPUS, 303d Cavalry

A STUTTERING crescendo of fire suddenly bursts out on the left flank of the line, and is answered by a twin echo of bursts from the right. The machine guns have gone into action and the advancing infantry suddenly wavers and falls back. The action trembles in the balance.

Suddenly the Red horsemen appear—two waves of them. They burst from the front lines and dash forward, suddenly wheeling to the flank and attacking the wings from a new angle. The White forces are demoralized for an instant. Their plodding infantry is disrupted. The line opens.

Then, unexpectedly, the heavy artillery goes into action. It opens up on the advancing cavalymen, and the Red horsemen whirl and flee, in strange zig-zag lines. The big guns shift their range to the machine guns. One of them is silenced. (The Admiral reached out a blue clad arm and lifts the red bishop from the chess board—pressing the attack with his rook.)

But the Reds aren't yet overcome. Their air service darts out like an avenging angel and a well placed bomb shatters one of the 16 inch rifles. (The General's khaki sleeve sweeps the board as he takes off the white castle.) The White planes swing in to interpose, just as the enemy swoops down on their G. H. Q.

"Check," says the General.

But the Admiral refuses to surrender. A Red machine gun is brought to bear for their protection and the beleaguered generals escape.

The battle goes on—in the utter silence of the Army and Navy Club, the two gray-headed men bending eagerly over their chess board. Yet it is none the less a clash of maneuvering forces of all arms, conducted according to the recognized principles of tactics.

For chess is essentially a military game.

Have you played it, with or without the realization of the strategy involved? Then you must recognize the identity of the various pieces with the arms of the service. They fight in much the same way.

The Pawns are the infantry; the plodding doughboys, advancing slowly, one square at a time—ever pushing to the front, but fatally effective when they push in and command a flank. The Queen of Battles—helpless when left alone, but absolutely indispensable to the successful carrying on of the campaign. They form the battle lines and sometimes must be sacrificed, in order to capture or retain an advantage.

When things go wrong they are the first to be pushed into the breach—to be lost if necessary, in order to permit the escape of the artillery or the G. H. Q.

And the Knights? Cavalry of course. They come sweeping out with their characteristic flank attack, moving just twice as fast as the infantry (for they advance two squares at a time; one to the front and one to the flank). They are terribly effective, when they burst out of the masked infantry and swoop down suddenly on the rooks or bishops. Their blows are unexpected and swift.

The Bishops are machine guns—with their range of fire spreading diagonally across the board, withering everything that is exposed to them. But like the suicide club gunners, they have a fatal weakness. A sudden attack from the flank finds them absolutely helpless—unable to protect themselves; an easy prey to any force that comes crowding in.

Then the Rooks—the heavy artillery. Smashing clear across the length of the board, they are among the most feared of the weapons at the disposal of the combatants. Give them time to swing around and they can command the terrain from any direction—but a quick, sharp cavalry attack, or the sudden unmasking of machine gun fire leaves them worse than helpless. They can't defend themselves from a flank attack at close range.

Even an ex-brigadier of the air service must approve the reasoning which identifies the Queen with the aerial arm. She can go winging off the entire length and breadth of the board at one move, in a minute's notice. She can twist and turn and go anywhere. She is essential to the success of the campaign.

But she isn't omnipotent. She can be brought down by heavy artillery, or machine guns. She can be captured by a quick dash of the horsemen, before she has a chance to take the air and get away—and once in a rare while even the doughboys capture her.

Remains only one piece to be accounted for: the King.

He must be General Headquarters; the nerve center of the whole army. He is slow to move and must be protected at any cost. He is usually back behind the lines but if he is captured, the entire force is paralyzed. The war is over. Vain are the heroic achievements of the infantry platoons out in front, if G. H. Q. falls. Certainly here is the commanding officer, in person—and there is no second to take his place.

And the game opens like a well conducted battle. Pawns are advanced first; the infantry moving out at the double, as skirmishers, to throw out a protecting screen. They establish contact with the enemy first.

Then the bishops are brought forth; machine guns, reinforcing the line as it develops, working preferably from the flanks, giving ground if the infantry attack becomes too fierce.

After that the battle is joined. The cavalry, which may have been reconnoitering to the front in an effort to seize a sudden advantage or to force the opposition to develop his attack, suddenly begins its swinging, diagonal charges. The rooks, heavy artillery, are wheeled up and go into action. The planes are sent out on combat missions.

Each arm is liable to be engaged with every other arm. The planes are

everywhere, and hard to be brought down, but easily driven back by hostile air forces.

Fire power is developed and tells. Heavy artillery and machine guns form an almost impregnable unit. It's real warfare—and the flank attack is always to be feared.

And what is the triumphant cry of "Check," but a demand for surrender, when the enemy is on the run?

Such is the military game of chess—a battle on a series of red and white squares, which offer the differences and advantages and disadvantages of natural terrain (witness the use of the double corner).

It's a good pastime to develop strategy and tactics. West Point has a chess team. Perhaps they are winning future battles up there now. Perhaps in a few years, some graduate of that team will bring consternation to an enemy of his country by a triumphant cry of:

"CHECK."



Descendant, Ch. G. aged (Alan-a-Dale-Doris) and Lough Doris, Br. M. 3, (Imp. Lough Foyle-Doris). Bred and owned by Major E. M. Whiting, 2d Cavalry.

Topics of the Day

ITALIAN EQUITATION

WE ARE INDEBTED to the *61st Division Bulletin* for the following translation made by Lt. Col. H. A. C. de Rubio, 303d Cavalry, from notes of Lt. Col. Haentjens, French Army.

Since the War, the Italian Remount has ceased to purchase in Ireland. The officers are mounted, save for a few French animals and thoroughbreds, on native horses. These animals, in general of short stature, from 1.56 to 1.58 meters, recall our Barbs, but somewhat improved. Well enough formed in general, especially in front, they are frequently weak in the loins and hocks.

Nevertheless, some, probably the get of the English mares, are very good types. All are well balanced, very handy and produce an impression of hardiness, energy and ability to stand the pace. In a word, like our Barbs, they seem perfect cavalry mounts. Viewed as show jumpers, they produce an excellent impression. Balanced and collected as before stated, they adapt themselves well to their *terrain*; they are very docile, are well broken, and although they frequently touch an obstacle, it is rare for them to knock it down. I consider that this quality comes from their being always trained over solid jumps; they fear a fall and so never jump carelessly, but always retaining a reserve of balance which permits them to lift a foot whenever they feel resistance.

The Italian officer does not seem to sufficiently appreciate his horse. He considers it excellent, but lacking in elegance and conformation; he laments the want of English horses and admires ours very much.

I said to myself after seeing the show at Nice, "The Italian method seems a good one for selected riders." Now that I have seen it practiced by all the Italian officers, while still holding to this opinion, I am filled with admiration of the Pignerolo School which has succeeded in giving to all its graduates the same seat.

All Italian officers, perhaps, are not perfect equestrians but they all have a method which their best riders practice to perfection and the rest for better or worse.

The Italian rider is instructed almost exclusively for the jumping of obstacles and the exterior equitation. His two great elements of training are: Practice over fixed obstacles and following the hounds. The body carried far forward, the stirrups very short, and the hands and legs fixed. This is the position pre-conceived. To such an extreme do they carry the fixity of the legs, that they are never used, either as aids or for punishment. When the rider wishes to push his horse, he excites him by clucking or chirping or if necessary, with the whip. At the meetings, clucking is heard at every obstacle.

They have developed riders who, in the ring "gallop over their obstacle." The horse well trained at liberty, never molested either by hand or leg, nor by a weight sliding from front to rear, effects a sure and rapid performance, if he is keen and willing, but in the contrary case, the result is deplorable. This method has much to recommend it, and I

frequently admire it without failing to note its great defects.

In the first place, it leads to a complete loss of seat—never in seven years at Saumur, have I seen as many falls as in four weeks in Italy.

In the second place, the stirrups are so short that they paralyze the rider. A good rider should, when jumping, ride much shorter than when backing or training in the ring, but preserving the liberty of leg necessary to accompany his horse in its last strides, and to remain united to it from calf to seat; otherwise, he will have no contact with his mount. He will encounter a sharp refusal or quick turn, and will lack all strength of seat. In a word, the Italian equestrian is disarmed for meeting resistance by his mount.

To sum up: Their method seems to me good for exhibition jumping, but incomplete and dangerous considered as military equitation, since this should be founded, above all, on strength of seat and use of the aids. If, then, I compare their methods with those followed at our Cavalry School, I find myself compelled to place the equitation practiced at Saumur much above that of Pignerolo. On the other hand, I recognize that the Italian officer has a method of preparation for riding over obstacles and a mount for competitions, superior to our own.

It is then, necessary to take from the Italian school that which seems to us good; and to omit all of which is manifestly antiquated.

There are officers and instructors who would fight against the forward seat at the jump although our regulations lay down that "the rider inclines the body slightly forward without loss of contact" and again, "before, during and after the jump, the rider should endeavor to unite himself to his horse, that is to say, accompany him, remain in intimate union and complete accord with him."

This second part is true, but the rider who applies it will abandon his seat and place himself on his thighs. It would then be necessary to put ourselves in "accord" over this point, which is elemental.

If we wish to regain our former place as the first riders of the world, as we can and should, it is indispensable that we supplement the teaching of Saumur with an annual course for the best riders of each brigade.

In this course the instructor should give his pupils one method of preparation and one seat for horse shows and competitions, and a method of jumping obstacles taught just as they are taught to prepare for races or to place a horse in the gallop. Only those who complete this course should be permitted to ride in international competitions, although this may not meet with the approval of our ante-bellum competitors who have condemned these meets without wishing to see or understand the benefit that our equitation has received from them. It is the international competition that, with or without reason, establishes a method of equitation, and that can create a market for horses.

I can offer no better proof of this statement than to say that of the four chiefs of foreign teams present at the Italian meet, three were graduates of Pignerolo, and that I have seen sold in Milan more than fifty jumpers at prices between twenty and twenty-five thousand liras.

Officers and dealers from all countries and chiefs of teams have asked me for the names of the breeders of *Pantin*, *Mandarin* and *Perigord*. What better propaganda for saving our production of half-breds.

If we really desire to triumph along this road, it is necessary to select and train with exquisite care, our best horses and our best riders, and never to send abroad any other.

Lastly, let us not forget that the next Olympiads will be held in 1928, and that in them we should win.

CAVALRY BOARD NOTES

THE FOLLOWING SUMMARY of the work completed by the Cavalry Board during the period December 1, 1926—February 28, 1927, has been furnished by Major J. J. O'Hara, Recorder of the Board:

1. *Training*.—a. A proposed Basic Training Manual for the National Guard (Infantry), and a revised T. R. 10-5, Doctrines, Principles, and Methods were reviewed, and minor changes recommended.

b. The Manual of Equitation, upon which work has been progressing for the past year and a half, was forwarded to the Chief of Cavalry for approval February 26, 1927. It is believed this manual will prove useful and interesting to cavalry officers as well as to those for whom it was specially written—namely, civilians and officers of other branches of the service.

Effort has been made to make the manual a simple exposition of the elements of equitation and horse training as taught at the Cavalry School and throughout the cavalry service. Purely military terms have been avoided where practicable to do so.

The manual was written by Major Berkeley T. Merchant, Cavalry, while Director of Horsemanship, the Cavalry School. Captain Charles Wharton, Cavalry, of the Department of Horsemanship, the Cavalry School has materially assisted by co-ordinating the original work with valuable changes suggested by the office, Chief of Cavalry, and other authoritative sources.

2. *Armament*.—a. *Colt's Automatic Pistol, caliber .22-45*. A colt's automatic pistol caliber .22-45 was recommended for service test. This article is almost identical in size and appearance with the service pistol, caliber .45.

b. *Hatcher Receiver Sight*.—Further development was recommended of a Hatcher receiver sight for the service rifle. This sight is beyond question superior to the present rear sight so far as aiming is concerned. Its inherent weakness lies in its tendency to interfere with loading the clip,—especially in rapid fire.

3. *Equipment*.—a. *Aluminum Wire Pike*.—An experimental aluminum wire pike, identical with the issue article except as to material, was recommended for adoption, on account of its light weight and ease of handling.

b. *Buckram for target cloth*.—On account of a large supply on hand of buckram cloth, tests were conducted to determine the practicability of using this material for target cloth. It was found to be satisfactory as a temporary substitute cloth for machine gun targets.

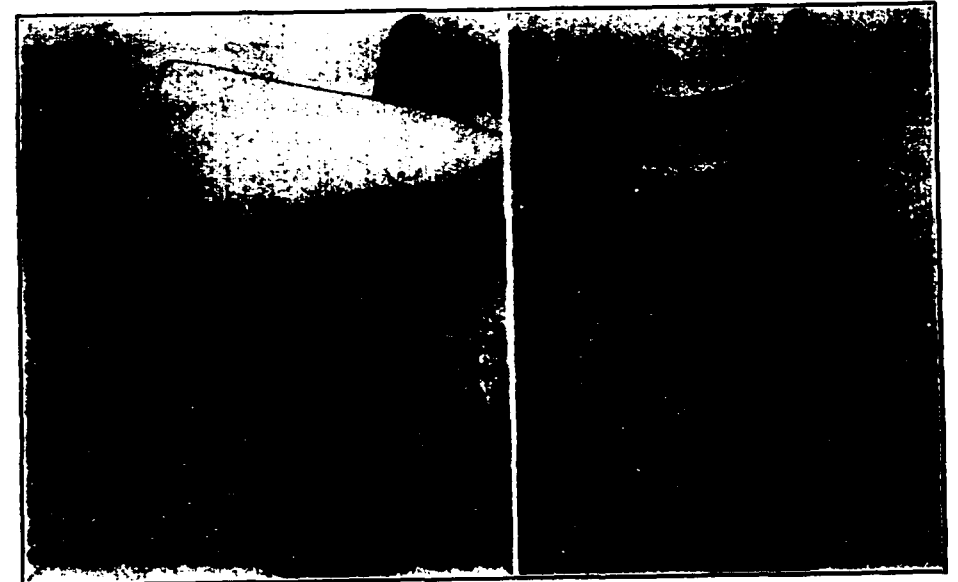
c. *Panel carrying case*.—A case for carrying signal panels was found unsuitable for adoption by the cavalry.

d. *Gas Masks for Horses*.—A horse gas mask modified to conform to changes recommended as a result of test by the board was found, subject to a few minor changes, satisfactory for issue for a service test.

e. *Sketching Equipment*.—A proposal by the Board of Engineers to modify present issue sketching boards to agree with recently revised scales of the alidade and clinometer, was concurred in.

f. *Picket Line Pack*.—Test was made of a modified picket line pack

adaptable to both ground and raised line equipment. Largely on account of the excessive weight of the raised line equipment, it was recommended that the pack include equipment for ground line only, but that commanders be authorized to carry in the wagon train, uprights for raised line, when conditions warrant. It was further recommended that the question of discarding the present one-inch



The Modified McClellan Saddle

rope and of adopting either the 3/4-inch rope, or 1/4-inch standard hoisting cable be deferred until further tests have been completed.

g. *Saddle, M-1917, modified*.—A modified saddle, Model 1917, (for enlisted men) was found less satisfactory for all around conditions than either the McClellan saddle, or the modified McClellan. It was recommended that the modified McClellan saddle be definitely adopted. The Chief of Cavalry has concurred in this recommendation.

h. *Toilet kit pouch*.—An infantry toilet kit pouch referred to the Board for consideration, was not recommended for adoption by the cavalry.

4. *Miscellaneous*.—A special board working under the supervision of the Cavalry Board has been making a study and conducting experiments toward developing a proper system of training of units of a cavalry division, so as to provide protection against low-flying attack aviation.

The preliminary report of this special board, forwarded to the Chief of Cavalry, December 22, 1926, has recently been returned to the Cavalry Board for further study. The final report will be completed about March 10, 1927.

EASTERN ENDURANCE RIDES DISCONTINUED

THE SPONSORS of the annual Eastern Endurance Ride have voted to discontinue, for the present, the rides as now conducted. The sponsors for the rides have been: The American Remount Association, the Arabian Horse Club of America, the Horse Association of America, the Kentucky Jockey Club, the Thoroughbred Horse Association, the Morgan Horse Club, the Remount Association, and the United States Cavalry Association. In taking this action the members of the Board of Sponsors announce their intention of retaining individually their interest in similar rides of the future.

The objects of the Endurance Rides have been stated as follows:

"These Endurance Rides, approved by the War Department, the Chief of the Remount Service, the Chief of the Bureau of Animal Industry of the Department of Agriculture, and the Sponsors, are designed to stimulate interest in the breeding and use of good saddle horses of a general utility type, possessed of stamina and hardiness, and at the same time having the necessary quality to render them suitable for use in the mounted service of the United States, as well as for commercial purposes. In particular, it is desired:

- (a) To demonstrate the value of type, soundness and proper selection of horses for a long difficult ride.
- (b) To ascertain and to demonstrate the proper method of training and conditioning horses for long and severe work under the saddle.
- (c) To encourage horsemanship in long distance rides.
- (d) To ascertain and to demonstrate the best methods of caring for horses during and after long, severe work, without artificial aids or stimulants."

During the eight years that these rides have been conducted, many types and breeds of horses have participated, and it has been clearly demonstrated that a well bred horse far surpasses a scrub for any hard, continuous, rapid work under the saddle. The Sponsors therefore feel that they have accomplished the majority of their objects, obtained most interesting data, and stimulated considerable interest in such events which will probably warrant their continuance in various localities throughout the country.

In the eight rides, first place was awarded in six, to horses by thoroughbred sires, and in two, to horses by Arabian sires. Of the several horses that started from two to six times, but one succeeded in winning twice. This was *Peggy*, a Virginia mare, entered by the Third Cavalry.

Throughout all these rides, Army horses have been uniformly successful, making a creditable showing each year. Of the six horses placing in the Eastern ride last fall, five were from the Army. For three consecutive years the Army has won the event. Of late, however, the civilian entries have been very few. This seems due to the fact that civilians do not feel free to devote

the time necessary to conditioning the horses for this ride, preferring to use their mounts for hunting, polo and pleasure, rather than to limit their use several months each year to road work.

GROOMING MACHINES

THE VERY TIMELY ARTICLE by Major Harleigh Parkhurst, Field Artillery, in the January-February 1927 issue of the *Field Artillery Journal*, on "Grooming Machines" will be of interest to cavalry officers for whom the problem of hand grooming in these days of reduced strength units, high labor costs and labor saving devices, is increasingly difficult of solution.

Major Parkhurst gives a general description of the types of grooming machines in use, and the opinions of a large number of field artillery officers on the advantages and disadvantages of these machines. The principal advantages are time and labor saving and more thorough cleaning; the principal disadvantage is lack of practice in hand grooming, which will always be necessary in the field. Opinions differ in certain other features such as massage effect; efficiency on long-haired, wet or muddy animals; and danger of use around the head and below the knees and hocks. In general, the advantages appear to outweigh the disadvantages. The great majority of horses seem to like the sensation of the machine.

Several years ago, Lieutenant W. S. Conrow, 2d Cavalry, at Fort Riley, Kansas, discovered that an improvised aluminum nozzle attachment, edged with a number of short, blunt one-quarter inch teeth, was superior to the attachments furnished with the machine, which are simply adaptations of the ordinary types of hand curry combs and horse brushes. With Lieutenant Conrow's attachment, the massage effect is greater because the suction of the machine is not dissipated, as it is through the interstices of the ordinary long-toothed curry comb and long-bristled horse brush; long-haired, wet and muddy horses can be thoroughly cleaned; and only one attachment is necessary, replacing both the ordinary curry comb and brush attachments. It will, of course, always be necessary to exercise care in the use of any instrument, hand or machine, about the head and other sensitive parts of the animal.

The general use of grooming machines in peace, especially by National Guard organizations, where practice in hand grooming is unnecessary for the civilian grooms employed, and in the R.O.T.C., where only a small number of soldier grooms are available, as well as in reduced strength Regular Army organizations to supplement hand grooming, is only a question of time. As one officer expresses it: "My men are not lazy, but they would have to be angels to do their work cheerfully if all they could look forward to during the day was wielding the horse brush and curry comb over one horse after another."

Probably the most favorable comment in the article is the following, relating to the mule, that bar sinister cousin of the horse, whose acumen passeth all understanding:—"I have four mules and they are absolutely sold on getting groomed with the machine."

MACHINE GUN ANTI-AIRCRAFT MODIFICATION

THE FIRST MACHINE GUN SQUADRON has recently been equipped with the Burch Anti-Aircraft Modification consisting of two small steel plates which are riveted to the forward end of the cradle of the Model 1917 tripod. These plates form a seat for the gun proper and permit greater angles of elevation. This type of anti-aircraft modification of the tripod was designed by First Lieut. Claude O. Burch while Adjutant of the Second Machine Gun Squadron.

The Second Squadron is equipped with the Heavy Anti-Aircraft Modification (designed by Captain Thomas J. Heavey of this Squadron) and consists of two holes drilled in the forward end of the right and left side plates of the gun so that it can be mounted on the elevating screw only, and secured by the elevating pin. The comparative test of the two devices will be continued under the general supervision of the First Cavalry Division Equipment Board.

SANTIAGO SOUVENIR BOOK

THE SOCIETY of the Army of Santiago de Cuba has completed the preparation of a Souvenir Book of the Campaign of Santiago de Cuba, 1898, for which subscriptions are being solicited. Publication is dependent upon the receipt of at least 1000 paid subscriptions at \$2.50 each. Those desiring to subscribe should remit to Major R. D. La Garde, Secretary; Room 1006 Munitions Building, Washington, D. C.

This work has been under preparation for several years and is composed of more than forty articles on various phases of the campaign written by participants. Those interested in the history of this campaign will find the book to be both entertaining and instructive.

BACK NUMBERS WANTED

The Secretary of the Cavalry Association wishes to obtain one copy each of the January and April, 1917, issues of the CAVALRY JOURNAL, and six each of the July and October, 1926, issues. Members having any of these back numbers, of which they are willing to dispose, are requested to communicate with the Secretary. Sixty-five cents per copy, plus postage, will be paid.

Foreign Military Notes

FURNISHED BY THE MILITARY INFORMATION DIVISION, G. S.

JAPAN**Development of the Cavalry Arm**

RECENT INSPECTIONS of Japanese cavalry show a decided improvement in this important arm of the Japanese Army and several developments in fire power which are of interest.

In addition to seventeen divisional cavalry regiments and one regiment at the Cavalry School, there are four brigades of cavalry, making a grand total of seventy-three squadrons, including five machine-gun squadrons, in the Japanese Army. One of the cavalry brigades, the First, is located about twenty miles from Tokio on the edge of a large plain called the Narashino Plain. Several other organizations and schools are also located around or in the vicinity of this Plain, so that combined instruction in field exercises of all arms is greatly facilitated.

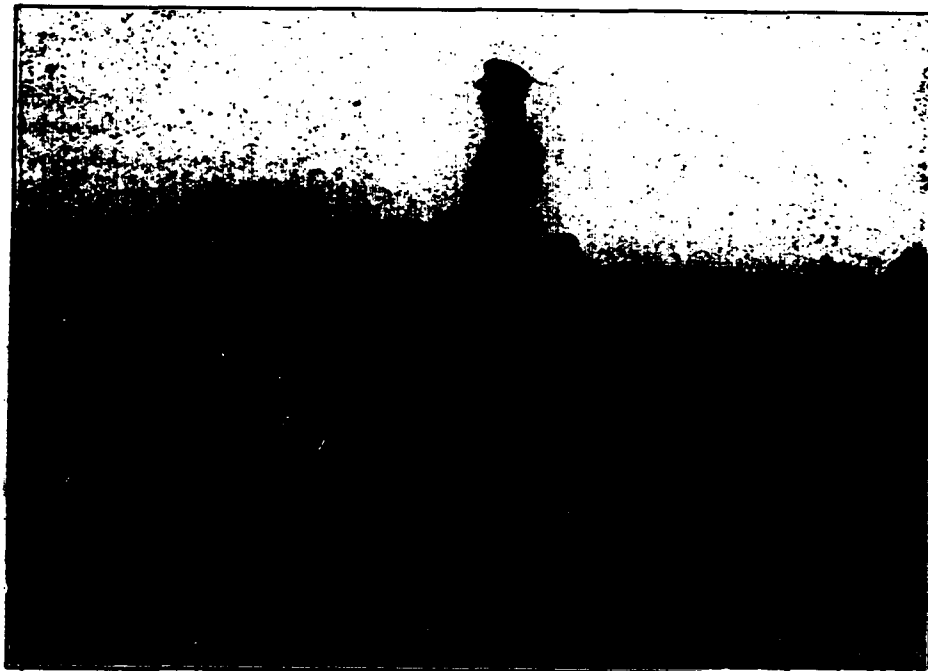
In 1922 the First Cavalry Brigade consisted of two regiments, each of four squadrons of about 140 enlisted men each, and one machine-gun squadron which was attached to one of the regiments of the brigade. At present both regiments of the brigade have a machine-gun squadron and, in addition, each has a squadron of automatic rifles. The increase in fire power is readily apparent. While it has been called a squadron of automatic rifles, it might perhaps better be called a light machine-gun squadron, as the gun used is the same as that with the infantry, and is always fired from a prone position, the barrel being supported by a bipod. The automatic rifle or light machine-gun of the cavalry is manned by a squad of four men with one pack horse, the pack having a box of ammunition on one side and the gun on the other. While maneuvering or in anticipation of early use, the gun is carried on the back of a trooper in the same manner as that in which the carbine is carried, and apparently with the same ease while moving at an extended gallop. The automatic rifle squadron at present has four guns, but it is understood that this number of guns will be increased in the near future.

It should here be noted that the automatic rifles are organized into separate squadrons belonging in the regiment, and not assigned directly to the squadrons. The tactical idea governing this arrangement seems to be that, as the squadrons are often involved in sudden mounted charges and other duties where the presence of the automatic rifle would be a hindrance rather than a help, the automatic rifle is kept at the disposal of the regiment

and only assigned to a squadron when its use is clearly indicated.

In the cavalry, as in other arms of the Japanese service, fencing is a daily drill. It is regarded not only as an excellent physical drill and a promoter of morale, but as having considerable utility as well. One-handed and two-handed bamboo sabers are used in this class of training, the men being practiced not only against each other, but against the bayonet as well.

The riding and jumping as practiced by the non-commissioned officers compares favorably with similar exercises in our own or in any other service. Various classes of hurdles are used, the highest being 1.2 meters. The



Japanese Trooper Equipped for the Field

private soldier receives but little instruction in the finer points of horsemanship, and is not required to jump any objects over one meter in height. The horses are of a very good type, all fifteen hands or over, and many show traces of thoroughbred, Arab or hackney blood.

In an exercise simulating a meeting engagement between two cavalry brigades, both mounted and dismounted action by different parts of the forces was observed, with a full utilization of both machine-guns and automatic rifles

by both sides. The mounted part of the exercise was executed at a gallop, ground scouts and combat patrols were employed, a prompt rally was made after the charge, and a vigorous mounted pursuit taken up. The exercise was very well executed and all units were kept well in hand, the horses showing excellent training.

Some excellent marches were made last year by this brigade. From thirty-two to thirty-five miles were covered while participating in the maneuvers, and during a practice march in August, one of the regiments of the brigade made from fifty-six to sixty miles per day on a three-day march.

The horses for the cavalry service are purchased from two year old stock. The breeding establishment, formerly administered by the army, now belongs in the Department of Agriculture. Young horses normally are kept in army remount stations until they are four years old, when they are issued to the service. Each cavalry unit receives one-eighth of its horse strength every year. The new horses are trained for one year by special horse trainers before they are turned over to the units for service. It is interesting to note that the remounts are trained, not by soldiers, but by special horse trainers, who usually are ex-soldiers who have shown particular ability in horsemanship while in the service. These men receive 65 Yen per month, which, while apparently small, is still a considerable amount when compared with the average soldier's pay. In addition, they receive their clothing and are eligible for pensions. These men devote their whole time to training horses, and ride at least six hours per day, two hours being devoted to each horse. As a result of this training the trooper, even though he may have come from the rice fields and may never have seen a horse before, receives a gentle, well-schooled mount and so acquires confidence in the horse, with correspondingly good results for both men and animals.

The Japanese method of teaching the horse to jump the hurdles is worthy of note. The instructor dismounts, runs with the horse until near the hurdle, then turns him loose. A short distance beyond the hurdles is another soldier who has some grass or oats. The horse stops there naturally where he is given a reward for his labor in jumping the hurdle, and at the same time learns to slow down after his jump. Invariably these new horses take the hurdles quietly and stop of their own volition to receive the reward.

As a whole the Japanese cavalry is alert, its morale good, and it has confidence in the future value of the arm, especially in Manchuria where its possible use is visualized. The horses are serviceable, very tractable, well adapted to the physique of the Japanese cavalryman, and appear satisfactory for field service. The fire power has been greatly increased by the introduction of the automatic rifle and the assignment of machine-guns to the regiment. Increased fire power is stressed in the new cavalry drill regulations which will enable the Japanese cavalry to act more independently than has been the case in the past, when, on account of this deficiency, it was tied closely to an infantry support.

The National Guard

National Guard Cavalry

By

Lieut. Colonel SAMUEL D. HAYS, 116th Cavalry, N. G. of Idaho

IN SOME PARTS of the country mounted units for National Guard purposes seem to be having a great deal of trouble. The question of available horses, suitable places in which to keep them, and climatic conditions favorable for the use of the animals outside, have worked against the units and their training.

The 116th Cavalry, Idaho National Guard, is, however, an exception to this, as all of the units are located in southern Idaho where the winter season is very short. It is possible in nearly all of this section to work the horses outside all the year round.

With regard to available horses to replace or augment those furnished by the Government, there is no better locality in the United States. The officers and men of the mounted units of the Idaho National Guard are men who at some time or other have owned horses and know how to ride and appreciate a horse. The Government horses now in these organizations are getting old, but new ones are easily purchased for replacement, so that so far as mounts are concerned, organizations can be kept in good shape.

Western mounted units have the advantage over eastern units, in that for the most part, they have available open country nearby, so that hikes and rides may be taken with the resulting effect of making the horses and men better equipped for field service. Again, the units are on their own, that is, as a rule they hold their camps during the summer in their own states and have to depend upon themselves to make a success of it. The 116th Cavalry has only once since 1921 had a joint camp with any other cavalry unit, which in its case has been a good thing.

With regard to stable facilities and armories, the units of the Idaho National Guard have done exceedingly well. The units receive very little state aid in the matter of armories, it being the duty of the unit itself to provide itself with one. The state, however, allows rental, but it does not contribute towards the building or purchase of buildings for this purpose. This, after a manner, has helped the units rather than been a serious hindrance. The unit in most cases has been compelled to go to the town people and seek their aid in the purchase or construction of a building, which makes a tie between the town people and the unit, which would otherwise not be created. If the unit is not keeping up its quota, it is then the interest of

the town people as well as that of the unit, to see that it is put on its feet again.

The development of the mounted units of National Guard cavalry in the western states from all reports is good, and it is the opinion of the writer that in states such as Idaho, mounted units make ideal National Guard units, if care is taken in the placing of the units so as to get the most out of the country and the climate.

An Interesting Work

The writer has before him a book of much interest to the National Guard. The first page bears the following: "A concise system of instructions and regulations for The Militia and Volunteers of the United States, comprehending the Exercises and Movements of The Infantry, Light Infantry, and Riflemen; Cavalry and Artillery; together with the manner of doing duty in Garrison and in Camp, and the forms of Parades, Reviews, and Inspections, as established by authority for the government of the Regular Army. Prepared and arranged by Brevet Captain S. Cooper, Aid de Camp and Assistant Adjutant General. Under the supervision of Major General Alexander Macomb, Commanding the Army of the United States." This book was published in Philadelphia by Robert P. Desilver, No. 255 Market Street, in the year 1836. The writer's great grandfather was a member of the militia at that time and was given this for his instruction.

In the back part of the book above mentioned is a chapter entitled: "Calling out the Militia for the Service of the United States." The method was very simple. The officer authorized to make the call, simply requisitioned the number of officers, non-commissioned officers, and privates which he desired. This requisition was not permissible for companies, regiments or brigades. About half the chapter relates to pay, so that it can be seen that in those days as now, pay was a matter to be reckoned with.

There are many very interesting things which could be told about the contents of this book, but to do so would take space. Being interested in mounted units and cavalry in particular, I will take up some of the things which are of interest to a cavalryman.

The preface is as follows:

It is not to be expected that the militia or volunteer Cavalry are to be instructed in all the minutiae practiced by the regular Cavalry. It will be sufficient that every man learns the rudiments of Infantry formations, to act occasionally on foot, and to *mount* and *dismount* with ease, to sit a horse naturally, and to have his stirrups sufficiently short to enable him to command his horse, and to rise in them to strike, when it may be necessary to use the sword or the lance.

"The manoeuvres are simple, and can easily be learned. The sword exercise is reduced to a very few motions. It has not been thought necessary to enter into all the cuts usually practiced by Cavalry in the attack and defence; it is deemed sufficient that a militia or volunteer trooper should be able to draw and return his sword with agility, to pay the compliments with grace, and, for the attack, to come to the *preparatory*, of "*raise sword*," and

dash at his adversary with *cut*, or *point*, as may be most effectual in the charge against horse or foot.

If the above were true today, it would be a simple thing to conduct the training for a National Guard unit. As it is, with so much to do and teach, we have the feeling that we have not quite reached the perfection which we seek.

The method of mounting, and the position on horseback, also the method of dismounting, were practically the same then as they are now. As a matter of fact, there is a good deal in this book which has not been greatly changed.

Under the subject "Riding Lessons" is covered the methods of applying the aids, and the seat, practically as these subjects are now being taught at the Cavalry School.

The methods of drawing and returning the sword are practically the same as those in use now. In the same section I find the following: "Pistol and carbine exercise are omitted, because it is deemed best to let every man use his pistol or carbine as may be most convenient to him."

The method of conducting their close order drill was, for the most part, entirely different from that now in use. I will not touch upon it more than to say that there were many movements which it would be convenient to have now, and that as a whole, the description of the movement is quite simple and easily understood, I think, much more so than is the case at the present time.

There were two troops to a squadron, and three squadrons to the regiment. The senior captain in the squadron was Chief of Squadron and the junior captain marched in the rear. The regiment contained one colonel, one lieutenant colonel and one major, and it was not infrequent that they each took command of a squadron. There was a first and second lieutenant to each troop or company, a marker, saddler and farrier. In addition to these with the regiment, there was a quartermaster, surgeon, assistant surgeon, veterinary surgeon, twelve trumpeters, adjutant, and sergeant major.

The regulations are very definite on just how one would take a unit across a stream, how to make camp, etc. Of all the bugle calls, and there were many of them, the only one which is in existence today, is the call of reveille, which was identical with our present call. In addition to bugle calls, they had drum calls, and if anyone now has a hard time knowing the calls, they certainly would have been in confusion during those days.

In closing, just a word about the artillery. The Preliminary Remark contained in this book just prior to the chapter dealing with artillery, is of interest. It is as follows: "Officers of Artillery ought to be well acquainted with the Infantry Tactics as well as those of the Cavalry, in order that they may be capable of manoeuvring their batteries in the field so as to conform thereto, without embarrassing the movements of the other arms."

The drill of the piece, or gun drill, is not a great deal different than it

is today, but there is a difference in the kinds of guns or pieces which they had. In one regiment there may be all of one kind, or they may be mixed, three or four different kinds of guns. I suppose that they did not know exactly what to do with their artillery as yet, which would account for the lack of interest in the method of drill and the armament.

THE CLOTHING PROBLEM IN THE NATIONAL GUARD

THE OLD QUESTION of a clothing allowance or a dropping allowance for the National Guard is again receiving careful study in the Militia Bureau and among officers in the field. That a change in the present system is desirable, is admitted by all. But just what system should be adopted is a big question.

The present system of supplying uniform clothing to the National Guard is not satisfactory, either to the Federal Government or to the National Guard. It is uneconomical in that it provides no incentive or inducement to conserve clothing, and it imposes burdensome administrative work and financial loss on the organization commander and the State. It is further objectionable in that it is difficult to avoid the issue of used clothing and shoes to recruits.

While all agree as to the defects of the present system, a satisfactory solution under the conditions of National Guard service, presents a difficult problem. The Militia Bureau has devoted considerable time to study of this subject during the past six months. Much data has been compiled, a careful analysis has been made of the pre-war system and of a proposed plan prepared in G-4 of the War Department, and a tentative plan, representing the present views of the Militia Bureau has been prepared for distribution to the Adjutants General of the various States for their comment and recommendation.

The Militia Bureau is of the opinion that the system to be adopted must be simple and economical, and that it must be acceptable to the National Guard, while fully protecting the interests of the Federal Government. Before submitting a recommendation to the Secretary of War, the comments and recommendations of Corps Area Commanders and State Adjutants General are desired with reference to the various plans submitted for consideration.

In connection with the study of a clothing or dropping allowance, the views of Corps Area Commanders and State Adjutants General are also being requested by the Militia Bureau with reference to the desirability of discontinuing the issue of clothing on the basis of peace strength, and in lieu thereof, to limit the issue to authorized maintenance strength, plus 10 per cent. Many states have neither the storage facilities nor personnel to handle the difference between maintenance and peace strength, resulting in the issue of peace strength clothing to organizations, which is regarded as undesirable.

The following extract from a recent letter received from the Adjutant

General of Colorado on the subject of conservation of clothing is of interest:

1. I intend to take very drastic methods to cut down property storage in Colorado the first of the coming year. We have already taken up all overcoats and had them stored in our warehouses in boxes with the organization's mark on them, so they can be quickly issued in case of emergency. I also intend to take up all blankets at our next camp in June, have them renovated and stored in bales, so that they may be issued at each camp or in case of a call to service. It is not necessary to have these packed by organizations as are overcoats, as a blanket is a blanket and there is no need of keeping them separate.

2. I also intend to have all shirts cleaned after next camp, and, with the exception of possibly the Air Corps and mounted organizations, will order the organization commanders not to issue the shirts to the men, but to keep them in their store rooms to be issued at the next camp. An infantry organization does not need to have shirts issued for armory drill, as the men wear their blouses, and the shirt does not show anyway.

3. I also intend to hold down the issue of clothing to organizations, so there will be no clothing carried in stock, but when a man is enlisted the organization commander will send in a requisition for clothing that will fit him, and it will be forwarded from our store rooms by parcel post. In this way a recruit will be issued a clean outfit of clothing which he will always appreciate, and the cost of shipping to the station will be less than the shortage of property caused by surplus clothing being carried in their own store rooms. When a man is discharged, his clothing will be sent to our warehouses for cleaning and re-issue. Another trouble we have had is in getting organization commanders to submit statement of charges for clothing lost by the men.

4. I intend to issue a general order after the first of the year requiring a statement of charges to accompany the quarterly payroll to this office, notifying the organization commanders that if it is not done, the payroll will be held up until it is. If the organization commander says that no clothing has been lost during that quarter, I will require a signed statement from him to the effect that he has made a check of each man's property, and that there has been no loss. Then, when the annual inventory is taken and an organization commander is short some clothing during the past year, I will have his signed statement that the men did not lose the property, and it will be up to him to find what became of it.

5. We have just recently installed the Bin System in all our armories. Each man has a bin with the clothing which has been issued to him for armory drills. When he reports for drill, he applies to the supply sergeant for his uniform. All men have been issued exactly the same equipment, uniform, cap, leggins, and shoes and when drill is over and he turns in his property, the supply sergeant can see at a glance that the man has not held out some part of the equipment on him. We find this system to be the best of any we have tried. It, of course, all depends, after all, on the efficiency of the organization commander to see that he enforces the rule. I have firmly made up my mind to stop the shortage of property in the Colorado National Guard if there is any possible way it can be done.

National Guard and Reserve Class at the Cavalry School

Front Row—Capt. Bell, Pa. N. G.; 1st Lt. Boyer, Wis. N. G.; Capt. Cannady, Kansas N. G.; Maj. Covington, Cav. Res. (Tenn.); 1st Lt. Burke, O. R. C. (N. Y.); 2d Lt. Daniels, Ohio N. G.; Capt. Dunham, Idaho N. G.; 2d Row—1st Lt. Dunkley, Kansas N. G.; 2d Lt. Fawcett, Ill. N. G.; Capt. Forsyth, R. I. N. G.; 2d Lt. Goodwin, N. Y. N. G.; 2d Lt. Ireland, O. R. C. (Texas); 1st Lt. Jones, Iowa N. G.; 2d Row—Capt. Kelly, Ky. N. G.; 2d Lt. Kennedy, La. N. G.; 1st Lt. Logan, O. R. C. (Texas); Capt. Marcella, Texas N. G.; Capt. McKee, Penn. N. G.; 4th Row—Capt. Peck, N. M. N. G.; Capt. Russell, O. R. C. (Mass.); Capt. Stokes, Ky. N. G.; 5th Row—Capt. Wainwright, Ohio N. G.; 2d Lt. Wainwright, Ohio N. G.; 2d Lt. Wainwright, Ohio N. G.

The Organized Reserves

CLASSIFICATION OF RESERVE OFFICERS

THE POLICY of the War Department in regard to the classification of Reserve Officers was recently announced in the following statement:

An important conference was recently held in the War Department with Brig. Gen. Roy Hoffman, president of the Reserve Officers' Association, and several other officers of the association, at which the pressing needs of the reserve officers were discussed. This conference was the culmination of a series of conferences with reserve officers, which have been held for the purpose of developing the future plans for the officers' reserve corps. As a result of these conferences and detailed studies which have been conducted in the War Department extending over a period of many months, the following conclusions have been reached:

1. To establish in the War Department under the chief of staff an executive officer to handle the affairs of the officers' reserve corps.

2. To modify our present policies governing the procurement, promotion, assignment, reappointment, and discharge of reserve officers in the following essential particulars:

- a. To provide a definite number of reserve officers by rank and branch who will be procured in peace time with provisions for such extra numbers in the higher grades as to afford latitude in filling vacancies in regiments from officers in the regimental areas.

- b. To coordinate promotion in the officers' reserve corps with promotion in the Regular Army.

- c. To provide for the establishment of an unassigned section of the reserve corps to which may be transferred upon reappointment officers who for any reason are unable to devote any time to military duties. To provide a minimum requirement of military work as a prerequisite for reappointment in the assigned reserves.

- d. To provide means for the assignment of interested reserve officers.

Immediately after the war and in order not to lose the valuable interest and services of the World War veterans the War Department proceeded with the organization of the officers' reserve corps before completion of initial mobilization plans which were essential to the ascertainment of requirements by grade in commissioned personnel. Due to the many problems connected with the project for the development of this component, the satisfactory solution of these problems has been delayed in order that a careful and well-considered plan might be assured for the future.

Promotion in the reserve corps has been very rapid. The numbers in some grades of reserve officers now exceed the numbers in corresponding grades in the A. E. F. in November of 1918.

Every reserve officer has accepted his commission with the highest patriotic motives. However, many have found it impracticable to devote

any time or interest to their military office. As a result, there has been formed a large inactive element in the reserve corps, whose members are an obstacle to the advancement of those other officers who give serious application to perfecting themselves in both the theory and practice of military science. Many of these unassigned officers are desirous of assignment, whereas among assigned reserve officers are many who can not spare time to participate in the activities of their units.

Our regulations for some years have contemplated the continuation of only such reserve officers as were able to keep in touch with the main development of interest to their grade. However, such regulations are difficult of administration. Many reserve officers are unable to spare any time to military duties, yet their past experience would make their services of great value in the event of an emergency. Yet to establish the reserve corps on a fresh basis and make a deserved reward of promotion where merited by experience and application vacancies must be created in the higher grades.

The policies outlined above aim to provide a remedy for the conditions in the officers' reserve corps. They provide for two groups in the reserve corps—one active and one inactive. When the current period expires on any commission, an officer will have opportunity to indicate in which group he desires to have his renewed commission. If he selects the inactive group he will not be expected to be available for any military training or duty except when subject to call under provisions of law.

The active group will be divided initially among the various grades on the basis of a total between seventy and eighty thousand, distributed in accordance with Tables of Organization. This total will not affect the acceptance of an unlimited number of candidates from the R. O. T. C., the enlisted reserve corps, the C. M. T. C., or similar sources, which will be allowed irrespective of whatever total may be serving as the basis of apportionment. If there occurs a surplus in lower grades which can not be absorbed by promotions to existing vacancies, then a new basis will be adopted whereby all grades will be increased by corresponding promotions. A standard will be prescribed as a basis for determination of the officers to be transferred to the inactive group of the reserve corps. This standard will be at least 300 hours' duty during the five-year period of an appointment. Credit will be given for time at lectures and classes conducted by the executive officers on duty with the reserve corps, for correspondence schools, for inactive-duty training, and for active-duty training. A 15-day training period would count for 60 hours or one-fifth of the total requirement.

All reserve officers can not have active-duty training, due to the limitation of funds for training. However, a certificate of capacity will continue to be regarded as best evidence of an officer's right to remain with the active group. Tours on the general staff or at the service schools would receive similar consideration.

The question has arisen as to the desirability of retaining indefinitely in the inactive group those officers who neither have had war service nor have received requisite instruction during the period of their commission. As a rule, advantageous use can be made of the civil experience of officers in the field grades. However, those below field grade are not so readily adaptable for assignment, so it has been decided that the best interests of the reserve corps would be met if officers in the grades of captain and lieutenant were not allowed to remain in the inactive group for more than one five-year period, at the conclusion of which they would be ineligible for further commission unless they had satisfied the requirements which permitted their assignment

to the active group.

The full effect of these various proposals will not be felt for a number of years. However, all angles of these questions have been considered, and the War Department has adopted a system whereby promotions will be regulated so that stagnation will not be so apt to occur again. Promotion in the reserve corps will be subject to the same general restrictions which have been found desirable for promotions in the Regular Army. These general restrictions may be summarized as adequate experience in each grade, fitness as demonstrated by interest or practice, theoretical preparation for an increase in responsibilities, and availability of the vacancy.

63RD CAVALRY DIVISION

Recent Corps Area orders provide for fifteen days active duty training of the 310th Cavalry at Fort Oglethorpe, Georgia, during the period June 5 to 10, 1927. The nature of this instruction will be combat training, which will be sponsored by the 6th U. S. Cavalry. The eligible personnel of the Regiment and Division are now being canvassed and every effort will be made to have a record number of officers take advantage of this active duty period.

The seventh session of the ten session course of the 1926-1927 Fourth Corps Area Tactical School conducted by these headquarters, was held on February 9, 1927. The course which began with a series of conferences covering such general subjects as, Map Reading, Organization and Combat Orders, and gradually working into map problems, is proving very interesting as evidenced by the increase in attendance over past years.

Colonel J. J. Hornbrook, Cavalry (DOL), Chief of Staff, 63rd Cavalry Division and director of the local school, has been utilizing the services of recent graduates of the War College and the Staff and Command School, now assigned to the 6th Cavalry, and the introduction of new blood among the instructors is proving of considerable value.

The Reserve Officers' Chapter of Chattanooga, Tennessee, held a unique combination business and pleasure meeting at Fyffe Barracks (109th Cavalry Armory) on February 1, 1927.

Approximately sixty members of the Association were present and promptly at 7:30 p. m., mess call was sounded, the command "Fall in" given, mess kits issued and the provisional outfit marched by the "chow" table where they were served with old style Army "slum" and coffee.

After the "eats" had been disposed of, a short business session was held with a view to increasing the paid up membership of the Association. This was followed by a mock court-martial, which was the source of a great deal of amusement. This meeting, due to its originality, was very successful, and plans are now under way for another gathering in the near future.

The Division riding class, held each Sunday morning at Fort Oglethorpe, for members of the Reserve Corps in this vicinity, continues to have a fair attendance in spite of the doubtful weather at this season of the year.

305TH CAVALRY—Philadelphia, Pa. Colonel W. Innes Forbes, Commanding Equitation

During December, January, and February, the equitation class rode each Wednesday from 5:30 to 7:30 p. m. at the First City Troop Armory, 23rd and Ranstead Streets. The average attendance for the period mentioned above, was 25 officers and non-commissioned officers per ride.

Efforts are being made to secure the riding hall and horses twice a week instead of once, and if this can be arranged, it is planned to conduct two classes in equitation, to take care of the overflow from the regular riding class, in order that all officers and enlisted men of the regiment desiring to attend equitation may receive instruction in riding.

During the periods of riding mentioned above, in addition to the usual instruction in equitation, jumping, cavalry drill, conformation, etc., preliminary instruction in the pistol, mounted, was taken up. Blank cartridges were used to accustom horses to firing and silhouette targets attached to sides of riding hall represented the track for the runs. The class was instructed in correct positions for firing mounted, correct thrust, and safety precautions. Through the kindness of Captain Arthur H. Kinsley, Commanding the 2nd Philadelphia City Troop, who has offered the regiment the use of the mounted range of the 2nd City Troop on their farm near Ambler, it is hoped that prior to going to active duty, the regiment will be able to fire the mounted course. This kind offer of Captain Kinsley is greatly appreciated by all members of the regiment.

Captain William S. Brogden, Troop A, who has, for the past three months been instructing the new members of the equitation class in the basic principles of riding, has accomplished fine results with these green riders, and is to be complimented on the efficient manner in which he has put his instruction across.

Regimental School

The scheduled meetings of the Regimental School were held Wednesday nights at the First City Troop Armory, from 8:30 to 10:30 p. m. on the following dates:

December 8—Conference and Quiz on equitation, horsemanship. Attendance, 18 officers and enlisted men.

December 15—Map Maneuvers on War Game Map. Troop in a meeting engagement. Attendance, 22 members.

January 12—Rifle and Pistol Shoot on indoor range. Attendance, 20 members.

February 9—Rifle and Pistol Shoot. Attendance, 18 members.

February 23—Map Problem on War Game Map. The Troop in Defense. Attendance, 19 members.

The regular weekly meeting of the Basic Officers Correspondence Class was held on each Wednesday at Regimental Headquarters, during the noon hour, with an average attendance of nine members. This class has already completed four sub-courses since the correspondence work started, and hopes to complete two more before the end of the inactive training period.

Regimental Pistol Team

The pistol shooting on February 9th was a competition to pick five officers for the regimental pistol team. The following listed officers qualified with the highest scores in the order named: First Lieut. Horace P. Kirk, 1st Squadron; Second Lieut. Robert C. Hunter, Troop F; Second Lieut. Edward A. Town, 2nd Squadron; Second Lieut. Thomas Meehan, Troop G; Second Lieut. Lewis H. Esler, 1st Squadron.

These officers will shoot on the regimental team in matches against the First City Troop and Troops of the 103rd Cavalry. The matches have been arranged by these headquarters in order to increase interest in pistol shooting in the cavalry organizations in Philadelphia.

Polo

The regimental polo squad consisting of Major Thompson, Captains Brogden and Livingston, Lieutenants Town, Meehan, and Sergeant Stradley, practiced each Tuesday during December, January, and February, from 5:30 to 7:30 p. m. at the 103rd Cavalry Armory.

In addition to the regular practice, the following games with outside teams were played:

On January 4th, in a practice game with Troop C, 103rd Cavalry, the Regiment won by a score of 8 to 6.

On January 11th, the regimental team in a practice game with the Philadelphia Polo Club, was defeated by a score of 4 to 2.

On January 14th, in a two chukker practice game, the 1st and 2nd teams of P. M. C. defeated the Regiment by a score of 5 to 0.

On January 25th, the Regiment won from the Riviera Polo Club by a score of 8 to 1.

On February 4th, the Regiment defeated the Riviera Polo Club by a score of 12 to 2, and again on February 8th, the same team was defeated by a score of 9 to 6.

On February 12th in a regular scheduled Saturday night game with P. M. C., the regimental team was snowed under by a score of 20 to 4.

On February 21st the Regiment won from Wenonah by a score of 9 to 5, and again on February 25th defeated the Penn Polo Club 6 to 2.

Troop Competition

The relative standing of troops and squadron detachments for the quarter ending December 31, 1926, in the competition for the silver cup presented by Colonel Forbes, was as follows:

1. Troop F, Captain Leselie C. Bell, Commanding	64%
2. Troop A, Captain William S. Brogden, Commanding	61%
3. 1st Sq. Det., Major Robert R. D. McCullough, Commanding	59%
4. 2nd Sq. Det., Major Jas. S. S. Richardson, Commanding	48%
5. Troop G, Captain Harry J. Crosson, Commanding	38%
6. Troop C, Captain Edwin P. Rutan, Commanding	28%
7. Hq. Troop, Captain May S. Easby, Commanding	23%
8. Troop B, Captain Lester C. Vannan, Commanding	22%
9. Serv. Troop, Captain Robert M. Patterson, Jr., Commanding	19%
10. Troop E, Captain Andrew Porter, Commanding	15%

Dinner in Honor of Colonel Groome

On November 5th, at the Racquet Club, the regiment gave a dinner in honor of Colonel John C. Groome, who was recently retired from active service. Among the guests of the regiment were Major General W. G. Price, Commanding 28th Division, Admiral P. L. Magruder, Commandant Philadelphia Navy Yard, Brigadier General H. G. Learnard, Commanding U. S. Troops at Sesqui, Colonel J. W. Beacham, Commanding 12th U. S. Infantry, Colonel A. S. Colahan, Commanding 103rd Cavalry Pennsylvania National Guard, and Colonel R. Morris, 28th Division.

Colonel Groome presented members of the regiment who had 60% or better, with a certificate of completion of the inactive training during 1925-26. These were handsomely engraved and donated by Lieut. Mitchell.

Colonel W. I. Forbes, commanding the regiment, presented Colonel John C. Groome with a silver smoking set, appropriately engraved with the Regimental Crest, a gift from all members of the regiment.

In the dinner arrangements, entertainment features, and decorations, great credit is due the regimental entertainment committee for their fine work. This committee was composed of Major Richardson, Captain Rutan, and Lieutenants Mitchell, Grannis, and Franklin.

Fifty officers and enlisted men of the regiment attended the dinner.

Horse Shows

LOS ANGELES NATIONAL HORSE SHOW

THE FOLLOWING service teams participated in the horse show held at Los Angeles, February 5-12, 1927:

1st Cavalry Division—Majors J. K. Brown, Herman Kobbe, R. E. McQuillin, Captain F. L. Carr.

10th Cavalry—Captain J. B. Taylor, Lieutenants I. P. Swift, H. G. Maddox, and E. N. Schjerven.

11th Cavalry—Major Sloan Doak, Captains Rinaldo Coe, R. C. Winchester and L. Patterson.

Awards to military entries follow:

Novice Jumpers. 2d, *Dexter*, Major J. K. Brown, 8th Cav.; 3d, *Woodrow*, Major J. K. Brown, 8th Cav.

Novice Hunters. 2d, *Pluto*, Capt. F. L. Carr, 5th Cav.; 3d, *Popover*, Capt. F. L. Carr, 5th Cav.

Lightweight Hunters. 4th, *Epsom*, Major R. E. McQuillin, 7th Cav.

Military Team Jumping. Won by 1st Cavalry Division; 2d, Eleventh Cavalry; 3d, Tenth Cavalry. High individual, *Peanuts*, Major H. Kobbe, 7th Cav.

Handy Hunters. 3d, *Spud*, Capt. J. B. Taylor, 10th Cav.

Military Team Jumping. Won by 1st Cavalry Division; 2d, Eleventh Cavalry; 3d, Tenth Cavalry. High individual, *Woodrow*, Major J. K. Brown, 8th Cav.

Touch and Go Sweepstakes. 4th, *Bunkie*, Capt. F. L. Carr, 5th Cav.

Military Team Jumping. Won by 1st Cavalry Division; 2d, Eleventh Cavalry; 3d, Tenth Cavalry. High individual, *Peanuts*, Major H. Kobbe, 7th Cav.

Triple Bar Jump. 3d, *Spud*, Capt. J. B. Taylor, 10th Cav.

Military Jumping. Won by *Popover*, Capt. F. L. Carr, 5th Cav.; 2d, *Pluto*, Capt. F. L. Carr, 5th Cav.; 3d, *Ike Walton*, Major H. Kobbe, 7th Cav.; 4th, *Woodrow*, Major J. K. Brown, 8th Cav.

Military Jumping. Irene Rich Championship Trophy. Won by *Bunkie*, Capt. F. L. Carr, 5th Cav.; reserve, *Revel*, Lt. R. C. Winchester, 11th Cav.

Heavyweight Hunters. 2d, *Woodrow*, Major J. K. Brown, 8th Cav.

Heavyweight Polo Mounts. Won by *John Tillson*, Major J. K. Brown, 8th Cav.

THE NATIONAL HORSE SHOW

BY REASON of the incompleteness of the data available at the time the January CAVALRY JOURNAL went to press, several awards to the Cavalry School team at the National Horse Show were omitted. They are as follows:

Nigra, ridden by Captain Waters, first in the Touch and Out Class, for "The Spur" Cup, with 97 entries.

Anita, ridden by Captain Bradford, second in the Open Qualified Lightweight Hunters, 19 entries.

Dick, ridden by Lieutenant Reinburg, second in the Open Pen Jump, 56 entries.

Proctor, ridden by Captain Waters, second in the \$1,000 Hunter Stake, with 57 entries.

Proctor, first, and *Anita*, fourth, in the Keech Cup for Officers Mounts.

Polo

SOUTHEASTERN POLO TOURNAMENT

IN DECEMBER the Sixth Cavalry polo team participated in the Southeastern Polo Tournament held at Fort McPherson, Georgia. The teams represented were Fort Benning, 22d Infantry, Governor's Horse Guards of Atlanta, and the Sixth Cavalry.

The first game was with the Infantry School team from Fort Benning. Although the game was played on a field soaked by rain which was still falling lightly, the excitement furnished by the game more than repaid the spectators for their discomfort caused by the weather. From start to finish the game was hard fought and up until the final whistle sounded with the score of 19 to 6 in favor of the Sixth Cavalry, each team was fighting for the coveted goals. This victory gave the Sixth Cavalry the right to meet the Governor's Horse Guards of Atlanta on Sunday in the final game of the Tournament. The Governor's Horse Guards had previously defeated the 22d Infantry team on Wednesday in the opening game of the Tournament. The Sixth Cavalry lined up for the Benning game as follows:

No. 1—Lieut. Sutton; No. 2—Lieut. Donaldson; No. 3—Lieut. Culton; Back—Capt. Meador. In this game Lieutenants Sutton and Donaldson accounted for 15 of the 19 goals scored by the Sixth Cavalry. In an exciting play in the fifth period of this game, Lieut. Donaldson's pony fell with him, and although he completed the period and played the entire sixth period, he was replaced at the beginning of the seventh period by Lieut. Ladue who played the remainder of the game.

Sunday's game was also played in a pouring rain, and at the end of the fifth period the game was called by the officials on account of the condition of the field. The score at the time was 12 to 2 in favor of the Sixth Cavalry. Lieut. Donaldson was still unable to play and the team lined up for the entire game as it had finished the game with Fort Benning.

FORT BROWN TOURNAMENT

THE FORT BROWN Mid-Winter Polo Tournament, January 10-25, was a success from every standpoint. This tournament instituted what is contemplated to be an annual Mid-Winter tournament given under the auspices of the 12th Cavalry, Fort Brown, Texas, Colonel W. T. Johnston, Commanding.

The tournament consisted of three events, an open, a round robin, and a handicap. For each event trophies and individual cups were offered, which fortunately were won by three separate teams.

326

The Houston Polo and Riding Club annexed the handicap event, defeating Campwood, 8-6.

The 12th Cavalry won the round robin, defeating Campwood, 6-5, after eleven periods of full time, replete with thrills.

Campwood carried off the trophy and individual cups in the open event, defeating Houston in the finals, 7-6. This team not only won the tournament but introduced a new element in the field of polo. The team is composed of ranchmen who secured their riding experience in round-ups and breaking pens. This was their first real polo tournament experience and the first game played without their stock saddles. This, according to their players, was a severe handicap. This class of polo broadens the scope of the game and introduces a type of player and pony new to the game. The team was mounted on fast, handy cow ponies that had been schooled in bumping and riding-off, in every day work against Brahma steers. It might be added, that they gave every indication of having been apt students. The players likewise had been schooled in ranch work. No turn of their ponies was too short, while an opportunity to hit the ball could be figured to result in seeing it sail half the length of the field. With a little more experience this team can be counted on to furnish formidable opposition in any tournament.

Weather conditions were ideal for the tournament. There were no postponed games, the side boards gave evidence of the popularity of this sport in the Lower Rio Grande Valley.

The Brownsville Chamber of Commerce, the local Business Men's Association, and the individual citizens of the community co-operated in every possible way toward making the tournament a success.

Plans are already under way for next year's tournament in which it is hoped to have the teams which participated this year return, together with others whose local conditions do not offer such inducements for mid-winter polo.

The team representing the 12th Cavalry was as follows: No. 1, Captain Erskine A. Franklin; No. 2, 1st Lt. Marcellus L. Stockton; No. 3, Captain Ernest F. Dukes; No. 4, Captain Wilkie C. Burt; Substitute, 2d Lt. John H. Claybrook, Jr.

SOUTHWESTERN CIRCUIT CHAMPIONSHIP

AS WE GO to press, it is learned that the Fort Bliss team on March 16 won the Southwestern Circuit Championship at San Antonio, Texas, by defeating the team of the Headquarters, 8th Corps Area, by a score of 13 to 5. The line-up of the Fort Bliss team was as follows: No. 1, Capt. Bridges; No. 2, Capt. Davis; No. 3, Lieut. Thomson; Back, Major Brown.

New Books Reviewed

The Great Crusade By MAJOR GENERAL JOSEPH T. DICKMAN, U. S. A. Maps and Illustrations. 313 pp. D. Appleton & Company, New York. \$2.50.

The appearance of this book, written by the last of the three army commanders of the A. E. F. to relate his impressions of the War, has been anxiously awaited, and the high expectations of those who know the author and his capabilities, will not be disappointed. General Dickman, a former cavalryman, has the reputation of being one of the few of our officers possessing a considerable degree of literary ability. The clear and forceful style of this book shows that the reputation is deserved. It also demonstrates that the author is a believer in the principle "hew to the line, let the chips fall where they may." One of the most remarkable features of the book is the total absence of the personal pronoun in the first person singular.

As commander of the 85th Division and later of the 3d, in command of which he went to France, General Dickman had full opportunity to observe the defects in policy and action which characterized the early days of our participation in the War, as well as the desperate efforts of a few farseeing spirits to remedy them.

In the Chateau-Thierry operations of the summer of 1918, the excellent and heroic services of the various units of the 3d Division are graphically described. In the Saint-Mihiel operations General Dickman commanded the Fourth Corps, and on October 11 he was assigned to command the First Corps, taking part in the Meuse-Argonne operations. After the armistice he was assigned to command the Third Army which constituted the American contingent in the allied march into Germany. The incidents of the march and of service after arrival at the Rhine give one a good idea of the many problems arising from the military occupation of enemy territory.

The taking of Belleau Wood in June, 1918, and the march of the 1st Division on Sedan on November 6-7, 1918, are outstanding events in regard to which the author gives details not generally known. The former is characterized as a glorious but unnecessary sacrifice since "the position undoubtedly would have been vacated probably without a show of resistance as soon as the progress of the battle to the north (Soissons) became evident." In the drive on Sedan the march of the 1st Division across the communications of the entire First Corps and into the sector of the Fourth French Army, is described and commented upon. A sketch of the movement gives one a realistic idea of what it entailed.

General Dickman's work constitutes an outstanding contribution to military literature and no World War bibliography is complete without it.

The Rhineland Occupation By MAJOR GENERAL HENRY T. ALLEN, U. S. A. Illustrated. 347 pp. The Bobbs-Merrill Company, Indianapolis. \$5.00.

The Armistice on November 11, 1918 ended the fighting but was the beginning of political and economic struggles which continue to this day. The Commander of the American Forces in Germany for more than three years was, by virtue of his position and his membership on the Interallied Rhineland High Commission, very favorably situated for observing the political unrest which followed the occupation of German territory by the Allied forces.

General Allen's former book, *My Rhineland Journal*, dealt principally with his personal goings and comings, and matters affecting his own command. The present work is, properly speaking, a history of the military occupation of the Rhineland. The effect of the sudden change of status of the occupied territory and its inhabitants, and the

persistent resistance by the Germans to the constant pressure of the French, gave rise to many problems. To carry on this military government, numerous commissions were organized for the regulation and co-ordination of public utilities and private industries. It would have been a miracle had there not been friction, and there was much. The conflicting interests of France and Germany were constantly giving rise to situations, the handling of which required the utmost tact and patience. It is gratifying to know that the influence of the United States was always along the line of justice.

The work of the Supreme Military Command, the Rhineland Commission, the several Military Governments, the Interallied Rhineland High Commission, and the German Commission are all carefully analyzed. The Von Kapp incident and the Ruhr revolt, the Separatist Movement and the occupation of the Ruhr are treated in detail.

This work is an important and essential link in post-war history, and should be read by everyone interested in the events with which it deals.

Campaigns of the Civil War By WALTER GEER. Maps. 489 pp. Brentano's New York. \$5.00.

Nowadays we have many books on war, but few that are of value to the military student—practically all are written for the layman. In *Campaigns of the Civil War*, we have a book which is written by an historian as a history should be written, conscientiously and accurately, with a discriminating selection of references which serve to clarify and amplify the text and, withal most interesting.

The object of the book is to give a concise military narrative of the important campaigns of the Civil War, unclouded by the conflict of political differences which occasioned the great contest. In this the author has been quite successful.

Mr. Geer, who is the author of several works on Napoleon and the French Revolution, demonstrates that a military history can be accurate, instructive, useful and at the same time, interesting. The military student will study it appreciatively, and the general reader will read it with enthusiasm.

From Fort Sumter to the final surrender at Appomattox, each campaign is taken up in turn and described in detail.

Descriptions of campaigns as complete and accurate as appear in this work are apt to be dry reading. Mr. Geer's clear and vivid style avoids this, and in addition his timely introduction of pertinent comments on the political situation, and his pen portraits of Grant, Lee, Sherman, Sheridan, McClellan, Rosecrans, Hood, Bragg and others, enliven the pages in a most acceptable manner. He believes that, as a commander, Grant cannot be compared with Lee "one of the greatest soldiers, if not the greatest, who ever spoke the English tongue."

While giving credit to General Grant for his persistence and readiness to force the fighting, the author considers that "Lee, Jackson, and Sherman probably knew more about war before they waged it than anyone else in the United States."

The value of the book is much enhanced by the numerous excellent maps. No student of the Civil War should be without it.

Sport and Service in Africa By LT. COL. A. H. W. HAYWOOD, C. M. G., C. B. E., D. S. O. Illustrated. 285 pp. J. B. Lippincott Company, Philadelphia. \$6.00.

Britain's far flung empire has for centuries afforded opportunities in plenty for her servants, civilian and military, to flavor their routine administrative and military duties with the adventures incident to hunting and exploration.

The author of this work certainly was never threatened with ennui, for in the intervals between punitive expeditions against the turbulent natives of West Africa, he was hunting all kinds of game from gazelle to lion and elephant. His descriptions of these hunts and the curious characteristics and customs of the wild tribes of Nigeria, the Cameroons, Togoland, etc. are entertaining and instructive. For example, he speaks of the Touaregs, in which tribe the men wear veils and the women expose their faces,

while a woman may have six husbands and a man but one wife.

With the opening of the World War, the conquest of the German Colonies in Africa was at once undertaken, and Colonel Haywood finds himself participating in the campaign in the Cameroons. After seventeen months of fighting, the Germans lost this important West African colony.

In a trip across the Sahara, one of the interesting places visited by the author was Timbuctu, so little known for many years that the most fantastic tales of the city and its people were related and believed.

This book furnishes exceedingly good reading for anyone interested in wild country, wild animals, and wild men.

A Sporting Tour Through Ireland, England, Wales and France By HARRY WORCESTER SMITH, published by The State Company, Columbia, S. C.
Reviewed by A. J. O. Culbertson

To a person who likes horses and horse shows, hounds and hound shows, hunting, steeplechasing, hurdle and cross-country racing, *A Sporting Tour Through Ireland, England, Wales, and France*, is an increasing joy from the title page to the last period.

The author is Harry Worcester Smith, sometime master of the Piedmont Hunt, and the Loudoun Hunt of Virginia, the Grafton hounds of Massachusetts, and the Westmeath Hunt of Ireland. The work is in two volumes, published by the State Company of Columbia, S. C.

The contents of the two volumes is outlined as "including a concise description of the packs of foxhounds, mode of hunting, types of horses and the crack riders; general observations on the history of the counties of Ireland, the castles and cabins; a view of the customs and manners of the Irish people; together with a story of fox hunting in England and France; and a chapter on the Welsh and Mr. Currie's hounds, concluding with a word picture in detail of the Grand National Steeplechase of 1913" and the whole "illustrated with photogravures and over sixty photographs from life illuminating the text."

Mr. Smith found the Irish fox very different from the wild fox of America. "In both England and Ireland," he relates, in order to give the best sport, coverts are laid out in different portions of the hunting country. They are generally of gorse, which takes four or five years to grow up and become dense enough to hold foxes well. The gorse is as prickly as barbed wire, and when properly cut back every now and then, or burnt over, grows only three or four feet high, is green down to the ground, and so affords an almost impregnable fortress against cur dogs or any animals which might disturb the fox.

"Sometimes earths are made in these coverts, and, as the country round about is often teeming with rabbits and hares, and as there are often preserves with pheasants, the fox is more or less domesticated and never in my experience so far, has he shown the speed or desire to give a good run, as his cousins have on this side of the Atlantic. Half of the cubs run in September had gone to ground within a quarter of a mile. One old fox ran a hundred yards from the covert and then burrowed about in a swamp like a mole."

The Irish are described by Mr. Smith as making the very best soldiers. "It is perhaps unnecessary," he says, to say that the most daring soldiers and those who have attained the highest honors in the English army in the past generation, come from Ireland. Lord Wolseley, who courted death at every opportunity, the mighty Kitchener whose mastery of detail and iron will swept all before him, and Lord Roberts, who was worshipped on all sides for his successes, all were sons of Erin, and never in any time has the Irish soldier been called upon and found wanting.

"Many of the barracks are situated so that the officers are able to join in the hunting, and surely no one went harder than they. Let one officer jump a place and fall,

or let him jump into a big brook, every other feels that he must be as brave and on they come. It is said that once at Kildare, there were nine of them in a big ditch, swimming about with their horses."

In a chapter on "The Irish Hunter," Mr. Smith writes some startling things about the horse which has such a great reputation for the hunting field.

"The Irish hunter, I found, was bred for one purpose, namely to sell, and the type which I saw at the Dublin Show and which is now, except in the States, the established hunter type the world over, is a half or three-quarters bred animal, with good manners, comfortable disposition, and an ability to jump, creep, or climb any possible obstacle, if given time enough."

"I remarked the absence of thoroughbreds in the different hunting fields to the keen hunting men, and the quick reply came, 'Why, of course thoroughbreds are better, but they are harder to breed, and much more difficult to produce of large mould, and, besides, the English, French, Germans and Italians want quiet, easy horses to ride.'"

"I grant you," Mr. Smith concludes, "the blood horse dislikes to be pulled about, and so requires the best of hands, and here is where the Irish horsemen can take valuable lessons from the riders on the Continent, who understand the art of putting a horse's head where it belongs by fitting the proper key to each horse's mouth, rather than by riding them in snaffles and by 'withdrawing,' force them to their jumps out of balance rather than in 'cadence.'"

From Double Eagle to Red Flag By GENERAL P. N. KRASSNOFF. 2 vols. 852 pp. Duffield & Company, New York. \$7.50.

General Krassnoff was a Russian cavalry officer who, during the World War, commanded successively a regiment, brigade, division and corps, all of cavalry. After the war, he was for nine months Ataman of the Don Cossacks.

His book, although a novel, has a ring of history which is accentuated by the use of real names of prominent characters. The Czar and the Royal Family, Rasputin, Kerensky, Lenin, Trotsky, and others, stalk through the pages like real flesh and blood people.

The usual Russian wealth of detail abounds. Descriptions of life in the Russian cavalry, of court functions at St. Petersburg, of two successful mounted cavalry actions against infantry and against artillery, as well as trench fighting, in the world War, and of the horrors of the Revolution and of the Bolshevik rule are particularly impressive and interesting to a cavalry officer.

Characters enter the story, are prominent for awhile, and then vanish never to return. Although somewhat different in this respect from our conception of a novel, this feature is certainly very true to life.

The childlike, volatile and often morbid Russian character, and the revolutionary tendencies in Russia before the World War are so well described that the reader wonders how any pre-war observer acquainted with the facts could have predicted any other result than revolution in Russia. No reader can avoid the prayer that revolution will never overtake his own country. No military reader can avoid the lesson that the best antidote to such a catastrophe is professional education, training, attention to duty, and discipline in the armed forces themselves.

Chevrons By LEONARD H. NASON. George H. Doran Company, New York.

The author of *Chevrons*, the most popular war novel of the past few months, enlisted in the cavalry at the outbreak of the World War and served in the Field Artillery in France. He is now a Lieutenant in the Cavalry Reserve Corps.

Chevrons takes up the experiences of Sergeant Eadie, as he is returning to his outfit after being in the hospital as a gas casualty, and follows his life behind the lines, through the St. Mihiel and Argonne offensives, and through another tour in the hospital, where he recovers from a severe wound received from a stray shell fragment after the fighting is practically all over.

The story is told from the point of view of the enlisted man and the description of his life is extremely realistic. In this, the book smacks strongly of the play *What Price Glory* and the motion picture *The Big Parade*, which took the country by storm. In addition, there are some thrilling and remarkably accurate descriptions of what the small infantry unit, to which Sergeant Eadie is attached as artillery liaison agent, experiences in a big offensive.

Eadie is oppressed with the usual soldier gronches, which however, unlike the morbid pessimism of John Dos Passos', *Three Soldiers* are relieved by the many, light touches without which no soldier would ever survive the horrors of war. By and large, the story is extremely good entertainment.

The History of Fort Riley By CAPTAIN W. F. PRIDE, Cavalry. Illustrated. 339 pp. Book Department, The Cavalry School. \$3.00.

This work, appearing shortly after the publication of the History of Fort Leavenworth, its sister post in Kansas, though not by the same author, supplements the other. The two together give a very complete picture of military activities in Kansas since early in the 19th century, so far as they are related to these two important posts.

Fort Riley, named for Major General Bennett Riley, was not established until 1853, some twenty-six years after the location of the older post at Leavenworth.

Descriptions of many interesting events in connection with the early history of the post indicate what an important bearing it had on the development of the state. Much of the book is naturally devoted to the personalities and activities associated with the Cavalry School, or as it was originally designated, The School of Application for Cavalry and the Field Artillery. It has a special appeal for all who have ever been stationed at Fort Riley, as it is replete with characteristic anecdotes of many interesting characters who were stationed there at one time or another. In addition, it gives practically complete rosters of personnel recently associated with the School.

Walter Garvin in Mexico By GENERAL SREDLEY BUTLER AND LIEUT. ARTHUR J. BARKS, U. S. Marine Corps. 238 pp. Dorrance and Company, Philadelphia. \$1.75.

While the Marines have no monopoly on a life of thrills and adventure, nevertheless their boast that wherever there is trouble, you find Marines, has a good basis in fact. While the book under consideration is one of fiction and not of fact, its plot is based upon an adventure, or it may better be said, a misadventure, in which the Marines took a prominent part, namely the 1914 expedition to the Mexican Port of Vera Cruz.

The hero, a Lieutenant of Marines, is given an important secret service mission by the admiral in command of the fleet at Vera Cruz, and his many adventures and narrow escapes as he penetrates to the capital of the Montezumas, makes interesting reading for both young and old.

Custer's Last Battle CHARLES FRANCIS ROE, former Brigadier General, U. S. A. and late Major General, National Guard, State of New York. 40 pp. Illustrated. Published by Robert Bruce, at the office of the National Highways Association, Old Slip, New York City. \$1.00.

This is a large illustrated booklet, nine inches by twelve, in size, the principal features of which is a narrative by the late Charles Francis Roe of his experiences in the Sioux campaign of 1876, in which he served as a Lieutenant of the Second Cavalry. The author was among the first to arrive at the battle field after Custer's command had been destroyed.

In addition to the main narrative, there are a number of pertinent articles on the campaign, the most important being the *Journal of the "Montana Column"* by Edward J. McClelland, at that time a Lieutenant of the Second Cavalry and Acting Engineer Officer of the Column.

The booklet is well printed on excellent paper, and contains a number of appropriate illustrations and valuable maps. Those who are interested in the battle of the Little Big Horn will find it of much interest.

Foreign Military Journals

The Cavalry Journal (Great Britain) January, 1927

Readers of this number of our British contemporary will find it very interesting and instructive. In *Where Cavalry Stands Today*, Major H. V. S. Cherrington, 12th Royal Lancers, begins a thoughtful study of the development of cavalry and its present status which is well worth reading. The succeeding installments will be anticipated with interest.

Colonel J. F. C. Fuller's descriptions in the 1925 volume of this periodical, of Alexander the Great's four greatest battles were outstanding features. In the number before us, he takes up the *Small Wars of Alexander the Great* and treats them in the same fluent and lucid manner that made his previous series so enjoyable and instructive.

In *Precept and Precedent*, Major J. Goddard begins a series of articles which can be read with profit by all. His viewpoint is stated as follows: "It would not seem out of place to take from the pages of history a few examples of outstanding military exploits to illustrate the maxims laid down for the guidance of warriors of the present day, briefly endeavoring to show that the courses of action indicated under certain conditions are not only based on the considered lessons of the past, but that they are the product of careful inductive reasoning from particular cases to general principles." The first subject discussed is "The Marching Power of Cavalry" and as historical examples he uses the campaign of Austerlitz; Stuart's reconnaissance, June 12-15, 1862, Stuart's march to Gettysburg, June 1863; march of the Cavalry Division to Kimberley, February, 1900; and the march of the 4th Cavalry Division in the Palestine campaign, September 11-20, 1918.

Journal of the Royal United Service Institution (Great Britain) February, 1927

An article in this number on *The Horse and the Machine in War* by Major General Sir Percy Hambro, K. B. E., C. B., C. M. G., is of especial interest to cavalrymen. General Hambro admits at the start that cavalry and motorized fighting machines supplement each other without diminishing the importance of either.

As regards reconnaissance he states: "Due to the co-operation now established between the horse and the machine, we can divide the service of reconnaissance into three spheres; the outer guard, that is, the far distance aeroplane reconnaissance that picks up the enemy columns; the middle guard represented by the armoured cars, directed and controlled by air information; and the innermost guard of the Cavalry formation. This last is also a striking force, ready either to move into a position of opportunity or to continue the service of reconnaissance." The article is mainly concerned with the probable substitution of mechanical agencies for animal drawn transport and he is of the opinion, notwithstanding the obstacles, that eventually there will be a continuous mechanized service throughout from the base to the troops, eliminating the present "horse link" as he styles it, which generally exists immediately in rear of the troops.

The Journal of the United Service Institution of India January, 1927

In *The Action of the Cavalry in the Advance on Mosul*, by Captain A. V. Hammond, is described the cavalry operations during the campaign in October 1918, which resulted in the capture of Mosul. Notwithstanding the many difficulties arising from unfavorable terrain, lack of water, and shortage of rations, the 11th Cavalry Brigade did its forty-five to fifty miles a day when it was not fighting, and materially contributed to the surrender of 12,000 Turks.

Cavalry School Notes

Brigadier General E. E. Booth, Commandant

It is but seldom that an Army Post has the opportunity of enjoying such high class theatricals as were given at the War Department Theatre on the night of February 4th. At that time, the Fort Riley Relief Association presented "The Neighbors." This is a one act play that was made available through the kindness and generosity of Zona Gale, an internationally known author and playwright. With this splendid piece as a vehicle, the experience and skill of the director, Captain Bryant, developed a well chosen local cast to a point where its performance became truly professional in character. An outstanding six reel moving picture feature and several vaudeville acts, likewise by home talent, completed an evening of splendid entertainment. The financial results of the Relief Association's efforts will be felt throughout the year by the families of such of our soldiers as may need assistance over the rough spots in life.

Horse Shows

The curtain of the regular Horse Show Season was raised with much enthusiasm on the evening of December 22nd. It being the opening show of the season, the performances, though creditable and marked by much competition, were but the beginning of the achievements that have been attained in the two subsequent shows.

The Annual Mid-Winter Horse Show of the Second Cavalry was held in the West Riding Hall on the evening of February 1st.

The Washington's Birthday Horse Show, on the night of February 21, likewise, was exceedingly well attended. All classes were well filled and many very creditable performances were recorded. In the first event, Captain M. S. Daniels and Captain Clayton, both of the Troop Officers' Class tied for first place with perfect scores which they repeated on the first jump-off. In the second jump-off, Captain Daniels won out. In the jumping class for ladies, the competition was unusually keen. Out of seventeen entries, six came through with perfect scores. In the "touch and out" event, over a modified Olympic Course, Lieutenant Leon L. Gardiner, Medical Corps, received an ovation when he placed third among twenty-six of the Cavalry School's upper strata.

Boxing

Much interest is being evinced in the boxing cards that have become a monthly event. Outgrowing the Non-commissioned Officers' Club, the full seating capacity of the War Department Theatre is rapidly becoming necessary for the audience of fight fans that gathers from miles around Fort Riley. Major Richart, the Post Boxing Representative, and his assistant, Sergeant Carr, have been fortunate in securing unusually good performances. In many cases, they have been required to reach into adjoining states for boxers of suitable calibre. Many local fighters have been developed. Chief among these is Speedy Cavil of the 9th Cavalry. It has become no small problem to secure good matches for him, his scheduled ten round bouts usually terminating in the third with a knock-out falling to the lot of the visitor. The Colored Welterweight Championship of Kansas is in prospect for this lad.

American Legion Convention

Plans and activities are under way for the State (Kansas) Convention of the

American Legion to be held at Fort Riley during the latter part of July. An American Legion Smoker was held at the Godfrey Court Hop Room on the evening of February 22nd. Numerous entertainment features were enjoyed, interest aroused, as well as several plans being discussed and adopted. Two evenings later, the Junction City Post of the Legion sponsored a dance in the Community House of that city.

The Standard

The Standard continues to be the chief item of interest each Wednesday. A change in management has placed the paper under the direction of Colonel L. W. Oliver and Major Geoffrey Keyes. The improvement has been marked. There have been printed a few of the more startling reports from the usual season of rumors which is now in progress. Comments are also made on the Nature Notes that appear from time to time in post bulletins. In this connection, two large golden eagles made their habitat on the Fort Riley Reservation during the early part of the present year.

The Hunt

The pack is in fine form and is in better running condition than it has ever been at Riley. The manner in which it follows the curves of the drag is beautiful to see. When it is running right, but few horses at Riley can follow it very closely. During the present winter, although the ground has been covered with snow, the conditions for trailing have been good and the footing for horses not bad. Because of this and in spite of low temperatures, some of the largest fields of the season have turned out to enjoy this form of sport.

Regimental Notes

FIRST CAVALRY—Camp Marfa, Texas Colonel Conrad S. Babcock, Commanding

Lieut. Colonel Arthur Pillion
Major Charles L. Stevenson
Major Russell B. Patterson
Major John P. Wheeler
Captain Harrison Herman
Captain Heywood S. Dodd
Captain William T. Baukett
Captain Russell T. George
Captain Paul H. Morris
Captain Harry Foster
Captain Wade C. Gatchell
Captain Ben A. Mason
Captain Samuel R. Goodwin
Captain Frank E. Bertholet

First Lieut. James V. Gagne
First Lieut. Andrew E. Forsyth
First Lieut. Fred W. Makinney
First Lieut. Harold O. Sand
Second Lieut. Eugene L. Harrison
Second Lieut. Paul G. Kendall
Second Lieut. Richard T. Willson
Second Lieut. Thomas Robinson
Second Lieut. Gordon B. Rogers
Second Lieut. Clarence K. Darling
Second Lieut. Cary B. Hutchinson
Second Lieut. Bernard W. Justice
Second Lieut. Allen A. Cavanaugh

Soon after the return of the regiment from Camp Stanley, the baseball championship of the Regiment was decided by a three game series between Troop G and the Service Troop. All games were hotly contested and the third game was won by Troop G, thus giving it the best two out of three and the title of Regimental Champions. Soon after, this troop repeated the honor by winning a pool tournament between all units at Camp Marfa.

An indoor rifle competition has just been completed with the following results:

a. The Service Troop won the Novice Team Match, and Private Morley, Troop A,

won the Novice Individual Match.

b. The Open Team Match was won by Troop B and Sgt. Pray. Troop B, won the Open Individual Match.

The Brigade inspection of the work accomplished by the Regiment during the first period of the training year has passed, and the regiment was found proficient.

The Regiment has recently received about 100 recruits, and the organizations are beginning to look more like troops when at drill.

Every month we have horse races and a horse show, and interest is growing in both events. A racing stables has been established to train horses for the races to be held at Fort Clark in April.

Polo is played by nearly all officers. At the present time, we have a team entered in the tournament now being held at San Antonio.

Plans are under way for a quiet celebration of the Regiment's 94th birthday on March 2nd.

SECOND CAVALRY—Fort Riley, Kansas Colonel Llewellyn W. Oliver, Commanding

Lieut. Colonel Geo. T. Bowman
Major Edgar M. Whiting
Major Elkin L. Franklin
Major Geoffrey Keyes
Captain Robert W. Grow
Captain Terrill E. Price
Captain John W. McDonald
Captain Louis LeR. Martin
Captain James T. Mensie
Captain Harry A. Buckley
Captain William T. Hamilton
Captain Rufus S. Ramey
Captain Harold DeB. Bruck
Captain Joe C. Rogers
Captain Sexton Berg
Captain John B. Casseday

Captain Floyd M. Hyndman
Captain Thomas A. Bryant
First Lieut. Clyde B. Bell
First Lieut. Albert W. Johnson
First Lieut. James H. Phillips
First Lieut. John W. Wofford
First Lieut. Paul M. Martin
Second Lieut. Gordon S. Armes
Second Lieut. Daniel DeRardleben
Second Lieut. Walter Burnside
Second Lieut. Kevin O'Shea
Second Lieut. Roland A. Browne
Second Lieut. William H. Wood
Second Lieut. Raymond W. Barton
Second Lieut. John L. DePew
Second Lieut. Edward J. Doyle

On January 28, 1927, the Union Pacific Railroad celebrated the opening of its new passenger depot at Topeka, Kansas, by an appropriate and impressive ceremony. The parade which immediately preceded the formal opening of the building, included such reminders of the frontier days as Indians in their colorful native regalia, covered wagons drawn by oxen, and frontier scouts.

A detachment of the Second Cavalry composed of Troop G and Band, commanded by Captain Louis LeR. Martin, participated in the exercises at Topeka. The troops stationed at Fort Riley in the early days were closely associated with the building of the Union Pacific through this section of the country, as they were often called upon to protect the laborers and engineers from frequent attacks by hostile Indians, and it was for this reason that Colonel Brophy, prominent official of the Union Pacific System, requested the presence of the United States Cavalry troops on this occasion.

The Second Cavalry held its Annual Mid-Winter Horse Show in the West Riding Hall, Tuesday Evening, February 1, 1927. The weather conditions were most favorable for this season of the year, and the attendance at the show, both from the garrison, especially the student officers and their families, and Junction City, was most gratifying. The spectators were amply awarded for their turnout by witnessing one of the best programs put on at the Cavalry School.

One of the outstanding features of the show was the rough riding exhibition staged by a squad from Troop C and trained under the supervision of Corporal Sebastiano,

Troop C; many thrills were furnished the spectators and the class of fancy and trick riding was comparable to that seen at western rodeos.

Lieutenant Colonel George T. Bowman, 2d Cavalry presented a cup for individual jumping by officers. This event was reserved for officers of the 2d Cavalry, and was won by Captain Thomas A. Bryant, 2d Cavalry, on *Baldie*.

The Commandant, the Cavalry School presented the awards to winners of each event.

Lieut. Paul M. Martin is to try out for the rifle team to represent the United States in the International Rifle Matches to be held in Rome, Italy, about the first of June.

At the close of the 1926 polo season, all the thoroughly and partially made ponies were turned out to pasture; at this time plans were started to prepare for the 1927 polo season. Officers engaged in polo activities trained through the winter months at least one green pony each. The partially trained ponies after one month of rest in the pasture, were brought in for further training. At the present writing all ponies are now in the stables and, due to the hard work of conditioning and training, the prospects for a successful polo season for the Second Cavalry are exceedingly encouraging. Officers have been encouraged to own and train their ponies, which has resulted in adding to our polo stables quite a few privately owned mounts.

The Second Cavalry is preparing to participate in the Cavalry School Hunt Race Meeting to take place May 28th and 30th. For the last two years this regiment has held its own race meeting on Regimental Day with a steeplechase for its officers, one for non-commissioned officers, and one for privates. The races have developed riders and horses, who later appeared with wins to their credit in the fall race meeting. The interest taken by the enlisted men in this class of sports has been keen, and has resulted in developing men of high caliber who are able to excel in riding and caring for horses.

THIRD CAVALRY (less 1st Squadron)—Fort Myer, Virginia Colonel William J. Glasgow, Commanding

Major Adna R. Chaffee
Captain John A. Weeks
Captain James R. Finley
Captain Vernon L. Padgett
Captain James M. Shelton
Captain John H. Irving
Captain Henry T. Allen, Jr.
Captain Jesse G. Boykin
First Lieut. Mark A. Devine

First Lieut. George B. Hudson
First Lieut. Paul McD. Robinett
First Lieut. Charles V. Barnum
First Lieut. Samuel P. Walker
First Lieut. George G. Elms
First Lieut. Thomas E. Whitehead
First Lieut. Alexander George
First Lieut. John B. Cooley
Second Lieut. Carl W. A. Raguse

The first important event of the winter season was a reception and dance given to Major General and Mrs. Summerall, on December 17th. The dance was a great success and there were about three hundred guests present.

On January 8, was given the first demonstration ride of the season. This was a pay ride given in the Riding Hall, and held for the benefit of the Army Relief Society. After the ride a tea dance was held in the Administration Building. The proceeds of both events after all expenses had been deducted, amounted to \$1862.13.

On January 14, was given the first of the regular Friday afternoon rides. The program at these rides consists at various times of a drill by the entire squadron, a saddle drill by Troop E, a jumping drill by the same troop, an exhibition in bare back riding by Troop G, rough riding, or a tandem drill by Troop F, an officer's or non-commissioned officers jumping exhibition, and an officer's school ride.

The command has had in training ten new polo pony prospects. It is hoped that they will be able to join in the game when the open season commences. It is believed that the 3rd Cavalry will be able to put a very strong team in the field this year, as it is getting some new players to make up for those that were lost last summer.

The Society Circus, which has become almost a yearly event at Fort Myer, will be

held on April 2nd. Plans are busily going forward to make this one a bigger and better circus.

FIRST SQUADRON, THIRD CAVALRY—Fort Ethan Allen, Vermont

Lieut. Colonel F. D. Griffith, Jr., Commanding

Major Frederick Herr
Captain Harry H. Dunn
Captain Charles J. Booth
Captain Alfred J. deLorimier
Captain Walton W. Cox
Captain Rositer H. Garity

First Lieut. Dana G. McBride
Second Lieut. Lawrence R. Dewey
Second Lieut. Irving A. Duffy
Second Lieut. Harry W. Johnson
Second Lieut. Norman M. Winn

During the last three months the Squadron has been forced by the winter weather to confine its activities largely to indoor work. The Corps Area and Post training orders call for a number of schools during the winter months and the specialists have been given much valuable instruction.

The cavalry and artillery alternate daily in the use of the Riding Hall during the forenoons, the afternoons being utilized for equitation classes for officers, ladies and selected non-commissioned officers.

On the other days the cavalry have been having out-door drills, horse exercise and road marches. On January 6th in spite of the fact that the thermometer was hovering around zero and a strong north wind was blowing, the entire post, equipped for the field made a practice march through the snow to demonstrate our readiness for winter service.

A Winter Carnival was held on February 12th. The events included: Contests on skis, snow-shoes, and skates with a number of ski-joring events. The morning events were for military entries only, while the afternoon events were open to all.

Indoor polo practice has been going on regularly throughout the year. Various combinations of players have been utilized to represent the Post in games against outsiders. Norwich University and a team from the 142d Field Artillery of East Orange, N. J. have visited the Post. Teams representing the Post have visited Norwich University, Hartford, Connecticut, and West Point for games.

A mixed team representing Fort Ethan Allen, has been entered in the indoor tournament to be held in Hartford during March.

FOURTH CAVALRY (less 1st Squadron)—Fort D. A. Russell, Wyoming

Colonel Osmon Latrobe, Commanding

Lieut. Colonel William W. Edwards
Major Otto Wagner
Captain Thomas Dobyns
Captain Daniel J. Keane
Captain C. C. Strawn
Captain Richard N. Atwell
Captain E. W. Godbold
Captain C. L. Stafford
Captain Henry H. Cameron

Captain Daniel Becker
First Lieut. R. J. Merrick
First Lieut. Henry I. Hodes
Second Lieut. Frank H. Bunnell
Second Lieut. Charles V. Bromley
Second Lieut. Ralph N. Neal
Second Lieut. Gustavus W. West
Second Lieut. John G. Merrick

Old man Winter has been very, very good to us.

Ordinarily outdoor training is almost impracticable here during the winter months, but this year we have been fortunate enough, so far, to have had on open winter. Although we have had few men to work with, we feel that we have accomplished our training mission to date.

The post is endeavoring to have one polo field this year that will rival any in the east, west coast or elsewhere. In a land where there is very little good grass, and where the winters are long and severe, and summers are exceedingly dry, this is no easy task. The Post Commander has been behind this for some time and has given the project his whole hearted support.

The George G. Ball Polo Field has been plowed and leveled, and is now like the top of a billiard table. An attempt to raise money to buy good grass seed, a lawn mower, and sprinkling apparatus is being made, so that when we have our annual tournament in August, we expect to have a field on which any team in the country would be glad to play.

A "Days of '49" party will be held on the evening of February 26th as a benefit entertainment to raise money for the continuation of work on the field. A great deal of work is being done in preparation for this function, and it is expected that it will prove a huge success.

We are now making campaign studies in the Officers' School conducted by Lt. Col. W. W. Edwards. Each officer has been assigned a subject upon which he is required to deliver a lecture, and cite and discuss an historical example. The various subjects cover every phase of cavalry missions. Some very interesting talks have been made so far, and many more are expected.

FIRST SQUADRON, FOURTH CAVALRY—Fort Meade, South Dakota

Lieut. Colonel R. W. Walker, Commanding

Captain Norman E. Flake	First Lieut. John I. Gregg
Captain Rohland A. Isker	First Lieut. John T. Ward
Captain Conrad G. Wall	First Lieut. John K. Sells
First Lieut. Leroy M. Wightman	First Lieut. Wilford R. Mobley

The winter training period is rapidly drawing to a close, and soon we will be called upon to display the results of our labors. Although situated in a locality noted for its "weather," the past winter has been most conducive to training, and not a day has passed but that some outdoor work was carried on.

The fifty-two remounts recently received are progressing steadily and will soon be ready for troop duty. The lot, taken as a whole, is "above average" and by far the best we have received. Some very good polo prospects are among them and it is expected that, after the required one year's troop duty is completed, our polo string will be materially strengthened.

Our recruiting campaign continues to be successful. The Squadron has been up to strength for some time and we have been able to send about twenty-five men to other posts in the Corps Area. About seventy Indians from the neighboring reservations have "joined the colors" and are turning out to be first class soldiers.

The basketball season has been a most successful one and more than the usual amount of interest displayed. The team of Troop A has the largest percentage so far and no doubt will take the pennant. The Post team has had several engagements and has been 100% successful. Hockey, although started late, has brought out a good number of enthusiasts and games are played regularly.

Plans are now under way to stage another Black Hills Endurance Ride—similar to the one last year, but of greater scope. Having captured second place in the Colorado Ride of 1926, we feel it our duty to find a horse that will go over there and take first place in the 1927 ride. But that is not to be the sole object of our next Black Hills ride. We feel that the one held last year awakened a lost of latent horse interest which, if properly encouraged, will go far towards regaining for the "blooded" horses the throne he formerly occupied in this part of the country.

FIFTH CAVALRY—Fort Clark, Texas

Colonel W. B. Scales, Commanding

Major J. A. Roberson	Captain J. Yuditsky
Major W. Goodwin, Jr.	Captain W. H. Kasten
Captain A. L. Baylies	Captain L. W. Biggs
Captain C. Kramer	Captain R. S. Parker
Captain W. O. Johnson	Captain R. L. Creed

Captain F. L. Carr
 Captain J. T. Pierce, Jr.
 Captain J. M. Tully
 Captain F. H. Barnhart
 Captain G. A. O'Donnell
 First Lieut. R. C. Wells
 First Lieut. J. N. Greene
 First Lieut. J. E. Leahy
 First Lieut. H. Knight

First Lieut. J. B. Edmunds
 Second Lieut. C. D. Silverthorne
 Second Lieut. W. J. Bradley
 Second Lieut. J. H. Stadler, Jr.
 Second Lieut. H. S. Jernigan
 Second Lieut. H. W. Ketchum
 Second Lieut. C. Valentine
 Second Lieut. J. F. M. Kohler

On February 7th, Troops A and B returned to the Post from their one month's tour at Eagle Pass, having salvaged sufficient lumber from the old camp there to make the numerous much needed repairs to the buildings and quarters at Fort Clark. The opportunity to visit old Mexico was taken advantage of by most members of the expedition and old timers who are familiar with the terrain in and around Piedras Negras, may be interested to know that Felippes is still serving venison steak, avocado salad, etc., etc.

Encouraged by the attendance at the New Year's Day races at Fort Clark, the Athletic Association is sponsoring a three day race meet beginning on April 14th. The purses, amounting to a grand total of \$2000.00, have attracted a great many horsemen from all parts of Southern Texas. Not only have a number of horses already arrived to take part in the meet, but a great many entries have been promised, so that the success of the meet is already assured. Arrangements are being made to handle a large crowd. The Fort Clark Races have done a lot to advertise the Cavalry and have also caused a great deal of favorable comment on the interest the Army is showing in improving horsemanship.

An endurance ride for members of the local command is to be held March 21st to 25th. The test calls for a daily ride of about 40 miles, at the rate of eight miles an hour, and the course has been laid out in a series of five loops. Some twenty horses are entering. The winner will receive a cash prize of \$100.00 and a handsome piece of silver.

The jumping chutes and sabre courses on the drill field have been all rebuilt and painted green with white trimmings. A jumping pen for remounts has also been constructed and is being used daily by all organizations with the view to training some new jumpers for the regiment. Around all four sides of the drill area a steeple chase course has been erected, and adjacent to the race track and polo field, a club house or polo bungalow has been constructed from one of the salvaged buildings at Eagle Pass. These improvements are all being gaily painted, hence the drill area resembles the Field of Mars.

The Fort Clark polo team is now playing in the Mid Winter tournament at San Antonio. Captain Carr as a member of the Cavalry Division Horse Show team at the Los Angeles Horse Show held during February, materially assisted in "bringing home the bacon" for the Division.

SIXTH CAVALRY—Fort Oglethorpe, Ga.

Colonel G. C. Barnhardt, Commanding

Lieut. Colonel H. N. Cootes
 Major P. L. Thomas
 Major H. McE. Pendleton
 Captain J. W. Geer
 Captain O. Porter
 Captain E. N. Harmon
 Captain F. C. DeLangton
 Captain H. A. Myers
 Captain M. F. Meador

Captain O. C. Newell
 Captain M. H. Patton
 Captain W. A. Haverfield
 Captain C. H. Murphy
 Captain C. M. Hurt
 First Lieut. R. E. Ireland
 First Lieut. F. P. Tompkins
 First Lieut. T. Q. Donaldson, Jr.
 First Lieut. W. L. Hamilton

First Lieut. H. G. Culton
 First Lieut. L. D. Carter
 First Lieut. T. F. Sheehan
 First Lieut. H. T. Sutton
 First Lieut. A. S. J. Stovall, Jr.
 First Lieut. A. L. Fulton
 First Lieut. Douglas Cameron

First Lieut. F. deL. Comfort
 Second Lieut. L. K. Ladue
 Second Lieut. M. D. Jones
 Second Lieut. J. L. Ryan
 Second Lieut. B. L. Riggs
 Second Lieut. K. C. Cota

The annual tactical inspection of the command was held December 16th. A tactical exercise was conducted in Chickamauga Park involving dismounted action, mounted attacks, attack of a convoy, and seizing and holding river crossings. The report of this inspection made to the War Department by the Corps Area Commander, General Hagood, was most complimentary. No organization in the Corps was given a rating better than that of the regiment.

During the fall and winter each officer in the regiment has selected and prepared a lecture on some subject of military interest. These lectures are given twice a week. Each one shows the result of much study and preparation on the part of the individual, and have been a source of great interest and education to the command.

A course in tactics is also being conducted. This course includes lectures, map problems and tactical rides. The terrain upon which the problems are based is all in Chickamauga Park, and consequently an excellent opportunity is offered for the comparison between problems solved by use of the map alone, with those solved by using the actual terrain.

The non-commissioned officers of the post have organized and formed a non-commissioned officers' club. Club rooms have been provided and appropriate furnishings procured to make things very comfortable. Already the club has fostered several activities of a social nature and from present plans it is going to prove an indispensable source of pleasure to those concerned.

A regimental basketball league composed of teams from all the troops in the regiment is in full swing. Games are being played several evenings a week, and they are all clean spirited contests. As a result of the regimental league, a post team has been formed, and a number of games with visiting teams have been played, and the results have been very gratifying.

During the winter a determined effort has been made by the post commander to improve the appearance and beautify the post. An evergreen hedge has been planted around the eastern and southern borders of the reservation, about 275 trees and 100 evergreens have been planted and preparations are being made for shrubs and flowers around the lawns. The area around the flag pole has been built up in a circle with gravel walks leading up to it from the road. Outside of the circle will be another circle interspaced between the walks with flowers and shrubs, thus making a very imposing background to the main entrance to the post.

Many improvements are being made to the horse show grounds on McDonald Field. Hedges and trees have been planted around the entire ring and permanent boxes are being constructed. It is hoped to provide a beautiful and fitting setting for all future shows to be held at this post, and in another few months we believe that we will have a show ring second to none.

Under the direction of Colonel Cootes, a number of the officers are busily working the jumpers of the Regiment in preparation for the spring and summer horse shows. It is hoped to develop a creditable string of jumpers capable of representing the regiment in the horseshows in this vicinity.

On February 26, a review, musical drill and jumping exhibition was given in honor of the Chicago Civic Opera Company which was in Chattanooga February 25 and 26.

SEVENTH CAVALRY—Fort Bliss, Texas

Colonel Fitzhugh Lee, Commanding

Major Alexander D. Surles	First Lieut. George W. Bailey, Jr.
Major Raymond E. McQuillin	First Lieut. James A. Whelen
Captain Roderick R. Allen	Second Lieut. Jesse R. Wells
Captain George A. Moore	Second Lieut. Frank G. Thompson
Captain Clyde D. Garrison	Second Lieut. Murray B. Crandall
Captain Harry C. Kaefring	Second Lieut. Zachary W. Moores
Captain Harry L. Branson	Second Lieut. Peter C. Hains
Captain Paul L. Singer	Second Lieut. Frank G. Trew
Captain Harry E. Dodge	Second Lieut. Thomas L. Harrold
Captain Ceylon O. Griffin	Second Lieut. William H. Nutter
Captain John M. Life	Second Lieut. Donald H. Bratton
Captain George P. Cummings	Second Lieut. August W. Farwick
Captain Royce P. Gerfen	Second Lieut. Samuel W. Van Meter
First Lieut. Willard G. Wyman	Second Lieut. George L. Brittingham

In the horse show of national character held at Los Angeles, California, February 5 to 12, the Regiment was represented on the First Cavalry Division team by Majors Herman Kobbe and Raymond E. McQuillin. The individual riders and the team made a very creditable showing in competition with civilians and other Army teams. The team brought home 1 championship, 17 blue, 4 red, 3 yellow, and 4 white ribbons, and in prizes \$400.00 cash and 18 pieces of plate silver.

Supplementary pistol practice was completed on December 11, with the regimental percentage of 87.7. Troops F and G qualified 100%. Private W. A. Roop, Troop B, was highest man with 95%. The rifle target season preceded this, and closed in November. Creditable results were attained. Private Elmer Mason, Troop G was high man with 397. The Second Squadron Detachment was the highest organization with 88% qualified. A high wind which blew during the record firing period, dismantled the targets at 300 yards.

On December 3, the Regimental Officers' School began with a course in tactics. A Non-Commissioned Officers' school was also conducted. During the month the Regiment turned out for a Division inspection and review. The Regiment also participated in the divisional review tendered Colonel Morita, Military Attache of the Japanese Embassy.

In January the Regiment conducted field problems for two days, involving the use of airplanes from Kelly Field. First day—Airplane reconnaissance in conjunction with cavalry. Second day—Defense against attack of airplane on column of cavalry regiment and auxiliary battery of field artillery. In latter problem several forms of deployment were tried to frustrate effectiveness of attack from hostile plane.

Early in January the Regiment turned its attention to preliminary saber work. The present prospects preface a high and large qualification records. The saber course will be run for record late in February. During January all troops pursued a three-day, per week labor schedule to beautify the grounds about the barracks and quarters. Those engaged in this work planted many trees, shrubs and flowers and improved the lawns. This work was carried on in compliance with the general beautification project for the entire Post. The labor schedule ceased, however, on February 1, when intensive training began. The work of enlarging the small quarters of the officers, building additions with salvaged lumber, continued through the quarter.

A promising polo class is developing under the able instruction of Major Terry de la M. Allen. The class is receiving instruction in polo, alternating in fast and slow polo, and training green ponies. Ament polo, Major A. D. Surles has been in San Antonio, Texas for several weeks (February) as a member of the Fort Bliss polo team playing in the polo tournament at Ft. Sam Houston.

The Regimental Basketball team fought hard to win first honors in the Post Basketball League but lost to the 8th Cavalry. All glory to the victors; for it was an able team composed of good sportsmen. Troop A, 7th Cavalry, won the South Area League championship, and received a handsome trophy presented by Charles Aronson, El Paso. The South Area League consisted of troops of the Regiment, the Second Machine Gun Squadron, and the Second Cavalry Brigade Headquarters Troop. The Regimental Baseball League got under way on February 16. The outlook for our becoming the winners of the Post Baseball League for the fourth consecutive season is very promising.

EIGHTH CAVALRY—Fort Bliss, Texas

Colonel S. McP. Rutherford, Commanding

Lieut. Colonel George M. Russell	First Lieut. Oscar W. Koch
Major A. G. Hixson	First Lieut. John H. Collier
Major John K. Brown	Second Lieut. E. F. Thomson
Major John C. F. Tillson, Jr.	Second Lieut. C. H. Reed
Captain Philip H. Sherwood	Second Lieut. L. M. Grener
Captain N. M. Imboden	Second Lieut. Clinton J. Harrold
Captain W. C. Merkel	Second Lieut. A. A. Frierson
Captain H. W. Forster	Second Lieut. Clarence W. Bennett
Captain C. E. Davis	Second Lieut. William A. Reardon
Captain Alden H. Seabury	Second Lieut. R. L. Howze
Captain Paul C. Berlin	Second Lieut. Rogers A. Gardner
Captain I. H. Zelliff	Second Lieut. Milo H. Matteson
Captain E. D. Campbell	Second Lieut. H. B. Westphalinger
Captain Herbert L. Jackson	Second Lieut. William A. Fuller
Captain A. H. Norton	Second Lieut. Edward L. Rhodes

The colors of the Eighth Cavalry, overwhelmingly successful in the 1926 1st Cavalry Division Horse Show and Polo Tournament, are being carried farther afield this winter. Major J. K. Brown, captaining the Fort Bliss team which competed in the Los Angeles National Horse Show took with him *Rebel*, *Woodrow* and *Peanuts*, three of our long unbeaten string of jumpers.

Rebel took four blue ribbons and a red in the 1926 Division Horse Show with Second Lieut. C. W. Bennett up, and in Los Angeles accounted for three blue ribbons and four prizes.

Woodrow took two blues, and a red, and a yellow, at home last fall, with Second Lieutenant E. F. Thomson up, and in California he captured four blue ribbons, one red, one white, four prizes and \$100.00 in cash.

Peanuts won four blues, a red, and two yellows, last fall, and from Los Angeles he brought three blues, one white, and four prizes.

The achievements of this trio of jumping horses are rather remarkable. They have been a powerful combination in many horse shows, with many different riders up, and against the best of competition. They were all on the team which won the Military Team event at Los Angeles over a modification of the Olympic course.

The Eighth Cavalry Senior Polo Team which outclassed all competition in the 1926 tournament, was lined up with First Lieutenant J. H. Collier, 1, Captain C. E. Davis, 2, Major J. K. Brown, 3, and Second Lieutenant E. F. Thomson, 4. The Fort Bliss team which has gone to San Antonio for the mid-winter tournament presents the same lineup except for No. 1.

There was a review and reception for the Japanese Ambassador on January 5th.

On December 13th, Lieutenant Colonel G. M. Russell, Major J. K. Brown, and Captain C. E. Davis, with a number of horses, accompanied General Winans to Torreon, Mexico to attend the celebration dedicating the new Mexican Army Post there, and to participate in a horse show held in connection with the dedication.

Major J. K. Brown won the cup for Officers Jumping on Woodrow, against seventeen other entries, among them four other officers from Fort Bliss.

For the third successive year the Eighth Cavalry has won the Post Basketball Championship. The final game played on February 11th against the Seventh Cavalry, would have been a fast game in any league. It was won 28-18. Out of nine games played this year but one was lost.

NINTH CAVALRY—Fort Riley, Kansas

Lieut. Colonel Kerr T. Riggs, Commanding

Major R. D. Newman	Captain J. V. McDowell
Major W. C. Christy	Captain H. R. Gay
Major F. W. Boye	Captain G. B. Guenther
Captain F. H. Waters	Captain H. R. Gibson
Captain H. G. Holt	Captain C. Wharton
Captain J. T. Duke	Captain W. B. Bradford
Captain L. G. Gibney	Captain M. H. Ellis
Captain R. T. Maddocks	Captain J. C. Short
Captain D. S. Perry	Captain H. C. Mandell

The Ninth Cavalry Orchestra, Sgt. Clyde O. Andrews leader, is rapidly gaining popularity in the Post and the surrounding country. It has gained universal publicity and praise through the Sunday night programs broadcasted from Radio Station KFKB, Milford, Kansas. The success of this excellent orchestra is due to a great extent to the assistance given by Lieutenant H. F. Dyer, Air Corps, an experienced orchestra leader, who through his coaching, has developed what is considered one of the best dance orchestras in the Army. For dance music this orchestra is used by both officers and enlisted men in preference to the best civilian orchestras in this section of the country.

During the month of December the Regiment lost sergeant William A. Crowder, who retired after thirty years of service. Sergeant Crowder came to Fort Riley in 1906 and served at this station since that date.

A detachment of the Regiment accompanied the Cavalry School Horse Show Team to Rochester, New York and Chicago, during the fall horse shows. In the events for enlisted men, these men won several places. Sergeant Lemuel Russell won first place in the troopers' jumping event at the Chicago show, for which he was given a ribbon and a silver cup.

On January 31st Private William L. Scott, Headquarters and Service Troop, died at the Station Hospital. Private Scott was the star pitcher on the 9th Cavalry baseball team that won the championship of the orient in 1917 and 1918.

During the months of December and January the Ninth Cavalry gave two musical concerts for the garrison at the Godfrey Court Hop Room. These concerts consisted of a special program by the band, male quartet, female quartet, spiritual singing and novelty musical numbers, 1st Sgt. Morris Brown, Band leader, directed the concerts and was assisted by Sergeant Clyde O. Andrews.

TENTH CAVALRY—Fort Huachuca, Arizona

Colonel L. C. Scherer, Commanding

Major C. W. Foster	Captain Bertrand Morrow
Captain H. McN. Gregory	Captain Ira A. Correll
Captain C. A. Shannon	Captain D. C. Hawley
Captain J. B. Taylor	First Lieut. F. C. Thomas
Captain Edward A. Everitt	First Lieut. J. H. Healy
Captain H. W. Maas	First Lieut. E. N. Schjerven
Captain V. W. B. Wales	First Lieut. I. P. Swift
Captain S. G. Fuller	First Lieut. D. H. Nelson
Captain Clyde Pickett	First Lieut. B. G. Thayer

First Lieut. Kirk Broadus

First Lieut. C. W. Fake

First Lieut. H. G. Maddox

First Lieut. F. R. Pitts

Second Lieut. G. C. Claussen

Second Lieut. H. J. Thels

Second Lieut. W. O. Hancock

Second Lieut. W. H. Barnes

A dismounted field and track event was held January 6th, won by Troop B; second, Troop A; and third, Troop E.

A horse show, won by Troop C; second, Headquarters Troop; and third, Troop B, was held on January 8th.

On January 17th practice began for selection of an officers' horse show team and mounts to enter the Los Angeles Horse Show. A team consisting of: Captain James B. Taylor, First Lieutenant Einar N. Schjerven, First Lieutenant Ira P. Swift and First Lieutenant Halley G. Maddox, with eleven horses left February 3rd to enter the show. At this time no news of their progress at the show has been received. Captain Clarence A. Shannon, a prospective member of the team, fell with his horse on Saturday, January 29th and was evacuated to William Beaumont General Hospital suffering with a triple fracture of his upper arm.

It is contemplated sending a polo team to the Pacific Coast about February 15th to compete in a tournament. The team will probably consist of: Major Chas. W. Foster, Captain James B. Taylor, First Lieutenant John H. Healy, First Lieutenant Basil G. Thayer and First Lieutenant Halley G. Maddox.

ELEVENTH CAVALRY—Presidio of Monterey, California

Colonel Leon B. Kromer, Commanding

Lieut. Colonel O. P. M. Hazzard

Major W. W. Erwin

Captain Rinaldo Coe

Captain J. L. Rice

Captain O. B. Trigg

Captain W. J. Redner

Captain D. C. Hawley

Captain R. E. Blount

Captain F. S. Jacobs

Captain R. C. Gibbs

Captain J. M. Adamson, Jr.

Captain A. B. MacNabb

Captain L. Patterson

First Lieut. J. I. Lambert

First Lieut. B. B. Vail

First Lieut. M. A. Fennell

First Lieut. G. W. Read, Jr.

Second Lieut. D. H. Galloway

Second Lieut. J. H. Reipe

Second Lieut. C. G. Meehan

Second Lieut. C. L. Ruffner

Second Lieut. C. S. Babcock

Second Lieut. J. P. Doyle

Second Lieut. G. V. Ehrhardt

First Lieut. Esteve, Cuban Army

First Lieut. Fernandez, Cuban Army

Due to the postponement of the Corps Area Commander's annual tactical inspection from September to May, the regiment found itself with three months on its hands which were not provided for in the training schedule. This period, or at least a part of it, was devoted to scouting and patrolling work. Each troop commander was given a month in which to perfect the men of his troop in this sort of training and at the end of that time squadron and regimental patrol problems were held.

After the close of the summer training camps in August the regiment was nearly a hundred men under strength, and conditions rapidly went from bad to worse, until finally early in October we received a batch of about sixty recruits from the East coast. Since that time there has been a steadily increasing stream of them coming in, so that we are now practically at our full authorized strength.

In spite of the handicap of shortage of personnel, Troop F entered the competition for the Goodrich Trophy, even though the conditions of the test required a full strength troop. This troop commanded by Captain Lawrence Patterson, ranked high in the final rating and in a letter to the regimental commander the Chief of Cavalry expressed his gratification at the performance of the troop.

On the 2nd of February a team composed of Major Sloan Doak, Capt. Alex. B.

MacNabb, Capt. Rinaldo C. Coe, Capt. Lawrence Patterson, and First Lieut. Russell C. Winchester, went to Los Angeles to participate in the Ambassador Horse Show. Very few civilian events were entered as there was no comparison between our horses and those of the civilian entries. In the military events we were nosed out by the Cavalry Division team.

The basketball season is just drawing to a close. The Service Troop seems to be assured of top place and in the near future will play the winning artillery team for the Post championship.

The regimental polo team is entered in the Del Monte tournament to be played in March. The competition will be strong as such teams as Del Monte, (including Commander Wise and Lieut. McCreery of England,) the San Mateo Cardinals, and Eric Pedley's Midwick team are also entered.

TWELFTH CAVALRY (less 2d Squadron)—Fort Brown, Texas Colonel William T. Johnston, Commanding

Lieut. Colonel Charles McH. Eby	First Lieut. Marcellus L. Stockton
Captain Wharton G. Ingram	First Lieut. Clifford I. Hunn
Captain Erskine A. Franklin	Second Lieut. Wendell Blanchard
Captain Herbert V. Scanlan	Second Lieut. Clyde Massey
Captain Clyde E. Austin	Second Lieut. John P. Claybrook
Captain Abraham W. Williams	Second Lieut. John P. Willey
Captain Vernon M. Shell	Second Lieut. Ralph T. Garver
Captain Ernest F. Dukes	Second Lieut. George P. Berilla
Captain John N. Merrill	Second Lieut. Rufus L. Land
Captain Silas W. Robertson	

A change in the Training Year for the troops at Fort Brown, Texas has resulted in an almost continuous cycle of training. October 31st marked the end of the Training Year 1926, while the 30th of April will conclude that of 1927. The silver lining to this cloud, however, more than offsets the rather tedious tactical drive entailed, for hereafter, under the present plan, the Regiment (less 2d Sq) will make only one pilgrimage annually to Fort Ringgold, Texas, for combined training, tactical inspection and target practice, instead of two as heretofore.

The period November 1, 1926 to February 15, 1927 has been devoted to individual training, to schools and to maintaining the troops in a state of readiness to take the field. In order to accomplish the latter, as well as preparatory to the annual Tactical and Training Inspection by the Corps Area Commander in April 1927, tactical problems have been conducted weekly. These problems, each illustrating principles in the employment of Cavalry, have first been worked out in officers' school, then used as the subject of instruction in troop schools during the week, and finally worked out on the ground with the troops, followed by a critique on the ground. Two aeroplanes, detailed from the 2d Division Air Corps, Fort Sam Houston, Texas, reported here for training with the 12th Cavalry on December 6th and 7th. In the problems which followed one plane operated with the regiment the other against it. The results obtained from this instruction were very satisfactory.

SECOND SQUADRON, TWELFTH CAVALRY—Fort Ringgold, Texas Lieut. Colonel C. O. Thomas, Jr., Commanding

Lieut. Colonel Levi G. Brown	First Lieut. Fraser Richardson
Captain Wilkie C. Burt	First Lieut. Daniel P. Buckland
Captain Edward M. Fickett	Second Lieut. Richard B. Evans
Captain William Tussey	Second Lieut. Augustine D. Dugan
Captain John P. Scott	Second Lieut. Paul R. Greenhalgh
First Lieut. James S. Rodwell	

Captain Wilkie C. Burt was on detached service at Fort Brown, Texas, playing polo with the regimental polo team during the Polo Tournament held at that station from December 24, 1926, to January 31, 1927. According to reports he acquitted himself very creditably.

On December 18, 1926, the Squadron held its 1st Quarterly Training Competition, which consisted of: tent pegging, running at heads, bending race, jumping, Pony Express, squad drill, machine rifle competition, and Bugler competition. First place was won by Troop E with a total of 62 points; Troop F, 2d with 32 points; and Troop G, 3d with 28 points. The above competition was the first of a series of training competitions to be held quarterly for a training trophy which will be competed for by organizations of the squadron, and to become the property of the troop winning it the greatest number of times in 16 competitions.

On December 26, 1926, a race program was held under the auspices of the Fort Ringgold Athletic and Jockey Club. The main event of the day was the Thomas Cup Race open to all officers who were members of the club. The race was a one mile handicap, 165 pounds. Won by *Nellie*, Captain Walter F. Hamilton, Medical Corps, up.

On February 22, 1927, a jumping contest was held, in which there was one team, of 6 men each, from Hq. Det., and Troops E, F and G, competing. The course was over 9 jumps three feet, six inches high. The winning team was awarded a cup. Points to count on the training trophy, were allowed the first three places. Troop E won first place with a score of 584½ points; Troop G 2d, score 583½ and Headquarters Detachment 3d, with a score of 580½. The exhibition was one of the most satisfactory that has been witnessed at this station for sometime. The 24 horses entered the arena and took all jumps without a single refusal.

THIRTEENTH CAVALRY—Fort D. A. Russell, Wyoming Colonel H. R. Richmond, Commanding

Lieut. Colonel S. D. Maize	First Lieut. F. T. Murphy
Major Joseph Plassmeyer	First Lieut. L. N. Smith
Captain Anthony J. Kirst	First Lieut. C. P. Amaseen
Captain W. R. Irvin	First Lieut. H. A. Sears
Captain Guy D. Thompson	Second Lieut. W. K. Noel
Captain H. E. Kloefer	Second Lieut. H. D. Eckert
Captain L. B. Wyant	Second Lieut. R. M. Shaw
Captain T. M. Rundel	Second Lieut. H. M. Forde
Captain H. C. Minuth	Second Lieut. T. C. Wenzlaff
Captain H. O. Richardson	Second Lieut. G. A. Williams
Captain A. E. Merrill	Second Lieut. P. A. Ridge
Captain G. R. Manger	Second Lieut. J. C. Crosthwaite
First Lieut. W. N. Todd	

The regimental training program for the period November 1, 1926 to March 31, 1927 calls for *individual training*; troop schools for officers, non-commissioned officers and specialists, instruction and training in equitation, horse training, and care of animals; training of troop horses and remounts; instruction and training of privates and recruits; instruction and training of the personnel pertaining to communication and supply.

The Advanced Course for officers has proceeded in a manner very satisfactory indeed. Last year the course followed closely that at the Cavalry School prescribed for field officers. It included 21 cavalry problems, involving the troop, squadron, regiment and a reinforced cavalry brigade. It covered marching, camping, reconnaissance and security; organization of the ground and the occupation of defensive positions; attack, defense, pursuit; problems in the duties of command and staff up to and including a cavalry division; four map maneuvers, one lasting 24 hours. This year the course is based on Correspondence Course "D," Command and General Staff School; one exercise or problem

each week since November 1st. Sub-courses I, II, III have been finished satisfactorily by each member of the class. Sub-course IV, just entered upon, will be concluded by April 1st. The problem for the week is issued on Saturday, and is solved the following Friday afternoon. The officer thus has one week for the prescribed study, in any manner he chooses, and is assisted by from two to four lectures on the subject matter involved, given by a field officer recently graduated from Leavenworth.

The schools for non-commissioned officers and specialists are carried on in a manner to insure the existence in the regiment of an efficient "Cadre," around which to group, and with which to control and direct the large number of recruits the regiment hopes soon to receive. These recruits will have to be prepared very rapidly in order not to hamper the regiment next summer, when it goes into camp with the National Guard and Organized Reserves at Pole Mountain.

Equitation and horse training has been carried on, not by troops, but by classes; that is, Class I, consisting entirely of non-commissioned officers; Class II, of privates; and Class III, of recruits. The horses have similarly been divided into classes; the recruits riding old, gentle horses; the privates the gentlest and most tractable remounts; and the non-commissioned officers the most difficult remounts.

For the instruction and training of recruits, one troop has been set aside and designated as the recruit troop. By this means the recruits are quartered together and mess together, and are more closely supervised, looked after and assisted, during the period of their recruit training, than they would be if quartered among all the troops. As their recruit training is finished, they are assigned to troops in large groups, with the view to keeping together those that have become acquainted, and thus preserving their morale. Recruits received this year are excellent in quality; they are young men, pliable, easy to teach and quick to learn. Those assigned to the Headquarters Troop have made rapid progress in the sections and platoons of that troop and in the post specialists' schools especially provided for them.

Instruction and training in communications and supply has been especially stressed, with much emphasis upon the development, use, and future value to the cavalry, of the radio.

Instruction in the practical problems of administration has been given much attention. Each lieutenant (except basics) has had a tour of one month's instruction as assistant to the personnel adjutant, and each captain a tour of one week as assistant to the adjutant and as acting adjutant of the regiment.

There has been a great shortage of personnel in the grade of private throughout the winter, and the winter here is long and cold, the cutting northwest winds steady and strong, rendering unit drill, out of doors, most disagreeable. It has been very convenient, and very fitting, therefore, to carry on individual training according to the regimental schedule; that is, to run the regiment from November 1st to March 31st quite as a school or college. And this has been done. The weather in the spring, summer and fall in this part of the world is glorious. Accordingly, on March 31st, "school is out;" unit training will then begin and will reach its climax in field exercises at Pole Mountain with the National Guard and Organized Reserves, in July.

FOURTEENTH CAVALRY (less 1st Squadron)—Fort Des Moines, Iowa

Colonel Julian R. Lindsey, Commanding

Lieut. Colonel David H. Biddle
Major Emil P. Pierson
Captain Rexford E. Willoughby
Captain Frederick F. Duggan
Captain John E. Maher
Captain William F. Saportas
Captain Hugh J. Fitzgerald
Captain Percy S. Haydon

Captain Harrison S. Beecher
Captain Frank M. Harshberger
Captain Orland S. Peabody
First Lieut. Henry L. Kinnison, Jr.
First Lieut. Harold Engerud
First Lieut. James H. Walker
First Lieut. Arthur N. Willis
Second Lieut. James L. Lake

Second Lieut. Isaac D. White
Second Lieut. Newton F. McCurdy
Second Lieut. Claude A. Thorp

Second Lieut. George W. Busbey
Second Lieut. Walter L. Weinaug

The Fourteenth Cavalry (less 1st Squadron) is devoting itself to the betterment of the individual, the organizations within the Fourteenth Cavalry, and the Fourteenth itself. It is doing this mainly by means of post schools, athletics, and equitation, each of which will be covered in part.

Every individual is receiving instruction in one of the following schools: Troop Schools, Specialists or Post Schools, Basic School for Officers, and Officers' School. Care in choosing competent instructors was exercised. Programs were carefully studied and made to cover the subjects and in addition, made to cover the hours of the day in which the most instruction could be imparted and imbibed.

There are perhaps few cavalry posts where there is as keen a competition in athletics as at Fort Des Moines. Basketball is just one example of this. Due to the presence of a battalion of the Ninth Field Artillery, and a battalion of the Seventeenth Infantry, there is inter-branch competition. The Post has two basketball leagues, the National and the American. Each league has six teams. At this writing cavalry teams lead both leagues. G Troop and the Service Troop are tied for honors in the National League with a standing of 800.00; whereas F Troop leads the American League with a perfect 1000.00. The Post basketball team under the guidance of Lt. Thorp has met six opponents, defeated five and was defeated by one; one of the opponents being Drake University of Des Moines.

At Fort Des Moines, cavalrymen ride, artillerymen ride, infantrymen ride, and everybody rides. Can you believe it? It is true. There is nothing the cavalrymen and artillerymen like better than their horses; similarly there is nothing the infantry officer likes better than his horse. Cavalry and artillery officers ride at equitation and remount classes. The ladies from the Post and Des Moines have a basic and an advanced class. The infantry and staff officers have horses available for their use, and use them whenever they find spare time. Every man on his horse every day is our motto: For transportation? No! Equitation!

FIRST SQUADRON, FOURTEENTH CAVALRY—Fort Sheridan, Ill.

Lieutenant Colonel Ben Lear, Jr., Commanding

Captain Edmund M. Barnum	First Lieut. Benjamin H. Graban
Captain Clinton A. Pierce	Second Lieut. Perley B. Sancomb
Captain Norman N. Rogers	Second Lieut. Thomas J. Randolph
Captain Thomas W. Ligon	Second Lieut. Clyde A. Burcham
First Lieut. Richard H. Darrell	Second Lieut. Mitchell A. Giddens

Due to weather conditions, the mounted work of the Squadron has been confined to the riding hall during the past three months.

On February 19, twenty-five recruits who had completed a ten weeks course of instruction were transferred to a full duty status at a ceremony held in the Post riding hall. The recruits were first presented to the Standard, following which they were briefly addressed by the Corps Area Commander, the Post Commander, and the Squadron Commander. The recruits then gave an excellent exhibition of training, which included close order drill, jumping, cossack riding, and monkey drill. Other events were a potato race, mounted wrestling, and an open jumping competition for enlisted men of the post. The Second Infantry Band furnished the music for the occasion.

March 5th was the twenty-sixth anniversary of the organization of the Regiment. The Squadron Commander addressed the troops on the history of the Regiment, and a horse show was held in the riding hall. Of considerable interest to the Squadron was the competition for best trained remount, open to remounts received by the Squadron during the past four months and ridden by the enlisted men who trained them. In the evening a Squadron dance was held in the Hostess House.

SECOND MACHINE GUN SQUADRON—Fort Bliss, Texas

Major John B. Johnson, Commanding

Captain J. C. Daly	Captain T. J. Heavey
Captain L. C. Frissell	First Lieut. W. P. Campbell
Captain I. G. Walker	Second Lieut. G. C. Mudgett
Captain W. T. Haldeman	Second Lieut. Joseph Smith

During the past three months weather conditions here have been perfect, and the Machine Gun Squadron has completed very successfully its squad, platoon and troop training.

On one occasion a war strength platoon from each troop was designated to fire a competitive platoon problem in direct fire. The platoons were commanded by sergeants and were scored on the following: Manner of approach; use of cover; replacement of gun mules; ability to pack; ammunition supply; combat orders; fire position changes; fire discipline; reconnaissance by leader; gun position location; replacements in gun team; ability to unpack; disposition of led animals; fire orders; fire control; and scores on targets.

The targets consisted of a column of silhouettes on a hillside, a skirmish line of silhouettes at the foot of a ridge, and two machine gun nests. They were so located that each platoon had to take up two fire positions.

This competitive problem, which was won by B Troop's platoon, proved of much interest and value to the whole squadron. It is regrettable that more ammunition is not available for combat firing practice of this type by cavalry machine gun units.

The Second Machine Gun Squadron polo team recently had a most pleasant week-end trip to Roswell, N. M., when they played the New Mexico Military Academy "Four Horsemen." While there the team were the guests of Lieut. Col. E. A. Keyes, the P. M. S. and T., who was formerly here with the 8th Cavalry. The Squadron Team consisted of Lt. Joseph Smith at No. 1; Lt. G. C. Mudgett at No. 2; Captain I. G. Walker at No. 3; and Major J. B. Johnson at Back, with Captain J. C. Daly as substitute.

Lieut. Wm. P. Campbell was attached to the First Cavalry Division Wagon Trains during January, for an overland trip to Camp Furlong, Columbus, N. M., and return. This experience proved to be valuable, as short periods of duty along this line with other branches lead to greater mutual understanding and more co-operation between officers of the different branches.

In compliance with the orders of General Winans (commanding the First Cavalry Division) Major John B. Johnson spent ten days detached service during February at Fort Clark, Texas, where ideas were exchanged with Major Sumner M. Williams (commanding the First Machine Gun Squadron) with a view to establishing contact between the two squadrons and co-ordinating the submission of recommendations to the Division Commander relative to proposed changes in organization, equipment and methods of training.

At the close of the racing season at Juarez, officers had an opportunity to purchase excellent horses quite reasonably and a number of thoroughbred horses are now owned by officers of the Squadron.

Minutes of the Annual Meeting of the United States Cavalry Association

Washington, D. C., January 12, 1927

THE MEETING was held at the Army and Navy Club, Washington, D. C., this date. The meeting was called to order at 8:10 P. M. by the President. Fifty-one members were present in person and 780 represented by proxies, a quorum.

Upon motion it was voted to dispense with the reading of the minutes of the last annual meeting and to approve them as published in the Cavalry Journal for April, 1926.

The annual report of the Secretary-Treasurer-Editor was read as follows:
Washington, January 12, 1927

To: The United States Cavalry Association
Gentlemen:

I submit herewith, as required by the Constitution, the financial statement for the year ending December 31, 1926, and a report of the activities of the U. S. Cavalry Association for the same period.

**FINANCIAL STATEMENT OF THE UNITED STATES CAVALRY ASSOCIATION
FOR THE YEAR ENDING DECEMBER 31, 1926**

<i>Receipts</i>	
Cash on hand January 1, 1926	\$3019.30
Advertising	1248.13
Book Department	2493.17
Cavalry Journal	3634.58
Cavalry Fund	1494.73
Cavalry Luncheon	82.50
Dues	1736.00
Interest	769.17
Magazine Department	5303.12
Marquis Equipment	1040.52
Postage, Stationery and Incidentals	23.03
Rent	300.00
Securities	1000.00
Telephone	40.28
TOTAL	\$22264.53

<i>Expenditures</i>	
Book Department	\$2064.01
Cavalry Journal	4729.13
Cavalry Fund	531.10
Cavalry Luncheon	85.50
Dues	6.00
Magazine Department	4377.51
Marquis Equipment	1125.84
Postage, Stationery and Incidentals	938.12
Rent	1080.00
Salaries	2292.50
Securities	3024.66
Telephone	121.30
Cash on hand December 31, 1926	1865.56
TOTAL	\$22264.53

<i>Assets</i>	
Cash in bank December 31, 1926	\$1814.76
Cash in personal possession	50.80
6 Liberty Bonds at market value	6170.62
Accrued interest on Liberty Bonds	60.21
3 Real Estate Notes	3000.00
Accrued interest on real estate notes	53.23
1 First Mortgage certificate	1000.00
Accrued interest on mortgage certificate	27.50

5 Southern Railway Gen. Mort. Bonds at market value	4312.50
Accrued interest on Southern Railway bonds	50.00
2 American Waterworks Bonds at market value	980.00
Accrued interest on American Waterworks bonds	12.50
Stock on hand—books at cost	1117.29
Office equipment and supplies—inventory	452.18
Credit at Post Office for mailing Cavalry Journal	47.17
Credit with Register of Copyrights	3.00
Accounts receivable	2755.17
TOTAL	\$21907.03

Liabilities

Credits due authors—Book Department	\$ 10.70
Credits due customers on unfilled orders	135.47
Outstanding checks, Manufacturer's N. B.	21.00
Printing and Engraving January Cavalry Journal	1278.50
Bills payable	76.28
Net assets	20385.10
TOTAL	\$21907.03

Washington, January 7, 1927

We, the undersigned, appointed by the President of the United States Cavalry Association, to audit the accounts of the Treasurer of said Association, for the year ending December 31, 1926, do hereby certify that we have examined the books of account, vouchers, and the foregoing statement, covering said fiscal year, and that the same are correct and true, to the best of our knowledge and belief.

GUY S. NOVELL

Colonel, Cavalry

J. G. PILLOW

Lt. Colonel, Cavalry

W. W. OVERTON

Lt. Colonel, Cavalry (G.S.C.)

It will be seen from the above financial statement, especially with respect to the character and amount of the bulk of the assets, that the Association is in a healthy financial condition. Practically all bills are paid on the last day of each month, the only exceptions being Hugh Rees, Ltd. of London and Hermes Freres of Paris, with whom the Association has running accounts.

The increase in net assets for the year is \$852.61. The increase on paper is actually greater than this by \$989.73, the balance in the Cavalry Fund taken up in pursuance of the action of the Association at the last annual meeting.

The increase in net assets would have been somewhat greater, but for the fact that during the past year about \$800.00 more has been spent on the Cavalry Journal than in 1925. This has been devoted to increasing its size, the number of illustrations, quality of paper and special articles. This increase was largely devoted to the issues for July, 1926 and January, 1927, the cost of the latter being included in the financial statement for 1926.

This is believed to be a sound policy, since the Cavalry Journal is practically the only material return that members receive for their dues of \$2.50 per year. Further, any improvement of the Cavalry Journal—both in appearance and quality of contents—reflects credit upon the Association.

The various activities conducted by the Association in order to render service to members, and at the same time make a small profit in order to cover overhead, have

continued to be a source of moderate income. The profits from the Book Department and the Magazine Department were somewhat less than last year, but the Saddle Department shows an increase, due to a greater volume of business, notwithstanding that the rise in the franc has at times cut the Association's profit to almost nothing.

Following is an analysis of the Association's membership and subscription list:

Cavalry Regular Army	881
Cavalry National Guard	267
Cavalry Reserve	471
Officers other Branches, Regular Army	51
Officers other Branches, National Guard	14
Officers other Branches, Reserve	25
Cavalry—Retired	40
General Officers	32
Enlisted Men—National Guard	63
Enlisted Men—Reserve	8
Libraries	90
Clubs	32
Organizations, Cavalry Regular Army	123
Organizations, other branches Regular Army	3
Organizations, Cavalry National Guard	15
Civilians	46
Miscellaneous	81
Life	3
Honorary	3

TOTAL 2248

The close of 1926 shows a moderate increase in membership and subscriptions to the Cavalry Journal. On December 31, 1925, members and paid subscribers numbered 2101; on December 31, 1926, they numbered 2248, an increase of 7%. There has been a gain in practically every class of membership and subscription. The Reserve membership increased 12% during the year. The National Guard was the only component of the Cavalry service which shows a decrease, it having diminished 10%. This was perhaps to be expected in view of the unprecedented increase of 86.6% last year.

At the end of the period covered by this report, 87% of the Regular Cavalry officers were members of the Association, 40% of the Cavalry National Guard, and 14% of Cavalry Reserve officers. It is believed that in this respect the Cavalry Association will compare very favorably with other service associations.

In 1926 the Cavalry Association, as one of the sponsors of the Endurance Ride, made the usual contribution of \$500.00. While the subject of the Association's further participation was discussed at the last annual meeting, no action was taken. This year arrangements were made for a referendum on the subject and the proxies were worded accordingly. This was done for the reason that it was believed that all of the Association's eggs should not be placed in one basket. But one regular cavalry organization is so situated as to be able to participate in the Eastern Ride, and there has been continual pressure on the part of cavalry organizations in the west for the Association to similarly support the Colorado Endurance Ride. This, it was thought, would place too much of a financial burden on the Association.

It was believed that more good could be accomplished and the prestige of the Association enhanced by supporting neither of the Endurance Rides, and allotting such amounts as the Executive Council deemed advisable to the purchase of trophies for division and regimental horse shows and polo tournaments.

However, the Board of Sponsors has recently decided to discontinue the Eastern Endurance Ride, therefore doing away with the necessity for a vote on the question of the Association's future financial support of this activity.

While the annual competition in the combat leadership of small cavalry units is under the supervision of the Chief of Cavalry, the fact of its initiation through the medium of the Cavalry Association makes its mention an appropriate feature of this report. After making available \$1000.00 for the competition in 1926, the Cavalry Reserve officers who made the competition possible, has turned over \$3000.00 which will insure the competition for three additional years. Those who have read in the last issue of the Cavalry Journal the article on the 1926 competition will appreciate the beneficial results accruing to the cavalry from this event. These will be all the greater if the scene of competition is transferred to the First Cavalry Division, which it is hoped will be the case this year.

Upon motion, the report of the Secretary-Treasurer-Editor was accepted.

The following were unanimously elected to the offices indicated, there being no other nominations:

President:	Major General H. B. Crosby
Vice-President:	Colonel W. J. Glasgow
Executive Council:	Colonel F. S. Folts, U. S. A. Retired
	Colonel E. H. Humphrey, Cavalry
	Colonel L. B. Ballantyne, 102d Cavalry
	Colonel John Philip Hill, 306th Cavalry
	Lt. Col. Daniel Van Voorhis, (Cavalry) G.S.C.
	Lt. Col. A. B. Cox, Cavalry
	Lt. Col. A. F. Commiskey, Cavalry
	Major H. S. Barrett, Cavalry Reserve
	Captain Royden Williamson, Cavalry

The new President, Major General H. B. Crosby, took the chair.

Motion made by Colonel T. A. Roberts that a vote of thanks be extended to the retiring President and Secretary for the efficient and masterly manner in which they had conducted the affairs of the Association.

The motion was seconded and adopted unanimously.

There being no further business, the meeting adjourned at 8:50 P. M. to partake of a buffet supper.

EXCLUSIVE AGENTS FOR NETTLETON
SHOES AND MILITARY BOOTS
MADE TO ORDER

DRESS WELL AT
THE FASHION
236 E. San Antonio Street
EL PASO, TEXAS

JOS. A. WILNER & CO.
CUSTOM TAILORS
MILITARY AND CIVILIAN
Cor 9th & G Sts. N. W. Wash., D. C.

HOTEL GIBSON THE HOME OF THE
EL PASO, TEXAS
DOWN TOWN ARMY HEADQUARTERS
Special discount of 20% to all
Officers when on active duty.
Write for one of our courtesy
cards.

Patronize our Advertisers—Mention the Cavalry Journal.

HOTEL
PASO DEL NORTE
PAUL HARVEY, Manager
EL PASO, TEXAS
MEMBERS
ARMY AND NAVY STORES

Forty-six Consecutive Years
of Banking
STABILITY
FIRST NATIONAL BANK
EL PASO, TEXAS
Capital and Surplus
\$1,200,000.00

FRANK J. KRUPP
Army and Navy Uniforms
CIVILIAN DRESS A SPECIALTY
1421 F St. N. W. Wash., D. C.

THE CAVALRY JOURNAL

Devoted to the Interests of the Cavalry,
to the Professional Improvement of its
Officers and Men, and to the Advance-
ment of the Mounted Service Generally

EDITOR

Lieutenant-Colonel W. V. MORRIS, Cavalry

Copyright, 1927, by
The United States Cavalry Association

Published quarterly by the United States Cavalry Association. Editor,
Lieutenant-Colonel W. V. Morris, Cavalry. Entered as second-class matter
at the post-offices at Washington, D. C., and Hanover, Pa., under the Act of
March 3, 1879. Acceptance for mailing at special rate of postage provided for
in section 1103, Act of October 3, 1917, authorized May 29, 1920.

Office of Publication, Hanover, Pa.

Editorial Office, Washington, D. C.

\$2.50 per year; single copy, 65c.

Foreign Postage, 25c Additional

This Cavalryman



Has Esprit De Corps
You can get it too
By Joining

THE UNITED STATES CAVALRY ASSOCIATION

or subscribing to

the
CAVALRY
JOURNAL

To U. S. Cavalry Association, (Date)
1624 H. St., N. W., Washington, D. C.

FOR MEMBERSHIP IN THE U. S. CAVALRY ASSOCIATION

I hereby apply for membership in the U. S. Cavalry Association in the class for which I am eligible (see back of next page). Please find enclosed \$2.50 for one year's dues (to include subscription to the Cavalry Journal).

Name
Rank and Organization
Number and Street
City and State

FOR SUBSCRIPTION TO THE CAVALRY JOURNAL

Please find enclosed \$2.50 for one year's subscription to the Cavalry Journal.

Name
Number and Street
City and State

FOR CHANGE OF ADDRESS

Please change my address to the following:

Name
Number and Street
City and State

Please notify us at once of change of address.

CONTENTS FOR JULY, 1927

VOL. XXXVI, No. 148

	Page
THE INDIAN POLICY OF THE ARMY, 1860-1870	367
Raymond L. Welty, Ph. D.	
THE PUNITIVE EXPEDITION OF 1916	382
Colonel Samuel F. Dallam, Cavalry	
THE TWENTY-SIXTH CAVALRY (PS) IN ANNUAL MANEUVERS OF THE PHILIPPINE DIVISION	399
Captain W. F. Pride, Cavalry	
SEAT AND HANDS IN HORSE SHOW JUMPING	405
Major E. W. Taulbee, Cavalry	
✓ SOME REMINISCENCES	417
Brigadier General E. S. Godfrey	
THE CHINESE CAVALRY	426
Captains S. V. Constant and J. W. Carroll, Cavalry	
THE MACHINE RIFLE	433
Major John T. McLane, Cavalry	
ON HORSES	437
Lieut. Commander H. H. Frost, U. S. Navy	
THE ARMY HORSE SHOW TEAM	445
Captain W. B. Bradford, Cavalry	
USE OF THE POLO Mallet	454
Arthur P. Perkins	
ENDURANCE RIDE RESULTS	458
W. R. Brown	
THE RACE TO THE SEA	464
Transcription from <i>Revue de Cavalerie</i> Captain Royden Williamson, Cavalry	
THE DEATH OF GENERAL CUSTER	469
Brigadier General E. S. Godfrey	
RATIONAL BITTING	472
Lieut. Colonel Edmund A. Buchanan, Cavalry	
TOPICS OF THE DAY	477
CAVALRY BOARD NOTES—REORGANIZATION OF THE BRITISH CAVALRY—FRENCH CAVALRY DOCTRINE—CAVALRY RIFLE AND PISTOL TEAM—SPRING RACE MEETING AT FORT RILEY—SECOND CAVALRY MIDWINTER HORSE SHOW—NATIONAL DEFENSE MAGAZINE—HEAVY ANTI-AIRCRAFT MODIFICATION FOR BROWNING MACHINE GUN—THE JOCKEY BOX.	
POLO	492
HORSE SHOWS	498
THE NATIONAL GUARD	501
THE ORGANIZED RESERVES	504
NEW BOOKS REVIEWED	507
FOREIGN MILITARY JOURNALS	511
CAVALRY SCHOOL NOTES	513
REGIMENTAL NOTES	514

The United States Cavalry Association

DESIGN

1. The aim and purpose of the Association shall be to disseminate knowledge of the military art and science, to promote the professional improvement of its members, and to preserve and foster the spirit, the traditions, and the solidarity of the Cavalry of the Army of the United States.

ARTICLE III of the Constitution.

Organized November 9, 1885

OFFICERS

President

Major General H. B. Crosby

Vice-President

Brigadier General W. J. Glasgow

Secretary and Treasurer

Lieutenant Colonel W. V. MORRIS, Cavalry.

EXECUTIVE COUNCIL

Colonel F. S. FOLTZ, U. S. A. Retired
Colonel E. H. HUMPHREY, Cavalry
Colonel L. B. BALLANTYNE, 102d Cavalry
Colonel JOHN PHILIP HILL, 306th Cavalry
Lt. Col. DANIEL VAN VOORHIS, (Cavalry) G. S. C.
Lt. Col. A. B. COXE, Cavalry
Lt. Col. A. F. COMMISKEY, Cavalry
Major H. S. BARRETT, Cavalry Reserve
Captain RYDEN WILLIAMSON, Cavalry

MEMBERSHIP AND SUBSCRIPTION TO THE CAVALRY JOURNAL

Membership shall be of three classes, which, together with the conditions of eligibility therefor, are as follows:

- (1) Active, for which all general officers of the Army of the United States and all commissioned officers of the Cavalry of the Army of the United States shall be eligible.
- (2) Associate, for which all present and former commissioned, warrant, and non-commissioned officers of honorable record of the military or naval services of the United States not included in class I shall be eligible.
- (3) Honorary.

Application for membership, showing present or former military status, should be addressed to the Secretary, U. S. Cavalry Association, 1624 H Street N. W., Washington, D. C., and be accompanied by remittance of dues for one year.

There is no initiation fee. Annual dues, payable in advance, \$2.50, which includes subscription to the Cavalry Journal, 60% thereof being so designated.

Any person or organization not eligible for membership may subscribe for the JOURNAL at the regular subscription rates of \$2.50 per year. Canadian and foreign postage, 25 cents additional.

Members and subscribers are requested to give prompt notice in advance of change of address.

THE CAVALRY JOURNAL

Vol. XXXVI

JULY, 1927

No. 148

The Indian Policy of the Army 1860-1870

By

RAYMOND L. WELTY, Ph. D.

Professor of History, Morningside College

IN THE HISTORY OF THE WEST the Indian policy of the United States attracts the attention and often receives the disapproval of students of history. As the army of the United States played an important part in the government's relations with the Indians, it is of interest to find out what was the attitude of the military authorities on this mooted question. The object of this paper is to consider the Indian policy of the army during the decade, 1860-1870.

The Indian tribes during this period, 1860 to 1870, were treated as independent nations. The relations between the Indians and the United States were established by formal treaties ratified by the Indians and the United States Senate. The treaty usually provided for a reservation, or assigned some boundary between the Indian lands and those to be considered as belonging to the United States. In fact, the principal reason for making these treaties was the cancelling of the Indians' title to their ceded lands. Under this policy the Indians had by treaty after treaty been pushed back westward across the United States.

The evils of the treaty system were more easily seen when by 1860 a barrier of Indians had been banked up against the western expansion of the settlements. Before 1860 there had always existed good land to the west upon which the Indians when moved could be placed, but by 1860 the supply of good land had been almost exhausted. If the Indian was moved he was placed upon land so poor, or in regions so lacking in rainfall, that his existence became a doubtful struggle. But the desire for land by the frontier again forced the tribes farther back. The annuity goods, which were bribes to obtain the consent of the Indians to these cessions of land, became larger and larger as the pressure became greater and the supply of land decreased. These annuities of goods, provisions, and munitions were disbursed by special officers

*This article is a portion of a more extended investigation on the subject of *The Western Army Frontier, 1860-1870*, by the author.

367

General Henry (Light Horse Harry) Lee

who were known as Indian agents. These agents were expected to be the guardians of the savages—to protect and aid in their civilization.

The annuities furnished the "treaty" Indians led to their ruin. These annuities attracted to the reservations Indian traders, gamblers, whisky sellers, and unprincipled persons who infested the frontier. These parasites soon possessed the Indians' annuities. The Indian thus surrounded by the worst possible associates, imitated the ways of civilization that he saw, and so became a drunkard and a vagabond—plundered and wronged on all sides. As soon as the expansion of settlements made his lands valuable he again was at the mercy of land speculators, Indian traders, contractors, settlers, and politicians—all of whom brought pressure upon the government to make another treaty to secure his lands and to provide for more annuities to be stolen from him. So this vicious cycle continued until the Indian either went to his destruction peacefully in some out of the way place, or, goaded by his wrongs and maddened by drink, committed outrages that horrified civilization. But forceful resistance only hastened his downfall, for civilization was quick to revenge opposition to its "system" by the sword, or if that failed, by bribery with its usual results.

In commenting on this system General John Pope, who saw active service on the frontier, declared: "Both in an economic and a humane view, the present Indian policy has been a woeful failure. Instead of preventing, it has been, beyond doubt, the source of all the Indian wars which have occurred in late years. So long as our present policy prevails, the money and the goods furnished to the Indians will be a constant and sufficient temptation to unscrupulous white men, and so long may we expect outrages and Indian outbreaks on the frontier." (1)

Bishop H. B. Whipple, a friend of the Indian, declared: "There is not a man in America who ever gave an hour's calm reflection to this subject, who does not know that our Indian system is an organized system of robbery, and has been for years a disgrace to the nation. It has left savage men without governmental control; it has looked on unconcerned at every crime against the law of God and man; it has fostered savage life by wasting thousands of dollars in the purchase of paint, beads, scalping-knives and tomahawks; it has fostered a system of trade which robbed the thrifty and virtuous to pay the debts of the indolent and vicious; it has squandered the funds for civilization and schools; it has connived at theft; it has winked at murder; and at last, after dragging the savage down to a brutishness unknown to his fathers, it has brought a harvest of blood to our own door." (2)

The army came in contact with the worst side of the Indian. It met either the vagabond Indian families who hung around the military posts, or

(1) *The War of the Rebellion: Official Records of the Union and Confederate Armies* (Washington, 1880-1901) Series I, Vol. XXXIV, Pt. II, p. 261. This work is cited hereafter as *Official Records*.

(2) Tuttle, C. E., *History of the Border Wars* (Madison, 1876) p. 510.

those who were hostile. The Indians who "came in" at the posts, as a class, were filthy drunkards, who were too lazy to work. They depended for a living upon begging, petty thieving, the issues from the Indian agent, or the condemned subsistence and the waste from the military establishment. As for the hostile Indians, the army knew them by their terrible outrages upon innocent people. The army thus obtained its conception of the Indian as it saw him, and not as the Indian might become. For the army knew his low standards of living, his loose morals, his characteristics, his home life, his mode of fighting, his cruelty, his filthy habits, and his training in thieving and plundering. In fact, the army knew from its personal contact with the Indians all his limitations, and condemned him as of an inferior race. (3)

The Indian policy advocated by the army at the outset presupposed that the Indians should not check the advance of civilization over the western country. "I", wrote General Pope, "have not undertaken to discuss the question of the right of a few nomadic Indians to claim possession of the vast district of country which they roam over, to check the advance of civilization, or to retain in wilderness and unproductiveness, for the scanty subsistence of a few thousand savages, regions which would support many millions of civilized men. However such questions may be decided by abstract reasoning, all history shows that the result will certainly be in some way the dispossession of the savage and the occupation of his lands by civilized man. The only practical question, therefore, for the Government to consider, is the means by which this result may be attained with the greatest humanity, the least injustice, and the largest benefit to the Indian, morally and physically." (4)

This was a forecast of the history of the Indians. It is useless to blame the white race for moving across the continent; one might as well blame Columbus for discovering America—both followed the laws of their nature and being. Therefore, the policy which the army wished to adopt was not one of keeping or holding the Indians in a temporary state of peace, but one to replace the nomadic Indians by a white civilization with the least injustice and the greatest benefits possible to the Indians.

The Indian Bureau, during most of this period and afterwards, claimed that the army wished to insure this white supremacy by the deliberate extermination of the Indians. Incidents can be pointed out, such as the Sand Creek Massacre in 1864, as evidence of this policy. But if isolated incidents are to be the criterion, the Indian policy of the government, as administered by the Indian Bureau, can be classified as a policy of deliberate graft and corruption which led to extermination by the road of robbery, drunkenness, and want. The fact that it cost the military authorities \$60,000 for every Indian killed in 1866, is sufficient evidence that it was not the

(3) For illustrations of opinions of Army officers see: Secretary of War *Annual Report* for 1869, Vol. I, p. 38; Dodge, Richard, *Our Wild Indians* (Hartford, 1868), pp. 512-549; Custer, G. A., *My Life on the Plains* (New York, 1874), pp. 12, 102.

(4) *Official Records*, Series I, Vol. XXXIV, Pt. II, p. 262.

soldiers who were exterminating the Indians. But on the other hand, it was reported in 1867 by a special Indian Commissioner, John B. Sanborn, that some tribes had lost forty per cent of their number in eighteen months as a result of the removal policy of the Government. (5)

The military authorities severely condemned the treaty system as operated by the Indian Bureau. Under this system the Indians would be induced to assemble by means of an issue of presents and food. Then the Indians would make a treaty in which they were bribed to keep the peace by the promise of annuities as long as they remained peaceful. The military authorities were opposed to the paying of annuities on this basis. "It is," declared General Pope, "a common saying with the Sioux, that whenever they are poor, and need powder and lead, they have only to go down to the overland routes and murder a few white men, and they will have a treaty to supply their wants."

(6) The Indians were shrewd enough to see that under this system the more war and trouble they made, the larger would be the bribe to keep them peaceful.

The military authorities proposed to keep peace on the basis of fear. Their treaties were to be simply explicit understandings with the Indians that, so long as they kept the peace the United States would keep it, but as soon as they committed hostilities the army would march into their country, establish military posts, and make war against them. This meant no expenditure of money, no annuities, and no presents to the Indians, and what was better, no unprincipled traders; gamblers and contractors hanging around the Indian camps, for the Indian would have no money to spend in debauchery. General Pope declared: "Indians will keep the peace when they fear the consequences of breaking it, and not because they are paid (and badly paid too) for keeping it, and when they can, by the present system of treaty-making, really make more by committing hostilities than by keeping the peace." (7)

The Indian treaties of this period pretended to guarantee to the Indians definite reservations. Provisions were always inserted in them that the Indian reservations and hunting grounds, except along certain definite routes, were not to be entered by any persons without the permission of the Indians. These provisions were never enforced. White persons crossed at will over the Indian's lands, killed his game, seized his land, and even entered his reservation to sell him whisky and to steal his annuities. In commenting on these facts General Pope declared: "By what right are Montana and the larger part of Utah, Colorado and Nebraska occupied by whites? What right, under our treaties with Indians, have we to be roaming over the whole mining territories, as well as the plains to the east of them, molesting the Indian in every foot of his country, drawing off or destroying the game upon which he depends for

(5) *Senate Ex. Doc. No. 13, 40th Cong., 1st Sess.*, pp. 69-70.

(6) Commissioner of Indian Affairs, *Annual Report* for 1865, p. 197.

(7) *Ibid.*, p. 197, also see for attitude of military authorities Moore, Frank, ed., *The Rebellion Record* (New York, 1868), Vol. XI, p. 402.

General John Pope

subsistence, and dispossessing him of the abiding places his tribe has occupied for centuries? All these things we are permitting our people to do, mainly because we could not, if we would, prevent them. Yet these are violations of solemn treaties with the Indians, violations of justice and of right, which we solemnly pledged ourselves to prevent. How can we expect the Indian to observe a treaty which he sees us violate every day to his injury?" (8)

It was impossible for the army or the civil authorities to prevent the frontiersmen from infringing upon the rights of the Indians. "The white men on the frontier," wrote General Pope, "and close in contact with these reservations, unrestrained by laws and by any sound public sentiment, settle all disputes and avenge all offenses, however trivial, in which Indians are concerned, with a pistol or rifle, themselves being both judges and executioners." (9) This friction between the two races prevented their living together in peace. The frontiersman looked upon the Indian reservation as an obstacle in his path. With this conception and because of the bitter memories of Indian atrocities, the frontiersman too often held that the Indian had no rights which the white man was bound to respect.

Owing to the fact that the reservation was often used by the hostile or outlaw Indian as a base of operation (for it was both a depot of supply and a place of refuge after raids) General Pope recommended a new reservation system in 1866. The principal points in his plan were: (10) First, the creation of permanent Indian reservations located so as not to interfere seriously with western development and where supplies could be transported cheaply. The Indian Territory and the region west of the Missouri River in Dakota Territory were suggested as being suitable. Second, the wild Indians would be moved to these reservations as rapidly as necessary. Third, the Indians would be taught to labor to support themselves, although supplies, teachers, etc., would be furnished by the government. Fourth, no whites except government officials and other approved persons were to enter the reservations. And fifth, both the whites and Indians were to be held accountable as individuals for their conduct.

The advantages claimed for this plan were that it would open the West to settlers without the danger of Indian massacres, because the Indians could be controlled more easily on such reservations, and they also would have less cause for hostilities. It would be more humane, for the old policy was exterminating the Indians. The Indians also could be civilized with less difficulty because of the removal of the friction between the races, and the Indians would not come in contact with, or imitate the undesirable elements of the frontier society. And lastly, this plan was more economical. More

(8) House Ex. Doc. No. 76, 39th Cong., 1st Sess., p. 9.

(9) Secretary of War, *Annual Report* for 1870, Vol. I, p. 19, also see, *Ibid.*, p. 22 and Commissioner of Indian Affairs *Annual Report* for 1865, p. III.

(10) Secretary of War, *Annual Report* for 1866, pp. 24-30; *Ibid.*, for 1870, Vol. I, pp. 19-24.

Red Cloud

The great Ogallalla Sioux War Chief who has been called "The Red Napoleon of the Plains." His warriors were the scourge of the plains in the 60's, and their depredations in the vicinity of Fort Phil Kearney, culminating in the tragic Fetterman disaster December 21, 1866, and the following 2d of August, in that most extraordinary fight, known to history as the "Wagon Box" fight, are among the most important happenings in the history of our Indian Wars in the West. (THE BOZEMAN TRAIL)

supplies would be needed for the Indians at first, but the accessibility of the reservation would reduce the cost of transportation. However, the principal saving would be in the up keep of the army, for fewer troops would be needed to protect the Indians from the whites than to protect the whites from the Indians; also the expense of costly campaigns would be eliminated. General Pope's plan was generally approved of by the military authorities, but it was never adopted, although many of its features were recommended by the Peace Commission of 1867.

When the Indians were officially at peace, receiving their annuities from the government, they were under the control of the civil authorities of the Indian Bureau. When the Indians had devastated settlements or massacred emigrants or committed other hostilities, the military authorities took control. The question often arose just when the Indians were hostile and when peaceful. Both the Indian Bureau and the military authorities wished to be the judge of the point at issue. As the military authorities usually had no jurisdiction within the reservations unless invited there by the agents, they were powerless to prevent organizations for a hostile purpose or to arrest such movements until the parties had passed beyond the limits of the reservations. The Indians made their raids and committed outrages on the settlements, and before the military force could act they escaped to the Great Plains where pursuit was almost impossible. General Pope declared, "all depredations committed by Indians are charged to want of proper action or inefficiency of the military, and the commanders of military posts in or near any of these reservations are invariably held responsible by public opinion for the conduct of the Indians over whom they have no jurisdiction nor control whatever." (11)

After outrages were committed by the Indians the military forces would be sent out to punish them. When the army, after a long and arduous campaign, had forced the Indians into a position where they could be punished, the Indians, well coached by past experiences, would appeal to the civil authorities and ask for peace. Their plea would be that the tribe desired peace all the time, but that a few irresponsible warriors had carried on the hostilities. The civil agents, because of this plea, would interfere and protect the Indians just at the moment the army was about to reap the benefits from the campaign. New treaties, which the Indians never intended to observe and the Indian Bureau knew would not be observed by either party, would be solemnly signed. The Indians were now ready to start all over again; they had not been punished and they had received presents and new annuities for their outrages. (12)

This lack of harmony or co-operation between the two departments in charge of the Indians, weakened their influence over them. The Indians lost their respect for the civil agent because he was so easily hoodwinked and had

(11) Secretary of War, *Annual Report* for 1870, Vol. I, p. 9; also see *Senate Ex. Doc. No. 12, 40th Cong., 1st Sess., pp. 49-50.*

(12) *Ibid.*, pp. 49-50; *House Mis. Doc. No. 37, 39th Cong., 2d Sess., pp. 8-9.*

no power to fulfill his promises. Their respect, if not fear, for the military commanders, which the Indian naturally had, was lessened when he saw that the officers were controlled and hampered by the civil authorities.

The army believed it would be more economical if the Indians were placed under the control of the War Department, for army officials could act as Indian agents, disburse the Indian annuities and oversee the other employees of the agency. Furthermore, the supplies for the Indians could be handled by the commissary and quartermaster departments of the army with less expense than by separate contracts.

It was also believed that the army officer would not be as corrupt as the civil agents were. The army officers, especially field officers, preferred peace and regular stations where they could bring their families and escape the arduous and harassing field service. As an agent he would honestly distribute the annuities to the Indians, for he held a life commission in the army, and if dishonest would be court-martialed and dismissed from the service—an odium which would blast his whole life. If dismissed because of malfeasance he would be publicly branded by his own profession and he could not attribute it to any but the true cause. The civil agent, on the other hand, accepted his office for a limited term, and if he was charged with dishonesty and dismissed, he attributed his removal from office to politics, and thus escaped the condemnation of public opinion. (13)

"The eagerness," declared General Pope, "to secure an appointment as Indian agent, on a small salary, manifested by many persons of superior ability, ought of itself to be a warning to Congress as to the objects sought by it . . . the more treaties an Indian agent can negotiate the larger the appropriations of money and goods which pass through his hands and the more valuable his office. An Indian war every other day, with treaty making on intermediate days, would be, therefore, the condition of affairs most satisfactory to such Indian agents. I by no means mean to say that all Indian agents are dishonest. . . but that the mass of Indian agents on the frontier are true only to their personal and pecuniary interests, I am very sure no one familiar with the subject will dispute." (14)

The army stood for the abolishment of the Indian trader system. The Indian trader, licensed or unlicensed, cheated and demoralized the Indian communities. The establishment of government trading houses was advocated. The military authorities realized that the Indians must have traders or some other agency for exchange, but they were very anxious to control absolutely the sale and issue of arms, which was impossible under the old system. This harked back to Jefferson's government trading houses for the Indians. But the Indian traders and the Indian Bureau with their adherents, usually called

(13) *Ibid.*, pp. 2-10; Secretary of War, *Annual Report* for 1860, p. 5; for 1866, p. 20; *Nation* (Dec. 31, 1868), Vol. VII, pp. 544-546.

(14) *House Mis. Doc. No. 37, 39th Cong., 2d Sess., p. 10.*

the "Indian ring" defeated all such plans. (15)

The prospect of a general Indian war on the Plains due to the government's Indian policy caused public opinion in 1866-1867 to demand a more humane policy. The result was the creation of a Peace Commission by the government in 1867. It was authorized to call together the chiefs of the hostile Indians for the purpose of ascertaining the reasons for their hostility and if the commission thought it advisable, to make treaties with them. The commission was to be guided by the following objects: first, to remove if possible the cause of hostilities; second, to make secure the frontier settlements and the safe building of the railroads to the Pacific; and third, to suggest and inaugurate some plan for the civilization of the Indians. After an investigation and a long siege of treaty making, the commissioners reported that the Indians as a class were not to blame for the hostilities. The policy toward the Indian in practice had been uniformly unjust, and the only attention given to the Indian had been for the purpose of obtaining his lands. (16)

The commissioners recommended a new policy for the government in order to insure peace and the civilization of the Indians. The principal recommendations were the following: (1) that Congress should set aside two districts, one the Indian Territory and the other the region west of the Missouri river to the 107th meridian and north of Nebraska, as permanent homes for the Plains Indians, and that the government should educate and help them to become useful citizens in their new homes; (2) that the intercourse laws with the Indians should be revised so as to protect the Indians; (3) that Indians at peace should be placed under the control of the Interior Department and those at war under the control of the War Department (at the order of the President); (4) that all Indian offices should be vacated February 1, 1869, and only the good men reappointed and the remainder of the offices to be filled with carefully selected men; (5) that governors of the Territories should not be *ex officio* superintendents of Indian affairs, because they neglected the Indians' welfare to please the whites; (6) that only the regular army should be used to fight the Indians, for the state and territorial troops were apt to start an unjust war (they had in mind the Sand Creek Massacre); (7) that dishonest traders should be kept off the reservations; (8) that more power should be given to the military officers to remove all whites trespassing on Indian lands; (9) and that the President should appoint an agent to inspect the Indians' condition and report directly to the President.

Although this policy was better than the old one, it only met the half hearted approval of the military authorities. The military representatives on

(15) *IMd.*, p. 10; Custer, *My Life on the Plains*, p. 115; Stanley, Henry M., *My Early Travels and Adventures* (New York, 1895), Vol. I, pp. IX-XI.

(16) *House Es. Doc.* No. 97, 40th Cong., 2d Sess., pp. 1-16; *Congressional Globe*, 40th Cong., 1st Sess., Appendix pp. 667-673, 678-680, 702-715 for debate in Congress over Indian policy.

the commission, however, were willing to give it a trial and General Sherman ordered all the military commanders to give all aid possible to the Commission. (17)

General Pope had pointed out before in a report in January, 1867, that the provisions of Indian treaties could not be enforced because, he declared: "The peace commissioners promise the Indian, in the first place, that the whites shall not go into the Indian country, knowing well that it is impossible to fulfill such a promise. This is the first and most persistent demand of the Indian, a demand readily conceded but never executed. . . . The Indian has lost all confidence in such promises, and only makes a treaty to secure the money and supplies which accompany it. In this unscrupulous manner treaties are made and violated on both sides, and in this manner they will continue to be made unless some change in our Indian system is effected." (18)

The Peace Commissioners failed to recognize the practical aspects of treaty making with the Indians. They must have known that treaties broken by one side were apt to be broken by the other. Congress also failed to pass the promised legislation and to make the necessary appropriations, and the Senate delayed ratifying the treaties. General Sherman reported that in the spring of 1868 when the Indians found that the general promises made by the Peace Commission were not sustained by the facts, they concluded that these treaties were like those of former years—signed and approved but not to be carried out. Commissioner, N. G. Taylor, also reported the same dissatisfaction among the Indians over the failure of the government to make provisions for carrying out the treaties. (19)

An outstanding objection to this peace policy was that it assumed that the mere signatures of a few chiefs would bind the whole tribe. Individuals and bands of Indians did not always agree to the treaties and so felt free to continue under their old conditions, which often meant hostilities and raids against the whites who were infringing on their rights as interpreted by them. These hostilities were blamed upon the tribes supposed to be at peace. General Sherman reported that the frontier "people generally ridicule our efforts at peace, and think we are deliberately deluded and deceived even by those [Indians] who have signed treaties." (20)

The army policy was half way between the policy demanded by the

(17) The Commission included four military commanders, Generals W. T. Sherman, William S. Harney, Alfred H. Terry, and C. C. Augur; the Commissioner of Indian Affairs, N. G. Taylor; and three other civilians, John P. Sanborn, S. F. Tappan and Senator J. B. Henderson. The report of the Commission may be found in *House Es. Doc.* No. 97, 40th Cong., 2d Sess.

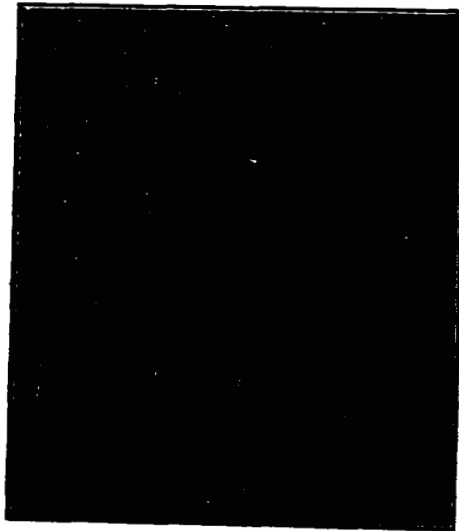
(18) *House Mis. Doc.* No. 37, 39th Cong., 2d Sess., p. 11. For an attack and defense of Pope's statement see: *Congressional Globe*, 40th Cong., 1st Sess., Appendix pp. 686-687, 714-715.

(19) Secretary of War, *Annual Report* for 1868, Vol. I, pp. X, 1-2; *House Es. Doc.* No. 124, 40th Cong., 2d Sess., pp. 1-2; *House Es. Doc.* No. 239, 40th Cong., 2d Sess., pp. 1-3.

(20) *Ibid.*, p. 1, Cf. Rodenbough, *History of Second Dragoons*, p. 553.

frontier and that of the so called friends of the Indians. In commenting on this General Sherman declared: "There are two classes of people, one demanding the utter extinction of the Indians, and the other full of love for their conversion to civilization and Christianity. Unfortunately the army stands between and gets the cuffs from both sides." (21)

The condemnation of the Indian policy by the frontier was not without grounds. An English traveler in 1869 reported: "A party of the Ogallalla branch of the Sioux tribe, detached under the chieftainship of 'Big Mouth,' was living in dependence at the military station at North Platte. They had 'come in,' to use the term of the West, and were being supported upon rations supplied them by the soldiers, in return for the amity towards white men supposed to be shown by their 'coming in.' There was, however, a very



General W. T. Sherman
President of the Peace Commission, created
in 1867 to negotiate with the western Indians.

suspicious scarcity of young 'braves' among the in-comers, and rather an excessive supply of squaws and small babies; which looked as if only the more unwelcome members of the tribe were put upon Uncle Sam for support, while the rest were pursuing their pet pastimes of horse-stealing and murdering whites." (22) This characteristic of the Indian policy was justly condemned

(21) *House Ex. Doc. No. 269, 41st Cong., 2d Sess., p. 10.* Cf. Sheridan's report, *FM*, pp. 70-71. For frontier opinion see article from *Omaha Herald* in Morton, J. Sterling, *History of Nebraska* (Lincoln, 1907), Vol. II, pp. 179-180.

(22) White, John, *Sketches from America* (London, 1870), pp. 247-248.

by the frontier. To the frontier it appeared that the government was giving a pension to those unable to steal from them or murder them. Supplies of arms and ammunition often passed from the Indian traders through these "good" Indians at the agencies and military posts to the hostile ones on the Plains.

General Sheridan, who was in favor of the new reservation system adopted by the Indian Bureau, pointed out in 1869 some of the difficulties involved. "The Indians" he reported, "have run riot along the lines of our western settlements and the emigrant and commercial lines of travel for many years, murdering and plundering, without any adequate punishment, and the government has heretofore sought to give protection to some of its best interests by making presents to these savages; or, in other words, while it found it necessary to enact the most stringent laws for the government of civilized whites, it was attempting to govern a wild, brutal, and savage people without any laws at all, or the infliction of any punishment for the most heinous crimes. This system was not a success. If a white man commits murder or robs, we hang him or send him to the penitentiary; if an Indian does the same, we have been in the habit of giving him more blankets." (23)

The military authorities wished for laws to regulate the individual Indians and to do away with the system of treating the tribes as independent nations. Its weakness was evident. Certain young braves of the tribes desired to win fame. The greatest opportunity of winning high honors presented to them, was by the warpath. Among the Indians, as well as among whites, were individuals whose principles and morals were far below the average of the community. These "bad" or outlaw Indians and the ambitious young braves were the cause, and often the only participants in the raids. According to the treaty system the tribe was responsible in the same way civilized states are responsible for their international conduct. But the difficulty here was that the chiefs were not able to control their tribes. The touch of civilization with its firearms, annuities, and whisky, had demoralized the very fiber of the political organizations of the Plains tribes. The old chiefs no longer were respected and they could not control the young warriors. An illustration of this is the aid which Red Cloud received in his war of 1866-1867 from all the Teton and Yanktonai Sioux and the Arapahoes and Cheyennes. (24) Many wise chiefs, as Black Kettle, tried to maintain peace and to hold their bands on the narrow road set by their treaties. But Black Kettle had to choose between the white race and his own race; he stood by his people and paid the penalty of death. (25)

The army was conscious of these conditions. It demanded the fulfillment

(23) Secretary of War, *Annual Report* for 1869, Vol. I, pp. 37-38.

(24) Robinson, Doane, "History of the Dakota or Sioux Indians," *South Dakota Historical Collections* (1904), Vol. II, p. 361; *House Mis. Doc. No. 37, 39th Cong., 2d Sess., p. 2.*

(25) Grinnell, George Bird, *Fighting Cheyennes* (New York, 1915), p. 208.

by the government of the treaties already observed in good faith by the Indians, but if the warriors of a tribe violated their treaty, they no longer were to be regarded as a nation, but as a dependent uncivilized people to be cared for, fed when necessary, governed, and civilized. In this way the guilty Indian was to be held responsible for his crimes. (26)

The army was a servant and its duty was to obey. It has been accused by well meaning persons of being harsh and cruel, and an enemy of the Indian. Much of this is true. The very basic principle of the use of an army is cruel and harsh, for it is trained to kill. The army was sent to the frontier by the government of the United States to kill if certain conditions existed, namely, the war of the Indians upon the whites. In a purely theoretical sense the army had no choice in the matter. If the Indian war was caused by the whites, the army had to make war against the innocent Indians. If the Indian system bred dissatisfaction and war, the army had to shoot down the Indians if they could be found. Therefore, it seemed to be the duty of the army, under this policy, to punish the Indian when he murmured at the wrongs inflicted upon him.

The army because of these facts, was accused of wishing to exterminate the Indians. General Sherman in his instructions to General Sheridan in 1868 before the Washita campaign, stated the viewpoint which epitomizes the conduct of the army: "As to 'extermination' it is for the Indians themselves to determine. We don't want to exterminate or even to fight them. At best it is an inglorious war, not apt to add much to our fame or personal comfort; and for our soldiers, to whom we owe our first thoughts, it is all danger and extreme labor, without a single compensating advantage. To accuse us of inaugurating or wishing such a war, is to accuse us of a want of common sense, and of that regard for order and peace which has ever characterized our regular army. The settlement of Kansas and Colorado, the injustice and frauds heretofore practiced on the Indians as charged, are not of our making; and I know the present war did not result from any acts of ours. It was begun and has been carried on by the Indians in spite of our entreaties and in spite of our warnings, and the only question to us is, whether we shall allow the progress of our western settlements to be checked, and leave the Indians free to pursue their bloody career, or accept their war and fight them. As brave men, and as soldiers of a government which has exhausted its peace efforts, we, in the performance of a most unpleasant duty, accept the war begun by our enemies, and hereby resolve to make its end final. If it results in the utter annihilation of these Indians, it is but the result of what they have been warned again and again, and for which they seem fully prepared. I will say nothing and do nothing to restrain our troops from doing what they deem proper on the spot, and will allow no mere vague general charges of cruelty and inhumanity to tie their hands, but will use all the powers confided to

(26) Secretary of War, *Annual Report for 1868*, Vol. I, p. XVII.

me to the end that these Indians, the enemies of our race and our civilization, shall not again be able to begin and carry on their barbarous warfare on any kind of pretext that they may choose to allege." (27) A war of races knows no humanity. The army must at least be credited with the foresight of seeing the result. If it was inhumane, the government of the United States—in particular, Congress, the Indian Bureau, as well as the people must accept their full share of the blame.

A defense of the conduct of the army is expressed by General Sheridan in these words: "I have in my command [the Division of the Missouri] at least five thousand miles of frontier settlements, my chief and only duty being to give protection to the families residing on these long lines against the outrages of Indians. The government has invited these settlers by opening the lands to them for pre-emption and improvement. The number of men, women, and children on this extended frontier is very great, and there is not a day from one year's end to the other that these families are exempt from the fearful thought of being murdered in the most fiendish manner. (28) . . . My duties are to protect these people. I have nothing to do with Indians but in this connection. There is scarcely a day in which I do not receive the most heart rending appeals to save settlers from the cruel fate which may come upon them, and I am forced to the alternative of choosing whether I shall regard their appeals or allow them to be butchered in order to save myself from the hue and cry of the people who know not the Indian, and whose families have not the fear, morning, noon, and night, of being ravished and scalped by them. . . . I have no hesitation in making my choice. I am going to stand by the people over whom I am placed and give them what protection I can." (29)

(27) *Senate Ex. Doc. No. 18*, 40th Cong., 3d Sess., p. 5.

(28) Between 1862-1870 about 1200 people were killed by the Indians.

(29) *House Ex. Doc. No. 269*, 41st Cong., 2d Sess., p. 70.

The Punitive Expedition of 1916

Some Problems and Experiences of a Troop Commander

By
Colonel SAMUEL F. DALLAM, Cavalry

DURING THE WINTER OF 1915-16, the Seventh Cavalry and a brigade of infantry were camped at Douglas, Arizona. The Regiment consisted of three squadrons of four troops each, and a machine gun troop armed with the Benet-Mercier air cooled automatic rifle.

One of the squadrons was detached and was covering the southeastern corner of New Mexico. This outlying squadron had its headquarters and two troops at Hachita, on the El Paso and Southwestern Railway, one troop at Culberson's Ranch, eighty miles east of Douglas, and one troop at the Alamo Hueco Ranch, forty miles south of Hachita and twenty miles east of Culberson's. There was also at this time, one troop on temporary duty a few miles west of Douglas. This was the situation when Villa raided Columbus, New Mexico, about forty miles east of Hachita.

Immediately on receipt of news of the raid, certain units of the Seventh Cavalry moved out to the east. These were followed by other units and detachments, including the Regimental Headquarters, until but one squadron remained. I was commanding a troop of this remaining squadron.

March 10, the Headquarters and part of the Tenth Cavalry came into camp at Douglas and left on the 11th, moving east. On the 12th, the remaining squadron of the Tenth Cavalry came into our camp.

Upon succeeding to the command of the Seventh Cavalry camp after the sudden successive departures of the remainder of the Regiment, I began to ask myself as to my mission. I obtained assurances from the Cavalry Brigade Commander in Douglas that I would go with my regiment, and my then immediate concern was the best preparation for abandoning camp. For this, a survey was made of all available suitable animals, orders were issued for an inspection of clothing, equipment, arms and ammunition, and the storage of all loose property in the only available storage place in the camp, was begun.

At 6:09 P. M., March 12, I received the following order:

HEADQUARTERS, 2D CAVALRY BRIGADE,
Douglas, Arizona,
March 12, 1916.

From: The Brigade Commander.
To: Captain Samuel F. Dallam, 7th Cavalry,
Commanding 3d Squadron, 7th Cavalry.

Note: Regardless of the completeness and perfection with which the principles governing the conduct of marches are taught, circumstances over which a troop commander has no control often make the practical application of these principles very difficult. This article furnishes a good illustration of the difficulties with which organization commanders have to contend in conducting marches under campaign conditions.—Burton

THE PUNITIVE EXPEDITION

383

Subject: Movement of Squadron to Culberson's Ranch.

1. The Brigade Commander directs that you will proceed tomorrow, the 13th inst., with your Squadron equipped for the field, ten days rations, field allowance of ammunition and forage, to Culberson's Ranch, New Mexico, reporting upon arrival to the Commanding Officer there.

(Signed) J. A. RYAN,
Major, Thirteenth Cavalry.

This was followed by verbal instructions directing me to arrive on the 14th.

Immediately upon receipt of this order, troop commanders were assembled and the order read to them. The detached troop did not arrive in camp until about 8:30 P. M., when its commander was advised of the order. Instructions were issued to troop commanders to store all property as securely as possible, and to be prepared for extensive field service. Baggage would be reduced to a minimum; all available mounts to be taken, all horses to be newly shod, and extra shoes to be carried. Two days rations and one day's grain to be carried.

All of these details had been discussed previously, but were reiterated. The squadron of the Tenth Cavalry was attached to the squadron of the Seventh Cavalry by verbal orders of the Brigade Commander. It was impossible to carry with the Squadron the ten days rations ordered.

Efforts had been made to secure wagons from other commands, and commercial transportation, including trucks, but without much success, so that the transportation was loaded with all it could carry, with the expectation of establishing dumps along the route should the loads prove excessive, as it was expected they would be and did.

The weather conditions had left the roads dry, so that little difficulty from their condition was expected. No danger from the enemy was expected for the train, so that the difficult problem of delivery of supplies was left with the Quartermaster, as the orders showed urgency for the presence of the troops at the place stated.

The problem of the troop movement required me to properly deliver the squadron at the regimental concentration point on the second day after marching eighty miles and crossing a mountain range in two days. Bearing in mind that the concentration point was simply the gathering place for the beginning of the campaign, that two forced marches of forty miles each must be made, and that the horses were soft, the problem of how to cover these eighty miles with the least fatigue to the animals was one of much concern.

About seventeen miles east of Douglas is Slaughter's Ranch, with excellent water and camping grounds. Twenty miles farther on was Guadalupe Canyon with water; on the other side of the Guadalupe ridge about fifteen miles was Laing's Ranch, another good camp with water and grass, and twenty-five miles farther was Culberson's Ranch.

Based on these watering places, I planned the march. An early start; a quick march to the first water. A good feed, rest and rub-down with saddles off, and then a steady drive with the maximum of leading, to the night's camp.

On account of the lack of opportunity for preparation by the troop which

had been detached, and as the first day requires usually more time, the starting hour was set at 6:30. At 10:30, Slaughter's was reached and here we remained until noon. From then on until the base of the mountains was reached, it was alternately walk, trot and lead. Halts were made usually only to mount after leading. After a walk of five minutes, the command would trot, and once into a steady easy trot, this gait would be maintained from fifteen to twenty minutes, then back to a walk of about ten minutes, then trot again or dismount and lead for ten minutes, then a short halt.

On a long march after the column is once settled into a steady trot, it is easier for both man and beast to continue, than to be frequently changing from one gait to another. Leading is restful to both men and animals and prevents stiffness. Leading was always at a stiff pace. When the mountains were reached, leading was resorted to exclusively for the last several miles, and Guadalupe Canyon was reached shortly after dark.

Here the Brigade Commander and Tenth Cavalry were found. The Tenth Cavalry squadron was turned over to its regimental commander and the Seventh Cavalry squadron bivouacked for the night by troop where it could. At this time I saw my plan placed in jeopardy by this unexpected meeting with the Tenth Cavalry in the Canyon. It was ahead of me and it was also going to Culberson's in the morning. So then, ascertaining the hour of its departure, I arranged to start an hour earlier; conferred with the troop commanders and notified them of the hour and order of march, and finding a spare wagon cover, crawled under it for the night.

The next morning the Squadron moved out as planned; reached Laing's Ranch about 9:00 o'clock, rested as on the day before, and pushed on ahead of the Tenth Cavalry to High Lonesome, seven miles beyond Culberson's, where the Seventh Cavalry was assembled.

The next morning, the 15th, all troops of the Squadron were sent out to gentle exercise to remove stiffness; the afternoon was devoted to target practice, and in the evening the Brigade was concentrated at Culberson's Ranch in readiness to move into Mexico.

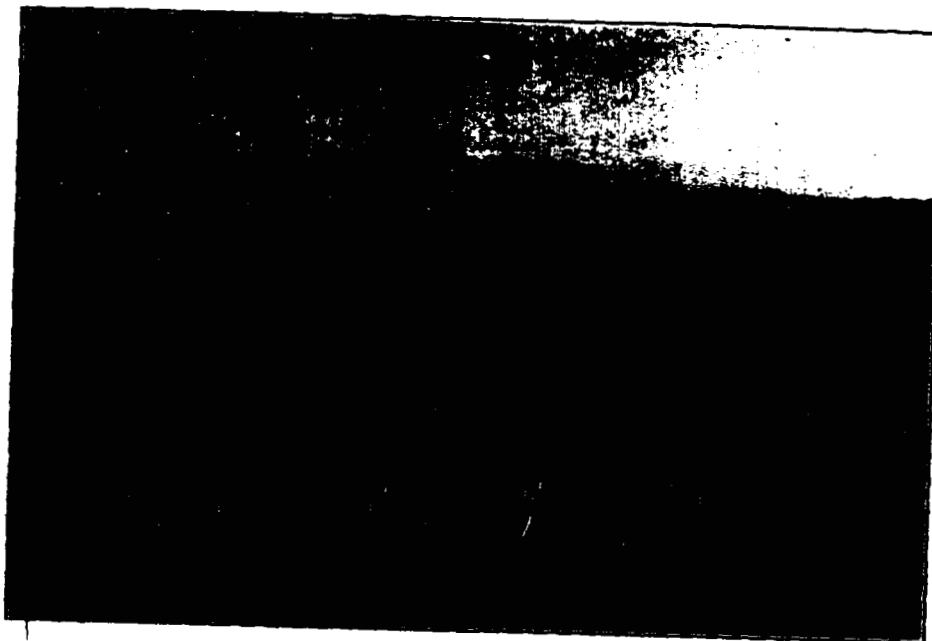
The Squadron Commander having joined us at High Lonesome, I resumed command of E Troop which I retained until promoted in July.

At 12:30 A. M. on the 16th, the command, consisting of the Seventh and Tenth Cavalry Regiments and one battery, Sixth Field Artillery (Captain Yule), started south from Culberson's, crossed the line into Mexico at 1:30 A. M., and marched until 7:30 A. M. (to Cerritus) where halt was made for breakfast; weather was very cold and windy. Broke camp about noon and moved to Ojitos, arriving about 6:30 P. M., total distance about fifty-one miles. We left Ojitos at 7:30 A. M., March 17, and arrived at Colonia Dublan just before dark, distance about forty-two miles.

Our squadron had now covered approximately two hundred miles from March 13 to 17, inclusive. March 18 we remained in camp. Time was

devoted to bathing and washing our clothes in the river and caring for animals and equipment.

March 19 at 3:00 A. M., the Regiment broke camp and started south again through Chocolate Pass to El Chaco where halt was made at 10:00 A. M. for breakfast and water for animals. The water seeped up through the sandy bed of a stream which had to be dug out to make water holes. At noon the march was resumed and camp made about 4:30 P. M. Distance marched, thirty miles. We broke camp at 7:30 P. M. and headed for Cerrillos Pass—our guides lost the route and we marched until 4:00 A. M. on the 20th, then went into bivouac.



Camp of Seventh Cavalry at Colonia Dublin

This march was difficult on account of the cold and the weariness of the men. The nights were intensely cold in this high altitude and the days correspondingly hot. The men usually wrapped themselves in their spare blanket on the night marches. Some of the officers had the sheep lined moleskin coat which was found to be most satisfactory for this work. On this march the men were so weary that orders were issued that every one would remain standing during the short halts, otherwise men would immediately drop off to sleep, and there was much difficulty and delay in rousing them. Distance marched, twenty-six miles.

Broke camp at 10:00 A. M. and marched ten miles to water, the Rio Santa Anna, four miles south of the town of Galeano.

March 21 we were out of rations and forage, and went to the nearest pueblo and bought corn and beef. The sudden change from oats to corn was very hard on some of the horses. Some took to it willingly, others refused to touch it, and those that could not adjust themselves to the new diet, weakened and starved and were cast loose or shot. As a rule, oats were conserved and mixed with the corn, and grazing was resorted to whenever possible; corn stalks were sometimes available as roughage.

The horses later developed a hunger which caused them to chew the halter shanks, either rope or leather, and these shanks were gradually replaced by lariats.

Extra cotton handoleers that were carried by the men, wore out rapidly and a loss of ammunition resulted. Most of it was transferred to the saddle bags or pockets. The rough ground rapidly wore out the horses's shoes and when the extra shoes that were carried in the saddle bags were exhausted, the shoes of all horses that died were pulled off and taken along. As the horses wore down in flesh, saddle blankets had to be doubled to protect the withers. Our Regiment was equipped with the McClellan saddle and carried the rifle in the scabbard. One other regiment was equipped with a high seated saddle with a spring fork; its regimental commander informed me that he believed this saddle caused injury to his men. Other regiments carried the rifle slung over the trooper's shoulder and I was informed that this made much trouble, as in going through country some of the troopers were dismounted because the rifle caught in tree limbs, pulling the men out of the saddle.

All bacon grease was saved as long as possible and used with fresh beef and hard bread. We early ran out of sugar and on some occasions were without salt. The need for both, as well as tobacco, was keenly felt. Sometimes native tobacco was found, but this was a poor substitute. One curious incident of this campaign was that the Quartermaster was without funds, where cash was an absolute necessity, so a contribution was levied and each officer contributed what he could until funds were later obtained.

While in camp on March 21, an airplane (Captain B. D. Foulis) arrived with a message from the Regimental Commander. Colonel G. A. Dodd, the Brigade Commander, joined us, and Villa was reported at the pueblo of Cruces, some distance south.

Here the Regimental Commander was visited by the Mayor of El Valle, the next town south. He and the Commanding Officer of the Carrancista (Federal) forces wanted our authority for being in Mexico. Fortunately, the Regimental Commander had a copy of President Carranza's proclamation authorizing the expedition, so that the next day we passed through Carrancista troops in position without argument. That night some trucks came in with supplies.

On March 22, we broke camp at 6:30, marched till dark, about thirty miles, and camped in a narrow canyon with a high wind blowing, and the

weather piercingly cold. Up before daylight on the 23d and past Cruces (Villa was not there.) Camped in that vicinity, distance eighteen miles.

The next day, March 24, we made eighteen miles to a ravine. Weather cold, overcast, high wind and snow.

On March 25, we struck directly up the mountain side, leading up a long, stiff, steep climb which caused noses to bleed from the altitude and exertion; reached a broad plateau; crossed this plateau to the Bavicora Ranch. Here we obtained fresh beef, and corn and some potatoes. Distance, twenty-five miles. Our supply train during this time consisted of small detachments from a pack train.

By this time the strenuous exertions and exposure were beginning to show their effects on the men.

This night was intensely cold, and the next morning, March 26, we started out at daylight. It was too cold to ride and the command dismounted and led until the sun came up and warmed us. Men and animals had icicles hanging from their whiskers, and canteens were frozen solid. Soon we dropped off the plateau into the plain again to the Santa Anna Ranch—old adobe buildings. Here we established a rest camp and exhausted men and animals were left with an exhausted surgeon. Distance marched, twenty-five miles.

Extract from my notes of this date read as follows:

March 27, 9:30 A. M. Still at Santa Anna (Choyas) little finger of right hand still numb and finger ends sore (from freezing). Have been living off fresh beef, frijoles and parched corn several days. Horses nearly played out and men tired.

Shot one horse on road after leaving El Valle—one could not keep up yesterday and came in later. One had colic yesterday. Several in other troops have colic from eating corn—all they have had for days except grazing. Two in other troops dead on picket line this morning.

The command left Santa Anna about noon, marched south to Providencia Ranch, then east and made a dry camp on a hillside—distance, eighteen miles. We are headed for St. Andreas.

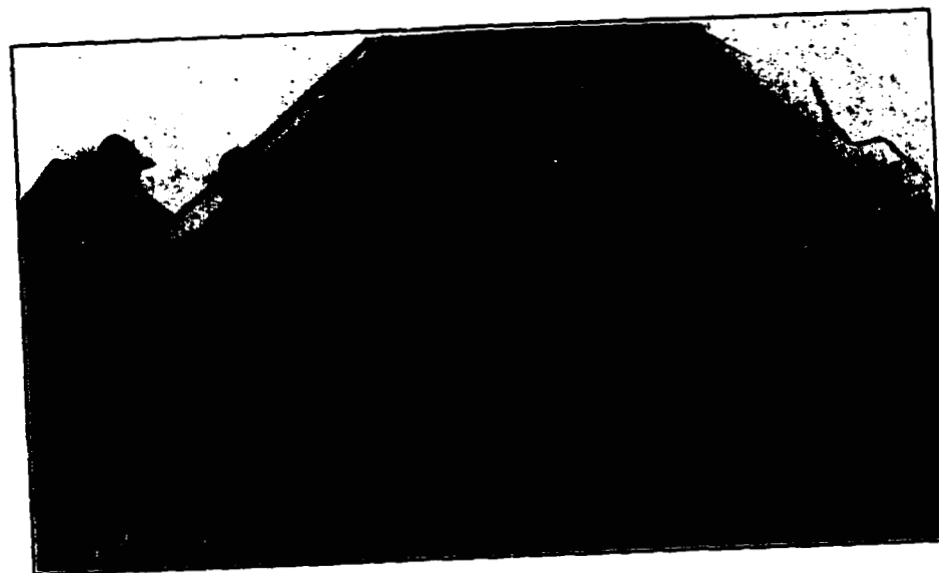
On March 28, we broke camp at 6:00 A. M. and marched toward Bachineva. (It was reported that Villa had captured Guerrero on the 27th.) We halted in a canyon from 1:00 to 4:00 P. M. and grazed horses. Marching at 4:00 P. M. on Guerrero, we halted at 7:00 P. M. and broke camp at 11:00 P. M. in order to strike Guerrero at daybreak. The march slow and extremely cold. At halts men would lie down and sleep holding reins. Guerrero was reached at 7:00 A. M. We were fired on by outposts and the command halted. I immediately dismounted the troop, rolled blankets that men were wearing, issued extra ammunition, and tightened cinchas, preparing for action.

From March 13 to March 29, our squadron had marched fourteen days out of sixteen, a distance of approximately 436 miles under most trying conditions, and with a shortage of rations and forage; and now after a prolonged day and night march of fifty-five miles, was going into action.

Such experience calls forcibly to mind the instructions to cavalry officers

that every effort must be made to conserve their mounts in every way, that they may arrive in the best possible condition for battle.

Unremitting care and supervision must be exercised, and every expedient must be resorted to in order to save the mounts, and doubly must this watchfulness be maintained when the men become exhausted. Such conditions in the history of cavalry are the reverse of unusual; they must be expected and



General Pershing and Staff

Left to right: Capt. W. O. Reed, Lieut. J. L. Collins, Col. DeR. C. Cabell, General Pershing, Maj. J. L. Hines, Col. G. O. Cress, Capt. L. B. Kromer.

study and preparation made accordingly. In this engagement at Guerrero, two horses dropped dead under their riders while charging.

The Engagement at Guerrero

Picture to yourself a long column of cavalry on a dirt road—early morning light. On your right a grassy plain with here and there in the near distance, fence posts indicating barbed wire. On your left a steep drop of 100 to 200 feet, and at the bottom the narrow ribbon of a river. Up ahead half a mile on both sides of the river, an adobe town strung along it and on the other side of the river, gradually rising ground covered with stunted trees obscuring the view from above and totally hiding it from below. That was the picture as seen from the rear of the column.

The announced plan was for the 1st and 3rd Squadrons to advance and attack the town from this side of the river; 2d Squadron cross the river and

attack from the other side. Our Squadron was the 2d, E Troop was the last troop in the column and the Squadron Commander designated it as the rear guard.

Our Squadron turned off to the left, descended the bluff, crossed the river, changed direction to the right and pushed on to get between the town and the hills. As the Squadron went over the bluff it naturally became elongated, and I saw it was drawing away from me, so I dismounted my men in order to go down the faster. Arriving at the base of the bluff, I halted to assemble my troop and moved forward some distance in the rear of the column. As I descended the bluff, looking to the right, I could see at the far end of the village, mounted men leaving it and galloping up the bluff on the same side that I was descending. I estimated that these men would encounter the head of the regimental column on that side.

Pushing along in the rear of our column I saw one of our troops had disappeared, then another, and finally I saw the third turn off to the left. Firing came from the hills on our left and not from the town. As our troops had evidently gone into action, and as the direction of the enemy was in my front toward the town, I pushed on to get between the town and our Squadron. Just between me and the town was a ravine, and I decided to cross that and take position above it and cover our side of the town with mounted patrols. About this time the Squadron Commander rode up beside me and I gave him my plan, which he approved.

Securing the ravine and some houses beside it which were used as shelter for the horses, a squad was detached to reduce an annoying fire coming from our left and rear. Another squad was sent up ahead outside of the town, and the balance remained in hand near the houses.

Shortly after taking position, the Villista commander with the rear guards and train, tried to rush the ravine but was killed in the attempt, and his troops and train with some Carranza provisions captured. About this time Lieutenant Pearson Menoher appeared on the opposite side of the ravine with a detachment.

Lieutenant Myer also appeared from that side of the ravine. He had been with the Brigade Commander on the bluff and they had seen a large force of Villistas leave the town on our side before our arrival, and feared we would be ambushed. Lieutenant Myer had offered to inform the Squadron Commander of the situation and had descended the bluff and ridden alone through the town and the Villistas for this purpose.

This engagement called for several decisions; to carry out my mission as rear guard, to prevent the escape of the Villistas from the town and the reduction of the fire aimed at my rear. The engagement lasted from 8:10 A. M. to 11:30 A. M. The regiment was then assembled.

The Escape of Pancho Villa

In an article on the Punitive Expedition in Mexico, George MacAdam, author of the *Life of General Pershing*, states with references to the engage-

ment at Guerrero, "Unfortunately, Villa with an escort of about 150 men had moved south from this camp two days before." Our reports (unofficial) were that Villa had taken Guerrero and was wounded on the 27th. The doctor who treated his injuries was met and stated that a leg was broken. Our attack was in the early morning of the 29th. Villa could not very well have left before the 28th, and we were informed that he did not leave until about midnight of that day.

During the night advance on Guerrero, the command came to a road fork where a halt was made for some time. This was caused by uncertainty as to



Villa and Staff

General Fierro (on Villa's right) earned his soubriquet of "The Killer" by a large number of cold blooded murders.

the desired route. Our guide, a Mr. Barker, a foreman of the Bavicora Ranch, preferred one route, while our advance guard commander, after consultation with some natives, desired the other. The advance guard commander claims that had we taken the route he desired, we would have met Villa and his bodyguard on that road, and indications on the road later showed his assumptions to be correct. Further, captured prisoners stated that our arrival was expected but not so soon, that their horses had been saddled and Villa left at midnight on the 28th.

An article subsequently appearing in the *Saturday Evening Post* stated that Villa had gone in hiding in some caves near Aguas Calientes, and that his forces from these caves saw American troops pass by.

This is somewhat borne out by Colonel W. C. Brown's experiences as reported by General Pershing:—"Colonel Brown the following day (April 1st) directed his course through the mountains by way of Aguas Calientes where he unexpectedly encountered a band of Villistas. The Americans drove the band out of town, following them some six or seven miles through timbered mountain ranges, giving up the chase only at dark, having killed two."—Aguas Calientes is estimated to be twenty-three miles from Guerrero.

On the 30th and 31st, scouting was made to try to locate Villa whose wounding had been confirmed, and on April 1 the Regiment, less one squadron, returned through Frijole Canyon to the Providencia Ranch. •

Duties of an Outlying Detachment

On April 2, E and F Troops were ordered to guard the passes through the mountains leading from the west. E Troop had Naheuriachic Pass as a main highway, and Las Varas Pass the next pass north. F Troop was assigned Manzanas Pass, the next pass north of Las Varas. Five days rations and grain were issued, the same having arrived at Providencia by trucks. The pass was eight miles from Providencia Ranch, and as we had no transportation, the rations and forage were loaded on the mounts and leading was resorted to. Arriving at the pass, water was located, camp made in its vicinity, and the necessary local guard established.

As I saw my mission, it required suitable arrangements to hold the pass, requiring contact with the troops on my right and left, and through exploration of the country in my front and on the flanks.

On my right was Lieutenant Mitchell with F Troop and contact was soon made with him. On my left was the Regiment. I tried several times to learn its destination before I left Providencia and the best I could learn was that Santo Tomas would be its probable location. A patrol was sent out to search thoroughly and learn something definite. April 4, the Brigade and Regimental Headquarters were located at our old camp at the head of the Frijoles Canyon. Explorations were made by patrols with various destinations, covering towns and routes. Usually, personnel was changed in these patrols, using however, one man who had previously been over each route.

By this means we learned of the situation and feeling in nearby towns, and secured supplies; we also learned of a Carranza garrison that had turned Villista and had driven its commander out. This commander, a Major Arviso, wished to come to see me and go on to the expedition headquarters. I sent word to him to come and sent a courier to inform expedition headquarters of his wishes. He came in the following day and went as far as Providencia, but then turned off and returned to his district. Later on, one of our troops extricated him when he was attacked by his own men.

On April 4, a letter of instructions to the Brigade Commander from General Pershing was received from Lieutenant Mitchell, and I believe that he had received it from a troop commander guarding a pass to the north of

him. The Brigade was southeast of me so that the letter had gone far out of its correct direction. Much time had already been consumed in its delivery and its contents might concern my organization. I therefore opened the envelope and read the letter, resealed it, noting on the back that I had opened it, and knowing the approximate whereabouts of the Brigade Commander, forwarded it to him by patrol. As from the contents I expected that we would move, I made arrangements accordingly. On April 6, about 7:00 P. M. I received orders to join the Regiment.

We left the pass early the next morning and arrived at regimental headquarters late in the afternoon, after a hot, dry, dusty march. That night after arrival we had a heavy snowfall.

A Night March

Pursuant to the orders received in the letter referred to, the Brigade Commander organized a provisional squadron, composed of Troops I, L, E and H, Seventh Cavalry, and taking command of this, moved on April 8, passing through the town of Minaca and establishing camp on a river bank near by. Scouts were sent out to locate Villista forces and secure information. These scouts were Americans who had lived in that country, and also one or two Mexican Indians who were friendly. One was a young Tauramara Indian, a captain of the Carranza forces, and a graduate of the Mexican Military School.

Advantage was taken of the opportunity at Minaca to buy shoes and other articles of clothing for the men, of which they were much in need.

April 13 at 2:00 P. M. orders were received to march at 5:00 P. M. to attack a band of Villistas under Candeloria Cervantes and Acosta, reported to be at Ariseachic. Once again I had the rear guard. The route passed through deep wooded canyons and along rough narrow trails. The moon was bright and the night intensely cold, as usual. All that troop commanders knew was, that we were off again on another night march. Neither distance, direction nor destination was given. We had our place in the column and our duties to perform; to keep in place and to be ready when called on.

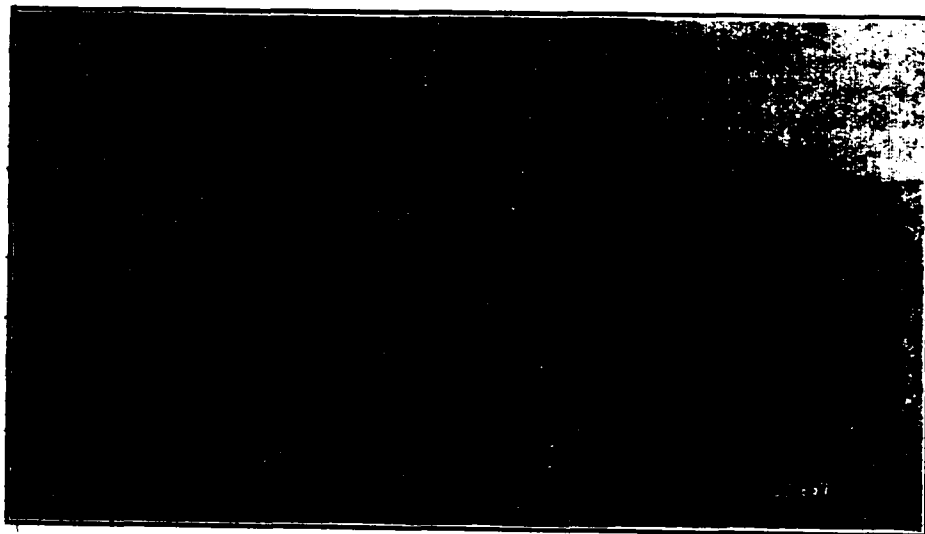
Along about dusk a couple of natives were seen by the rear guard. They were captured and turned over to the Commanding Officer. They might have been harmless, or they might have slipped ahead and warned the enemy.

Darkness came on quickly in the canyons, which were deep and narrow, the trails twisted and wound among the trees. At times we would suddenly come to the head of a canyon where three or more possible trails or directions might be followed. At times, it was necessary to dismount and look for tracks of the preceding troops. The moon threw fantastic shadows across the path and distorted all objects. The intense cold and weariness numbed the faculties, and the utmost vigilance was required to keep in place. Sometimes a glimpse would be caught of the horses ahead; they would disappear and then strive as one would, it seemed that they could never be found again. The pace was a forced walk, the trail rough, the horses stumbled, and the cold grew

more intense. One's legs became numb from the knees down but there was no halting—not until nearly midnight did we make our second and last halt. The Squadron was still complete. The small pack train was up and my rear platoon close behind it.

A few minutes and we were off again, pushing all the time, pressing the horses to their fastest walk. Urgency required our arrival before dawn. The pack train fell behind, and each time as the necessity arose I dropped a connecting file behind until the first platoon was all but used up.

Suddenly we stopped. We had reached our destination. Troops were assembled. Orders went back to bring together E Troop. It seemed they



A Welcome Arrival

An airplane at a village in Mexico, 1916.

would never arrive. The other three troops surrounded the town and advanced. The packmaster began ringing his bell to call the train together; the troop was assembled. The town was rushed; the enemy had gone. We had marched thirty miles. At daylight our scouts went out. We watered, fed, and slept until the arrival of further orders.

This maintenance of contact is the problem of a rear guard commander. Hampered by the trains, pushing off into the unknown, assuring himself of contact out in front and in the rear, requires the utmost vigilance and efficient, reliant non-commissioned officers. Here were no roads, no sign posts, and no guides, nothing but rocky trails and thick woods, and a deceiving moonlight.

The return march was thirty-seven miles. Total distance traveled in the

three days was sixty-seven miles. Four horses played out on the return trip but were brought into camp.

Through the Mountains

After the night expedition, the Squadron remained in camp on the 16th and 17th. Information was received of a bandit force in the mountains of Yoquivo, and that they were holding an American for ransom. On the 18th, we started out, and made twenty-six miles through the canyons. April 19, we marched from 5:35 A. M. to 5:30 P. M., estimated thirty miles. April 20, we marched at 5:45 over a very hilly and rough trail. Met a Colonel Gonzales of the Carrancista army with forty men. He was going to join us in the attack on Yoquivo. At 1:00 P. M. the command was halted in a deep canyon while Yoquivo was reconnoitered and plans made to attack at daybreak.

Camp was broken at 11:00 P. M. and in place of going straight up the canyon to Yoquivo, a few miles ahead, a trail was taken over the mountains in order to effect a surprise. This was a most arduous march, a steep rocky trail along the edges of precipices with steep slippery ascents and sharp stones and flat rock under foot. The altitude was high and the wind piercingly cold.

Yoquivo was reached about an hour before dawn, and at the first glimpse of light we advanced. The first sign of life was a bright light in a small stone house; it was Gonzales and his troops. Gonzales was stretched on a couch, resting, a huge fire was going to keep him warm, half a dozen of his men were ministering to his comfort, and of course the bandits had fled.

We bivouacked in the vicinity, and sprawled in the sun to warm up and rest, and never were some small supplies found in any place more welcome.

Although balked in this effort, Colonel Dodd instead of being chagrined and discouraged, rather felt, I believe, that he still held a good hand. He decided to make one march where the bandits would probably make two, and over take them. Consequently, we loafed first in the sun until it was too hot, then searched the shade as if to remain indefinitely, until about 3:30 P. M. orders were received to march at 4:00 P. M.

Our few pack mules were loaded with supplies of all kinds purchased in Yoquivo, and at the hour set the column moved off through the mountains. We got to sleep that night at midnight, and broke camp at 6:30 A. M. the next morning, April 22. The trail of the bandits was followed until about 5:00 P. M., when our Squadron overtook them at the pueblo of Tomochic.

Under cover of our automatic rifle perched on a hill, the troops charged the town, across a river, into which the horses jumped from a high bank, and on the other side, they again had to jump up a rocky shelf to get out. Tomochic sat in a valley surrounded by hills, and fire was received from several directions. The bandits were dispersed to the brush and their positions were difficult to locate. The troops held the town and scoured the hills until darkness put an end to further action.

E Troop lost three horses from exhaustion on this day's march and one died that night on the picket line.

During all of this mountain work, leading was largely resorted to. One day we marched for twelve hours, and ten of that was taken up in leading. From Guerrero on, the native ponies and burros were collected to carry the loads of extra saddles, improvised kitchens and rations, and even for mounts.

This was on the 22d. We remained at Tomochic on the 23d. April 24, we marched to Aguas Calientes, eighteen miles. April 26 and 27 were spent in camp. April 28, we marched back to Providencia Ranch to rest up and refit. Horses on hand, twenty-five, fit for duty, thirteen (some doubtful.) Nearly all our animals required months for recuperation.

It was noted in this last expedition, and from then on until the summer rains began, that the grass was withering, and the mountain streams preceptibly shrinking, until they became only scattered water holes.

Reflections on the Campaign

It will be noted that in this campaign, the troops had no immediate depots or bases of supply, the nearest points being El Paso and San Antonio. General Pershing had to organize his supply system at the same time that his troops were pushing forward into an unknown and devastated country at twenty to thirty miles per day. His railhead was Columbus, and he had no authority to use the Mexican railways.

Fortunately, the weather was dry, and the hastily accumulated trucks made remarkable progress, meeting us for the first time with some rations and forage on March 21. Clothing and other supplies began to come in after April 28 at Providencia Ranch. Here also came the first remounts. By this time our clothing was in rags, and many men had repaired their clothing with pieces cut from saddle blankets, and their shoes from beef hides.

From March 13 to April 28, there had been almost continuous marching under arduous conditions most wearing to the mounts, which were always on short rations and often on totally new rations. The climatic conditions were trying to the mounts, excessively cold nights and exceedingly hot days, with frequently insufficient water. The two or three days of apparent rest gave the horses very little opportunity to rest, and often on such occasions, patrolling was necessary. The greatest deficiency, however, was the lack of an adequate air force.

Twice on the march, did the intrepid air officers bring their planes down in safety on unknown ground, with instructions or information, and safely make their get away; once to our camp on March 21 Captain B. D. Foulois arrived, when our pack wireless would not function, and once on the march about March 27, Lieutenant H. A. Dargue dropped out of the blue to the open plain.

The lack of efficient wireless communication was another deficiency.

This campaign illustrated by its difficulties, the value of an air force with cavalry on expeditions of this sort. Had the expedition been equipped with a squadron of observation planes, such a force pursuing long distance

reconnaissance, would have localized the objective, would have enabled the commander to hold his troops in hand until the time to strike, would have kept him informed of the location and activities of his various columns, and have assisted column commanders in local operations. For operations in a country with wide plains, great forests, and high mountains, obstacles meaning days to cavalry and minutes to the air force, the greatest development of intimate liaison between these two arms should be developed.

The accompanying air force should be felt to be the cavalry of the air, the eyes of the cavalry commander, directing his march on the straightest lines, clearing the cobwebs of indecision from his brain, and conserving his mounts for service in battle.

As an opportunity: On March 27, the Seventh Cavalry was at Santa Anna, the Tenth Cavalry was reported ten miles to the east at Canyon D'Oso, a mixed squadron was reported at El Valle. Colonel Dodd with the Seventh, scouting toward Guerrero to the south, moved eight miles south to Providencia Ranch. In front of him was a wall of mountains. There were three routes to Guerrero; to the right through Nahuriac pass, straight ahead through Frijole Canyon, or to the left through Bachineva. The road to the left would bring the regiment to Guerrero from the east between Villa and his haunts. Dodd wisely chose that way. Had there been an air force, these three columns placed in close communication and acting under one head, could have so surrounded the town that escape would have been impracticable. Adequate methods are necessary in such a country for column commanders to be able to communicate with planes where there is no suitable landing place in the vicinity.

Another deficiency was in maps, and this deficiency would have been quickly overcome by means of photographic planes. The engineers with the expedition made valuable road maps after the cavalry had occupied the country.

Grass fires were a serious menace. These occurred through carelessness and spread with great rapidity; they were quickly extinguished but sometimes caused a loss of equipment. Forest fires also occurred, due either to troops or natives neglecting to extinguish camp fires, and these extended over large expanses of territory.

Replacement and Supplies

Replacements in men began to arrive as the expedition was concentrated at Colonia Dublan, and those received were raw recruits. Remounts were received at Providencia Ranch after the pursuit of the bandits had ceased, but they would have been available for later operations.

Remounts must be equipped with new halters and halter shanks, and shod. Horse shoes came in in all sizes. Shoeing requires nails, a forge, an anvil and tools. Remounts should therefore be forwarded to the troops as a mobile unit, with sufficient wheeled transportation to carry these items and in

addition, replacements of equipment such as straps, saddler's tools, leather, blacksmith's tools, curry combs and brushes and similar items.

Clothing wore out rapidly and should be supplied in unit quantities. Shoes must fit. Lariats were in constant use for picket lines, halter shanks, adjusting packs and replacing straps. Picket pins were used for picket lines, their supply based on a few to each squad is all that is required. One per trooper is not necessary. Range finders are unnecessary, but good field glasses with a mil scale are invaluable.

Herding was seldom resorted to in the advance. After camp was established at Colonia Dublan, it was customary. Night herding was tried once at Providencia Ranch, with the result that the whole of the regiment's horses stampeded into camp. Much recrimination ensued as to who got all the best halters.

A troop must be of an effective strength in rifles to be efficient. Troops are depleted rapidly from various causes. Patrols are sent out that do not return; bases are established calling for detachments; men become casualties and horses become casualties, causing a loss of men. Starting out with sixty men from Douglas, I had thirty-three at Guerrero. Whenever a troop commander can find an opportunity to accumulate spare horses, he should do so. For example, in leaving Douglas I took the band mounts, and when men were left behind, I carried their mounts along to relieve others.

With reference to records, the first sergeant carried a morning report and sick report. We also carried message blanks and note books and a few blank forms. Our field desks were received along in July or later.

A mass of official mail which was only an incumbrance was dumped on the Regiment on our march south. All the records of one regiment and the postal arrangements should be in one wagon or truck, and the administrative matters attended to when the exigencies of the campaign permit the leisure for this purpose.

Note: In this article Mexican names are given as received at that time and there may be errors; also distances are recorded as estimated at the time marches were made, or from the best available information at the time.

The Twenty-Sixth Cavalry (PS) In Annual Maneuvers of The Philippine Division

With Comments on Cavalry Organization

By

Captain W. F. PRIDE, Cavalry

OUR ARMED FORCES in the Philippine Islands would probably find themselves in a very dangerous situation were hostilities suddenly directed against those Islands by a foreign power. This is true because of the immense distance separating those armed forces from replacements or reinforcements. If war should be declared against the Continental United States the size of the country affords some time for mobilization of National Guard and Reserve Units. Luzon is the most important island of the Philippine Group and the distances separating Lingayen Gulf, Subic Bay, Manila Bay and the Bontoc Peninsula are so short that, in case of an invasion, such military forces as might exist on that island would have to be ready to enter battle at a moment's notice. The time and space factors are so small that no time exists for mobilization and all units must be constantly ready to take the field as they are.

It is assumed that in the event of a war involving the Continental United States, volunteers and drafted men will quickly fill up inactive units of the Regular Army, National Guard and Organized Reserves. In the Philippine Islands no provisions for drafting men exist and if they did, the difficulties of language and environment would render the forming of even a passable recruit out of a drafted man a relatively long process.

With the above facts in mind it was decided, in the office of the Chief of Staff of the Philippine Division, to reorganize the 26th Cavalry for the period of the maneuvers with the object of decreasing the overhead and increasing the number of rifles, pistols and sabers available. Authority to try this experiment having been secured, the details of the new organization were worked out by Major Ashbridge of the Chief of Staff's office and Captain W. K. Harrison, Jr., Plans and Training Officer of the 26th Cavalry.

The organization was based on the theory that a three unit system was better for cavalry actions than a two unit system. The regiment, as reorganized, contained three rifle squadrons, a headquarters and service squadron and a regimental headquarters. Regimental Headquarters contained the colonel, lieutenant-colonel, and three staff officers.

The Headquarters and Service Squadron contained a squadron headquarters, headquarters troop and transportation troop. Squadron headquarters was composed of a captain, commanding the Squadron, 1st sergeant, mess sergeant, supply sergeant, a corporal (clerk), two buglers, three cooks, one orderly and five privates, miscellaneous, a total of fifteen enlisted men.

Headquarters Troop was composed of the following sections: Staff and Orderly, Intelligence, Plans and Training, Radio and Panel and Message Center, Personnel, Supply and Band. In the Staff and Orderly Section were the Regimental Sergeant Major, two color sergeants, the Sergeant Bugler, and ten privates and privates first class (two clerks, one cook for the officer's mess, six orderlies and one chaplain's helper). The Intelligence Section consisted of one sergeant and the Plans and Training Section of one sergeant and two privates, or privates first class, as clerks. The Radio and Panel and Message Center Section was commanded by a lieutenant and had one sergeant, one corporal and eleven privates and privates first class (two messengers, two motorcyclists, two operators, one orderly and four miscellaneous). The Personnel Section was commanded by a lieutenant and contained a personnel sergeant major, a corporal (mail orderly), and one orderly. The Supply Section was commanded by a lieutenant and had one master sergeant (regimental supply sergeant) and three privates and privates first class (two clerks and one orderly). The Band Section consisted of one master sergeant, one staff sergeant, two sergeants, four corporals and twenty-one privates and privates first class. The Headquarters Troop had a total of three officers and sixty-seven enlisted men.

The Transportation Troop consisted of a troop headquarters, three rifle squadron sections and a headquarters troop section. This troop, which might have been commanded by a captain or a lieutenant, had in troop headquarters one officer, stable sergeant, wagon master and twenty-nine privates and privates first class (three horseshoers, two mechanics, one orderly, two saddlers, eleven wagoners and ten miscellaneous). Each rifle squadron section and the Headquarters Troop Section contained three wagoners. There was a corporal in charge of the nine rifle squadron wagoners and one in charge of the headquarters troop wagoners. The total strength of the squadron was five officers and one hundred and twenty-seven enlisted men. There were four combat wagons, six wagons, ration and baggage, eight wagons, forage, and five wagons, spring; a total of twenty-three vehicles.

Each rifle squadron consisted of a squadron headquarters and four rifle troops. Squadron headquarters consisted of one major, one administrative officer (captain or lieutenant), 1st sergeant, mess sergeant, supply sergeant, stable sergeant, one corporal (clerk) and eighteen privates and privates first class, two buglers, four cooks (one for officers mess), three horseshoers, four messengers, one saddler and four miscellaneous), a total of two commissioned and twenty-three enlisted.

Each rifle troop consisted of two officers (captains or lieutenants), two sergeants, two orderlies and four rifle squads, a total of two commissioned and thirty-six enlisted. The total strength for a squadron was ten officers and one hundred and sixty-seven men and the squadron had one hundred and sixty rifles, one hundred and seventy-seven pistols and one hundred and sixty-nine

sabers. The regiment had five hundred and sixty-six rifles, six hundred and sixty-eight pistols and five hundred and fifty-four sabers.

Under its regular organization the 26th Cavalry had twenty-four rifle squads and twelve automatic rifle squads of two rifles each. In the new organization there were available forty-eight rifle squads. Considering one automatic rifle squad as the equivalent in fire power of two rifle squads, the fire power was the same. The number of sabers and pistols was increased with a resultant increase of shock action in mounted attacks. Whether or not the elimination of the machine rifle platoon resulted in an increase in mobility is questionable. It is the opinion of the writer that the presence of a machine rifle platoon in a troop does not decrease the mobility of the troop.

The maneuvers began, for the 26th Cavalry, on the night of January 9-10. A hostile force, imaginary except for its commander, Brigadier General L. R. Holbrook, and his staff, invaded Luzon by way of Lingayen Gulf. The Philippine Division was concentrated in the area around Camp Stotsenburg. The action of the 26th Cavalry and Machine Gun Troop Number 2, January 10th, had nothing to do with the main maneuver. One troop, commanded by Captain P. S. Haydon, marched early on the morning of January 9th to join the Blue Division at San Fernando. This troop was to be employed as the Division Commander saw fit. The remainder of the 26th Cavalry and the 2d Machine Gun Troop were Red and had the mission of delaying the march of the Division. The 26th marched at midnight, January 9th, on San Fernando and delayed the march of the Division throughout the next forenoon. While Machine Gun Troop Number 2 rendered excellent support to the cavalry, the lack of automatic weapons was keenly felt by isolated squadrons operating on the flanks of the Division.

The nights of January 10-11 were spent in camp at Mabalacat. On the morning of January 12th the Blue Division was forced to withdraw, and the 26th Cavalry and Machine Gun Troop Number 2 were given the mission of operating against the flanks of an approaching infantry column. The 1st Squadron was detached on the 11th to operate on the right of the Blue Division and did not rejoin the regiment until three days later.

The Division next took up a position along the Abacan River just north of Angeles and on the night of January 13th the 26th Cavalry, with the 2d Machine Gun Troop (the 1st Squadron rejoined during the night), took over a sector of this line. The infantry withdrew during the night and at 7:30 A. M. on the 14th the cavalry was forced to withdraw. In this situation again the lack of automatic weapons was noticeable. The Division withdrew to the vicinity of San Fernando and on the next day continued its withdrawal via Guagua to the line of the Gumain River. On arriving at this river the cavalry again occupied a sector of the line.

On the night of January 16-17 the Division withdrew to its final position and the 26th Cavalry formed the rear guard for the east column of the Division. Camp was established near Hermosa. Division Headquarters was

at Orani. The maneuvers terminated January 18th when several units combined in an assault on the position established by the Division. This attack was an added feature for the benefit of Major General Sladen.

There were many minor objections to the organization of the 26th Cavalry based on the fact that it was purely a temporary one. Inasmuch as there could only be one squadron headquarters to each rifle squadron, three of the regular troops were inactive so far as administration was concerned. These "inactive" troops were attached for rations, they were forced to operate under a strange 1st sergeant and their horses were under the supervision of a strange stable sergeant. These departures from the normal routine caused considerable grumbling among the men but, of course, such objections would not exist in a permanent organization. The officers of the regiment were all interested in the experiment and it may be of interest to make a few conclusions. Before doing that, however, it may be stated that should such an organization be adopted for the 26th Cavalry, it was contemplated to include Machine Gun Troop Number 2 in the regiment.

All officers of the regiment, so far as the writer could ascertain, were unanimous in the opinion that any cavalry organization should be based on the three unit system. Under the present two squadron organization, if a regiment meets a hostile force and desires a pivot of maneuver, a maneuvering mass and a reserve it is obvious that the squadrons must be split up in some manner. With a three unit organization the solution is simple. Some officers favor a four unit organization for cavalry which would allow one unit for the pivot and three to be divided between the maneuvering mass and reserve. This is a more flexible organization than the three unit system and, in the opinion of the writer, would be desirable if the so-called European organization of squadrons in place of troops were adopted.

Experience gained during the maneuvers indicated that the organization was deficient in automatic weapons. No matter what arguments may be advanced to the contrary, it cannot be denied that any element of an army that confronts a civilized enemy today must have automatic weapons, and plenty of them, if it hopes to gain fire superiority. The Browning Machine Rifle is not a perfect weapon. The perfect weapon, fortunately, has never been invented; if it had its possessor could outdo Caesar and conquer the world. The machine rifle, however, is the most effective light automatic weapon for cavalry that is now in existence, unless we consider the Thompson Sub-Machine Gun with its shorter range and enormous consumption of ammunition and it is believed that it is a mistake to discard the machine rifle in any scheme of organization we may be considering. It is true that the machine rifle platoon is useless in a mounted attack by an entire troop, but the saber is just as useless in a dismounted attack. We do not contemplate discarding the saber merely on that account, however, and it must be remembered that mounted attacks do not constitute the entire sphere of the activities of cavalry. Modern cavalry must not only be able to act mounted

under any and all conditions, but it must be able to take over a sector of a line held by infantry and operate as effectively as the infantry it relieves. To do this it must have automatic weapons, and one troop of machine guns per regiment is not considered sufficient. Due to the fact that troops and squadrons will frequently be given missions, the performance of which will necessitate their detachment from the regiment, it is believed that automatic weapons should be an integral part of each troop.

Many cavalry officers favor the old pre-war organization of three squadrons of four troops each. One of the best arguments for a return to the old organization is that of tradition. Some of the old third squadrons with their I, K, L, and M Troops had glorious history behind them and it might be well to pause for a moment and consider whether it would not be very much worth while to maintain those organizations actively. The world today is full of the spirit of efficiency, of reorganization, and of the purely practical. It is more than a possibility that the esprit de corps which an old regiment would gain from the presence of all its units, all its guidons with their years of tradition, would outweigh some of our so-called efficiency.

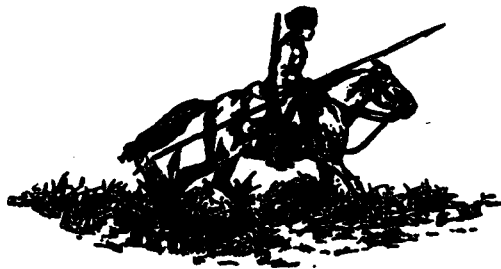
The old regiment of 1000 or 1200 men was an organization worthy of the mettle of a colonel; with it he could do things, and of it he might well be proud. A regiment of three troops, or "squadrons," totalling 600 men seems rather small when judged by our standards. American captains do not take kindly to the idea of commanding a platoon of thirty-five men, call the platoon, troop or squadron, or what have you. This comment is not made because the European organization is unsound but because our traditions do not permit us to judge that organization by European standards. We had an organization that was basically sound. It combined all the essentials of mobility, fire power and shock. It withstood the test of the Civil War, Indian Campaigns and foreign service in Cuba and the Philippines. Is the fact that the British, with a small three squadron regimental organization, successfully stormed El Mughar sufficient reason to warrant our adopting a foreign organization; foreign in principle and in tradition? The British and El Mughar are cited because the Palestine Campaign is the most popular and most widely discussed of recent campaigns in which cavalry has taken part. There are many more instances from the annals of the World War in which a similar organization was successfully employed. The point is made, however, that in this period of hustle and bustle and unrest, the spirit of change is rampant and so long as changes are made we fondly believe we are progressing.

If we return to the old organization for cavalry a few alterations will be advisable. Each troop should have a machine rifle, or light machine gun platoon, and the overhead might be reduced. Basically, however, that organization is sound and on a scale consistent with the modern missions of cavalry. Theoretically a cavalry regiment is supposed to be the equivalent of an infantry battalion, and it is assumed to be able to take over a battalion sector in a defensive position or line of battle. A regiment of three squadrons

of four troops each, each troop with some automatic weapons, can do that. A regiment of three troops, or "squadrons," totalling 500 or 600 men, with no automatic weapons, except one machine gun troop, cannot do it, and it is folly to attempt it. So far as mobility is concerned, Stuart's mobility on some of his raids has never been surpassed and he often had 1800 or 2000 men with him.

Everything considered, the question of the best organization for cavalry boils itself down to this—what organization is best suited to the role of cavalry as at present interpreted? Some of the most important missions of cavalry are: providing security for other forces by the use of covering detachments; seizing and holding advance positions for subsequent occupation by less mobile forces; containing enemy forces or delaying his movements; participation with other forces in battle; exploitation of a success, and the defeat of the hostile cavalry. All of these missions, with the possible exception of the last, require the gaining of fire superiority and to gain fire superiority today we must have automatic weapons. Most of these missions also call for action against hostile infantry. Therefore, the ideal organization must be mobile to enable it to get to the proper place at the proper time, and it must have sufficient strength to enable the unit to take over a sector of our infantry line or to operate effectively against hostile infantry after it gets there.

Our pre-war cavalry organization was based on the three unit system, and by taking out a rifle platoon from each troop and substituting a machine rifle platoon, we could gain the automatic weapons desired. It already had a machine gun troop, it was mobile, it was large enough to enable it to occupy a battalion sector, and by preserving it we would preserve the history of many gallant organizations, honorably gained. What more is to be desired?



Seat and Hands in Horse Show Jumping

By

Major E. W. TAULBEE, Cavalry

Director, Department of Horsemanship, The Cavalry School

THIS DISCUSSION of *seat* and *hands* in *horse show jumping* is limited to what might be called the mechanical aspects of this subject and therefore leaves untouched many important points concerning the seat and use of the hands.

If this article is open to the objection that it is somewhat theoretical and involved, it must be remembered that a discussion of *horse show jumping* is, of necessity, intended only for those who already have a considerable knowledge of the general subject of jumping, and, if it has any value, probably requires thoughtful study on the part of the reader.

Method

The best method to use for any kind of jumping is governed by the conditions under which the jumping is executed and the objects to be accomplished. Therefore, for *horse show jumping* that method should be used which enables a trained and skillful rider on a trained and skillful horse to get the fewest faults (tips, etc.) over a known course on prepared terrain.

Seat

One of the most important parts of the method is the seat, which term includes the position of all parts of the rider. Regardless of what anyone may think as to the best position of the rider where the conditions or objects are different (as average riders, ordinary horses, unknown obstacles, treacherous or varied footing, or where tips are of no importance or the objects are speed, maximum safety of the rider, etc.), it has been demonstrated that for *horse show jumping* the *forward seat* is best. A complete discussion as to why it is best is not attempted here. Results show that it is best. Therefore, it is taken for granted that the reader accepts, as best suited for this purpose, the forward seat, and some points concerning the mechanics of this seat will be discussed now.

Base of Support

In order that the rider may be able to take and maintain the forward seat (or any other seat for that matter), he must have a base or foundation of sufficient extent and sufficiently fixed to enable him to control the position of all parts of his body. The forward seat precludes the use of the buttocks or upper thighs as part of this fixed base. The necessity for the horse to have free use of his neck as a balancer, and the sensitiveness of his mouth, make it a serious mistake to allow the hands, acting through the medium of the reins,

NOTE: The portion of this article dealing with the movements of the horse's head and neck are taken largely from *Saut d'Obstacles et Galop de Course* by L. de Secy, an excellent and scientific treatise on this subject.

to form any part of this base. This base of support must then consist of the following: (1) the stirrups and (2) the legs from the calf (inclusive) through the knee to the lower thigh (inclusive).

1. *The Stirrups.* In using the stirrups as part of the fixed base, the stirrup leathers should be shortened about four holes (more or less depending on the conformation of the rider and the horse) the feet shoved entirely home, and the weight should come into the stirrups indirectly through the heel, rather than directly through the sole of the boot. The rider should have the feeling that his foot is a shoe tree, and not part of his body which ends at the heel in a vertical bone that is struck into the shoe tree. In other words, the ankle and foot should be absolutely relaxed. Also, the weight should be received in such a manner that the inside of the boot heel is forced down more than the outside. The position of the legs should be such that the weight is transmitted nearly vertically downward into the stirrups. If the feet are too far forward, the rider cannot maintain the forward position of his seat and upper body, and he has a tendency to brace himself against his stirrups which form a fulcrum over which there is a tendency for his body to be catapulted forward. If the feet are too far to the rear, there is a tendency, as the upper body moves forward, for the rider to pivot about the knees, allowing his lower legs to move backward and upward, thus robbing the rider of an important element in his base of support.

2. *The Legs.* To complete this base of support, the legs from the calf (inclusive) to the lower thigh (inclusive) must remain fixed and adherent to the horse. This necessitates a certain amount of muscular effort, but his effort should be confined to the adductor muscles leaving the extensors and flexors relaxed. This results in firmness and flexibility without rigidity. Hard legs often make hard hands. The adherence of the lower legs must not be such as will prevent their use as aids in driving the horse forward. Some riders have a tendency to grip with the thighs and allow the lower legs to hang loose; others grip with the calves only; still others grip with the knees only. The base of support must include all three in order to give sufficient fixity to control the position and movements of the remainder of the body.

The fixity, and therefore the efficiency, of the base of control is developed by practice. This practice should begin at the halt and continue until the rider can easily move his body in any direction at any gait without losing his balance or changing the tension on his reins. Riding in this manner over varied terrain is excellent practice. Ascending slopes is somewhat analogous to the take-off, while descending slopes is somewhat similar to the landing over a jump.

Having developed a fixed base of support to work from, the rider can now place and maintain his weight in such positions that it will least interfere with his mount.

Upper Part of the Body

At all gaits, as well as in jumping, the horse transmits to the rider,

through the parts of the latter's body which are in contact with the different parts of the saddle (base of support), the force necessary to carry the rider through space. The ideal position would be for the rider to place his center of gravity on a line through his base of support (center of impact) parallel to the line of thrust of the horse (a line from the horse's hind feet through the combined center of gravity of horse and rider). At the take-off, this position is physically impossible, but the nearer it can be approached the better. At this instant, there is always a tendency to rotate to the rear (or get behind his horse), but this tendency decreases directly with the decrease in the perpendicular distance from the rider's center of gravity to the first line mentioned above. Therefore, the rider should keep his center of gravity as low as possible. At the take-off, there is also a conflict between the inertia of the rider and the sudden acceleration resulting from the violent thrust from the horse's hind quarters, and, due to this, there is a tendency for the rider's center of gravity to move to the rear relative to the horse (the horse jumps from under him). This tendency must be combatted, and its bad results reduced as much as possible by placing the center of gravity above the most forward point of the base of support; that is, the point of the knees. To approach this ideal position, the rider, acting from his fixed base, must carry his center of gravity forward and downward. To accomplish this, he detaches his seat from the saddle (thereby relieving the horse's loins of weight), but should not unnecessarily elevate his seat as this would raise his center of gravity. He extends his body above and nearly parallel to the horse's neck, riding a low line. The rider's body is then in the position to interfere least with the horse, to best receive the thrust, and to combat the bad results of this thrust and remain with his horse.

Observing and practicing this position of the upper part of the body at the halt and ordinary gaits in front of a large mirror is beneficial.

The Jump

With reference to either a vertical line or the horse's spinal column, the position of the different parts of the rider's body varies with the different phases of the jump. These different phases are (1) the approach, (2) the beat, (3) the take-off, (4) the suspension, and (5) the landing.

1. *Approach.* The approach begins when the horse is pointed at a definite part of the jump. As violent changes in the rider's position necessitate violent changes in the horse's equilibrium, it is necessary for the rider to assume the forward seat during the early part of the approach.

2. *Beat.* At the end of the approach, the horse makes his beat, which term is applied to the last contacts of the four feet with the ground prior to the take-off; that is the successive planting of both fore feet at the completion of the last full gallop stride, and the almost simultaneous planting of both hind feet from which the horse makes his take-off. To get his beat preparatory to the take-off for a big jump, the horse uses his acquired momentum to

secure great engagement of the haunches—he arches his loins, flexes his hocks, and brings his hind feet as far as possible under his body. At this instant, the rider must maintain the forward seat and guard against his instinctive tendency to settle back into the saddle. As the forehand rises and the horse's spinal column approaches a vertical position, the rider's body, above and nearly parallel to the horse's neck, should be extended so as to place his center of gravity vertically above the most forward point of his base of support—that is the point of his knees. Due to the inclination of the horse's spinal column, this position of the center of gravity is greatly advanced with reference to the saddle. Therefore the buttocks should be carried forward over the pommel of the saddle.

3. *Take-Off.* As the horse makes his thrust in the take-off, the rider receives, through his base of support, his proportional part of the thrust. At this instant, the rider's loins, while not rigid, should be sufficiently set to transmit the thrust in its entirety to the upper (now forward) part of the body. The Italian school teaches that the loins should be concaved at this phase. At the take-off, the rider also receives the tendency to rotate to the rear and the tendency for the horse to jump from under him previously mentioned. These tendencies must be reduced by the low and forward position of the rider's body, and the remaining parts of these tendencies practically annihilated by the fixity of his base of support.

4. *Suspension.* If the tendencies mentioned in 3 above are not practically annihilated and the rider, while over his jump, sits up in his saddle (or leans to the rear, as often happens when the rider is badly behind his horse), he may jerk his horse's mouth, will interfere with the free functioning of the horse's loins, and will raise his own center of gravity more than is necessary. It is a well known law of mechanics that, having received an impulse, the center of gravity of a body acted on by gravity follows a certain trajectory through space. The horse and rider form one mass, and, after the horse's feet leave the ground, the trajectory of their combined center of gravity is fixed. If one part of the mass is raised with reference to the trajectory, another part must be lowered. Therefore, if the rider's body is raised, some part of the horse must be correspondingly pushed down. This accounts for many tips.

As the horse reaches the high part of his trajectory and his spinal column again approaches the horizontal, the rider's center of gravity must move to the rear with reference to the saddle. Otherwise, his center of gravity would be in advance of his base of support. This rearward movement inevitably causes a slight opening of the angle formed by the rider's body and the spinal column of the horse. The opening of this angle should be kept at a minimum.

5. *Landing.* As the horse's fore feet come to the ground, there is a sudden interference with both the downward and forward movement. This interference is immediately communicated to the movement of the rider. In the old style jumping position, this sudden stopping shoved the rider deeper into his saddle, increased the strain on the horse's legs, interfered with the

functioning of his loins, and in some cases (weak backs) was actually painful to the horses. This was the cause of many horses running or pitching after landing. If the rider maintains the proper forward seat, he now has a tendency to lose his balance to the front, to allow his lower legs to move backward and upward, and to allow his body to whip downward on his horse's neck or, as is so often done, to one side of the horse's neck. To overcome these unsightly and otherwise objectionable tendencies, the rider should maintain the fixity of his base of support, and receive the momentum through his thighs, knees, calves, and indirectly into his stirrups through the ankles. This should force a closing of the angles at the knees and heels, and force the heels further down. The loins should be fixed without rigidity, and the head should be held up with the eyes to the front, glancing squarely between the horse's ears so that the rider is ready for any eventuality. This position should be held until the horse has taken a full stride to the front.

Result

The question of seat may be summed up by the statement that the rider should be with his horse before, during, and after the jump.

Hands

In the method of horse show jumping, of equal or greater importance with the seat, is the use of the hands. Some riders get good results by throwing their horses away at the jump. This certainly has the advantage of allowing free movement of the horse's head and neck, and it is a fact that, with the majority of riders, the interference with this free movement is the source of greatest harm.

However, a complicated course can not be ridden in this manner and not all horses will face a formidable jump without communication with and support from the rider's hands. Also, a sudden loss of this support necessitates a sudden change in the horse's equilibrium. At times, riders get good results by placing the hands, on adjusted reins, against the sides of the horse's neck in front of the withers, thus assuring fixed hands. This has the advantage of eliminating involuntary jerks by the rider on the horse's mouth but results in self-inflicted jerks on his mouth when, due to being in bad at a jump or other cause, the horse finds it necessary to make a violent movement requiring the extension of his neck. This method also confines the movements of the horse's head to those made along an arc of the circle, the center of which is at the fixed hands, and eliminates the extension of the neck so efficiently utilized by the skillful jumper skillfully ridden. Besides, only certain jumpers can be ridden in this manner and only over jumps well within the limits of their ability. Still other riders allow the reins to slide through the fingers. While this is desirable with beginners, it should, with trained riders, be necessary only in the exceptional case when, for any reason, the rider is unable to follow the movements of the horse's head and neck by movements of his own

arms and body. Allowing the reins to slide is objectionable from the viewpoint of control of the horse.

Perfect Hands

In horse show jumping, the perfect hands accompany all movements of the horse's neck and head, remain in constant communication with, and give uniform support to, the horse's mouth without interfering with, or limiting, any of his movements. This means that the hands must be fixed with reference to the horse's mouth and must, therefore, due to the movements of the head and neck, move in a definite and varying manner with reference to the rider or the horse's body.

Effects of Position and Movement of Head and Neck

A skillful jumping horse utilizes his head and neck to as great an extent and much in the same manner as a tight rope walker utilizes his arms or a balancing-pole. The movements of the neck and head are by extension and contraction as well as elevation and depression. In school movements, it is the position of the neck and head when extended or contracted, raised or lowered, that is of interest to the rider for the reason that the movements of these parts relative to the remainder of the horse are slow and the effects are principally those of weight; v is small in the expression MVs . Hence the axiom of school riders "Position is everything." In jumping, the movements of the head and neck are violent, and the velocity of their movements relative to the remainder of the horse becomes the element having the principal effect; v is large in the expression MVs . Hence the axiom of jump riders "Freedom of head and neck is everything." An idea of how great this effect can be may be obtained by a person standing on a set of weighing scales with a clock hand indicator and moving his arm rapidly up and down, or doing the setting up exercise known as bending the knees to a squatting position. In this manner, he can change his "weight" as indicated by the needle, by a large percentage. From the viewpoint of hands, it is the direct action of the horse's neck and head which are of interest to the rider; it is the reactions from the actions of the "balancing-pole" that are of assistance to the horse or tight rope walker. In this, as in everything else, the reaction is equal in intensity, and opposite in direction to the action. By decreasing, stopping, and reversing the momentum acquired in a given direction, the horse creates the reaction desired by him to accomplish a definite mission at a given phase of the jump. That the reaction is created in this manner may be verified by the use of weighing scales of the type mentioned above, of which the mechanism functions in oil so as to reduce the vibrations of the needle caused by the momentum due to movement of the different parts of the mechanism. If the arm of the person standing on such scales is moving rapidly upward and he reverses the movement of his arm, it is seen that the reaction (decrease in weight as indicated by the needle) commences at the instant the velocity of the arm begins to

decrease, reaches its maximum about the time the upward movement of the arm ceases, and continues as long as the velocity of the arm downward is increased. As the downward velocity is decreased, the reaction (increase in weight as indicated by the needle) commences and goes through the reverse cycle as the arm is stopped and started upward. Realization of these facts is necessary to understand the correctness of the use actually made of his head and neck by a horse jumping at liberty. The desired reversals in direction of the reactions flow so perfectly from the acquired momentum at different instants of the jump that the functions of this "balancing-pole" appear providential. At some phases the weight and movement, or *geste*, act towards a common end—their effects are cumulative; at other phases, their actions are opposed to each other—their effects are non-cumulative. In the last mentioned cases, it is the movement which takes precedence and determines the nature of the reaction.

Movements of Neck and Head

To determine the definite and varying manner in which the perfect hands must move, it is well to observe the horse jumping a good sized jump at liberty, and to study the use he actually makes of his neck and head during the different phases of the jump. Assuming that the horse approaches the obstacle at the gallop with the left lead, the detailed execution of each phase is as follows:

1. *Approach.* During the approach, a horse extends his neck and lowers his head so as to look his jump over and have his "balancing-pole" in the position favorable for creating the desired reaction during the succeeding phase.
2. *Beat.* a. For the first phase of the beat, the forefeet are planted well separated, and the contact of the right fore is prolonged, thereby breaking up the diagonalization of the gallop stride, the horse being supported by both forefeet. The first phase of the beat is accompanied by an energetic engagement of the haunches and a shortening and raising of the neck and head. The great muscular effort, which draws the hindquarters forward exerts an equal pull (or reaction) to the rear on the forehand, and causes a decrease in the speed of the horse. This rearward pull on the forehand is opposed principally by the reaction against the ground of the foreleg which at this instant extends backward from the shoulder (the right fore in this case). However, the starting of the contraction of the neck and imparting to it and the head an acceleration to the rear, is creating an equal reaction to the front on the forequarters, which reaction assists the right foreleg in the above mentioned function, and also stores up a live force to oppose the forward movement of the forehand when such opposition is needed. The starting of the elevation of the head and neck and imparting to them an acceleration upward, creates an equal reaction downward on the forequarters, which reaction lightens the hindquarters, thereby preventing their coming to the

ground before the engagement is completed, and stores up a live force to assist, when needed, in lifting the forehand off the ground.

b. At the second phase of the beat, the mass of the head and neck has reached the maximum velocity to the rear and upward, the right fore, after a prolonged contact, has been lifted from the ground, the left fore has reached a vertical position and alone supports the horse. The hind feet are each as far forward as they can get, and, as the right fore has left the ground, the right hind is more advanced than the left hind (which is still blocked by the left fore) and will be placed on the ground further to the front, which is contrary to what would have happened had the gallop left continued. This explains why a horse has a tendency to change lead in taking a jump requiring great engagement of the haunches. The left hind foot must now come to the ground because it is blocked by the left fore. The right hind engages a little more and is then planted. This is the favorable time for the forehand to leave the ground as its maximum elevation corresponds to the verticality of the foreleg, and it has been lightened through the reaction due to the descent of the hindquarters, which are now in position to lift the forehand.

By decreasing and stopping the upward relative velocity of the head and neck, and giving to this mass an acceleration downward, an equal upward reaction is created on the forequarters. This upward reaction assists in lifting the forequarters off the ground. By decreasing and stopping the rearward relative velocity of the head and neck and giving this mass an acceleration to the front, an equal reaction is created on the forequarters, which assists in delaying their forward movement sufficiently to prevent the forehand being carried into the jump before it has been sufficiently elevated to clear it. As the forehand continues to rise, the head reaches its maximum elevation (with reference to the spinal column) and begin its accelerated downward motion, thereby continuing the upward reaction on the forehand. The horse settles back on his haunches. The hocks are flexed to the maximum in order to contribute the greatest possible impulsive force by their extension, and also in order to lower still more the haunches with reference to the forehand, thus enabling this impulsive force to act upward to the desired degree. The loins are arched in order, by their straightening, to add to the impulsive force. Everything is ready for the powerful thrust called the take-off which occurs when the spinal column has reached its maximum inclination to the horizontal.

3. *Take-Off.* The take-off consists of the energetic opening (extension) of all angles of the hindquarters and the straightening (extension) of the loins. These actions communicate to the horse the thrust necessary to carry him over the jump. The line of thrust extends from the hind feet and should pass through the center of gravity of the horse. Otherwise a component of the thrust is lost and tends to rotate the mass. For the horse mounted, this line should pass through the center of gravity of horse and rider combined. For the ordinary jump, when the hind feet leave the ground, the forehand has

attained the elevation necessary to clear the obstacle. The head and neck have reached the maximum velocity downward and forward, and are generally below the prolongation of the spinal column. The horse is ready to allow the forehand to move forward. As the relative velocity of the head and neck to the front ceases to increase, the opposition of their reaction to the forward movement of the forehand ceases, and allows the thrust to push the forehand forward unopposed. By stopping and reversing the movement of the forelegs, which up to this time have been moving forward in a pawing-like gesture, a reaction forward is created on the forehand, and the forelegs are carried back to be folded up so as to avoid hitting the obstacle.

4. *Suspension.* Under the influence of the forces put into play during the take-off, the mass moves through the air, the center of gravity following a trajectory which cannot now be changed except by some force or resistance foreign to the horse. Although the trajectory of the center of gravity is fixed, the path of different parts of the mass can be altered, thereby forcing a change in the path of some other part of the horse. This the horse promptly proceeds to do, his neck and head being the parts of which he makes the greatest and most efficient use. As the mass of these parts has acquired a considerable momentum by their forward and downward movement relative to the body of the horse, he can utilize this live force to effect considerable changes on other parts of his body to assist them in their safe passage over the obstacle and create conditions favorable for a smooth landing.

By decreasing, stopping, and reversing the forward relative movement of the head and neck, the horse creates an equal and opposite pull forward on his mass.

When the mass of the forehand is above the obstacle, the horse, by decreasing, stopping and reversing the downward relative movement of the head and neck, creates a push downward on the forehand. The folding of the knees and tucking up of the forelegs to insure their safe passage over the obstacle increases this push downward on the forehand. This push downward on the forehand elevates the hindquarters and assists in their safe passage over the obstacle, and also allows the mass of the animal to rotate about the center of gravity or *bascule* and bring his forefeet to the ground first. Otherwise, he would move through the air like a stick, his spinal column remaining parallel to its original direction, and land on his hind feet. An approximation to this is often seen when a rider, by the excessive use of his reins, restricts the movement of his horse's neck.

5. *Landing.* As the horse's forefeet come to the ground, the right in advance in this case, there is a sudden interruption of downward movement, causing a tremendous strain on the legs of the horse. However, he has at his command a powerful means of reducing this strain—the momentum due to the relative movement of his head and neck upward. By decreasing, stopping, and reversing the upward relative velocity of this mass, he creates an equal upward life on the forehand, the strain on the forelegs is lessened, the haunches

descend, the hind feet come to the ground, the right in advance in this case, and the horse gallops away with the right lead.

Instinct and Training

Instinct leads the horse to use his head and neck in the manner to afford him the greatest assistance, just as it leads an athlete to use his arms in jumping. Some horses make more efficient use of the "balancing-pole" than others, and a long necked horse is by reason of his conformation, able to create greater reactions by the movement of his head and neck. Like the athlete, practice gives greater ability and leads to better results. The above observations, as to the use of head and neck are based upon photographs of jumps in which conditions were favorable and all went well. This is not always true, and, where a horse gets in bad at a jump, instinct leads him to vary the manner of using his head and neck. If he gets his take-off too far from the jump, he stops the acceleration of his head and neck forward before he stops the downward acceleration, in order to allow the unopposed forward movement of the forehead during a period that its elevation is still being assisted by this mass, thus tending to place the maximum ordinate of the trajectory at the jump. Due to some other mistake, he may be led by instinct not to reverse the acceleration near the middle of the swing of the head or neck, but to continue to increase their velocity until near the end of the arc and make a very abrupt reversal at the highest or lowest point of the movement. While instinct guides the horse in this, practice develops handiness.

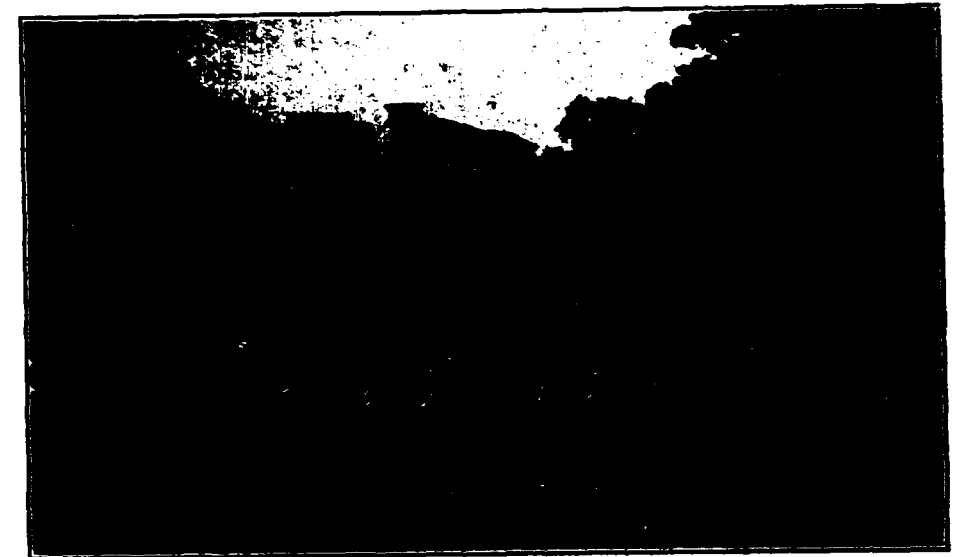
The Horse Mounted

The horse mounted makes much the same use of his head and neck as when jumping at liberty, provided he is not interfered with by the rider. He must carry a cumbersome burden and is subject to restrictions in his movements. He must make greater efforts and will probably make greater and more abrupt movements of his "balancing-pole." The hands must follow those movements in order not to interfere with them and to give uniform support to the mouth without allowing slack to come into the reins at any instant, as resumption of contact would result in a jerk on the horse's mouth. These give and take actions of the rider are performed somewhat by the fingers and wrists, but principally by opening and closing the angles at the elbows and shoulders and by movement of the rider's upper body. There is not sufficient time for the rider to consciously follow these movements. He must, by practice, train himself to follow them instinctively. Most good horses can jump smoothly over obstacles about four feet three inches high without any abrupt movements. That is why most hunter classes, in which performance includes style and smoothness of jumping as well as tips, are shown over jumps of that size. For obstacles four and a half feet high or higher, most horses must make spasmodic efforts and abrupt movements of the head and neck, to follow which requires great skill on the part of the rider.

For horse show jumping, it is important that the rider have a firm base of support, which will allow him to so place his weight and so control his movements, especially those of the hands, as to allow the different parts of the horse to function properly.

The photograph on this page illustrates a number of points concerning horse show jumping. The photograph shows the last instant of the take-off.

1. Note the extension of the horse's loins and all angles of the hind-quarters.
2. The horse approached the jump with the left lead and planted the left hind in advance of the right hind. (The position of the right hind is indicated



by the arrow on the photograph). Had the jump been vertical and higher (requiring greater engagement of the haunches), the right hind would have been placed on the ground in advance of the left hind (which could not be placed farther to the front because it was blocked by the left fore which was still in support). This would have caused a change to the right lead.

3. The horse has already ceased the relative forward acceleration of his head and neck (the reaction from which was opposing the forward movement of the forehead) and, by stopping and reversing their forward relative velocity, is exerting a forward pull on the forehead.

4. Up to the instant the photograph was taken, the horse had continued the downward relative acceleration of the head and neck, thus continuing the

upward lift on the forehead. Note the distance the head is below the prolongation of the spinal column.

5. Had the jump been a vertical one, instead of a triple bar, the horse would have rotated more to the rear on his hocks prior to the take-off (in order to make his line of thrust more nearly vertical) and his forehead would have been above the jump earlier. In that case he would have ceased the downward relative acceleration of his head and neck earlier—about the time he ceased their relative forward movement.

6. The horse is now ready to stop and reverse the downward relative velocity of his head and neck, the reaction from which will create a downward push on his forehead and cause him to rotate about the center of mass or *base of support*. This will assist the hindquarters in their safe passage over the obstacle and bring the fore feet to the ground first.

7. Note the forward and low position of the rider's center of gravity. Due to the inclination of the horse's spinal column, the part of the rider which is vertically above his knees (the most forward element of his base of support) is, relative to the saddle, greatly advanced.

8. When, above the jump, the horse's spinal column becomes more nearly horizontal, the rider's center of gravity must be, relative to the saddle, more to the rear. (If the photograph is revolved until the spinal column is horizontal, it is evident the rider's center of gravity would be in advance of his knees, thus causing him to fall). This will be accomplished by a relative movement of the rider's body to the rear and an opening of the angle formed by his body and the horse's spinal column.

9. Note the position of the rider's loins, head and eyes.

10. The stirrup leathers are probably a little too short, thereby robbing the rider of the full use of the lower thighs as a part of his base of support. Longer stirrup leathers would also permit a slightly more forward position of the feet without raising the knees.

11. The rider is given a uniform support to the horse's mouth. That he is not limiting or interfering with the movements of the horse's head and neck is clearly shown by the position of the horse's nose, his closed mouth, and his general relaxation and ease.

12. The rider is beautifully "with his horse."

Some Reminiscences

Including an Account of General Sully's Expedition Against
the Southern Plains Indians, 1868

By

Brigadier General E. S. GODFREY

AS WAS THE CUSTOM from time immemorial, when Winter approached, the troops in the field were ordered to posts for the cold season. After our return from the escort of the Indian Peace Commission at Medicine Lodge, Kansas, October 9th to November 20th, 1867, six troops and Headquarters of the Seventh Cavalry were ordered to Fort Leavenworth, Kansas; two troops to Fort Harker, Kansas; one to Fort Dodge, Kansas; one to Fort Wallace, Kansas; one to Fort Lyon; and one to Fort Reynolds—the last two being in what was then Colorado Territory.

At that time there was great unrest among the enlisted men. As long as the troops were in active field work, the men appeared contented and there were few desertions, but while we were in winter quarters, and after each bi-monthly pay day, the desertions were appalling, hundreds leaving at a time. At one post in Colorado the First Sergeant, after tattoo roll call, went into the barrack room and designated thirty men to saddle their horses for detached service, armed and equipped, and had the cooks issue each man rations for a period of days. The Sergeant mounted the detachment, marched it quietly out of the post, and when some distance away, moved rapidly until about thirty miles from the post. Then he halted the detachment and informed the men that they were all deserters and it was then every man for himself, said "good-bye" and started south for the mining regions. Two or three at once turned back, returned to the Fort and gave themselves up, and told the story of their deception.

Many of these deserters had served in the Civil War, and many of those who were captured said that they had enlisted for adventure or to get transportation to the West, intending later to go to the vicinity of the mining camps. The inaction and routine of garrison duty and, too, the strict discipline hastened their determination to get to the mines.

Every few weeks detachments of recruits would arrive from the Carlisle, Pa. Depot. This, of course, greatly handicapped instruction. I heard an Inspector (who was with Sheridan in the Civil War), after he had inspected the records, state that the recruit assignments to the Regiment during the first two years after its organization, would total the strength of a cavalry division during the Civil War.

As was the custom of the service and of the Indians, when the grass began to grow, active operations stirred the garrisons of the Army, and the nomads who had wintered along the streams where cottonwood was abundant to feed, and plenty of underbrush to shelter, the ponies.

On the 4th of April, 1863, five troops of the Seventh Cavalry under the command of Major Joel H. Elliott left Fort Leavenworth and marched to the Kansas frontier, encamping near Ellis Station on the then Kansas Pacific Railroad.

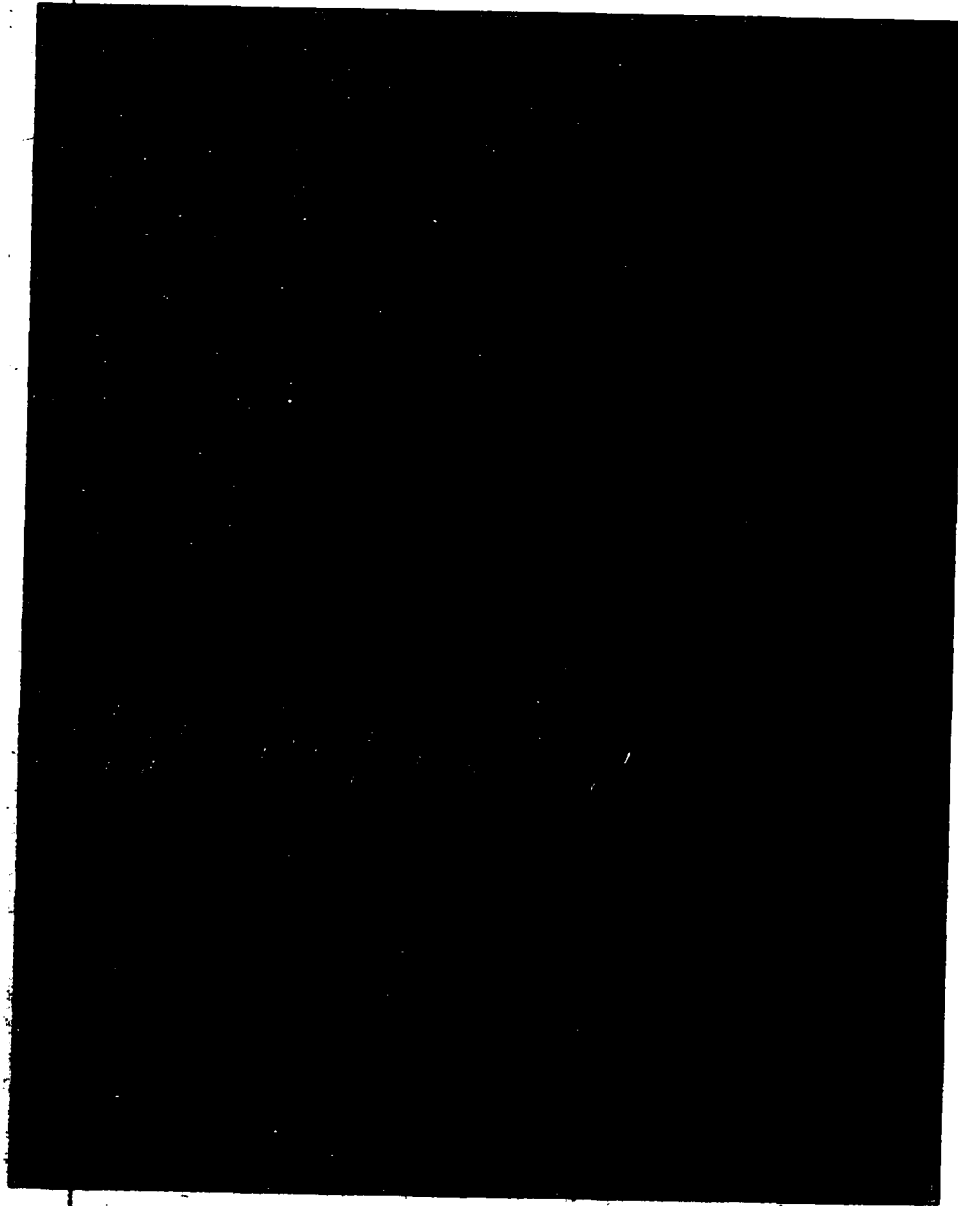
Ellis Station, at the crossing of Big Creek by the railroad, consisted of one house for the section hands, and a water tank. The terminus of the railroad track was then near the mushroom canvas town or "city" of Coyote. The western limit of civilization on the Kansas frontier at that time ran approximately from Scandia through Solomon Fork, Sylvan Grove, Ellsworth, and Wichita. Soon after our arrival at Ellis, one troop (or company) was ordered to Wichita to protect the settlements, and one troop from Fort Wallace, Kansas, arrived at our camp. About the middle of July, the command was ordered to march at once to Fort Larned.

Due to the fact that the Indians had signed a peace treaty only a few months before at Medicine Lodge, we had anticipated a peaceful summer cantonment, and officers and men had gone to considerable trouble to make themselves comfortable by constructing bunks, "bush verandas" in front of their tents, and bush canopies over their kitchens and dining tables—the latter made with puncheons or split logs. Hence this summons for active field work came as quite a surprise. We had no information that indicated such an emergency. Anticipating only a temporary absence, we left most of our canvas standing, and took only such supplies as were necessary for the trip; a detail from each organization, and the laundresses were left in charge of the cantonment. The next morning we were on our way to Fort Larned.

On arrival there, about the middle of July, we learned that all the Southern Plains tribes—Apaches, Arapahoes, Cheyennes, Comanches and Kiowas—had been summoned to Fort Larned to receive their annuities, as provided in the Medicine Lodge Peace Treaty. All had responded except some bands of Cheyennes; these bands had gone to Colorado, they claimed, to fight the Utes, or rather to get some Ute ponies. Colonel Wyncoop, the Indian Agent, refused to issue the annuities until these bands returned to the Agency. The Indians became restive by this delay, and *demand*ed the issuance of their annuities in order that they might follow the buffalo. The chiefs claimed they could not control their young men. The garrison of Fort Larned consisted of three companies of the Third Infantry and one troop of the Tenth Cavalry. The aggregate of the tribes was estimated at 12,000 to 15,000. Hence the call for more troops to overawe the Indians and to avert any trouble.

Our arrival seemed to have a quieting effect. On the 1st of August I was ordered to take the wagon train and bring the property and laundresses from our former camp. These I found had been moved to Fort Hays for safety.

One afternoon we heard loud moanings and cries of distress. The belated war party of the Cheyennes had returned, reporting the loss of several of the party. The next night there was a scalp dance, so they had some consolation



Satanta

Principal war chief of the Kiowas who ravaged the settlements of the southwestern plains during the Sixties.

for their losses. The annuities were issued by the Indian Agent and then there was feasting and dances throughout the Indian camps.

Among the annuities issued were muzzle-loading rifles, revolvers, lead, caps, bullet moulds, and powder. At the battle of the Washita we found quantities of these issues.

Soon after the annuities were issued, many of the camps were broken up and moved away south of the Arkansas river. Several days later there was a sudden and hasty move of all the camps to the south bank, or south of the Arkansas. It was generally understood that troops were not to operate south of the Arkansas River, except in pursuit of hostiles; the peaceably disposed were not to be molested. It is my recollection that this promise was made by the Indian Peace Commission at Medicine Lodge. This move was made two or three days before we learned of the raids on the Saline, Solomon and Republican Rivers' settlements. Apparently the Indians had timed their move to the south of the Arkansas with that of the raids. It was thought that they knew the young men had gone out on these raids. Our first information came with the official announcement, and that the two troops of the Seventh Cavalry stationed at Fort Harker (now Kanapolis) Kansas, and also the troops of the Tenth Cavalry at Fort Hays, had been ordered to the scenes of trouble. With this announcement came orders for Major Elliott to move his command toward Fort Zara and then scout the country between Walnut Creek and the Arkansas River.

On the 28th of August, I was sent to Fort Larned to get the mail, and Lieutenant J. M. Bell, regimental quartermaster, went with me as he wanted to close up some business transactions at the post. (1)

This mail brought orders from General Alfred Sully, commanding "The District of the Upper Arkansas" for Major Elliott to move his command to Fort Dodge, Kansas, up Walnut Creek by way of "Saw-log Crossing."

On our way back to camp the sun was suddenly obscured, and Lieutenant Bell and I got out of the ambulance to see if a storm was brewing. To our great astonishment, we discovered that the obscuration was made by millions of grasshoppers. The glint of the sunlight on their flickering wings gave the appearance of a snowstorm high up in the air. Our march to Fort Dodge was in the midst of this pest. The trees and bushes were denuded of their leaves, in fact every living green thing was subject to their attack; they invaded our tents; they ate the nap off our blankets. Fortunately for our animals, the hot, dry summer had "cured" the "buffalo grass" on which we depended for grazing.

On arrival at Fort Dodge, we received orders from General Sully, the

(1) In this mail I received my commission promoting me to First Lieutenant, Seventh Cavalry, to date from February 1. Because of the political quarrel between Congress and the President, the Senate had refused during this long period to go into executive session and all appointments were held up. I purchased from Lappan & Co., Fort Sneller, a case of wine to "wet my commission" as was the "custom of the service" at that time.

District Commander, then at that post, to equip and supply ourselves for the expedition against the Indians. Our command was joined by Troop B, Captain William Thompson, stationed at the post; Troop C, Captain L. P. Gillette, from Fort Lyon, Colo.; Troop F, Capt. G. W. Yates, from Fort Leavenworth, Kansas; and Troop K, Captain R. M. West, from Wichita, Kansas—making nine troops of the Seventh Cavalry under Major Elliott. Three companies of the Third Infantry under the command of Captain J. H. Page; also the medical staff, Captain Henry Lippincott, Assistant Surgeon, U. S. A., Dr. Benick, Contract Surgeon, and I think, one other contract surgeon—completed the expeditionary force. We had an ample wagon train loaded with supplies.

I recall three guides, civilians, John Smith, Ben Clark and Chapman.

About 4:00 P. M. of September 7th, the command pulled out. The Seventh Cavalry was organized with four squadrons, two troops each. Troop K, to which troop my promotion assigned me, was detailed as Headquarters guard and escort. Two troops had the advance, two on each flank and two as rear guard. The infantry loaded in wagons was at the head of the wagon train. We marched up the Arkansas several miles to the "Cimarron Crossing" on the "Dry Route" of the old Santa Fe trail. General Sully and escort halted on the south bank and waited until the wagons and rear guard had crossed, when he said, "Now we have crossed the Rubicon." Orders were given to observe the greatest silence possible, and that no bugle signals should be sounded. Smoking was prohibited. The wagon train was formed two abreast and the cavalry was to regulate its march on the wagon train. The General in his ambulance, followed by his escort, rode at the head of the train. After two hours' march the General sent word to the advance squadron to halt for a rest. Captain Thompson, in command of the advance, rather prided himself on his lung-power; he had been a territorial delegate to Congress from Iowa and was the Colonel of the Second Iowa Cavalry in the Civil War. When he received the message, he gave the command in stentorian tones, "Battalion, Halt!" Then a mule brayed. The General was very angry; he said he was satisfied the Indians had been watching our preparations from hidden look-outs and he had moved after dark and in silence to outwit them, but Balaam's Ass had thwarted his scheme! Thereafter, silence was observed as far as practicable, and commands were given in low tones. We marched southward till sometime after midnight when orders were given to rest on arms till daylight, the cavalry to hold their horses. Of course the animals tugged at the reins to get grass, and the cavalymen got little rest.

With the dawn the march was resumed and continued till we came to some water holes near the head of Crooked Creek, where we halted to cook breakfast. There were some dead bushes, left from a prairie fire of some past year, and the plainsman's never failing fuel of those days, "buffalo chips," with which to prepare our coffee and bacon.

Our marches were in a southwesterly direction to the Cimarron River. A short time before we reached the Cimarron, some buffaloes were seen on the bluffs south of the river. Contrary to the expectations of General Sully, we had not as yet seen any Indians or signs of them, and General Sully gave permission to a couple of officers to give chase to the buffalo. As they approached the herd they saw a mounted Indian hunter riding full speed toward the same herd. As soon as the Indian discovered the character of his contestants, he reversed his direction and, followed by a few long distance shots, disappeared down a ravine. The officers returned to the command and reported their adventure.

We camped that night in the valley at the foot of the bluffs of the second bench. Some time after dark the command was startled by the "swish, swish" of arrows through lighted tents and at camp fires. Shouts of "put out the lights," "douse the glim," "put out the fires" then a few shots from firearms. Troops were hastily formed and rushed up the bluffs, but the enemy had fled.

At the time the arrows were shot into camp, several Indians tried to get at our horses, but the vigilance of the guards and the quick formation of troops at their rendezvous, thwarted their attempt and the scare was soon over. This was the first and only night attack. Fortunately there were no casualties. Thereafter our camps were selected more carefully.

Orders were issued forbidding anyone going outside the limits of the camp guards, or going beyond the limits of the advance or rear guards or flankers on the march, without authority of Headquarters.

Contrary to our expectations, no Indians were seen the next day. We struck a single travois trail that led down the valley, but it was old and no particular significance was attached to it except that it eventually would lead to the main tribes. We camped on the south side of the river on a bench above the bottom.

The next morning we broke camp in our usual leisurely manner. A short distance below our camp was a deep, dry arroyo that led back into the hills beyond our camp. After the train had crossed this arroyo and gone some distance, Captain Louis McLane Hamilton (a grandson of Alexander Hamilton) in command of the squadron of the rear guard, mounted his squadron and started to join the trains. At the lower camp limit, near this arroyo, were two men (Captain Yates' mess cook and his "striker") who were cautioned by Hamilton not to delay, and to join their troop as soon as they could mount. As their horses were saddled and ready, he passed on and paid no further attention to them. After he had gone several hundred yards beyond the arroyo, he heard the "war whoop" of the Indians and the screams of men, and then saw several Indians making away with the men and their mounts. The Indians had stealthily moved down the arroyo until opposite the old camp and then swooped on the unsuspecting, terrified men; two Indians to each man had thrown them across one of their horses in front of

General Alfred Sully

the rider, and the others had seized the horses. Captain Hamilton at once gave pursuit, and Lieutenant A. E. Smith, acting adjutant of the Cavalry, ordered one of the flank guard troops to follow in support. The facts were at once reported to General Sully who was at the head of the train in his ambulance. He was furious and at once sent a staff officer to stop the pursuit and order the immediate return of the troops.

Hamilton's pursuit had so gained on the pursued that one of the captives had been shot and abandoned as killed, and he was gaining on the other party when he reluctantly halted and returned. An ambulance was sent for the rescued, wounded men. The wound proved to be not serious.

Hamilton and Smith were placed under arrest for disobedience of orders, in assuming to make pursuit without proper authority, but that evening upon arrival in camp, they were released from arrest and restored to duty. Hamilton was never reconciled to the abandonment of the pursuit.

This episode had a demoralizing effect on the command. We of the Cavalry had been imbued with the principle to take any risk to attempt the rescue of a comrade in peril.

For five days the command was under attacks, some quite determined, the hostiles fighting to allow time for the flight of their families. Our marches down the Cimarron and Beaver followed the trail of the villages, which grew fresher and larger as the camps of the various bands scattered along the streams, joined the flight. As we advanced, the abandonment of property at camp sites and on the trail, indicated something of a panic on the part of the Indians in their haste to escape. There was no indication of haste in the pursuit.

It was during one of our engagements that the horse ridden by Captain Keogh was shot in the rump. Keogh christened him *Oomanche* and adopted him as his field mount. (2)

This horse was ridden by Captain Keogh at the battle of the Little Big Horn with Custer's command; he was found after the battle on the site of the Indian village, severely wounded. Later he was retired and the subject of much sentimental poetry, etc.

When we arrived about three miles above the fork of the Beaver and Wolf Creeks, where later Camp Supply was located, the hostiles had selected a good defensive position and put up a stiff fight, detaining the command for nearly two hours. Finally, General Sully formed a strong dismounted skirmish line, advanced, and when about two hundred yards of their position,

(2) Recently I came upon a copy of the official record of this horse: "Name *Oomanche*; height 15½ hands; weight 940 lbs.; girth 73 inches; length 86 inches; date of purchase, August, 1887; age at purchase 6 years; color 'Buckskin'; date of death November 7, 1891, at Fort Riley, Kansas.

Seven rifle (bullet) wounds, June 25, 1876. Three severe (neck, lungs and groin), four slight."

ordered the charge. The hostiles mounted and fled into the sand hills. No attempt was made to use the Cavalry for mounted charge and pursuit.

On arrival at the forks of the rivers, the command, except the advance guard, was halted. The advance guard followed the hostiles for over a mile, when it was recalled, and the command went into camp.

That evening the one man killed in the engagement that day, was buried on the picket line to hide the grave from the Indians. Two months later, when we returned, we found that the wolves had burrowed to the corpse, as shown by the scattered remains. Then we understood why the Indians placed the remains of their dead on scaffolds or trees.

That evening as several of us were sitting around the Headquarters camp fire, General Sully emerged from his tent and announced that the command would begin its return march to Fort Dodge to ask for re-enforcements and to refit for another expedition. Later in the evening when he and I were alone, I asked him why he gave up the pursuit. He replied: "Oh, those sand hills are interminable." The expedition was a failure.

The next day we began our return. We crossed the Beaver Fork and not an Indian in sight. Not until we were leaving the valley for the higher ground did they make their appearance. At first a few scouts—most of these soon left—and later returned largely re-enforced. A few shots were exchanged. Then, at a distance from the flanks of the train, they rode in groups for several miles as if giving safe conduct. Finally, about noon, the groups approached near, "thumbed their noses," spanked their buttocks, and made other contemptuous manifestations, then rode rapidly away.

The following morning a soldier of Troop I, Captain Keogh's, was returning to his picket post from camp, missed his post in the darkness, and wandered some distance beyond his post. The corporal in charge of the post saw him in the dawn, mistook him for a lurking Indian, shot and mortally wounded him. He died that afternoon. At our next camp, Captain Keogh invited the officers to attend the funeral on the picket line after retreat. At the appointed time Captain Keogh read the burial service, and at the conclusion of the funeral thanked the officers for their attendance, then added, he "hoped soon to return the compliment."

Lieutenant Gibson's quick wit and humor sensed the "bull" and exploded, echoed by the group. Keogh blushed, stammered a lame explanation, and then emphasized a "good-bye"!

We arrived at Fort Dodge about September 18th.

General Sully reported his return, asked for re-enforcements and recruits and horses to fill the Seventh Cavalry to the maximum. He had canvassed the qualifications of the various field officers to command the Cavalry, and concluded by requesting the restoration to duty of Lieutenant Colonel George A. Custer, then absent, serving a sentence of "Suspension from Command."

The Chinese Cavalry

By
Captain S. V. CONSTANT, Cavalry
 and
Captain J. W. CARROLL, Cavalry

THE CHINESE have used cavalry since time immemorial. In ancient times Genghis Khan, Kublai Khan and other notable military leaders of the day used cavalry almost exclusively. Some very interesting information about the cavalry of Genghis Khan are found in *The Emperor of all Men* by Harold Lamb, and are quoted below.

The horde was made up entirely of horsemen, every man having at least one led horse. The heavy, shock divisions—usually Mongols—had the horses encased in lacquered leather armor. The warriors wore armor, iron plates sewed together or boiled ox-hide only in front. The helmets were light and serviceable and had a leather drop to protect the neck behind. The shock troops relied upon the light lance, which could be carried on the shoulder, and the heavy curved Mongol sword. But every man was supplied with two bows and quivers. All weapons were for attack, not defense. Only the guard-corps were equipped with shields. Many regiments had hooks on their lances and lariats to pull riders from the saddle. Kits were small and useful—leather sacks holding nose-bags for the ponies; a pot for the man; a length of rope for hauling the siege-engine of the Chinese artificers; wax; files for sharpening arrow-heads. It was an army of cavalry and could go anywhere.

Genghis Khan set out from the pastures in the autumn because the horses were strongest then and fodder was ripe to cut. The horde moved slowly south at first, driving herds of cattle with it. Before it went parties of merchants to serve as spies, then the scattered scout patrols, and then the divisions and the herds, spread over fifty miles so the horses could graze. The vast concourse had to cross the first rivers by swimming. The horses roped together by the saddle-horns—twenty or more in a line—breasted the current, the warriors holding to their tails. The kits were laced up air-tight and floated.

Midwinter found the horde passing through the first ranges. Here it easily crossed the rivers, which were frozen, and, with its covered wagons rolling in its wake, cut its way through the forests of Ala-tau, hewing out massive beams that were to serve as the framework of bridges to span narrow gorges.

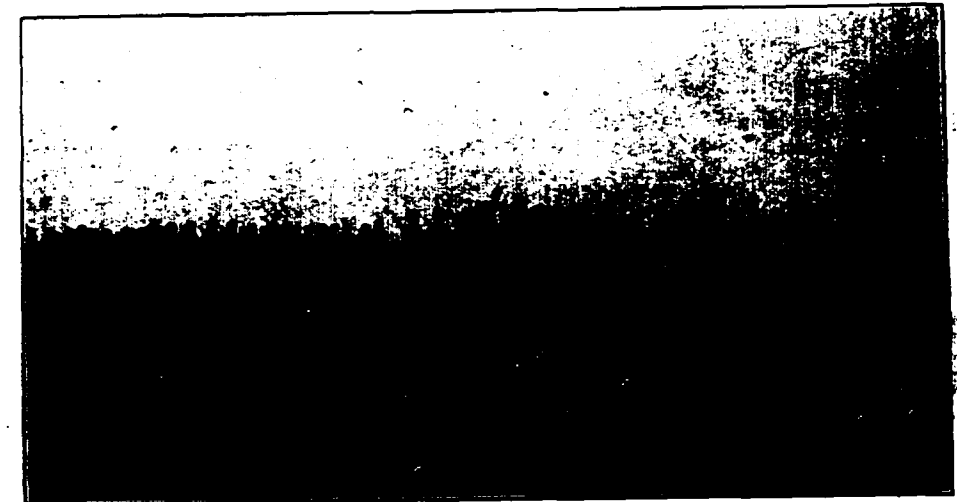
In the bleak cold of the higher ranges the cattle died off and were eaten. The warriors hunted for what game was to be had, and the hardy ponies got along as best they could on a little barley and the dead grass they dug up with their hoofs from under the snow. The divisions moved farther apart in the search for game and grass. The wagon-train was abandoned. Forging ahead in the utter cold of high Asia, a quarter-million men endured hardships that would have put a modern division into hospital. Wrapped up in their sheepskins and leather, the Mongols did not suffer; in their shaggy coats the ponies did not lag. On they went through snow and ice.

Lean, stripped of everything except weapons, the horde came down the southern slopes when the grass first showed green. Before now Genghis Khan had ordered his entire left wing to turn to the east, and it vanished from sight. Liaison officers began to gallop back and forth between the divisions. They

had come a thousand miles and were approaching the first frontier of Islam, the wide river Syr, now swollen by spring freshets.

From route marching the Mongols shifted into action without effort. The men of the tumans put their rations—strips of dried meat—under their saddles and galloped a hundred miles in a day, changing to fresh horses when their mounts tired. They burned towns and circled off, appearing wherever Mahommed least expected them. He could not know that only a few tumans were in front of him. For a fortnight he waited for the Mongol to cross the swollen and muddy Syr under his nose. He waited in vain. Genghis Khan had disappeared, taking the center of the horde with him.

The successive invasions of China from the north and northwest by the Tartars and Mongols, and the Manchus, all were accomplished by the use of cavalry. Because of the superior mobility of the invaders, the Chinese were



Bodyguard Cavalry

This belongs to Chang Hsueh-liang, the son of the Manchurian War Lord and known as the "Young General." This unit is as tough an outfit as there is in China, and has done some good fighting.

compelled to use cavalry in order to cope with them. When these people became established in power, and later when they were assimilated by the Chinese, they continued the use of cavalry in warfare.

Whatever may have been the powers of Chinese cavalry in the past, at the present time this arm has deteriorated to such an extent that it is almost a negligible quantity, except in the northern and northwestern parts of China.

Organization and Strength

In Manchuria, Kansu and the northern provinces, the largest cavalry unit is the division. Of these northern divisions, probably the best are those of Ma Fu-hsiang, Governor of Kansu, composed of Mohammedans, and those of

General Wu Chun-sheng, Governor of Heilungchiang Province, Manchuria. The organization of all cavalry units is very elastic. The troop is supposed to be composed of 100 men, the squadron of three troops, and the regiment of three squadrons. The brigade usually is composed of two or three regiments, and the division is composed of two or three brigades. The strength of a division generally is about 10,000 men. These figures always will vary, depending upon the number of men and horses that any division commander is able to recruit. In some organizations a recruit must furnish his own horse and is given a forage allowance in addition to his own pay. In other organizations men and horses are procured from any source available. It should be borne in mind always, that in a Chinese organization there is very little control, and each organization commander is largely on his own with regard to details of organization. It also is impossible ever to consider that the strength on paper coincides with the actual strength of the organization. Some units will appear on paper to be much stronger than they actually are, in order to enable the unit commander to draw more funds from higher authority and pocket the surplus himself. In other cases, where money and feed are easy to procure, the unit may be one and one-half times the normal strength in order to give the unit commander a more valuable article on which to trade his services.

Chinese cavalry organization is based on that of the Japanese but never actually follows it; therefore, by taking the tables of organization for Japanese cavalry, an approximate idea of what Chinese cavalry is supposed to be, can be ascertained.

Arms

There are no standard arms in the Chinese cavalry; however, all cavalry carry rifles or carbines with the exception of a few recently recruited units of Kansu cavalry, which are equipped with lances only. The rifles used are either Italian rifles about fifteen years old, similar to those carried by the Chinese infantry, or are Japanese rifles or carbines of the Japanese 38th year model. Rifles and carbines are carried slung across the back of the trooper.

In addition to rifles, some cavalry is equipped with pistols and beheading knives. The Kansu cavalry is equipped throughout with lances.

Ammunition is carried in belts and bandoleers. The cartridge belt is of cloth and is tied around the waist by strings. It holds 100 rounds. The bandoleers are similar to the cartridge belts and are slung across the shoulder, crossing in front and in back if there are two of them. Sometimes both belts and bandoleers are worn, depending on the amount of ammunition available for each trooper.

Use of Weapons.

In former days the cavalry soldier was very expert in the use of the knife and spear mounted. Also for many years the firing of the rifle mounted was much stressed. At the present time very little attention is paid to the

use of arms mounted. Mounted pistol and rifle practice has never been heard of nor observed. In fact, target practice of any kind with any arm is rare in China. This is doubtless due to the value of ammunition which, when once used is hard to replace.

The majority of soldiers have very little conception of the use of the weapons with which they are armed. The use of the sights is a mystery to them. Slings are never used in firing. Metal parts, when not badly rusted, are brightly polished. It is generally customary to plug the rifle barrel with a piece of rag to keep out the dust.

Mounted practice is held with spears and beheading knives, with which



Chinese Saddle

This is used by all units that have not foreign style equipment. The tree is made of wood. Note the cotton stuffed pad on which the rider sits. This saddle is equally hard on horse and rider.

the men are very expert dismounted. These are traditional weapons of the Chinese and they know how to use them. When mounted, however, their expertness is in direct proportion to their ability to manage their horses; hence, with the exception of those units noted (i. e., some of the Heilungchiang and Kansu cavalry) the mounted use of weapons is very inferior.

Personal Equipment

The uniform is of grey cotton material and in the winter is padded. Wrap cloth puttees are worn and all men wear the typical Chinese low cloth shoe. At the present time some of the officers are wearing leather riding boots. A sort of padded quilt and blanket, a tin cloth-covered canteen, and a common

enameled cup is practically all the personal equipment carried by the trooper, no intrenching tools or extra shoes being issued to them as is done in the infantry. The pack is rolled in a short cylindrical roll and is strapped on the cantle of the saddle. Some of Wu Pei-fu's cavalry have steel helmets.

Horses and Horse Equipment

The Chinese cavalry mount is the stocky pony common to North China. The horse equipment consists of a rope halter worn at all times, a leather bridle and a single snaffle bit, and a leather saddle made after the German type. Neither bridles, bits nor saddles are necessarily uniform. The saddles, while in general following the German pattern, are made lighter in order to fit the smaller Chinese horses. The pommel pockets, when present, are of



Cavalry Trooper Equipped with Foreign Style Equipment

A cotton padded coat is carried strapped to the pommel pockets which are generally empty or filled with Chinese bread. A blanket or padded quilt is strapped to the cantle. A folding water bucket and feed bags are hung on the cantle over the canvas cantle pockets.

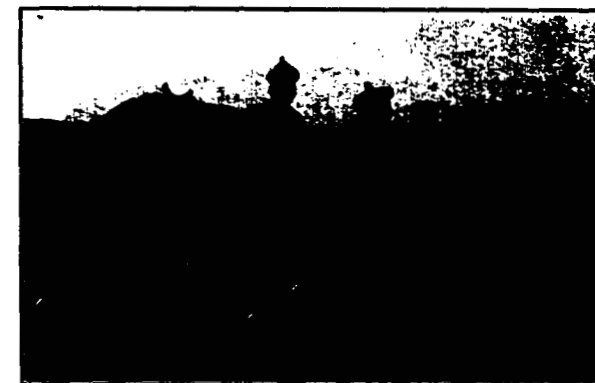
leather and usually contain nothing. Cantle bags either are made of leather or of white canvas, and are likewise generally empty. The horse equipment as a whole is poorly cared for, and due to this fact and in addition, the uniform dryness of the climate, would undoubtedly crack and break if subjected to much usage in campaign.

Marching

Under ordinary conditions, at the present time, cavalry covers only slightly more ground in a day than infantry. Marching is accomplished by riding horses at a walk and by dismounting and leading. Trotting is used only for short periods due to the confusion involved by the different gaits of the horses, many of the animals being pacers, a gait which is considered very desirable by the Chinese. The average rate of march is 10 li, or a little over three miles per hour. However, they are capable of putting forth greater effort; for example, in the Chihli-Fengtien war of 1924 the average daily march of the so-called "National Army" cavalry was from 100 to 120 li, or from 30 to 40 miles per day.

Horsemanship and Management

The Chinese know very little of horsemanship, as we think of it. They ride with their backs stiff, they jerk the horse's mouth to make him start and



Mongol Cavalry

Note bags hanging on cantle.

make him stop, and apparently have no conception of the use of the legs or the weight as an aid. They treat all animals cruelly and horses are no exception to the rule. On marches they cinch up their mounts until it is small wonder that the cinch does not cut through the animal. As long as the saddle does not fall off the horse's back, no attempt is made to adjust the equipment. As a result, saddles are constantly turning due to lack of proper adjustment. In camp, horses are left saddled on the picket line for protracted periods, the result being that sore backs are the rule rather than the exception.

Very little grooming is done and the hair is allowed to grow long and shaggy. Horses are fed anything from dry and unappetizing kaoliang stalks, to soggy bread of the worst grade. Millet, beans, and in fact anything that

the country provides is also fed. However, they do use good judgment as to times of feeding and watering. They always water before feeding, and on the march they water along the road wherever the opportunity presents itself. Also, they usually lead their horses for a time before mounting.

Fodder for animals in the north (virtually non-existent south of the Yangtze river) consists of grain as a staple, millet straw as roughage, and bran as a fattener. The grain staple fed horses and mules varies according to climate and local usage. In north and central-north China, dried black beans are commonly fed. In the western provinces, dried peas take their place. In the mountains, black huskless barley of a native variety is the staple. Maize and wheat are fed in emergency but are considered unwholesome. In many mountainous areas in China, oats grow wild and have been cultivated to no great advantage, so that the value of oats has still to be recognized by the army.

Mobility

In isolated cases such as the battle of Hsinminfu in December, 1925, and the movement of General Wu Chun-haeng on Dolonor in July, 1926, great mobility was apparent, accompanied by fearful casualties among the animals on account of lack of care in handling.

Transportation

There is no type of transportation for cavalry. Most cavalry lives on the country and exists by foraging and requisitioning food for both men and animals from the inhabitants. If necessity arises for the use of animal drawn transportation, the ordinary Chinese two wheeled cart is used. These carts with their drivers usually are pressed into service from among the civil population for the necessary length of time and then dismissed. Occasionally carts are purchased but this seldom is done, as the other method is easier and cheaper.

Efficiency and Effectiveness

With the exception of some units of Heilungchiang cavalry, small numbers of the National Army cavalry and some of the Kansu cavalry, Chinese cavalry is far from efficient and effective. On the whole it can be characterized as average Chinese infantry hampered by a horse. In isolated cases they have been capable of putting forth superior efforts both in marching and in battle maneuvering. For example, at the most critical stage of the battle of Hsinminfu, December 1921, General Kuo Sung-ling's rear was attacked by two Manchurian cavalry divisions and he was completely routed. The cavalry movement was planned with consummate skill and executed at precisely the right moment. It may be added that this attack was made after a long and fatiguing march in the dead of the cold Manchurian winter.

The Machine Rifle

By

Major JOHN T. McLANE, Cavalry

AS A PART OF CAVALRY ARMAMENT, the machine rifle is a source of many divergent views. Some officers believe that it should be discarded entirely and be replaced by light machine guns organized into a troop in the squadron; others have faith in its usefulness but favor its removal from the machine rifle platoon and the formation of a squadron machine rifle troop. The purpose of this article is to discuss the advantages and disadvantages of each of the plans and to reach a conclusion as the result of this analysis.

It may be safely stated as an axiom that cavalry attacks to be successful must be supported by an intense and effective fire power. We must have an armament which may be used to diminish enemy fire and thus secure power of movement. This means automatic weapons capable of high rates of fire. Equally important is the necessity for rapid fire weapons in the defense, if cavalry is to hold ground until it can be taken over by less mobile troops. With the obvious necessity for fire power, cavalry is confronted with the principle that maximum fire power and maximum mobility are incompatible. If we load ourselves down with heavy armament our power of rapidity and ease of movement will be decreased—this is obvious. The problem therefore resolves itself into one which requires adequate fire power for probable cavalry missions, attained by weapons which will not decrease mobility. In discussing mobility it is apparent that the larger the unit the less its mobility, relatively speaking. Therefore, a heavy weapon with great fire power may be suitable for the division, but entirely inappropriate for the troop. Armament also has a direct relation to the probable missions of a unit in time of war. Since the machine rifle is a troop weapon, its characteristics as applied to that unit, as well as the probable combat missions of the troop, should be inquired into.

The characteristics of the machine rifle lend themselves to use of this weapon by small cavalry units. It is portable and hinders mobility to only a limited degree. In firing the weapon, either semi-automatic or automatic action may be employed, thereby conserving ammunition when a large volume of fire is not required, or delivering 250 shots to the minute when demanded by critical periods of combat. Being a weapon not requiring a fixed mount, no elaborate and heavy tripod is necessary. The vulnerability of the machine rifle is no greater than that of the service rifle; a most important characteristic. Dispersion is relatively great when the weapon is fired automatically; however, when thus used, the target would generally be so favorable that extreme accuracy would not be essential. With a bipod rest and using semi-automatic fire, the dispersion is about that of the service rifle, and with three

times the fire volume. The weapon weighs about twenty-two pounds. It can not deliver the volume of fire of a machine gun; on the other hand, since its weight is considerably less, it can be put in and out of action more quickly than our present machine gun. Great power of accurate sustained fire invariably entails weight, due to the necessity for heavy parts, a tripod and either a water jacket or a large cooling surface. For a small unit such as the troop—one that should be highly mobile—every favorable characteristic of the machine rifle seems peculiarly adapted.

The advantages of having the machine rifle platoon as an organic part of the troop are many. First of all is the question of training. With the machine rifle as a part of troop armament, the troop commander is responsible for the training of the machine rifle platoon—he can know the limitations and characteristics of every man and horse in the organization that is to furnish the bulk of the fire power for his attacks or give rigidity to the framework of the defense. In charge of this training he has a lieutenant who is responsible to him alone. It follows therefore, that the troop from a training viewpoint should be an efficient fighting machine, with all the components for performing efficiently any of the types of cavalry combat. In dismounted combat each machine rifle squad normally joins the rifle platoon to which it has been previously assigned for dismounted action—a valuable consideration, as the rifle platoon leaders know the fire unit that is to deliver the bulk of their fire power. In mounted attacks by the troop, the troop commander can quickly dismount his machine rifle platoon to furnish the fire support that is so essential to success. Daily training as a unit will count here, as there will not be time for a deliberately prepared action.

But would not we get just as good training and as close co-operation between the fire element and the mounted attack by organizing a fourth troop in the squadron and putting the machine rifles in it? This would give the squadron commander a squadron weapon to support his attacks—he has none at present. Assume such an organization. Each time that a troop went on a detached mission, a machine rifle platoon would have to be attached, as there is not enough fire power in a troop armed with rifles alone. And the troop will be sent frequently on detached missions; for example, in reconnaissance and counter-reconnaissance. In such situations it would seem logical that the supporting fire unit should be an integral part of the troop and not assigned for the occasion. Even in an advance guard for a squadron, a machine rifle squad would have to be taken from the machine rifle troop for duty with the rifle platoon in the advance guard. A strange squad reports to a lieutenant who probably knows very little, if anything, of the employment of the weapons assigned to him. On the defensive the situation would be even worse. Rifle platoon leaders engaged in organizing combat groups would have machine rifle squads thrust upon them, and have the task of fitting a strange weapon into their plan of defense. Of course the employment of all machine rifles in a center of resistance might be co-ordinated by the captain

of the assumed machine rifle troop, but that takes time to accomplish. How much better for the rifle platoon leader to quickly dispose his machine rifles—he can do it if he has been in daily contact with them at drill and in tactical exercises. There is no doubt that the squadron commander should have a supporting fire unit. Generally he will have—when the squadron is sent on a detached mission—in the machine gun platoon attached from the brigade machine gun squadron. Lacking machine guns, he has available sufficient fire power to meet the usual situation, in his advance guard re-inforced by the machine rifle platoon of the troop from which the advance guard is taken.

It might be said that attaching a machine gun platoon to a rifle squadron is improvising a unit for a special mission. The necessity for daily training between machine guns and rifle troops is relatively not so great as between machine rifle platoons in the troop. Troop mounted actions are usually hastily prepared; there is little time for comprehensive orders and selection of positions. In troop dismounted attacks there must be the closest possible association between the assault platoons and the machine rifle squads. The latter must be up with the rifle units if progression by fire and movement is to result; machine rifles are incapable of overhead fire. Even in the final assault, machine rifles can help to retain fire superiority as they are capable of being used for marching fire. Offensive combat by a detached squadron will usually be a somewhat deliberately prepared affair involving a dismounted element, selection of machine gun positions, a mounted maneuvering force, a reserve, and in general, a more detached attitude on the part of the supporting fire unit as compared to a machine rifle platoon in troop attack. On the defense the comparison would be even more marked. It does not seem necessary therefore to create another unit in the squadron with its resulting overhead in order to give the squadron commander a weapon pre-eminently his own. The cavalry already has a tremendous overhead as compared to the number of men who can be placed on the firing line.

In considering the total elimination of machine rifles from cavalry armament and the substitution of machine guns, various considerations must be taken into account. Being weak in fire power, cavalry units must resort to a show of strength in many combat situations. Paradoxical as it may seem, this would be difficult of accomplishment if our rapid fire weapons consisted of machine guns alone. Every time that an enemy came in contact with a unit having no machine rifles, he would know at once that he was opposed by cavalry. For it is almost certain that the infantry will not discard the automatic rifles from their squads, due to the importance of this weapon in both offense and defense. Our ability to execute delaying actions would be lost, as the enemy realizing cavalry's relative weakness in fire power, would continue to advance, knowing we would not attempt to hold a position against determined attack. Thus an important role of cavalry would be put in the discard. Or, visualize a troop mounted attack against cavalry that has failed—this may happen in spite of the happy conclusion in most map problems. In

such a situation we must have a highly portable, rapid fire weapon to cover the withdrawal of the defeated element. With the machine rifle, going into and out of action is about as simple as the ordinary trooper's dismounting to fight on foot, and mounting again. Ammunition supply would become an even greater problem for small cavalry units than it now is, should the machine gun become our sole automatic weapon. Another point in favor of the machine rifle is that it constitutes an important weapon against low-flying attack aviation. Machine guns must be set up before fire can be brought to bear on hostile aircraft; the machine rifle is ready to fire as soon as it is released from the pack saddle hangers. Seconds will count when enemy aviators machine gun a column of mounted troops.

It would seem from the standpoint of training, probable combat use and favorable characteristics, that the present machine rifle, or some other semi-automatic weapon, is an essential part of troop armament. In all the many roles of cavalry this weapon can be used effectively, as it is practically as portable as the soldier's rifle, greatly increases fire power, and does not appreciably decrease mobility. The principle of incorporating automatic weapons in the troop is sound, and should be developed even to the extent of replacing the present Springfield rifle with a semi-automatic weapon. With reduced peace strength troops in which the machine rifle platoon is practically non-existent, it is difficult to conduct training with machine rifles in tactical exercises, and it sometimes appears to be a useless incumbrance. But such is far from the case, as I have tried to show in the above discussion.

An Appreciation of Cavalry

EXTRACT FROM ARTICLE by Major General Hunter Liggett in the June 18, 1927, *Saturday Evening Post*. (General Liggett commanded the First Army in the Meuse-Argonne.)

"The advance was continued generally this day and through the third and fourth (of November), when the Third and Fifth Corps drove the enemy across the Meuse. Had I had two divisions of American cavalry the morning of the second, von der Marwitz never would have got across the river, and how I prayed for that finely trained cavalry division at San Antonio which transport difficulties had kept in Texas, chafing at the bit. The French cavalry are horsemen only. American regular cavalry is highly mobile infantry as well; it can fight and pursue on horse, but it is as much at home on foot with the rifle as the infantry. . . . we could not follow fast enough to take full advantage of his straits. With American cavalry I believe I could have captured all the enemy on the front of the First Corps, and so deviled the others, fleeing to the eastward, that no considerable organization would have escaped across the Meuse."

On Horses

By

Lieut. Commander H. H. FROST, U. S. Navy

"Four things greater than all things are,—

Women and Horses and Power and War." KIPLING.

WHEN BUCEPHALUS was offered to Philip of Macedon for thirteen talents, a sum equal in purchasing value to millions of our dollars, no one could even mount him. When the horse was being led off, young Alexander was heard to say, "What an excellent horse they do lose, for want of address and boldness to manage him!" He then wagered the purchase price that he could master this wonderful horse and proceeded immediately to win the wager. "Philip and his friends looked on at first in silence and anxiety for the result," writes Plutarch, "till seeing him turn at the end of his career, and come back rejoicing and triumphing for what he had performed, they all burst out into acclamation of applause; and his father, shedding tears, it is said, for joy, kissed him as he came down from his horse, and in his transport, said, 'O my son, look thee out a kingdom equal to and worthy of thyself, for Macedonia is too little for thee!'"

Macaulay in his immortal description of the legendary Battle of Lake Regillus, selects as his real hero a horse. When brave Herminius receives word of the impending defeat of Aulus the Dictator, in the centre of the battle array,

"He clapped his hand on Auster's mane,
He gave the reins a shake;
Away, away went Auster
Like an arrow from the bow;
Black Auster was the fleetest steed
From Anfidus to Po."

When Herminius and Mamilius meet in single combat and kill each other, the latter's "dark-gray charger" runs off wildly to bring to Tusculum the evil tidings of his rider's death,

"But like a graven image
Black Auster kept his place,
And ever wistfully he looked
Into his master's face."

What prettier picture could we wish for than that of "Vater Fritz," 73 years old, riding through the streets of Berlin on his great English hunter *Conde* to visit his sister Amelia. "Through this reverent silence," writes General von der Marwitz, who as a 9-year old boy watched this scene, "there sounded only the trampling of the horses, and shouting of the Berlin street-boys, who went jumping before him, capering with joy, and flung up their hats in the air, or skipped along close by him, wiping the dust from his boots." This, by the way, is the man, whose statue we recently removed from in front of the Army War College, in what seems a petty rather than an American

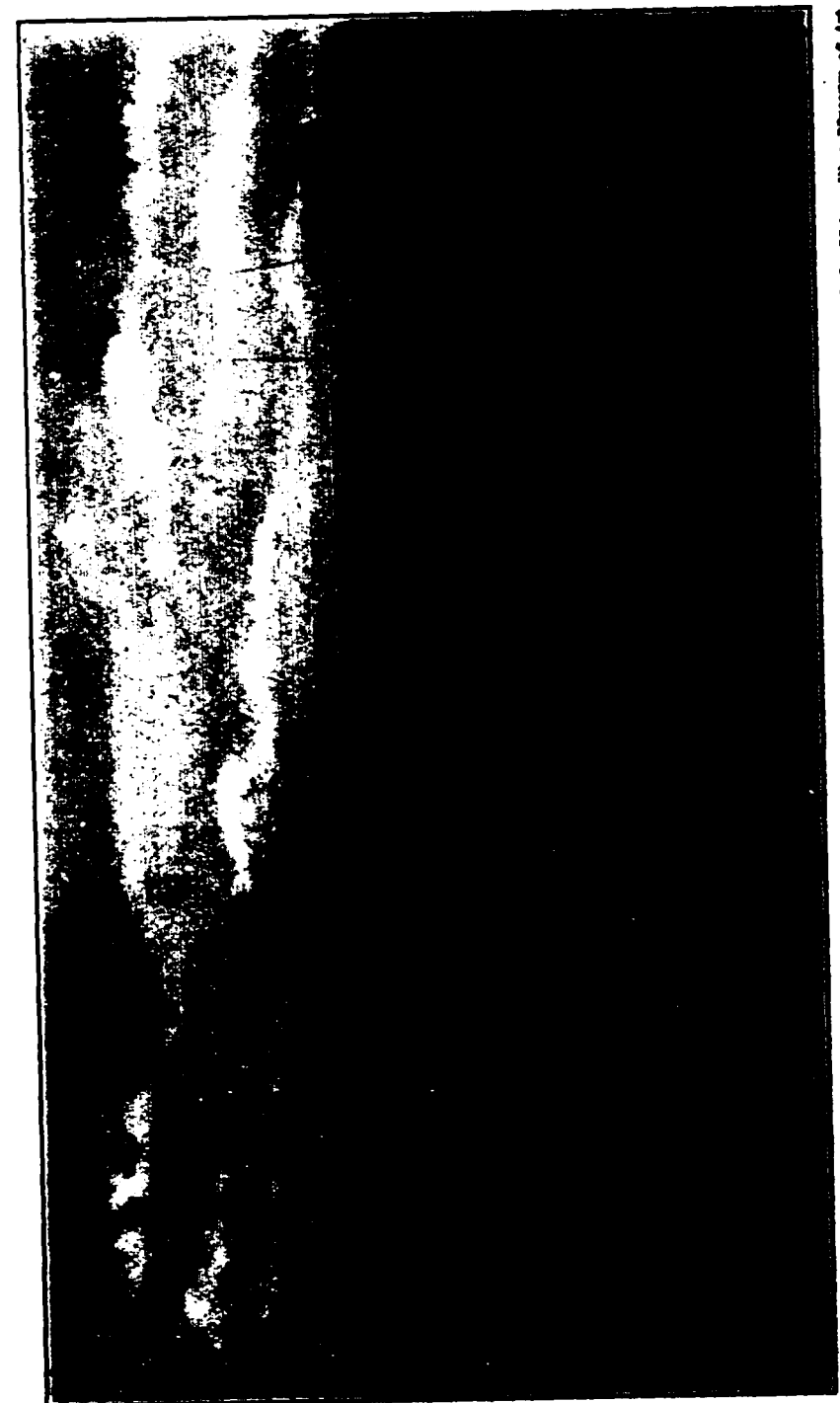
spirit. Only a year later *Conde* is brought saddled to the door for the last time; the king does not appear; never again will the old man ride *Conde*, but gives him as a legacy all that a horse can enjoy.

Meissonier in his two great pictures, "1807" and "1814", has preserved forever Napoleon's great white Arab stallion *Marengo*. The first shows the Emperor at the head of his Guard at the Battle of Friedland holding an impromptu review of the 12th Cuirassiers, who, carried away with their enthusiasm, make the field resound with their "Vive L'Empereur," as they pass at a gallop. The original of this painting, one of the greatest action pictures of horses and men ever made, fortunately hangs in the Metropolitan Museum of Art in New York and will well repay every horseman for an hour's examination. The second painting, "1814," is a magnificent interpretation of a great horse and a great man in a campaign which shows the master, even in defeat, at the height of his powers. The thought comes to me that perhaps some of his superb determination to win when every man knew that he could not, was imparted to him by his wonderful horse.

By a peculiar twist of nature, sailors like to ride. I have seen a whole troop of them charging up the hill at Shan-hai-kwan on little donkeys to view the Great Wall as it meets the sea; incidentally I rode one myself. The Arabs were great sailors and horsemen at the same time and an interesting proof of this is seen in the love of the Moros in the Lanao region for fine horses, about whose necks they place collars, studded with sleigh bells as big as one's fist. The vikings in need could be good cavalymen, and they further developed this facility under William the Conqueror. A portrait of the Lord High Admiral of England who defeated the Spanish Armada shows him astride what would now be an artillery horse. Perry, having swept the British squadron from Lake Erie, volunteered to serve as an aide to General Harrison, and apparently did his part well at the Battle of the Thames, where the Kentucky riflemen charged mounted through the dense forest, for the general says that the "appearance of the brave commodore cheered and animated every breast." Winston Churchill says that it was Admiral Beatty's ability on the polo field which attracted his attention.

Having just enjoyed the command of a fine destroyer, and having heard and felt its 28,000 horses roaring in glowing furnaces and humming and hissing through the turbine wheels, and being moreover a devotee to Marbot, it was perhaps natural that on coming ashore my attention should be directed to horses and cavalry. For a naval officer, who leads the most active life at sea, must prevent his less active life on shore from slowing up his eye and brain and destroying that alertness and facility for instant decision upon which his success primarily depends.

What is there that so stimulates the brain and gives full play to the imagination as the jerky, hard-muscled walk of a high, eager-spirited horse. When in the saddle the thoughts of military men turn backwards to those



Courtesy of the Metropolitan Museum of Art

1807—Friedland

great epochs where the horse played so decisive a role in war. As one is carried on a hot July day around the glacis of the legation quarter wall at Peking by a sturdy little black Mongolian pony, there filters back across the centuries a dim picture of those great Mongol hordes which crushed the Golden Tatars and poured down the Nankou Pass over five successive walls to Cambaluc, as Peking was then called, while other brother hordes penetrated into India, Persia, and overran Europe as far as Silesia, driving from the field of Wahlstadt the flower of Germanic chivalry. Surely no horsemen have surpassed these great and well-disciplined warriors who rode the same gallant little ponies we ride today in North China, never failing, in accordance with a quaint custom, to reward their willingness with a specially prepared bunch of carrots or choice grass after the ride.

As our spirited horse reached a long open field, where he is accustomed to go, as the French say, "into a triple gallop," he throws out his head and lunges out into an exhilarating run. Then there flashes back that famous day on the field of Zutphen when "Black" Norris led his little band of 250 horsemen, including all the chivalry of England, into the serried ranks of 3000 of the finest Spanish regiments. Imagine yourself in his little squadron. At its head is Norris himself with the wild young Earl of Essex, wielding his curtal-axe; perhaps at your right rides

"The brave Lord Willoughby,
Of courage fierce and fell,
Who would not give one inch of way
For all the devils in hell."

Maybe on your left gallops furiously that famous Lord North, who, laid up in bed with a musket wound in the leg, has had himself carried out into the saddle and now rides into the strife "with one boot on and one boot off." Here is Sir William Russell laying about with his axe. "Whenever," said an eye-witness, "he saw five or six of the enemy, thither would he, and with his hard knocks soon separated their friendship." There is that *preux chevalier*, Sir Philip Sydney, who in his eagerness to engage, threw off all his armor save a breastplate, and won immortality in the heroism of his death, giving to a dying trooper the water that he himself, also dying, craved more than anything else. "Thy necessity is greater even than mine." And last, but by no means least, in gallant bearing and devotion, was that noble charger, who with seven musket-balls in his body, bore Sir William Stanley safely through the entire combat.

As we make our way cross-country through dense underbrush, up and down hill, over streams and windfalls there comes to our memory that picture of old Ziethen and his Prussian hussars at Hohenfriedberg as they ride over just such country against the Austrian right wing. "We could not charge the Prussian left wing," naively said the Austrian cavalry, "partly because of the morasses that lay between us; and partly because they rushed across

and charged us." It was only a short space afterward when General Gessler and Rittmeister Chasot with their Baireuth Dragoons, rolled on the ground full twenty infantry battalions, taking 67 standards. This famous regiment ever afterwards, by Most All-Gracious Permission, wore that number on its cartridge boxes and alone could beat on its kettledrums the Hohenfriedberg Grenadier March. Doubtless, as in December, 1917, it passed over the Rottenthurm Pass into Roumania, this organization still bore on its devices the number "67."



Ziethen

As we trot through the open fields we may hear in our imagination the thundering hoofbeats of the 23d Chasseurs a cheval as they move out to the charge in line of battle across the plains of Polotsk. Beside us rides chef d'escadrons Jean-Baptiste-Marcellin de Marbot. A musket-shot in a previous action has wounded him through the left shoulder and his arm is bound to his side. In his right hand are the reins of his brave Arab *Asoles* and from the same wrist hangs by a thong his bright curved sabre. Behind

him rides a special bodyguard of "six cavaliers des plus brave," commanded by "l'intrepide marechal des logis Prud'homme." On either side are Adjutant-major Joly, a trumpeter and his orderly Fousse, "un des meilleur soldats du regiment." Before him, as he brings his regiment into the gallop and shouts "charges" to his chasseurs, are the famous Cossacks of the Guard. Their bright red jackets, the beauty of their horses, their splendid physique and their 14-foot lances single them out as one of the finest corps of the Russian army. But this means nothing to the hardened veterans of the 23d, with many a service stripe on their sleeves and an unusual number of crosses on their breasts; nor to their young thirty-year old leader, who already bears the scars of seven wounds and has been experienced by thirteen years of fighting, from the day when as a boy he joined the Housards de Bercheny and had a mustache pasted on his lip so as not to spoil the appearance of his regiment. Only once does he drop his reins and grip his sabre, and then, as he says with simple pride, he had no occasion to use it, for "seeing their commandant in peril, the men of every grade who escorted me, attacked with fury the Cossacks who already had surrounded me." At length after prolonged hand-to-hand fighting the brave Cossacks had to turn their backs.

But most of all, as we pass through the Virginia hills, do we like to think of that cavalry which only some sixty years ago rode through this same country. How easy is it to imagine one's self as the leader of a Federal patrol as we pass along the roads and over the fields, or even as a Confederate scout, as we pass cautiously along a wooded path, up a steep hillside, down into the ditch and up over the breastwork of an old fort.

Imagination can be projected into the future as well as linked with memories of the past. Using a method of Frederick, it is amusing for even a destroyer commander to ask himself what should be done if a cannon-shot falls in our midst from behind a fold of ground to our left; if rifle fire comes from the fringe of the wood to our right; or if a cavalry patrol appears over a rise on the road ahead. It is interesting to guess at the topography of an unknown countryside. Is this the same creek we passed through five miles back? Will there be a road over that shoulder, as a string of houses seems to indicate? Where will this path through the forest bring us out? Does that line of trees to our right indicate the path of a stream? Where is the best place to get down its steep banks? Suppose it be frozen, how can we best get over it? Dare we attempt that rickety bridge? How best can we penetrate this thick underbrush with its tangled cruelly-pronged vines? These and other problems tax our ingenuity.

For pure joy of living I recommend this: A crystal-clear April day; bright sunlight filtering through the fresh light-green leaves; temperature 50 degrees; white puffy masses of cumulus clouds sweeping before a 20-mile northwest breeze; white blotches of dogwood against a background of trees; the pink blossoms of the wild *Asclepias* and many tiny blue and white flowers dotting the brown background of closely-packed fallen leaves; the wood paths covered

with firm turf and moss just right for a gallop. Overhead the cardinals sing and swarms of little yellow-birds chirp; rabbits and squirrels run off as you approach and cranes dive off from high branches and circle on sweeping wing; in the field graze sheep and young calves; apple blossoms beautify the landscape; lilacs and wisteria touch up the little farm-houses; and last and not least beautiful, a spirited horse, as pleased as you are to exercise his muscles and looking forward to well known places where he knows that his right to quantities of thick fresh grass will not be denied. What scene could be more beautiful, more inspiring to reverence of God and love of our mighty nation! Only with a horse can you really see it.

Every horseman knows the physical benefits of riding; of the bands of steel into which it builds the leg muscles; of the supple waist and back; of the lithe erect posture, and of that wonderful control over our muscles.

There are mental benefits even greater. Where more than on horseback can we develop that alertness and *coup d'oeil*, that faculty of thinking at a gallop and lightning quickness of decision which is the first essential for either soldier or sailor? Where have we more opportunity to develop that habit of deliberately accepting risks and of taking chances which is so necessary? Where can we better develop the virtue of patience, for every real horseman will have five times the patience with a horse that he will with a man? Where can we obtain that peace and contentment, that complete oblivion of all our troubles and problems, which comes to one all of whose mental energy is concentrated in the immediate problem of giving his horse a good ride? Where can one gain that enthusiastic thrill of pleasure, that feeling of elation, that sensation of "riding on air" which is given to him by his horse? When have we ever had such personal satisfaction of accomplishment as that which comes with the knowledge that we have given a difficult horse a good ride? And once you accomplish that rare feat of "being perfectly in tune" with your horse, when he anticipates your every wish, and you foresee his every thought and instinctive reaction, then your head is in the clouds.

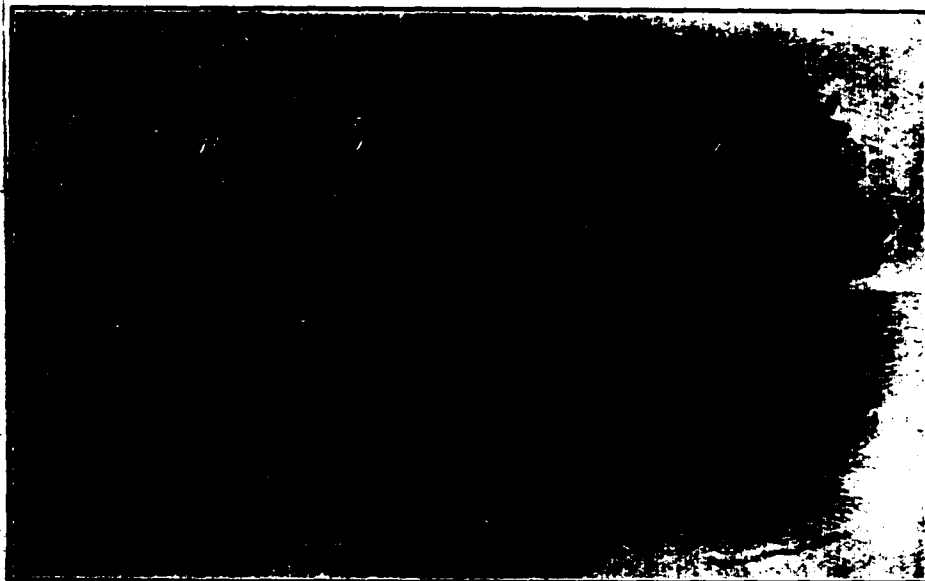
Even after your ride is completed your pleasures are by no means at an end. In your arm-chair at home, as you stretch out your legs with that delightfully comfortable tired feeling, a pleased smile comes over your face as the incidents of the day again pass before you.

Or perhaps you may be inspired by the memory of how the old blind King of Bohemia, when, on the field of Cressy he saw that the battle was lost to his leader, had his bridle bound to those of two of his attendants and rode into the thick of the fight. As the Black Prince walked over the field of battle and saw the three men and horses lying together, he noticed on the shield of the old king the motto "Ich Dien," and, together with the more material spoil, appropriated it for his own, not knowing that even to this day he was to perpetuate the memory of the king. Not only the Prince of Wales bears this motto, but in a translated form it appears on our own Red Cross buttons.

Or again you may take a notion to read over again the tales of Gerard, as told by Conan Doyle, and see before you the same picture as that which passes before the dim eyes of the old brigadier. "Even now as I sit in my arm-chair," the old soldier tells us, "I can see those great warriors stream before me—the green-jacketed chasseurs, the giant cuirassiers, Poniatowsky's lancers, the white-mantled dragoons, the nodding bearskins of the horse grenadiers. And then there comes the thick low rattle of the drums, and through wreaths of dust and smoke I see the line of high bonnets, the row of brown faces, the swing and toss of the long red plumes amid the sloping lines of steel. And there rides Ney with his red head and Lefevre with his bulldog jaw, and Lannes with his gascon swagger; and then amidst the gleam of brass and the flaunting feathers I catch a glance of Aim, the man with the pale smile, the rounded shoulders, and the far-off eyes."

In conclusion, I would like to dedicate this little story of horses to three of my faithful friends of Troop E, Third Cavalry, *Alex, Margy, and Rowdy*, who have afforded me much more pleasure than I have been able to translate into mere words.

— o —



The Army Horse Show Team

Observations on Training and Performance

By

Captain W. B. BRADFORD, Cavalry.

THE TEAM AND HORSES were assembled on July first. The Syracuse-Rochester trip was begun on August twenty-third. During the intervening time, the following schedule of training was observed. About twenty-five of our best horses were assembled. Some were green, some soft, some just out of pasture, and many of the more experienced jumpers rather spoiled by having been passed from hand to hand during the year. A general conditioning schedule was started at once and was continued for about ten days. It consisted of from one to two hours of work each day, depending on the fitness of the horse. It was principally at the walk and trot, up and down long gentle slopes.

A feeding schedule was inaugurated, providing for five feeds each day. The quantity fed was gradually increased until it ran from fourteen to twenty pounds of oats per horse. The feed consisted of oats, alfalfa chop, as much hay as the horse would eat, and a handful of linseed meal. Water was kept constantly in front of each horse. A bran mash was fed as a laxative whenever it seemed advisable.

After ten days, the horses were divided into green jumpers, proven jumpers, and hunters. Green jumpers and hunters were worked over three and one-half foot courses to accustom the rider to the peculiarities of the horse. Proven jumpers were worked over four foot courses. After several days, a course was arranged, running from four feet to four feet ten inches. All horses were put over this in order to determine the ability of each over big obstacles.

About July seventeenth, the following schedule was made effective:

Monday. Longe green jumpers over big jumps (from five feet to six feet six inches high and six feet to ten feet wide). Longe hunters over jumps not exceeding five feet in height. Follow longeing with forty-five minute period outside, with at least two miles at the gallop, and the last half mile of this at a fast run. Ride proven jumpers over a four and one-half foot course at least twice, so that each will jump about sixteen obstacles. Follow this with a forty-five minute cross country work-out as for other horses.

Tuesday. Same as Monday, except that green jumpers and hunters will be ridden over jumps, and proven jumpers longed.

Wednesday. All horses outside for one hour slow work. No jumping.

Thursday. Same as Monday.

Friday. Same as Tuesday.

Saturday. Jump all horses over a four foot or four and one-half foot course. Then outside for a two mile gallop, the last mile to be at speed.

Note: This article is an extract from a report by the author, a member of the team, on the activities of the Army Horse Show Team during the fall of 1933.—EBCRON

Sunday. Complete rest. No horses to leave stables. General clean up. Soak stall for horses that need it. Careful attention to wounds or injuries contracted during week.

This schedule was maintained until August tenth. From then until the team shipped, there was no jumping. Horses that did not measure up to the desired standard were eliminated. The remainder were worked outside quietly for from one to one and one-half hours each. One mile of this was at the gallop. The object was to have all horses fresh on arrival at the first show.

During the training period, officers were required to engage in twenty minutes suppling exercise each day, at will. In addition, twenty minutes a day for five days a week were put in at the jog trot, under sweaters, by all officers not playing polo. Those playing polo regularly were required to do this three times per week.

In order to avoid the extreme heat of the summer afternoons, the hours of work were usually from 6:00 A. M. to 12:00 noon.

Great attention was given to shoeing and care of feet. All feet that were at all hard or brittle were packed with white rock, which served to keep them in good condition.

Trimming of tails, which is of especial importance for hunters and chargers, was done by an officer, or an enlisted man considered especially adept.

Horses were clipped when first brought in from pasture, and after that, by use of blankets and careful grooming, their coats were put into condition. All available linen fly sheets were used beneath the woolen blankets, because experience showed that by this method the hair was less often ruffled.

Manes were roached and trimmed twice a week in order to keep the scruff out of the skin.

A great deal of care and attention was given to the collection of equipment for officers, men, and stables. The hunting appointments were the best that we could secure with the funds available. They were not sufficiently good, and, as a result, one or two classes were lost which might have been won.

Decorations for our stables, advertising the activities of the army, were carried.

The team shipped to Syracuse on the twenty-third of August and returned to the School from the first trip about the middle of September. During our absence, the horses lost some in condition due to irregular exercise and feeding, and due to shipping. However, this is to be expected while attending horse shows. On the return to Fort Riley, all horses were given a rest and light exercise for about ten days. They then continued on a schedule of light work until the time of the New York show. On November fifteenth, the team shipped to New York.

The shipment of horses. The facilities that we were able to secure for shipping our horses were satisfactory in every way. The usual special express cars with individual stalls were always used. These cars can accommodate twenty-four horses, with as many attendants as desired. They are often steam

heated, and have water and toilet facilities provided for the men. During the entire season, only one of our horses was injured while shipping, and that resulted from continued kicking.

A comparison of the American system of horse show training with that of foreign teams. In general, our system of training for horse shows compares favorably with that used by other nations. Our horses appeared to be in better condition than those of our foreign competitors. Their manners were better than were those of the Polish horses, who won the International, and compared favorably with the French and other good teams. The general mounted appearance and ability of our riders was not greatly different from that of the best foreign teams. It is believed, however, that some of the visiting teams that attained the best results employed certain methods of rapping, both in training and in the preparation immediately preceding the contest, that were better than those used by us. This was evidenced by the great carefulness of each horse in clearing even the smallest fences, as well as the margin of safety shown by him in negotiating the larger ones. It is also thought that some advantage resulted from the fact that European teams are given competitive practice more constantly over courses of the Olympic type than are we. In this course, it seemed that best results were obtained when each jump was considered and approached, as far as possible, as an individual obstacle. In American shows, the tendency is very properly towards the development of a hunting type of horse, and the courses offered are increasingly those in which the horse remains at the gallop throughout.

This fact should be recognized by anyone charged with the preparation of a team over courses similar to the Olympic. There is no doubt that we can compete over such courses with average chances of success, but these chances will not be average if our preparation is not made especially with a view to the type and arrangement of obstacles to be encountered.

American and foreign methods of horse show training. Our general methods of training students at the Cavalry School in the subject of Horsemanship follow closely those used at Saumur, and give, on the average, better results. It is impossible to say whether or not our methods of training for horse shows differ from European methods, as nothing is known of the routine of horse show training employed by foreign teams. There is, however, one known difference. Our officers are seldom sent more than once on a horse show trip. Very few have ever competed with foreign officers. For those who have competed more than once, such competitions come about once in four years. Between such times, the horses that they ride are given to others—students, for instance, at the Cavalry School. When the period of training begins, these horses must often be reclaimed before they will perform properly. When a team goes out, it requires some time for it to be shaken down, and the various officers fitted properly to their horses. This year, it was our experience that several of our horses were not properly placed until after the first month of showing.

On the other hand, the foreign system is different. Members of our team knew personally, and have known for years, many of the officers who competed against us. Several were at the Olympic Games in 1920 and again in 1924. The majority have practically made a profession of horse show work, and each year they are found at Nice, Paris, Brussels, London, and other points where there is international competition. *The best training is actually competing in the show ring where competition is stiffest. This is true in polo. It is vital in the horse show game.*

Schooling over special courses preparatory to New York. Our horses and riders were schooled to a limited extent over the Olympic course and the jumps encountered therein before leaving for New York. As said before, however, it is thought that they do not compete sufficiently over courses of this type to gain as good results as over other courses.

The daily routine of a horse show team at New York. The National Horse Show was held at Madison Square Garden in the new building at Forty-ninth Street and Seventh Avenue. All horses were stabled beneath this same building. The Army team stayed at the McAlpin Hotel on Thirty-fourth Street. Though the Show began at 9:00 A. M. each day, it was seldom necessary for the team to arrive at stables until later in the morning. It was impossible to get to bed at night before 2:00 A. M. and full advantage was taken of the morning hours for sleeping. The practice was for each officer to reach his horses in time to exercise them properly before showing in any class in which they might be entered. This was generally about 10:00 A. M. Exercising was usually done immediately upon arrival at the "Garden," as the building was called. For this, it was necessary to take our horses through thirteen blocks of traffic to the Seventh Avenue entrance of Central Park. After exercising, the horses were returned to their stalls to await the time for their classes. During the remainder of the morning, afternoon, and evening until midnight, it was necessary to show in various classes at various times. Our meals were very scanty as a consequence, for it is not advisable to attempt to ride on a full stomach. After the close of the show at night, we attended to the necessary stable management, generally dined together—our first real meal of the day—talked over the show, and got to bed between 2:00 and 3:00 A. M. Detailed into this routine were various semi-official and social functions, all of which we attended.

Contact with experienced horsemen. Many experienced horsemen were encountered during the trip, but these volunteered nothing in the way of helpful criticism or advice. There is generally more to be learned by close observation of the methods of others. This the members of the team practised and, though there is nothing of sufficient note to record here, still many tricks of the trade were learned which will be of value to each individual in future trips of a like kind.

Observations relative to suitability of our horses for classes in which entered. With the possible exception of hunters, our horses are generally

suited for the classes in which entered. We usually show three distinct types; chargers, hunters, and performance jumpers.

The chargers sent from the Cavalry School are generally of good quality and conformation and are seldom beaten, even when the international element enters into the competition. *Proctor* is our best example. *Hindustan*, *Maudelia*, *Felsentor*, and *Anita* are all close seconds and are thought satisfactory for this type of horse.

In hunters, we are woefully deficient. *Proctor* is our only horse of sufficient quality, conformation, and experience. *Felsentor*, the property of Lieutenant Reinburg, has the quality and conformation, but is still young and green. He may show satisfactory development later. Our other experienced hunters are *St. Paul*, *Babe Wortham*, and *Anita*. These are lacking in conformation and quality. It is true that they win from time to time, but this is always due to an excellent performance on their part, and correspondingly poor performance on the part of their competitors.

There is no way to correct this except by the purchase of horses of the proper type. This the army is unable to do as it is limited to an average purchase price of about \$167.00 per horse. Hunters are becoming increasingly expensive. In the West, where prices are better, a horse of sufficient size and quality is seldom found. In the East, the demand is very great, and it is impossible to obtain any good horse of this type for less than \$1000.00 to \$1500.00. The result is that we must depend entirely on the chance purchase of a high type horse at government price, the breeding of a suitable type in the remount service, or the private purchase of such a horse by officers who happen to have sufficient means and enthusiasm.

In the usual American performance jumper class, we are better situated. Any horse that will jump obstacles of both height and width is suitable. Conformation and breeding matter not at all. Quality may be disregarded, and galloping ability is of minor importance. Our good horses are eminently capable of holding their own against the best competition to be found in the United States and Canada.

On the other hand, we are not at present well prepared for competing with other nations over the special European Olympic course. There are practically no horses in the army of the requisite ability. To excel over this course and against international competition, a horse must be outstanding. He must not only have unusual ability; he must also be of sufficient spirit and sensitiveness to respond readily to rapping, yet a quiet goer. There are very few that combine these qualities.

Horses that are too impetuous in their way of going must be avoided. Horses such as *Nigra*, whose strides are very long, find such a course too tortuous. *Dick* and his type are unable to negotiate broad jumps. Whether we possess any individuals that measure up to the required standards, is problematical. Certainly, the majority of our best jumpers that perform so satisfactorily in all American shows can not be counted upon. *Black Boy*

is too sluggish and lacks ability. *Joffre* and *Jack Snipe*, as illustrated in New York, seldom respond sufficiently to rapping, though in Chicago, *Jack Snipe* began to go well for Captain Waters. *Miss America* shows promise but must be trained carefully over jumps of width. *Proctor* and the two younger horses, *St. Paul* and *Dick Waring*, show promise, but the proof of their ability remains to be seen. To those well acquainted with the situation, it is clearly evident that our next Olympic team must look beyond the army for a large proportion of its jumpers.

The question has been asked—"Are our horses sometimes entered in classes for which they are unsuited, and in which they make a poor showing, merely in order to have entries in a number of classes?" Classes are never "padded" for the purpose of increasing the entry list. A fee of from \$10.00 to \$50.00 must be paid for each horse entered. It would, consequently, be unwise and expensive to follow such a practice. The catalogued winnings of each horse will show that our chargers and jumpers are always suited for the classes in which entered. Our hunters seldom have the desired quality and conformation, but their performances are unusually good, with the result that each has won a fair proportion of ribbons during the year.

There have been times when horses have been entered in classes which we would rather have avoided, but these were special cases and primarily matters of policy or co-operation with show managements.

New methods or principles of equitation. Association with, and observation of, foreign officers disclosed no new ideas of horsemanship. In the opinion of our team, the French were the best horsemen of the show. They followed more closely the principles that we teach than did the majority of the other teams. A year ago, in the International, their score was considerably better than that of the Poles this year. This year, they were a close second.

The Poles, who won this year's International, employed more strength than grace. Several of their horses jumped practically from a standstill, and in a few cases only after terrific battles with their riders. They were not particularly successful in other classes, winning, it is believed, only two other blues during the entire week. However, there was certainly something to be learned from watching their team. One was strongly impressed with the value of a careful approach over courses similar to the Olympic. Their general methods have little utility in practical riding and should certainly not be adopted.

Stable management and care and feeding of animals. Nothing new of value was learned. The methods taught at the Cavalry School were found to be equally as good, if not better, than those employed by other stables.

At Madison Square Garden, we had our first experience with peat moss standings. Though there was no system of drainage, this system was used in all stalls and proved very satisfactory.

Before the show, we fed five times a day. In training, the feed was gradually increased until the grain ration ran from fourteen to twenty pounds

per animal. It consisted of oats, alfalfa chop, as much hay as the horse would eat, and a handful of linseed meal. Water was kept continually in front of each horse. A bran mash was fed as a laxative whenever it seemed advisable. On the trip, this schedule was adhered to as nearly as conditions permitted. While showing, horses were never fed immediately preceding an entry into a class.

All horses were exercised a minimum of forty-five minutes each day, principally at the walk. Much attention was given to grooming and blanket-ing, which, with exercise and food, gives the proper appearance to the coats.

Time necessary for acclimatization. Teams competing in the National Horse Show at New York should arrive from four days to one week before the opening. Through the courtesy of National Guard officers, accommodations for men and horses can generally be secured in one of the armories bordering on Central Park. The bridle paths in the park are excellent for exercising and conditioning.

Approved suitable types and special schooling required. In hunter classes, the thoroughbred is the horse that should be sought. In light weight classes, quality must be outstanding and conformation almost perfect. In the heavier classes, as size and weight increase, quality becomes less necessary, as there are fewer horses of this type, and competition is not so keen. Excellent types of hunters are the Cavalry School's *Proctor*, and Mr. Otto W. Lehmann's *Tantalizer* and *Surefire*. These are all thoroughbreds or near thoroughbreds and are outstanding horses.

The training of hunters is generally sufficient if they jump smoothly in their stride over a four foot course of post and rails. Manners must be good, and the horse must gallop quietly throughout his performance. Occasionally, an in and out is encountered, and in some special classes, the jumps are as high as four and one-half feet. This latter is not usual. In certain championship or corinthian classes, a hunter may be required to show that he is accustomed to hunting whip and horn.

Chargers must be schooled to move freely at the walk, trot, and gallop. They must halt, back, stand for mounting and dismounting, turn on the forehand, and at times execute a change of lead on a straight line. They are usually required to jump a course of four foot fences with or without full pack. At the National this year, the course was four and one-half feet, with rider and horse completely equipped for the field. Chargers must be accustomed to the saber and other articles of equipment. The judging usually includes conformation.

As for type of horse, the same is required as for the hunter, but with less quality and more substance. Quality is, of course, desirable, but it is not as necessary for winning as in hunter classes. Horses with rather close coupling and having the appearance of good keepers are generally favored. *Proctor* was our best charger, as well as our best hunter. Other chargers that were particularly good were *Hindustan* and *Maudella*.

The schooling of our horses in this class has usually been sufficient to win but is not up to the standard that should be demanded. They lack smoothness and precision in executing the movements required of them. They often blunder through the class in an amateurish way, and win only because competition is not sufficiently great. At the Cavalry School, the explanation for this is lack of time and care in training. Horses are assigned team members only a few weeks before a show. Schooling is more nearly a matter of years than weeks. Results in such a limited time are impossible. Until these chargers are assigned to capable officers, and their training carried out throughout the year according to a definite plan, such training will never approach the desirable. The three day Olympic prospect is the type of horse that should be sought, and his training should be along the lines demanded by this competition.

In the performance jumper class, there is no set type. Often, it seems that horses of a draft or coach breed, crossed with the thoroughbred, make better performers than clean bred horses. This is not always the case, because at the National, in the open championship class over the Olympic course, the little hunter, *Surefire*, gained the day over the entire field of foreign and local horses. Furthermore, second and third places were won by breedy looking hunters belonging to local civilian exhibitors. Fourth place was won by a foreign officer whose nationality can not be remembered.

On the other hand, at Chicago, the champion of the New York Show, and also the winner of third place, both lost this same class to our *Miss America*, a horse of various mixed breeds—one that could never, by any process of the imagination, gain the title of hunter.

Thus we might say that type does not matter. Proven performance must be our sole criterion for judging. Manners are of extreme importance. A horse must go quietly, carefully, and deliberately; else there will be faults. The hot impetuous horse may consequently be eliminated. A jumper must have ability and must either be a naturally careful and clean jumper or must respond readily to rapping. The two are often synonymous. Our *Jack Snipe* probably has more ability than any other horse on the team. He can negotiate a difficult triple in and out, or a wide triple bar with equal ease, but he has never gone well for any rider other than Captain Waters, and often does not respond to rapping. He is supposed to be of the French Coach type.

Jumpers must be trained to face any course that may be presented. As a rule, obstacles in American shows do not exceed four and one-half feet in height. But there is usually at least one five foot class, and where competition is stiff, obstacles are often heightened and broadened for deciding a tie. Horse and rider must consequently have the desire and ability to go, regardless of the nature and size of the course. Where this willingness is lacking, continued good performances can not be expected.

Recommendation as to what should be done by a team prior to the next National Horse Show and preparatory to entering therein. First, our old

experienced performance jumpers should be allowed to rest during the winter. In the spring, they should be permanently assigned to officers who are to compose the next team. They should in no case be used by students.

Our chargers should be assigned at once to certain especially chosen officers with definite instructions as to schooling and preparation for the coming year. Schooling should be considered of primary importance in their training, as it is this in which they are most deficient.

The old hunters especially *Proctor*, should be given a rest. Their conditioning and preparation should begin in the spring when the old jumpers are brought in from pasture. The young hunters should be assigned to especially chosen officers, and definite instructions should be given as to further training. The nature of these instructions will naturally depend entirely on the state of training of each horse.

The team should be selected at the earliest possible date. Four officers are sufficient. Five are more than necessary, cause additional expense, and all can not be suitably mounted. At least two of these officers should be chosen from those who have had previous eastern show experience. The remainder should be selected by the team captain as he desires.

The definite training of team and horses should begin in March. This training should continue along the lines employed by Captain Waters during the past two years, with some slight modification of detail and rearrangement of schedule, dependent upon the time made available for this training. As heretofore, horses should be maintained in a single stable where their care, feeding, conditioning, and training can be carefully watched by the team captain. The team itself should again be given over absolutely to the orders and plans of its leader.

It has been the practice at the Cavalry School to send selected enlisted men to the horse show stable. This should be continued, and these men should be assigned in sufficient numbers to insure giving special attention to the matter of grooming, bringing out of coats, and care of tails and feet without undue drudgery on the part of any of them. From observations of the team, we are weakest in these particulars and should give them our very best attention.

Additional effort should be spent on the collection and training of new material. This is of primary importance, as our old will soon be inadequate. The School has already been thoroughly combed for prospective show horses, and those thought to be at all suitable have been selected and assigned to instructors or the Advanced Equitation Class for development and training. But many of these prospects are deficient in one or more respects, and some are scarcely worthy of the name of prospect. There is an ever present demand for this new material, but, as said before, we must depend on the private purchases of officers and the greatly appreciated assistance that has always been so willingly rendered by the Remount Service and its purchasing officers.

Use of the Polo Mallet

By
ARTHUR P. PERKINS
Midwick Country Club

THE FOLLOWING HINTS AND SUGGESTIONS, if practiced diligently, will materially assist the beginner in handling the polo mallet. They are the result of considerable practice and study over a period of years, and in the opinion of the writer, represent the correct position and attitude for the various strokes.

While mounted on the pony, it is well to adopt the *Alert Position*, with the mallet held loosely in the fingers, (just enough to feel it) straight up, and a short distance to the front, as this is the basis of all strokes and makes it possible to execute any of them with a minimum of wasted motion. The alert position might be compared with that of a boxer, who must assume an attitude that will permit him to instantly bring into play, arm, shoulder or leg muscles for the expected attack or defense.

There are four major strokes in polo, the offside forward, the offside backhand, the nearside forward, and the nearside backhand, each of which has

Offside Forward Stroke

Count One—Mallet slightly forward in line with ball.
Count Two—Stop-up, very important.
Count Three—Hit.
Count Four—Follow through.

two variations so that we may say there are twelve distinct strokes used in the game.

1. The *Offside Forward* is perhaps from all points of view, the simplest; a natural, straight forward shot. It may assist you in mastering these strokes to adopt the count of three. Thus in the offside forward, from the alert position (1) put your mallet slightly forward, in line with the ball when approaching it; (2) bring the mallet a little behind your body, then standing up and forward in the stirrups, your body so placed that the shoulders are parallel with the pony; (3) swing at the ball letting your hand and body

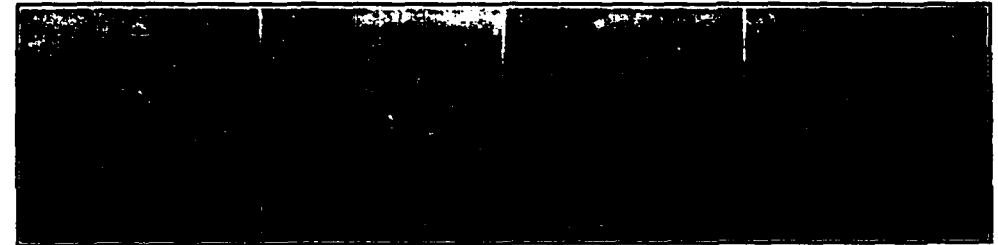
USE OF THE POLO Mallet

455

follow through. Quickening the last three feet of your stroke adds distance and direction. The ball should be hit when slightly in front of your pony's forefeet. It would be difficult to do so earlier and very ineffective to do so later. This fact will be readily realized when tapping the ball at a walking pace.

(a) For the *Offside Forward Cutaway*, apply the same motions as for the offside forward, turning the head of your mallet slightly at the moment of contact with the ball. Practice will determine how much the mallet head should be turned to get the desired direction. The pony should be placed a little wider from the ball than for other strokes.

(b) For the *Offside Underneck* stroke, (1) move the body forward over pony's neck bracing with the left hand on its neck, (2) bring the arm out and slightly to the front, (3) swing mallet down so as to hit the ball when directly



Offside Back Stroke

Count One—Mallet down in line with ball.
Count Two—Start to swing in circle.
Count Three—Continuing swing to hit.
Count Four—Follow through.

under the nose of your mount. The stroke should commence very early for an effective shot, and here again practice will be needed.

2. The *Offside Backhand* stroke starts from the alert position by moving forward, slightly standing in stirrups, (1) point mallet down in line with ball (2) bring arm back, hand and wrists turning outward, elbow close to body, (3) swing with a complete circle, quickening the last three feet of your swing. The circular swing is of the greatest value in getting a long drive and distance to the ball, and is a vast improvement over the early day fashion of the hammerlike straight backhand, although the latter must be learned, for many times in a game, there is not sufficient time to execute the circular swing. The ball should be struck when about six inches behind your right foot.

(a) The *Offside Backhand Cutaway* is the same as offside backhand, except that the wrist is turned slightly at the moment the mallet strikes the ball, placing the pony a little wide of the ball.

(b) The *Offside Undertail* stroke is the same as offside backhand, except for the placing of the pony which is all-important, partially checking and half

turning it so that the shot can be made without interference from pony's hind legs.

3. For the *Nearside Forward* stroke from the alert position (1) place your mallet well over to the left hand side of your body; (2) lean over and balance most of your weight on the left stirrup, turning your body so that your

Nearside Forward Stroke

Count One—Bring your mallet well over to left side.

Count Two—Step-up, shoulder parallel with pony.

Count Three—Hit, back of hand to front. No shifting of grip.

Count Four—Twisting forearm sharply, fingers coming uppermost, preventing mallet's swinging inward hitting pony's head.

shoulders are parallel with the pony, and as far as physically possible, your hips also in this position; (3) swing at the ball hitting with the back of your hand towards the front. Immediately after contact with the ball, the wrist should be turned so as to bring the fingers uppermost, thus carrying the mallet away from the pony's head. The ball should be hit well forward or early.

Nearside Back Stroke

Count One—Point down in line with ball.

Count two—Step-up, start of "circling" swing.

Count Three—Continuing to hit.

Count Four—Follow through, keeping eye on ball.

(a) The *Nearside Forward Cutaway* is the same as nearside forward, except that the mallet head is of course turned slightly upon contact with the ball, and the pony placed a little wide of the ball.

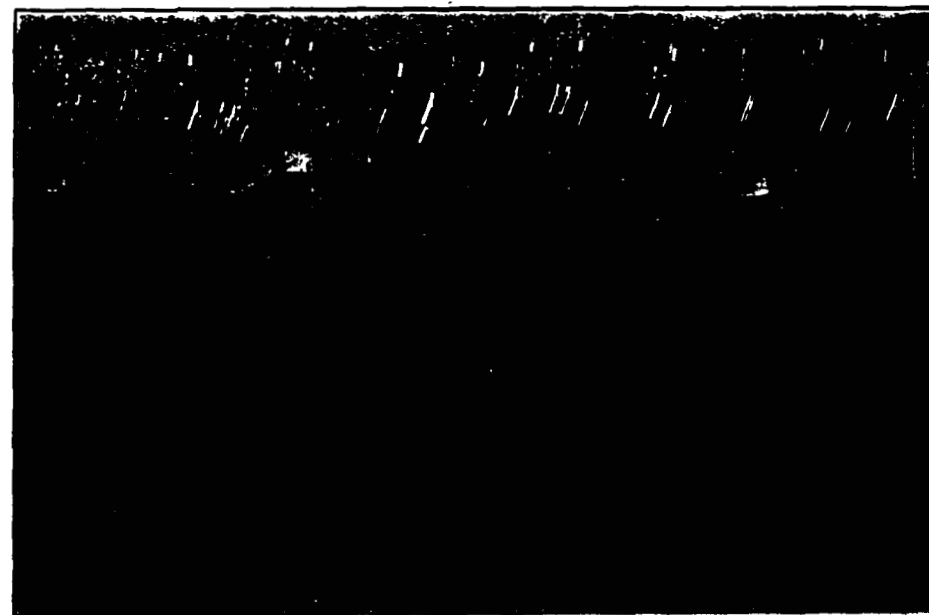
(b) The *Nearside Underneck* is the same as offside underneck, except of course it is executed from the left hand side.

4. The *Nearside Backhand* stroke starts from the alert position (1) drop the head of your mallet down in line with the ball (loose grip); (2) bring the elbow with the arm arched, over your head leaving the head of your mallet still down (3) swing with a complete circle, being sure to keep your eye on the ball.

(a) The *Nearside Backhand Cutaway* stroke and (b) The *Nearside Undertail* stroke require the same movements as the corresponding offside shots.

In all of these strokes, the body should be pivoted from the hips. Care should be taken that too much power is not applied to the early swing of the mallet, thus unnecessarily contracting the muscles, with the usual result of lost direction. This incorrect movement is often spoken of by golfers as "Pressing." These directions and suggestions may seem somewhat mechanical, but when put into practice, will be found less difficult than at first supposed. Proper timing and the placing of your pony require painstaking persevering practice, and after this is mastered your progress should be rapid.

Most beginners seem to have a tendency to start with too short a mallet. The average height of a polo pony is fifteen hands. A short mallet makes one lean forward and down, instead of the correct upright position with the shoulders open when hitting. Use a 52-inch stick for best results.



Eleventh Cavalry vs. Burlingame Blues Wide World Photos
The opening game of the Pacific Coast Intra-Circuit Tournament.

Endurance Ride Results

By

W. R. BROWN

BY VOTE OF THE SPONSORS the endurance tests after eight seasons are discontinued. It is now possible, therefore, to cast up the results obtained and draw conclusions from the performances given. The writer was a contestant in the first five tests, won the first cup, and was an observer of the last three tests, so is speaking from intimate personal observation of the horses and riders.

The reasons stated by the sponsors for the discontinuance of the tests are the rapid falling off of civilian interest in the last three tests, so that it had resolved practically into an army affair, and that the object of the tests to demonstrate the character of the horse best suited for endurance, the training he should undergo, and the care he should receive during the test, had been sufficiently demonstrated, and there was little more to be learned. The writer does not wholly agree with the conclusions reached, as there was a continuing additional value of these rides to the participants, and it is to be hoped that the Army will continue these tests again, in some modified form, when funds are available in the future.

The object of these tests, as drawn up by the original sponsors, was to demonstrate the character of the horse, his training, and the care which he should receive before and during the test, to enable him to cover the sixty miles a day for five consecutive days, in a limited period of hours each day. This period started with a minimum of ten hours in order that no injury should be done, and a maximum of thirteen hours, finally settling down to a minimum of nine hours and a maximum of ten hours, with points allowed for speed within these limits.

The weight carried was the equivalent of the usual full army equipment, together with the average weight of a mounted service officer. In the first test this weight was 200 pounds, then changed to 245 pounds for two tests, then changed to 225 pounds for two tests, and then put back to 200 pounds, and finally returned to 225 pounds. All horses showing distress were immediately eliminated.

In the first test 50 per cent was allowed for condition, 25 per cent for speed, and 25 per cent for the lowest feed consumption. In the second test 50 per cent was allowed for condition, 40 per cent for speed, and 10 per cent for feed consumption. In all the remaining tests 60 per cent was allowed for condition, and 40 per cent for speed.

Three judges, more or less equally divided between army officers and civilians, followed the horses closely during all the five-day periods on the road and in the stable, and made the final decision.

The first prize in the test was the yearly possession of the Mounted Service

Cup which had to be won three times for permanent possession, and for the largest of six monetary prizes.

The test was originally run between Fort Ethan Allen, near Burlington, Vermont, and Camp Devens in Massachusetts. In different years it was held between Red Bank, N. J. and Washington, D. C., at Warrenton, Va., and Avon, N. Y., and finally returned to Brandon, Vermont. The establishment of the tests in the East led to another at Colorado Springs, and one or two shorter tests held at other points throughout the country, the winners from the Colorado test coming east one year to compete in the eastern test.

The tests were sponsored by the clubs of all the leading breeds in America, hunting and racing associations, the Department of Agriculture, The American Remount Association, and the U. S. Cavalry Association. The results were given wide publicity in the papers.

The general conclusions which can be drawn from these tests are as follows:—

Endurance, speed, and soundness are not the exclusive possession of any one breed of horses and type, but are a combination of many necessary qualities in the individual, combined with training and hard work, and a certain amount of chance which lends zest to any sporting event. However, general conformation in type, training, and handling was observed and furnished data of value for the future, and a real contribution to American horsemanship.

The racing adage that "a good big one will always beat a good little one" does not hold in tests of this kind. Most of the winners were horses of medium size, it being found that large horses had too much of their own weight to carry, and that small horses had too great an impost of weight in proportion to their own weight.

It was found that in addition to sturdy conformation, represented by deep chest and great lung capacity, a short back, powerful forearms and quarters, good bone and sound foot, ability to travel straight on all four legs without interference was a prime requisite, and that the slightest interference ultimately disqualified the contestant.

It was found that a steady trot of a little over seven miles on the level was the fastest gait which could be continually maintained, and exercises the heart and lungs at reasonable capacity and rhythm without over-exertion.

It was found that the small horses—and particularly the Arabs—were far and away the most economical in feed consumption for the number of pounds carried per mile, and remained in equally good condition with the larger horses. This feature after two years was conceded and dropped.

It was found that live weight was much more easily carried than dead weight, and that dead weight was best carried as closely as possible to the backbone behind the withers.

It was found that those horses gave the best performance that had received at least one year of preliminary training, and that this training

ought never to be carried to a point of staleness, and that the law of accumulation of fatigue in horses should be well understood.

It was found that a little fat over the hard muscles served as a nerve feeder and added to the recuperative power of the animal.

It was found that the winning horses wore a steel shoe of the lightest possible construction to wear one day.

It was found that noon stops of a longer duration than sufficient time to enable the horse to actually eat his oats, were of no value, and that the horse was better moving along down the road. More benefit was derived from the longer time of rest at night.

It was found that riders who stood in their stirrups and took the double trot, or riders who were able to rise to the trot absolutely square in their saddles and put their weight a bit forward, tired their mounts the least.

It was found that careful adjustment of the saddle to the horse's back and to the man's seat, was of more importance than the type of saddle used, but that any weight extending back so that it pounded upon the kidneys would injure the horse.

It was found that the rules of the test as to condition had not been made sufficiently stringent by the sponsors, and that the technical interpretation of them by the judges, enabled certain horses to win first prizes by showing good temporary performance, who were essentially unsound and not fit for campaign purposes.

It was found that the slogan adopted by racing men that "Speed brings out every desirable quality in the horse" was far from the truth in gruelling tests of this kind under heavy weight, and that the characteristic speed horse, the pure Thoroughbred, had a great deal of leg trouble which interfered with his other admirable qualifications, and that all but one of these tests were won by horses, either Arab or having a certain amount of cold blood in a mixture with the Thoroughbred blood, horses of sturdier frame and more phlegmatic disposition.

The writer, at the conclusion of the fifth test, published a table summary of the performances of the various breeds, which was a fair comparison up to that time, as there had been nearly equal representation of the chief contenders, Arabs, Thoroughbreds, and Morgans. The conclusions then drawn, as modified by the results of the last three tests, are given in the table on the next page.

From this table it will be seen that first prize has been won twice by pure Arabs, once by a pure Thoroughbred, four times by Thoroughbred Grades, and once by an Anglo-Arab Grade. It will also be seen that Arab blood stands first in the per cent of starting horses which were able to finish; first in the per cent of prizes taken; first in the per cent of freedom from the principal cause of disqualification (leg trouble); and first in the per cent of pounds able to be carried in proportion to horses' weight; but slowest in speed attained, due to smallness of size.

It will be seen that the Thoroughbred blood (which included all grades and Irish hunters) stood third in the per cent of the horses starting who were able to finish; third in the prizes taken; the poorest in the amount of leg trouble developed; but at the top in the speed obtained.

It will be seen that the Morgan blood (including Morgan Grades) was second in the per cent of horses starting who were able to finish; fourth in the prizes taken; second in the small amount of leg trouble developed; second in the number of pounds able to be carried in proportion to their own weight; and fifth in the speed obtained, on account of their small size.

It will be seen that the Kentucky horses gave a very high performance throughout, due to the high quality of the very few entrants, but their record, as well as that of the Anglo-Arab and Standard breeds, is not extensive enough to form a fair basis of comparison with the other breeds.

Averages for Eight Endurance Tests, 148 Contestants

	Starters	Height	Weight	Number and Per Cent Finished	Number and Per Cent Prizes	Number and Per Cent Leg Trouble	Carried Per Cent of Own Weight	Speed in Miles Per Hour	First Prize	Prizes Other
1. Arab	14	15	880	7-50	5-38	2-14	28	5.4	2	3
Arab Grades	11	15	954	8-73	5-45	4-36	24	5.7		5
2. Thoroughbred	22	16	1024	9-41	9-41	18-82	23	6.5	1	6
Thor. Grades	46	16	1050	21-46	18-39	33-72	21	6.3	4	13
3. Kentucky	7	16	1000	3-43	3-43	4-57	23	6.6		3
4. Morgan	23	15	918	11-48	5-20	10-42	25	6		5
Morgan Grades	13	15-2	1036	5-38	4-30	7-54	22	6.3		4
5. Anglo-Arab	9	16	1000	3-33	2-22	5-55	23	6.5	1	1
6. Standard	3	15	900	0-0	0-0	1-33	25	5.2		
	148								8	49

From the above it will be seen that a very considerable weight handicap was placed upon the small horses of Arab and Morgan blood, but they succeeded in carrying the same load as the larger horses with less trouble of all kinds, although at the sacrifice of speed in which horses of the Thoroughbred blood surpassed.

For remount purposes it must be borne in mind that little, if any, speed is required in cavalry maneuvers, and that the primary requisite is soundness and endurance of hardship, and low feed consumption, and that small horses have always excelled as cavalry mounts. It will also be seen that the nerve, courage and recuperative ability of the Thoroughbred produces an extremely valuable cavalry type when joined with the bone, substance and phlegmatic disposition of out blood. A good out blood for the Thoroughbred would be the Arab, producing the Anglo-Arab. Here alone can the Thoroughbred retain the refinement of quality and maintain registration. The Anglo-Arab can equal both the Arab and Thoroughbred blood in endurance and speed, and

is a desirable cross, as it furnishes registerable blood that can be gone on with, increasing the size of the Arab and decreasing the size of the Thoroughbred. It gives an assurance of fixed and prepotent type. Such a conclusion has been arrived at and practiced in France and other continental countries, where stallions of both breeds are used.

In conclusion, whatever our predilections may be for some breed for certain services, only selfish want of patriotism and lack of consideration for our soldiers in the extremity of war, will allow us to blink the facts brought out in these tests, and from acting upon them in the production of the most desirable cavalry remounts.

To summarize the tests in detail, the most outstanding horse developed was the pure blooded Arab gelding, *Crabdet*, a horse standing 15-2 hands and weighing 970 pounds. After finishing in the money twice previously, he won what has been admitted by all to be the most severe test of the series, between Red Bank, N. J. and Washington, D. C. In this test he carried the highest weight of 245 pounds over the worst roads ever encountered, being concrete and macadam practically throughout. *Crabdet* also in his second test made the lowest single day's score for speed, covering 61.8 miles in 8 hours, 7 minutes, carrying 245 pounds.

Next in performance, although not a first prize winner, comes the Thoroughbred, *Pashader*, the only entry to finish in the money five times.

Ad interim between tests he represented the United States in the Olympic Games in France, where he was the outstanding horse in the American team. To Major C. L. Scott, his owner and rider, premier honors in horsemanship must be given, for pluck, skill and good judgment exhibited in five tests. Major Scott also received a special prize for the best horsemanship displayed in one of the tests.

The next most consistent performer, although he too was not a first prize winner, was *Eustom Boy*, the Arab-Trotting cross, who finished four times and consistently led the field to the finish line for the first three years of the test. To *Eustom Boy* comes the honor also of being the first of two horses to be given a perfect condition score, when ridden in the second test into second place by the excellent veteran rider, A. A. Langley, himself also a rider in five tests.

Gowys, the Anglo-Arab Grade, made the first perfect score for speed in the fifth test, covering the course in 9 hours a day for 5 days flat time, carrying a weight of 235 pounds. *Gowys* also received the highest mark for general condition and speed, 98%, and defeated the previous winner of the Colorado test.

To *Peggy*, the Thoroughbred Grade, goes the distinction of winning first prize twice in succession, as well as finishing three times. However, her brilliant performances were marred for the writer by admitted unsoundness (pitched foot) that would have rendered her worthless as a cavalry mount over any length of time. The first test winner was the small Arab mare,

Ramla, in good condition but slow speed. The second test was won by the Thoroughbred Grade, *Mlle. Denise*, on a speed ruling, as she suffered from sore tendons throughout the test. The fourth test went to the Thoroughbred, *Vendetta*, on speed, due to a masterly ride given her by Major Louis Beard; and the eighth test was won by the Thoroughbred Grade, *Miss Brandon*, apparently in excellent condition, but who collapsed the day following the distribution of prizes.

In the role of special honors must not be forgotten the three times consistent performers, *Castor*, the Morgan of sturdy type, and *Lillian Russell*, the Grade Thoroughbred.

Of outstanding riders next to Major C. L. Scott and A. A. Langley, come H. E. (Jack) Fretz, a rider of five tests, also the receiver of a special prize for best horsemanship when he brought the Morgan, *Donwell*, into second place with the second perfect score for condition.

Riders who finished three tests were, Albert W. Harris, E. S. (Jack) Humphrey, Sergeant S. J. Matheson, Capt. R. R. Allen and Sergeant J. C. Currie.

The first United States Mounted Service Cup was won in the best three out of the first five tests, by W. R. Brown, Maynesboro Arabian Stud, Berlin, N. H., and the second cup was won in the last three tests by the Third United States Cavalry.

Suggestion is made that should the tests be again taken up in the future or adopted in a modified form by the Army, that the spectacular feature of presenting the Cup and prizes within a day after the close of the test be discontinued, and that at least three full days be given the judges for observation, as experience has proved that in these tests at least three days are required to properly judge the real condition of the horses engaged. Also, that the often expressed wish of the writer to the Board of Sponsors be adopted, that less account be made of speed and more of condition, that no unsound horse be allowed to enter the test on the same footing against sound horses. Also that it would be a very desirable condition, if selection for the first prize in future instances, be based largely on the condition of the horse, judged by his suitability at the finish of the test, to proceed on another such test, or to state it in another way,—the horse who on account of his soundness and stamina would naturally be the selection of an army officer desiring a mount to proceed with into actual warfare.

Should these tests be again taken up by the Army, it is suggested that horses performing en masse, going through the same tests at the same time and under the same conditions, would closely simulate service conditions, and such a test would prove particularly helpful. In this instance a more elaborate system of marking could be devised, which would bring out the qualities of ability to negotiate rough country, to live on poor and scanty food, to rest well in strange environment, and to require a minimum of care while giving a cheerful performance.

The Race to the Sea

(Continued)

Extracts from notes taken during the first months of 1914 by Captain de Cosse-Brissac, 15th Chasseurs, and transcribed from *La Revue de Cavalerie*

By

Captain ROYDEN WILLIAMSON, Cavalry

OCROSSER 19—We are approaching Staden and up to 10 o'clock are in reserve. Since break of day the guns have been booming around Roulers. Heavy enemy forces are striving to retake from us our gains of yesterday. We are hoping for the entry into line of British divisions announced south of Roulers, toward Passchendaele, but while waiting for them, the enemy advance increases. We must stop his progress south of Roulers, between Westroosbeke and Oostneuwkerke, in order to allow the 7th Cavalry Division to withdraw toward Langemark.

This cavalry screen can not hold very long in the face of the brutal offensive of German army corps, which the fire of our horse artillery batteries and of our rifles is powerless to stop. But, time is precious and every hour gained in slowing up the enemy's march is a great result.

Another bound to the rear toward Staden. The command had decided to hold fast there and defend it. At 3:00 p. m. the 5th Cavalry Division is grouped about that place. The light brigade holds its outskirts, the 7th Dragoon Brigade is farther south, the 3rd is at Stadenberg. Defensive works and trenches are being improvised in haste.

Just as night is beginning to fall, a sharp fusillade is suddenly heard in the direction of the railway station. It proves to be only a false alarm, due to the clumsiness of some chasseur who carelessly, fires his rifle which thus provokes the beginnings of a panic. However, it is quickly quelled.

The enemy, nevertheless, is approaching. He threatens to turn Staden by the north. In view of the difficulty of holding out through the night in this village, it is decided to evacuate it and to carry the defense to the heights which dominate it on the west.

At 9:00 p. m. the enemy reached Staden. Following his custom, he signaled his gain by burnings. The 5th Chasseurs attempted a bold raid upon his posts installed at the exits of the town, our troopers attacking without warning, firing many shots. This sudden surprise caused the enemy great trepidation, but recovering quickly, he has taken vengeance for this start by inflicting cruel reprisals upon the inhabitants. Some hostages from among them have been immediately shot.

The remainder of the night has been troubled by constant outbursts here and there. From the top of a mill overlooking Staden, risking the while the bullets striking about us in the obscurity, I have been viewing the sinister spectacle made by the flames illuminating the village. The sight was even

more heartrending to a Belgian major, in command of a battalion in reserve nearby, who came just then to consult with me. His men were resting in a field nearby. They were greatly depressed by their long retreat across their native land and the last few days have been especially hard for them. A few kilometers more and they would be evicted from their country. France was preparing to receive them, but would they, once they had quit their sacred soil, maintain in the future the same firm faith? France has done more than merely welcome these brave combatants; her army on the banks of the Yser has been offering an invincible resistance to the invader. There, not only has it broken the hostile drive but behind its solid barrier the Belgian Army has resumed on its own Flanders soil a renewed vitality to keep it also until the end of the war while denying this last corner of its territory to the enemy.

October 20—I gave the Belgian major reason to hope that reinforcements soon would reach us. Perhaps they would prevent the enemy from advancing beyond Staden, they would even oblige him to relinquish it to us. The major was skeptical. Two months of war had taught him German tactics.

When, at the end of the day, the advance guards strike superior forces, they do not press the issue; they wait for the following day. Reinforced then with new forces they attack en masse and bustle everything out of their way. These tactics were soon to prevail again.

In fact, at 8 o'clock the general attack occurred on our entire front in the direction of Dixmude, the Forest of Houthulst and Ypres. The Germans were striving to break our thin screen and to throw it back beyond the Yser. Their aim was to reach Dunkerque, Calais, perhaps Boulogne, these towns all ardently coveted, since their capture meant control of the Channel and this would block the landing on the French coast of the British Army.

Houthulst is being defended by the regiments of the 6th Cavalry Division. We are defending Stadenberg and the line of the railway. In line farther south, toward Zonnebeke where the first elements of the British are said to be, is the 7th Division.

The hostile pressure soon makes itself very strongly felt, especially against Stadenberg held by Colonel Robillot's 3rd Dragoon Brigade. This unit, at the cost of cruel losses, is resisting with the utmost energy. It, too, comes to a hand to hand. Our troopers have no bayonets. But what matter, they have their lances and charge on foot, lance in hand.

The Germans, after a hellish fire, come up with our cavalymen; they believe themselves masters of the position, but the lances block the way and in the face of this redoubtable arm, the enemy, in fear of meeting us face to face, falls back in terror.

This halt in their assault is for us a success. They become hesitant and do not renew their attack on the valient defenders of Stadenberg. Colonel Robillot even considers it unnecessary to engage my squadron which General de Cornulier has sent him as a reinforcement. He prefers to have us put into a state of defense a group of houses in front of the edge of the Forest of

Houthulst. The main structure is an orphanage. From its upper story the view is fine, the field of fire wide; it is an obvious center of resistance.

The main hall of the orphanage, which I enter, is the children's dormitory. The little beds of polished wood are remarkably tidy, the walls hung with pious images. The place is redolent with innocence and happiness. Until today it was inhabited by little ones deprived of parents and of home who had found under protection of the gentle religious folk who kept this house the consolation and benefits of an education without bitterness or care. And now here we are in the cruel necessity of war overturning all that. We must wreck everything, destroying in a few moments the beneficent results of years of orderliness and economy. It is a sad occasion! But there's not a moment to lose! Time flies! In the twinkling of an eye, mattresses torn from the beds are piled in the windows; bedsteads, turned upside down, make firing rests; here and there the roof is pierced to furnish loopholes, benches are broken to make barricades on the paths that lead to the establishment.

But scarcely is this organization completed when orders are received to fall back. In view of the menace of encirclement on the north and on the south, our defense line is brought to the edge of the forest. The bordering ditches make natural trenches into which our squadrons sink by small dispersed groups. From the side of an alley opening on the plain I observe the orphanage. Will the enemy utilize it against us, or shall we be obliged to destroy it in order to bury him in its ruins?

The sector of the Forest of Houthulst which we are holding forms a re-entrant. Opposite us the front is calm and I have a few minutes of leisure in which to admire the delicate tints of autumnal foliage reflected in the sunshine of this lovely day. The view brings thoughts of our beautiful forests of the Ile de France, occasions of exciting gallops over hunting courses, periods of game shooting and in such memories I lose myself for an instant.

The reality soon brings me back. A violent fusillade breaks out in the wooded salient on our left. The 5th Chasseurs are being assailed by the German infantry which has penetrated the wood. They are firing at 200 meters. On our right our Chasseurs, in liaison with elements of the 7th Brigade, inform me that this unit has just fallen back. Enveloped on both north and south, the Forest can no longer protect its last defenders, so we rejoin our horses which have been placed under the trees, guarded by dismounted troopers of the 5th Chasseurs and a company of infantry sent us as a reinforcement.

Scarcely are we mounted and our column started in a large alley when a sinister whistle is heard. A shell breaks through the tips of the trees and falls in front of us. Others follow, fortunately passing over our heads and bursting beyond the road. The enemy is seeking to hasten our evacuation of the Forest by making it untenable.

Night falls as we are coming out. The 5th Chasseurs succeed in getting away, but there is no news of the infantry company. Concerned for its fate, General de Cornulier designates my unit to find it and to cover its withdrawal.

While the brigade resumes its movement toward Birschoote, we remain behind under orders to wait until 8:30 P. M. for the missing company. I immediately send patrols toward Langemark and to the various exits of the Forest where it may be. Their mission is difficult, for the night is pitchblack and there is no one to ask the way, the country people having fled during the day. Suddenly a faint light beams near our post. Upon approaching it, I observe that it comes from a farm yard that in the obscurity had escaped our notice. Two men and a woman, loading wood on a cart, are seized with fright at sight of me. They imagine I am going to prevent their departure. To obtain from them the least answer regarding the troops we are seeking proves impossible.

One by one our patrols return without having been able to obtain the slightest indication of the infantry's presence or movements. Investigation, too, is difficult in this dark night while in contact with the enemy, so at 8:30 P. M., the time fixed, we resume the way to Birschoote. As I learned the next day, the company we were unable to find got away by itself.

We had hardly taken the road followed by the brigade two hours before when suddenly, as if by prearranged signal, the entire horizon blazed in a semicircle about us. By means of fires the Germans were signalling the points they had reached at the end of the day. I concluded from this that we ought to move straight between the two branches of fires. But the difficulty of holding to the course was great, no map, no habitation, no one to inform us, not a highway near, nothing but tortuous country paths rendered more puzzling by the obscurity.

Following a half hour's march, along one of these roads during which time my horse fell into a ditch, the scouts of the point signalled a highway. Rare luck! we were on the right way, but which direction were we to take for Birschoote? A luminous point was advancing along the road, so we decided to overtake it. It proved to be a lantern lighting three persons walking side by side. Were they friends or foes? What mattered it, since we needed them to lead us to Birschoote. At first they refused, but upon being seized and their light extinguished, they grew docile and agreed to lead us wherever we wished. Two kilometers farther on, we reached our destination, so I turned them loose. They did not wait to be told twice, but vanished into the night.

Birschoote is organized as a bridgehead. A network of trenches fills the banks of the Yser. Detachments of territorials are working on them feverishly. No news of the 15th Chasseurs, Colonel Claret of the 9th Dragoons, who is here with his regiment, has not seen them and can tell me nothing. So I decide to pass the night in a farm. There, after a meager supper of potatoes from an abandoned heap, we are not long falling to sleep.

October 21—At 7:00 A. M., just as we were getting ready to leave, the supply column of my regiment passed over the bridge. It was a lucky encounter, especially so considered by the supply officer who had been looking for me. He had just been rationing the regiment and had left it over Mangelaere way.

The issues completed and the horses fed grain, we resumed the road to Dixmude and from there made Mangelaere. There I found Colonel Hennocque (1) with a party from the 5th Chasseurs. He confirmed the presence of the 15th at the indicated locality.

Leading there was a winding road across fields intersected by deep ditches and barbed wire. With my squadron I followed but soon came upon a *cul-de-sac* in a marsh on the edge of the Forest of Houthulst. As it was impossible to get through, we turned right about to resume our march. At this moment the cannonading that for a half hour had been loud, grew closer. We recrossed the field and, thanks to the initiative of a scout in cutting the wire enclosures, regained the Dixmude road.

In less than an hour this road had completely changed its aspect. Open a while ago, it was now quite impracticable. Flemish carts loaded with refugees and their household goods were moving in long files toward the Bixschoote bridge. Some regiments of cavalry were overtaking them. The general retreat was still on, the army was retiring beyond the Yser. In the throng I perceived Colonel Trutat, followed by several squadrons of the regiment. He was well pleased to find us, having given us up as lost. For our mission of the previous night had been more than risky; we were within an ace of not returning. The least error in direction might have proved fatal.

Taking its place in the column, my squadron soon after passed the bridge at Steenstraete where we had orders to halt. It was here that a stand was to be made. The Yser, a tiny stream hitherto unknown, was soon to acquire an immortal fame. It was about to become the untraversable moat before which the German onslaught would be held at bay. We were to be its first defenders.

The brigade dismounted and while the horses were sent to Woesten we were distributed at various organized points forming the bridgehead of the Steenstraete bridge. The 5th Chasseurs were placed on the right bank, while we remained on the left, occupying the trenches already dug. We found them splendid and felt ourselves rooted in them. They were quite primitive, however; narrow, without freedom or means of circulation.

No matter! Whatever's new is best! The weather is superb. After so many days of marching, it was a real rest for us to remain here all day. The men slept with fists clinched and not an alarm disturbed them. The enemy upon arriving at the Yser was obliged to halt there. Finding the passages strongly held, he was taking time to prepare an attack and so the day passed without event except for frequent exchanges of shots between the bridgehead defenders on the right bank and the enemy's patrols feeling out our defense.

At 9 o'clock that evening some territorials took over our trenches. While we mounted up and moved to Elverdinghe for the night.

(1) This officer, later General Hennocque, as commander of the French 4th Cavalry Division, Army of the Rhine, at Gouzenheim, was well known to many members of the American Forces in Germany. (Translator's Note.)

The Death of General Custer

By

Brigadier General E. S. GODFREY

SEVERAL YEARS AGO a Mr. Beebe made the statement before the Chicago Historical Society that the "White General," General George A. Custer, "his cavalymen slain and himself wounded in the side, took his own life by discharging his revolver down his throat."

During the summer of 1926, when the "spot light" of the Semi-Centennial of Custer's Last Battle was on the front page, an Indian from the Standing Rock Agency was reported to have said that near the close of the attack on Custer's command, he had dropped on his knee and shot Custer *in the head*.

And now comes "Chief Buffalo-Child Long Lance," a Blackfoot Chief of the Blood tribe and "tells it to the Marines." His article introduces a story of "Blood Brotherhood" between Sitting Bull and Cadet Custer—a "Damon and Pythias" compact; of how Sitting Bull planned to save Custer alive; of how this Blackfoot Chief kept in touch with Custer's troops; of lying on his belly and watching the command the night before the battle; and observing that the "Blue Coats were drinking and going about yelling like Indians"; and, of course, this Blackfoot Chief rides on his relays of ponies and reports to Sitting Bull. At the end of the battle Custer, *his long hair pushed up under his hat*, "realizing he alone was alive, put his gun against his body and pulled the trigger."¹

This is the first I ever heard of the "Blood Brother" pact. It seems to me that story would have been too good for General Custer to have kept secret and never revealed in the long-time publicity of himself and his affairs.

I have my doubts as to the Indians "keeping in touch" with our advance in the long march from Fort Lincoln. In a general way, yes, but the opportunities for taking a scalp or two when our hunters were frequently miles from the command, and on one occasion absent over night, seem to me too good to have been overlooked.

There was no great commotion nor loud demonstration in our bivouacs the night before the battle—nothing to give the impression of "drinking and going about yelling like Indians." I recall a letter received some years ago from one of the men, telling how he was thrilled by someone singing in a clear tone the old hymn "Nearer my God to Thee." I have no recollection of it, but if so, it would not indicate hilarity to any but the untutored savage mind. I do know that fires were ordered put out as soon as supper was over, lights prohibited, and quiet enjoined.

General Terry was with General Gibbon's troops on the battlefield on the forenoon of June 27th. Lieutenant James H. Bradley, Seventh Infantry, in

¹ In the campaign of 1876 General Custer had his hair cut short.

command of General Gibbon's scouts, was the first officer to arrive at Reno's position, and on the bluff where my troop was located. His first question on arrival was to ask where to find Lieutenant Godfrey. On my meeting him, my first question was, "Where is Custer?" He replied, "I don't know, but I suppose he was killed, as we counted one hundred and ninety-seven bodies. I don't suppose any escaped." Bradley and his scouts were the first to go over the ground after the battle.

On the afternoon of June 27th, Lieutenant Bradley and a party from Reno's command went over the field; Fred Girard, interpreter, and Scout Jackson were with this party. In May, 1908, Girard gave this account: "Jackson and I preceded the party to Custer Hill. We found General Custer's body in a squatting position between the bodies of two soldiers, one across the other; Custer's upper arm rested on the topmost soldier, his face resting in the palm of his hand as if in repose. All were naked." They laid out Custer's body.

On the morning of June 28th, Major Reno with the remaining seven troops of the Seventh Cavalry, went to the Custer field to bury the dead. During this ceremony I was sent for by Major Reno to help identify the dead on Custer Hill. The first body I was taken to was that of General Custer. The body was naked. I examined it carefully. There were two bullet wounds, one in the left breast and the other in the left temple, either of which, it seemed to me, would have been fatal. There was surprisingly little blood on his person from either wound; there were no powder marks on his person nor any signs of mutilation. He had not been scalped. In 1886, when Chief Gall gave me his account of the battle, I asked him why Custer was not scalped. He replied without hesitation that he "did not know, unless it was because he was the Big Chief, and that they respected his rank and his bravery."

Major James McLaughlin who was for many years Indian Agent at Standing Rock Agency, North Dakota, had the unreserved intimacy and confidence of the Sioux Indians. He told me that Chiefs Gall, Crow King, Gray Eagle, and other responsible Chiefs had told him that Custer was not scalped because he was the Big Chief and they respected his rank; that it was sometime after the battle was over before they recognised Custer, as his hair was cut short and they had looked for a body with long hair. Furthermore, Major McLaughlin states that in all his years of intercourse with the Sioux, he never heard one of them assert or intimate that General Custer had taken his own life.

Some of the statements of these "suicide mongers" sound like camp gossip or rumors that are bandied about and then accepted by some credulous persons as facts. An example is the statement that "not more than 500 at most opposed Custer." This would imply that between two and three thousand warriors were idle spectators of the battle, which is as absurd as the statement that Custer "took his own life by discharging his revolver down his throat," etc., etc.

In a book which, I think, is entitled *The North American Indian*, the author made a statement to the effect that "Indians never scalped a suicide." Since then some of these sensational writers have used that statement as a basis for their dramatic stories. They differ as to details, but may all be characterized by the same aphorism: "Bunk."

NOTE: Certain statements in the account by the Blackfoot Chief have a further tendency to create suspicion in regard to the accuracy of the article. The author speaks of Sitting Bull as riding up and down the first line of warriors, shouting out his final instruction, and later states: "When he (Custer) realized he alone was alive, he put his gun against his body and pulled the trigger. He was dead right away. Sitting Bull went up to where he lay and stooped down and picked up the pistol and looked at it; and then he strapped it around himself and came back."

None of the previous Indian accounts credit Sitting Bull, who was not a War Chief but a "Medicine Man," with taking any part in the battle. Some say that he remained in his tent "making medicine;" others state that he took to the hills with his family as the troops approached the village and did not stop until about ten miles away. When the battle was over, messengers were sent to notify him of the result and to bring him back. Gall, Crazy Horse, and Crow King were the principal War Chiefs and are given the credit for winning the battle.—EORROR.



Dragoon Equipment, 1851

From the Edward E. Ayer Collection.

Courtesy of the Newberry Library

Rational Bitting

A More Efficient and Easily Acquired Control of the Cavalry
Horse for Hastily Trained Masses

By

Lieut. Colonel EDMUND A. BUCHANAN, Cavalry

IT IS APPRECIATED that the idea herein presented will, if considered at all, arouse antagonism, while some may attempt to dismiss it with ridicule. This will not be due, necessarily, to any inherent worthlessness or the result of an open minded test, of the idea but may be based, according to the mental attitude of the challenger on any of the following points of view:

Belief in one's superior knowledge of the subject.

Lack of confidence in the writer's knowledge or experience.

Blind and unquestioning faith in things as they are.

Chronic suspicion of new ideas.

Be this as it may it is not believed that anyone is perfectly satisfied with the scheme of biting the cavalry horse (for the rank and file) as is practiced throughout the world today, and which, with but minor changes in detail, has been in vogue for centuries.

The decidedly indifferent and uncertain control obtained by this system in all its variations, and its cumulative harmful effects on horses, are too well known to require mentioning here. One only has to remember the hard mouthed runaways in every troop, and his own difficulty in finding, even in a squadron, an enlisted man's horse "fit to ride," to know that there is something wrong with the present biting method. And, in my opinion, all the instruction in the world for the few is not going to effect the situation for the masses, as long as the existing method is retained.

This would seem to be a sufficient reflection upon the present method, especially when we remember that whole nations have in the past ridden horses into and through battle, their mounts controlled individually by a stick in one system, and by only one rein in many others.

In my opinion, the effectiveness of these former simple methods of control was due to the concentration of the means employed on giving one single impulse, incapable of being confused by the incidental or accidental transmittal by the same means, of other and distracting impulses, as well as to the complete separation of pain from the means of control, except and only as a deliberately intended punishment for a specific offense.

The curb bit of today is, in the last analysis, but a modification of an instrument of torture which reached its highest perfection as a pain inflicting implement, in the Mexican spade bit, and was but slightly modified in our own old Shoemaker. Yet this bit is the means retained for the control of the horse in our cavalry. More accurately, it is the means which is and will be, until discarded, used by the recruit of today and the contemplated cavalry of the hastily raised and trained army of tomorrow, to retain their precarious

position on their mounts, and upon which the "old soldier" still hangs heavily to vent his spleen on a "jigging" horse, or to help him assume, on a long march, an alleged restful change of seat.

The use of the curb bit alone or in combination, by a trained, interested and intelligent horseman, physically fresh and out for the express purpose of mastering his mount, is not being considered here, as that is regarded as the exception; the man in ranks, and particularly the man in the ranks of the army to be raised over night, as it were, is the problem and the phase of the subject in which the writer is especially interested.

No one can deny that the curb bit is harsh in its action, but it is also claimed that simple as it appears, hanging on a peg, it is an evolved and complicated implement for the simple purpose intended, when its actual functioning and application are carefully considered.

Whatever may be gotten from it by the expert or trained horseman, it has but one basic purpose or use for the mass, and this is to control the forward movement of the horse, in a progressive degree, from a simple retardation through the halt, to an actual retrograde movement. Yet, to accomplish this seemingly simple and single purpose, we have and use a tool which has in itself the means of transmitting at least five separate impulses, each of which, by the physical impressions transmitted to the horse, is exerted in a different direction:

- 1st. The pressure on the bars, towards the rear.
- 2d. The pressure of the curb strap or chain, diametrically opposite to the former, forward.
- 3d. The pressure on the roof of the mouth (with some bits and certain horses), upwards and forward.
- 4th. The pull on the corners of the mouth, upwards and rearward.
- 5th. Pain at one or more points, the effect of which is the general impulse to escape in any direction.

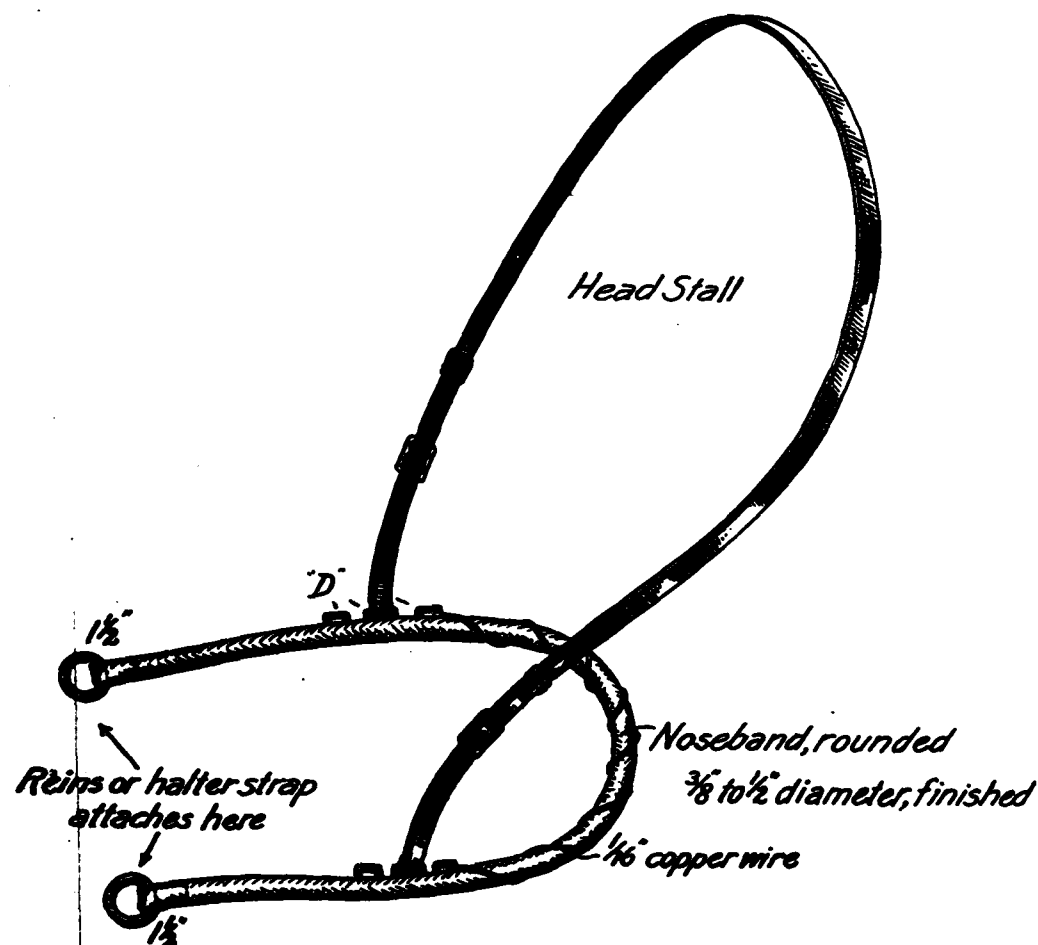
Confusion in the brain of the horse when all these impulses are applied with equal weight, is inevitable; shall he go forward, rearward, or up on his haunches? It is not surprising then, but rather to be expected if, with a heavy handed rider up on a strong, spirited horse, the results are an immediate bolt and an ultimately unmanageable horse at all gaits faster than a walk.

However, as is intended by the scheme and as a result of the operation of the law of chances, the force exerted is seldom equal on all points of bearing. Unfortunately, all too often this actual distribution is not to the particular points of the leverage set up, nor in the proportion desired or contemplated. Due to many reasons, such as haste in saddling, thoughtlessness, last moment changes in mount assignment, etc., it is just as likely as not that the points of bearing are more often on the jaw bone, the corners of the mouth, the roof of the mouth, the lips or any combination of these, rather than on the poll-bars-tongue points, and are transmitting impulses which are mechanically forward regardless of the desires and intentions of the rider.

Why, then, retain for the mass of the cavalry a biting device which

contains in itself, not only the possibility, but the probability of its misuse in the creation and transmission to the helpless but normally willing animal, confusing impulses frequently exactly contrary to those which it is desired and necessary to apply?

The remedy is to remove the complicated implement from the hands of the mass, substituting therefor a simplified tool which it is practically



impossible to misuse; one whose effect is limited to the creation of the one impulse desired: rearward, and whose misapplication (limited to too constant pressure) cannot injure the horse. Even in this misapplication, its very effects (slowing or halting the animal) promptly suggests to even the slowest mind, its existence and its correction, the removal of the pressure.

It is claimed that all this can be accomplished by the cavesson-snaffle bit

combination which I have used personally for two years. I have observed its use in troops under my command, and by conversations with horsemen of reputation have found that they, also, regard it as possessing considerable merit.

In my experiments I used a modified cavesson, the leather of the nose piece rounded over one-eighth inch rope making a rounded strap of approximately three-eighths inch diameter, each end terminating in a ring to which the reins are to be attached. The whole is made adjustable horizontally by a choice of three "D"s on each side for the attachment of the cheek straps, while the vertical adjustment is obtained by buckles in the cheek straps of the head stall.

My cavessons were made by a troop saddler, are decidedly neat in appearance, and look generally like the accompanying cut.

For the initial familiarization of the horse and his occasional discipline, there is spiraled around the front part of the noseband, a copper wire, 3-32 inch or larger in diameter; the distance between spirals should not be less than one inch, but this as well as the diameter of the wire, is to be modified to meet the sensitiveness and responsiveness of the individual animal. The ends of the wire are fastened to the "D"s, and the entire wire should be removed promptly as soon as the animal is sensitized and accustomed to the effects of the device.

The adjustment, by the means indicated above, should be such as will permit the noseband, when the reins are in hand, to rest on the lower part of the nasal bone.

Use and Application

As in the present practice, the snaffle is the riding bit and the cavesson is to be used, as is the curb, to augment the checking effect of the lighter bit to the extent necessary to secure the results desired. These effects are obtained, not by steady pulls, but by a succession of taps or blows on the nose, the strength of the blows to be proportionate to the resistance of the horse, while the response of the animal is to be taken up and retained by the snaffle.

In this connection, I found that a more decided separation of the two sets of reins than is now obtained by the present Riley method is desirable, and personally, I like the snaffle reins divided by the little finger, the cavesson reins separated by the middle finger, with both bights falling together on the same side of the hand. This arrangement permits, if and when necessary, the slipping of the snaffle reins, and thus by the raising of the hand and its snap to the rear, the delivery of a sharp decisive blow on the nose through the cavesson reins.

If the effects on both methods of biting, of a strong and sudden application of force through the reins, are observed, it will be seen that when the bit and bridoon are jerked, the horses' heads are almost invariably thrown forward and upward, while with the cavesson and snaffle, the heads yield just as quickly, but are as uniformly dropped downward and rearward.

The following advantages are claimed for the scheme outlined:

1. Decided reduction of the weight now carried on the animal's head;
2. Make pain to the animal a matter of discipline only, the result of intention and special effort, rather than as it is now, almost a normal part of a horse's life when in motion under a rider;
3. Preserve the mouths of all horses for work and use by those who have the time, ability and inclination to properly utilize them;
4. Mal-adjustments, except too long retention of the wire, do not harmfully effect the animal;
5. Horses thus equipped can graze and drink without unbridling, thus preventing the lazy rider's punishing his mount;
6. A horse thus equipped will soon learn not to run away when for any reason the reins are dropped, provided, of course, the reins and the headstall are strong enough to withstand the first snap;
7. A better, cleaner looking head, as there is less hung to it;
8. The elimination of the halter, since by unbuckling the reins and snapping the halter rope to the two rings, a most effective halter is obtained.

If tried with an open mind and, in the cases of the older and more vicious offenders, due allowance is made in the time required for sensitizing, to compensate for the many years of punishment they have received from the old method of biting, it is firmly believed that the system herein outlined will clearly demonstrate its superiority.



Apache Indian Scouts at El Valle, Mexico, 1916

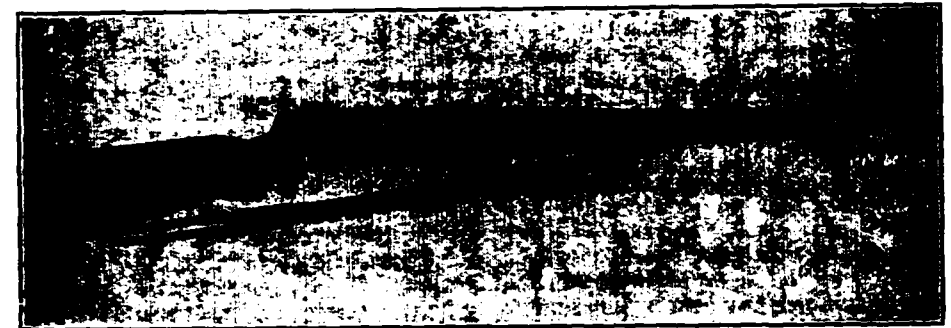
Topics of the Day

CAVALRY BOARD NOTES

THE MOST IMPORTANT PROJECTS recently completed by the Cavalry Board include tests of ten Garand and ten Thompson semi-automatic shoulder rifles, and experiments to determine measures, other than fire and camouflage, to be adopted by cavalry units to reduce visibility and vulnerability from low flying attack aviation.

1. *Semi-Automatic Rifles*—Both makes of semi-automatic rifles are designed to fire our present caliber .30 rifle ammunition in clips of five cartridges; both are built largely of parts of our present Springfield rifle; and both are about two pounds heavier than the service rifle.

Although several minor defects were noted in both semi-automatic rifles, the important discovery resulting from the tests is that a dependable semi-



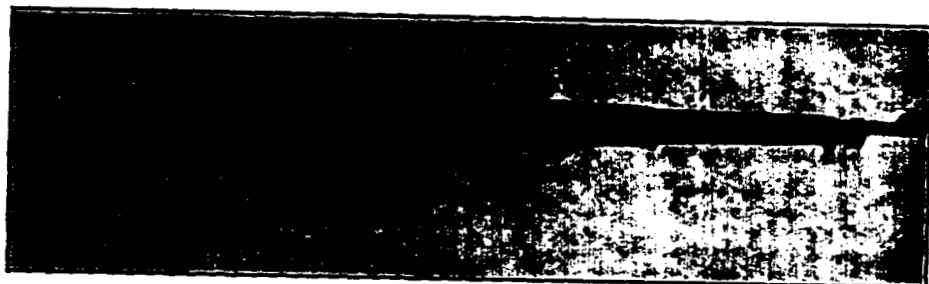
Thompson Semi-automatic Rifle

automatic rifle is an accomplished fact. In addition to a rate of fire at least double that of the present service rifle, the semi-automatics have the following favorable features:

- a. They are sufficiently accurate for all practical purposes.
- b. Recoil is noticeably reduced.
- c. They are equipped with receiver sights.
- d. The operations of loading are reduced to those necessary for inserting the clip and cocking the piece for the first shot. As a consequence, the firer can keep up sustained fire with much less exertion, and can more effectively conceal himself.
- e. The mechanism, functioning, nomenclature, care and cleaning of the semi-automatics is simple enough to be understood by the average soldier—the design being little more complicated than that of the service rifle.

An apparent disadvantage of the semi-automatic rifles from the cavalry viewpoint, is the extra weight. In this connection, however, it should be noted

that these rifles were required to fire the high power, 170 grain, 1926 boat-tail ammunition. Although even under this requirement the weight can probably be reduced to ten pounds, based on a slightly smaller caliber bullet, it seems quite feasible to produce a satisfactory semi-automatic rifle weighing eight pounds or less.



Garand Semi-automatic Rifle

2. *Anti-Aircraft Measures to Reduce Visibility and Vulnerability*—The following is quoted from the general conclusions of a special board of officers appointed to conduct experiments on defensive measures, other than fire and camouflage, of units of a cavalry division against low-flying attack aviation: "General conclusions.—a. From the air viewpoint, the question of cover and concealment, other than solid overhead cover, is a matter of either the proper utilisation of existing shades and shadows, or the adoption of suitable formations.

b. In order to obtain adequate concealment by the use of cover, the shadow cast by the object to be concealed must be neither larger nor more dense than that cast by the object utilized as cover, and the subject to be concealed must be so placed in the shadow that when viewed from any angle, it will not present an outline sharply silhouetted against the background of light outside the limits of the shadow.

c. A natural background of dark color, such as a burned off area, or patches of dark colored weeds or low bushes afford nearly as suitable concealment as shadows.

d. In open country where adequate cover is not available, concealment may be obtained by the adoption of formations that will deceive the observer as to the nature of the object which he is observing. For example, the grazing formation, in which the horses are irregularly dispersed in the open, and allowed to graze, the riders being concealed in their shadows, will deceive all but very experienced observers, provided there are no unnatural features presented, such as regular intervals and distances between horses, all horses headed in the same direction, no bunching in small groups of two or three animals, grazing on an area where it is known or obvious that no forage exists, etc.

e. Flashes of light from various highly polished articles of equipment, especially seats of saddles, invariably attract the attention of observers and cause them to make a detailed investigation of the cover from which the flashes were noted. In campaign, many of the polished articles of equipment

will not be so maintained, but the seat of the saddle, the cause of the greatest amount of flashes, will remain polished. It is believed that experiments should be conducted with the view of developing a light weight, small mesh camouflage net, sufficiently large to cover the saddle equipment when the trooper is dismounted, and yet sufficiently light to not be a material increase in weight to the already too heavy equipment of the cavalryman.

f. Light colored horses, such as white or gray, and horses having prominent light patches, such as blazed faces, etc., are readily picked up from the air and are difficult, if not impossible, to properly conceal. It is believed that in campaign, such horses should be either disposed of or given a neutral color by the use of dyes.

g. Regardless of the probability of aerial attack, the missions of cavalry are often such that no delay can be permitted for the purpose of effecting concealment from aerial observation and of gaining cover from aerial attack. Under these conditions, the question of the employment of suitable formations to minimize the effects of hostile aerial observation and attack become of paramount importance.

h. The Board, proceeding under the belief that any formation presents a less vulnerable target for aerial attack than a close formation, tested all open formations prescribed in training regulations, and several which were not prescribed. From a result of the tests conducted, it is the belief of the Board that, within limits of effective control, those open formations which include dispersion both laterally and in depth, and at the same time present the least regular appearance, are the best. Such a formation is the flock, which includes all the requirements of a formation of least visibility and vulnerability, and at the same time is highly flexible, without the loss of control. This formation should be included in extended order drill of all cavalry units."

The flock formation mentioned above is a formation of the squad in which the individuals are irregularly disposed to the leader's right rear, left rear, and rear, in such manner that they are separated by from 10 to 20 yards and no three are in a single straight line from any direction. It was found that this formation offered a remarkably poor target to attack planes while at the same time it was easily and quickly assumed, easily led over varying terrain, and quickly and easily converted into any other prescribed formation.

REORGANIZATION OF THE BRITISH CAVALRY

IN VIEW OF THE RECENT PRESS REPORTS that the British Cavalry had been practically abolished, the following extracts from the *London Times* are pertinent:

Sir L. Worthington-Evans, Secretary for War (Colchester), moved that the House should go into Committee of Supply to consider the Army Estimates. He said:—Although we are asking for a larger number of men than last year, the fact is that the Estimates provide for a reduction of about 4,000 in the Regular Army. The reduction includes 47 officers and 1,294 other ranks, due to a reorganisation of the Cavalry, and 18 officers and 861 men in the Royal Artillery, which is chiefly due to reorganisation. There are certain minor trimmings of the establishment of the Corps of Signallers and other units, and the disbandment of the West Indian Regiment accounts for 23 officers and 670 other ranks. Therefore, although the Vote actually shows an increase of 7,100 men, or 8,700 if there are added the 1,600 Indian troops in Iraq, the actual fact is that there is a reduction of 4,000.***

I will first explain my proposal regarding the Cavalry. There is a responsible body of opinion holding that, in principle, the day of the horse is over, and that the duties of the Cavalry should be performed, and would be better performed, by aeroplanes and by troops mounted in rapidly moving cross-country vehicles, such as light fast tanks and armoured cars. On the other hand, it is urged that there are many military situations possible in various parts of the world in which, compared with the adaptability of the horsed unit, a mechanically transported unit would be at a great disadvantage. At present an unbridged river presents impassable obstacle to tanks, and presents but few difficulties to cavalry, and there are many rivers in countries in which our Army must be prepared to operate. I believe the truth is that we have not yet got the data upon which to make an irrevocable decision as to the kind of military force which is to do the work hitherto done by the Cavalry. For the present the best solution appears to be a combination of the two. Last year I asked a committee of military experts to give me some advice as to the cavalry requirements of the Army. They directed my attention, in the first place, to two grave defects in the Cavalry as it is organised and equipped today. To take its place effectively in a modern army, the cavalry regiment has neither sufficient mobility nor adequate fire power. The lack of mobility is due partly to the excessive weight that the troop horse has now to carry. This seriously reduces a regiment's speed and range of action, and the already narrow radius of action is still further limited by its dependence on its ponderous and slow-moving transport. The lack of fire power is partly due to an insufficiency of machine guns and partly to the unsuitability of the Hotchkiss gun. The Army Council has decided to take steps immediately to remedy the defects, so far as possible, by providing mechanical vehicles for the first-line transport and eight machine guns, instead of four as at present, to be carried in mechanical vehicles, instead of on pack horses. The question of finding a more efficient gun than the Hotchkiss will be actively pursued. At present, this reorganization will be confined to the six line regiments only, but the intention is to extend the new organisation to all the Cavalry as funds become available, subject to such modifications as experience may suggest. More research and experiments are necessary before we come to a final decision. To mechanize the Cavalry completely with an unsuitable vehicle—and there is no suitable vehicle at present—would be a most expensive mistake. The horse may not be all that it should be, but, in the meantime, it is better than a vehicle that is all that it should not be. But I can assure the House that the provision of a suitable cross-country vehicle is the subject of continuous research and experiment.

Meanwhile, the reorganization which provides for the mechanization of the first-line transport and the carriage of the machine guns enables us to increase cavalry mobility and fire power, and at the same time to reduce the number of men and horses. For the present, the Cavalry regiments, instead of consisting of a headquarters wing, including the machine gun troops and three saber squadrons, will consist of the headquarters wing, a machine gun squadron mechanized, two saber squadrons, and mechanized first-line transport. I have also taken the opportunity to concentrate all recruit training in the regiments, and this enables me to effect an economy by abolishing the Cavalry Depot. The savings consequent upon these various alterations amount to a reduction of 47 officers, 1,294 other ranks, and 1,445 horses, making a saving in 1927 of 98,000 pounds sterling, rising in a full year to 237,000 pounds sterling.

***** Although I make a small saving on the Cavalry, the money so saved will be used to modernize and improve their fighting value.*****

In a memorandum accompanying the Army Estimates, the Secretary of State for War also stated:

To meet the requirements of modern war it is felt that the fire power of the Cavalry and Infantry ought to be increased. It has therefore been decided to raise the number of machine guns allowed in war for a cavalry regiment and an infantry battalion from eight to twelve. For the same reason at the same time, endeavor is being made to evolve a reliable cross-country armoured car, with a view to the possible introduction of such a vehicle, if and when it is obtained, into the ranks of the Cavalry.

The question of adopting a self-loading rifle, if a satisfactory weapon of this type can be obtained, or, alternatively, of introducing a more serviceable light automatic to replace the Lewis and Hotchkiss guns with which the Cavalry and Infantry are now equipped is receiving consideration.

In reality the policy above indicated involves no practical reduction in the potential strength of the British Cavalry. Because of the necessity for economy, its personnel and mounts will be reduced, but to offset this, its mobility will be increased by means of mechanized first-line transport, and its fire power and offensive strength by the addition of machine guns and light tanks.

There is every evidence that the British believe in Cavalry, within its proper sphere, as much today as they did in the time of Napoleon, and if it were not for their serious economic condition and the absolute necessity for retrenchment, they would have made the changes resulting in increased mobility and fire power without the reduction of a single man or horse.

The changes they are making seem to be predicated on the use they contemplate for Cavalry in a European theater of operations, and for the present at least, they are not planning any changes in those units which are likely to be used in India, South Africa, Egypt or Palestine. In other words, until they are very sure of their ground, they are not going to take a chance on complete motorisation of transport or the transportation of heavy machine guns in light tanks in countries where there are rivers to cross, mountains to traverse, and localities to be gotten over where desert heat and sand will soon negate the value of any internal combustion engine we now have.

FRENCH CAVALRY DOCTRINE

THE FRENCH, as a result of their experiences in the World War, have made radical changes in cavalry armament and methods of combat, without however, affecting cavalry missions in general. As stated by an instructor at the *Ecole Supérieure de Guerre*, "The failure of the cavalry in 1914 was due to the doctrine in vogue at that time—to fight mounted. The cavalry was poorly armed and its ideas were wrong."

A French cavalry division now uses its mobility for maneuver only; it has received a tremendous increase in fire power, especially in machine guns.

Its normal method of combat is fire action, and it appears to be the policy when strong opposition is expected, to reinforce it with infantry and artillery.

Some examples will serve to show the differences between the cavalry doctrine of 1914 and those of today, as taught at the *Ecole Supérieure de Guerre*. In the operations of General Foch's IX French Army, during the first battle of the Marne, in the region of Fere-Champnoise and the marshes of St. Gond, the weakest part of the situation of this army was its right (east) flank, in the vicinity of Mailly, where there was a gap of 10-20 kilometers. A cavalry division, covering this gap, did not do much, because:

1. It had been trained almost exclusively for mounted action.
2. It had insufficient fire power.

With all its effectives, the division had 1800 carbines, 400 rifles, and 6 machine guns; it was therefore *very inferior* in fire power to a 1914 infantry regiment.

In a similar situation handled according to the present school doctrines, a cavalry division was used to stop a gap in the line and delay the advance of the enemy. The division occupied a front of about 12 kilometers. Compared with the division at the Marne, it had:

- 96 machine guns instead of 6
- 315 automatic rifles instead of none
- 36 37 m-m guns instead of none
- 8 Stokes mortars instead of none
- 24 75 m-m guns instead of 12.

and, besides, was reinforced by two battalions of infantry, three battalions of 75's and one battalion of 105 m-m guns horse-drawn.

With all its effectives the division now has about two-thirds the fire power of an infantry division (artillery excepted.)

Use of Cavalry

Divisional and Corps Reconnaissance Groups—Usually not grouped together nor reinforced. In the approach march these groups precede the advance guards (sometimes they are attached to the advance guards) and cover the advance by securing river crossings and important terrain features. In the attack itself they have usually been placed in reserve (on one or two occasions have been used for liaison).

In the defensive they have been used to cover the installation of the outposts, later being withdrawn and placed in reserve. In emergencies they have been used to fill a gap in the line.

Cavalry Division in Delaying Action and Defensive—In one problem a cavalry division, reinforced by two battalions of 75 portee and one battalion of 105 m-m horse-drawn, operating under Army orders was used to gain contact with enemy forces that had broken through, to delay their advance and finally, after being further reinforced by two battalions of infantry and two battalions of 75's, to hold a defensive front of about 12 kilometers.

The three cavalry brigades were placed abreast, two of the brigades being

reinforced, each by one infantry battalion, and each brigade having some armored cars. In reserve, one or two troops cavalry and the cyclist group.

In another similar situation a cavalry division not reinforced, after gaining contact with the enemy, took up a defensive position to delay his advance. Formation, two brigades (reinforced) in first line, the 3rd brigade in reserve. Each brigade had a front of about four kilometers and was supported by a battalion of 75's.

The right brigade (reinforced) had its two regiments abreast, each regiment having an outpost of about one platoon. A squadron from the brigade in division reserve and the cyclist group were attached to this brigade, the squadron was used to cover the right flank while the cyclist group occupied a strong position in rear.

Most of the armored cars were out in front with reconnaissance patrols ("detachments de decouverte") and at nightfall were brought in and assembled in reserve.

Cavalry Division in Exploration and Reconnaissance—A cavalry division on a mission of exploration and reconnaissance usually marches in two columns, with advance guards and flank guards (if necessary.) The actual reconnaissance in advance is done by a *decouverte*, consisting of several *Detachments de decouverte* or reconnoitering patrols. There may also be an aerial *decouverte* if the division has an observation squadron at its disposal.

Cavalry Division in Offensive—The front on which the attack must be made is determined by the means available. (i. e. the artillery; in all attacks, the French say: "I have so many 75's. Therefore I can attack on such and such a front." The artillery is the yardstick without any question.)

Against a hastily organized position, one battalion of 75's can support an attack on a front of 300-400 meters. Therefore the cavalry division, with its two organic battalions of 75's, is limited to a front of 800 meters.

The attack may be made with two regiments of cavalry or with one regiment of cavalry and the cyclist group; regiment of cavalry, 400 meters; cyclists, 300-400 meters. A reserve must be held out; a cavalry regiment is suitable.

A division can make one attack in a day, no more.

The above applies to a cavalry division not reinforced.

CAVALRY RIFLE AND PISTOL TEAM

FORTY-FIVE COMPETITORS for places on the Cavalry Rifle and Pistol Team reported at Fort Des Moines on May 28, 1927 for the preliminary try-outs which will be completed about July first. After this date the selection team will continue practice at Fort Des Moines until about August fifteenth, at which time it will go to Camp Perry for the National Matches.

During the try-outs one team trophy and a number of individual trophies (the latter donated by the U. S. Cavalry Association) will be awarded for excellence in both rifle and pistol shooting.

Captain Anderson H. Norton, the Team Captain, is an expert shot with much competition experience. With the assistance of Lieutenant Paul M. Martin, Team Coach, a member of the United States Team in the recent International Matches, it is expected that the team finally selected to represent the Cavalry in the National Matches at Camp Perry will make an excellent showing.

SPRING RACE MEETING AT FORT RILEY

THE SPRING RACE MEETING of the Cavalry School Hunt at Fort Riley, was held on Republican Flats Saturday, May 28 and Monday, May 30. The first day's meet was well attended and thoroughly enjoyed by all, there being not a single accident. An attractive card of races kept the crowd on edge during the afternoon. Visitors from throughout central Kansas were in attendance, as were numerous visiting officers from Fort Leavenworth, the latter having come over for the annual Fort Leavenworth Day demonstrations by the Cavalry School. Following are the results:

First Day

The Brookdale Steeplechase. For four year olds and upward. Ridden in racing colors by officers of U. S. Army. About two and one-fourth miles—

Won by *Diplomat*, 1st Lieut. John W. Wofford, 2d Cavalry; 2d, *Felsensor*, Capt. Wm. Reinburg, Cavalry; 3d, *Persimmon*, Capt. T. A. Bryant, 2d Cavalry.

Half-mile Flat Race—

Won by *Gallant Boy*, 2d Lieut. D. DeBardeleben, 2d Cavalry; 2d, *Sam*, Capt. James Duke, 9th Cavalry; 3d, *Vamp*, Capt. Rufus Bamey, 9th Cavalry.

Mounted Service Steeplechase. About two miles—

Won by *El Supremo*, Pvt. Zlocoski, Tr. G. 2d Cavalry; 2d, *Lady Finn*, Pvt. Ledrup, Tr. G. 2d Cavalry; 3d, *Lough Doris*, 2d Lieut. D. DeBardeleben, 2d Cavalry.

Quarter-mile Flat Race. For enlisted men—

Won by *Dean*; 2d, *Andy*; 3d, *Toby*.

The Riley County Grass Riders' Grub Stakes. Flat quarter-mile—

Won by *Root*; 2d, *Ballymooney*; 3d, *Teddy*; 4th, *Fairy*.

Second Day

Half-mile Flat Race. For enlisted men—

Won by *Shorty*; 2d, *Toby*; 3d, *Jack*.

The Geary County Flat Race. Five furlongs—

Won by *Music B*; 2d, *Tip*; 3d, *Billy*.

Cavalry Memorial Steeplechase. A two and one-quarter mile steeplechase in memory of the cavalrymen who lost their lives in the service of the United States during the World War. A cup donated by the U. S. Cavalry Association was presented to the winner by Major General Crosby, Chief of Cavalry.

Won by *Lough Doris*, Major Edgar M. Whitting, 2d Cavalry; 2d, *States*, 1st Lieut. J. W. Wofford, 2d Cavalry; 3d, *Verment*, Major Wm. M. Grimes, Cavalry.

Horse Memorial Steeplechase—

Won by *Felsensor*, Capt. Wm. Reinburg, Cavalry; 2d, *Llewellyn*, Major Elkin Franklin, 2d Cavalry; 3d, *Preston Broad*, 2d Lieut. D. DeBardeleben, 2d Cavalry.

The Horse Memorial Steeplechase was the fourth and final race of the day, the meet abruptly terminating with the accident that resulted in the death of Captain T. A. Bryant, 2d Cavalry, and serious injury to Captain Charles Wharton, 9th Cavalry.

SECOND CAVALRY MIDWINTER HORSE SHOW

LACK OF SPACE IN THE APRIL CAVALRY JOURNAL prevented the publication of the results of the Second Cavalry Annual Midwinter Horse Show which was held at Fort Riley on February 1, 1927. The awards follow:

Individual Jumping for Privates—Won by Pvt. Broadhurst, Troop E, on *B-65*; 2d, Pvt. Barr, Hdqrs. Troop, on *Dopey*; 3d, Pvt. Laney, Troop F, on *Tom*.

Squad Contest—Won by Squad of Troop G, consisting of Cpl. King, Privts. Comfort, Falmore, Hamlin, Drozienski, Baumgarten, Keller and Bickel; 2d, Squad of Troop B; 3d, Squad of Troop C.

Individual Jumping for Non-Commissioned Officers—Won by Cpl. Kuhn, Troop B, on *Periscope*; 2d, Sgt. Gentemann, Troop F, on *Blondie*; 3d, Sgt. Cilders, Troop G, on *Pinkie*.

Wagon Contest: Class A—Escort Wagons—Won by Pvt. Creel, Service Troop; 2d, Pvt. Hickey, Service Troop. Class B—Light Wagons—Won by Pvt. Glatz, Service Troop; 2d, Pvt. Bullen, Service Troop.

Individual Jumping for Officers of Second Cavalry (Bowman Cup)—Won by Capt. Bryant on *Baldie*; 2d, Lieut. Armes on *B-580*; 3d, Major Franklin on *OMef*.

Individual Jumping Open to all Officers (Touch and Out)—Won by Capt. Guenther on *John Bunnie*; 2d, Major Strong on *McKinley*; 2d, Lieut. Wofford on *Dynamite*.

The splendid showing made by the enlisted men of the regiment was most favorably commented upon by all present, and showed unusual skill and proficiency in horsemanship. The competition in the enlisted men's events was keen and sportsmanlike.

The wagon contest and the squad contest were held during the afternoon of February first, but the winners were not announced until the evening performance when the awards were made and the wagons and squads paraded. Colonel L. W. Oliver, the Regimental Commander, presented to the driver of the winning escort wagon a set of harness ornaments.

NATIONAL DEFENSE MAGAZINE

THE *National Defense Magazine*, a copy of which has been recently received, is being published by the Illinois State Department, Reserve Officers Association of the United States, at 30 North La Salle Street, Chicago. Its object is to popularize interest in the peace time development of all components of the Army, and to create support for the proper fulfillment of the National Defense Act.

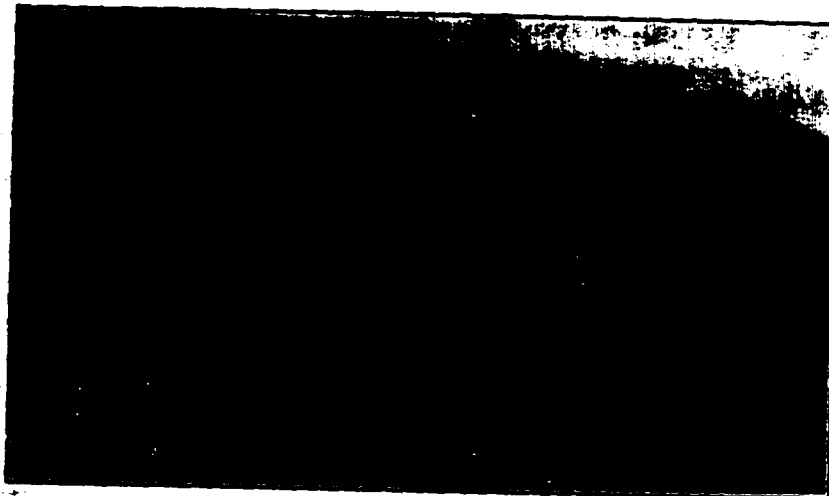
There are many periodicals constantly opposing all preparedness measures. Every shade of opinion from the lily white pacifist to the violent red communist, has a regularly published medium for expressing disapproval of everything which provides for the security of The United States.

To counteract this, National Defense Magazine is intended to advance and promote the opinions of individuals and organizations believing that this nation is worth making safe and secure. It will serve patriotic individuals and societies, and co-ordinate the activities of all.

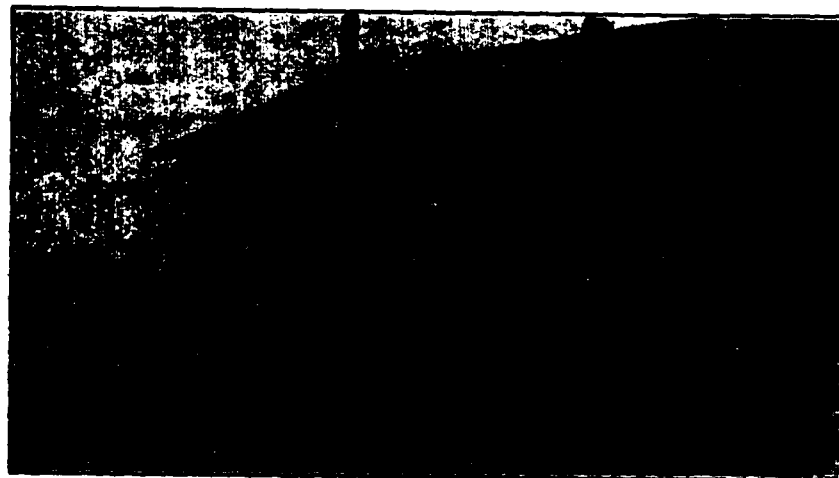
The annual subscription is \$1.00.

HEAVEY ANTI-AIRCRAFT MODIFICATION FOR BROWNING MACHINE GUN

THE 1ST CAVALRY DIVISION EQUIPMENT BOARD has acted favorably upon the proposed modification of the Browning machine gun, to obtain anti-aircraft fire, submitted by Captain Thomas J. Heavey, of the 2d M. G.



Gun Mounted for Normal Fire, on Ground Target

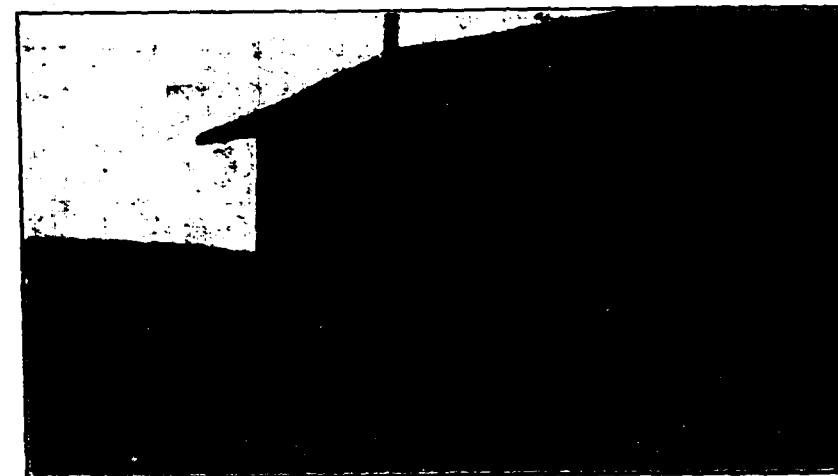


First Step in Changing to Air Target

At command "anti-aircraft fire":

- (a) Piece is locked.
- (b) Gunner pulls both pins, drops trunnion pin, retaining grasp on rear gun pin (elevating pin), with left hand. With right hand, unclamps cradle.
- (c) Number two dismounts gun as in elementary gun drill, as soon as both pins are pulled.

Squadron. All guns of the 2d Machine Gun Squadron are so equipped at present. Under the supervision of the Division Ordnance Officer, this mounting of the gun was given an exhaustive test which involved the firing of over 2000 rounds at the maximum and minimum elevations, and in all directions of the compass. Examination of the gun and tripod after this firing revealed no damage to either. During the test of the mount by the Board, the following characteristics demonstrated may be of interest:—Time to get into



Second Step in Changing to Air Target

(d) Gunner, retaining grasp of left hand on elevating pin, raises cradle to maximum position, clamps cradle with right hand. Changes elevating pin to right hand, and seats elevating pin through holes drilled in side plates from right to left as soon as gun is placed on elevating screw by number two.

(e) Number two seats gun on elevating screw, weight of gun resting on recess under trunnion block, taking care to see that top of elevating screw is squarely in this seat. As he hits the ground, pulls belt clear of box, and from now on supports belt in line with feedway to facilitate feeding.

action against attacking plane from gun being carried in pack, gun squad at the walk, about fifteen seconds; time to get into action against attacking plane from being engaged with ground target, about five seconds (best time made in trials, using blank ammunition, under three seconds); time to change from firing on hostile plane to ground target, about six seconds.

This proposed mounting is very simple, and consists in mounting the gun on the elevating screw of the cradle, and securing it by means of the elevating pin passing through two holes drilled in the side plates. The weight of the gun is transmitted through the bottom of the trunnion block to the top of the elevating screw, and the elevating pin serves merely as a safety precaution to prevent the gun from jumping off this support when firing. The cradle is raised to the highest position prior to mounting the gun as described above. When so mounted, the gun has a maximum elevation of about 70 degrees,

depending upon the adjustment of the cradle, and by unclamping the traversing clamp, which latter gives 360 degrees traverse.

The advantages claimed for this type of mounting are:

- (a) No additional weight to either gun or tripod.
- (b) No extra part or adapter; that is, the mount is integral with the gun.
- (c) The mounting of the tripod legs do not have to be changed.



Low Position Firing to the Front

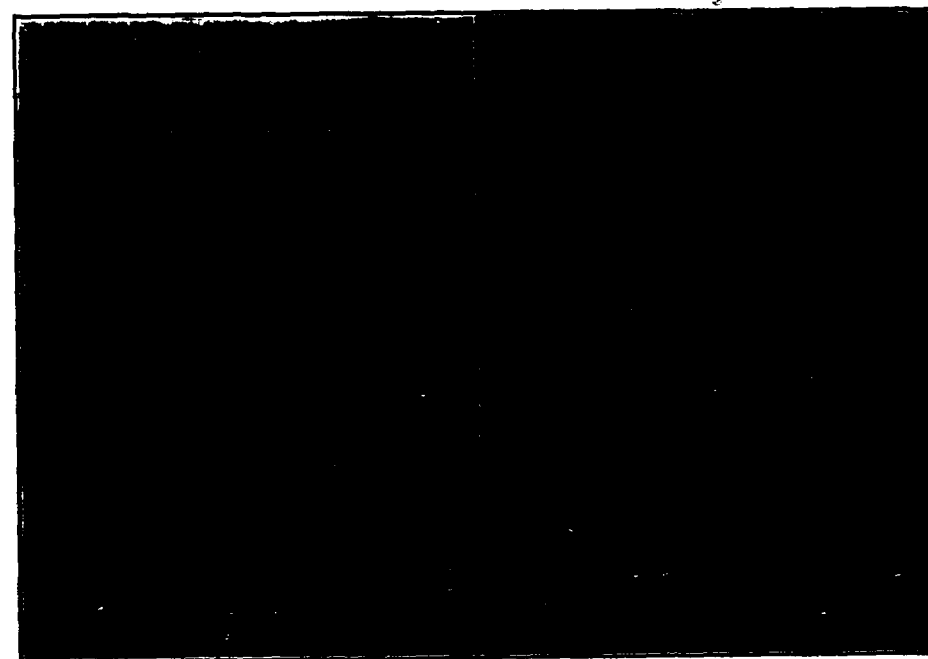
- (d) The gun may be mounted for anti-aircraft fire when tripod is in low position.
- (e) Minimum of time lost in change from ground target to air target, or conversely.
- (f) Simplicity of modification and of operation.
- (g) Practically negligible cost to change present equipment.
- (h) Excellent position for gunner which enables him to easily follow plane within limits of elevation and traverse.

THE JOCKEY BOX

CAPTAIN LLOYD W. BIGGS, Fifth Cavalry, has furnished the following very useful suggestions in regard to the much neglected jockey box.

Did you ever inspect the jockey box on an escort wagon? Were you ever interested enough in the spare parts and equipment of an escort wagon to delve into the numerous sizes of bolts, pins, buckles, snaps, rings and other parts that might be needed in the field to keep escort wagons and harness serviceable? If you were interested, did you also note the arrangement of the equipment?

The majority of jockey boxes on escort wagons are disorderly and dirty. A semblance of order is attempted, but even at that, there is usually grease, dirt, and substitution of spare parts. I have never seen two jockey boxes that were arranged the same. We have regulations that define how the soldier's equipment shall be laid out, but outside of enumerating the spare parts of an escort wagon, and prescribing where a few parts are to be placed, nothing has been said as to where every item shall be placed, and how arranged. A broken down ration or ammunition wagon may be a serious happening at times. This can generally be avoided by a complete and systematic arrangement of spare parts on the escort wagon, insuring an easy inspection and the presence of parts required. (See photographs)

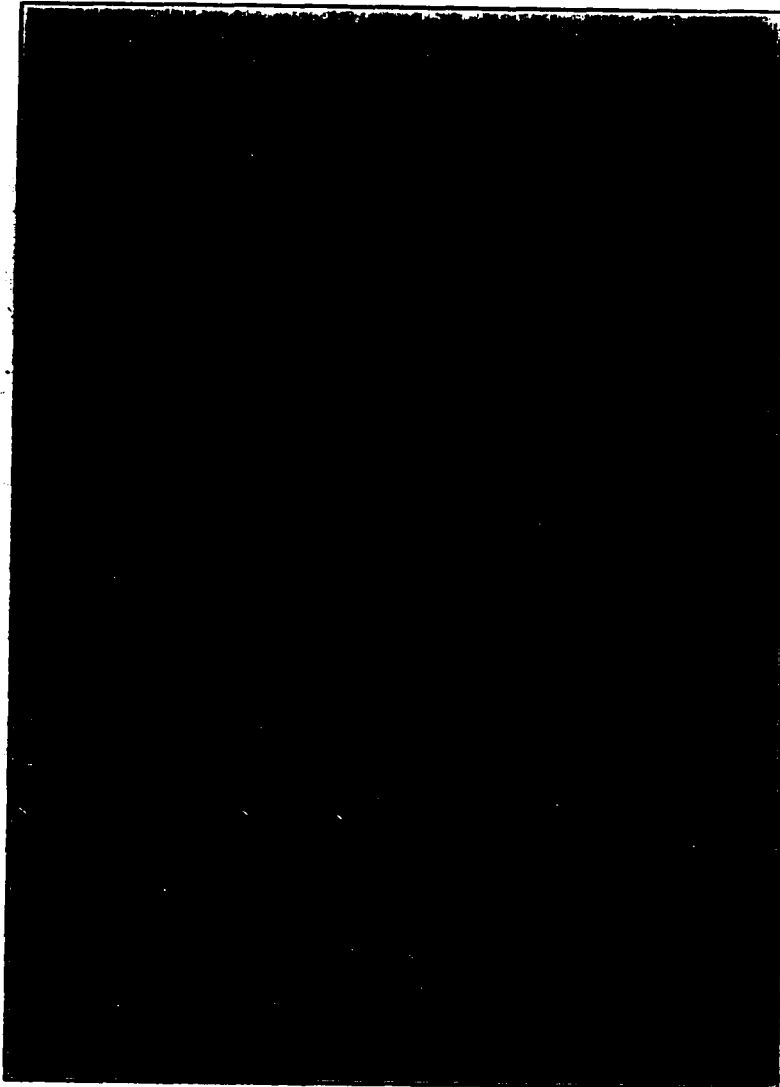


Everything should be removed from the jockey box and the box cleaned with soap and water. A coat of O. D. paint on all wooden parts will insure the cleanliness of the box. Black paint on all metal parts will replace the grease, prevent rust, and insure a good contrast between wood and metal.

For convenience, divide the jockey box into two compartments, calling the upper half, the upper compartment, and the lower half, the lower compartment.

A shelf made of wood that will fit in the upper part of the lower com-

partment of the jockey box, will hold all the harness accessories and smaller spare parts such as bolts, snaps and buckles. Two strips of wood nailed to



the sides of the jockey box will furnish a good foundation for the shelf to rest upon. (See photograph)

The spare parts can be fastened to the shelf by means of a leather strap and tacks. Long tacks are more desirable because they hold against the jar

of the wagon, and yet can be removed with little difficulty when any spare part is needed.

The lower compartment is divided into three sections and shelf. In one section are placed fitted shoes for each mule of the wagon team. These are fastened together in pairs and a leather tab attached, indicating the number of the mule. In the center section, the rub blocks, hame straps, and a ball of twine are arranged, while in the third section are placed the grooming kit, a can of axle grease, a can of harness soap, and a can of neats foot oil. Saddle soap cans are convenient for the axle grease. A pint of oil is more convenient, and can be carried with less danger of leakage than the larger quart cans.

In the upper compartment place the king bolt, monkey wrench, pick, and handle. The lantern is placed in a nose bag and the other nose bags are telescoped over each other, making a very compact and neat bundle, and protecting the lantern from breakage. No oil is carried in the lantern. The water bucket and halters are also placed in the upper compartment.

Irons hold the axe to the lid of the upper compartment. Irons on the under side of the seat hold the spade.

On the lid of the jockey box, a list of the spare parts and accessories is nailed or pasted.

Under the new system of marking animals, it is convenient, after carefully fitting and adjusting the collars and harness on the animals, to mark each set of harness with the mule's number. All numbers appear on the near side, making it convenient and an easy matter to ascertain the proper harness and collars for each mule when necessary to turn out. It also furnishes an excellent check for the inspecting officer. The number on the mule's neck, the blinder, the collar, and the tug near its junction to the hames, will give a complete check of the mule's harness.

Number the teams one, two, etc., and assign to wagons of the same number. Men are assigned to number one outfit, number two, three, etc. Place signs over harness in harness room, indicating the number of the team, the mules' numbers and the man's name. The team number is placed over the mules' stalls with name of the driver.

This system has been adopted in the 1st Cavalry Division and has proven to be very practical and satisfactory.

Polo

Polo Notes and Comment

By

FRANK A. BUTTERWORTH

(Reprinted by permission from THE SPORTSMAN)

THE THRILL which an accepted challenge for the International Polo Championship always brings coursed through the polo world lately, an emotion which no other event can achieve. Until the date of the match, the polo world will be watching the play and speculating upon the probable selections for the defending teams—and upon the result. Although we have matches each year which are hard fought, with magnificent and brilliant play that brings you to your feet time and again, they cannot arouse the prolonged interest and anticipation which precedes the International. That match alone has the color and background which mark the appearance of America's four best players and mounts against England's mightiest.

Talking of this thrill and of "big events" in other fields led recently to such a discussion as has often occurred as to the benefit of a big match which in interest exceeds all other events. It was and is said that such a contest tends to lessen interest in the regular events and, in so doing, that it is a discouraging factor to players who can never hope to reach the standard needed for the epic struggle, and so is not for the general good of the sport. This conclusion does not seem justified by experience. A big event captures the interest and arouses an enthusiasm which tend rather to energize participation in sport. No one knows just where, in what player, it stirs and rouses the ambition to be at some time good enough to play a part in the great match or meet or race, but the effort of each individual carries toward better performance. The intervening standards between the ambitious player and his goal can be achieved only by hard, persistent, and intelligent efforts which distribute a benefit to other players. The big event sustains interest and adds to the keenness of the great many who do not hope to reach the heights, but play for the joy of the contest; and they are the backbone of the sport. Sooner or later these good sportsmen are spectators at the big match, and they know better than others how to appreciate the skill, daring, coolness, the endurance and the sand, the horsemanship and teamwork which it calls forth. They are an inspiring audience. To take away the big match would withdraw an event which is colorful and stimulating to players and spectators.

493

A careful look around reveals very clearly that the polo world is a much greater world than it was a few years ago, which is the reason we are promised great matches among our own players. Not greater than we have had, for there have been magnificent, soul-stirring games, close and with brilliant play, not to be excelled anywhere—but there will be more of them and of more variety and color. As the clubs and players have grown in numbers, there are more teams of first-rate individuals who, by playing together continually, reach an excellent standard of team play. The Polo Association is stimulating club teams by tournaments and championships and the character of play is improving very steadily.

It is surprising to see how widespread is the interest in this ancient game. When Mr. H. P. Whitney assembled the team, soon afterwards to be known as the "Big Four," for preparatory work prior to going to England, where they won the International Cup in 1909, it was difficult to gather a team good enough to give them the desirable hard practice. There were not many players of such high calibre, particularly when it is remembered that they must fit in for team play, to be really useful. Now, however, there are so many high-class players that the problem is one of choice.

In the United States Polo Association there are something like a hundred clubs, with a large number of players on the handicapped list, and there are unknown numbers of beginners not yet handicapped. Furthermore, the game has taken strong hold in the colleges where it seems well established and on its way to becoming a recognized college sport, if that is not already accomplished. The Yale polo team, which won the inter-collegiate championship at the Westchester-Biltmore Club, meeting Harvard in the finals, and also the championship of the United States in indoor polo last year, was awarded a major "Y"—a coveted honor, which recognized the performance as one belonging to the class of major sports. In the recent past that was hardly dreamed of. Now it is even likely that one or two college players will be among the candidates for the international team.

Army Polo

Another and greater feature of polo growth is the Army's participation. Its play has come in such strides that an Army team has won the junior championship four out of the last five times. In 1925 they sent a four to England to play the British army four, acquitting themselves magnificently and winning in two straight matches. This team was composed of Maj. A. H. Wilson, Capt. P. P. Rodes, Capt. C. H. Gerhardt, and Maj. L. A. Beard. It is evident that from this source American polo is receiving a steady and growing number of skillful players, and it is a fair bet that the time is near when those outside the Army will be called on for great polo to hold their own in the championships. Just as soon as a few more high-handicapped Army players are developed and play in the Army contests, the standard of performance throughout will jump forward again, since a player needs most

the competition against better players to improve his own game. Another feature of general Army polo is in its favor; the officers are fairly evenly mounted and on horses suitable to players who are not yet proficient. It is better for such players to have mounts that do not exact too much attention from mallet work and team play; and it makes for better practice if the mounts are nearly equal rather than if some outclass the others. In addition to the fact that a moderate-sized and paced pony is far and away the best upon which to learn, it is also to be remembered that such mounts are likely to be available when the larger, faster horse is more difficult and expensive to secure since the demand for his type is greater than the supply.

The growth in polo playing and the somewhat changed character of play are responsible for the demand for a different type of mount in recent years. The play of the game has lengthened—strokes are longer and more sustained speed is called for, resulting in the use of larger and faster mounts than in the old days. All of which indicates the advantage accruing to those younger players of using the moderate paced and available type of mount, and the desirability of saving the larger, racing type with thoroughbred blood in him for playing after they have reached the point of development which calls for it. There comes a time, however, when it is necessary for the good of their game to be as discriminating and careful as possible in choosing their mount.

Old polo players have often observed that the matter of suitability of a pony to the player, and the training of the rider in the handling of his mount, could be given greater attention with much resulting benefit. A player needs to be something of a horseman, and a patient one, to obtain good response from his ponies. This patience and habit of giving thought to his mount ought to be cultivated in younger players especially. Man and mount must get on together; there are few riders who can "play anything." One pony may be splendidly suited to one player, while another and very good player on the same mount may be unable to do his game justice. Player and pony must be in harmony—fit each other—and a good player should seek that kind of mount, though always ready to do his best with what he has to ride. Ponies are such a tremendous part of the game, possess so much individuality, and often display such courage and gameness that they should receive the utmost consideration. They become as famous as the players, and many are the stories told of them with reverence and affection.

International Polo

The international defense committee has been announced with only one change. Mr. Robert E. Strawbridge could not serve again, and in his place Mr. Carleton Burke of California joins the committee. Mr. Strawbridge was very capable in advising as to the selection both of the mounts to be used by the international candidates and of the players, being a keen judge of both ponies and the game. But Mr. Burke has had a very long experience and is expected to meet this responsibility satisfactorily. And it is agreeable to see

California, which has contributed such good players as Mr. E. J. Boeseke, Jr., Mr. Eric Pedley, and Mr. Burke, taking part in the carving out of polo policy for the defense of the cup. The balance of the committee remains as it was for the last match. It includes Mr. H. P. Whitney, the creator of our present style of play, a strategist and great critic of the game. Few, if any, polo players can watch a team and pick out its strong and weak points so well. Mr. Devereux Milburn, the captain and back, who has the extraordinary record of having played in all the international matches since the Big Four brought the cup from England, adds his long experience and judgment; Mr. W. A. Harriman, a hard player, devoted to the game and very keen on ponies, energetic and enthusiastic; and Mr. L. E. Stoddard, chairman of the United States Polo Association and famous No. 1, a veteran internationalist with a long experience in the challenge matches, complete the committee. Polo players can feel full confidence in this group which will, however, have its hands full if England can assemble her best.

It is recognized that the polo-pony situation in England has improved very much since the low mark of depression incident to the war. Some very good ponies will be available from India, and England will arrive with a great string. It is too early, of course, to discuss the make-up of teams; but it is felt that for England, out of such players as Captain Roark, Maj. A. H. Williams, Lord Wodehouse, Maj. E. G. Atkinson, Capt. J. P. Dening, Mr. Louis Lacey, and Capt. R. George, one can visualize a team that would take a lot of beatings. Captain Roark, one of the most brilliant players to be seen on our fields, is a superb horseman. His unison with and his handling of his mount are worth going a long way to see. Lord Wodehouse is a strong, hard-playing back, and with a good No. 3 will put up a great game. Mr. Louis Lacey is famous on both sides of the water where he has played with the Argentine team; he is a tremendously effective and very skillful match player. Major Atkinson has played in international polo before, and with Major Williams, Captain George, and several other players, all of international calibre, there is indeed splendid material from which to choose.

For the American team there are possibly a greater number of players of international class from which to select, including, of course, the veteran four who last successfully defended the cup—Mr. Devereux Milburn, Mr. Malcolm Stevenson, Mr. Watson Webb, and Mr. Thomas Hitchcock. The preparatory play promises to be absorbingly interesting. It will probably be July before the practice is pointed for the matches and the most promising players are put into final competition. Prior to that time the usual tournaments and club play will be utilized to get into shape.

With Mr. Milburn and Mr. Hitchcock in condition, no one looms up now who seems likely to displace them at back and No. 2, respectively. Those who can prove themselves better than Mr. Malcolm Stevenson and Mr. Watson Webb will have to play well. Mr. Stevenson is very clever, wonderfully agile, very disturbing to the teamwork of the opponents, and valuable besides

because he plays well with his back. Mr. Webb is widely known, having played championship and international polo for years; at his best he shows a wonderful game.

In addition, the international tryout will probably include Mr. R. E. Strawbridge, Jr., Mr. J. Cheever Cowdin, Mr. Stephen Sanford, Mr. H. C. Phipps, Capt. P. P. Rodes, Capt. C. H. Gerhardt, Mr. Eric Pedley, Mr. E. J. Boeseke, Jr., Mr. Carleton F. Burke, Mr. L. E. Stoddard, Mr. F. W. C. Guest, Mr. Harry East, Mr. Fred Roe, and Mr. E. Hopping. The Army may furnish another player or two, so it appears now that we are fairly well off for practice and competition, and able also to furnish practice games for the English team after its arrival. America, too, looks able to hold her own in ponies, though it is always to be remembered that fine prospects are often not realized because of accidents and incidents of practice, which is true, of course, both of America and of England. There may be some change in our policy as to ponies. In the past, ponies have been contributed to a sort of general pool for international use including, of course, the tryout matches. This year, however, players will supply their own string of mounts; this will not mean that our best ponies are not available, but that the distribution of each mount will not be, at first, a responsibility of the committee. This will probably result in a more general effort to mount each player well. When it comes to mounting our four, the pick of all America's ponies will be, as usual, at the defense committee's disposal.

THE ARMY POLO TEAM

THE SIX CANDIDATES for the Army Polo Team have been at Mitchel Field, Long Island, for about six weeks preparing for the national tournaments of 1927.

In accordance with the policy adopted by the Central Polo Committee of retaining a nucleus of experienced players, and selecting the remainder from outstanding players of the previous year, the personnel of the Army Team will include some new players.

Those ordered to Mitchel Field are as follows:

- Captain Charles H. Gerhardt, Cavalry, West Point, N. Y.
- Captain George E. Huthsteiner, Cavalry, Fort Sam Houston, Tex.
- Captain C. A. Wilkinson, Cavalry, Fort Riley, Kans.
- Captain Peter P. Rodes, 14th Field Artillery, Ft. Sheridan, Ill.
- Captain Joseph S. Tate, 16th Field Artillery, Ft. Myer, Va.
- Lieut. Guy C. Benson, 16th Field Artillery, Ft. Myer, Va.

Captain Charles H. Gerhardt has come to the fore in polo in the last four years. In 1924 he played on the Army Team in the Junior Championship tournament. The following year he was a member of the Army Team that won the Junior Championship. That same year he went to England with the American Army Team that defeated the four representing the British Army.

Last summer he again played on the Army Junior Championship Team and then wound up the season on the Army-Meadowbrook Team with Mr. J. Watson Webb, Mr. Devereux Milburn, and Captain Peter P. Rodes as team mates.

Captain George E. Huthsteiner is no new-comer in Army polo circles. For several years he played on regimental and post polo teams. In 1925 he was a member of the Cavalry Division Team from Fort Bliss that won both the Inter-Circuit Championship and the Twelve-Goal Championship.

Captain C. A. Wilkinson has been seen in action on eastern fields before. In 1924 he was a member of the Army Team that played in the Junior Championship tournament. Last summer he came East with the Fort Leavenworth Team that won the Inter-Circuit Championship and the Twelve-Goal Championship. Prior to playing on the Fort Leavenworth Team Captain Wilkinson had considerable experience on the Pacific Coast.

Captain Peter P. Rodes, with a seven goal handicap, is well known in the Army and Eastern polo circles. After the World War Captain Rodes played regimental polo in the Central West and developed rapidly. In 1925 he went to England with the American Army Team that won the match tournament from the British Army Team. The same year he played on the Army Team that won the Junior Championship from Bryn Mawr at Rumson, New Jersey. Last summer he was a member of the Army-Meadowbrook Team that played in Eastern tournaments.

Captain Joseph S. Tate was a member of the Army Team representing the American Forces in Germany which played in England, France and Germany. Since his return to the United States he has followed the game as a member of local teams, and last fall played on the 16th Field Artillery Team at Fort Myer, Virginia.

Lieutenant Guy C. Benson was a member of the 1926 Army Team that won the Junior Championship. Last fall he played on the 16th Field Artillery Team at Fort Myer, Virginia.

The national and international titles now held by the Army are:

1. Junior Championship of America
2. Military Championship of Great Britain and America
3. Championship of Hawaiian Islands
4. Inter-Circuit Championship
5. Twelve-Goal Championship

Horse Shows

WEST POINT HORSE SHOW

AWARDS to service entries at the West Point Horse Show, June 6-7, follow:
Saddle Horses over 14.2 and under 15.2 hands—3d, *Cherokee Princess*, Mrs. John Tupper Cole.

Saddle Mares over 14.2 hands—3d, *Cherokee Princess*, Mrs. John Tupper Cole.

Saddle Horses over 14.2 hands (ladies to ride)—2d, *Cherokee Princess*, Mrs. John Tupper Cole.

Saddle Horses over 14.2 hands—2d, *Sandy MacGregor*, Mrs. John Tupper Cole.

Saddle Horse Sweepstake—3d, *Cherokee Princess*, Mrs. John Tupper Cole.

Road Hacks—2d, *Jennie*, Mrs. John Tupper Cole.

Model Saddle Horses—4th, *Cherokee Princess*, Mrs. J. T. Cole.

Polo Mounts or Branded Hacks—2d, *First Flight*, Capt. and Mrs. David S. Rumbough;

3d, *Rabbit's Foot*, Capt. J. N. Caperton; 4th, *Tell-Me-More*, Major H. McC. Snyder, M. C.

Novice Road Hacks—Won by *Ruth*, Mrs. J. T. Cole; 2d, *Rain Cloud*, Maj. H. McC. Snyder; 3d, *King Jimmy*, Mrs. J. N. Caperton.

Lightweight Polo Mounts—Won by *P. D. Q.*, Squadron A, N. Y. N. G.; 3d, *Ruth*, Capt. C. H. Gerhardt; 4th, *King*, Lieut. E. S. Molitor, F. A.

Middleweight and Heavyweight Polo Mounts—2d, *Quinnie*, Capt. C. H. Gerhardt; 3d, *Captain George*, Lieut. E. S. Molitor, F. A.; 4th, *Lucita*, Lieut. Alexander McCone, F. A.

Champion Polo Mount—2d, *Quinnie*, Capt. C. H. Gerhardt; 3d, *P. D. Q.*, Squadron A, N. Y. N. G.

Mares suitable to produce Polo Mounts—Won by *P. D. Q.*, Squadron A, N. Y. N. G.; 3d, *Sister Sue*, Capt. J. T. Cole; 4th, *Tell-Me-More*, Major H. McC. Snyder.

Teams of three Polo Mounts—Won by Cadets Curtis, Hackman and Aloe; 2d, Cadets Harkin, Hughes and Matthews.

Ponies suitable to become Polo Mounts—Won by *P. D. Q.*, Squadron A, N. Y. N. G.; 3d, *Tell-Me-More*, Maj. H. McC. Snyder; 3d, *Hondo Girl*, Capt. C. H. Gerhardt; 4th, *Rabbit's Foot*, Capt. J. N. Caperton.

Stake Race—Won by *Captain*, Capt. J. N. Caperton; 2d, *King*, Lieut. E. S. Molitor; 3d, *Quinnie*, Capt. C. H. Gerhardt; 4th, *P. D. Q.*, Squadron A, N. Y. N. G.

Officers' Chargers, lightweight—Won by *Messenger*, Squadron A, N. Y. N. G.; 2d, *Hughes*, Capt. C. H. Gerhardt; 3d, *Tuscaloosa*, Capt. J. E. Morrisette, Ad. G. D.

Officers' Chargers, middle and heavyweight—Won by *Irish Crystal*, Squadron A, N. Y. N. G.; 2d, *First Flight*, Capt. David S. Rumbough; 3d, *Maggidore*, Lieut. A. T. McCone.

Troopers' Mounts—Won by *McCaw*, Sgt. Raine; 2d, *Haldack*, Pvt. 1st Cl. Banks; 3d, *Lydecker*, Pvt. Long; 4th, *Allen*, Pvt. Rogers.

Cavalry Remounts—2d, *First Flight*, Capt. and Mrs. David S. Rumbough; 3d, *Rabbit's Foot*, Capt. J. N. Caperton; 4th, *Southern Gold*, Capt. and Mrs. D. S. Rumbough.

Jumping for Cadets in Uniform—Won by *Dena*, Cadet Thomas; 2d, *Sumner*, Cadet Washburns; 3d, *Baker*, Cadet Brown; 4th, *Lydecker*, Cadet Asmip.

Horses suitable to become Officers' Mounts—Won by *Lucky Point*, Capt. C. H. Gerhardt; 2d, *Rabbit's Foot*, Capt. J. N. Caperton; 3d, *Imp*, Capt. J. N. Caperton; 4th, *Just So*, Capt. J. T. Cole.

Jumping for Officers in uniform—Won by *Oxford*, Squadron A, N. Y. N. G.; 2d,

200

HORSE SHOWS

499

Buckaroo, Capt. J. T. Cole; 3d, *Duke*, Lieut. W. W. Jervey; 4th, *Big Bertha*, Capt. J. T. Cole.

Local Jumping Class—Won by *Campbell*, Lieut. A. T. McCone; 2d, *Duke*, Lieut. W. W. Jervey; 3d, *McCaw*, Lieut. H. C. Mewshaw; 4th, *Cordin*, Lieut. C. E. Morrison.

Jumping for Cadets in Uniform—Won by *Campbell*, Cadet Aloe; 2d, *Gristly*, Cadet Sinclair; 3d, *Fowler*, Cadet Curtis; 4th, *Baker*, Cadet Cobb.

Heavy and Middleweight Hunters—3d, *Southern Gold*, Capt. and Mrs. D. S. Rumbough.

Lightweight Hunters—Won by *Royal Academy*, Squadron A, N. Y. N. G.; 2d, *Messenger*, Squadron A, N. Y. N. G.

Ladies' Hunters—2d, *Southern Gold*, Capt. and Mrs. D. S. Rumbough; 3d, *Messenger*, Squadron A, N. Y. N. G.

Jumping, open to all—Won by *Oxford*, Squadron A, N. Y. N. G.; 2d, *Buckaroo*, Capt. J. T. Cole; 4th, *Messenger*, Squadron A, N. Y. N. G.

Jumping, open to all—Won by *Buckaroo*, Capt. J. T. Cole; 2d, *Oxford*, Squadron A, N. Y. N. G.; 3d, *Queen's Own*, Capt. J. N. Caperton.

Jumping, open to all—2d, *Messenger*, Squadron A, N. Y. N. G.; 3d, *Buckaroo*, Capt. J. T. Cole.

A Touch-and-Go Sweepstake—Won by *Messenger*, Squadron A, N. Y. N. G.; 2d, *Oxford*, Squadron A, N. Y. N. G.

Triple Bar Jump—3d, *Queen's Own*, Capt. J. N. Caperton; 4th, *Geraldyn*, Lieut. H. C. Mewshaw.

Champion Hunter—2d, *Royal Academy*, Squadron A, N. Y. N. G.

The Cathedral Cup—2d, *P. D. Q.*, Squadron A, N. Y. N. G.

NEWARK HORSE SHOW

FOLLOWING are the awards to service entries at the Newark Horse Show, April 21-23, 1927:

Jumping, open to all—Won by *Topaz*; 2d, *Messenger*; 3d, *Oxford*, all Squadron A, N. Y. N. G.

Sweepstakes—Won by *Oxford*, Squadron A.

Heavy and Middleweight—Won by *Irish Crystal*, Squadron A; 2d, *Southern Gold*, Captain and Mrs. David Rumbough; 4th, *The Quaker*, J. A. Barry.

Troopers' Jumpers—Won by *Put-'Em-Up*, Chas. J. Hodge; 2d, *Duce*, Robt. W. Lavin; 3d, *Lucky Boy*, Chas. J. Hodge; 4th, *Faith*, Troop F Ass'n.

Corinthian Class—Won by *Royal Academy*, Squadron A; 2d, *Irish Crystal*, same owner; 4th, *Messenger*, Squadron A.

Sweepstakes Triple Bar—Won by *Oxford*; 2d, *Skylight*, both Squadron A.

Lightweight Hunters—Won by *Royal Academy*, Squadron A.

Ladies' Hunters—Won by *Royal Academy*, Squadron A; 3d, *Irish Crystal*, Squadron A.

Sweepstakes—2d, *Oxford*, Squadron A.

Officers' Jumpers—Won by *Oxford*, Squadron A; 2d, *Messenger*, same owner; 3d, *Tiny Tim*, Lt. A. C. Miller; 4th, *Buckles*, Westfield Troop Ass'n.

Officers' Chargers—Won by *Little Bay*, Troop F, Ass'n; 3d, *Irish Crystal*, Squadron A; 4th, *Diana*, Service Troop, 102d Cavalry.

Troopers' Mounts—Won by *Baldy*, Troop B Ass'n; 2d, *Miss G*, Westfield Troop Ass'n; 3d, *Sultan* and 4th, *Shamrock*, same owner.

Officers' Chargers for the Hahne & Co. Cup—Won by *Rusty*, Lt. E. N. Bloomer; 2d, *Dick*, Maj. Hardy J. Bush; 3d, *Mary Glaser*, Troop F Ass'n; 4th, *Le Gris*, Lt. Wm. J. Tanffe.

Horsemanship class open only to enlisted men of the 102d Cavalry—Won by 1st Sgt. Donald A. MacGrath; 2d, Sgt. Wm. Heber; 3d, Sgt. A. Tearas; 4th, Sgt. Paul Burke.

Troopers' Mounts—Won by *Miss G*, Westfield Troop Ass'n; 2d, *Baldy*, Troop B Ass'n; 3d, *Nellie*, 1st Sgt. Donald A. MacGrath; 4th, *Apple*, Sgt. Paul Burke.

Lightweights—Won by P. D. Q., Squadron A; 2d, *Pinto*, Essex Troop.
 Middle and Heavyweights—Won by *Hickory*, Essex Troop; 2d, *Le Gris*, Lt. Wm. J. Taaffe; 3d, *M' Friend*, Westfield Troop Ass'n; 4th, *Hearts*, Essex Troop Polo Ass'n.
 Polo Mounts—Won by P. D. Q., Squadron A; 2d, *Pinto*, Essex Troop; 3d, *Lady Luck*, Westfield Troop; 4th, *Duchess*, Essex Troop.

BROOKLYN HORSE SHOW

AWARDS to service entries at the Brooklyn Horse Show, April 26-30 are as follows:

Novice Jumpers—Won by Squadron A's *Oxford*.
 Hunters—2d, Squadron A, N. Y. N. G.'s *Royal Academy*.
 Lightweight Hunters—Won by Squadron A's *Royal Academy*; 2d, Squadron A's *Messenger*.
 Jumpers (jumps 4 feet 3 inches)—2d, Captain C. H. Gerhardt's *Hughes*.
 Jumpers (jumps 4 feet)—2d, Captain J. T. Cole's *Buckaroo*.
 Heavy and Middleweight Hunters—Won by Squadron A's *Irish Crystal*.
 Jumpers (over jumps at 4 feet 6 inches)—2d, Captain J. T. Cole's *Queen's Own*; 3d, Captain C. H. Gerhardt's *Hughes*.
 Corinthian Class (ridden by members in hunt's colors)—Won by Squadron A's *Royal Academy*; 3d, Captain and Mrs. David S. Rumbough's *Southern Gold*; 4th, Squadron A's *Messenger*.
 Handy Hunters—2d, Captain J. T. Cole's *Buckaroo*; 4th, Captain C. H. Gerhardt's *Hughes*.
 Jumpers—2d, Captain C. H. Gerhardt's *Hughes*.
 Hunters—2d, Captain and Mrs. David S. Rumbough's *First Flight*; 4th, Captain and Mrs. David S. Rumbough's *Southern Gold*.
 Model Hunters to be shown in hand—Won by *Royal Academy*, Squadron A.
 Ladies' Hunters, ladies to ride—4th, Captain and Mrs. David S. Rumbough's *Southern Gold*.
 Jumpers, triple bar—3d, *Oxford*, Squadron A; 4th, *Queen's Own*, Captain J. T. Cole.
 Pairs of Hunters or Jumpers—Won by Captain C. H. Gerhardt's *Hughes* and Captain J. T. Cole's *Buckaroo*.
 Saddle Horses (over 15 and under 15.2)—3d, Mrs. John Tupper Cole's *Cherokee Princess*.
 The President's Cup—4th, Mrs. John Tupper Cole's *Cherokee Princess*.
 Road Hacks—Won by Mrs. John Tupper Cole's *Jennie*.
 Saddle Horses, walking class for horses over 14.2 hands—Won by *Jennie*, Mrs. J. Tupper Cole.

PHILADELPHIA INDOOR HORSE SHOW

AWARDS to service entries in the Philadelphia Indoor Horse Show, May 4-7, were as follows:

Trooper's Field Equipment—Won by *Res. 108d Cavalry*, P. N. G.; 2d, *Jacob Al*, Troop A, 108d Cavalry; 3d, *Sergeant Jim*, Troop C, 108d Cavalry; 4th, *Sunshine*, Quartermaster Corps School.
 Trooper's Mounts—Won by *Peter Pan*, 108d Cav.; 2d, *Sturys*, Quartermaster Corps School; 3d, *General Bing*, First Troop, Phila. City Cav.; 4th, *Dick*, same owner.
 Officer's Chargers—Won by *Sturys*, 308th Cav.; 2d, *Peter Pan*, Capt. G. Goodyear; 3d, *Bla*, same owner; 4th, *Dick*, Lt. C. C. Madala.
 Military Jumping Class—Won by *The Rambler*, First Troop, Phila. City Cav.; 2d, *Tupperary*, Lt. J. M. Kennedy; 3d, *Dick*, First Troop; 4th, *Peter Pan*, Capt. Goodyear.

The National Guard

National Guardsman - Charles A. Lindbergh

WHAT MANNER OF MAN is Captain Charles A. Lindbergh? Hundreds of thousands of words have been written of this young man since the "Spirit of St. Louis" took the air at New York, and his youthful features are familiar to people the world over through the rapid distribution of his photographs, yet with all the publicity one finds people asking—"Well, is all this true or is it merely publicity?"

There is one place where dispassionate, matter-of-factness reigns supreme; where magination and the human-interest touch are barred from all considerations; where only the cold truth finds its way into type or print. In the official records of the Militia Bureau of the War Department is the record of Captain Charles A. Lindbergh, 110th Observation Squadron, 35th Division, Missouri National Guard. The record dates from 1924, long before the New York to Paris flight was planned and the statements appearing therein, matter-of-fact at the time, now have the necessary attributes of prophecy.

"Mr. Lindbergh is an intelligent, industrious, young man, and displays an unusual interest in his work. This coupled with his capabilities has led me to believe that he will successfully complete everything he undertakes."

Prophets often receive little recognition, but in the case of Capt. C. R. Wassell of the Missouri National Guard it is believed that honor is due. The above quotation is taken from a recommendation Capt. Wassell forwarded to the Chief, Militia Bureau, in 1925, when the then Mr. Lindbergh was making application for commission in the National Guard of Missouri.

The man whose name is known in every corner of the world today was appraised with a keen eye. The indomitable will which carried him in his 3600 mile jaunt from New York to Paris in 1927 was evident in 1925 and made its way into the official records of the Militia Bureau of the War Department.

Captain Lindbergh first made application for flying training as an Air Corps Cadet in September, 1923. His recommendations were accepted and he entered upon his training at Brooks Field, Texas, in March, 1924, and at the expiration of one year was graduated as a Flying Cadet and commissioned as a Second Lieutenant in the Officers Reserve Corps.

As Second Lieutenant, Officers Reserve Corps, he was on active duty from July 5, 1925 to July 20, 1925. On December 7, 1925, he made application for a commission in the 110th Observation Squadron of the 35th Division, Missouri National Guard.

In addition to the recommendations of Capt. Wassell quoted above, other

recommendations as to Lieutenant Lindbergh's qualifications were submitted to the examining board. In these occur such expressions as—"ambitious, hardworking, intelligent"; "honest, energetic and industrious"; "honest, energetic, dependable"; "a man of good moral habits and regular in all his business transactions."

With these personal recommendations and the record of his previous training before it, the board waived further examination and upon its recommendation, Second Lieutenant Lindbergh, Officers Reserve Corps, became First Lieutenant Lindbergh, 110th Observation Squadron, Missouri National Guard, on December 7, 1925.

Lieutenant Lindbergh received his rating as Airplane Pilot after graduation from the Air Service Advanced Flying School at Kelly Field, Texas, on March 14, 1925.

Early in 1926 a vacancy in the grade of Captain occurred in the 110th Observation Squadron in Missouri and Lieutenant Lindbergh was appointed to fill the vacancy. In the recommendations accompanying his papers appears the phrase—"conscientious and efficient in the performances of his duties." When he was given his physical examination for flying to qualify for promotion, the Flight Surgeon Lieutenant M. L. Green, Medical Corps, who conducted the test which is the most exacting required in the Army, stated in his summary—"he is purposeful, yet quick of reaction, alert, intelligent, congenial."

Lieutenant Lindbergh got his promotion to Captain on July 13, 1926, and by virtue of that commission in the National Guard of Missouri, was promoted to Captain in the Officers Reserve Corps on November 22, 1926.

Aviators are required to take a physical examination every six months and on March 17, 1926, Captain F. C. Venn, Medical Corps, expressed himself regarding the to-be-famous young officer as "satisfactory, stable, serious, frank, modest, alert, deliberate."

There has arisen a host of people who belong to the "I told you so" club, and another host who belong to the "I knew him when" club; but whose who recorded their observations and beliefs in the official National Guard records two years before the Great Adventure may lay claim to the only charter memberships.

Captain Charles A. Lindbergh not only proved his courage, initiative, technical qualifications, and physical strength by his flight across the Atlantic, but in his difficult role as Flying Ambassador to Europe he has proved to be "alert, intelligent, stable, serious, frank, modest and deliberate." We often pass by the obvious. In the light of recent events it seems strange that those who placed their observations in the records should not have realized that this man was destined for greatness. A man who possesses all the qualities recorded as making up the real Charles A. Lindbergh could not be a failure.

Facts and figures, statistics in the National Guard records, may not make interesting reading as a general rule, but you cannot write uninteresting facts about a man whose examination questions can only be answered by the use of superlative.

FIRST SQUADRON, 103D CAVALRY

Pennsylvania National Guard

On the night of April 30th, this Squadron was reviewed by Major General Charles H. Muir. This date was the eighth anniversary of the return of the 28th Division from France under the command of General Muir. The General was accompanied by Lt. Colonel Theodore D. Boal, who served as Aide to him during the War.

The Squadron, at this time, is under the command of Major Edward Hoopes, who also served as Aide to the General when he commanded the 4th Corps in the occupied area.

Before the Review, the officers of the Squadron entertained the General at dinner at the Union League and, afterwards, the films "Flashes of Action" and the "Life O'Riley" were exhibited to the entire Squadron and their friends.

Over Memorial Day, the Squadron marched from the Armory in Philadelphia to the Second Troop Farm, above Norristown. The march to the Farm was made at night with stripped saddles and the 26 miles were covered in 6½ hours, without a sore back and the loss of only one shoe.

Brigadier Edward C. Shannon and Colonel Arthur C. Colahan, Brigade and Regimental Commanders, were the guests of the Squadron officers.

On Sunday, the 103rd Observation Squadron, under Major John S. Owens, flew three planes to the Camp and, in the afternoon, took up a number of the officers in order to give them an opportunity to observe cavalry from the air.

The return march was made on Memorial Day.



Fourteenth Cavalry Polo Team

From left to right: Lieut. I. D. Whitt, No. 2; Lieut. C. A. Thorp, No. 1; Lieut. W. L. Weinang, Substitute; Lieut. H. L. Kinnison, Jr., No. 3; Lieut. G. W. Busby, No. 4.

The Organized Reserves

PROMOTION OF RESERVE OFFICERS

BY THE TIME this number reaches our readers it is expected that the Secretary of War will have announced his decision in regard to the policy to be followed in the future promotion of members of the Officers' Reserve Corps. It will be recalled that some months ago regulations governing such promotions were issued.

Prior to the issuance of these regulations the War Department had devoted much study to the subject and had obtained the views of representative Reserve officers. Representatives of the Reserve Officers' Association, however, objected to some of the features of the policy outlined in the regulations and protests soon came pouring in.

As a result, a committee of Reserve officers was convened at Washington for a study of the problems involved in the promotion question, and after a thorough consideration of the subject, submitted certain recommendations to the Secretary of War. These have been carefully studied and it is believed that when the new regulations appear, Reserve officers will find that their interests, as well as those of the government, have been duly considered.

305TH CAVALRY (62nd Cavalry Division)—Philadelphia, Pa.

Colonel W. Innes Forbes, Commanding

On April 21st the regiment, in compliance with A. R. held its third Regimental Day Celebration in Philadelphia. It was a great success.

An exhibition ride was held at the 103rd Cavalry Armory. Only 24 members of the equitation class could ride, due to the fact that a shortage of equipment existed. However, through the kindness of Major H. F. D. Minnikhuysen, Director of Horsemanship, Q. M. School, who loaned the regiment 24 sets of equipment and white tie ropes, the class made a very smart appearance. Colonel Forbes, commanding the Regiment, was highly complimented by the officer guests of the Regular Army and National Guard who viewed the ride from the boxes. The reviewing stand was decorated with the regimental standards and cavalry colors. Captain William S. Brogden, commanding Troop A, conducted and controlled the ride by whistle and was highly complimented for the precision in execution of all the intricate movements.

The ride, given in honor of General Douglas MacArthur, commanding the Third Corps Area, consisted of 23 movements, and jumping a course of 3 ft. 6 in. jumps both singly and in pairs.

Following the program at the Armory, the regimental dinner at which Colonel John C. Greene, President 305th Cavalry Association presided, was held at the Racquet Club.

General Douglas MacArthur, the principal speaker of the evening, gave an instructive talk on preparedness.

Colonel John C. Greene, President 305th Cavalry Association embodied in his talk

504

THE ORGANIZED RESERVES

505

a brief history of the Regiment and especially stressed the wonderful spirit of the Regiment and its future.

Colonel W. Innes Forbes, commanding the Regiment, in compliance with par. 7, A. R. 345-106, reviewed the activities and the accomplishments of the officers and men of the regiment during the past year. Colonel Forbes thanked Colonel Hunt and Major Minnikhuysen in the name of the whole Regiment for their kindness in allowing the regiment to use the Q. M. horses for the riding class and tactical rides. He also thanked Captain Wood for his kindness to the regiment.

Other speakers were General Shannon and Colonel Haines.

The attendance at the dinner surpassed all expectations, 69 members of the Regiment, besides their guests being present. This was the largest assembly of members of the Regiment at any dinner in its history.

Philadelphia Indoor Horse Show

The Regiment was represented by ten entries in the Military Classes of the Philadelphia Indoor Horse Show held at 103rd Cavalry Armory from May 4th to 7th.

The following named officers exhibited: Major Thompson, Captains Bell and Young, Lieutenants Mitchell, Esler, and Churchill.

In the officers Charger class, the Regiment took first and second place. Lieutenant Mitchell winning the cup and blue ribbon on *Sturgis*, while Major Thompson on *BW* won the red ribbon.

Lieut. Mitchell is just receiving congratulations from the whole Regiment for his fine performance and horsemanship in winning the blue ribbon on a Quartermaster mount in a field of twelve entries comprising some of the best horses in Philadelphia. In this class, Captain Bell, riding a remount, green in the horse show ring, although not placing, put up a good performance.

Major Thompson, Captain Young, Lieuts. Mitchell and Esler, entered the Military Jumping class. In this class performance over jumps only counted. Although the Regiment did not take a ribbon, Captain Young and Lieuts. Mitchell and Esler gave fine exhibitions of horsemanship in getting difficult green horses to complete the course of jumps.

Pistol Tournament

The pistol tournament conducted by these headquarters from April 25th to May 2nd was won by the 315th Infantry, O. R., which was presented with the beautiful cup donated by Colonel Joseph W. Keller, 310th F. A. Besides the winner the following organizations entered teams: 310th F. R. O. R. 311th F. A. O. R., 1st City Troop, Troop "A", 103rd Cav., Troop "C" 103rd Cav., P. N. G., and 305th Cavalry, O. R. Through the kindness of Captain Clement B. Wood, Commanding 1st City Troop, all the matches were shot at the indoor range, 1st City Troop Armory.

Although the regimental team was eliminated in its first match, the officers did very well considering it was their first time in competition. The team was composed of Captain Livingston, Lieuts. Kirk, Esler Meehan and Hunter. Lieuts. Meehan and Hunter shot exceptionally well.

The competition was very keen in all the matches, and the tournament accomplished its mission as far as stirring up interest in pistol shooting in the military organizations in Philadelphia. Plans are already in progress for another round robin tournament next year in which practically all military organizations in the city will enter teams.

1926-27 Inactive Training

As scheduled, the 1926-27 Inactive Training period for the regiment closed on April 30th. The attendance at equitation, conferences, map problems, rifle and pistol shoots, and demonstrations was larger than ever before. Great credit is due the officers and enlisted men of the regiment who regularly attended these activities. Besides

giving their time to the training, they also had to pay for same out of their own pockets, as there were certain expenses connected with each activity for which no funds were available. This is a fine spirit, when officers are willing to pay for their training, and shows the keenest interest in the military game.

The work in equitation was particularly gratifying, as was proven by the exhibition ride given in honor of Major General MacArthur on April 21st.

Polo

During the indoor polo season, which ended the first week in April, the regimental team played twelve games with outside teams, winning nine and losing three.

The first team played into the finals of the 103rd Cavalry Invitation Tournament, but the final game with Wenonah was not played, due to a misunderstanding and disagreement regarding a fair distribution of ponies for the game. The matter was placed in the hands of the 103rd Cavalry Polo Association for a decision. They decided the matter satisfactorily and directed the game be played on April 23rd. However, as Wenonah had sent most of their ponies to pasture, the game could not be played this year, but will be settled next indoor season.

306TH CAVALRY

Colonel J. H. A. Day, Commanding

The most successful year of inactive training in the history of the 306th Cavalry came to a close at the end of June. Greater interest was shown by members of the regiment in the organization's activities than ever before. This was evident especially in the twice-a-week rides which were held throughout the year from the first of October. An average of 80 men attended each ride. The maximum attendance for any ride was 45.

The regiment is indebted to the 107th Field Artillery, National Guard of Pennsylvania, for the use of mounts and riding hall. The training program for the year covered equitation, jumping, close order and extended order drill for squads, platoons and troop, and sabre practice.

Interest in jumping was stimulated by the offer of a silver cup for the best score in a jumping competition. Scoring was held during November, December, February and March. Lieutenant Lee captured the cup, with Lieutenant Peebles in second place and Sergeant Barr third. The cup was given by Major G. H. Cherrington, Division Ordnance Officer.

Rides during May and June were conducted outdoors. Through the efforts of Lieutenant U. S. Madden, the regiment obtained the use of a piece of land adjacent to the U. S. Veterans' Hospital at Aspinwall for a mounted and dismounted pistol and sabre course.

The regiment acquired three new men during the winter: 1st Lieut. George W. Conner, and Privates Alexander Froede and Charles B. Sproull.

New Books Reviewed

The World Crisis, 1916-1918 By WINSTON S. CHURCHILL. Two Volumes. 573 pp. Maps. Charles Scribner's Sons, New York. \$10.00.

The "stormy petrel" of British political life has in these final volumes completed his picture of the "World Crisis." His two earlier books, which covered the period from 1911 to the end of 1915, have paved the way for a final effort which brings to a satisfactory conclusion one of the outstanding pieces of literature dealing with the War.

From the beginning of his career as a newspaper correspondent in the days of Khartoum and the Boer War, Churchill's personality and his original views have managed to keep him in a constant state of controversy with his colleagues. The service he rendered Great Britain and the Allies by his action as First Sea Lord in mobilizing the Grand Fleet at the psychological moment before the explosion in 1914, was almost forgotten in the criticism heaped upon him after the Dardanelles fiasco. This episode resulted in his temporary eclipse and withdrawal from the government.

As a spectator, however, his eyes and ears were not idle, and his intimacy with Lloyd George furnished him unusual opportunities for observing the inner workings of the War from the allied viewpoint.

An interesting feature in his narrative is his disagreement with the military point of view in regard to the conduct of the War, especially in regard to the tremendously expensive offensives undertaken by the Allies on the Western Front, the premature introduction of the tank into battle, and the constant opposition to the undertaking of any serious operations on any front than the Western.

With respect to all of these mooted questions, Mr. Churchill has marshaled an array of plausible evidence which goes far to uphold his contentions.

In regard to the policy of attrition on the Western Front, advocated by Sir William Robertson, Chief of the Imperial General Staff, he has this to say: "In the face of the official figures now published and set out in the tables, what becomes of the argument of the battle of attrition? If we lose three or four times as many officers and nearly twice as many men in our attack as the enemy in his defense, how are we wearing him down? The result of every one of these offensives was to leave us relatively weaker—and in some cases terribly weaker—than the enemy. The aggregate result of all of them from 1915 to 1917 (after deducting the losses on both sides in the German attack on Verdun) was a French and British casualty list of 4,123,000 compared to a German total of 2,166,000."

An incidental feature of the work is a first class description of the battle of Jutland, in which the author, while not criticizing Admiral Jellicoe, inferentially holds him responsible for the indecisive character of the engagement.

Back in the Cabinet in July, 1917, as Minister of Munitions, Mr. Churchill, in carrying on the great organization established by Lloyd George, again had an active part in the War.

While he has comparatively little to say of our participation in the War, the author does not belittle it. He had very close relations with the American War Industries Board. He says that "no ally could have given more resolute understanding and broad-minded co-operation" than he received from it. He further expresses the opinion that "the moral consequences of the United States joining the Allies was indeed the deciding course in the conflict."

The military student, the student of politics, and the general reader will each find

much of interest and value in this work, which by reason of its graphic style, scope, and historical value, stands in the first rank of literature dealing with the Great War.

The Bridge to France By EDWARD N. HURLEY. Illustrated. 334 pp. J. B. Lippincott Company, Philadelphia. \$5.00.

On account of the tremendous toll of allied shipping taken by German submarines, and the adoption by the Germans early in 1917 of the policy of unrestricted submarine warfare, one of the major problems of our government after our declaration of war, was the securing of the necessary tonnage for the transportation of men and supplies to Europe. Our preliminary venture into this activity was not encouraging. What with the differences of opinion over the relative merits of steel, wooden, and concrete ships, and the unfortunate Gettysburg-Denman controversy, our shipbuilding program appeared doomed to failure before it had scarcely begun.

At this juncture Mr. Edward N. Hurley was appointed by the President as chairman of the U. S. Shipping Board, and the situation improved at once.

The book under consideration is Mr. Hurley's story of the inside workings of the U. S. Shipping Board and Emergency Fleet Corporation, and it is a tale of tremendous achievement. Many interesting facts in connection with the conduct of the War are for the first time given to the public. The author not only describes the great effort which, in spite of many difficulties, resulted in the construction in record time of 533 ships, but also gives many details of the activities of practically every branch of the naval, military, political, and economic strategy of the Allies here and abroad.

By way of introduction, a chapter on the launching of the political career of Woodrow Wilson describes a number of interesting events which have hitherto been unpublished.

During the War and after the Armistice, Mr. Hurley came into contact with many of the outstanding characters on both sides of the Atlantic. His observations on their work and personalities add much to the interest of the narrative.

This book is one of the outstanding works on the War and should be read in order to obtain a complete picture of that great conflict.

Revolt in the Desert By T. E. LAWRENCE. Map and Illustrations. 335 pp. George H. Doran and Company, New York. \$3.00.

This long awaited book by the strange and mysterious figure who has been called the "Uncrowned King of Three Nations" has at last appeared, and its characterizations as "an epic of modern times" and as "both a record of great deeds and the presentation of the soul of a land and a people, and the soul of a man" appear to be justified.

The author, a brilliant student of archaeology, was in 1914 serving as an assistant in the British Museum's excavation of Carchemish on the Euphrates. A long sojourn in the Near East had made him thoroughly familiar with the Arabian people, their customs, and language.

Upon the outbreak of war, Lawrence became identified with the Intelligence Service of the British Army in Egypt, but in 1916, tiring of the monotonous duties at Headquarters, he obtained leave and took upon himself the task of encouraging an Arab revolt against the Turks. Associating himself with Feisal, the son of Hussein, Grand Sherif of Mecca, he eventually had practically the whole of Arabia in arms on the side of the Allies.

Dressing as an Arab and living as a Bedouin, the author was the leader in some of the most astonishing and adventurous enterprises of which there is any record. It was a life of hardship. Exposed to extreme heat or extreme cold as they traversed waterless deserts or crossed rugged mountain ranges, his motley followers were happy, if such privations culminated in a lively fight with the Turks or in the blowing up of a train.

When Allenby was making his great drive towards Jerusalem and Damascus which resulted in the collapse of the Turks, the Arabs were working in close co-operation with him, and Lawrence was among the first to enter the latter city.

In its style, in the stirring events it describes, and as a revelation of the extraordinary personality of its author, this book is unique. It is a most remarkable narrative.

The Military Genius of Abraham Lincoln By BRIG. GENERAL COLIN R. BALLARD. With Maps. 246 pp. Oxford University Press, American Branch, New York. \$5.00.

While the many excellent qualities of our martyred war president have been generally recognized in this country, few if any have given him credit for any great amount of ability as a strategist. It remains for a noted British authority to attempt to demonstrate that Abraham Lincoln was one of the great military geniuses of history.

As a basis for his estimate, the author states: "My theory is that Lincoln had a fine grasp of the big situation. He realized that numbers, resources and command of the sea were on his side; these factors must eventually wear down the resistance of the South, provided no opportunity were given to a clever enemy to deal a knockout blow before the resources of the North were fully developed."

Following out this line of reasoning the author sees Mr. Lincoln as considerably in advance of his time as a strategist and the forerunner of that which is known as "the high command."

Those who have been fortunate enough to read the author's similar work on Napoleon will acknowledge his fitness to discuss his subject, and will accord his opinions due respect.

This work does not pretend to be a history of the Civil War. The principal campaigns and battles are discussed from strategical and tactical viewpoints, with special reference to the influence thereon of Mr. Lincoln's instructions and policies.

This work is an important contribution to Civil War literature as well as to that dealing with Abraham Lincoln.

Thoroughbred Types, published by C. D. Lanier, 55 Fifth Avenue, New York. \$15.00. Reviewed by A. J. O. Culbertson

Anyone who has ever owned a really good horse has tried to preserve a photographic record of his make and shape. Those who are interesting in the conformation of good horses spend quite a bit of money and expend any amount of energy in making and collecting photographs of them.

For the benefit of such people, and to preserve in one cover a record of the achievements of notable race horses, steeplechase and cross-country horses, polo ponies and hunters, along with a photographic portrait of each animal, a committee of American sportsmen has offered to the public a book which answers this purpose. The book is sponsored by the National Steeplechase and Hunt Association, and the Masters of Foxhounds Association of America.

The period covered is the first quarter of the present century. The size of the book is 12 x 15 inches. A full page is devoted to each horse, with a half-page photograph. Beginning with *Commando* and *Jean Boréud*, foaled in 1898, the section devoted to race horses includes descriptions of one hundred and forty-two thoroughbreds, bringing a chronicle of the turf down to sons and daughters of *Sunbrier*, *Wilder*, *Man o'War*, *Hewitson*, and *Black Toney*, foaled in 1923.

The section devoted to cross-country and steeplechase horses begins with *Self Protection*, which won The Champion, The Hempstead Cup, the Hunters Champion, and the Westbury and Corinthian steeplechases in 1901, 1902 and 1903. Twenty-five leppers are described, concluding with *Buryright*, which won the Maryland Hunt Cup in 1925. Fifty-nine outstanding performers are included in the hunter division, which is separated into workman hunters and show hunters.

Then there is a grand collection of immortal polo ponies, starting with the wonderful

mounts which were gathered by Harry Payne Whitney in preparation for his polo challenge to England in 1906. Ponies which have carried Mr. Whitney, J. Watson Webb, and Devereux Milburn in the international games of the past eighteen years were selected.

The photographs of these animals show that there are three things which the stars of the game have in common: Great depth through the heart; sloping, powerful shoulders, and a lean, but muscular neck. The one thing that is absent among them is a horizontal pelvis. Nine out of ten are actually goose rumped, although, with one or two exceptions, they have straight-dropped hind legs.

Fifteen dollars looks like a stiff price for a book, but one might devote a lifetime and spend a fortune gathering the material that this book contains. Most of the photographs are by that master of horse photography, W. A. Rouch of London.

American Methods of Horseshoeing By F. G. CHURCHILL, Senior Instructor in Horseshoeing, The Cavalry School. 120 pp. Republic Press, Junction City, Kansas. \$1.50.

The author of this little book is the best authority on the subject in the army, if not in the United States, today. He is largely responsible for the knowledge of horseshoeing possessed by cavalry officers, the majority of whom have passed through his classes at Fort Riley. He also collaborated in the preparation of the training regulation on the subject.

The book, indeed, parallels closely the regulation. It includes chapters on Care of the Feet and Shoeing, Anatomy and Physiology of the Horse's Foot, Normal Shoeing, Diseases of the Feet—Pathological Shoeing, and Shoeing for Gaits, as well as eight good illustrative plates.

The first chapter is a general discussion of horseshoeing and gives useful hints on shoeing for special purposes, such as hunting, jumping, polo, draft and winter riding. The other chapters cover the more technical knowledge of the subject, which should be part of the equipment of every cavalry officer and enlisted man concerned with the care of horses' feet.

The book should be in every horseman's library, and because of its cloth binding, will appeal particularly to those officers who desire something more permanent on the subject than the loose-leaf training regulation.

Foreign Military Journals

The Cavalry Journal (Great Britain) April, 1927

Major H. V. S. Charrington, M. C., 12th Royal Lancers, continues his article *Where Cavalry Stands Today*, confining his discussion to the World War. The failure on both sides, of large masses of cavalry to obtain decisive results is, in the author's opinion, to be attributed to a great extent to faulty methods of employment, and particularly to failures to make the most of the mobility of cavalry.

Colonel J. F. C. Fuller has a second installment of his *The Small Wars of Alexander the Great*, covering this great soldier's advance into Scythia and his march to India. This is an interesting article.

Mechanisation and the Cavalry Role by Lieut. W. B. V. H. P. Gates, R. A. S. C., deals with a subject much in the minds of cavalrymen at the present time. Due to special conditions on the Western Front "those opportunities previously exploited so successfully by cavalry became gradually non-existent. To the enforced ineffectiveness of this swift weapon of surprise, may be attributed in large measure, the relative indecisiveness which characterised the majority of operations on the Western Front."

The author holds that "apart from the unexpected use of new weapons, only by increasing the potential mobility of a force, and particularly that of its cavalry, can the essential element of surprise be again introduced, a fluid type of warfare maintained, and the consequent opportunities for decisive action presented."

The article includes a discussion of the motorization of cavalry first line transport and might well have been the basis for the changes noted in the recent proposed re-organisation of the British cavalry.

Major J. Goddard's *Precept and Precedent* carries on the discussion begun in the previous number, with special reference to the role of cavalry in the deliberate battle.

Co-operation of Aircraft with Cavalry by Wing-Commander T. L. Leigh-Mallory, D. S. C., contains much of interest to both the cavalry and the air corps and demonstrates that only through the closest and most harmonious co-operation can these two arms best perform their functions.

Revue De Cavalerie (France) March-April, 1927

Reviewed by Major W. E. Shipp, Cavalry

The Roumanian Cavalry. Before the War there were 22 regiments of cavalry and 45 of infantry in the Roumanian Army; while today there are 21 of the former and 66 of the latter. The relatively large proportion of cavalry is due to the large forces of this arm in the Russian army; to the comparative ease with which Hungary could raise large cavalry forces in war; to the great extent of the Roumanian frontiers, and to the fact that mounts for this cavalry—at least in peace time—can be supplied.

At the head of the Roumanian cavalry there is a Directorate (a part of the Ministry of War), which is divided into two sections, one for training, regulations, etc., and the other for organization and pay.

The cavalry is composed of twelve regiments of Rosiori (Red Hussars); one regiment for Royal Escort; eight regiments of Calarasi (Black Hussars); eight trains.

It is divided into three divisions and an independent brigade, which are constituted as follows:—

Division.—Two brigades of Rosiori of two regiments each; one brigade of Calarasi of two regiments (skeleton regiments); one group of horse artillery of three

batteries of four pieces each; one cyclist company; theoretically of two groups of armoured cars of three platoons each.

The Independent Brigade:—The Regiment for Royal Escort; two regiments of Calarasi.

No cavalry corps exists in peace time.

The *Rosiori* constitute the Regular cavalry. Each regiment has four squadrons, one machine gun squadron, and one platoon of specialists. The squadron is composed of four platoons (two combat groups each) and one machine rifle platoon (four pieces). The transport consists of a rolling kitchen, a combat wagon, a ration wagon and a forage wagon. A machine gun squadron has two platoons of two sections each (eight machine guns). The specialist platoon is composed of pioneers, and communications personnel. In peace the effective strength of a regiment is 25 officers and 500 men.

The Calarasi are almost an irregular body. The men are even required to furnish their mounts, uniforms and equipment, but they receive an allowance to cover this expense. Their term of service is four years, but they do not serve continuously. During the first and second years, they serve for six months, while during the third and fourth years they serve a variable number of months. Their officers are Regulars. Each regiment has six squadrons and a squadron of machine guns. On mobilisation, the fifth and sixth squadrons form the corps cavalry. In peace the strength is only half that of the *Rosiori*, but on mobilisation it will be the same.

The Royal Escort Regiment has two mounted squadrons, two dismounted squadrons, one machine gun squadron, one depot squadron, and a platoon of specialists.

The trains (animal drawn) are an integral part of the cavalry, but there is a question of making them a separate unit. In peace they consist of only 150 men and 50 animals each.

Regular officers are required to attend the schools at Temiscara (basic and troop officers' courses), and some of them also attend the school at Sibui (a more advanced course). Reserve officers, who serve only a year, spend all of this year at Temiscara, except two months which they spend with a regiment.

On the whole, the cavalry is of good quality, and the men are especially hardy and well disciplined. The morale is also excellent.

The soldiers are armed with the Manlicher 65 mm. carbine and Steyr 8 mm. revolvers. The *Rosiori* also carry lances. The machine rifle used is the Chauchat, while the Hotchkiss or Maxim machine gun is used. The artillery has a French 75 or a Russian 76.2.

The Remount Service has five depots and other establishments. In 1925 it was ascertained that there were over 1,800,000 horses in the Kingdom, but many of these are unsuitable for the cavalry.

In training, the cavalry closely follows French doctrines, and even uses translated French texts in the various schools.

While the Roumanian cavalry is an elite arm, it has two deficiencies that will impair its efficiency unless corrected, namely: the lack of sufficient arms and munitions and also of animal replacements in war, as unfortunately the best breeding region (Bessarabia) is on the frontier.

Cavalry School Notes

Brigadier General C. J. Symmonds, Commandant

The post of Fort Riley was fortunate in having been chosen as a stopping place for the traveling circus of the Air Corps during its trip to the San Antonio maneuvers. On May 3, numerous planes and some of the best Air Corps personnel arrived with General Fechet, and were royally welcomed. Old friendships were renewed and enjoyed. The programs which they presented during their stay consisted of inspection of the various type planes, parachute jumps, and exhibitions of bombardment, attack, pursuit, and observation aviation. The exhibitions were interesting, instructive, and reassuring. They demonstrated that the Air Corps observation section could and would be of tremendous help of cavalry. In the offensive action against targets, the results were all that could be reasonably expected. To the ground troops, however, a careful analysis of the results was quite reassuring in indicating hostile aerial attacks were not as invincible and annihilating as has been frequently claimed.

The Cavalry School Hunt Club Ball

The annual ball of the Cavalry School Hunt Club was held at the Godfrey Court Hop Room Saturday evening, April 23. A very difficult steeplechase course was constructed around the dance floor. Outside the track some two hundred dinner guests were seated at attractively decorated tables. In addition to an unusually good dinner, there was excellent entertainment provided in the form of hunting songs by the Kennel Korus; a very clever skit entitled, "The Dark Horse" written and presented by Doc Beeman assisted by one hound dog and *Snowball*, the first mount of Major Hoge and son; three very exciting steeplechases, posted as The Briney Booth Memorial; The Godfrey Court Steaks (a very tough race), and "The Kennel Kup." Many internationally and locally famous horses were entered, among which were *Zev*, *Sir Barton*, *Epinard*, *Chiswell*, *Mr. Green*, *Chester*, *Aline*, etc. All differences of opinion as to the relative ability of these great horses were settled on a pari-mutuel basis.

Change of Commandants

The personnel of Fort Riley were exceedingly sorry when orders were received taking General and Mrs. Booth from us. Our disappointment was tempered only by the thought that General Booth had been chosen for higher things and that such personal sacrifices are a part of Army life. During their tour at the Cavalry School, both General and Mrs. Booth have endeared themselves to all. Their departure was the occasion of an informal, voluntary gathering of the entire garrison to escort them to the train. This escort became so large that the train had to be stopped at Pawnee Plaza.

After such a loss the garrison felt especially fortunate when the War Department announced General Symmonds as the new Commandant. General Symmonds was promoted from the Cavalry and already had many friends at Fort Riley. Since his arrival among us, the number has been increased to include the entire post, which continues on with the spirit that has made Fort Riley the old hometown of the Cavalry.

Distinguished Visitors

Among the recent distinguished visitors to Fort Riley are numbered the Chief of Staff, Major General C. P. Summerall; the Chief of Cavalry, Major General Herbert B. Crosby and General Augusto Villa, Italian Military Attache at Washington.

Regimental Notes

FIRST CAVALRY—Camp Marfa, Texas Colonel Conrad S. Babcock, Commanding

Troop C, 1st Cavalry, Captain Samuel R. Goodwin, Commanding, was awarded the 1926 Curtis Cup for Highest Standard of Military Efficiency.

This cup was donated by Mr. William John Curtis of New York City, to be given every year to the troop displaying the highest standard of military efficiency throughout the year. It was won in 1925 by Troop A, commanded by Captain Paul H. Morris. Mr. Curtis is the father-in-law of Lieut. Colonel Arthur Poillon, 1st Cavalry.

An indoor rifle competition was held during the last month. Troop B, Captain H. S. Dodd, commanding won the Open Team Event, and Service Troop, commanded by Captain Frank Bertholet, won the Novice Team event. Two large cups were presented to each team by the regimental commander.

Brigadier General Edwin B. Winans, Division Commander, conducted an informal training inspection of the Regiment on April 11 and 12. A review was held in his honor on the 11th, and a night manoeuvre on the 12th. General Winans expressed his pleasure with the turn out and complimented the Regiment highly.

Major General Ernest Hinds, Corps Area Commander, and staff, and Brigadier General LeRoy Hittage visited the post on April 27. General Hinds conducted his formal tactical inspection of the Regiment on April 27th and 28th. A full pack review was given in his honor on the 27th and a very successful night maneuver was held on the 28th. Following the maneuver on the 28th, General Hinds gave the officers an interesting and instructive talk on the duty and service of the officer in this time and period; also some very valuable suggestions bearing on the co-operation of the Regular Army officer with our present national defense plans and campaigns. Both officers complimented the regiment.

Major General Herbert B. Crosby, Chief of Cavalry, visited the post on May 4-6th. General Crosby was met at the station and escorted to the post by the regimental trumpeters and Troop B, commanded by Captain H. S. Dodd. A review was held on the 5th, and General Crosby talked to the officers of the Regiment on the subject of personnel and cavalry equipment. He also complimented the Regiment on its turnout.

The First Cavalry was successfully represented at the spring meet of the Fort Clark Jockey Club. Eleven officers and ladies motored to the meet.

The regiment has 30 remount polo ponies which will be worked into a good string by Fall. Six jumping horses are being worked out for the Army Horse Show Team.

Ruth Hingaman Herman, wife of Captain Harrison Herman has composed the First Cavalry March which has been adopted as the Regimental march. Mrs. Herman is a well-known musician and this march is but further proof of her ability. In collaboration with Lieut. Colonel Arthur Poillon she has also written five verses to the march touching on the high spots of the history of the regiment.

SECOND CAVALRY—Fort Riley, Kansas Colonel Llewellyn W. Oliver, Commanding

The Regiment has been kept busy carrying out its training schedule while at the same time rehearsing and putting on demonstrations in connection with the instruction of the student officers here at the Cavalry School. It has participated in several brigade command post exercises in conjunction with the other school troops. This year the

student officers have been given more instruction in the actual handling of troops in field exercises lasting from a half day to two days. The 1st Squadron under Major E. L. Franklin, accompanied the students on the general terrain exercises, establishing, camp, caring for horses and outlining troops. One of the most interesting as well as instructive features of our work this spring has been that conducted in connection with airplanes. Many valuable lessons have been learned concerning protection against aerial attack and in the use of friendly airplanes. The results of this work are being embodied in training regulations soon to be completed.

The regiment has four polo teams which are entered in the local tournament and giving a good account of themselves. Our first team will go to Fort Leavenworth in June to compete in the Rocky Mountain Circuit.

On May 2nd the regiment was paraded in honor of the retirement of Staff Sergeant H. Rech, who has been for several years, regimental band leader. Upon this occasion a medal was presented to First Sergeant L. B. Lynch for having won a place on the Chief of Cavalry's rifle team.

The regiment is very proud of the achievement of Lieutenant Paul M. Martin who not only came out one in the Corps Area try out for the American rifle team to compete in Rome this summer, but also came out high man in the national try out at Quantico. Lieut. J. H. Phillips has just left us to try out for the Cavalry Rifle team.

On May 23rd, the Second Dragoons celebrated their ninety-first birthday. Field events and a baseball game followed addresses by the Commandant, General Symmonds, and the Regimental Commander, Colonel Oliver. First, second and third places in the field events were won by Troop B, Troop G, and Headquarters Troop respectively. The 2d Squadron won from the 1st Squadron in a hotly contested baseball game, by a score of 7 to 6. A dance for the enlisted personnel was held in the evening. In the afternoon, a reception and tea was given by Colonel and Mrs. Oliver to the officers of the regiment, their wives and guests.

On the 28th, the regiment put on a demonstration for the visiting officers of all branches from Ft. Leavenworth.

The regiment has held two horse shows this spring. Classes for student officers and classes open to the permanent personnel were included in the lists of events. The showing made by the enlisted men of the regiment has been made the subject of much favorable comment.

Major E. M. Whiting has had charge of the training stables and training of the horses for the Spring Race Meeting. He was assisted by Capt. F. L. Carr. The regiment has a very creditable entry list in both the steeplechases and the flat races.

This spring the regiment has escorted many distinguished visitors to the post, among whom were, General Summerall, General Crosby, General Frank McCoy, General Fechet, General Villa of the Italian Army, as well as the retiring and the new Commandants, General Booth and General Symmonds.

An Olympia Course has been constructed and the regiment hopes to make a very creditable showing in the August try outs.

THIRD CAVALRY (Less 1st Squadron)—Fort Myer, Virginia Major Adna R. Chaffee, Commanding

On March 19, Colonel William J. Glasgow received notification of his promotion to the grade of Brigadier General. The entire command, led by the band, marched to his quarters to offer their congratulations, and to express their sincere regrets at losing him. Colonel Guy V. Henry has been appointed as General Glasgow's successor. While awaiting his arrival, Major Chaffee has taken command of the regiment.

On March 25, the last Riding Hall school drill was given for the year. Major General B. Frank Cheatham was the guest of honor. This ended the drills that have been given every Friday afternoon since the beginning of the year. They have been more successful this year than ever before.

The most important event of the Spring was the Society Circus given by the Post on April 2. There were two performances, afternoon and night. The net receipts for this show amounted to something over three thousand dollars, which sum is to be used for Post athletics. Its success was due to a great extent to the help given by the society girls of Washington, twenty-five of them taking part in the circus.

The Squadron has put on two demonstrations this year, a peace strength troop demonstration for the War Department R. O. T. C. Board, on March 15, and a war strength troop demonstration for the Engineer School at Fort Humphreys.

On April 17, the command (less Troops E and F) left for Camp Sims, for its six weeks' tour on the target range. Troops E and F, having completed their duties as escort to the President of Cuba, joined the rest of the Regiment on the ranges at the end of the week. While on the range the Regiment completed rifle, machine rifle, pistol, both mounted and dismounted, firing for qualification before returning to Fort Myer at the end of May. The troops qualified 95 per cent with the rifle.

By the end of June the Regiment will have lost Major Adna R. Chaffee, who goes to Washington for duty, Captain James R. Finley, Captain Vernon L. Padgett, Captain John H. Irving and First Lieutenant Thomas E. Whitehead, all of whom go to the cavalry division in Texas. Eventually the following officers are expected to arrive: Major Berkeley T. Merchant, as Squadron Commander, Captain Julian W. Cunningham, Captain Louis G. Gibney, First Lieutenant Charles H. Noble, and First Lieutenant Hugh B. Waddell, to replace the officers that are leaving.

Preparations are going forward to receive and train the R. O. T. C. and C. M. T. C. candidates that are expected here this summer. There will be in all about two hundred and fifty of them.

FIRST SQUADRON, THIRD CAVALRY—Fort Ethan Allen, Vermont

Lieut. Colonel F. D. Griffith, Jr., Commanding

The outstanding events of the last three months have been horse shows. On March 30th the Annual Indoor Horse Show was held at the Post and during May a team of five officers represented the Post in horse shows at Hartford and New Haven, Connecticut. The following places were won by members of this Squadron in the Indoor Horse Show:

Troopers' Remounts—Won by Pvt. 1st Cl. Woods, Troop C; 2d, Pvt. 1st Cl. Philbin, Troop A; 3d, Pvt. 1st Cl. Cormier, Troop C.

Remount Jumpers Ballisted Men—Won by Pvt. 1st Cl. Woods, Troop C; 2d, Pvt. 1st Cl. Philbin, Troop A; 3d, Corporal Kedrony, Troop C.

Troopers' Mounts—Won by Pvt. 1st Cl. Bohm, Troop B; 2d, Sergeant Nickerson, Troop B; 3d, Pvt. 1st Cl. Collins, Troop C.

Novice Jumping Officers—3d, Captain Beeth.

Ballisted Men's Jumping Open—Won by Sergeant Nickerson, Troop B; 2d, Pvt. 1st Cl. Woods, Troop C.

Officers' Chargers—Won by Major Herr; 2d, Captain deLorimier.

Officers' Jumping Open—3d, Captain Beeth; 2d, Captain deLorimier.

Troop C was awarded a cup for the organization whose enlisted men won the most points, the score being Troop C, 14; Troop B, 13; Troop A, 6; Hq. Battery 7th F. A., 2.

The team sent to Hartford and New Haven, Conn., consisted of Major Frederick Herr, Captain C. J. Beeth, Captain A. J. deLorimier from the Squadron, and Captain C. B. Farris and 1st Lieut. C. E. Sargent from the 7th Field Artillery.

At Hartford the team took 37 ribbons—6 Blues, 5 Reds (including Reserve Championships), 9 Yellows, 6 Whites, and 1 Pink. The Blues were awarded in the novice jumping, enlisted men's jumping, lightweight polo ponies, middleweight open jumpers, and out of 6' classes. At New Haven the competition was much greater. The team took 24 ribbons, however—3 Blues, 5 Reds, 11 Yellows, and 6 Whites. The Blues

were awarded in the novelty jumping, officers' jumping, and enlisted men's jumping classes.

On March 6th, Sergeant John F. Lesley was notified that he had won the 3d Cavalry place on the Chief of Cavalry's Rifle Team.

In April, the Troop C Mounted Pistol Team received medals won in the 3d Cavalry Competition held last year under the auspices of the National Rifle Association.

May 19, 1927, being the 81st Anniversary of the organization of the Third Cavalry, was a holiday. In the morning the Squadron held a parade, followed by a picnic lunch. After lunch a ball game was held between two troops of the Squadron. In the evening the enlisted men of the Post were entertained by a dance, and the officers and ladies by a bridge party.

A number of changes are to take place in the next few months: Colonel Griffith, Major Herr, Captain Dunn, Captain Garity, and 1st Lieut. McBride are all leaving the Squadron and Colonel Grant, Major Stevens, Captain Forster, Captain Foster, Captain Wright, and 1st Lieut. Winchester have been ordered to the Squadron.

FOURTH CAVALRY (less 1st Squadron)—Fort D. A. Russell, Wyoming

Colonel Osmun Latrobe, Commanding

On March 3rd the annual Organization Horse Show was held in the Post riding hall. Twelve events were listed on the program, ten of which were for the enlisted men of the Regiment. Much enthusiasm was shown in the preparation and the carrying out of the show, and the results attained were very gratifying.

At the time we were beginning to believe winter had become only a memory, two of the worst blizzards of the year descended upon us during the latter part of April and the first week of May. By now we are having wonderful weather, which gives many opportunities for outdoor activities. Saber practice and pistol practice is about completed as well as rifle preliminary, and the Regiment will be on the target range early in June.

On April the sixth a timed point-to-point Ride was held over an unknown course for the enlisted men of the Regiment. Much interest was evinced in the Ride, there being about sixty entries. Sergeant Gibson, Troop F and Private 1-c Carlton, Hq. Troop, tied for first place.

The annual tactical inspection by Major General John L. Hines, Corps Area Commander, was held on May 16th. A tactical exercise was conducted on the reservation, the Fourth and Thirteenth Cavalry constituting the Blue Forces. This exercise involved dismounted fire action supported by machine rifles of the 4th Cavalry, and an enveloping attack mounted by the entire 13th Cavalry, an action, the sight of which would make any cavalryman's heart swell with pride.

Polo is now well under way in the Fourth Cavalry. Ten officers practicing four times a week gives promise for a good team during the summer. Inter Regimental games with the 13th Cavalry give an unusual opportunity for the development of polo in both regiments.

The regimental Olympic team try outs were completed early in April. Seven mounts are now being trained for the final try outs in July. 1st Lieut. Henry I. Hodges is in charge of the regimental team, consisting of himself and Captains Dobyns and Atwell.

On August 15th the command will depart on a 300 miles practice march through the Medicine Bow Mountains.

FIRST SQUADRON, FOURTH CAVALRY—Fort Meade, South Dakota

Lieut. Colonel R. W. Walker, Commanding

As a result of two very severe snow storms during April, training was interfered with to such an extent as to necessitate setting forward our training objectives about two weeks. Spring seems to have arrived at last, however, and no more serious interruptions are anticipated.

The 1926-27 basketball season was a success from start to finish. Four organization teams comprised the league and all teams were first-rate, resulting in an unusual display of lively interest and spirit. The Troop A team, which numbers among its members a grandson of the famous Sitting Bull, placed first, with Troop B a close second, and Troop C, third. The Squadron team participated in the Black Hills tournament and carried away first honors.

Plans have been completed for the training of the four cavalry reserve officers who report to this station on May 29. It being impracticable to hold the regular two-weeks period of field maneuvers this year, the reserve officers will be trained by attachment to the three troops of the Squadron.

The baseball season is in full swing and promises to be another great success. Troop A is in the lead at present, but will have to put forth a strenuous effort to stay there. All of the troop teams are composed partly of Indians, who have been found to be quite versatile in sports of all kinds.

On May 29th a Squadron parade was held after which trophies were awarded in the various athletic events. The following awards were made:

Baseball—1926 season—Troop B.

Basketball—1926-27—Troop A.

Bowling—1926-27—Hq. Det.

FIFTH CAVALRY—Fort Clark, Texas

Colonel W. B. Seales, Commanding

On April 30th the Fifth Cavalry and 1st Machine Gun Squadron left Fort Clark for Camp Stanley where we are engaged in outlining the enemy for the Second Division Maneuvers. We expect to arrive home the latter part of May, and will then begin to plan for the Cavalry Division maneuvers which will take place this fall in the vicinity of Marfa. By the time we return from the Marfa maneuvers, the Fifth Cavalry will have spent over six months of the preceding fourteen months in the field, hence we believe we are entitled to be known as the "field soldier" regiment.

The series of race meets held at Fort Clark during the past year culminated in a three day race meet held during the early part of April. This meet was a huge success, there being 150 entries for the three days. A great number of visitors attended and after the meet, various horse owners and those vitally interested asked if we could not stage a full week of racing in the fall. Fort Clark has thus acquired a lot of much needed and desirable advertising.

During the past six weeks sufficient recruits have arrived to fill us nearly up to our full authorized peace strength. There have been but few changes in the commissioned personnel. Although the matter of training has always been a source of pleasure to the regimental officers, the addition of these recruits will make it more so, and the regiment should leave for Marfa next fall with over sixty men to each troop.

During last March a local endurance ride was held, there being some 25 entries from the post. It was a five day affair, the distance being from 25 to 40 miles a day at the rate of eight miles an hour. The purse for the endurance ride was two hundred and fifty dollars, with twenty-five dollars added by the judges for the participant exhibiting the best horsemanship.

The result of the event was as follows: 1st place, Corporal Thomas Vaughn, Headquarters Troop; 2nd place, Sergeant Uel G. Jackson, Troop "A"; 3rd place, Major John A. Robinson; 4th place, 1st Sergeant Otto W. Frank, Headquarters Troop. 1st Sergeant Frank C. May, Troop "A", was awarded the prize for exhibiting the best horsemanship. The judges for the ride were Colonel McNally, Major Dick Waring, San Angelo, and Captain Frank L. Carr, and the great success of the event was due to the highly efficient manner in which they performed their duty.

Due to unusual conditions we were not able to run the saber course during February, but will complete it upon our return to Clark and will then begin target practice. The

target range has been repaired so that in the future heavy rains will not affect it as they have in the past.

The new kitchen pack was issued to us a few weeks ago and is being tried out on our Camp Stanley march. So far it has worked out very well.

SIXTH CAVALRY—Fort Oglethorpe, Ga.

Colonel G. C. Barnhardt, Commanding

During the Annual Chattanooga—Sixth Cavalry Horse show last November, the Infantry School, Fort Benning Georgia extended an invitation to the Sixth Cavalry to send a Polo Team and a Riding Team to compete in the annual Transportation and Horse Show to be held the 23d of April. The invitation was accepted.

The polo games were played at Fort Benning between the Infantry School Team and the Sixth Cavalry Team. The first game was played the Wednesday preceding the Horse Show and the last game on the Sunday following. The former was won by the Infantry School, 9 to 8 and the latter by the Sixth Cavalry, 4 to 3. The line up for the first game was as follows:

Infantry School	Sixth Cavalry
No. 1—Captain J. D. Forsythe	Lieut. H. T. Sutton
No. 2—Lieut. S. B. Elkins	Lieut. T. Q. Donaldson, Jr.
No. 3—Major H. J. M. Smith	Lieut. H. G. Culton
Back—Captain E. B. Whisner	Captain M. F. Meador

For the second game Lieut. L. K. Ladue replaced Lieut. Sutton for the Sixth Cavalry. Lieut. Elkins was moved to Number 1 for the Infantry School, replacing Captain Forsythe who was injured in the first game and was unable to play. Captain Burris replaced Lieut. Elkins at Number 2.

Both games were very close and hotly contested from start to finish, leaving the result in doubt until the sounding of the final whistle.

The Biltmore Forest—Asheville Horse Show Association extended an invitation for a team of officers and ladies from the Regiment to compete in the annual Horse Show to be held in Asheville April 19th and 20th, 1927. Consequently, about the first of February, all the officers and ladies who were interested were busily working horses in preparation for the coming shows. During February and March all the horses were assembled at the horse show ring on McDonald Field once or twice a week for jumping. All of the training was under the direction of Lieut. Col. H. N. Cootes who has had much experience in horse show work, not only in the country, but also in Europe.

By the first of April a selection of eight riders and seventeen horses had been made and the final period of training commenced. The following riders were selected: Lt. Col. H. N. Cootes, Captain C. M. Hurt, Lieut. R. E. Ireland, Lieut. F. P. Tompkins, Lieut. L. D. Carter, Lieut. A. S. J. Stovall, Lieut. F. del. Comfort, and Mrs. J. B. Wise. Lieut. Col. Cootes was Team Captain and all training continued under his supervision.

The Asheville show was a two day affair and the Sixth Cavalry was represented in ten of the twenty classes with the following results: Men's three gaited ridden by amateurs—*Captain Blood*, Lieut. Ireland up, second. Ladies hunters—*Boney*, Mrs. Wise up, second. Men's hunters—*Red*, Lieut. Comfort up, first; *Mickey B*, Lieut. Tompkins up, second; *Gary Owen*, Lieut. Carter up, third. High Jump—*Babe*, Lieut. Comfort up, first; *Maggie*, Lieut. Stovall up, second; *Boney*, Lieut. Ireland up, third.

Officers Chargers—*By Jingo*, Col. Cootes up, first; *Captain Blood*, Lieut. Ireland up, second. Polo Ponies—*Florida*, Lieut. Comfort up, second. A total of three firsts, seven seconds and three thirds.

Colonel G. C. Barnhardt and Mrs. Barnhardt made the trip to Asheville for the Show and were interested spectators on both days of the Show. Their presence aided largely in the showing of the Sixth Cavalry Team.

The following results were obtained at Fort Benning: *Unlisted Men's Jumping*—*Mickey B*, Private Davis up, first; *Peter*, Private Ward up, second. *Unlisted men's*

Mounts—*Mickey B.*, Private Mathews up, third. Bending Race—*Hickory Nat.*, Lieut. Donaldson up, first; *Boney*, Lieut. Ireland up, second; *Red*, Lieut. Comfort up, fourth. Ladies Hunters—*Boney*, Mrs. Wise up, second. Touch and Out—*Boney*, Lieut. Ireland up, second. Officers Private Mounts—*By Jingo*, Lieut. Ireland up, first. Pair Jumping—*Mickey B.*, Mrs. Wise up, and *Babe*, Lieut. Comfort up, second. Ladies Three Gaited—*By Jingo*, Mrs. Wise up, second. Hunt Teams of Three—*Boney*, Mrs. Wise up. *Gary Owen*, Lieut. Carter up, *Maggie*, Lieut. Stovall up, first; *Mickey B.*, Mrs. Knight up, *Red*, Lieut. Comfort up, *Peter*, Lieut. Ireland up, second.

During the latter part of April, Major General Crosby, Chief of Cavalry made an informal inspection of the regiment.

During the greater part of April the regiment has been engaged in field exercises and marches in preparation for the tactical inspection by the Corps Area Commander the first part of May. Brigadier General H. O. Williams, Commanding General, Fort McPherson, Georgia, and Colonel Duncan K. Major Chief of Staff of the Fourth Corps Area, conducted the inspection.

At eight A. M. all officers were assembled at Post Headquarters to meet General Williams and Col. Major. At this time a warning order was issued for the Regiment to prepare to take the field at once. At 9:45 A. M. the Regiment and attached personnel assembled on McDonald Field where orders were issued for a peace time march to the Catoosa Target Range. Upon arrival at the Range the Regiment established camp in which it was inspected by the inspectors.

About dark an order was issued by the inspector for the 2d Squadron, Major Pendleton commanding, to break camp early the following morning and to march at 3:00 A. M., returning to Chickamunga Park. The Regiment, less the 2d Squadron, received orders to march at 6:00 A. M. with a mission necessitating its passing through Fort Oglethorpe and the Park. The conditions of the problem assumed that war had been declared at midnight and both forces were advancing with approximately one squadron of cavalry out in front of each. The two "hostile" squadrons met near the east edge of the Park, where, after a spirited encounter, the problem was terminated and the troops returned to the post.

At 2:00 P. M. a jumping exhibition was given in the show ring on McDonald Field in honor of General Williams and Col. Major. This exhibition was given members of the Regimental Horse Show Team, recently returned from Asheville.

Immediately after the jumping there was a regimental review on Kelley Field. Following the review, General Williams and Col. Major returned by motor to Atlanta.

The report of the inspection recently received from the Corps Area Commander reads in part as follows:

"As a result of the training and tactical inspection, I rate the 6th Cavalry, under the command of Colonel George C. Barnhardt, as a superior organization, prepared to meet in peace or war any problem, with which it may be confronted. The inspection was prepared with the idea of testing the state of training in taking the field, in marching, making and breaking camp, the care of personnel and animals in the field, culminating in a tactical maneuver which required one squadron to break camp at night and make a night march. All tests were performed in highly business-like and efficient manner. There was noticeable absence of confusion and noise in making camp, which was accomplished expeditiously and indicated a high state of discipline. The breaking of camp by the squadron under Major Henry McR. Pendleton at 3:00 A. M. in total darkness without noise or confusion, and exactly on time, was particularly worthy of commendation.

The maneuver indicated that officers and enlisted men were alert to meet, without hesitation, promptly and properly the situations as they developed. Only a well balanced schedule of training and confidence in the knowledge of their profession could have accomplished these excellent results."

On Organization Day, May 4th, the Regiment was assembled at the Flag Pole, where

Captain H. A. Myers, the regimental Adjutant, gave a short talk on the history of the Sixth Cavalry. Following this the Regiment moved to the polo field for the track and field events which were to be one of the features of the day. In the afternoon the officers played a game of baseball with the old-timers, which was won by the latter by the margin of one run.

Three companies of the 22d Infantry will arrive here about the first of June for permanent station. We, of the Sixth Cavalry extend them a hearty welcome and earnestly hope that they will come to the post and learn to enjoy it as much as we do.

At a recent meeting of the active polo players of the regiment, Lieut. T. Q. Donaldson, Jr. was elected Captain of the Sixth Cavalry Polo Team for the coming Southern Circuit Tournament to be held the middle of June at Winston-Salem, N. C. There are practices daily on the Circle Field where the players are working ponies in preparation for the games.

SEVENTH CAVALRY—Fort Bliss, Texas

Colonel Fitzhugh Lee, Commanding

During March, 1927, Major McQuillin conducted a jumping contest between troops comprising the Second Squadron. Troop G won first honors with an average score of 94.95 per cent, Troop F, second, 94.39 per cent, Troop E, third, 92.64 per cent. Scores based on possible 100 per cent with the average of 23 men competing from each organization. These remarkable scores prove that competition in this phase of training stimulated a greater interest than it has in many past years.

The achievement of our Regiment in the annual saber qualification course is the highest accomplished in the past five years. Several troop percentages were well over 90 per cent. Regimental percentage qualified 98.7. Individual high score to Corporal Jason Robinson, Hq. Det. 2d Sq., 99.5 per cent.

Many improvement developments in the area during the spring season have resulted in making this the beauty spot of Fort Bliss. Under the guidance of Lt. Col. Smalley every effort has been exerted toward completing these projects, and giving the personnel the benefit of the improvements in the coming years. Six hundred young trees have been planted, fences repaired, N. C. O. quarters constructed, new roads built, fire places installed in troop quarters, and many other minor improvements.

The Corps Area Commander's annual inspection closed with a three day maneuver at Dona Ana Target range and vicinity on May 5, 6 and 7. The Seventh Cavalry as part of the First Cavalry Division proceeded to Dona Ana Target range at 2:00 A. M., May 5th. Most of the march was accomplished before dawn. During the entire march en route to the field of maneuvers, the column was constantly harassed by airplanes. The Regiment remained in the saddle about four hours after contact with the enemy had been made, and a well planned maneuver was carried out. A very favorable commendation for its part in this and all other tests during the annual tactical inspection by the Corps Area Commander, was bestowed on the Regiment at the close of this important yearly occasion.

The coming events of interest for the Regiment will be the sad loss when Colonel Lee relinquishes command and leaves the Regiment, the retirement of Colonel Selah H. Tompkins, and the proposed Marfa maneuvers.

The 1927 inter-troop baseball league ended in a triangular tie of Troops A, C and F. Troop A, for three years the regimental champion, lost its play-off with Troop F. Troop C, in the play-off with Troop F, staged a last inning rally and defeated this formidable aggregation by a very close margin. Private Smith of Troop A was adjudged the most valuable player of the troop league, and was awarded the Aronson Trophy.

The regimental baseball team, after a severe pre-season schedule of practice games, entered upon the post league season, and has won all its games to date with the exception of one. The prospect for a championship team appears bright.

The Regiment expects to be represented in the Division Polo Tournament by two of the strongest teams it has had for several years. With only a few months left for

practice, both senior and junior tentative line-ups have concentrated on team play.

Under the enthusiastic leadership of Major Terry Allen, everyone is working hard, both at practice and training remounts. Among the prospects are a number of private mounts that are already playing fast polo. When these are made, and those from the Army and Post teams are returned, we expect to have an excellent string for the tournament.

EIGHTH CAVALRY—Fort Bliss, Texas Colonel S. McP. Rutherford, Commanding

The Commanding General, 8th Corps Area, Maj. General Ernest L. Hinds made his annual tactical inspection of the First Cavalry Division on May 4, 5, and 6th. The entire command, after being inspected at Fort Bliss, made a night march to Dona Ana Target Range, N. M., 26 miles, and immediately executed a field exercise, returning to the post the next day. The Corps Area Commander expressed great satisfaction with the state of training and conduct of this Regiment, and all other units of the division.

The First Squadron, paraded in El Paso March 16, in honor of the Texas Cattle-men's Association.

The Second Squadron made a practice march to Newman, Tex., and returned on April 11th and 12th.

The Cadet Polo Team from New Mexico Military Institute visited Fort Bliss, and on May 15, defeated the 8th Cavalry Junior Team, which showed little of its accustomed aggressiveness.

Troop A won the Regimental Baseball Championship, defeating F Troop, runners up, on April 20, 17-4. The Post League has now started, and our Regimental team has so far won all games. The Seventh Cavalry was defeated on May 22, in a hard fought game.

The 8th Cavalry is strongly represented in the Cavalry rifle team try outs. Capt. Norton is team Captain; and in addition Capt. A. H. Seabury, Lieut. C. J. Harrold, Sergt. Yeomanski, and Corp. Pores are at Fort Des Moines trying out for the team.

A Polo Ball given by the Fort Bliss garrison and the city of El Paso on May 21, was an interesting affair. Proceeds are to help send the Fort Bliss team to the Inter-Circuit matches in Philadelphia this fall.

The Second Squadron starts range practice with the rifle on June 1. Shooting will be done on Castner Range near the post.

NINTH CAVALRY—Fort Riley, Kansas Lieut. Colonel Kerr T. Riggs, Commanding

In order to raise money to paint the quarters of the married soldiers of the regiment, a cabaret dinner dance was given at Godfrey Court Hop Room on the night of March 20th. About three hundred reservations were made for the dinner and about forty persons came in for the dancing. The cabaret acts started at 8:00 P. M., and continued, alternating with the dancing, until 12:30 A. M. The hits of the evening were Private "Duke" Wells, with a chorus of eight girls, and the buck and wing dancing, featuring Private Robert Hayes. The Cabaret Dinner was repeated on April 2nd, at the Community House in Junction City, for the benefit of the enlisted personnel of the Ninth Cavalry and their friends, and about two hundred and fifty persons attended.

On the 19th of February, the Regiment lost the service of Master Sergeant Beverly L. Dorsey by retirement. Sergeant Dorsey served as a captain of infantry during the World War and was retired as a warrant officer. He left a splendid military record behind him.

Sergeant Charles Williams was retired on April 11th, after having completed thirty years of honorable service.

On the 11th of June, Master Sergeant Morris Brown was retired. For the past five years Sergeant Brown has been Band Leader, and deserves to a great extent, the credit of having made the Ninth Cavalry Band one of the best regimental bands in the Army.

Incident to the retirement of Master Sergeant Morris Brown, Warrant Officer Dorcy

Rhodes, has been assigned as Band Leader of the Ninth Cavalry Band. Mr. Rhodes came to the regiment from Howard University, Washington, D. C., where he was on duty as band leader and instructor in music. He is a talented musician and the regiment is fortunate in securing his services as Band Leader.

A baseball league consisting of teams from the First Squadron, Second Squadron, and Headquarters and Service Troop, has been organized, and a schedule that will continue through the summer months is now being played. In July the regimental team will be organized.

On the 25th of May the annual Regimental field and track meet was held. Excellent performances were made in the seven events. Large silver cups were awarded to the winners of first place in each event.

TENTH CAVALRY—Fort Huachuca, Arizona Colonel L. C. Scherer, Commanding

The 10th Cavalry polo team, consisting this year of Major Chas. W. Foster, Captain James B. Taylor, Lieutenants John H. Healy, H. G. Maddox and Basil G. Thayer, made its third trip to California as guest of the Midwick Country Club. The team left Fort Huachuca, Arizona, about February 15th, and during its six weeks on the Pacific Coast played eight games, winning the West Coast six goal championship.

Polo at the post has not been resumed since the team returned about the last of March, on account of maneuvers and preparations for range practice, but we hope soon to return to the normal schedule which allows three afternoons a week for practice. The annual tournament between teams within the regiment for the Biddle trophy will be held in July, the finals being played probably on Regimental Day, July 28th.

The 1927 Arizona State Rifle Association Matches were held on the post range May 14th and 15th, with twenty teams competing. The Greenway Trophy for the high individual thousand yard score was won by Lieutenant G. C. Claussen, 10th Cavalry, with a score of twelve consecutive bulls. The Officers' Cup for the high aggregate rapid fire score was won by Major V. W. Wales, 10th Cavalry, with a total score of 233 out of a possible 250.

During the baseball season this year, three separate series within the regiment will be played; squadron inter-troop; regimental inter-troop and regimental inter-squadron.

By keeping an accurate record of the ability displayed by each player, a regimental team will be selected at the end of the series to represent the 10th Cavalry in a series of three games with its old rival, the 26th Infantry.

The final game to be played July 28th as part of our organization day program.

The Regimental Band, Chaplain M. S. Caver, in charge, spent two weeks in May visiting about ten cities throughout the state at the invitation of the various Chambers of Commerce, who paid the expense of the trip.

Concerts were given at hospitals, schools and municipal functions while the orchestra furnished dance music whenever requested. The appreciation of the civilian population with which the band came in contact, has been expressed through local newspapers and many letters to the Commanding Officer, commending the band and the spirit of the 10th Cavalry.

ELEVENTH CAVALRY—Presidio of Monterey, California Colonel Leon B. Kromer, Commanding

The first occurrence of importance for the 11th Cavalry, since the publication of the last issue of the CAVALRY JOURNAL was the annual tactical inspection by the Corps Area Commander. Major General John L. Hines, accompanied by Colonel Joseph K. Partello, G-3, arrived on the post about three o'clock on the afternoon of April 10th. As it was Sunday no salute was fired but the General was met at the Reservation gate by Colonel Kromer and his staff, and the escort, Troop F.

Monday morning a review of all units of the post was held. The smart appearance made by the Regiment in its white equipment made a very favorable impression on the

General. After the review, General Hines inspected the barracks and quarters of the post while the regiment changed to field equipment and marched out to the Gigling reservation, about eight miles from the post. In the afternoon the regiment took part in a tactical exercise which was conducted by Colonel Partello, and then returned to the post. The Corps Area Commander, left the post the next afternoon after inspecting the artillery units stationed here.

Early in May we were inspected once more, this time by the Corps Area Inspector. During the three days that he was here the Inspector turned the post inside out, his inspection ranging from a full pack show-down at Moss Beach, to a test of enlisted men's shoe sizes. No report has been received as yet on the result of the inspection but we feel confident that the "skin list" will not be a long one.

Since the last inspection all units on the post have been engaged in the task of preparing for the Summer Training Season. In addition to the usual large camp at Del Monte this summer we will be required to train some two hundred R. O. T. C. students and four regiments of Organized Reserves. Each day finds large special duty and fatigue details working on the camp at Del Monte in order that all may be in readiness when the O. M. T. C. boys report next month.

On May 5th the Regiment celebrated its organization day. In the morning the Regiment assembled in the vicinity of the Flag pole where a short address on our history and achievements was made by the Regimental Commander.

At the same time we bade farewell to our oldest soldier in point of service, Master Sergeant Benjamin F. Quigley, who retired after serving all of his enlisted time in the Eleventh Cavalry. Many beautiful gifts were presented to Sergeant Quigley at this time by the officers, former officers and men of the regiment, and the Colonel exhibited many letters received from former officers of the regiment who had known him. The best wishes of all who have ever known Sergeant Quigley, follow him into his well earned retirement.

During the last part of April, a polo team consisting of Lt. Galloway, No. 1, Lt. G. W. Read, No. 2, Capt. R. C. Gibbs, No. 3, and Major W. W. Erwin, back, with Lt. A. R. S. Barden, 70th Field Artillery as substitute, represented the post in the Inter-Circuit and 12 goal tournaments at San Mateo. Due to lack of practice the team did not live up to our expectations and returned to the post after being eliminated from both tournaments. Efforts will be made to regain our high standard in Pacific Coast Polo after the close of the summer camps.

TWELFTH CAVALRY (less 2d Squadron)—Fort Brown, Texas

Colonel William T. Johnston, Commanding

The Training Year, 1927, completed by the 12th Cavalry on April 30th, stands out as one of the most satisfactory in the history of the regiment. The result obtained may well be summarized in the words of the Corps Area Commander at the conclusion of his Annual Tactical and Training Inspection on April 4th and 5th, "The training plans and methods of the 12th Cavalry during the current training year, and the results obtained therefrom, are very satisfactory to these Headquarters. . . . The field exercise of the tactical inspection was satisfactory and all officers and men showed the result of hard work and efficient training. . . ."

As heretofore, the Corps Area Commander's annual tactical and training inspection was held at Fort Ringgold, Texas, with the regiment assembled at that Post. Troops A and C, and Detachment, Service Troop, preceded the other Fort Brown troops to Fort Ringgold on March 1st. Rifle and machine rifle practice of this contingent was begun immediately upon arrival and concluded on March 23d, prior to arrival of the remainder of the Fort Brown garrison. On March 25th, Regimental Headquarters, Headquarters Troop, Headquarters Detachment, 1st Squadron, Troop B, and Service Troop (less detachments) preceded, by marching, to Fort Ringgold, arriving on March 29th. The few intervening days before the inspection were spent in combined training of the respective

squadrons, with one "Staff and Command" problem to insure coordinated action of the regiment as a whole.

Upon conclusion of the inspection, Troops A and C completed mounted pistol practice, while Headquarters Troop, Headquarters Detachment, 1st Squadron, Troop B and Service Troop commenced rifle and machine rifle practice. Troops A and C reached Fort Brown on April 18th, and the remainder of the garrison on April 29th.

The results obtained in sabre and range practice with all arms were very creditable, several organizations attaining 100% qualification.

On April 7 the Regimental Commander and staff returned to Fort Brown and the Corps Area Commander and staff motored here to inspect the Post. The General was seemingly very much pleased and remarked several times that he considered Fort Brown the most attractive post in the Corps Area.

The Chief of Cavalry visited the Post on May 7th for his annual inspection, remaining until May 9th. A reception and dance was tendered him on the evening of his arrival.

The 12th Cavalry polo team participated in a very successful polo tournament at Houston, Texas, May 6th to 17th, sponsored by the Houston Riding and Polo Club. Teams were entered in the tournament from San Antonio, Brownwood, Texas Agricultural and Military College, 12th Cavalry, "Freebooters" and "Huisaches," the last two being Houston Riding and Polo Club teams. Open, handicap and consolation events were played; the "Huisache" team winning both the open and handicap events and the 12th Cavalry winning in the consolation. The 12th Cavalry won three of the five games played and was a strong favorite in both the open and handicap events until Captain Wilkie C. Burt suffered a broken wrist in an accident in the final game of the open event against the "Huisache" team, putting him out of the running for the remainder of the tournament. Clean sportsmanship characterized the play throughout. The 12th Cavalry line-up was as follows: No. 1—Captain Erskine A. Franklin; No. 2—Captain Wilkie C. Burt (from 2d Squadron, Fort Ringgold, Texas); No. 3—Captain Ernest F. Dukes; No. 4—2d Lieutenant John H. Claybrook, Jr.; substitute—2d Lieutenant Clyde Massey.

SECOND SQUADRON, TWELFTH CAVALRY—Fort Ringgold, Texas

Lieut. Colonel C. O. Thomas, Jr., Commanding

The Corps Area Commander made his tactical and training inspection of the post and Regiment on April 4th and 5th. The tactical exercise called for the Regiment to delay a regiment of infantry with field artillery at war strength, to enable a friendly infantry division to cross the Rio Grande. It was directed to hold a line four miles north of the river. Hostile infantry had been reported about fifteen miles north of the Rio Grande. When it was found that the hostile infantry was advancing on Rio Grande City, the 2d Squadron was assigned the mission of delaying the infantry by attacking its right flank. The Squadron gained contact with the enemy and delivered its first flank attack at 7:00 A. M. at a point about eight miles from the post, using fire alone.

As the hostile infantry was launching its attack on the 1st Squadron in its final position, the 2d Squadron rejoined after having covered about six miles over rough country and having delivered three separate fire attacks on the flank of the hostile columns, each of which forced the deployment of part of the column. Shortly after rejoining, the 2d Squadron was sent to oppose a hostile envelopment of the right flank of the 1st Squadron. It gained contact and at the conclusion of the maneuver, the verdict of the Corps Area Commander was that the regiment had accomplished its mission.

Troop G won the Training trophy at the last squadron competition. This trophy has been donated by Lieutenant Colonel Levi G. Brown, Squadron Commander, and is awarded to the troop showing the greatest proficiency in training. The events of the competition cover phases of training pursued since the last competition. Competitions are held quarterly. The trophy will be competed for sixteen times and become the property of the troop winning it the greatest number of times. There is engraved on the

trophy, the name of the Troop Commander and First Sergeant of the winning troop. Troop E (Captain Wilkie C. Burt and 1st Sergeant August C. Hendricks) won the first competition. Troop G (Captain John P. Scott and 1st Sergeant Millard Mitchell) claims that the trophy shall not pass out of its possession. It is believed that it will take some very hard work to keep this resolution.

A recreational program has been arranged which provides some form of entertainment each day of the week. Anyone may choose his favorite forms of recreation, as the list includes dancing, concerts, polo, jumping, cross-country rides, races, boxing, swimming, baseball and moving pictures.

Enlisted men are encouraged to take up polo. We now have about ten enthusiastic players among the enlisted men. Polo is played twice a week. Players are assigned to ponies and teams by the polo representative and every man that turns out is given an opportunity to play. The enthusiasm shown thus far gives assurance of the development of polo and a good Squadron team at Fort Ringgold. The polo field is in excellent shape and wins the praise of all who see it.

Troop F won the championship in the post basketball league. The trophy presented by the Athletic and Jockey Club will be competed for yearly.

A baseball league with two teams per troop (batteries are used on both teams) has been organized. Games are played twice a week. This series of games is bringing out many new players. After June 1st each troop selects one team and another series of games will begin.

The Squadron recently received eighty-two recruits and forty-six remounts. At present the Squadron training consists of target practice for all, individual, squad, and platoon training for the recruits on old horses, and training of the remounts by those other than recruits.

Through the efforts of Colonel Thomas, more than a hundred citrus fruit trees have been donated by nurseries in the valley and are now planted around the barracks and officer's quarters. Within a few years, the garrison can thank Colonel Thomas for the fruits it should gather from these trees.

The Squadron has maintained its record of lending a helping hand to those in distress by contributions to the Florida relief fund and the Mississippi flood sufferers. Every officer and man in the Squadron contributed to the latter cause.

First Sergeant August C. Hendricks and Sergeant Jim Adams of Troop E have departed for Fort Des Moines to try out for the Cavalry Rifle Team. Each have been members of the Cavalry Team in the past years.

The Chief of Cavalry paid the post a visit on May 9th and 10th. Business as usual went on pursuant to his direction. This program left with all the realization that we had not been inspected but had entertained a most welcome guest.

THIRTEENTH CAVALRY—Fort D. A. Russell, Wyoming

Colonel H. R. Richmond, Commanding

Organization Day was celebrated by the Regiment on Saturday April 30th. At 10:00 A. M. the Regiment formed dismounted on the 18th Cavalry Parade where the recruits of the Regiment were presented to the Standards after a short, inspiring address by Brigadier General John M. Jenkins, commanding Fort D. A. Russell. Following the ceremony, officers and ladies of the Regiment were hosts to the officers and ladies of the Post and civilian friends from Cheyenne at a buffet luncheon at the 18th Cavalry Club. In the afternoon a horse show held in the post riding hall was well attended by members of the post, as well as by civilians from Cheyenne.

Early on May 10th, Major General Hines, commanding the Ninth Corps Area arrived in Cheyenne for his annual tactical inspection of the command. He was escorted from the entrance to the post to the Commanding General's quarters by the 2nd Squadron, 18th Cavalry, preceded by all the trumpeters of the regiment. At 9:00 A. M. a review and

inspection in full field equipment was held and was followed in the afternoon by a tactical problem for the 4th and 13th Cavalries.

The following new officers have been assigned to the regiment and are expected to join in a few weeks: Lieut. Colonel Olan C. Aleshire, Lieut. Colonel Frederick G. Turner, Lieut. Colonel W. R. Pope, Major Cuthbert P. Stearns, Major John D. Kelley, Capt. Albert C. Smith, Capt. Charles G. Hutchinson, Capt. Modanant V. Turner, Capt. William Tussey, and 2d Lieut. Lee C. Vance.

The following officers have been ordered away: Lieut. Colonel S. D. Maine to Command and Staff School, Fort Leavenworth; Capt. H. E. Kloepper to Field Officers' Course, Cavalry School; Capt. A. E. Merrill detailed as instructor Wyoming National Guard; 1st Lieut. W. N. Todd to Troop Officers' Course, Cavalry School.

The Regiment feels with keen regret the coming loss of its regimental Commander, Colonel H. R. Richmond, who is to leave the regiment sometime in July. He will be succeeded by Colonel Aubrey Lippincott who will arrive here about July 15th. Colonel Richmond during his two years' tour of duty here has welded the regiment into a harmonious, smooth and efficient working machine.

The fishing season opened in this part of the world on May 1st. The Little Laramie Mountains, and the Medicine Bow Range just beyond, abound in streams, lakes, and forests, the region being a veritable fisherman's paradise during the months of May, June, July, August and September. To this is added the hunting grounds of northern Wyoming, the Jackson Hole Country, for elk and bear, and a return through Yellowstone Park. Good roads and the automobile make it possible for officers and enlisted men to get away to the mountains on hunting and fishing trips, to camp in the open, and to enjoy to the utmost this justly celebrated recreation district.

For the past two years the 13th Cavalry has been associated with the 115th Cavalry, Wyoming National Guard, and the 324th Cavalry, Organized Reserves, in their annual two weeks active training period. Officers and men alike look forward with much pleasant anticipation to the coming encampment at Pole Mountain in July with the National Guard and Organized Reserve Units.

FOURTEENTH CAVALRY (Less 1st Squadron)—Fort Des Moines, Iowa

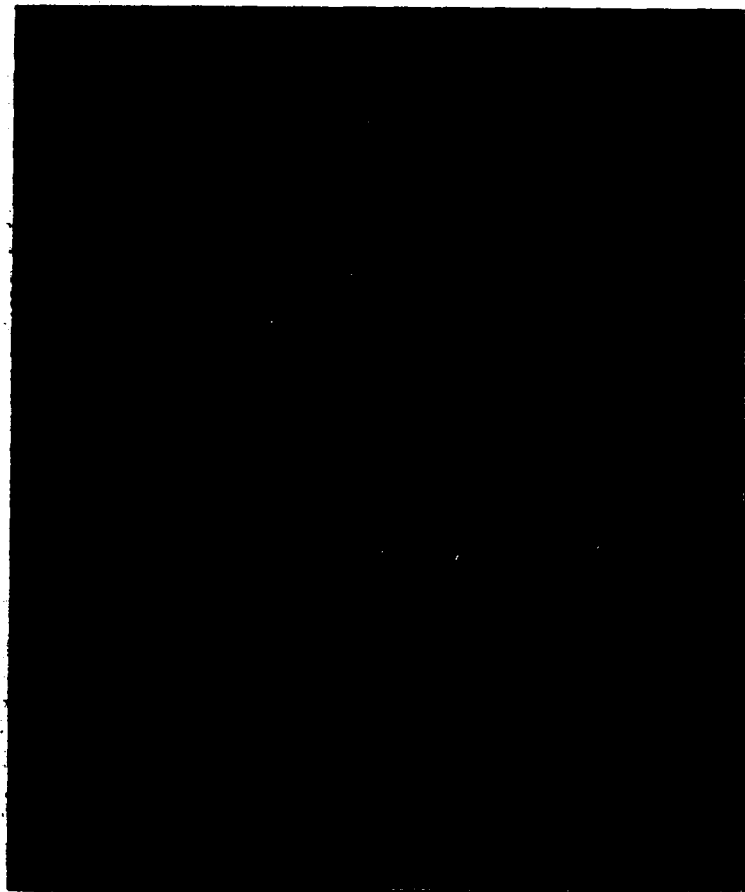
Colonel J. R. Lindsey, Commanding

In spite of rainy and decidedly inclement weather all spring, the command is closing most successfully the last training cycle. Starting April first, by closing all offices until 11:00 A. M., practically every man of the Regiment was made available for training with his organization. In addition to drill, both mounted and dismounted, a series of tactical exercises and problems was worked out. Simple at first and for the smallest units, they were enlarged in scope until the entire command was involved and the country for a radius of twenty-five miles from the Post thoroughly covered. The beneficial effect of the training received was clearly evident at the Chief of Cavalry's annual inspection May 21st and also at the annual tactical inspection which took place May 25th. The period between June 1st and July 1st will be devoted to training and qualification in the use of the pistol and saber; rifle practice and record firing being held in abeyance until after the close of the Citizens Military Training Camp—September first.

The officer's public speaking classes have continued throughout the winter and an unusually varied and interesting course presented. The polo season got under way the latter part of April, a large number of the officers turning out. The first game brought out a crowd estimated between 4,500 and 5,000 persons. Polo matches between Wakarusa Country Club and the Post team are scheduled for each Thursday and Sunday. Arrangements are being made to send the team to Leavenworth June 15th to 19th to take part in the Rocky Mountain Circuit Championship tournament. The team is going handicapped by the absence of Capt. H. J. Fitzgerald who is now at Walter Reed General Hospital suffering from injuries received when his horse slipped on the paving—falling in such a manner as to break the Captain's right leg in three places between the ankle and knee.

The probable line up for the tournament will be:—No. 1. 2d Lieut. C. A. Thorp; No. 2. 2d Lieut. I. D. White; No. 3. 1st Lieut. H. L. Kinnison, Jr.; No. 4. 2d Lieut. Geo. W. Buebay; substitute. Lieut. W. L. Weinaug.

There have been several changes in the commissioned personnel of the Regiment and more scheduled later in the season. Chaplain C. L. Miller, for six years Regimental Chaplain, left early in the spring for Fort Monmouth, N. J. His place has been taken by Chaplain H. L. Winters.



Master Sergeant Charles Craig
Retired June 8, 1927

Captain O. S. Peabody left the first of June for Santa Fe, New Mexico where he will go on D. O. L. with the New Mexico National Guard. Captain Peabody has been at Fort Des Moines for the past five years. Captain H. S. Beecher left June 15th for Camp Marfa, Texas where he goes to join the First Cavalry. Captain R. E. Willoughby joined May 17th. Captain Willoughby is acting as Adjutant in the absence of Captain H. J. Fitzgerald.

The Regiment has lost two fine old soldiers of the old school this last period thru

the retirement of Master Sergeants Charles Craig and F. M. McKee. Sergeant McKee was discharged March 12th, 1927 and Sergeant Craig left us June 8th. Both of these two non-commissioned officers have served beyond the term of their retirement. Sergeant McKee's record is believed to be unique; in that he spent his entire service, with the exception of a comparatively short time prior to his retirement when he served as Regimental Supply Sergeant, in one troop—Troop B. Sergeant McKee joined the Regiment on the date of its organization, March 5th, 1901. Sergeant McKee has gone to his home in New Haven, Connecticut. He was tendered a reception and smoker by the members of the 1st Squadron prior to his departure.

Master Sergeant Craig is the possessor of one of the most enviable records ever established in the Regiment. Colonel Charles A. Romeyn, in his article entitled *The First Sergeant* which appeared in the *CAVALRY JOURNAL* for July, 1925, pays a glowing tribute to this man. Colonel Romeyn states that in his entire service he has encountered but two men who came up to his ideal standard. Sergeant Craig is cited as one of these two men. Amongst other things, Colonel Romeyn states, "—the finest soldiers I have ever known. . . . On the job all the time, knew their paper work thoroughly and knew also the paper work and responsibilities of the Supply Sergeant, Stable Sergeant and Mess Sergeant; physically active; fine rifle and pistol shots and horsemen; able to man-handle a drunk when necessary but never using needless violence; sympathetic, and tactful with recruits (and recruit officers!) called by their first names on the ball field, but 'Sergeant Barnes and Sergeant Craig' in the orderly room,—leaders of men! These men either reformed or drove out the drunkards in their troops (reformed a good many); studied their officers so as to foresee their wishes, studied their men so as to be able to recommend the best promotions; studied the horses of the troop (although not Stable Sergeants) so as to know the habits and qualities of them; absolutely fair and square to enlisted men and officers."

During the World War, Sergeant Craig obtained and served in the grade of captain. Since the War, he has been Regimental Sergeant Major. He will be given special honors on the day of his retirement. The best wishes of the entire Regiment go with both of these soldiers.

FIRST SQUADRON, FOURTEENTH CAVALRY—Fort Sheridan, Illinois

Lieutenant Colonel Ben Lear, Jr., Commanding

On April 6th the Squadron participated in a military exhibition and horse show held in the Post riding hall. In addition to a number of horse show events, Troop A gave an exhibition of monkey drill, Troop B Cossack riding, and Troop C a saddle drill.

On April 22, the Corps Area Commander, General Lassiter, made his first official visit to the Post and reviewed all the troops of the garrison.

Target practice with rifle and machine rifle was held during the six weeks period commencing April 11th. Although weather conditions were unfavorable, it was necessary that the firing be completed during May in order that the troops might prepare for the annual tactical inspection and for the Military Tournament in Chicago, both scheduled for the last ten days of June.

The Chief of Cavalry visited the post and inspected squadron activities on May 18th.

SECOND MACHINE GUN SQUADRON—Fort Bliss, Texas

Major John B. Johnson, Commanding

During the last three months the Squadron has had some valuable experience and training with the two regiments of the 2nd Cavalry Brigade, as well as with the Brigade as a unit. In a number of the regimental problems of the 7th and 8th Cavalry, one troop of the 2nd Machine Gun Squadron has been attached and employed as part of an advance guard; as part of a delaying force; or to lay down quick concentrated fire power to cover a flank mounted attack. Machine Gun platoons were also attached to cavalry troops to strengthen outposts in the security of large bodies and were found most useful

in building up quickly, powerful centers of resistance. As this type of work with the cavalry regiments will no doubt be our mission in a war of movement, the officers and men were keenly interested, and enjoyed these joint exercises immensely, in addition to deriving much real tactical instruction from them.

The Chief of Cavalry, Major General Herbert H. Crosby, recently paid us an inspection visit. Immediately afterwards, Major General Ernest T. Hinds, the Corps Area Commander, held his annual tactical inspection. Both Generals seemed pleased with the progress made during the last year. Included in our Corps Area inspection was a night maneuver to Dona Ana Target Range and return a day later. On this maneuver each troop for purposes of comparison, used one platoon of pack horses and one of pack mules.

During the march out and back, it was noticeable toward the end of the day's work that the pack horses kept up much better than the mules. The pack horses seemed more willing to put forward their last bit of energy at the end of each day's maneuver, while the mules required considerable urging.

Phillips pack saddles are used throughout the Squadron and are admirably suited to their purpose. Sore backs are very rarely developed.

The recently issued Kitchen Pack was found most successful for preparing meals. The tops of the Fire Jacks are raised eight inches off the ground by corner legs only. So, to keep the wind from blowing the fire badly, it was found necessary to sink them low enough in the ground for the earth to act as a side and windbreak. We then had a good stove, even though there was a strong wind blowing.

B Troop has arranged its saddle and pack rooms so that each squad and the Troop Headquarters has a separate saddle room. This has been a great help in placing responsibility on squad leaders for care of equipment in their respective squads, has caused all leather to be kept in better shape, and has enabled squads to turn out both day and night with less confusion and more efficiency as to packing.

In the Post Baseball League, which is just getting under way, the Squadron nine has won from the 82nd F. A. Bn. (Horse), the 8th Engineers (Mtd), and has had a close game with the 7th Cavalry. B Troop won in the inter-troop baseball league, in which the 2nd Cav. Brig. Hq. Troop also took part, and was awarded the trophy—a beautiful twenty inch silver cup.

It is with deep regret that the Squadron loses its Plans and Training Officer, Captain Thomas J. Heavy, who goes to the Advanced F. A. Course at Fort Sill; its Supply Officer, Captain John C. Daly, who goes to the Command and General Staff School at Fort Leavenworth; Captain Isaac A. Walker, who goes to the Advanced Course at Ft. Riley; and Lieutenant Gilman C. Madgett who goes to the Troop Officers' Course at Riley. Rumor has it that replacements will include Captains James R. Finley, Captain Vernon L. Padgett and First Lieutenants Everett A. Yerby, James V. Gagne, Benjamin H. Graben, Stanton Higgins, and Richard H. Darrell. They will probably all arrive in time to celebrate Organization Day (August 20th) with their new Squadron.

THE CAVALRY JOURNAL

Devoted to the Interests of the Cavalry,
to the Professional Improvement of Its
Officers and Men, and to the Advance-
ment of the Mounted Service Generally

EDITOR

Major K. S. BRADFORD, Cavalry

Copyright, 1927, by
The United States Cavalry Association

Published quarterly by the United States Cavalry Association. Editor, Major K. S. Bradford, Cavalry. Entered as second-class matter at the post-offices at Washington, D. C., and Hanover, Pa., under the Act of March 3, 1879. Acceptance for mailing at special rate of postage provided for in section 1103, Act of October 3, 1917, authorized May 29, 1920:

Office of Publication, Hanover, Pa.

Editorial Office, Washington, D. C.

\$2.50 per year; single copy, 75c.

Foreign Postage, 25c Additional

U. S. Army Officers And Men
Are Invited To Make This Store Their Store



The United States Cavalry Association
1212 12th St. N.W.

Tri-State Grocery Co.

WHOLESALE

Groceries, Fresh Fruits, Vegetables
and Poultry

801-807 Texas Street, El Paso, Texas

Patronize our Advertisers—Mention the Cavalry Journal.

This Cavalryman



Knows the "Dope"
You Can Learn It Too
By Joining

THE UNITED STATES CAVALRY ASSOCIATION

Or By Reading The Coming Tactics Number Of

the CAVALRY JOURNAL

To U. S. Cavalry Association,
1624 E. St., N. W., Washington, D. C.

(Date)

FOR MEMBERSHIP IN THE U. S. CAVALRY ASSOCIATION

I hereby apply for membership in the U. S. Cavalry Association in the class for which I am eligible (see back of next page). Please find enclosed \$2.50 for one year's dues (to include subscription to the Cavalry Journal).

Name

Rank and Organization

Number and Street

City and State

FOR SUBSCRIPTION TO THE CAVALRY JOURNAL

Please find enclosed \$2.50 for one year's subscription to the Cavalry Journal.

Name

Number and Street

City and State

FOR CHANGE OF ADDRESS

Please change my address to the following:

Name

Number and Street

City and State

Please notify us at once of change of address.

CONTENTS FOR OCTOBER, 1927

VOL. XXXVI, No. 149

	Page
CAVALRY OF TODAY	Frontispiece
Major General H. B. Crosby	
RUSSIAN CAVALRY IN EAST PRUSSIA	531
General L. Radus-Zenkavicius	
THE ARMY POLO TEAM	547
Captain Charles H. Gerhardt	
A DAY WITH AN ITALIAN CAVALRY REGIMENT	552
Major Robert C. Richardson, Jr., G. S.	
JOINT CAVALRY AND AIR CORPS TRAINING	560
Major George Dillman, G. S. C.	
MARKSMANSHIP AND MUSKETRY	563
Captain W. F. Pride, Cavalry	
THE FIGHT AT VOLCHKOVTSY	575
General N. N. Golovine	
A REMARKABLE RIDE	582
A Cavalry Officer	
THE DAILY LIFE OF A FRONTIER SOLDIER	584
Raymond L. Welty, Ph. D.	
MACHINE GUN MARKSMANSHIP TRAINING	595
1st Lieutenant W. P. Campbell, Cavalry	
THE FRENCH ECOLE SUPERIEURE DE GUERRE	599
Major R. C. Richardson, G. S.	
RUSSIAN CAVALRY IN EAST PRUSSIA (Conclusion)	608
General L. Radus-Zenkavicius	
OFFICIAL REPORT OF A CAVALRY PRACTICE MARCH AND MANEUVER	624
TOPICS OF THE DAY	626
COLONEL "TOMMY" RETIRES—THE NICE HORSESHOW—CHISWELL KILLED—THE RETIRING SECRETARY-TREASURER-EDITOR—AMERICAN LEGION CONVENTION AT FORT RILEY—THE JAPANESE OLYMPIC TEAM—SUPPORT OF THE ASSOCIATION— A SADDLE BOX—MACHINE RIFLE COMPENSATOR.	
CAVALRY ACTIVITIES	637
CAVALRY DIVISIONS AND CORPS—MARCH AND REORGANIZATION OF THE THIRTEENTH CAVALRY—FIRST CAVALRY DIVISION MANEUVERS—51st CAVALRY BRIGADE AT PINE CAMP—MARCH OF THE FOURTH CAVALRY FROM FORT D. A. RUSSELL TO FORT MEADE—AERIAL EXPERIENCE FOR CAVALRY OFFICERS—SQUADRON MARCHES IN THE PHILIPPINES—SUMMER TRAINING BY SEVENTH CAVALRY—MARKSMANSHIP IN THE TWENTY-SIXTH CAVALRY—CAVALRY TRY-OUTS FOR ARMY HORSE SHOW TEAM—SIXTH CAVALRY SOUTHERN CIRCUIT POLO CHAMPIONS—CORRECTION— SUMMER CAMPS AT FORT MYER—THE EIGHTH CAVALRY POLO TEAM—ATHLETIC GAMES AT FORT RINGGOLD—MOUNTED SPORTS, SECOND CAVALRY—FORT SHERI- DAN HORSE SHOW—RACING IN THE FOURTEENTH CAVALRY—MOUNTED SPORTS, TWENTY-SIXTH CAVALRY—CHICAGO MILITARY TOURNAMENT.	
BOOK AND MAGAZINE REVIEWS	654
ROSTER OF REGULAR CAVALRY OFFICERS ON DUTY WITH TROOPS	663

The United States Cavalry Association

DESIGN

1. The aim and purpose of the Association shall be to disseminate knowledge of the military art and science, to promote the professional improvement of its members, and to preserve and foster the spirit, the traditions, and the solidarity of the Cavalry of the Army of the United States.

ARTICLE III of the Constitution.

Organized November 9, 1885

OFFICERS

President

Major General H. B. Crosby

Vice-President

Brigadier General W. J. Glasgow

Secretary and Treasurer

Major K. S. BRADFORD, Cavalry

EXECUTIVE COUNCIL

Colonel F. S. FOLTZ, U. S. A. Retired

Colonel E. H. HUMPHREY, Cavalry

Colonel L. B. BALLANTYNE, 102d Cavalry

Colonel JOHN PHILIP HILL, 306th Cavalry

Lt. Col. DANIEL VAN VOORHIS, (Cavalry) G. S. C.

Lt. Col. A. B. COKE, Cavalry

Lt. Col. A. F. COMMISKEY, Cavalry

Major H. S. BARNETT, Cavalry Reserve

Captain RYDENE WILLIAMSON, Cavalry

MEMBERSHIP AND SUBSCRIPTION TO THE CAVALRY JOURNAL

Membership shall be of three classes, which, together with the conditions of eligibility therefor, are as follows:

- (1) Active, for which all general officers of the Army of the United States and all commissioned officers of the Cavalry of the Army of the United States shall be eligible.
- (2) Associate, for which all present and former commissioned, warrant, and non-commissioned officers of honorable record of the military or naval services of the United States not included in class I shall be eligible.
- (3) Honorary.

Application for membership, showing present or former military status, should be addressed to the Secretary, U. S. Cavalry Association, 1034 H Street N. W., Washington, D. C., and be accompanied by remittance of dues for one year.

There is no initiation fee. Annual dues, payable in advance, \$2.50, which includes subscription to the Cavalry Journal, 60% thereof being so designated.

Any person or organization not eligible for membership may subscribe for the JOURNAL at the regular subscription rates of \$2.50 per year. Canadian and foreign postage, 25 cents additional.

Members and subscribers are requested to give prompt notice in advance of change of address.

CAVALRY OF TODAY

THE three great advantages that the cavalry of today has over the cavalry of the past are the co-operation of the air corps, utilization of the radio and increased fire-power. The air corps will render tremendous assistance by pointing out the direction in which the main cavalry effort must be made and by taking over in general the distant reconnaissance of the enemy, thereby making a great saving in horse flesh for the cavalry. Furthermore, in many other phases of campaign and of combat the close co-operation of air corps and cavalry is essential and will be of marked advantage to both.

The radio, soon to be greatly improved, will enable the cavalry commander, even though operating far to the front in hostile country, to send information promptly and surely back to higher headquarters, thereby saving both time and horse flesh and further assisting in preserving mobility.

The development and adoption of semi-automatic rifles or carbines, together with additional machine guns, will greatly increase the fire power of cavalry. It will make the cavalry better fitted than ever to seize and hold positions far in advance of the rest of the army and to act with great effectiveness in every phase of combat.

The Chief of Staff has recently decided to incorporate in each cavalry division an observation squadron, air corps; a tank unit and, as soon as developed, an armored car unit. He has further approved the development of anti-tank weapons appropriate for cavalry use and the eventual replacement of the present Springfield rifle by a semi-automatic rifle or carbine. These decisions, in addition to the recent creation of a cavalry corps of three divisions—largely skeletonized, to be sure—forecast a great advance in cavalry power and general effectiveness.

The additional effectiveness of the cavalry arm will be secured without impairing the cavalry's greatest asset—mobility. Hand in hand with mobility must go cavalry co-operation with other arms, especially the air corps, while full use must be made of the latest developments in aviation, communication and fire power.

Such a cavalry, the cavalry of today, will surely make its value felt in any war of the future and, most particularly, in any war in which this country may be engaged.

N. D. Dinsby
Major General U. S. Army
Chief of Cavalry

THE CAVALRY JOURNAL

Vol. XXXVI

OCTOBER 1927

No. 149

Russian Cavalry In East Prussia

By

General L. RADUS-ZENKAVICIUS

Chief of the Lithuanian War College, Graduate of the Imperial General Staff Academy and former Regimental and Brigade Commander in the Russian Army

Composition of the First Army

THE MOBILIZATION of the First Russian Army, under General Rennenkampff, began on July 31st, 1914. This army consisted of: the III, IV and XX Army Corps and the 5th Infantry Brigade; the 1st, 2d and 3d Cavalry Divisions, with the 1st Separate Cavalry Brigade; and the 1st and 2d Guard Cavalry Divisions.

The total strength of the First Army, assembled prior to the beginning of operations, was 83,000 bayonets, 21,000 sabers and 408 cannon.

The cavalry of the First Army consisted of:

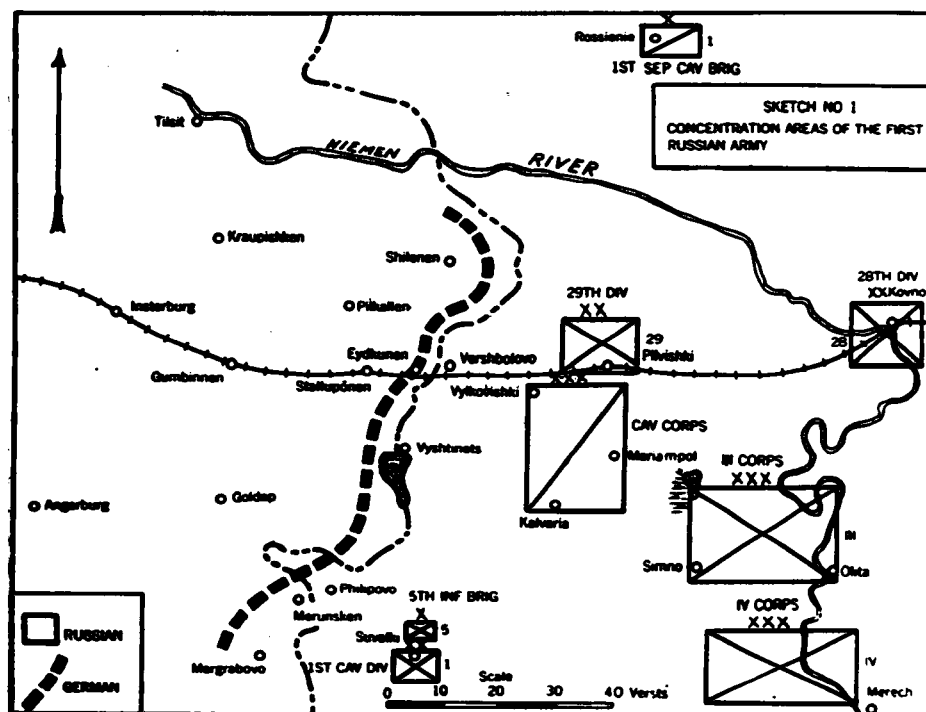
1st Guard Cavalry Division	16 squadrons	12 cannon	8 machine guns
Lieutenant General Kaznakov			
2d Guard Cavalry Division	24 squadrons	12 cannon	8 machine guns
Lieutenant General Raukh			
1st Cavalry Division	24 squadrons	12 cannon	8 machine guns
Lieutenant General Gurko			
2d Cavalry Division	24 squadrons	12 cannon	8 machine guns
General Khan Nakhichevansky			
2d Cavalry Division	24 squadrons	12 cannon	8 machine guns
Lieutenant General Belgard			
1st Separate Cavalry Brigade	12 squadrons	0 cannon	8 machine guns
Lieutenant General Oranovsky			

TOTAL 124 squadrons 60 cannon 48 machine guns

At the time of the mobilization, part of this cavalry was already in position (the 2d and 3d Cavalry Divisions and the 1st Separate Cavalry Brigade), and part was transported by rail during the first week into the area: Kovno-Suvalki (the Guard Cavalry Divisions from Petrograd and the 1st Cavalry Division from Moscow) (see sketch No. 1).

The bulk of the cavalry (the 1st and 2d Guard Cavalry Divisions and the 2d and 3d Cavalry Divisions) was concentrated in the area: Vylkovichki-Kalvaria-Mariampol-Pilvishki. The 1st Cavalry Division was concentrated in Suvalki and the 1st Separate Cavalry Brigade in the vicinity of the city of Rossienie.

Beside the above mentioned cavalry in the First Russian Army at the time of mobilization, there were included sixteen squadrons (sotnia) of the frontier guard; and during the third week after the declaration of war, four reserve cossack regiments and from ten to twelve second reserve cossack squadrons joined the army. These squadrons and regiments were distributed among the corps and the divisions for duty with the infantry and for protecting the trains.



Sketch No. 1

The Plan

The first task imposed upon the cavalry consisted in covering the concentration of the First Russian Army along the Niemen River from Merech to Kovno. On August 5th, the first Russian cavalry patrols crossed the German frontier on the front: Merunskan-Vyshtinets-Eydkunen. They met German infantry outposts everywhere and could not penetrate very deeply into East Prussia.

On August 14th, the concentration of the main forces of the First Russian Army was completed. The First and Second Armies constituted the Northwest Front, under the command of General Zhilinsky. On August 13th, his first directive, which was the basis for the first operations, was given.

In this directive, the following mission was assigned to the Northwest Front: "To carry on a decisive offensive in order to defeat the enemy, separate him from Königsberg and cut off his lines of retreat toward the Vistula (see sketch No. 2). Therefore, the First Army was to advance from the line: Suvalki-Vershbolovo toward the line: Angerburg-Insterburg, enveloping the line of the Mazurian lakes from the north. The Second Army, on the left, was to advance from the line: Khorzhele-Myshinetz-Gracvo-Argustovo on the line: Ortelsburg-Rudzhany-Letzen, and farther to the north. The main forces were to be directed toward the line: Ortelsburg-Rudzhany, by way of the flank and rear of the line of the lakes. Thus the advance was to be executed by a double envelopment of the enemy, who was in the region of the lakes. Having numerous cavalry, the First Army, after crossing the Angerap River, was to envelop the left flank of the enemy, as deeply as possible, in order to cut him off from Königsberg. The cavalry was charged with protecting and concealing our corps from the enemy, occupying the most important points, taking possession of river crossings, and destroying railroad lines in the rear in order to prevent the removal of the rolling stock."

The army cavalry received the order to cross the frontier on the morning of August 16th.

General Rennenkampf formed his cavalry into three groups, and issued the following orders:

a. General Khan Nakhichevansky's group (Cavalry Corps, consisting of 1st and 2d Guard Cavalry Divisions and 2d and 3d Cavalry Divisions) to cross the German frontier on August 16th and advance in the direction of Insterburg, enveloping Stallupönen and Gumbinnen from the north.

b. General Gurko's group (1st Cavalry Division) to cross the frontier in the vicinity of Philipovo and protect the left flank of the army, first from the direction of Margrabovo, and then from the direction of Letzen.

c. General Oranovsky's group (1st Separate Cavalry Brigade) to cross the frontier near Shilenen on August 17th, and protect the right flank of the army, reconnoitering to the line: Kraupishken-Tilsit.

The cavalry was charged with covering the movement of the army corps and preventing the removal of the railroad rolling stock.

The Terrain

The operations of the First Russian Army covered the area from the Niemen River, between Grodno and Kovno, to the Vistula, from Thorn to the sea. It included the districts of East Prussia and the province of Suvalki. The terrain consisted of a plain, dotted with hills, and in some parts with lakes and groups of woods, which, together with several streams, formed a considerable obstacle to the operation of troops.

On the Russian side, the main obstacle was the Niemen River, the width of which from Grodno to Kovno, was from fifty to seventy sasten.* In its lower

*Note: One sasten equals seven feet.

reaches, it attained a width of from one hundred to one hundred and fifty sasten. Although the banks of the river could be easily approached, it could not be forded. There were permanent bridges at Grodno, Olita and Kovno.

To the west of the Niemen, on the routes to Prussia, the following features were important: a strip of marshes and lakes: Serec-Simno-Zhuvinta-Amalva-Pale, which intersects the direct roads from East Prussia to Vilna (in Russia) and the forests of Argustovo which, with two rivers, covered the road to Grodno and the terrain to the south.

In the other portions of Russian territory there were no obstacles to the maneuvering of troops.

The line of the Niemen, from Grodno to Kovno, was fortified by the Russians. On its right flank was the fortress of Kovno, which, according to the papers, was considered a strong and modern fortress, but it was no secret to those who were informed that Kovno was neither a strong fortress nor a modern one. The left flank was to be protected by the fortress of Grodno, but the latter was not completed at the beginning of the war.

To cover the bridges near Olita, there existed out-of-date forts, which had lost any importance they may have had. A new plan for the creation, after the declaration of war, of a fortified field position had been worked out, which was to cover the fortified concentration area: Olita-Puni. In general, at the beginning of the war, none of the fortifications of the Niemen River could perform the missions which they were assigned.

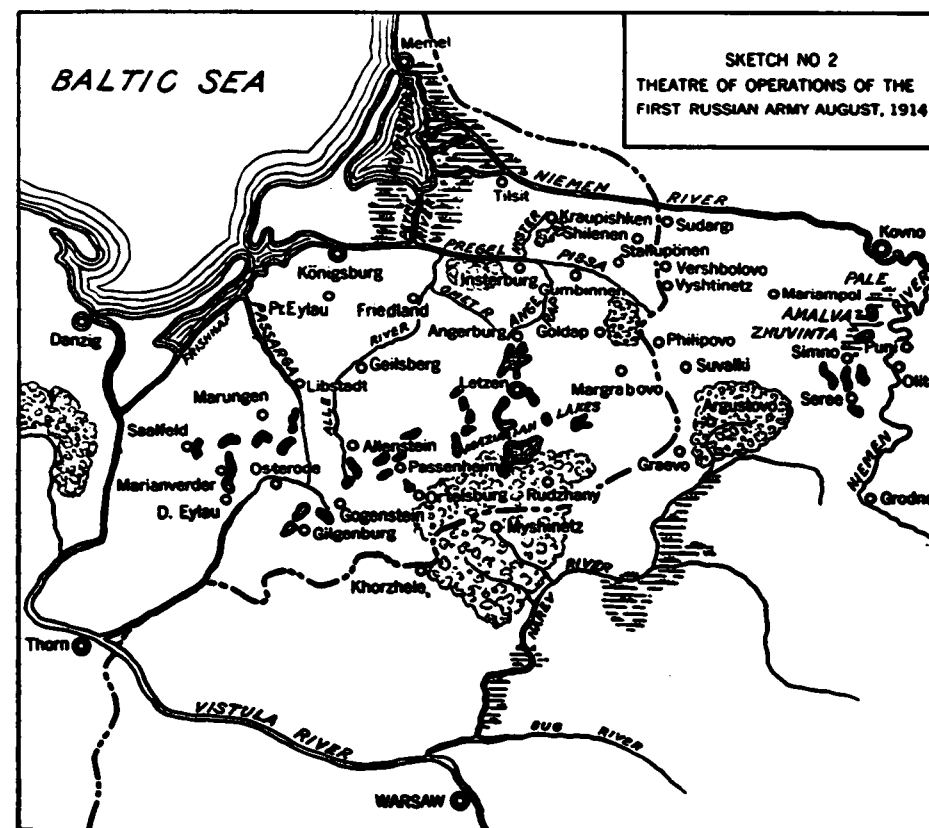
The Prussian side of the theater of operations of the First Russian Army was divided topographically by the line: Marienverder-Marungen-Geilsberg-Angerburg-Stallupönen, into two parts.

To the north was a large lowland, which was not higher than two hundred and fifty feet above the level of the Baltic Sea and was inclined toward it. Its littoral portion, along the delta of the Niemen to the mouth of the Deyme, was covered with rather large marshes. The other part was covered with a great number of good roads and was quite suitable for the maneuvering of large forces. The forests were distributed in small groups, and only at three places occupied large areas; to the southwest and northeast of the city of Insterburg, and to the northeast of the city of Goldap (the forest of Rominten). The lowland was crossed by the following rivers:

The Niemen, from the village of Sudargi to the sea, was very large (average width about one hundred sasten, average depth eight feet). From Tilsit to the sea, there were many marshes, but the river was not of great importance, as it was not on the route of either the Russian or the German advance. Near the city of Tilsit, there were two bridges. From this city to the sea, the river was divided into several branches.

The Pregel was formed by three rivers: the Angerap, Pissa, and Inster, which united near the city of Insterburg. It flowed in a westerly direction and discharged into the bay of Frishhaf, near the fortress of Königsberg. The

rivers, of which the Pregel was composed, were not important, and did not offer a serious obstacle to troops. The Pregel had an average width of from twelve to fifteen sasten, and a depth of about one sasten. Its valley was dry. Its crossing by troops was not difficult. Navigation was possible along its whole length.



Sketch No. 2

The Alle River, with its tributary, the Omet, and the Passarga River, flowed almost due north and discharged, the first into the Pregel, and the second into the Frishhaf. They were only of a size and importance equal to those which formed the Pregel.

The Deyme River was a branch of the Pregel improved by a channel, which connected it with the bay of Kuriashhaf. The width of the Deyme was twenty-five sasten, with an average depth of from ten to fifteen feet. Its valley, about one kilometer in width, was swampy and difficult to cross.

The whole northern part of East Prussia had, in general, no serious obstacles which would make the maneuvering of cavalry very difficult.

To the south of the line: Marienverder-Marungen-Geilsberg-Angerburg-Stalluponen, was the so-called East Prussian plateau.

This plateau was intersected by short but steep chains of hills, which sometimes reached a height of one thousand feet, by forests, rivers, marshes, and especially by lakes. This terrain had, in general, fewer good roads and contained more obstacles to operations of large forces. The most important feature here was a group of about two hundred lakes, which formed in some places entire lines connected by water channels.

The most important of all the lake groups were the Mazurian Lakes, which extended from the city of Angerburg to the south almost to the former Russian border. Its length was about seventy kilometers. The Mazurian Lakes were two or three days' march from Russian territory, and covered the very important route of advance from the Niemen to the Vistula, south of the fortress of Königsberg.

Knowing the importance of this water system, the Germans had fortified it. The widest isthmus, that near Letzen, through which the railway passed, was covered by a permanent fort (Boyen) and several block houses.

Parallel to the Mazurian Lakes, at about ten to twelve kilometers to the west, were two small groups of lakes. About thirty kilometers to the west, was the Passenheim group, which extended from north to south.

Between the cities of Gilgenburg and Allenstein was a considerable group of lakes, the Gogenstein group, and the area: Osterode-Libstadt-Saalfeld-Deuch-Eylau was occupied by several lines of the big lake system of Osterode.

All the groups of lakes mentioned above, intersecting the area, formed lines facing to the east and south, which facilitated the defense of the roads leading from the Niemen, as well as those leading from the Narev and the Bug. In the latter case, the line of the Mazurian lakes covered safely the left flank of the Germans.

On the west, East Prussia was bounded by the broad Vistula River.

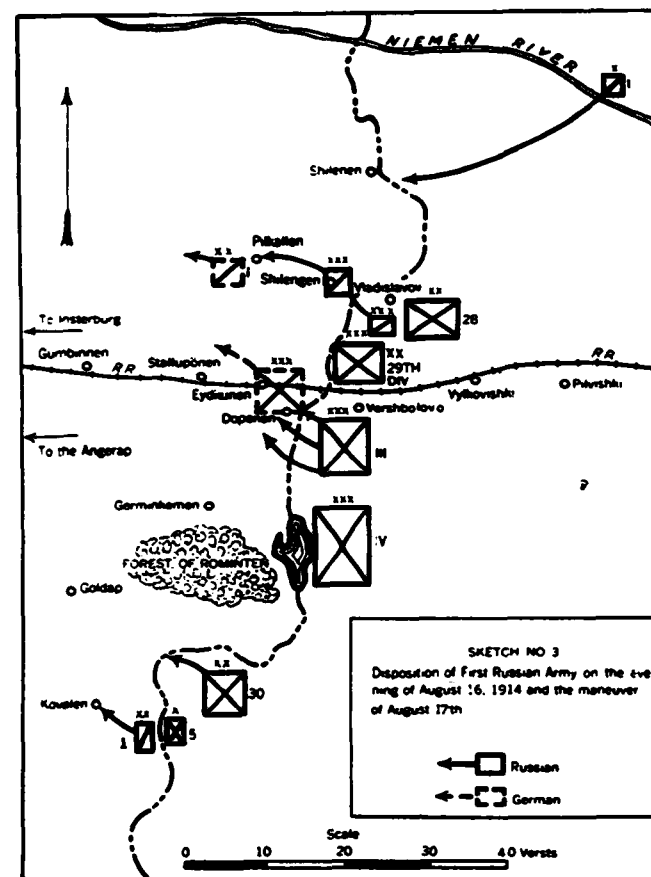
The whole theater of operations was, with a few exceptions, suitable for the maneuvering of cavalry units, but its northern part was the more favorable. The line of the Mazurian Lakes had to be passed by the cavalry, either from the north by way of Insterburg, or from the south across the territory of Poland, but the latter was out of the zone of the First Russian Army.

Crossing the Frontier

Prior to August 16th, the corps of the First Russian Army had moved from the line of the Niemen River to the German frontier.

The main forces of the cavalry occupied the area: Vershbolovo-Vilkavishki (see sketch No. 3). No serious collision occurred at that time. The reconnaissance was performed by small mounted patrols, but without much result, as the Germans had covered their frontier with a continuous line of infantry outposts and detachments.

On August 16th, General Khan Nakhichevsky assembled his cavalry corps to the south of Vladislavov, and, after having crossed the German frontier without any serious hindrance, stopped for the night in the vicinity of the village of Shilengen.



Sketch No. 3

At daybreak on August 17th, the Russian corps started the crossing of the German frontier. This operation was poorly planned and resulted in a detached action between the III Russian Corps (General Epanchin) and the I German Corps (General von Francois), which was close to the frontier. The other corps of the Eighth German Army were to the west of the Angerap River. General von Francois, taking advantage of the isolated position of the III Russian Corps and of the fact that between it and the IV Russian Corps, which was to the south, there was a gap of about fifteen kilometers which was not even watched, enveloped the left flank of General Epanchin's corps near

Dopenen and inflicted a tactical defeat, after which the Russians had to withdraw with their left flank to the frontier, losing more than eight thousand men. Neither the neighboring corps (except the 29th infantry Division) nor the cavalry had supported the III Russian Corps.

General Oranovsky's 1st Separate Cavalry Brigade occupied without opposition the village of Shilenen and carried out the reconnaissance ordered. General Khan Nakhichevansky's cavalry corps (four divisions with forty-eight guns), which was to operate from the north of Stalluponen in the direction of Insterburg, advanced only fifteen kilometers to Pilkallen and stopped for the night.

In front of General Khan Nakhichevansky was only General Breht's 1st German Cavalry Division (twenty-four squadrons and eighteen guns), which was in the vicinity of Pilkallen. It retreated little by little to the northwest. General Khan did not carry out the instructions given him, according to which he was to attack vigorously the 1st German Cavalry Division, throw it back and, leaving a containing force, take part with his main forces in the battle of the III Russian Corps, by operating in the rear of General Francois during the day of August 17th, and the night and morning of August 18th. Owing to the uncoordinated actions of the Russian corps and the inactivity of General Khan Nakhichevansky, the Germans (I Corps) not only achieved a tactical success, but retired quietly during the night to Insterburg.

If the operations had been well organized, especially those of the cavalry, the Russians, who had to the north of the forest of Rominten three times the force of the Germans, could have enveloped and defeated the isolated I German Corps near Stalluponen. General Khan Nakhichevansky in his report to the army commander on the events of the day, stated: "The enemy avoids any collision with the cavalry and retreats quickly."

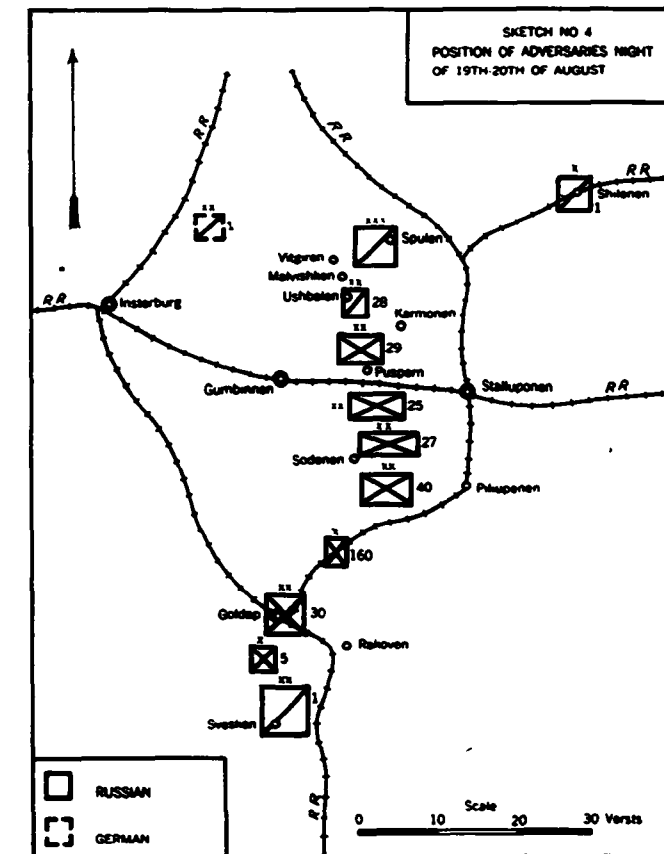
On the left flank of the First Russian Army, General Gurko's 1st Cavalry Division occupied without opposition the railroad near the station of Kovalen and reconnoitered in the direction of Letzen.

The commander of the First Russian Army, General Rennenkampf, expressed himself on the action of General Khan Nakhichevansky in a telegram on August 1st, as follows: "The action of your cavalry in the battle of August 17th was entirely unsatisfactory; the infantry had a very hard fight; the cavalry was bound to help it, by appearing not only on the flank, but also in the rear, of the enemy, regardless of the distances to be marched."

The Battle of Gumbinnen

According to the orders of the commander of his army (General Prittwitz and Gafrova), and after having been convinced of the superiority of the Russian forces, General von Francois withdrew his corps to Insterburg. The departure of the Germans was disclosed to the Russians only on August 18th. Thus the Russian troops did not start the advance until 2:00 P. M. on August 18th and reached on this day, without encountering any resistance, the line: Svesken-

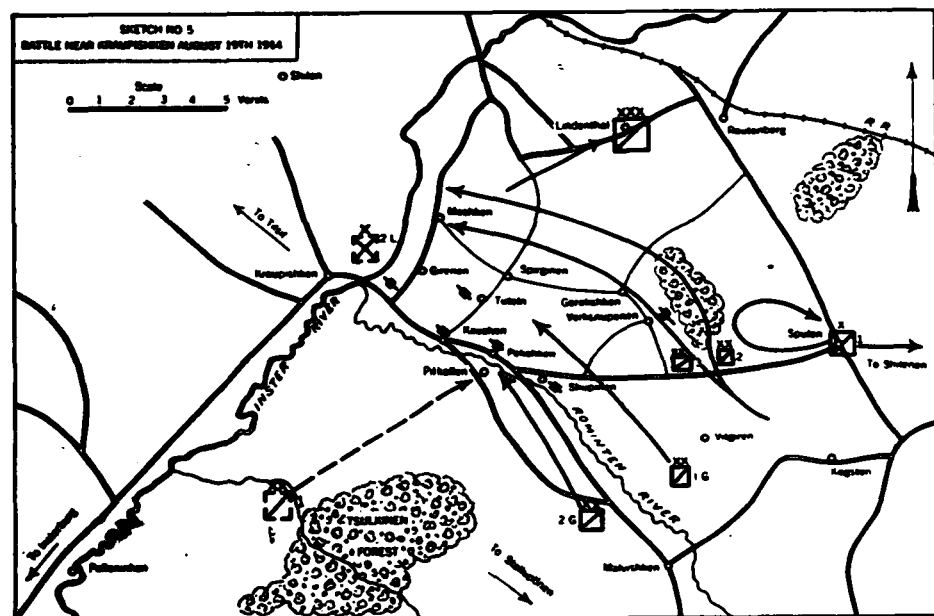
Rakoven-Piliupenen-Stalluponen-Malvishken (see sketch No. 4). Only General Khan Nakhichevansky's corps encountered resistance on the line: Malvishken-Vitgiren, where units of dismounted cavalry and cyclists of the 44th and 45th Regiments were driven back.



Sketch No. 4

General Oranovsky's brigade, which was not reached by orders from the army, remained during the day in the vicinity of the village of Shilenen. Orders from the army commander for August 19th reached the corps commander in the form of incomplete telegraphic orders and arrived, moreover, at some headquarters after considerable delay. The orders were issued on the assumption of the continuance of the retreat of the enemy in a westerly direction. The mission assigned to the troops for August 19th by the army commander consisted in the occupation of the line: Goldap-Sodenen-Puspurn-Karmonen-Ushbalen. On August 20th, the troops were to have a rest.

But on August 19th, the 28th and 29th Divisions, which were on the right flank of the army, and General Khan Nakhichevansky's cavalry started a battle with the Germans and on August 20th, instead of the rest, the first great battle of the war was fought near the city of Gumbinnen.



Sketch No. 5

General Khan Nakhichevansky's cavalry corps, according to the orders of the army commander issued on August 15th, was to operate on the left flank of the Germans in the direction of Insterburg, enveloping Gumbinnen from the north. General Khan Nakhichevansky received from the army commander an expression of disapproval for his inactivity in the battle of August 17th and also an order, sent through the staff of the XX Corps and other channels, to support the XX Corps with all his forces during the performance of the mission assigned to it.

On August 18th, the Cavalry Corps advanced in the direction of the forest of Tsulkinen (to the northeast of Insterburg) (see sketch No. 5).

Toward evening, the advance guard columns of the division pushed back the dismounted detachments of German cavalry and the cyclist companies of the 44th and 45th Infantry Regiments, which tried to hold the line: Malvishken-Vitgiren. After this, the Cavalry Corps stopped for the night in the area: Vitgiren-Kaushen-Malvishken. According to the information obtained by the scouts during the day, small detachments of the enemy retreated to the vicinity of Insterburg without any serious opposition.

On the morning of August 19th, General Khan Nakhichevansky received information that German infantry and artillery, brought up from Tilsit, had arrived at the station of Shilen and were advancing in march columns toward Kraupishken. Taking into consideration that this movement threatened the flank of the army, he decided to advance in the direction of Kraupishken to make a reconnaissance and push the Germans beyond the river Inster, if they had already crossed it.

At 9:00 A. M. on August 19th, the Cavalry Corps advanced in three columns: the left, 2d Guard Cavalry Division, in the direction of Kaushen and Kraupishken; the center, 1st Guard Cavalry Division, in the direction of Girenen; and the right, formed by the 2d and 3d Cavalry Divisions, in the direction of Meshken. The mission of the divisions consisted in the occupation of the passages over the Inster River.

At about 11:30 A. M., the leading detachments of the Cavalry Corps reached the line: Opelishken-Gerelishken, where they met with the advanced detachments of the 2d German Landwehr Brigade and began the fight. The 2d German Landwehr Brigade was in Tilsit and consisted of five battalions, two batteries and two cavalry squadrons. The commander of the Eighth German Army, General Prittwitz und Gafron, decided to stop the Russian advance and ordered this brigade to be moved to Kraupishken.

Having received information of the concentration of Russians in the vicinity of Malvishken, General Prittwitz, on the morning of August 19th, ordered the 2d Landwehr Brigade to be moved from Kraupishken in the direction of Malvishken, in order to take part in the flank attack against the Russians. The 2d Landwehr Brigade started the march from Kraupishken on the morning of August 19th and its leading elements, which consisted of two battalions and two batteries, came in contact with the Russian cavalry before noon.

The 2d Guard Cavalry Division marched with an advance guard, consisting of the Uhlan Bodyguard Regiment, a platoon of horse artillery and two machine guns. The advance guard was protected by an advanced detachment, which consisted of two squadrons, in front of which marched one-half squadron in the "lava" formation. A detachment of two squadrons of the Bodyguard Cavalry Grenadier Regiment was assigned to protect the exposed left flank. It moved on a line with the head of the main body at a distance of from two to three kilometers to the south.

The "lava," which at 11:45 A. M., was approaching the village of Opelishken, was met with rifle fire from about one company of infantry stationed at a farm between the villages of Opelishken and Kaushen. The advanced detachment was dismounted and occupied the northern edge of a ravine to the south of the road (one squadron), a garden and a farm to the north of the road (one-half of the second squadron) and also a farm in front of the ravine to the south of the road. The firing began.

At this moment the advance guard approached. The commander of the advance guard, Colonel Kniazhevitch, dismounted his command and moved the 5th Uhlan Squadron, with a platoon of machine guns to the left flank of the advanced detachment (to the south of the road), the 6th Squadron to a farm opposite the village of Tuteln, whence the enemy could be enfiladed, and a platoon of horse artillery to the north of the road near the village of Opelishken. The two squadrons of the flank detachment, when they arrived on the line, took over the defense of the flank. All the troops which occupied the line opened fire.

As soon as the platoon of horse artillery opened fire, it received counter-battery fire, at 12:45 P. M., from German Artillery firing from the direction of the mill near the village of Kaushen. The fire was so accurate and heavy that the battery was temporarily silenced. At the same time the German infantry opened up a heavy fire from the vicinity of Tuteln and Kaushen.

In the vicinity of Pilkallen, the German infantry lines were re-enforced and the intention to envelop the Russian left flank was evident. In addition to the artillery platoon from Kaushen, the batteries from the vicinity of Tuteln and Kraupishken also opened fire.

At this moment the battlefield was reached by the head of the main forces. The division commander re-enforced the troops, which were carrying on the battle, by units of the 1st Brigade and by part of the cavalry squadrons of the 2d Brigade. The horse artillery batteries (10 guns) took position in the vicinity of the village of Shupinen. At about 3:00 P. M., they opened an energetic fire against the German batteries and soon silenced those near Kaushen and Tuteln. The firing line of the 2d Guard Cavalry Division started the advance.

Between 11:30 A. M. and 12:30 P. M., the main forces of the other cavalry divisions appeared on the line: Opelishken-Gerelishken. The 1st Guard Cavalry Division was dismounted. It was used partly to re-enforce the 2d Guard Cavalry Division and partly for the extension of the line to the right in the direction of the village of Verkanupenen. The 3d Cavalry Division occupied, after being dismounted, the village of Verkanupenen and the west edge of the forest near Gerelishken. The 2d Cavalry Division was to the east of this forest.

Firing against the German Landsturm was general along the whole front. The battery of the 3d Cavalry Division occupied a position to the northeast of the village of Verkanupenen. The general advance to the line: Kaushen-Tuteln-Spirginen was quite rapid. One regiment of the 3d Cavalry Division moved forward at about 3:00 P. M. and occupied the edges of the woods to the north and south of Meshken.

The scouts, which were sent out to search for fords, advanced into the valley of the Inster and, in spite of the fire from the right bank, found the fords and even crossed to the right bank.

An order was given to the 3d and 2d Cavalry Divisions to cross the Inster and envelop Kraupishken from the north.

At this time the advance of the dismounted 2d and 1st Guard Cavalry Divisions progressed very slowly. At about 3:30 P. M. the 3d Squadron of the Bodyguard Cavalry Regiment, which was in reserve, started a mounted attack against the two German guns near Kaushen, which were commanded by Captain Baron Vrangell. This attack was met by one round from the artillery platoon and by heavy fire from the infantry which it escorted. The whole infantry line rushed to the attack behind the squadron and crossed the line of German guns.

The Germans started the retreat, but continued to bring a heavy fire to bear from the direction of the village of Pilkallen against the flank of the advancing troops. At about 6:00 P. M., the enemy retreated along the whole line and, at about 8:00 P. M., evacuated the entire left bank of the Inster. At this time one regiment of the 3d Cavalry Division (the 3d Dragoon Regiment of Novorossiysk) crossed to the right bank of the Inster opposite Meshken and occupied the farm and the mill. The retreat of the Germans from Kraupishken to the northwest was seen clearly. They were beyond rifle and machine gun fire and the regiment had no guns. The crossing of the Inster by the 2d Cavalry Division was delayed until darkness.

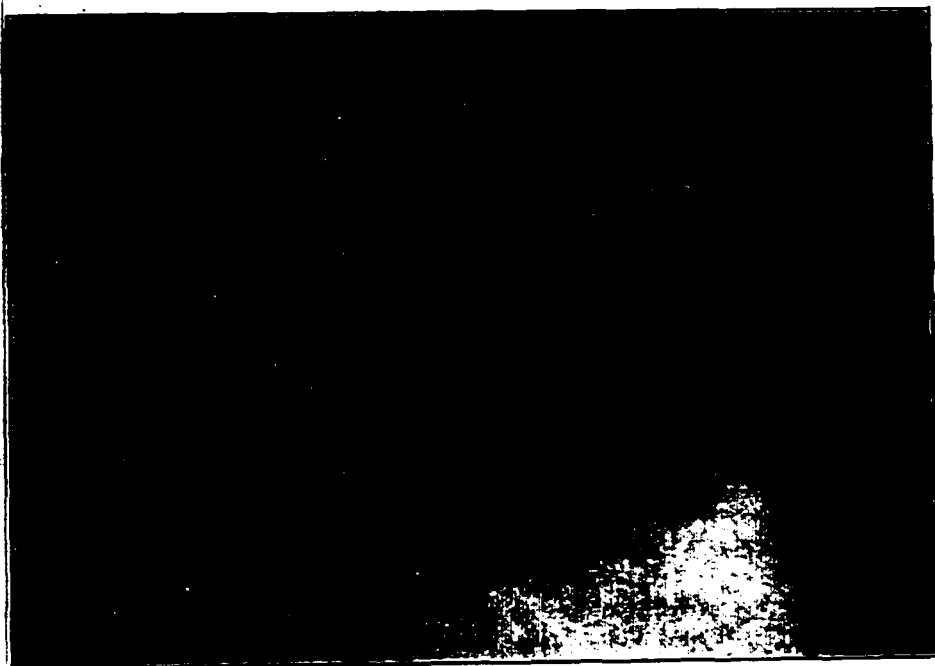
The commander of the Cavalry Corps, General Khan Nakhichevansky, decided not to continue the pursuit. He ordered the action discontinued as, according to his report: "The darkness, the Inster, firing from the right bank by enemy detachments and lack of ammunition made the pursuit impossible." Then he withdrew the Cavalry Corps to the vicinity of the village of Lindenthal to bivouac for the night, leaving the routes to the flank and rear of the XX Corps unprotected, and not having informed the commander of the 28th Russian Division, which was on his immediate right.

The spoils of the battle of August 19th consisted of twenty prisoners, two guns and four ammunition wagons. Several hundred dead Germans were left on the field. The Cavalry Corps lost 46 officers, 329 men and 369 horses killed and wounded. The 3d squadron of the Bodyguard Cavalry Regiment suffered severely. The Germans admitted their heavy losses and said that the 11th Battalion of the 4th Landsturm Regiment alone had lost 13 officers and 219 men.

Comments

The battle of August 19th was an interesting and rare example of a military engagement between cavalry and infantry. This victory was gained by the Russian cavalry mainly on account of the efficiency of the guard horse artillery and the exceptional bravery and dash shown by the officers and men of the cavalry. It proved that good cavalry can perform the missions of modern war as well as ever.

In regard to the execution of the operation, little energy and flexibility were shown by the cavalry in maneuvering on the battlefield. The assignment of almost all the cavalry divisions to the frontal attack was not justified. It would have been better to have protected the front by a detachment and to have sent the bulk of the force (two or three divisions) to envelop Kraupishken and destroy the railway from Tilsit to Insterburg and Stalluponen.



Russian Cavalry in Petrograd, 1914

Such an operation in the rear would have been the best method of drawing the enemy away from the flank of the army. Certainly, after having driven the enemy to the right bank of the Inster, the roads leading to the flank of the army should have been occupied. The battle of August 19th was, in reality, strategically useless, and even dangerous, as it was an indirect cause of the withdrawal of the whole Cavalry Corps from the flank of the army, which was protected by it, and of its complete inactivity on the important day of the battle of Gumbinnen.

On this day the army commander again had sent a dispatch to General Khan Nakhichevansky, which emphasized the incorrectness of his action and indicated the mission of the corps for the 19th and 20th of August: "The action of your cavalry in the battle of August 17th was entirely unsatisfactory; the infantry had a hard fight. The cavalry was bound to help it by appearing

not only on the flank, but also in the rear of the enemy, regardless of the distances to be marched.***** I direct you to be more energetic, more mobile, and to remember that you have forty-eight guns which, if used against the rear of the enemy, can enable us to win a great victory. Tonight the army is ordered to occupy the line: Goldap- Sodenen-Puspern-Karmonen-Ushbalen (see sketch No. 4). Tomorrow, August 20th, the army is to stay in the same area. I direct you to ascertain by reconnaissance along the line: Gumbinnen-Insterburg, until the night of August 20th, whether these cities are occupied, whether fortifications exist, what forces are between the Rominten and Inster Rivers (see sketch No. 5), whether they are defended, and whether the forest of Tsulkinen is occupied. On the 20th, you will occupy Pelleninken on the Inster with your main body. Destroy completely the Tilsit-Insterburg railway."

The missions pointed out in this order were not accomplished by General Khan Nakhichevansky. During the whole of August 20th, when the right flank of the First Russian Army (the 28th Division) surrounded by the enemy, was being wasted in an unequal battle, he remained entirely inactive and was "waiting," as he explained later, "for a supply of ammunition which did not arrive." Neither did he maintain liaison with the commander of the 28th Division, who did not know the location of the Cavalry Corps, nor what it was doing.

The value of General Khan Nakhichevansky's cavalry corps on August 19th was expressed in General Rennenkampf's note as follows: "The chief of staff of the Cavalry Corps (Colonel Tsesnakov) reported to me in detail the course of your action on August 19th. As before, I am fully convinced that the action was extremely unsuccessful.

"The disposition of the center column (1st Guard Cavalry Division) which came into contact with the enemy was entirely correct. The flank divisions of Generals Belgard and Raukh should have advanced with all their forces and enveloped the enemy from both flanks. As I know, General Raukh directed one part of the division with the artillery, but the action of General Belgard was inexcusable. Is it possible that a general who has attained the rank of division commander does not know that, for the success of an enveloping movement, he must take his three batteries with him? The enemy, if attacked from both flanks with enfilading artillery fire, would have been annihilated. All his twelve guns could easily have been taken by you. As it was you took only two guns with great losses. Your division commanders are responsible for all these losses.

"Now I give you a new mission and remind you again that to obtain success you must use artillery fire against the flanks and rear."

General Oranovsky's 1st Separate Cavalry Brigade had been ordered to protect the right flank of the army and reconnoiter along the line: Kraupishken-Tilsit. On the evening of August 19th, it arrived in the vicinity of the

village of Spulen, where it expected to stay for the night. Having received information that the Cavalry Corps was engaged in a battle, General Oranovsky moved to its aid. On the way he received information of the end of the battle and of the withdrawal of the Cavalry Corps. He returned, and at 1:00 A. M. on August 20th, bivouacked for the night in the vicinity of Spulen-Kegsten. Here he reconnoitered the forest of Tsulkinen, which disclosed at 5:00 A. M. the movement of two columns of the enemy against the right flank of the 28th Division. Units of the brigade were fired on by German artillery. After this, General Oranovsky moved his brigade about thirty kilometers to the east and bivouacked in the vicinity of the village of Shilenen.

On this occasion, he sent from Shilenen at 8:00 P. M. to the chief of staff of the army the following report: "I had not sufficient strength to prevent the envelopment of the 28th Division by the enemy. I waited until 5:00 o'clock for the promised battery and cavalry squadrons, but they did not arrive. I had liaison neither with the 28th Division nor with General Khan Nakhichevansky. I retired for the night toward Shilenen, where the 216th Regiment was expected, but the latter was not there. The horses were very tired, effectives in the squadrons being only from seventy to eighty. I request orders."

The actual situation was as follows. At the time when the battle was being fought along the whole front of the First Russian Army, and, when the 28th Infantry Division, which suffered great losses, as well as the whole XX Corps were, on August 20th, under the impression that almost four and one-half cavalry divisions, with strong horse artillery, were operating with them, this whole mass of cavalry remained idle.

General Brecht's 1st German Cavalry Division took advantage of the inactivity of the Russian cavalry on the right flank, fearlessly advanced on August 20th between it and the Russian Infantry Division (28th) and occupied Pilkallen. From here German cavalry patrols harassed the rear of the XX Russian Corps, spreading panic and contributing to the defeat of the 28th Russian Division.

General Gurko's 1st Russian Cavalry Division remained, on August 19th and 20th, in the region to the south of Goldap (see sketch No. 4) reconnoitering in the direction of Letzen. It was to have worked in co-operation with the IV Russian Corps which contained, beside its own two divisions, the 5th Infantry Brigade. This corps had an encounter with the enemy on August 20th, but only the two divisions actually took part in the battle, the 5th Infantry Brigade being in reserve.

Thus on August 20th, the day of the general battle of Gumbinnen, none of the cavalry of the First Russian Army was engaged in the battle.

(Concluded on page 608)

The Army Polo Team

By

Captain CHARLES H. GERHARDT, Member of the Army Team

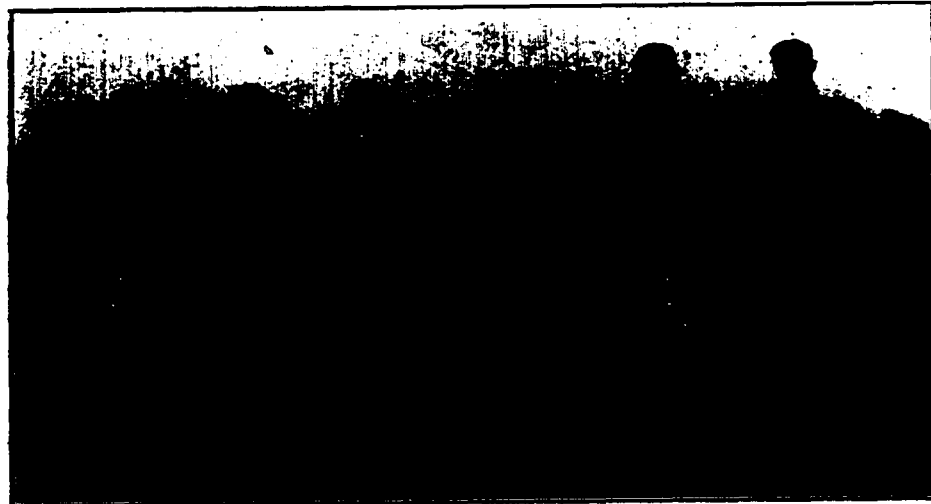
ABOUT THE MIDDLE OF MAY, the nucleus of the 1927 Army polo team assembled at Mitchel Field, Long Island, in preparation for the coming season, Captain P. P. Rodes having charge of the personnel, both enlisted and officer, and of the mounts. The following Army ponies from the previous year's string were sent up from Front Royal: Peg, Liggett, Tiddleywinks, Louise Noel and Vampire. Chicken, of the Army string that went to England in 1925, was brought back by Captain Huthsteiner.

The officers reporting on the above dates were, in addition to Captain Rodes, Lieutenant C. C. Benson from Fort Myer, Captain J. S. Tate from Fort Myer, and Captain Huthsteiner from Fort Sam Houston. About a month later, Captain Wilkinson reported from Fort Riley and Captain Gerhardt from West Point.

For the first practice match, about May 20th, at Meadowbrook, the Army lined up with Benson at No. 1; Rodes, No. 2; Tate, No. 3; and Huthsteiner, back, and defeated Meadowbrook, with Ewing at No. 1; Doctor Richards at No. 2; Talbot at No. 3; and Mr. Strawbridge at back; 9 to 8. A few days later, at Piping Rock, the same Army team defeated another Meadowbrook team, consisting of Marshal Field at No. 1; Mr. Belmont at No. 2; Mr. Lowe at No. 3; and Mr. Milburn at back; 12 to 8. The next practice match was held at Fisher's Field, Roslyn, the Army defeating the following team 11 to 9; Mr. Cooley at No. 1; Earl Hopping, Jr., at No. 2; Earl Hopping at No. 3; and Mr. Schwartz at back.

The above practice matches gave the Army a good chance to condition its ponies and shake the team together for the first twenty goal tournament at Meadowbrook. In this twenty goal tournament, the Westbury challenge cups, the Army came through to the finals, but was defeated in the play-off by Shelburne. The Army in the first game defeated Milburn's Magpies, 11-8. In the second match, by a score of 13 to 10, the Army defeated the following team: Mr. Moore at No. 1; Frank Hitchcock at No. 2; Tommy Hitchcock at No. 3; and Cheever Cowdin at back. In the finals, the Army lined up against Shelburne, with Mr. Scotty Phipps at No. 1; Captain Wilkinson at No. 2; Mr. Webb at No. 3; Morgan Belmont at back. In this match, which was a very hard one, the Army showed that it was not a well balanced polo team. Captain Rodes at No. 2, was drawn back on the defensive and the team found itself with three players in the backfield and one out in front, which left no game in the middle of the team. The score of this match was 13 to 9, in favor of Shelburne, Captain Wilkinson playing a very strong game for the Army's

opponents. The first practice match found the Army with Lieutenant Benson at No. 1; Captain Gerhardt at No. 2; Captain Wilkinson at No. 3; and Captain Huthsteiner at back. This team defeated Perry Beadleston at No. 1; Wistor Randolph at No. 2; David Dows at No. 3; and Pyne at back, 9 to 5, having given the opponents an eight goal handicap. In the next practice match, Captain Wilkinson went to No. 1, and Captain Tate to No. 3. This team seemed to function together in fine shape and defeated by a score of 17 to 6 a strong Meadowbrook team, consisting of: Mr. Buzzy Smith at No. 1; Mr. Whitney at No. 2; Mr. Stevenson at No. 3; and Bobby Strawbridge at back.

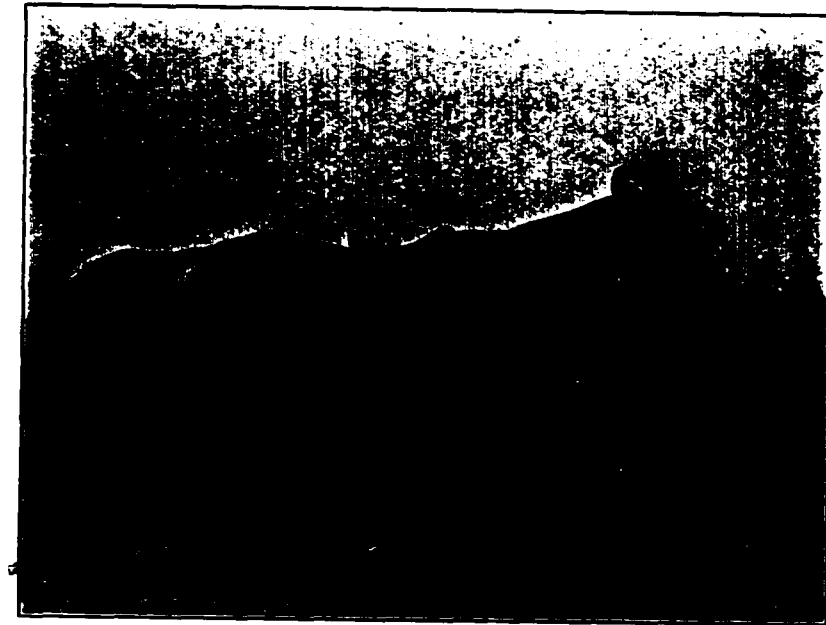


The Army Polo Team

Left to Right: Lieut. Benson and Captains Wilkinson, Gerhardt, Rodes, Tate, and Huthsteiner.

This year's "Juniors" were to be played at Philadelphia and in the draw at Mr. Stoddard's house, the Army drew the first match on Saturday, July 2nd, against the Philadelphia Country Club. Ponies were shipped down by express on Wednesday, twenty-four being taken, six for each player. The grounds at the Philadelphia Country Club were in fine shape, and the Army lined up with the plan of playing each one of the six ponies one period each, using the poorer ponies for the second time around, provided the score warranted this playing. The Philadelphia Country Club played as follows: No. 1, Morris Dixon; Winston Guest at No. 2; Wistor Randolph at No. 3; Barclay McFadden at back. This team was defeated 15 to 5, the Army playing a very strong game. On the 4th, the Army played a six period practice match against the Bryn Mawr team at Bryn Mawr, while another Bryn Mawr team playing in the "Juniors" eliminated the Roslyn team from Long Island.

On July 7th, the Army lined up against Bryn Mawr in the second round, George Earle at No. 1; Gerald Smith at No. 2; Benjamin Gatins at No. 3; and Forrest Clark, of Harvard, at back. After a slow start, the Army came through its match on the long end of the 12 to 8 score. In the finals, the Army found itself against a Rumson team with Strother Jones at No. 1; Rube Williams, from Texas, at No. 2; Earl Shaw, from Texas, at No. 3 and Jerry Balding, the polo manager, at back. General Summerall, the Chief of Staff and Colonel Margetts, head of the Army polo committee, were present for this match. General Summerall spoke a few words to the team which seemed to



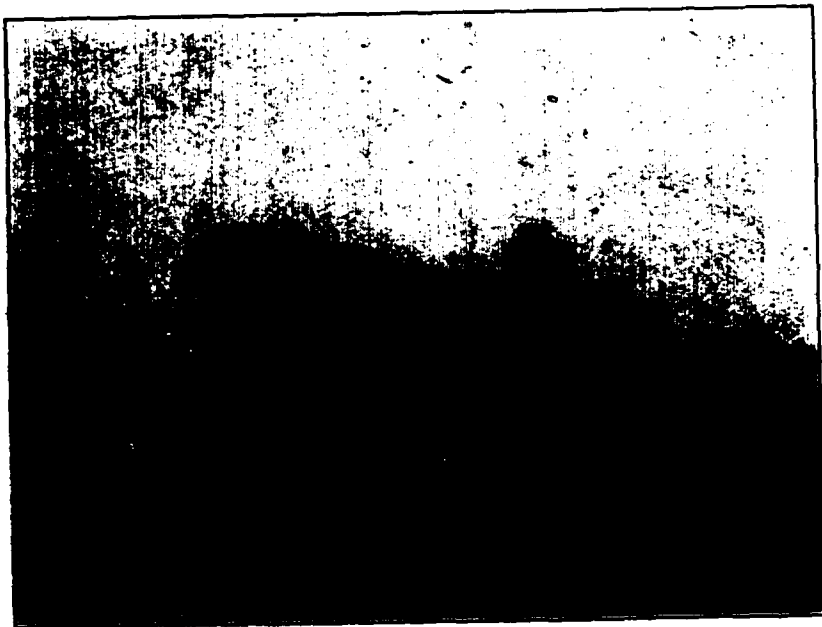
Walukahav, Played by Captain Rodes

have a great deal of effect, as the Army played high grade polo for four periods, leading at half time by 10 to 3. At the beginning of the second half, the Army seemed to have struck a snag, Rumson began to play well and scored almost at will. In the next to the last period, they tied the score and passed the Army, the score being at this time 11 to 10, in favor of Rumson. In the last period the Army came to life and scored three goals to Rumson's none, thus winning the Junior Championship for the third year in succession, and giving the polo crowd a very fine game to watch for the finals.

The Army has won the Junior Championship five out of the last six years, losing it to the Midwick Team of California in 1924 at Rumson, this California team later going on to win the Open Championship at Meadowbrook.

The ponies played in the "Juniors" were as follows:

No. 1 Wilkinson	No. 2 Gerhardt	No. 3 Tate	Back Huthsteiner
Billy Mack (Pvt)	Liggett (Gvt)	Duce (Pvt)	Brown Jug (Pvt)
Elio (Gvt)	Hindu Girl (Pvt)	Brown Betty (Pvt)	Red Ball (Pvt)
Belral (Gvt)	Sister Sue (Pvt)	Geisha Girl (Pvt)	Nelly (Gvt)
Episode (Gvt)	Lady Kathleen (Pvt)	Louise Noel (Gvt)	Chicken (Gvt)
Peg (Gvt)	Ruth (Pvt)	Danny (Gvt)	Bill Meadows (Gvt)
Virginia (Gvt)	Quinnie (Pvt)	Virginia (Pvt)	Jeannette Andrews (Pvt)



Ruth, Played by Captain Gerhardt

Of the twenty-four ponies used in this tournament half are privately owned, either by the officers on the team or loaned by others in the service. This speaks well for the improvement in our polo stock which should continue in future years.

After the "Juniors," the ponies were shipped back to Meadowbrook and given a week's rest.

After our return, the Army played together very little as a team, but quite a bit in the fast matches of the British and American try-outs. Being an International year all other polo is subordinated to these try-outs and our team play has suffered as a consequence.

As planned at this writing, the Army will play in the remaining tournaments as follows:

No. 1	Captain Wilkinson
No. 2	Captain Gerhardt
No. 3	Captain Rodes
Back	Captain Huthsteiner

This team will be outmounted in the high goal tournaments, such as the Open, but should make a creditable showing, particularly in the Monty Waterbury Cups, which event is played on a handicap basis.



Louise Noel, Played in England, 1925

Captain Wilkinson was selected as a substitute on the American International Team, which is the highest point yet reached by an army player in American Polo. Major L. A. Beard was selected as referee for the Internationalists, and Captain Wesley White as umpire for America, with Captain Rodes as umpire for England. Several of the ponies of the Army string were used in the Internationals.

A Day With An Italian Cavalry Regiment

By

Major ROBERT C. RICHARDSON, Jr, G. S.,

Military Attaché, Rome

AFTER THE WAR, a fixed idea that cavalry would in future play a less important role than heretofore led nearly all of the great nations into the error of reducing their cavalry. Italian cavalry suffered similarly with the French, the English and our own, so that today Italy finds herself with only 12 regiments scattered over her entire country. These regiments are not organized into divisions in time of peace and never will be in war, but for certain purposes of control and administration they are grouped into groups of four regiments, each group under a "superior command" of cavalry. Crowning the hierarchy, at the War Department in Rome is an Inspector of Cavalry, who corresponds, generally speaking, to our Chief of Cavalry. This latter officer supervises the training of the cavalry and makes the necessary inspections. Regiments are under the control of the Commanding General of the Corps Area in which they are located, for like us Italy has a territorial corps area organization.

When the Italian Army was reorganized by the law of March, 1926, the cavalry organization was changed to conform to the general scheme of re-organization, and in order to study the organization at close range and to see the reality instead of trying to digest the theory from dry official publications, I asked permission to visit a regiment. As I wished to visit likewise the Alpini, my destination was naturally toward the Alps and hence I selected the regiment at Udine, which is known as the Monferrato regiment.

Cavalry regiments have no numbers, but instead each bears a distinctive name conforming to the locality in which it was originally organized, where it was recruited and where it served originally.

Udine, the garrison of the Monferrato regiment, is in the province of Friuli and is in the plain just at the base of the Friulian Alps. It is not very far from Gorizia. This little town of Udine seems made to order for a garrison of medieval or story book troops. It is very old, surrounded by walls of considerable antiquity and in its center has still the old moats. It is dominated in its central point by a castle built on an eminence which, according to local legend, was thrown up by Attila in order that he might thence survey the conflagration of Aquileia, an old Roman town which was a commercial and trading place of great importance in the reign of Augustus.

Its streets, while crooked, as are all of these old cities for defensive purposes, are unusually broad, almost twice as broad as one generally encounters. They are for the most part bordered with arcades that protect one from the heat of summer and the snows and rain of winter.

The buildings are old and of pleasing architecture, especially those built when Udine was under the Republic of Venice, for they are in many instances replicas of the Venetian palaces and only need the waters of the canals to make the illusion complete.

In this atmosphere, we find the headquarters of the 13th Division, with its three regiments of the line, one of which is at Udine, the other two, in neighboring towns, the 8th Regiment of Alpini and the Monferrato Regiment of Cavalry.



The Monferrato Regiment Passing in Review at Udine

The cavalry is stationed in a new barracks on the outskirts of the city, in unusually agreeable surroundings. The buildings are all of stone covered with concrete, with plenty of space within, and much without.

Ordinarily the aspect of barracks is cold, austere and forbidding, but the atmosphere of these particular barracks was quite the contrary. This was due to the number of trees, much verdure and great many flowers that surrounded a majority of the buildings. In particular, the course for jumping is unique. It is small, covering not more than an acre but well arranged with an exterior track bordering the periphery and a number of cross tracks intersecting at various points. All of the tracks were bordered either by hedges or flowers and the intervening spaces turfed, giving to the ensemble the appearance of a well kept garden.

There were four main barracks, one for each troop, built on a two story plan. Below were the stables pertaining to their respective troops and above the living quarters of the men, an arrangement affording great economy of

space and also of buildings. The stables were in sections, each platoon having its stable quite separate from the others. In other words, the buildings have been constructed to conform to the organization of a troop so that a harmony of living and working conditions is the result. There has been avoided that painful experience of troop commanders of trying to fit into barracks, never intended for such a purpose, the platoon organization of their commands. In this harmony of organization and buildings there was no overlapping of platoons, part in one room and part in another, with a consequent division of authority over the platoon in barracks. Each platoon leader and his men segregated and was responsible for a definite part of the barracks separated from the remainder. These barracks have been most intelligently planned. The regiment also has its own riding hall of medium size and the usual store rooms and accessory buildings.

Organization

Occupying these quarters was a regiment the organization of which, briefly, is as follows: A regimental headquarters, a headquarters troop, two squadrons, each of two troops, and a regimental depot, an organization non-existent with us, which I will discuss later. In addition there is the mobilization storehouse, containing material belonging to the regiment.

The headquarters troop of the regiment corresponds in general to ours and contains a mixed platoon (headquarters and service), a staff platoon and a signal communications platoon (1 officer, 11 non-commissioned officers and 63 men).

The squadron has a headquarters detachment and two troops instead of three as with us.

The troop has five officers, 8 non-commissioned officers and 125 men. The principle of its organization is the same as that of the regiment and the squadron. It has a headquarters platoon, called a mixed platoon, which is composed of a headquarters squad, (trumpeters, letter bearers and clerks), a scout squad, a cyclist squad (messengers) and a service squad (cooks, drivers, etc.)

There are four combat platoons, each of which has three squads, viz: two rifle squads and a light machine gun squad. The light machine guns are therefore incorporated in the platoon and are not grouped in a separate platoon as with us.

Finally, there is the regimental depot which does not exist in the American organization. It is a second echelon, so to speak, which remains always in the compound, so that when the regiment is absent either at maneuvers or in war, there is an element of the regiment at the home station, charged with the stores and supplies, with the veterinary hospital, with certain accounts, pay, clothing, etc., and administration. When a regiment leaves its compound, it cannot turn the key and walk away. Someone must remain

in charge. Hence the regimental depot, which has some of the functions of our Quartermaster Corps. In Italy, the latter is not with the troops. The depot and the mobilization storehouse perform all the same functions of supply for clothing, armament and equipment as are performed by our post quartermasters and ordnance officers. Recruits are outfitted from the mobilization storehouse. In this respect, our organizations are totally different.

The regimental depot and the mobilization storehouse are interesting to an American, because they typify the manner in which another nation handles a large part of its supply and show how the staff overhead can be almost eliminated. Naturally, all organization springs from the necessity of meeting the local problems and in Italy's case this method is perfectly feasible, and indeed at once suggests itself, inasmuch as the Italian regiments have permanent stations and an almost permanent officer personnel.

Each cavalry regiment is identified permanently with a locality and should war or other exigency arise necessitating a departure, it is always with the understanding that when the exigency has passed the regiment returns. As for the officers, they are, in general, identified all of their service with a particular regiment, but, as nothing is so unstable as human relations to things and to people, there does exist some transferring from one regiment to another.

Armament

The Italian cavalry is armed much lighter than are we, and the amount of fire that they can produce is greatly less. They have the saber, carbine, revolver and the light machine gun distributed as follows: all troopers carry the saber and carbine, except the light machine gunners. Only the non-commissioned officers and men not in combat or machine gun squads, such as cooks, drivers, etc. carry the revolver.

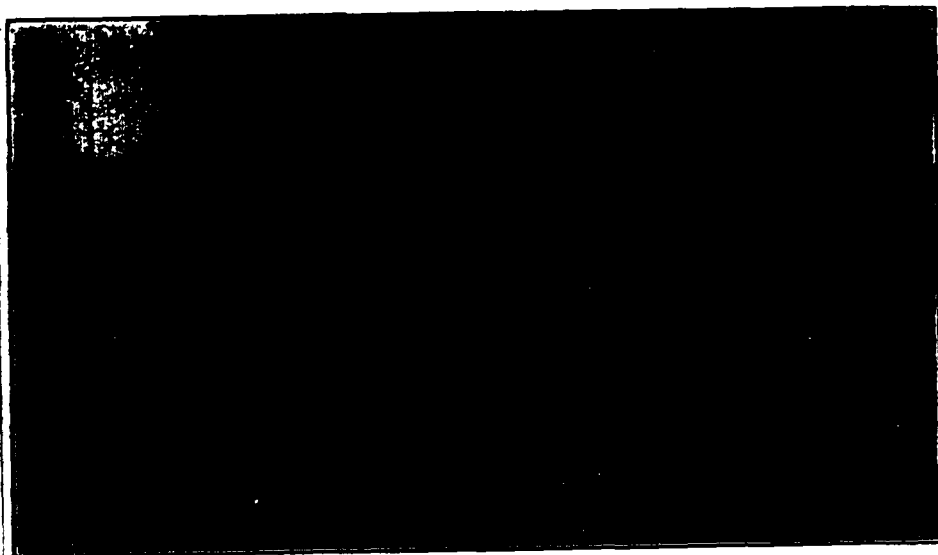
The saber is a straight weapon but lighter than ours. The carbine is the model of 1891, caliber 6.5 mm, with a rod bayonet. The light machine gun is a SIA model, air cooled, carried on a horse, with an additional horse for ammunition. The revolver is a caliber .38, somewhat like our former .38, only with a shorter barrel. There are no automatic pistols, no lances, except in the heavy regiment, nor are there any heavy machine guns in the regiment.

It is not contemplated using the heavy machine gun with Italian cavalry, as it is regarded as heavy and ties the cavalry too much to one place, as well as detracting from its mobility.

Analysing the above armament, it is obvious that an Italian cavalry regiment can place relatively little fire on the firing line. Its 16 light machine guns form its major fire power, for so many men do not carry rifles that the rifle fire power is extremely small. In the opinion of the writer, it is much too weak for the modern tactical employment of cavalry. On the defensive, it has practically little resistance, and, against enemy infantry well supplied

with heavy machine guns and artillery, I do not see how it could stop a gap for long. Certainly it could not organize a defensive position of more than 800 yards and even then the position could have no depth whatsoever.

But in studying this feature of the Italian cavalry, however, we must bear in mind that it will rarely be employed *en masse* and hence it is less important to have strong fire means. Small bodies of cavalry cannot resist for long in any event and hence the Italian idea is not to weight the cavalry for missions that it will not be called upon to perform.



Armored Machine Gun Cars Attached to the Monferrato Regiment

Equipment

Generally speaking, the Italian regiment has less equipment than have we. The headquarters equipment is not as plentiful nor modern as it should be, and this appeared to be a weakness, but the equipment of the soldier is simpler, which is always an asset for cavalry.

There are no regimental or squadron radio sets issued to the cavalry as yet, so that all liaison is done by telephone, telegraph, signal, flags, lights, messengers and panels. With the air service, communication is done by panels only. The signal detachment can wire for 2 kilometers. Reconnaissance elements detached from their commands must depend on mounted messengers, or bicycles, as there are no motorcycles in the regimental equipment. There are however seventy-five bicycles, an unusually large number, but it is intended to use them with the reconnaissance detachments either as messengers or sometimes as scouts.

The soldier, however, demands little and carries little. The saddle equipment is quite simple and compact. On the pommel is the overcoat and on each side a half ration of oats. On the cantle is the mess kit where we carry the shelter half. The saddle bags have the soldier's clothing, extra socks, shirt, etc. and his reserve rations. On the off side to the rear is the carbine and on the near side the saber, and this is all. Since they billet, the troops are spared the necessity of carrying a shelter half and blanket. They use the saddle blanket and overcoat for covering. No extra horseshoes are carried by the troops.

The saddle is a large, heavy piece of equipment, but it has a high tree which keeps the saddle quite free from the horse's back. It has knee rolls which the Italian consider essential in saddles. The lower part of the saddle is simplified by having a plain web cinch and steel stirrups. It is devoid of anything quite so extraordinary and bulky as our McClellan cinch* and those Middle Age stirrups to which we so tenaciously adhere because, I believe, long ago someone thought they kept the feet warm, or were helpful in underbrush. The Italian cavalry saddle, packed, makes a neat compact appearance.

Transport

For baggage the troops are rather richly provided. Each troop has two four-wheeled wagons which hold about the same amount as our covered wagons. Each squadron headquarters has one wagon and the regimental headquarters three, making thirteen in all. This is the entire regimental train, for there are no pack trains attached to cavalry regiments. In fact, there is not a mule in the regiment.

Horses

With the exception of four regiments, the Italian cavalry is mounted on small horses, usually native stock. The horses which I saw in the Monferrato regiment were of good appearance and gave every indication of excellent care. The coats of all were clean and in healthy condition. In the particular regiment that I visited it seemed to me that the general conformation of the animals was below the average troop horse in our regiments.

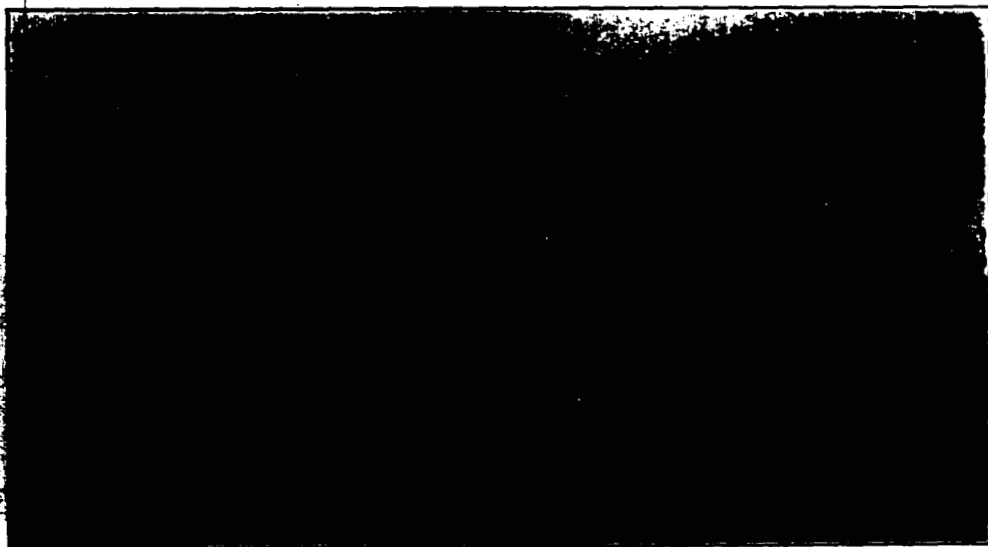
Regiments receive their horses directly from the remount depots, where they have had a little previous training but not much. The training is all done in the regiment.

The stables are excellent and well kept up. It is evident that great attention is paid to this feature in the Italian cavalry. I noticed the same conditions at Pinerolo and at Tor di Quinto, the cavalry schools.

But if the horses in this regiment appeared to a disadvantage, their training more than compensates. Italians have long been known for their excellence in horsemanship and as all Italian cavalry officers are indoctrinated

*This has recently been replaced by a web girth.—Edron's Note.

identically, the results are plainly visible, even in a brief visit such as I made. The horses are well in hand at all times. It is rare to see a puller, a jerker or a horse that rushes the hurdles. They go over the jumps freely, calmly and with suppleness. I have noticed this feature of the jumping many times since I have been in Italy and, even when the recruits of this regiment were in the hall, it was remarkable how quietly the horses took the gallop and the jumps, although ridden by inexperienced men who had then had only five weeks' instruction.



Italian Cavalry Officer Jumping at Pinerolo

I am becoming convinced that the Italian seat has a great deal to do with the ease with which the horses jump. There is certainly much less jerking of the horse's mouths when leaning far forward than when leaning partially or fully to the rear. The latter position requires greater control, more skill on part of the rider and more refined training of the horse.

In the regiment training is made with the snaffle and then the troops advanced to the Pelham. The bit and bridoon are not used as the service of the troops is too short to permit of thorough instruction in their proper use.

Training

Troopers are given their recruit training in their troops in accordance with an identical schedule published by regimental headquarters. Their problem is simple because the recruits arrive all at once, when the class is called in the spring. For five weeks, they work at the walk and trot in the hall, for one-half hour daily, and outdoors for several hours. The entire morning is devoted to mounted training.

All men are given instruction in target practice beginning with gallery practice, followed by twelve to fifteen sessions on the range and later field firing by troops in the country. A progressive program of training, as with us, is followed by the troop, squadron and regiment. They have little or no combined training with the horse artillery and only a little with the air service. Their results cannot be judged by a day's visit, and an accurate idea of the training of the cavalry can only be obtained from seeing them maneuver, by reading their orders and observing their execution.

From a garrison point of view, however, their training seemed sound and thorough. The jumping done by a detachment of scouts under an officer was excellent and it was evident that emphasis is placed on the ability of the trooper to ride well. But the problem is not an easy one, since the soldier remains so short a time in service.

Tactical Doctrine

Like the French and like ourselves, the Italians have not yet evolved a real tactical doctrine for cavalry. They are groping too and studying the problems that confront the cavalry, owing to changed conditions, the air service, the tanks, gas, and the after-war mentality which ignorantly depreciates the cavalry. But they seem quite of the opinion that their cavalry must not become just mounted infantry, where the horse is merely a means of transportation. For this reason they have kept their cavalry light and not encumbered it with impedimenta and heavy armament.

Their cavalry is destined to fight in small units and not as divisions nor cavalry corps and hence their tactical training must conform to this conception. The apparent lack of fire power in the regiment itself is compensated for by the attachment of Bersaglieri, which are cyclists equipped with machine guns. Where cavalry is given a mission to hold a bridge, a river, a gap, etc. it is contemplated that it will be reinforced by Bersaglieri.

Personnel

The officers of the cavalry are a high type and usually drawn from the upper classes. All of them pass through the Cavalry Schools at Pinerolo and Tor di Quinto and consequently bring to their regiments a doctrine of horsemanship that is standardized. They are very cordial in their reception of foreign officers and are willing to show what they have. I have found however, in visiting cavalry regiments, whether in France, in Italy or in America, that the esprit de corps is about the same, and that cavalry officers in so far as their profession is concerned are internationally minded, and speak a common language. I was received by the officers of the Monferrato regiment absolutely *en camarade* and I shall always remember with appreciation the delightful as well as instructive day that I spent with them in their caserne at Udine.

Joint Cavalry and Air Corps Training

By

Major GEORGE DILLMAN, G. S. C.
A. C. of S., G-3, 1st Cavalry Division

SINCE THE DEPARTURE of the 12th Observation Squadron from Fort Bliss in June, 1926, the 1st Cavalry Division has had but little opportunity to train in conjunction with the Air Corps. In January, 1927, two observation planes were sent to Fort Bliss from the 12th Observation Squadron, Fort Sam Houston, Texas, for the purpose of affording the 1st Cavalry Division an opportunity to train with airplanes prior to the Corps Area Commander's annual tactical and training inspection. Practical instruction was carried on for three days, January 6th, 7th and 8th, also theoretical instruction was given to officers by means of lectures delivered by Captain William E. Lynd, Air Corps, who had been sent from the Air Corps Advanced Flying School to assist in the training. During this short period of training, as many officers of the division as possible were given an opportunity to act as aerial observers.

Without going into details, suffice it to say that the training received was very valuable. Close association with the Air Corps personnel during preliminary arrangements for the tactical exercises, during the exercises and at the critique which followed, gave the division a clearer understanding of the powers and limitations of the Air Corps, strengthened the spirit of co-operation and left a desire for further training. Before Captain Lynd left Fort Bliss, the possibility of further training was discussed with him and it was agreed, that if it could be arranged, an entire class from the Air Corps Advanced Flying School at Kelly Field would be sent to Fort Bliss for a short period to train with the 1st Cavalry Division.

In July all arrangements were made to have the class fly to Fort Bliss to train with the division on July 25th, 26th and 27th. On July 16th an Air Corps officer arrived to complete detailed arrangements for the reception and care of the school upon arrival, such as clearing the old landing field; parking, handling and gassing of the planes; arrangements for messing and quartering and numerous other necessary arrangements.

The personnel and planes ordered to Fort Bliss consisted of the following: nineteen staff and instructors, Captain Lynd, Acting Assistant Commandant in charge; thirty-three students; thirty enlisted men; one O2, Douglas observation plane; one C1, Douglas transport plane; fifteen AT 4s, pursuit planes; twenty-seven DHs, to be used as attack or observation planes; and one ambulance plane; a total of forty-five planes. Of these, forty-four arrived at Fort Bliss, one having crashed en route, the pilot being slightly injured.

500

Planes began to arrive Saturday morning, July 23d, and shortly after noon all planes had landed safely and were parked along two sides of the old landing field. Although information had been published to the effect that the planes would arrive Saturday afternoon and Sunday morning, spectators soon began to arrive and during the entire training period large numbers were always present at the landing field, while hundreds of automobiles were present in the vicinity of the exercise each day.

Monday, July 25th

The first day's program consisted of a demonstration by attack planes which included attack formations and attacks against columns of targets, using ball ammunition and live personnel bombs; adjustments of artillery fire by observation planes; aerial attacks by pursuit planes; and simulated attacks against columns of troops by attack planes.

The demonstration was held on the artillery target range about five miles north of the post. All troops were in position to observe about five hundred yards from the columns of targets at 8:00 A. M., at which hour the demonstration began.

A nine plane attack formation took part in the attack demonstration, attacking with machine gun fire and 17-pound fragmentation bombs. The three leading planes used machine guns and the remaining planes dropping bombs. This demonstration gave the troop a clear idea as to what could actually be accomplished by attack planes operating against them.

What might have been a serious accident occurred while the planes were maneuvering prior to the attack. One of the machine gun planes could not be started in time to take off with the formation, so another plane was sent up to join the formation in order to make it complete for the attack. This plane was joining the formation when it crashed well up on the slope of the Franklin Mountains in very rough ground. The plane was completely wrecked, but fortunately it did not turn over and neither pilot nor observer were injured in the least.

Fifteen pursuit planes took part in the pursuit demonstration, attacking two five-plane DH formations, one flying at fifteen hundred feet and one at two thousand feet. Due to low hanging clouds the pursuit planes were hidden from view a great deal of the time and it was very interesting to hear them maneuvering above the clouds and then see them suddenly appear in a dive on the five-plane formations.

Following this part of the demonstration, the 82nd Field Artillery Battalion (horse) conducted several firing problems with two planes in observation. Part of the firing was adjusted by cadets and part by an artillery officer. Observation and adjustments were conducted in an excellent manner, no trouble being encountered with communication, and effective fire was promptly put down in each problem.

On the return march to the post, aerial attacks were directed against the columns, giving ground troops an opportunity to practice the taking of defensive measures against them.

Tuesday, July 26th

This day was devoted to tactical exercises conducted by reinforced regiments, the exercises being prepared so as to give training which covered both co-operation with friendly airplanes and defense against air attacks. Also on this day the 1st Signal Troop and the communications platoon, 2d Cavalry Brigade Headquarters Troop, carried on instruction with observation planes.

The 7th Cavalry, with Troop A, 2d Machine Gun Squadron, Battery B, 82nd Field Artillery Battalion (horse), 8th Engineer Battalion (mounted) (less Company B), one observation plane and three attack planes attached, conducted a two sided maneuver in which one squadron of cavalry with a battery of artillery and a company of engineers occupied a defensive position taking special precautions against aerial observation and aerial attacks, while the remainder of the force located and then attacked the position.

The 8th Cavalry, with 2d Machine Gun Squadron (less Troop A), Battery C, 82nd Field Artillery Battalion (horse), Company B, 8th Engineer Battalion (mounted), one observation plane and three attack planes attached, conducted a field exercise in which the enemy was outlined by troop guidons. The reinforced regiment conducted a march, an attack and a pursuit.

Two Air Corps officers were attached to each regimental headquarters, one as technical adviser on observation aviation and the other on attack aviation. Pursuit planes operated on this day and were regarded as enemy planes by all units participating in the exercises. These planes not only operated as pursuit planes but also as attack planes.

All methods of communication from plane to ground and from ground to plane were utilized with varying success and much valuable training was received. Troops were greatly harassed by air attacks and in many instances were in danger from low flying planes which detracted somewhat from the best training that could have been received.

Wednesday, July 27th

On this day a maneuver was held between Browns and Whites. The Brown force consisted of the 7th Cavalry reinforced in the same manner as the previous day, except that two observation planes and six attack planes were attached. The White force consisted of the 8th Cavalry reinforced in the same manner as the previous day, except that it also had two observation planes and six attack planes attached. The Browns were given an offensive mission and the Whites a defensive one. The maneuver started with opposing forces about six miles apart. Special situations so regulated the maneuver that the air forces of both sides were in the air at the time the maneuver started, but could not operate ahead of their respective main bodies of troops until the same fixed hours.

Pursuit planes maneuvered for an hour, operating as enemy pursuit against both sides, but executed attacks against air units only.

Observation aviation of both forces functioned exceedingly well, giving commanders early and accurate enemy information. The use made of attack aviation by both forces was considered to be correct and well illustrates how this important branch can materially assist cavalry in rapidly-moving situations.



Cavalry Regiment of the March as Seen from the Air

The sub-paragraphs of the White march orders for its air force were as follows:

"To (1). *Observation Aviation.* One observation plane will take off at 8:00 A. M., and establish contact with our column. After establishing contact, the observers will proceed to locate the enemy and inform the commander of enemy strength and location, using dropped message. The observer will then proceed to the 41st Attack Squadron airdrome and inform the attack flight leader of location of enemy column. The observer will then maintain contact with our troops and enemy, executing any mission assigned. The two observation planes will maintain contact with our column.

"(2) *Attack Action.* The attack flight will be on the alert on its airdrome at 7:45 A. M., and will attack enemy column with machine gun fire and personnel bombs when enemy location is reported by observer as outlined in c (1) above. After this attack the attack flight will remain on the alert until ordered out by the commanding officer, 8th Cavalry."

The above mission for the observation plane was justified as the special situation, White, gave the approximate location of the Brown column at 7:30 A. M.

Ten minutes after the observation plane began to operate it dropped a message to the White commander giving him accurate information of the Brown force. It then proceeded to the airdrome as directed and within a few minutes the attack flight was on its way and by its attack forced the Brown to deploy and interfered materially with its advance.

The sub-paragraphs of the Brown march order for its air force were as follows:

"3c (1) The observation planes, operating from present landing field, will take off at 7:00 A. M., and reconnoiter the area, RIO GRANDE (excl)—HUECO TANKS ROAD (incl)—8TH CAVALRY RIDGE (incl), and will furnish battle reconnaissance during combat."

"(2) Attack planes, operating from present landing field, will go on the alert at 8:00 A. M., prepared to execute assigned missions against hostile ground troops."

The Brown attack planes were not utilized until contact had been gained and the plan of action decided upon. The Brown commander issued his attack orders for a co-ordinated attack to be delivered at 9:04 A. M. A pick-up message was sent to the attack planes and at 9:04 A. M., these planes were attacking the main White force, giving the Brown maneuvering force a better opportunity to execute its flanking movement and attack.

On this day a yellow smoke cloud was used as a signal for the air forces to terminate the maneuvers, all planes being directed to land at the airdrome upon observing the signal. Unfortunately this had not been arranged for the previous day, the result being that planes continued to endanger ground troops by low flying, it being impossible to stop them by means of signals from the ground.

As a result of the training with airplanes in January the 7th Cavalry had tentatively adopted defense measures against air attacks as follows:

On the March. Regiment in column, (fours or twos) When attack is anticipated the distance between troops will be 75 yards and that between platoons 50 yards. Upon alert signal the leading platoon of each troop deploys to the right of the road at a gallop into line of foragers at 5 yards interval. The 2d platoon executes a similar movement to the left of the road and the 3d platoon to the right. All continue moving to the front. Trains will march with 75 yards between vehicles.

At the Halt. Troopers mount individually and disperse, the 1st and 3d platoons to the right and the 2d to the left. When terrain permits and the situation warrants, the halt formation will be the same as for the march.

Use of Weapons. One squad of each troop will be detailed and trained for defensive fire against airplanes. All defensive fires will be collective. On the march defensive fires will ordinarily be limited to the pistol. When halted a machine rifle in each troop will be held in readiness.

One specially trained air scout will be detailed from each platoon. Each scout will be equipped with a thunderer whistle. The scouts of the 1st and 3d platoons will march to the right of the road the scout of the 2d to the left.

Advantage will be taken of the terrain so as to facilitate observation. Scouts will remain constantly on the alert for the approach of hostile planes from any direction. Any scout observing the approach of hostile plane or planes will blow repeated blasts, which signal will be repeated immediately by other scouts.

The following were tentative defense measures adopted by the 8th Cavalry:

1. In the route column of fours on a fenced road, under war conditions, the distance between fours will be 10 yards, and there will be as much interval between troopers as space permits.

2. In the route column of twos on a fenced road, under war conditions, the distance between twos will be 5 yards, and the troopers will move on opposite sides of the road, if practicable.

3. Increased gaits will be taken for the passage of a defile or other critical area. Machine guns, machine rifles or riflemen are sent forward to guard the exits against attack planes.

4. The habitual march formation of the regiment in open unfenced country will be column of platoons, each platoon in line of foragers, platoons echeloned (3rd platoon in trace of 1st platoon), platoon distance increased to fifty (50) yards.

In case the command is in any other formation, upon the approach of a hostile airplane, the column of platoons (each platoon in line of foragers) will be formed upon the sounding of the "Air Alert," three (3) short high blasts of the bugle. As the march is continued in the presence of a hostile airplane, the distance between platoons will be increased to fifty (50) yards (leading elements taking increased gaits), and the platoons will be echeloned by the obliquing of the leading platoon to the right, of the second platoon to the left, of the third to the right, until the platoons are to the right and left, respectively, of the axis of march. As a rule, the columns will continue to march and will be halted exceptionally: Viz.

a. When there is a possibility that a high flying observation plane may not observe troops that remain still.

b. When the column is harassed beyond endurance by attack planes. In this case, the troopers may be dismounted and defense by the rifle resorted to. Normally when a plane swoops to attack the marching column, troopers within reasonable distance open fire at will with the pistol, at the command of the platoon commander.

5. The following approach march formations are prescribed for maneuvering under war conditions, which presuppose the possibility of attack by hostile airplanes at any time.

a. Column of squadrons, each squadron in line of troop columns of platoons, each platoon in line of foragers (platoons are not echeloned), platoon distance increased to fifty (50) yards. In taking the formation, leading elements move at increased gaits.

b. Column of squadrons, each squadron in line of troop columns, with 25 yards distance between fours and 5 yards interval between troopers.

c. The command will habitually be dispersed at the halt by fours in irregular formation, fours about 40 yards apart. Troopers, except horseholders, to be in readiness to fire against hostile airplanes.

7. It will be observed that reliance is being placed in the habitual assumption of formations of slight vulnerability to attack from the air, rather than on scouts who would, theoretically, give the alarm. Observers may, however, prove useful in camp or bivouac, or at a march halt to give the alarm in case of the approach of hostile airplanes. High points are not chosen for observation, as is done for ground observation. Low places are chosen so that the skyline may be used to outline the approach of the plane.

On the march, two (2) men in each platoon should be designated as observers, to call attention to the approach of airplanes. These men are not detached but retain their places in the formation.

8. Independent patrols should halt in irregular formations to escape observation from the air. The horses then simulate a group of grazing horses, with the men concealed in the shadow of the horses—Shadows are effective concealment, and the shadows of horses, banks, trees, etc., should be used when available.

9. Led horses are very vulnerable to hostile aerial attack. They are easily stampeded. Every effort should be made to conceal the location of led horses from aerial observation. Horses are not held in large groups. Alternative locations are chosen and the animals moved thereto, as soon as it is believed they have been observed. In the open, where concealment is difficult, led horses are widely dispersed and in small groups not larger than a platoon or squad.

10. Usually in camp or bivouac, the command is dispersed by units the size of a platoon. In open country, advantage is taken of folds of the ground and dark spots, dark brush, etc.

11. Combat and field trains are vulnerable to air attack. Under war conditions in open unfenced country, vehicles should be habitually checkerboarded, with about 100 yards intervals. Distances between wagons will be fifty (50) yards on fenced roads.

The march formations of these two regiments were used during the three day's training just described. In general they proved to be satisfactory. However, when the regiments are part of a larger force the taking up of increased distances would be impracticable and to maintain them would unduly lengthen the column. The habitual march formation of the 8th Cavalry in open unfenced country would undoubtedly be harder on animals than the usual route column on the road.

In several instances during the exercises, attack planes made attacks across the column directed at lines of foragers which evidently offered a better target for machine guns than when the planes flew the length of the column. The effect in this case would be materially lessened by foragers moving promptly out of the danger zone and such movement would naturally form an irregular line.

The main purpose of the three days' training was not primarily for the training of ground troops, but rather for the purpose of giving the Air Corps students training in cross country flying and practical training in the field with ground troops. It is understood that many of the students had received little or no such training prior to coming to Fort Bliss.

As far as the 1st Cavalry Division is concerned, the training received was on the whole very beneficial. It gave further opportunity to demonstrate that airplanes are a great asset to the cavalry in any co-operative mission, both for observation and attack; that hostile aviation can seriously interfere with cavalry operations in open terrain, especially if friendly aviation is not available; and that both services should be jointly trained in sound and well understood methods and that this training should be part of the annual training program.

It is believed that the Air Corps personnel received a great deal of valuable training and experience as a result of their short association with the division. The Air Corps officer in charge, at a critique which followed the exercises, stated that in his opinion, the students had received far more practical training with the division than they would have received during the same time at Kelly Field.

In order to get the maximum benefit from joint training of this kind it is essential that the airplanes operate as nearly as possible as they would under war conditions, this being particularly true of attack aviation.

It is a simple matter for attack planes to load up with gasoline and then make repeated attacks against ground troops, flying at altitudes which would be prohibitive under war conditions and continuing in the air until gasoline

runs low. This may be desirable for the training of pilots alone, but it gives ground troops an erroneous idea of what to expect from such attacks. Attack planes in actual warfare can make only a limited number of attacks and then must return to the airdrome to replenish the supply of ammunition and bombs. They must fly at altitudes most advantageous to them for machine gunning and at altitudes high enough to keep out of danger of their own bomb fragments. In the majority of cases, they will fly high enough to lessen materially the chances of being brought down by small arms fire.

These are some of the things that Air Corps personnel should keep in mind when training with ground troops and they should always keep in mind the safety of ground troops and allow for a safe clearance at all times. It must be remembered that the average mounted man is over eight feet high.

A prearranged signal, such as a yellow smoke cloud, which can be easily seen by all observers, to be set off at a designated point to terminate a tactical exercise, or call all planes to the airdrome, is advisable.

During the adjustment of artillery fire, it was demonstrated that excellent results can be obtained by strange Air Corps personnel working with strange artillery personnel, assuming of course that both are well trained in the parts they must play. Personal association and understanding is essential to accomplish the best uniform results.

Every opportunity should be taken to train ground officers of all branches as aerial observers. The aerial observer, who has served with ground troops, knows their tactics and can correctly size up a tactical ground formation which he observes, is invaluable as an observer.

It is believed that a Division Air Service stationed at Fort Bliss as an integral part of the 1st Cavalry Division would prove to be satisfactory both to the Cavalry and the Air Corps. Even if not an integral part of the division, the presence of an observation squadron would be of great value from a training standpoint and possibly from a strategical one.

The 1st Cavalry Division is always desirous of taking advantage of opportunities to train with the Air Corps, to understand its problems and, by association and training, to come to a common understanding of the tactics of the combined arms.

Marksmanship and Musketry

By

Captain W. F. PRIDE, Cavalry, 26th Cavalry (PS)

THE 1927 TARGET SEASON is a thing of the past. Reports indicate that many cavalry regiments have qualified a greater percentage of men, with a higher average score, than ever before. Lieutenant P. M. Martin of the Cavalry made high man on a team that went to Switzerland to compete against the world's best riflemen. All in all it looks, on the surface, as though we have much to congratulate ourselves on. And we have. But let us be careful lest we be like the sand lot ball player who congratulates himself so enthusiastically on knocking out a home run that he loses sight of the importance of the game—for marksmanship, like the home run, is only a means to an end.

Paragraph 6 of Training Regulations 10-5 states: "The object to be attained by training is to enable the Army to wage offensive warfare." In other words, combat efficiency is the ultimate objective.

When we have completed what we consider a successful target season we are prone to rest on our laurels and say, "Well, I qualified 100%," or, "My outfit had the highest average in the regiment," and we think we have done well when, as a matter of fact, we have done nothing but take the first step in the direction of combat efficiency.

There is a vast difference between known distance, or range firing, with all its paraphernalia of prepared firing points, blackened sights, uniform targets uniformly timed and spaced, pads, dope boxes, and adjustments of various sorts, and combat firing at targets popping up here and there at the most inconvenient times and places. An officer's ability to direct and control the fire of his unit is far more important than his ability to make ten straight bulls-eyes at 200 yards standing and much more difficult than qualifying 100% of his men. Yet does our training lead the average young officer to believe that? We must admit that it does not. The false importance given to various regimental, brigade, and divisional trophies for excellence on the rifle range and the total lack of suitable prizes for proficiency in firing combat exercises are prime factors in bringing about this frame of mind. Conversely, it is true that there are few, if any, trophies for excellence in combat firing among cavalry units because there is less training in that subject than in many others.

Granting that the first duty of cavalry is to be prepared for mounted action, it is also true that a really efficient cavalry should be better than the best cavalry it can meet and the equal of the best infantry. A good cavalryman should be a firm advocate of mounted action, but it is just as absurd to maintain that cavalry will always act mounted as it is to claim that the infantry will always move on foot. It isn't done—and that's that. Therefore,

it seems obvious that part of our training must be along lines that will prepare us to meet a body of hostile infantry of the same numerical size on an equal footing.

In the first paragraph of Training Regulations 150-5 we find the following statement: "Military rifle training is divided into two parts, 'rifle marksmanship,' in which the men are taught, individually, to be good shots, and 'musketry,' in which they learn to act as a team under the leadership of the squad, section, and platoon leaders to obtain the maximum fire effect on an enemy.

"Rifle marksmanship and musketry are inseparably related. Neither one alone will win battles without undue losses. *In all training on the rifle range it must be borne in mind the ultimate object is to make a team whose accurate fire can be controlled, directed, and distributed in battle by a leader.*"

In the War of the American Revolution one of the most important factors in the defeat of the British was the individual marksmanship of the colonists. They were all expert shots—they had to be to live in those days. But those good old romantic days of bright colored uniforms, the roll of drum beats, powder smoke, and holding our fire until we "see the whites of their eyes," are a thing of the past. War of today is drab in color, more sinister and more businesslike. On the modern field of battle the shot group is a much more potent factor than the fire of any number of individual expert shots who know nothing of fire discipline and fire control. A group of individual expert shots without any military training could make a smaller shot group and more hits on a given target than a group of mediocre shots taken from a military organization. But the group taken from the military, if properly trained, would render more efficient service in battle, because their shot group could be shifted from point to point at the will of the commander. The untrained experts would lose valuable time whenever they tried to do this. The ability of a leader to play the shot group formed by his unit over the enemy area just as the machine gunner plays his, although of course with less facility, is the test of an efficient unit. And this ability cannot be acquired on the rifle range.

In the old days shot groups were unimportant. The range of the weapons in use was short and when the two hostile forces came within effective range they were so close that individual shooting at individual was the natural result. Today when we are ready to advance on the enemy the first thing we must do is to pin him to the ground by gaining and maintaining fire superiority. We use long range fire of artillery, machine guns, and rifles to do this. As we advance we maintain this superiority of fire by constantly placing a heavy fire on the areas we know to be occupied. Often we will not actually see the men we are firing at, but their presence will be disclosed to us in various ways. However, by placing a heavy fire on those areas known to be occupied we can force him to keep down, or to advance very slowly. As we advance and get closer to the enemy our fire becomes more and more effective so far as actual hits are concerned. The important point to remember is that fire superiority is necessary in order that we may advance.

When the British stormed El Mughar they found that the rifles of many of the dead Turks still had the original sight setting on them. No changes had been made as the enemy approached. Fire discipline means prompt obedience to all orders under fire; changes in sight setting, fire distribution, fire control, rate of fire, use of cover, and economy of ammunition are all dependent upon it. The greatest single factor in developing and maintaining a good state of fire discipline is the example of good leadership.

"Fire control is the regulation of rifle fire by section and squad leaders. It enables leaders to bring the fire of the rifles and automatic rifles of their units to bear on a designated target using the proper class of fire. With fire control, leaders can cause all or a desired portion of their men to cease firing promptly or to engage a new target. Leaders can also increase or decrease the rate of fire.

"Fire control is essential to teamwork and the effectiveness of collective fire." (TB 145-5, Paragraph 46)

This phase of musketry can only be taught in the field with ball ammunition and requires as much practice by the leaders involved as by the men. Teamwork is a prime requisite and the necessary practice cannot be gained indoors, or on a known distance range.

Range estimation, target designation, the effects of fire, fire distribution, fire discipline, and fire control are all covered very thoroughly in various training regulations. They have been briefly mentioned here merely to emphasize their importance and relation to the subject under discussion.

Rifle teams are just as important and the sportsmanship involved and results attained by rifle shooting competitions are in all respects as beneficial as the results attained by polo or horse show teams. Polo, horse shows, and hunting, foster horse breeding and bold riding, both of which are the breath of life to good cavalry. Rifle teams develop a knowledge of shooting, especially among civilians, that would not exist otherwise in these days when man does not obtain his food, or protect his home, with the rifle, and hunting is not within the reach of all. But in the military service where all are required to shoot over the known distance course, it seems as though that should be merely a step and not an end. Why not a few prizes for the squad, platoon, and troop that can fire a field problem the best?

Competitions of this sort are not hard to improvise. One of the best of these that has ever come to the attention of the writer was that held in connection with the first contest for the Draper Trophy in 1925 and was devised by Major C. B. Lyman of the Infantry, then on duty in the Department of Tactics at The Cavalry School. This test was discussed at considerable length by the writer in a mimeograph published by The Cavalry Association and distributed to all cavalry regiments in 1926.

Training Regulations 145-5 contains descriptions of other types of musketry tests and a little study will suggest the one best adapted to the needs that exist at any time and place. The details of the test are not

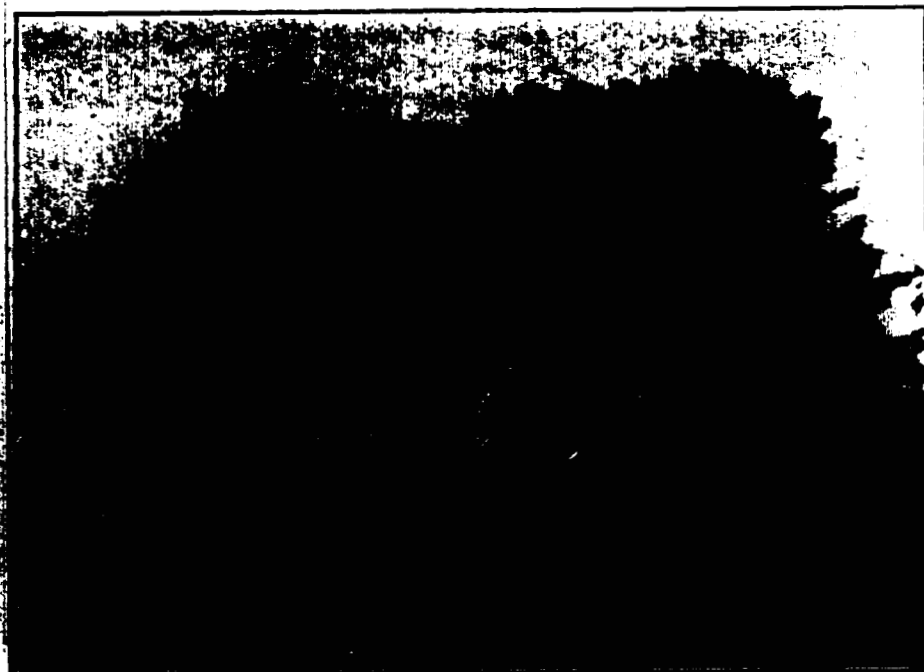
important so long as the test itself is complete and sufficiently difficult to cause the leader of the units participating to display a thorough knowledge of the principles and methods involved. Some of the essential points that should be scored in any test of this sort are; orders of commander and subordinate leaders, actions of scouts, when any fraction of a unit is advancing the advance must be covered by an increase in the volume of fire of the remaining fractions, provisions for targets to appear suddenly and at unexpected places, gaining and maintaining fire superiority, squad leaders must keep platoon leaders constantly under observation for signals, platoon leaders must do the same with respect to the troop commander, when making rushes of more than fifty yards a new range must be designated, rushes not too long, when casualties are declared replacements must be promptly made, fire distribution, fire discipline, and fire control.

The important thing is to work up some enthusiasm in tests of this sort, to make them annual features of the so-called target season, and to make them the *real* and *supreme* test of the proficiency of a unit with the rifle and machine rifle. Give the winning unit at each post, camp, or station a little publicity, donate a cup or two to be competed for annually and in a few years soldiers and subordinate leaders will get away from the feeling that proficiency on the rifle range is the ultimate objective of all work with the rifle and that musketry is a more or less necessary evil to be gotten over as quickly as possible.

On the field of battle individual skill with the rifle is, and always will be, a very valuable quality to possess. Snipers' schools were held during the World War to train men for a particular kind of battle field sharpshooting. Individual ability to shoot hard and accurately was what enabled Sergeant York to make his remarkable capture. It is doubtful if anyone believes that the thoroughness of the instruction on the known distance range, or the time devoted to it, should be decreased in the least. But individual shooting is not the ultimate objective. What we must have is a team that will respond readily and accurately to the will of its commander and a commander who has learned through practice and experience what the capabilities and limitations of his team are. Many officers who have not tried to lead a platoon or troop through a combat exercise do not realize the necessity for training in these exercises nor the amount of practice required to put up a creditable showing. (Those lieutenants who have lead platoons through the dismounted phase of the Draper Trophy realize it—and will probably never forget it).

Moreover, as a purely sporting proposition, there is a greater thrill and a greater self-satisfaction in leading a unit through the various phases of a difficult combat exercise, and winning, than in merely being known as the best shot in the regiment. Any man with good nerves and good eyesight can learn to shoot well, but leadership, teamwork, and the ability to think quickly and accurately are essentials to the man who successfully conducts a unit through a difficult combat exercise.

If tests of this sort are adopted, each unit competing must perform over the same ground and under the same conditions and everything concerning the nature of the test must be kept absolutely secret until the last unit has finished. Such tests, properly conducted and properly rewarded in each cavalry regiment over a period of a few years, will result in placing combat firing where it rightfully belongs—as the ultimate objective of all training with the rifle.



Spirited Play in the First International Polo Game
Wide World Photos

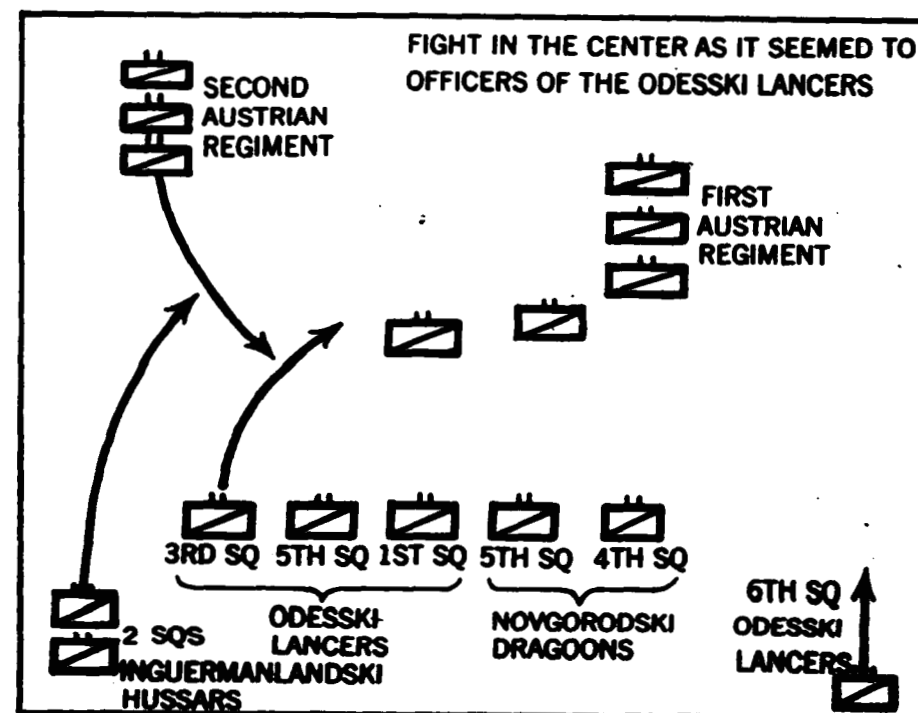
The Fight at Volchkovtsy

(New Data)

By General N. N. GOLOVINE

Translated by Colonel A. M. Nikolaieff

LETTERS of the Russian participants in the Volchkovtsy fight contain interesting details about the course of events in the center. They were written by the officers of the Odesski Lancer regiment. It is only necessary to recall that three squadrons of that regiment formed the left section of the charging line, two squadrons of the Novgorodski Dragoons formed its right section, and two squadrons of the Ingurmanlandski Hussars followed in echelon behind the left flank of the Russian front. Later on, the Hussars charged the right flank and rear of the Austrian cavalry, which had clashed with the Russian Lancers and Dragoons (see sketch). The letters are by Captain Kazakoff and Sinegoub and by Lieutenants Steletzki, Khvostikoff and Vasilieff.



Sketch of Fight in the Center

Captain Kasakoff's Letter

Captain Kasakoff, Commander of the 1st squadron of the Odesski Lancers, which was in the center of the line, having on its left the 5th and 3d squadrons of the same regiment, and on its right the 5th and 4th squadrons of the Novgorodski Dragoons, writes as follows:

"I should like to begin with the situation which immediately preceded the fight. Five squadrons (from right to left: 4th and 5th of the Dragoons, 1st, 5th and 3d of the Lancers) advanced in a deployed front. I did not see the Austrians. I did not even realize that we were about to charge. I was mad and swearing that we were moving at a gallop, adding weariness to the horses which were already tired. Twice I changed to the trot, but the regimental commander ordered us to gallop. We reached a ravine, the banks of which had 20-25 degrees inclination, and descended into it at a walk. When we were in its bottom, I heard from behind the voice of General Markoff (commander of the brigade): 'Lancers, God help you, CHARGE,' but I could see nothing in front of me except the steep ascent. I gave the command: 'Sabers, lances ready for battle. Trot, MARCH,' and, unsheathing my saber, galloped up the ravine's bank to see whom and where I was to attack. In a few moments, I saw the Austrian cavalry regiment which, in column of reserve, had appeared from behind a hill galloping, the cavalymen waving their sabers and shouting. I gave the command: 'CHARGE, CAREER, HURRAH,' and immediately found myself among the Austrians, in an interval between the squadrons, followed by my bugler. Yet, in the last moment, I noticed that the flank squadrons of the Austrians were headed for the interval between my squadron and the neighboring one.

"Passing the lines of the Austrians (there were eight of them) I listened to the hurrah of my men, guessing how far it was, as I was anxious to find out whether the squadron had accepted the attack or had turned back. But the hurrahs were heard just behind me. The attack was on.

"Having passed the last line, I turned my horse back, and saw the Austrians running in disorder along the slope of the hill to the left (to our right), pursued by the 1st and 5th squadrons of the Lancers.

"The testimony of the officers about the shock was as follows: They were not able to force the horses to a 'career' up the steep terrain. When they were going forward at a gallop, they saw the Austrians rushing down towards them. Seeing that we had not turned, the Austrians stopped. We also stopped for a moment, as there were eight enemy lines against our two. Then we charged them with our lances, throwing many of them from their saddles. Pressed from behind by their own men, they could not turn back and ran along the front. Those who penetrated the intervals were dealt with by other squadrons. As a matter of fact, there was no shock.

"When I saw the Austrians running and pursued by our men and was going to join the squadron, I perceived the second Austrian regiment, follow-

ing the first at a gallop, also in column of reserve. I shouted (at fifty paces from my men) "Squadron, TO ME," but because of the noise and excitement, they did not hear. Meanwhile the Austrians were approaching. They were going to charge us in the rear. The moment was critical.

"As I looked back, I saw the 1st and 2d squadrons of the Ingbermanlandski Hussars coming out of the ravine. I rushed to them and pointed to the approaching Austrian regiment. Thereafter, this regiment was attacked on its flank and driven to the left by the 1st squadron of the Hussars, while the 2d squadron rushed toward the enemy battery, which was already abandoned by the Austrians.

"Having shown the Hussars the objective of their attack, I galloped to join my squadron. I passed at about forty paces from the flank of the second Austrian regiment. Two enemy non-commissioned officers tried to overtake me. I fired on one of them. I do not know whether I hit him or not, but both turned back. Farther on, I met another Austrian and went straight at him with my saber; I was lightly wounded in the arm. Next I saw our officers' baggage which had been left behind; its attendants were rushing with others into the attack.

"I did not see the third Austrian regiment. I was told it had been put to flight by the fire of our artillery."

Captain Sinigoub's Letter

Captain Sinigoub was the commander of the 5th squadron of the Odesski Lancers, the second from the left flank of the charging line, having on its left the 3d and on its right the 1st squadron of the same regiment. His letter contains only answers to some questions. They are as follows:

"The right flank of the charging Austrians came up almost opposite the center of the 5th squadron. I ordered the second half-squadron to veer to the right in order to attack the enemy flank. This was carried out.

"Immediately after the sides had clashed, individual fighting started.

"We did not slow down before the attack, but, after we had crossed the ravine and climbed its steep bank, our front became somewhat disarranged, and, as far as I remember, our speed was not greater than a gallop.

"There were no men who remained behind or turned back; everyone attacked bravely.

"When, after the clash, individual fights started, there appeared the second Austrian line drawn up in a column."

Lieutenant Steleski's Letter

Lieutenant Steleski was a subaltern officer of the 5th squadron. He writes as follows:

"Early in the morning, on August 21st, a quarter of an hour before the attack, the 1st, 5th and 3d squadrons deployed front, and descended slowly into the ravine; on the other side a hill dominating the country could be seen. Just after we had started moving I saw two of our cavalymen, in front of

our right flank, galloping up the hill. One of them was Captain Popoff; I don't remember who was the other. Hardly five minutes had passed when they rushed back and shouted: 'The Austrians.' At that moment we were in the bottom of the ravine. We cleared a ditch, frightened away a hare, and I saw you, Colonel*, at twenty paces in front of the left flank of the 5th squadron, riding along the front and commanding: 'Pierce them through.' Then we

* The letter is addressed to Col. Zaroubin, who commanded a group of squadrons in the fight.

began to mount the bank, and soon I saw the blue tunics of the Austrians galloping toward us down the hill.

"Up the bank, as I remember, our squadrons advanced slowly, the ascent being steep. The enemy, rushing toward us, slowed down, and, when the distance between the two lines was about twenty paces, both stopped for a few seconds. Again I heard your command (there was some apprehension in your voice, it seemed to me, as to the eventual outcome of the attack): 'CHARGE THEM.' But your command, like the spark of a magneto, launched all of us into the famous fight of Yaroslavitsy."

Lieutenant Vasilieff's Letter

Lieutenant Vasilieff was a subaltern officer of the 3d squadron which formed the left flank of the deployed front. His letter follows:

"On the morning of August 21st, I was sent as liaison officer to the commander of the 9th cavalry division; later I was relieved by Lieutenant Jerkho, and joined the regiment when the latter, forming part of the division, was marching in column. After a short time, our column attracted the fire of the Austrian artillery. We were drawn up in column of reserve, and I received an order to go forward, at the head of a platoon, in the direction of what seemed to be an enemy group ahead of us, but which, when I came near it, proved to be two caissons with teams left behind by the Austrians. The platoon passed the caissons in line of foragers, and we returned to the regiment. Before the attack, when the front of the regiment was deployed, my place was at the extreme left, in front of the 1st platoon of the 3d squadron, which formed the left wing of our line. At the moment of the shock our line, at its left end, was longer than that of the enemy, who attacked in column of reserve. Thanks to this fact, half of the 1st platoon was in a position to charge the enemy on its flank. When the Austrians had galloped through our line, the greater part of the 1st platoon rushed after them, and, when the second Austrian regiment appeared, I succeeded in gathering around me only about two platoons, in which men of the whole squadron were mixed up. We joined the group which had gathered round Captain Slechenko, and the squadron charged for the second time. I could not tell you who was at our right and left, for I did not pay attention to this at the time of that charge. The last picture I remember was the battle field, dotted with fallen Austrians in their showy uniforms, with killed horses and some grey figures of our men."

Lieutenant Khvostikoff's Letter

Lieutenant Khvostikoff was a subaltern officer of the 6th squadron, which was assigned to protect the artillery of the 10th cavalry division during the engagement. In his letter an interesting, hitherto unknown fact is disclosed, viz., the movement carried out by the 6th squadron with the purpose of co-operating with other squadrons in the fight. Whether the 6th squadrons had received an order from Count Keller to that effect, or whether it went forward in answer to the signals "To all" and "Speed up to the unit at the front," sounded by the buglers, or whether it did so on the squadron commander's own initiative, the letter does not explain. But the mentioning in it of groups of enemy infantry (they belonged to the 35th Landwehr regiment, which had been driven back by the Russian 9th cavalry division), and of the Novgorodski Dragoons, makes it clear that the 6th squadron came up on the right flank of the Russian fighting line.

The above facts, as well as the reinforcing of the Russian left flank during the attack by the Orenburgski Cossacks, described in Count Keller's report, may serve as an example of excellent team work by the units of the 10th cavalry division. Having started the fight with 7½ squadrons, Count Keller had at its end 11½ squadrons.

Lieutenant Khvostikoff's letter runs as follows:

"During the night of August 20th-21st, the 6th squadron was on outpost. Next morning, after the division had started, our regiment, as far as I remember, marched in its rear, the squadron forming the column's tail. When we were nearing the place where the fight took place, the 6th squadron was ordered to stay behind to cover the horse batteries of the division. The regiment moved on, the squadron remained in the ravine. Shortly after the batteries had gone into position, Daragan,* who was on the hill, signaled to us, and I led the squadron out of the ravine. When we emerged in a deployed front, I saw on our left the Novgorodski Dragoons and, in front of us, enemy infantry in a line, about one platoon strong; behind it, near the edge of a wood, a battery was in position. It fired three *four* shells which passed over our heads. I did not see what was happening on our right and left, as my attention was wholly fixed on the Austrians and on our men. We rushed forward and passed through the line very quickly. I remember well that Makaroff and Litvinenko** pierced through two infantrymen with their lances. The Austrians were running in all directions. The battery was near. When we galloped up, we found only a few men with it, the others having left the guns and run into the wood. I went through the wood. On the other side, I saw a cavalry column falling back. After we returned to the captured battery, we put out the horses in the teams; some of them, as well as the greater part of the fallen Austrians, had been killed by our artillery fire. One of the Austrian guns was turned round by us, and two *three* shots were fired on the retreating enemy column. On my way back from the farther side of the wood, I saw our regiments. They were assembling after the charge."

* Officer commanding the squadron.

** Two privates.

Comments

On the basis of the new documents set forth above, considering them as supplementary data to the information contained in the previous description of the Volchkovtsy fight, we may establish the following sequence of episodes in that encounter:

First there took place the clash between the five Russian squadrons (Dragoons and Lancers) and two squadrons of the Austrian 13th Lancer regiment (Major Vidale). The three remaining squadrons of that regiment, together with the regimental commander, ran away from the battlefield and did not take part in the fight. The fact that the Russian Lancers, as may be seen from their letters, got the impression that they were attacked by an "Austrian regiment" is of psychological nature, and presents a phenomenon, which, under the circumstances, can be easily explained. A few seconds later, there followed the charge of the three first line squadrons of the Austrian 15th Dragoon regiment, which had appeared from behind the hill opposite the left flank of the Russian Lancers. Next there took place the breaking through of the Russian front by the 1½ Austrian squadrons, which had followed behind the left flank of the first line of the Austrian 15th Dragoon regiment. Finally, Count Keller threw in his escort against the flank of the enemy squadron, which had broken through, whereas Captain Barbovich, with his two squadrons of the Ingbermanlandski Hussars, charged the right flank and rear of the Austrian Dragoons, which decided the issue of the fight.

In one of my previous articles, based on the documents which were then available, I wrote as follows: "In the Volchkovtsy fight, the two sides were so brave that they actually met, but their speed was slowed down and hand-to-hand fighting was entered into by the bravest, who are called 'heroes,' and who are followed by the crowd. Turning back began from the very outset. With the crowds on horseback tossing about on the battlefield, incidents occur in the nature of the one in the center." Now with the units appearing in good order from the rear rests the fate of the fight; around them foams the mob element, formed by the disorganized units which have clashed. In this element the emotional inspirations rule supreme."

The more complete picture of the fight which we can now re-establish, on the basis of the new documents, is not in contradiction to its previous description.

The letters quoted above confirm also my scepticism as to the importance of the "mechanical principle" of a shock, expressed by me, owing to the insignificant number of the losses in the first encounter. According to Captain Kamakoff's and Lieutenant Steletski's letters, the two sides stopped before the clash; the latter even states that Colonel Zaroubin had to repeat the command "Charge them." On the strength of the new documents, it may be stated now that there was no "mechanical shock" at all.

The stress laid on the "Mechanical effect" of a shock in the "official reports" has always seemed to me a little exaggerated. While in the times of Frederick II and Napoleon, when it was possible to keep cavalry units in close formations up to the moment of the clash, the "mechanical principle" might have been of certain value. The opportunities of preserving close formation now, under the conditions of greatly increased fire power, have become exceedingly rare.

Such an opportunity presented itself at Volchkovtsy. But there are certain details in that fight which cannot pass unnoticed. They are as follows: In the Russian cavalry division, which on that day was 18 squadrons strong, only 7 were available for the charge immediately. This circumstance drew

* The breaking through of the Russian front by the Austrian squadron. the attention of some military critics, who reproached Count Keller for having brought to the battleground so small a force. Not only does their criticism seem unjustifiable, but it is quite obvious that Count Keller's squadrons were able to come up to the Austrians unnoticed, for the very reason that they were 7 and not 18; what, under certain conditions, is possible for a regiment is impossible for a brigade and less so for a division. On the Austrian side also, out of the 22 squadrons, only 8 took part in the attack.

The causes of such phenomena lie in the psychological side, which on the battlefield in general, and in cavalry encounters in particular, is paramount.

Count Keller, when he made the decision to charge with his seven squadrons an enemy who seemed to him twelve squadrons strong, did the right thing, because in cavalry encounters victory is won, not by the side which is stronger numerically, but by the one which is stronger morally. In those encounters two may prove to be more than four.

"Gentlemen, attack always the first," used to say Frederick II to his squadron commanders, despite the fact that in his time the mechanical principle of the shock was held in great esteem.

It would be, however, a mistake to construe the erroneousness of the shock theory as a negation of the possibility of mounted charges. The conclusion to be drawn is not that cavalry attacks have outlived their time, but that their success depends largely on the formation in which they are delivered.

Under the conditions of future fights, which, aside from highly increased fire power, will be characterized by aircraft activities, the kind of cavalry formation best adapted to those conditions, will be, not a close formation, but a line of small units deployed with intervals on a wide front.

A Remarkable Ride

By

A Cavalry Officer

DURING THE WINTER OF 1925-1926, while on leave, I took a job with a development company in Texas.

There came into the office at Brownsville a huge, broad-shouldered, sun-browned mule skinner, looking for work. He measured an enormous number of inches around the chest, carried himself erect and asserted that he had had army training in Service Troop, Seventh Cavalry. He got a job.

Padre island furnished numerous obstacles to progress in the work. It was a low sand spit, from one-half to one mile wide, one hundred and twenty miles long, with a maximum elevation of about thirty feet. No vegetation grew on the island, except salt grass. The broad smooth beach was to be the roadway for a new short route between Corpus Christi and Brownsville, and even then was being used by company automobiles for travel back and forth.

In March, there came to visit us a group of northerners from Dallas and St. Louis. One automobile was insufficient to carry them. A second small car was ferried over from the mainland, to carry the party from Point Isabel to our end of the island. Vague rumors of the proposed trip reached us, but only a telephone call from Brownsville gave us positive knowledge that the trip had been commenced the day before. It normally required four hours to make the trip up the island by way of the beach. Twenty-four hours had passed and no word from our visitors.

The delay occasioned no apprehension in our minds. The second day passed. More conversation with the Brownsville end netted little information. A third day without news put us in motion. With food for several persons we set out for Padre Island. A Mexican laborer with an undersized pony attracted our attention. We conscripted both.

Delayed in our preparation by the necessity of traveling fourteen miles over bumpy roads to get provisions from town, and by the refusal of our motor boat to work, we reached the island in mid-afternoon. A travel-stained figure, bent almost double, apparently Mexican, hove into sight. It was Colonel Robertson, worn out by days and nights of walking, bringing news of the remainder of the party. Without food or water, they were marooned fifty-five miles down the beach.

Freasier had already hoisted his 175 pounds to the back of the flea-bitten Mexican pony. To his weight was added that of a forty-pound sack of provisions. A rope sufficed for a bridle, for his saddle, a Mexican makeshift. Mid-afternoon, an early winter sunset threatening, and fifty-five miles before him. Would the little starved, two-year old pony hold out?

583

Off stumbled the pony with his back-breaking burden. That night, seven or eight hours afterward, the rider had covered his fifty-five miles, had found on the beach a note telling of the departure of the lost group for shelter, supposedly fifteen miles to the northwest. He recommenced his march; in less than two more hours he had reached his goal.

Freasier feared to think what he might find. The note on the beach, hanging on a piece of drift wood stuck upright in the sand, had been written on a piece of notebook paper, dated the previous day, and was accompanied by the last will and testament of one of the visiting party. The note told of the distress from lack of food and water. So it is difficult to say where lay the greater joy, with the three men, or with Freasier, when he tottered up to the abandoned camp-shack. The sack of food was torn from his grasp and the ex-cavalryman found himself gazing at three tattered specimens of misery personified, gorging themselves with bread and ham.

With second thought for his horse, Freasier turned to make the animal comfortable. Exhausted by the effort, the poor little old animal lay flat on the ground; no effort could arouse him. Since there was no better stable, they left him after giving him a supper of a piece of bread. Disturbing his mount only to rub down legs and back, Freasier turned in.

Next morning Freasier awakened, groomed his horse by hand, rubbed his legs, and considered the situation. Now but forty-five miles from home, his mission accomplished, his spirits were high. The men were safe, true. Food they had had, but what about the coming day? No other horses existed on the island. Automobiles had to be ferried over to come to the rescue. This would take a day. There was no alternative; the little horse must again make a forced march.

That afternoon there rode into our sight Freasier with his noble pony. He hopped off, told his story, and went back to groom his horse. When we later had time to consider the feat we marveled at the record made by this little Mexican scrub pony, fourteen hands high, splay-footed, cow-hocked, herring-gutted, but game as a thoroughbred. According to Army teaching, the rider had made his schedule at the start of his march, deciding on ten minutes trot, five minutes loping, ten minutes trot, five minutes dismounted leading at the trot, and repeating the program. Rests were taken at two-hour intervals, for five minutes. The effects of the trip on the pony were slight. The weight lost was soon regained. The Mexican got a five dollar bill; for Freasier it was in the day's work.

Consider the facts—115 miles in two days, carrying 215 pounds for seventy miles, 175 pounds the remainder. Even with the ideal road under foot and the cool night air dampened by sea spray, could it have been accomplished without the knowledge that is a part of every cavalry-trained soldier?

The Daily Life of the Frontier Soldier

By

RAYMOND L. WELTY, Ph. D.

Professor of History, Morningside College

A MILITARY POST ON THE PLAINS," wrote a visitor of 1868, "suggests very forcibly the peculiar inspiration of a ship at sea; isolation within and desolation without. The same rigid enforcement of discipline unremittingly exacted, as if in the face of the enemy. The commandant, a sort of supreme authority, executive, legislative, and judicial. All the forms of military etiquette observed. The flag hoisted every morning at sunrise and dropped at sunset, attended by the same roll of the drum, and the same reverberations of the evening gun. A furlough or brief 'leave' was one of those pleasures in anticipation, which seemed to compensate for the lack of other mental relief. If there be any who deserve the sympathies of those who enjoy comfortable and secure homes in the settlements, they are the officers and soldiers condemned to the isolation of duty on the plains." (1)

The soldier on the frontier, notwithstanding the isolation and desolation of the posts, found his time occupied by many duties. The first essential of a good soldier is to be well drilled. The extent to which the frontier garrisons were drilled depended upon many conditions. If the troops were regulars and they had been in the service for some time, very little drilling was necessary. But new recruits or new units required more drill. In preparation for field service special drills were usually instituted if the time or the duties of the troops permitted. The target practice was essential in order to produce good frontier soldiers.

General Custer before his campaign in 1868, had two target practices each day. By offering special privileges (as being excused from guard duty) to those who attained the skill of an expert marksman, he encouraged his troops to excel in this important function of the soldier. (2) The small garrisons at so many of the posts discouraged effective drilling. At these small posts the troops were so busy at the various activities of the post, that there were seldom enough men free for even company drills. Many soldiers served their entire enlistment without once drilling in regimental formation, or even in battalion formation. Under such conditions the drilling of troops was a drudgery and seldom extended beyond the fundamentals of individual, squad, platoon and company drills and tactics, and instruction in guard mounting. (3) Only in the larger posts, could there be any attempt at formal

(1) Kahn, De B. Randolph, *Shoriden's Troopers on the Borders* (Philadelphia, 1895), p. 58.

(2) Custer, G. A., *My Life on the Plains* (New York, 1874), p. 140.

(3) Secretary of War, *Annual Report for 1868*, Vol. I, p. 177.

reviews and formations under the inspiration of music by a band or by a trained corps of buglers. (4)

Guard duty was a very important function in the frontier post. Indeed, at some outposts it was the only important duty of the post. The government property of the post had to be protected day and night. But at the frontier post, like an army in the field in time of war, there was the additional factor, the danger from the enemy. The guards and pickets prevented the Indian from entering into the post or near enough to shoot and injure its defenders, steal the post's stock or set fire to the haystacks or store houses. The safety of the garrison depended in many cases upon the watchfulness and efficiency of those on guard.

Guard mounting was an event of the day. The soldiers whose lot it was to go on guard, would spend their spare moments before the hour set for the "guard mount," in cleaning, polishing and rubbing their rifles until they appeared perfect to their trained eyes. They brushed their clothes, cleaned their shoes and exerted every effort to make a clean, orderly appearance. At guard mounting, and at dress reviews and inspections, the soldier presented his most soldier-like appearance.

In addition to his purely military duties the enlisted men were called upon to perform the duties of a common laborer, woodchopper, quarryman or mechanic. An order issued by the Adjutant General's office in 1867 provided: "At every post where it is possible, fuel and hay shall be procured by the labor of the troops, and the department commander shall designate the posts for which, in default of this, contracts may be made." (5) In 1866 and 1867 the Quartermaster Department reported that a large proportion of the wood consumed in the military departments on the frontier was cut by the troops. (6) Enlisted men were used as teamsters and gardeners in the army. Soldiers who were employed for more than ten days continuously on the trail and wagon road, on the huts and shelters for themselves and their supplies, were allowed (after 1866) twenty cents extra pay daily. (7)

General Sherman reported in 1870 that Colonel J. J. Reynolds objected because "he is forced to use his men a great part of their time as laborers on public buildings, roads, and other work which disqualifies them as soldiers, besides preventing them from scouting the frontier as much as would otherwise be the case. As a matter of course, soldiers must labor in taking care of themselves and of their necessary supplies, but to build permanent works or roads in which they have but a partial interest, is a kind of labor that ought not to be imposed on our reduced establishments." (8)

(4) Custer, Elizabeth B., *Following the Guidon* (New York, 1890), p. VI.

(5) Section V of General Orders No. 97, Adjutant General's Office, November 12, 1867, found in Secretary of War, *Annual Report for 1869*, Vol. I, p. 230. (6) Secretary of War, *Annual Report for 1868*, p. 59; *Ibid.*, for 1867, p. 529. (7) Act of July 12, 1866, *United States Statutes at Large*, Vol. XIX, p. 98; Secretary of War, *Annual Report for 1868*, Vol. I, p. 57.

(8) Secretary of War, *Annual Report for 1870*, Vol. I, p. 5.

The building of shelter for themselves and their stores was expected of all troops at temporary posts or camps. These shelters, which were constructed of materials found in the vicinity, such as logs, adobe, sod or stone, were quickly put up by the troops. Major Alfred E. Bates wrote that his regiment was engaged during the summer of 1866 building quarters at the new posts of Hays, Harker, and Pond Creek or Wallace on the Smoky Hill route, and Dodge and Aubrey on the Arkansas River in Kansas. "The summer of 1866," he wrote, "was one of hard work. The soldiers, laying aside their uniforms, became for the time mechanics and workmen, and looked forward to spending the next winter in comfortable quarters of their own building. However in September, General Sherman ordered the regiment to move across the country and report...for duty in the department of the Platte." (9) This was a common way of constructing new posts and even old posts were furnished with new buildings erected principally by the troops from materials found in the vicinity. (10)

Colonel J. J. Reynolds in commenting upon the use of troops for building shelters in the Department of Texas reported: "When not in the field, the troops have been steadily employed in preparing shelter...under these circumstances the instruction of most of the troops in many details is necessarily defective."

"In my opinion many desertions are caused by the varied calls made upon our soldiers for labor in getting out lumber, quarrying stone, making adobes, running saw-mills, burning brick and lime, driving wagons, etc., etc., which are not in their engagement when they enlist, and which, in fact, unfit them for soldiers. A post to be built in this manner is never finished. The frequent and unavoidable change of post commanders, and inexperience of an entire garrison in the use of building material, in spite of the utmost watchfulness, will end in the misappropriation of much material that is furnished on an estimate. Experience has fully convinced me that by far the most economical method of sheltering troops is by contract, to say nothing of the saving of time and preserving the efficiency of the men as soldiers. The employment of civilians to direct and aid the troops in making shelter, results in a long list of employees for an indefinite term, inefficient soldiers, and a short allowance of indifferent shelter." (11)

The enlisted man was kept busy on the frontier at drilling, guarding, general policing of the post and on fatigue details to perform the labor about the post and reservation. Even though the soldier labored at haying, chopping

(9) Rodenbough, Theodore F., *History of the Second Dragoons* (New York, 1875), p. 272.

(10) For illustrations see: Secretary of War, *Annual Reports for 1868*, Vol. I, p. 36; *Ibid.*, for 1869, Vol. I, p. 61; *Ibid.*, for 1870, Vol. I, pp. 26, 28.

(11) Secretary of War, *Annual Report for 1870*, Vol. I, p. 41.

wood, building quarters, driving mules, aiding travelers, or anyone of a thousand small jobs at the post, he was expected at a moment's notice to be ready to perform his real military duties beyond the post. The army was intended primarily for field service. On the frontier this field service was escorting, patrolling, scouting, and at times campaigns or expeditions against large forces of hostile Indians.

The monotony of post life was often broken by the sending out of details for escort duty. Scarcely a regular post existed which did not have some escorting to do. It might be the furnishing of escorts to the paymaster who visited the post every two months, (12) escorts for the military train that supplied the post the monthly mail, or possibly an escort for a visiting Inspector-General or the Commanding General of the Department. At the posts where escort duty was not common, the change from the monotonous and dreary life of guard duty and fatigue details was welcomed by the men. But the soldiers at the posts along the well traveled trails or roads often found that escorting was their only work, especially if they belonged to the cavalry. Government trains paymasters, generals, government agents, stages, the mail, and sometimes emigrants and freighters required escorts. To them, escorting month after month, with but little rest between, became very monotonous.

Cavalry or mounted infantry was used in escort work. The size of the detachment sent as an escort depended upon the character and importance of the object escorted, and also upon the danger from Indians or outlaws. These details varied from three or four men to escort a mail carrier, to several companies of troops to escort safely a large supply train. (13)

Escort duty was for the majority of the troops always distasteful, but escorting a "bull" or "ox train" was the worst. The troops did not like to be subordinated to the slow moving oxen. The train started early in the morning and a long rest at noon was taken for the purpose of grazing the oxen. On the road the escort was scattered through the train and with advance and rear guards prevented a surprise or stampede by prowling Indians. The men soon became weary of the uneventful sleepy rides in the hot sun, the slow progress of the train, the night guards and seemingly never ending of the journey. (14)

Escorting a government or contractor's mule train was less tedious but more difficult. "From the moment a mule train entered a hostile Indian country until it left it, there raged a contest of wits between the officer in charge and the wildest, shrewdest, most cunning horse thieves that ever the sun shone on. The Indians, more eager than when on the track of an ox train, were untiring in pursuit of their prey." (15) Herds of horses and mules on

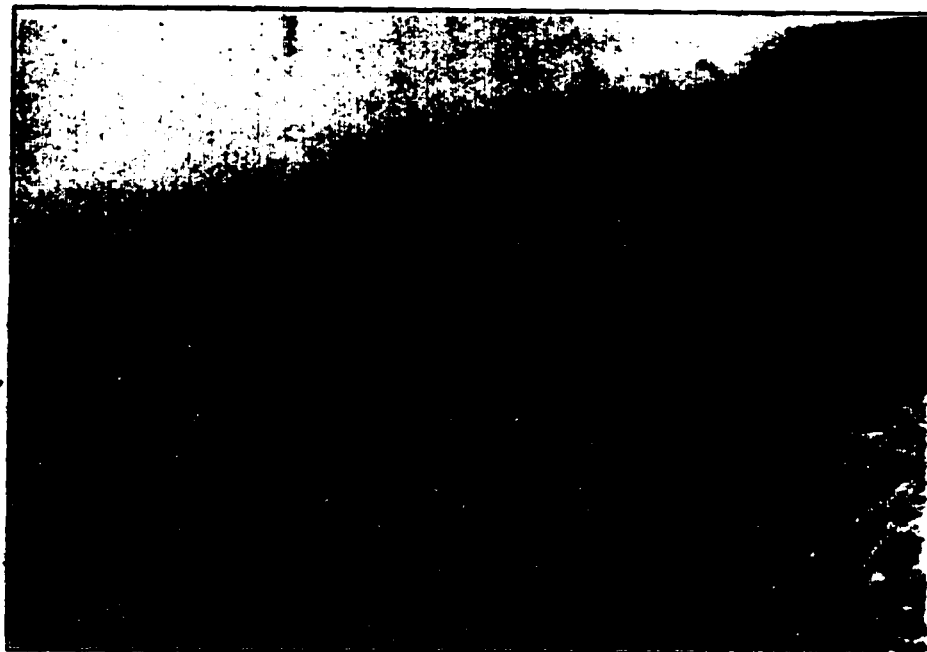
(12) Taylor, Joseph Henry, *Sketches of Frontier and Indian Life* (Bismark, 1897), pp. 119-121.

(13) For the two types of escorts see: Custer, *My Life on the Plains*, pp. 62-63, 74-75.

(14) Forsyth, George A., *The Soldier* (New York, 1908), Vol. I, pp. 151-152.

(15) *Ibid.*, p. 152.

the Plains were the same to the Indian freebooters of the Plains as the gold-laden galleons of Spain had been to the bold buccaneers in the days of Raleigh and Drake.



Type of Cantonment Built by Soldier Labor

The careful commander of the escort had his men posted before daybreak, for that was the "zero" hour of Indian attacks. From the first signs of dawn until the train moved from camp was the time of danger. It was at this time that the Indians, flopping buffalo robes, dragging hardened hides and skulls of animals behind their ponies, and with the most unearthly yells, would suddenly rush down upon the camp preparing to move out. All the skill and strength of the teamsters would be called into play to keep the excited mules from breaking away and stampeding, while the escort quickly mounted and met the noisy but scarcely perceivable attack with lead. Usually little or no damage was suffered on either side, but let the escort and the teamsters be once off their guard, and the cunning Indians would add many a stampeded mule or cavalry horse to their herd.

If the train escaped the efforts of the Indians to stampede its stock, it would move out with the escort furnishing advance and rear guards, and flankers, while the reserve troops moved along with the wagons. When the camp was made for the night a number of mounted drivers or "mule skinnners" would drive the mules out to graze, and all the troops except the cooks and a

few on guard would be sent out with the herd to see that the Indians did not kill the herders and steal the mules. After the animals had grazed their fill, they were corralled near the camp. "After dinner the camp was at rest. Toward sunset guard mounting caused a flurry of excitement, and shortly afterward retreat ended the day. By the time the evening was fairly under way back in the East, at home, the camp was asleep." (16) And in the small hours of the morning, before the dawn made its early appearance on the Plains, the sentinels would awake the camp for the new day.

Patrolling the trains and roads was similar to escorting, in that the troops were marched back and forth along the routes of travel. But it had this advantage, in the opinion of the soldiers, they were not tied down to a wagon train. In patrolling, the troops kept the trails open to travel. This could be done by driving away all the hostile Indians found near the trail and, if this was impossible, escort the traffic and stages past the dangerous points. Usually the presence of patrolling troops on a trail kept the Indians from committing hostile acts. To the soldier the duty of patrolling lacked the monotony of escorting, and gave more opportunities for fighting Indians, hunting buffaloes, and other adventures.

During Indian wars the troops were often unable to locate the enemy. Scouting parties were continually kept in the field to keep in touch with the Indians. These scouting parties, if they could find the hostile Indians and their number was not too large, would attack them. The Indians in time of war usually scattered their forces out over the country in order to prevent the destruction of their entire tribe if overtaken. These small bands would sometimes consolidate in order to make attacks in force. The object of the scouting parties was to find the Indian villages and to harass them so that the warriors would be forced to stay at home in order to defend them, instead of making raids on the whites. Although scouting expeditions had the appearance of an offensive movement, and at times scouts did punish bands severely, the real motive was a defensive one, to protect the whites by forcing the warriors to protect their own villages. As an illustration of the amount of ground covered by these scouting parties from December, 1866, to September, 1867, in the Department of the Missouri, twenty-nine different expeditions were sent out. These scouts and expeditions against hostile Indians traveled a distance of 7,129 miles which made an average of almost 250 miles per scout. (17)

The preparation for the going and the returning of the scouting parties became a source of interest to the troops at the post. (18) The general policy was to keep scouting parties out all summer if possible. This served three principal objects; first, it tended to hold the Indians in check, for it gave the impression that the army was always ready for them—somewhat like the

(16) *Ibid.*, p. 154.

(17) Secretary of War, *Annual Report for 1867*, Vol. I, p. 47.

(18) Custer, *Following the Guidon*, p. 215.

purpose of policemen; second, the soldiers were drilled and hardened by these scouts for similar work in case of open war; and, third, it furnished an opportunity to break the monotony of post life. The interest in a change—something new—tended to keep the troops better satisfied. The change of diet as a result of killing buffaloes, antelopes and other game on scouting expeditions was welcomed by the men.

During the campaigns against the Indians the soldier endured many hardships on the march. The amount of baggage each trooper was allowed to carry was what he could pack himself, or, if mounted, could store about his person. Mrs. George Custer gave the following description of the soldier on the march: "The troopers, when mounted, were curiosities, and a decided disappointment to me. The horse, when prepared for the march, barely showed head and tail. . . . Through the wrapping together of the blanket, overcoat and shelter-tent is made a subject of the tactics, it could not be reduced to anything but a good-sized roll at the back of the saddle. The carbine rattled on one side of the soldier, slung from the broad strap over his shoulder, while a frying-pan, a tin-cup, a canteen and a haversack of hardtack clattered and knocked about on his other side. There were possibly a hundred rounds of ammunition in his cartridge belt, . . . [and] a short butcher-knife, thrust into a home-made leather case, kept company with the pistol. . . . The tin utensils, the carbine and the saber, kept up a continual din, as the horses seemingly crept over the trail at the rate of three to four miles per hour. In addition to the cumbersome load, there were sometimes lariats and iron picket-pins slung on one side of the saddle, to tether the animals when they grazed at night. There was nothing picturesque about this lumbering cavalryman. . . ." (19)

The soldier on the march was exposed to inclement weather. If it rained, hailed or snowed he had little protection. The dismal prospect of camping in the rain with no chance of a fire to dry his clothes or warm his chilled body, or the acute suffering in the winter tramping through the snow with the temperature far below zero, were commonplace affairs in the soldier's life. Their sufferings were increased if the troops were in the hostile Indian country, for they would be prohibited from building fires or making unnecessary noises as walking or stamping their feet to keep warm, for fear of alarming the Indians. (20) General Sheridan in commenting on the hardships of the winter campaign of 1868-1869 declared that the troops were patient and cheerful even though they were "many times pinched by hunger and numbed by cold, sometimes living in holes below the surface of the prairie—dug to keep them from freezing; at other times pursuing the savages, and living on the flesh of mules." (21)

(19) Custer, *Tenting on the Plains*, pp. 301-302.

(20) Custer, *My Life on the Plains*, pp. 159-160.

(21) Secretary of War, *Annual Report for 1869*, Vol. I, pp. 50-51.



Sioux Warriors Attacking An Escort
By Permission from Personal Recollections of General Nelson A. Miles
691

Often in the temporary camps the soldiers suffered many inconveniences. During the winter of 1863-1864, with the temperature as low as 43 degrees below zero, the troops in the temporary posts along the Oregon Trail in the present State of Wyoming were snowed in for six weeks without communication with the outside world. (22) Another illustration is the case of an entire regiment,—men, officers and many of the officers' families, living in tents near Fort Laramie during the severe winter of 1866-1867, because of the lack of permanent quarters. (23)

A description of a camp during the winter campaign of 1868 will illustrate the character of the suffering the troops endured: "The wintery blast swept mercilessly through the valley, demolishing tents and extinguishing the few fires built against the intense cold. The night was intolerably dark. The troopers, unable to keep warm, could be heard through the long hours tramping up and down, within the limits of the camp, afraid to lie down for fear of freezing to death. The animals without covering or protection from the wind suffered intensely. All night shivering at the picket-rope the poor brutes uttered melancholy moans, but it was beyond the power of man to alleviate their sufferings." (24)

The hardships were not always due to the weather, as this report of an expedition in the Territory of Arizona shows: "All the men suffered greatly on this expedition from want of boots. During a great part of the time we were traveling in the mountains, it was absolutely necessary for the men to walk and lead their horses. This was very painful, as many of them were almost barefoot, or their feet bound up in pieces of buckskin or hide. The sentinels around the camp were nightly compelled to walk in the wet grass, among the rocks and prickly cactus, with their feet in this wretched condition.... On my return I found that there was not a whole pair of boots in my company, and none to be obtained." (25)

In the summer buffalo flies and mosquitoes made life miserable for man and beast. (26) Dust storms and sand storms added to the disagreeableness of marches across the prairies or deserts. The excessive heat of the burning sun parched the lips of the trudging soldier, loaded down with his equipment. The alkali water and sometimes the lack of water, the weariness that comes from riding hour after hour, or the exhaustion that comes to the marching infantrymen were the characteristics of the soldier's life in the field.

On the march the staple articles of food were the old "reliables"—coffee, bacon, and hard bread. Onions, potatoes, beans, dried apples or peaches and flour for fresh bread were added to the ration if the expedition camped at one place for a day or two. And if the expedition did not require rapid marches,

(22) *The War of Rebellion: Official Records* (Washington, 1890-1901), Series I, Vol. XXXIV, Pt. II, pp. 28-29.

(23) *Secretary of War, Annual Report for 1867*, Vol. I, pp. 57-58.

(24) *Kahn, Sheridan's Troopers*, p. 157.

(25) *Secretary of War, Annual Report for 1867*, Vol. I, p. 130.

(26) *Custer, My Life on the Plains*, p. 9.

fresh meat, obtained by hunting, might be added to the fare. In case of a camp for several days, hot biscuits, roasted and boiled fresh buffalo meat or venison, beans, stewed dried apples or peaches, or perchance a peach cobbler, presented a feast to the hungry troopers. But the soldiers did not always fare so well. General Custer relates the following incident of a scouting party who had exhausted their commissary supplies: "We moved only a few miles, but even this short distance was sufficient to demonstrate how weak and famished our horses had become, one of them dying from starvation before we reached camp.... This circumstance, however, was turned to our advantage.... the animal had scarcely fallen, unable to rise again, when it was decided to prepare his carcass for food. That evening the men treated themselves to a bountiful repast made up of roasts, steaks, and broils, all from the flesh of the poor animal, whose death was attributable to starvation alone. Judging, however, from the jolly laughter which rang through camp at supper time, the introduction of this new article of diet met with a cordial reception." (27)

The soldier's experiences in the field were not all hardships. General Forsyth in reflecting upon the fascination of the soldier's life wrote: "Sometimes at night, when the weather was clear and not overcold, the men would lie wide awake upon their backs for hours at a stretch, looking straight up at the wonderful beauty of the heavens, talking to each other in low tones, and enjoying to their hearts' content the awe-inspiring sight of a starlight night far out on the plains, where the air is so pure that the stars seem to shine with a lustre unknown to those of mountains and cities, and to swing lower in the blue vault of heaven than anywhere else.

"It is such hours as these that help to lend the nameless fascination to a soldier's life on the plains that never entirely leaves him, and often stirs his blood even years after he has left the service, and is a gray-haired man with a growing family around him that safely anchors him to civil life." (28)

The camp at night with its lines and rows of tents gleaming like spectres in the shadowy moonlight made a very attractive picture. The only signs of life were the faint glimmer of a candle in the guard tent and the dying embers of a cook fire at the end of the company streets; the soft tread of the sentry, the rattle of the halter chain of a mule, or some cavalry horse impatiently pawing at the picket line, were the only sounds that struck the ear. But at the first sign of daybreak the first call of reveille cut the still air and re-echoed back across the awakening camp. Low, gruff tones were heard which were followed by bobbing candles and oaths from the corral as the men fed their animals. In ten minutes the trumpets would blare out the reveille and the day's work began. Breakfast, packing, "general," which was the signal for the camp guard to take down the tents amid the voluble flow of indignant language of their late occupants, followed in quick succession. Just as the broad bands of light appeared in the eastern sky the long line of the

(27) *Ibid.*, p. 229.

(28) Forsyth, *The Soldier*, Vol. I, pp. 106-107.

march moved out. If the march was in a hostile country advance and rear guards, and flankers were used. The commanding officer and his staff rode at the head of the column, and the guide took his station with the advance guard if a new trail was to be followed.

The day's march was from water to water; the distance depended upon the necessity and the speed the troops could travel. At first the stiff infantry-men were slow to "limber up" but as soon as they struck their pace there followed the hum of talking and laughter. At the ten minute's halt during each hour the men "skylarked," smoked, and gossiped. But as the day passed, the buzz of talking died down and the gait became slower, and at the rest periods the men now lay down on their backs to rest. When the site of the next camp appeared in the distance, as if by magic the buzz of talking began again and the pace picked up; the weary troops as if possessing a new life finished the "home stretch" in rapid time. During the last few miles the kitchen police or company cooks picked up pieces of wood for kindling, and the wagons scarcely stopped before a fire trench was dug and the camp kettles were soon boiling over the fire. The horses were tended to, the shelter tents were set up, and the troopers were soon making sharp inquiries concerning the delay of supper. When the meal was prepared the soldiers filled their tin plates with bacon and hard bread, while their large tin cups gave off the bracing odor of strong coffee.

After supper the soldiers arranged their tents and their beds for the night, or cleaned their clothes, arms and accoutrements, or finished caring for their horses. When their work was completed they lounged about smoking, talking, playing cards, or simply resting. (29) A visitor at an army camp in describing the events of the evening wrote: "Fresh sentinels are stationed, and darkness rapidly approaches. Eight o'clock comes, and 'Tattoo' is beaten. The soldiers form line once more, the rolls are called, and they are dismissed for the night. Nine o'clock, and two taps on the drum order 'Lights out.' One by one lights are extinguished, and darkness and quietness reign throughout the camp." (30)

(29) For descriptions of the army on the march see: Keim, *op. cit.*, pp. 93, 98-100, 121-140; Custer, *My Life on the Plains*, pp. 147 et seq.; Forsyth, *The Soldier*, Vol. I, pp. 160-166.

(30) Stanley, *My Early Travels and Adventures in America and Asia*, Vol. I, p. 2.

Machine Gun Marksmanship Training

By

1st Lieutenant W. P. CAMPBELL, Cavalry

DURING THE ANNUAL preliminary training and range practice of the 2d Machine Gun Squadron this year, a new method of "dry shooting" was very successfully used.

The reduction in the allowance of ammunition for machine gun marksmanship training has made it necessary to find some effective way of teaching manipulation and observation simultaneously, without using more ammunition than allowed. The manipulation exercises prescribed in regulations cause the gunner to concentrate his mind entirely on his gun, whereas in actual firing his attention is divided between the gun and the effect of his fire. At the same time the soldier's interest must be maintained if the time spent is really worth while.

The objects in mind were:

1. To decrease the amount of time necessary for range practice.
2. To increase the ability of the individual in mechanical manipulation of the gun.
3. To perfect training in observation of fire without expending ammunition.
4. To keep each man active and interested, when on the firing line, but not at the gun.

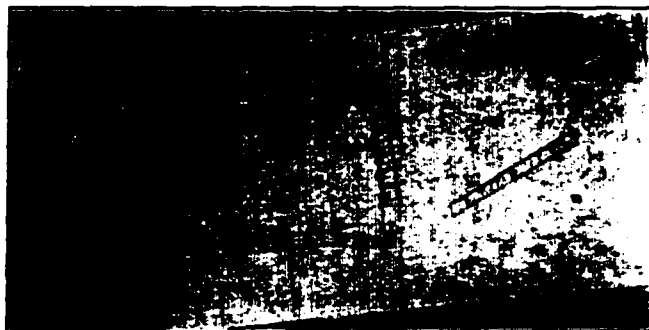
In teaching observation and manipulation on the 1000-inch range, the following blackboard method was used:

All men, except the one "dry firing" and the coach, sat just in rear of the gun. Or, in case two or more guns were available, the men were divided equally between the guns so that each man could get more actual work on the gun. The officer or "non-com" who conducted the problem stood at the target (placed 1000 inches from the gun). He used a pointer (a small stick with a black spot on the end about one-half inch in diameter) to mark or plot the simulated shots.

As when firing with live ammunition, the sights were set to hit the application and the gun knocked five mils or more off in each direction; time was taken on the command "Commence Firing," and the problem started.

For a description in detail, assume in the photograph problem below that the burst hit the application (this would have been shown by the "non-com" so placing the pointer) and that the gunner has reset his sights for the traverse, relaid, and fired one burst on the traverse.

Picture Number 1 shows that burst as being two mils high in elevation, but correct for deflection. Assume that the gunner came down two mils correctly, but carelessly tapped over four mils through excitement, as is often done by beginners. The "non-com" conducting the problem can easily see what the gunner does and plots his bursts accordingly.



No. 1

Burst Number 2 on the traverse then would be plotted in space Number 3, as shown on picture Number 2. This shows the elevation to be correct, so a two-mil left tap should be applied to hit space Number 2, then two two-mil right taps before firing again. A burst from this last tap should put the shot group in space Number 4. With a uniform two-mil tap and burst from then to the end of the traverse each space should be hit. A requirement that each man always lay on the last spotter on the traverse and the oblique, before firing his last bursts on them, should be rigidly enforced.



No. 2

In photo Number 2, the first burst is two mils low, but correct in deflection. So the gunner should raise two mils and fire. However, assume that he "rode" or too tightly gripped the gun with the left hand while he was elevating and thus threw his next burst to the left as shown in picture Number 4.



No. 3



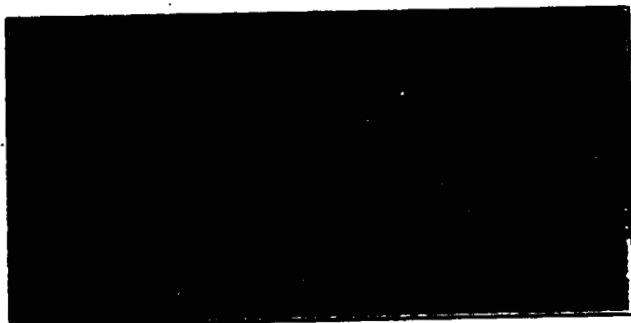
No. 4

His next move should be to tap right one mil and fire another burst with the same elevation as the last. This would put the third group in space Number 1 on the vertical. With successive two-mil elevations and bursts after once getting properly lined up, firing on the vertical would be completed, sights reset, and the gun laid on the left black spotter for the oblique.



No. 5

In picture Number 5, the first burst on the oblique is shown to be correct. Then the gunner should tap right two mils and elevate one mil to hit space Number 2. But suppose he elevated and forgot to tap (or visa versa, as is often the case with recruits).



No. 6

Then his second simulated burst would be above space Number 1, as shown in photo No. 6. His next move should be a two-mill tap, but no elevation, to put burst Number 3 in space Number 2. After this a successive accurate two-mill right tap and a one-mill elevation with every burst should hit each oblique space. It will be necessary to put in more time on the oblique than the traverse and vertical, otherwise the lowest scores on the 1000-inch target will be made there habitually.

The men sitting in rear of the guns move their hands after each burst is plotted to simulate the move they would make were they at the gun firing the problem. This tends to co-ordinate their minds and muscles, and teaches them through the faults of others, and gives them extra practice.

The men at any extra gun actually tap, elevate, lower, etc., as per the plotted groups. However, as the "non-com" conducting the problem can watch only one gunner at a time, it is better to have each gun working on a separate target and "dry shooting" a separate problem.

At first a new man will require about five minutes to "dry shoot" the 1000-inch target, but will quickly speed up to where his time is around 2½ minutes (time allowed in record firing with live ammunition is three minutes). After a short time at this blackboard firing it is astonishing how well a man will do with his first problem with live ammunition.

On the field range the same ideas and exercises apply but of course some one gun must fire live ammunition for the class or group to get practice in observation, or observation and manipulation combined.

This method of "dry firing," which proved very valuable indeed to the 2d Machine Gun Squadron this year, was worked out by Major John B. Johnson, present Commanding Officer of the Squadron, and the author.

The French Ecole Supérieure de Guerre

(Extracts from an Official Report)

By

Major R. C. RICHARDSON, General Staff
Graduate of the Ecole Supérieure de Guerre

General View of the Ecole Supérieure de Guerre

THE Ecole Supérieure de Guerre is housed in a fine group of Louis XIV buildings at 43 Avenue de la Motte Picquet in that part of the VII arrondissement of Paris known as the Ecole Militaire. It was founded in 1876, just fifty years ago when the lessons of the Franco-Prussian war had been digested and the need was felt for an institution of military learning that would be the fount of French tactical doctrine of their conception of general staff training.

Its purpose therefore is to train general staff officers for the French army and hence the school occupies in the educational system of the French army a place that is practically analogous to that of our Command and General Staff school at Fort Leavenworth. The aim of the instruction is to inculcate in the student a tactical doctrine that is abreast of the times, that represents the best military thought in France as a result of the lessons of the war, and that teaches him the theoretical and practical methods of general staff procedure. But aside from the strictly military training, the aim also is to increase the vision of the students and to develop their cultural education. Its scope is broad, which in no way lessens its thoroughness.

The execution of the above conception with success, calls for a carefully selected personnel, both among the corps of professors and the students and hence it is interesting to consider for a moment each category.

The school is commanded by a general officer either a General de Division (Major General), or General de Brigade. The post is considered one of great importance so that the generals are selected with great care. During my tour, General de Brigade (afterwards promoted to General de Division) Duffieux commanded for the first 18 months. He was an officer with a distinguished war record having served as chief of G-3 at French G. H. Q. during the last days of the war, and consequently ably qualified for his duties as Director of the School. I found him an inspiring leader, aside from the pleasure that I felt in working under an officer who was so frankly friendly to Americans. He was relieved in January, 1926, and sent to Morocco. His successor, General Herin, had formerly been Chief of Staff in Morocco to Marshal Petain and brought to the War College a rich practical and theoretical knowledge both of which were manifested from the beginning. Both of these distinguished officers were very cordial to the American students, and never missed an occasion to show their interest in our progress, and in our general well being at the school.

The corps of professors, generally speaking, are an elite, chosen from the Army with careful regard to their particular aptitudes. In the academic departments all of them were officers of field rank, mature men, and possessing four years of war experience. With few exceptions they made an excellent impression upon the student body, French and foreign, for they were well informed, their conferences and problems were always thoroughly prepared in advance, and what was better, in many cases, they were able to illustrate the tactical principles which they were exposing by actual experiences in the war. In fact, each principle had the support of digested experience. They were very numerous in proportion to the student body.

French Officers

The French student officers are chosen from candidates from all branches of the army, line and staff, who present themselves for examination a year in advance of the date of their matriculation. These officers are given a rigid entrance examination and only those meeting a fixed standard are admitted. To pass satisfactorily these entrance examinations, at least one year's (intensive) preparation is necessary, so that an officer aspirant must begin to make his plans and work for 2 years prior to entrance. Broadly speaking, usually about 20% of those applying fail to gain admittance. Hence upon entrance, the student body of French officers represent also an elite, with an excellent foundation for the course, and offer to the professors a material, to mould which should be a delight. In rank they were for the greater part of the grade of captain with a sprinkling of first lieutenants and junior majors, and in age, I should say they would average 33. The attendance of officers above 38 is prohibited except under exceptional cases, on the theory that after 35, with a few years added to make sure, the mind is no longer plastic and in that state of receptivity that is desirable in students.

Foreign Students

Through the courtesy of the French Government, a large number of foreign officers from many nations are admitted annually without examination. They follow the same course as the French officers, are treated as students without distinction, are graded identically, and as far as I could judge their progress was observed by the professors with real interest.

In numbers, the foreign students represented approximately 30% of the whole student body, numbering 48 out of about 150 officers, and in grade ranged from a Persian general, through an Estonian colonel to Norwegian and Siamese lieutenants. Aside from our country, Czecho-Slovakia, Chile, Greece, Estonia, Lettonia, Finland, Persia, Poland, Japan, Siam, Serbia, Norway, Sweden, Switzerland, Peru, Uruguay, Roumania, Spain all had several representatives. Neither the English nor the Italians however were represented.

The Curriculum

The course of study covers a period of two scholastic years. Academic work commences November 1st of each year and ends about May 15th. Outdoor work is then begun and lasts until August.

In the first year, a study is made of the division in war, as well as the tactics of the separate arms, but with a preponderance of emphasis upon the division. The latter is always "encadree," or in other words, it forms a part of an army corps. The French do not contemplate the employment of isolated divisions.

In the second year a study is made of the army corps, likewise "encadree."

Every tactical situation was examined and tested by a *standardized method*. The "method" was the battlecry of the school. No matter what problem studied was, the method had to be applied in order to make the decision acceptable. What is *the method*? Nothing more or less than our estimate of the situation, with less emphasis on the G-2 or enemy evaluation. It consists of a consideration of the:—(a) mission, (b) the means at one's disposal, (c) the enemy, (d) terrain, and then the final decision as a result.

In its application the French stress very much the evaluation of one's *mean's*, or in other words, a study of what you have to work with, the number of battalions of infantry, the number of battalions (groups) of artillery, the tanks and engineers, etc., at one's disposal for the execution of the mission. These means are then studied in terms of the mission, the frontage assigned, and the terrain both in width and in depth.

In this respect I found their method very thorough, but there was a certain deficiency in their estimate of the enemy, in the treatment of the lines of action open to the enemy. This resulted from the fact of their "encadrement," as well as that of the enemy, which restricted, of course, such speculation. The latter becomes rather a consideration for the higher headquarters.

Instruction is given by the solution of particular problems, mostly special cases drawn from the World War, but with no importance placed upon on any *particular* solution. The latter is regarded as unimportant as compared to the soundness of the reasoning, and to the method employed. Nor are there any approved solutions. A solution is offered with the reserve that it merely represents the best thought of the group of professors solving it, but does not preclude other solutions. This freedom of conception, I observed, liberates the student's mind from seeking a solution that he thinks will be what is professorially desired.

The solutions are corrected by a professor who signs his name to his criticisms. No marks are placed on the problem but comments and appreciations, such as "Excellent," "Very good," "Good," etc.

Shortly after the papers have been returned to the student, there is a conference for the whole class at which the professor who prepared the problem exposes its solution and analyses the tactical principles that formed its basis.

Later, each student appears with his problem before the professor who corrected it, and together for ten or fifteen minutes they go over the corrections and criticisms together. At this individual correction, the student is at liberty to discuss freely his own solution, and to question the criticisms. It is all done in a very professional and broadminded manner.

Lectures (Conferences)

Each of the two classes (promotions) at the school has its own lecture room, with very uncomfortable benches arranged in the form of an amphitheatre. At the beginning of his course the student is assigned a seat which he keeps for two years. Nearly all of the foreigners are given the best seats in the first two or three rows, which arrangement is a great advantage as the acoustics of the halls were not good and we were spared the strain of trying to catch mumbled words.

The lectures were generally illustrated by large scale charts or maps quite beautifully drawn by the school drafting personnel, which added much to the clarity of the exposition as well as to the interest of the lecture. Questions are never asked by the students during the lecture, but are sometimes informally after the lecture. The attendance is of course compulsory for the student, as is every other duty at the school, foreigners included, and while there was never a roll call, unauthorized absences were practically unheard of. In addition, a group of professors attended, usually those belonging to the academic course, infantry, cavalry, etc., which was responsible for the lecture, and very often the general commanding was present. He frequently gave at the conclusion, elucidating comments on the doctrine being taught.

Normally the lectures lasted for an hour, but the time was not fixed and frequently overrun. However, there was never more than one lecture a day and often none at all. The result was that the mind was usually receptive for the subject, and quite ready to absorb what was taught. The interest of the student did not wane and he was spared that mental restlessness and irritation that develops when one lives under constant high pressure. This arrangement also gave time for reflection without which instruction loses most of its value.

As for the subjects of the lectures they were chosen with the object of giving the student officer either general information regarding a respective course, such as the principles of organization of an arm, the functioning of the staff and services, or else they were on specific subjects in preparation for a problem of the same character that was soon to follow, such as the "defence of a position of resistance" the "approach march, contact and engagements," etc.

As a means of instruction, however, the lecture system is regarded by many of the professors as ineffective, for the reason that the student is not required to do else than listen. Human nature approves highly of work for the other fellow, but rebels instinctively against overcoming the inertia that is necessary when one works. At lectures only the professors work, and hence

the student derives only a minimum of benefit. The Ecole de Guerre is essentially a practical school, as will be seen throughout the development of this article and lectures being purely academic are in opposition to the basic methods of instruction. Consequently the greater part of the instruction was given by "map exercises" which will now be described.

Map Exercises (Exercices sur la carte)

In our system of instruction we have nothing that corresponds exactly to this *method of teaching*, although the subject matter taught corresponds to the courses in our schools known as "troop leading" with the difference that the "exercices sur la carte" are perhaps more comprehensive. They comprise many problems involving the troop leading of the army corps, of the division, of the artillery brigade, of the infantry brigade, that is of the higher units, all of which are taught in the course of *Tactique Generale*. The courses in the separate arms, infantry, cavalry, artillery, commence with the highest unit of that arm employed and treat even the platoon, or squad.

There is a reason for this. The French doctrine does not conceive of the employment of isolated army corps and divisions in continental Europe. They are always "encadres" that is part of a higher unit, either the army or the corps. Consequently in problems, the decision of the higher commander is given either to attack, defend, etc., and the map exercise deals with the execution of this decision. Execution is really a matter of troop leading and this is why there is less necessity for the character of map problems which we have at Leavenworth, and more necessity for exercises in troop leading.

The training in "decision" at the Ecole de Guerre is the decision of *execution*, that is, knowing that you are to attack or defend, . . . what decisions shall be made to execute your mission, whereas our training is that of *command*, or in other words, finding ourselves confronted with a set up condition, what *decision* shall be made? Attack? Defend?, etc.

For purposes of instruction the students are divided into groups of approximately ten French Officers and three or four foreign officers. Prior to a map exercise there is sometimes a conference bearing on the subject, and then four or five days in advance the problem, with maps, is issued. The decision whether the corps or division is to attack, defend, organize the ground . . . comes from higher authority and is given in the problem. The student studies the situation and prepares a solution mentally of how the commander is to execute his mission. He prepares also the maps in advance, placing thereon all units after having clarified the map by shading the terrain, coloring the streams beds and roads. The student therefore arrives at the problem impregnated with the atmosphere of the situation, and no time is lost in preliminaries.

The professor and about 15 students (one group) sit around a large table, each with his map and problem spread out before him, and the exercise commences with a request by the professor to some student to put the group "au courant" with the situation. This takes but a few minutes and then the

problem is studied in minute detail, beginning with the receipt at the message center of the orders from higher headquarters.

If the problem is one of *Tactique Generale* the treatment of the subject remains on the plane of the general, his general staff and the commanders, the combatant forces and services, but if one is dealing with the tactics of a separate arm, there is, prior to descending into the details of the subordinate units, a preliminary study of the reaction of the general commanding (corps or division) his directive and the work of the general staff. In other words, the orientation of the student is quite complete, and the problem is given a setting.

The professor conducts the exercise by a series of questions all of which develop the situation according to decisions made in class. It is entirely oral, as far as possible. Each student is called upon for his decision, which must be supported by reasons, and in addition during the exercise he is supposed to *live* the problem and to place himself in the role of the commander whom he is impersonating for the time being.

In the instruction, the "method" is rigorously followed, and insistance is placed upon the general commanding assuming his proper responsibility. The work of the general staff must be a consequence of an initial directive, employing the commander's plan of maneuver, which must emanate from him and not from his staff. He must likewise give explicit instructions for the employment of his artillery after making an analysis of the artillery situation, stating precisely the number of groups of artillery that are to support each infantry unit during *all* phases of the battle, and indicating upon what part of the terrain he wishes the shells to fall. Also, he is required to tell his artillery commander the kind of fires that he wishes used, whether preparation, a rolling barrage, etc., and he determines the time and the amount of the artillery displacements. In other words he must take the full responsibility for co-ordinating the attack, combining the artillery and infantry team play in his plan of fire. The staff works out the details.

These exercises were extremely thorough and instructive. One left the room after 4 hours grilling with a feeling that the subject had been exhausted and viewed from any angle.

Map Problems in Class (*Exercices en salle*)

These exercises need no description for American officers as they are identical with the map problems, such as we understand the term in our schools. The student arrives in class and solves the problem presented, usually in four hours. But whereas these problems constitute one of our principal methods of instruction, in France they are infrequently employed. In the first year we had five and in the second year four or a total of nine only in two years; usually two each year in *Tactique Generale* and artillery and one in infantry. They are used by the French as a test rather than for purpose of instruction, and hence their infrequency.

Home Work (*Travail a domicile*)

In addition to work at the school, the students are given a series of problems to solve at home, on an average of one a month. Ten days are allotted for the solution and it is none too much since each problem consists of a great number of parts. The solutions are written.

As to the character of these problems, they are a combination of *Tactique Generale* and the tactics of some special arm. For instance, the infantry problem the first year was the installation of a division on the defensive, which treated not only the actions of the higher command but of the subordinate infantry commanders. Again the artillery home work was a thorough test of the principles underlying artillery employment, the fires to be used, the deployment of groups and, last but not least, the calculation and supply of ammunition.

The students found these problems long and exacting, but I believe that their great value lies in the time one has for reflection and the necessity of collateral study. No restrictions are placed upon the student except that his work must be personal. He is at liberty to consult any text books, problems, or other references. In fact, collateral reading, bearing on the problem, is encouraged.

Terrain Exercises (*Exercices a l'exterieur*)

While similar in name, the procedure and instruction differ somewhat from our exercises. In the first place, the French exercises last all day. We would take the train early in the morning, usually going to some terrain about one hour or so from Paris. As in other exercises, the problem had been issued in *advance*, so that we were familiar with the situation and with the map of the terrain. Once upon a good vantage point, a student was called upon for a "tour d'horizon," or in other words to point out the main terrain features first on broad lines, then in detail, villages, valleys, etc. Thus oriented, the students were given usually an assignment: general commanding the division, artillery commander, battalion, company or platoon commanders. The problem was then developed, each student making the decisions and exposing his conception conforming to the role he was enacting. Nearly all of the exercise was verbal, occasionally only was a written order required. An intermission occurred for luncheon which was a very pleasant feature of these exercises. It was arranged beforehand, in a small inn or hotel in the village and as a rule we lunched well, quite reasonably. After luncheon, the exercise was resumed until four or five o'clock, when, after the critique, we boarded a train for Paris.

In the study of the problem, complete reconnaissances of the terrain were required and then the exercise progressed as far as possible following reality. In this manner we covered on foot sometimes as much as 12-15 km.

If I were to be asked the principal characteristic of these exercises, I should say the careful study made of the possibilities of the terrain, with

reference to the best employment of the fires of the artillery and automatic weapons. Another characteristic of importance was the precision exacted of students. If dealing with the infantry, definite location of the troops in sector, precise indications of the bases of fire established, actual limits of sectors, etc., were required, and the student was obliged to point them out on the terrain. In artillery, the actual woods, or other terrain features where the shell fell, whether in direct support or as protection, had to be indicated. Hence, the problem assumed a living character and besides was sheared of deadening and confusing generalities.

Tactical Voyages (Voyages d'armes)

As soon as the academic year has been completed about May 15th, the tactical voyages begin. In the first year there were three, one each for infantry, cavalry and artillery, and in the second year one only. *Tactique Generale*. These voyages may be said to be prolonged terrain exercises, for they last usually about a week for each classification. From an administrative point of view they were well organized. Two groups of students, about 30, were trained together. Upon arrival at the designated town or village we were billeted upon the inhabitants as in war and were within a few hours given a preliminary lecture on the conduct of the exercise which began the following morning. As in all other exercises at the school, the problem had been issued several days in advance, with maps, so that there were no surprises. Horses and orderlies were used for all reconnaissances, the first year, and motor cars for the voyage in *Tactique Generale*.

Tactically, the exercises were designed as a "general review" on the terrain of the principles taught in the class and lecture room. The problems comprised usually the approach march, engagement, attack, pursuit and eventual defensive of a division, so as to study all phases of the combat. In the second year the voyage of *Tactique Generale* was a thorough exercise in general staff work, the students performing for two weeks all staff duties of the army corps and divisions in a problem involving the approach march of an army, its contact, engagement, attack, pursuit, check and passage to the defensive. Actual war conditions existed, all general staff bureaux working day and night until the orders were properly prepared.

Military History

The history course consisted of a series of lectures followed (at the close of each academic year) by a study on the terrain of selected operations of the World War.

During the first year the subjects treated consisted of French military art in the 18th Century, the Napoleonic Wars, the Battle of Mnkden, and lectures on the Civil War treating Grant's Virginia Campaign. It is interesting to note the attention that is being given to the Civil War, heretofore too little studied abroad except in England.

The misfortune of this neglect was pointed out inasmuch as the Civil War was the first great modern struggle in which railroads and telegraph were used, and in which the full war making power of two nations was engaged.

The lecturer dwelt on the fact that had this been properly appreciated in France, many mistakes would have been avoided in the World War; also an interesting analogy was drawn between Grant's campaign in Virginia and Foch's campaign during the last days of the war and it was stated that the principles employed by Grant were those used by Foch. This statement, however, was not enthusiastically received.

In the second year, the lectures were principally on the World War. The keynote of the first part of these lectures was the importance for French officers to learn to deal skilfully and diplomatically with allies. French relationships with the British in the early part of the war, and subsequently with the British and Americans later were reviewed at length.

The "voyages d'histoire" in the summer of each year were extremely enjoyable and instructive. The first year, we studied on the terrain the operations of the 5th French Army under Marshal (then General) Franchet d'Esperey at the first Battle of the Marne, and the second year, the German offensive of March, 1918, in the Montdidier sector. This study treated the methods employed by the French in organizing and crystallizing their defense in the face of a break-through by the Germans, when the British 5th Army was routed. It was well done.

The history course was remarkable for the effort of the professors to present the truth about their own mistakes. They did not hesitate to criticise themselves and their high command, but always in the judicial spirit quite free from any personalities.

Russian Cavalry In East Prussia

By

General L. RADUS-ZENKAVICIUS

(Continued from page 546)

The Tannenberg Operation

Influenced by the failure of the battle of Gumbinnen and the advance of General Samsonov's Second Russian Army toward Nordenburg (see sketch No. 6), the commander of the Eighth German Army ordered the retreat of his troops to the west beyond the Vistula. This retreat had already started on August 21st, and was accomplished by numerous troop movements by rail and by marching.

This decision of the Germans was unknown to the Russians and, even on August 22d, General Rennenkampf wrote in an army order: "On August 20th the enemy was defeated on the whole front. He has retreated several kilometers and occupied a position there." Owing to this lack of information, the Russians did not pursue the Germans, and the continuance of the advance of the First Russian Army was ordered only for August 23d.

On this day the main forces of the Russians reached the line: Darkemen-Ishdagen-Pelleninken, without having met the enemy. On August 24th, 25th and 26th, the First Army continued the advance without any resistance and occupied in turn the following lines:

On August 24th: Skirlak-Trempen-Kausben;

On August 25th: Angerburg-Nordenburg-Norkiten-Virbeln;

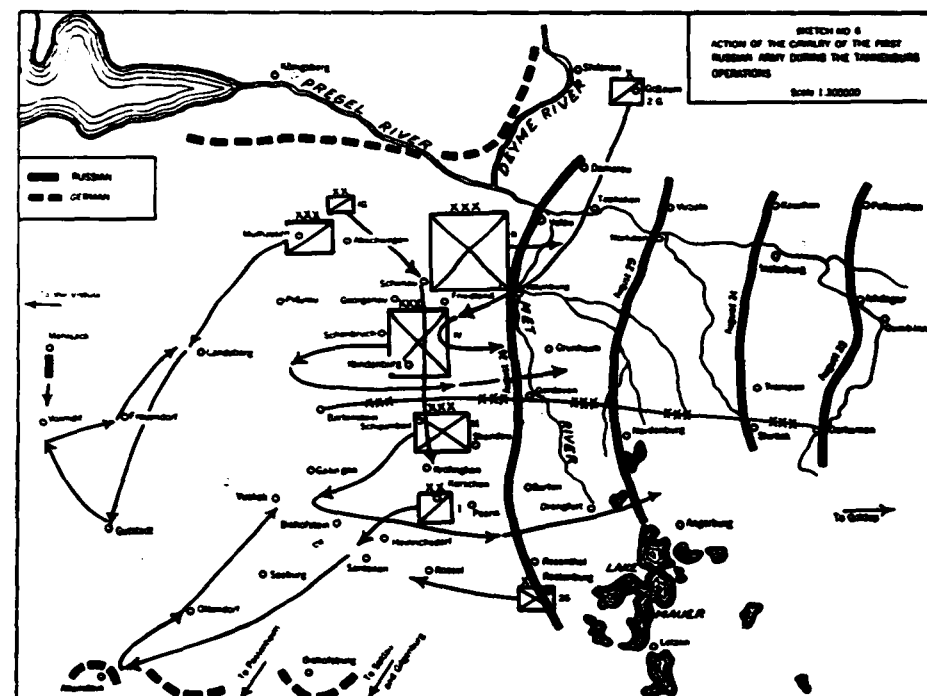
On August 26th: Rosenthal-Barten-Gerdauen-Allenburg-Velau-Dameran.

On August 26th, the general retreat of the Germans was discovered, but it was not known whether their corps had retreated to Königsberg or to the vicinity of the Vistula.

On the same day, the commander of the First Army, in compliance with the orders of the commander-in-chief, issued a directive, in which he pointed out that the following measures were to be taken: "Close blockade of Königsberg. For this purpose the enemy is to be driven back from the line of the Deyme River. As a strong occupation of the Deyme can be expected, its crossing must be carefully prepared by co-operation on the right of the line of the Deyme. After the occupation of the line by the two corps on the right flank and after its fortification, the corps on the left flank is to continue the advance. The crossing of the Deyme must be secured also by an advance to Königsberg. In case of an offensive by the enemy, he will be attacked."

The army cavalry received the following missions: 2d Guard Cavalry Division to reconnoiter the vicinity of the Deyme and protect the right flank of the army; General Khan Nakhichevsky's Cavalry Corps (2d and 3d Cavalry Divisions and the 1st Guard Cavalry Division) to reconnoiter the front of the position of the army in the zone between the Pregel and the line:

Darkemen-Gerdauen-Bartenstein; 1st Cavalry Division to reconnoiter to the south of this line and protect the left flank of the army and, in particular, to determine the position of the enemy near Letzen, from west of the Mazurian Lakes. The 1st Separate Cavalry Brigade was assigned to the XX Corps.



Sketch No. 6

On August 27th, the difficult position of the Second Russian Army was evident to the staff of the Northwest Front. On August 28th, General Zhilinsky had sent to General Rennenkampf the following message: "Troops which retreated in front of your army were brought by rail to the front of the Second Army and are attacking near Soldau, Gilgenburg and Bishofsburg. Support the Second Army by an advance, as far as possible, with your left flank to Bartenstein and send forward your cavalry in the direction of Bishofsburg. The VI Corps is ordered to advance to Passenheim."

In compliance with these orders, the staff of the First Army wired to its corps: "The enemy is attacking the Second Army on the front: Soldau-Gilgenburg-Bishofsburg. We occupy Allenstein. To support the Second Army the IV Corps moves to the line: Bartenstein-Pr. Eylau, and the II Corps to the line: Bishofstein-Bartenstein. General Khan's cavalry moves from the Abschwagen-Muhlhausen area on Pr. Eylau, Landsberg and Vormdit, leaving the 1st Guard Cavalry Division in the area now occupied. General Gurko's

1st Cavalry Division is ordered to the Bishofsburg-Seeburg line. General Raue's 2d Guard Cavalry Division has orders to cross the Pregel near Tapliaken and advance in the direction of Allenburg, Friedland and Landsberg.

On August 28th, the corps of the First Army moved as follows: III Corps to the line: Friedland—village of Schenau—mouth of the Deyme; IV Corps (with the 5th Infantry Brigade) to the Klindenberg-Schenbruch-Georgenau line; II Corps to the Schippenbeil-Skandau line (one brigade of the 26th Division moved from Rastenburg to the vicinity of Rossel.)

General Khan Nakhichevansky's Cavalry Corps remained in the vicinity of Muhlhausen, the 2d Guard Cavalry Division in the vicinity of the village of Gr. Baum, and General Gurko's 1st Cavalry Division operated in the region to the south of Korschien.

The enemy occupied the west bank of the Deyme. To the south, in front of the position, were only small forces of cavalry, Landwehr and Landsturm, which retreated to the west and southwest.

The advance was continued on August 29th. The IV Corps occupied the Bartenstein-Pr. Eylau line and the II Corps the line: Bishofstein-Galingen. General Khan Nakhichevansky's Cavalry Corps marched to the vicinity of Landsberg and the 1st Cavalry Division to the vicinity of Santonen. None of the troops, except the 5th Infantry Brigade, encountered the enemy.

On August 29th, the staff of the First Army received from the General Headquarters of the Northwest Front two telegrams as follows: At 7:00 A. M.—"Taking into consideration the heavy fighting of the Second Army, the general-in-chief gives you orders to support it with two corps, sending the cavalry in the direction of Allenstein;" and at 11:00 A. M.—"The Second Army has retreated.*****The general-in-chief has ordered the further advance of the troops assigned to the support of the corps of the Second Army to be stopped."

Taking into consideration the change in conditions, the commander of the First Army, on August 30th, gave orders to the IV Corps to withdraw to the vicinity of Friedland and to the II Corps to start the march toward Angerburg. All the other parts of the army were to fulfill the missions previously assigned to them.

On August 30th, the IV Corps retreated on the line: Skandau-Georgenau and the II Corps on the line: Rastenburg-Paaris. Khan Nakhichevansky's cavalry corps occupied Gutstadt, the 1st Cavalry Division stopped in the area; Santonen-Heinrichsdorf, and the 2d Guard Cavalry Division moved from the right flank of the army to the vicinity of Friedland.

On this day, General Rennenkampf received from General Headquarters a telegram informing him that General Samsonov was engaged in heavy battles, the results of which were unknown, and ordering him to consolidate and reconquer in the area: Allenstein-Passenheim, in order to determine the situation of General Samsonov's army and help him.

The commander of the First Army issued orders to General Khan Nakhichevansky and to General Gurko and decided to stay on the Deyme and hold the Drenfurt-Gerdauen-Allenburg-Velau line until the situation cleared up.

On the evening of August 30th, the Germans, for the first time since the advance of the Russians to the vicinity of the fortress of Konigsberg, gave signs of action against the troops of the First Russian Army. The same attempt was made by them at 3:00 A. M. on August 31st to the north of Velau. The Germans could not reach the Russian trenches anywhere.

On August 31st the IV Corps retreated behind the line of the Omet and the II Corps to the Lake Mauer-Nordenburg line.

The army cavalry moved forward. General Khan Nakhichevansky's corps marched from Gutstadt to Vormdit and arrived there at about 3:00 A. M. This city and the station were protected by about one battalion of Germans with three armored cars. The dismounted Russian cavalry began fighting, caused a series of explosions in the vicinity of Vormdit and burned down several storehouses.

Two trains with infantry and guns arrived from Mehlsack to support the defenders. In the evening, Khan Nakhichevansky withdrew his corps to the vicinity of Frauendorf, after a loss of forty men and eight officers. Among the latter was the commander of the 3d Cavalry Division, General Belgard, who was killed by a shot from the window of a house, probably fired by one of the residents.

General Gurko's 1st Cavalry Division moved at 4:00 A. M. from Heinrichsdorf to Allenstein and arrived there at 3:00 P. M. Allenstein was already occupied by an infantry regiment (147th) with heavy artillery. General Gurko threw back the German guard by a quick rush and then moved back to the vicinity of Ottendorf.

On this day the Germans continued to show activity on the Deyme River and had even built a pontoon bridge near Shilenen. But the character of their work here was not serious.

It was different in the region to the south of the fortress of Konigsberg. Here a movement of troops of all arms was disclosed and, under their pressure, our 1st Guard Cavalry Division retreated from the vicinity of Muhlhausen to the village of Schenau. At 7:00 P. M. the enemy started the offensive with about one infantry regiment with artillery against the outposts of the 27th Division and forced it back to the heights of the village of Schenau.

On this day the commander of the First Army for the first time received definite information of the complete defeat of the Second Russian Army and of the expected attack on the First Army by the Germans.

On September 1st, detachments of the First Army remained in their positions, with the exception of the cavalry. General Khan Nakhichevansky's cavalry moved to the vicinity of Landsberg; the 2d Guard Cavalry Division

to the east; and the 1st Cavalry Division to the vicinity of the village of Krolingken. The 1st Cavalry Division had an encounter in the vicinity of the village of Vusliak with German infantry and artillery, which arrived by rail from the south of Bischofstein.

The Germans did not show great activity on the Deyme, but after 2:00 P. M. they started a battle on the front of the 27th Division.

The commander of the First Army issued an order on September 2d, in which he insisted on the resistance of:

1. The XX Corps to the north of the Pregel;
2. The III Corps on the Alle and on the Omet from Velau to Grunheim;
3. The IV Corps from Grunheim to Nordenburg;
4. The II Corps between the Nordenburg and Mauer Lakes, with an outpost opposite Letzen.

The 57th Infantry Division was assigned to the IV Corps.

Cavalry was assigned as follows:

1. The 1st Separate Brigade to the XX Corps;
2. The 1st Guard Cavalry Division to the III Corps;
3. General Khan Nakhichevansky's corps to reconnoiter in front of the IV Corps;
4. The 2d Guard Cavalry Division in front of the II Corps to the west of the Masurian Lakes;
5. The 1st Cavalry Division to move through Angerburg to Glovken (to the southwest of Goldap).

In the evening, the III Corps and one brigade of the 30th Division moved behind the Omet and all parts of the army began defensive works for repulsing the Germans. This was the initial position for the battle of the First Russian Army during its first retreat from East Prussia, or the battle of Angerburg, as it was called by the Germans.

Comments

There were two interesting questions during the advance of the First Russian Army to Konigsberg. Was it correct to co-ordinate the operations of this Army with the operations against the fortress of Konigsberg, and could it have supported the Second Army more efficiently than was really done? These two questions are closely connected as, if the Army had not been moved toward Konigsberg, it could unquestionably have given real support to the Second Army. Therefore, the First Army should have been moved after the battle of Gumbinnen, at the proper time, to the southwest about in the direction of Bischofstein, leaving in the vicinity of Allenburg, several divisions and a part of the cavalry as an outpost against Konigsberg.

As to the army cavalry, its use was wrong from the start. On the day of the battle of Gumbinnen, General Rennenkampf should have sent it forward, first on the flanks and then in front of the army. As a result, the German retreat and its direction would not have remained a secret for so long a time and the catastrophe of a separate defeat of General Samsonov's Army could easily have been avoided. For this incorrect use of cavalry, its commanders, Generals Khan Nakhichevansky and Oranovsky, who had lost connection with headquarters for several days, were directly responsible.

As soon as the retreat of the Germans was evident, the cavalry, re-enforced by infantry detachments, should have been concentrated in front of the position and on the left flank of the army, and instructed to operate in connection with General Samsonov's Second Russian Army. Even if this was neglected in the first period of the operations near Konigsberg, there was still time enough after the first signs of the German change of front toward the south to support General Samsonov's hard pressed army by energetic cavalry action against Allenstein.



Russian Cavalry Types, 1918

More active commanders than the First Army Commander, and especially the commander-in-chief of the front (General Zhilinsky), would have been needed to carry out such energetic cavalry action.

The cavalry of the First Russian Army executed long marches which wore it out, but its strategic work was useless.

The Retreat from East Prussia

After the defeat of General Samsonov's Second Russian Army, Hindenburg decided to throw all his forces immediately against General Rennenkampf's First Russian Army, in order to clear the East Prussian frontier of Russians. For this attack he collected the I, XVII, XX, and 1st Reserve

Corps, 1½ Landwehr corps and the 1st Cavalry Division, which were already on the Eastern Front and, in addition, the XI, Guard Reserve Corps and the Saxon Cavalry Division (8th), which were brought from the French Front.

In General Rennenkampf's Army the following corps took part in the question:

XXVI Corps—(53d and 56th Divisions and 1st Separate Cavalry Brigade):

III Corps—(25th and 27th Divisions):

IV Corps—(40th and 30th Divisions and the 5th Infantry Brigade):

II Corps—(26th, 57th, 43d and 72d Divisions):

XX Corps—(29th, 28th and 54th Divisions, General Khan Nakhichevsky's and General Rankh's cavalry detachments):

Parts of the 68th Division, brought to the vicinity of Tilsit.

General Gurko's 1st Cavalry Division was taken away from the effective forces of the First Army and assigned to the Tenth Army.

Beside the First Russian Army, there operated against Hindenburg:

1. The Second Russian Army, consisting of the I, VI and XXIII Corps.
2. The Tenth Army, consisting of the III Siberian Corps, the XXII and I Turkestan Corps, and the II Caucasian Corps.

As the Second Russian Army had not yet recovered from its defeat and parts of the Tenth Army were transported and concentrated very slowly and those already on the field were inefficiently used, they had little influence on the operation. Hindenburg confined himself to sending against them General Morgen's Reserve Division, with a few Landwehr and Landsturm units, which secured freedom of action for his troops from the Tenth and Second Russian Armies.

The relative strength of the troops during this operation is shown in the following table:

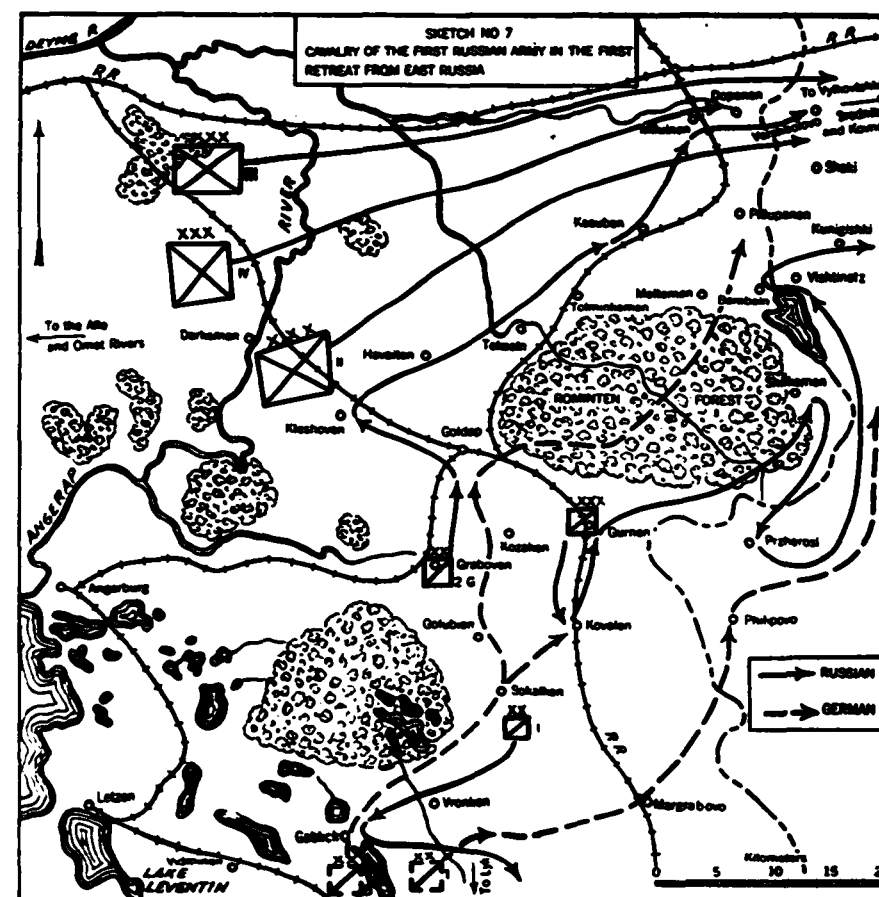
On the front of the First Russian Army					On the front of the Second Russian Army					On the front of the Tenth Russian Army					Total				
Divisions		Battalions		Guns	Battalions		Battalions		Guns	Battalions		Battalions		Guns	Divisions		Battalions		Guns
Inf.	Cav.		Squadrons			Squadrons		Squadrons			Squadrons		Squadrons		Inf.	Cav.		Squadrons	
Germans	14	2	184	99	1074	24	10	78	24	15	60	18½	2	232	124	1212			
Russians	18½	4½	200	142	825	48	60	150	50	36	200	19½	7½	298	238	1275			

Thus, notwithstanding the concentration of the German main forces against the First Russian Army, General Rennenkampf's Army was superior in infantry and, especially, in cavalry.

The Germans completed the concentration against the First Russian Army on September 6th and started the advance on the whole front. They directed their main attack (XX, XVII and I Corps, 2d Reserve Division, and all the cavalry: 1st and 8th Cavalry Divisions) against the Lyk-Angerburg line, (see sketch No. 7) in order to turn the flank of the First Russian Army from the south and create a new "Tannenberg" in the vicinity of Darkemen.

*Note: Formed anew.

The First Russian Army did not move at first from its fortified position behind the Deyme, Alle and Omet Rivers from the Baltic Sea to the line of the Masurian Lakes. To the south was the zone of action of the Tenth Russian Army, and General Rennenkampf was informed by the General Headquarters of the Front that this area would be defended by the Tenth Army.



Sketch No. 7

On September 9th, the Germans moved their right flank through the line of the Masurian Lakes and enveloped the left flank of General Rennenkampf's Army.

The Tenth Army did not resist at all. During the night of September 10th, the German 8th Cavalry Division sent mounted patrols to the vicinity of Goldap. The roads to the forest of Rominten, that is, in rear of the First

Russian Army, were in the hands of Saxon reiters (cavalry regiments). General Rennenkampf finally saw the danger and, during the night of September 10th, began the withdrawal of his army from East Prussia.

Before the German advance, the army cavalry of the First Russian Army, except the 1st Separate Cavalry Brigade and the 1st Cavalry Division, had been in front of the position and executed the following reconnaissances:

1. 1st Guard Cavalry Division (General Kasnakov)* in front of the III Corps.
2. General Khan Nakhichevansky's cavalry corps (2d and 3d Divisions) in front of the IV Corps.
3. 2d Guard Cavalry Division (General Baukh) in front of the II Corps.
4. 1st Cavalry Division (General Gurko) was to join the Second Army.
5. 1st Separate Cavalry Brigade (formerly General Oranovsky) on the right flank near the Baltic Sea.

After the advance of the Germans, the Russian cavalry retired behind the infantry and remained in the areas of the same corps in front of which it had performed the reconnaissance. Only on September 9th did General Rennenkampf order General Khan Nakhichevansky's and General Baukh's cavalry to move to the area: Goldap-Margrabovo and "to reconnoiter and keep back the enemy as long as possible."

On this day, the 1st Cavalry Division was moving toward the south, east of the Masurian Lakes. Being informed of the critical situation on the left flank of the First Russian Army (43d Infantry Division), which was turned by the Germans, General Gurko, on his own initiative, turned his division to the west and, after having occupied the isthmuses between the lakes near the village of Gablik, supported the 43d Infantry Division, which suffered heavy losses in an unequal battle against four German divisions. On the afternoon of September 9th, General Gurko, who himself was in danger of being outflanked by two German cavalry divisions, was obliged to retreat toward the east.

On September 10th, General Rennenkampf ordered the XX Russian Corps (General Smirnov) to the vicinity of Goldap, with instructions to occupy the city and the forest of Rominten in order to protect the left flank of the First Army. General Khan Nakhichevansky's and General Baukh's cavalry was ordered to "support the XX Corps by action against the enemy's right flank." General Khan Nakhichevansky moved on this day to Gurnen and the 2d Guard Cavalry Division to the vicinity of Graboven.

General Baukh reported the movement of an enemy infantry column* on the road from Vronken through Sokalken to Kovalen, and of a cavalry column through Graboven to Goldap. General Baukh moved through the village of Graboven to the village of Wilhelmsberg (two kilometers to the south of Goldap) whence, after a short action, he retired for the night to the vicinity of the village of Kleshoven. Near Goldap the Germans met with the resistance of two unidentified battalions on which they opened artillery fire.

*Note: This division was not complete, as a part of it was at rest far in the rear.

**Note: Which was not correct.

In General Baukh's report to the commander of the 29th Division appeared the following remark on this curious episode: "Yesterday two battalions of the Molodechenak Regiment moved from the Kozaken-Goldap line to Wilhelmsberg." The presence of battalions of the 170th Molodechenak Regiment (Russian) in Goldap on September 10th was impossible. They may have been battalions marching to join the army, or which were covering the trains. It is, of course, very interesting that at a time when the XX Corps and the army cavalry were acting slowly and passively, two chance battalions advanced to the region which was thought by the former to be impossible to reach.

Khan Nakhichevansky's corps passed through the village of Gurnen and, in the vicinity of the station of Kovalen, it discovered the movement of a German column of about one cavalry brigade with several infantry battalions and two batteries. According to the report of General Khan Nakhichevansky, the Germans retreated in the evening toward the southwest. He stopped with his corps for the night in the vicinity of the village of Gurnen.

Actually, the German cavalry was moving, on September 10th, as follows: The 8th Cavalry Division (less one brigade) moved through Sokalken and Golubien to Goldap, which it occupied in the evening. One brigade advanced to Kovalen, where it had an encounter with Khan. The 1st Cavalry Division, which was delayed by the operations, together with the 3d German Reserve Division, advanced only half way from Lyk to Margrabovo. Thus, on the evening of September 10th, in the vicinity of Goldap, three Russian cavalry divisions operated against one German.

Both sides, but especially the Russian cavalry, acted very conservatively. The XX Russian Corps did not fulfill the mission assigned to it and intrenched on the line: Kleshoven-Havaiten.

On September 11th, General Rennenkampf ordered the army cavalry on the left flank to carry out the previously given missions, that is, to prevent the enemy's cavalry from enveloping the left and rear of the army.

On this day the 2d Guard Cavalry Division executed a reconnaissance on the left flank of the XX Corps and retreated at 8:00 P. M. to the vicinity of Kasuben for the night.

General Khan Nakhichevansky's cavalry corps, which was reconnoitering in the vicinity of Kovalen, discovered the movement of columns of the I German Corps and 8th Saxon Cavalry Division to Goldap.

He reported in the evening: "The reconnaissance disclosed that this morning, September 11th, the enemy's infantry, together with artillery, was moving along the Graboven-Goldap, Golubien-Goldap and Kovalen-Goldap roads. On the Kovalen-Goldap road, we discovered at 7:00 A. M., near the village of Kozaken, about one brigade of cavalry with artillery, which we engaged. At the same time, I received information that a division of cavalry, with two batteries and one company of cyclists, was moving from Margrabovo

to Philipovo. I had twice sent an officer to Goldap to communicate the information by telephone, but was informed that it was impossible to reach Goldap. Owing to this new situation, I ordered the engagement near the village of Kosaken to be stopped and decided to move parallel to the enemy's cavalry toward Philipovo. Fearing the envelopment of the army by the enemy's cavalry, I am moving along the southern edge of the Rominten forest. —General Khan Nakhichevansky."

Thus on September 11th, the actions of General Raukh and General Khan Nakhichevansky were again uncoordinated and very indecisive. The same can be said of the XX Russian Corps, which did not advance to Goldap but stayed behind the trenches on the Kleshoven-Havaiten-Tekseln line. Owing to this fact, the German cavalry was master in the vicinity of Goldap and the forest of Rominten, threatening the Russian trains and columns and securing for its infantry entrance into the forest of Rominten.

On September 12th, the First Russian Army retreated to its frontier, not under great pressure, but much restricted by an insufficient number of roads. Trains and columns of about twelve divisions were crowded onto three or four roads to the north of the forest of Rominten, resulting in disorder in some places. The XX Russian Corps held the Tekseln-Tolminkemen line until nightfall. The army cavalry was reconnoitering to the northeast of the forest of Rominten.

The 8th German Cavalry Division, supported by infantry in automobiles and cyclists from the I German Corps, advanced to the north of the forest along the Russian border. In the morning, it dispersed all the trains and parks which were accumulated there, and attacked the columns, which retreated in great disorder and reached the Shaki-Dopenen line.

In the morning, General Khan Nakhichevansky's cavalry corps moved toward Pzherosol. After having discovered the advance of German infantry columns to Piliupnen and Shilkemen through the forest of Rominten, it moved to Vishtinets, where it was met by heavy artillery fire from Meltemen. The Cavalry Corps started a fight with the enemy from position in the vicinity of Bambeln. Germans soon appeared from the south of Shilkemen. Information was received that they were also moving to the east of Vishtinets Lake. General Khan retreated with his corps to the east, watching the enemy all the time.

General Raukh did not develop great resistance to the Germans, but only reconnoitered, staying in the vicinity of the village of Miluinen.

General Rennenkampf had insufficient liaison with his cavalry and was dissatisfied with its work. On the evening of September 12th, he reported to the commander-in-chief of the front: "The forest of Rominten, according to the reports of Khan and Raukh, was free, but now strong columns are moving from that vicinity to the northeast. I have no information from the left flank of my XX Corps. I dismissed the chief of staff of the corps, but I can get no

order through. The II Corps, which suffered great losses, did not inform me of its position. I can give orders only through the III Corps. All these facts force me to order the retreat, but in the direction of Kovno only, as it is probably impossible to go the southern way. The III Corps has received orders to march on Kovno, the XXVI on Srednike. I myself am with the III Corps. At present I am going to Vylkovishki. I have only obscure and retarded reports from Khan and Raukh. I am anxious about my left flank. I cannot get an order through to it.—Rennenkampf."



Cossacks Charging, 1918

The army cavalry stopped for the night as follows: General Raukh in Verzhbolovo and General Khan Nakhichevansky in the vicinity of the village of Kunigishki. On September 13th, the First Russian Army withdrew from East Prussia, most of the trains and units in great disorder owing to the closeness of the pursuit.

On this day the pressure of the Germans was lighter. General Raukh retreated to Pilvishky and General Khan Nakhichevansky to Kalvaria, both to the east.

The Germans did not succeed in organizing a second "Tannenberg," although the losses of the First Russian Army were considerable, especially as almost 80,000 men and about 150 guns disappeared without any trace. The losses in the cavalry were small.

Comments

The First Russian Army was not defeated by the Germans, but was out-flanked from the south, that is, from the zone of the Tenth Russian Army, which was separated from the First Army by the line fixed by General Zhilinsky: southern shore of Lake Leventin-Vidminen-Margrabovo.

If General Rennenkampf had been informed at the proper time that the Tenth Army could not protect its area, he would undoubtedly have moved part of his forces to the left flank and, in particular, would have sent a large part of his numerous cavalry there.

When the dangerous situation of the army became clear to General Rennenkampf, he ordered the retreat to the east and moved the 72d, 54th, 29th and 28th Divisions, General Khan Nakhichevanaky's cavalry corps and the 2d Guard Cavalry Division to the south. This order was too late to save the situation for the First Army, but had it been satisfactorily carried out, the retreat could have been executed in an orderly manner. The occupation and holding of the area: Goldap-Philippovo, which was entirely possible, would have been sufficient.

On September 10th, almost four Russian cavalry divisions had occupied this area before the Germans. The 29th Division, which on this day had traveled only twenty-three kilometers, stopped in the vicinity of Havaiten, only ten kilometers from Goldap. The 54th Division, which had marched only fourteen kilometers, received orders to move in a direction which was different from that of the 29th Division. On September 10th, the 54th and 29th Divisions could have occupied without difficulty the area: Kozaken-Goldap, whence the 54th Division was only twenty-five kilometers distant.

The dangerous situation of the First Russian Army, its disorder and great losses, were created, in general, not by victories of the Germans in battle, but by errors of command in the Russian armies, especially in the XX Corps and the army cavalry, which were assigned to protect the flank. All the troops assigned to this mission should have been united and General Rennenkampf himself should have arrived and commanded them.

Divisional and Corps Cavalry

In the beginning of the operations, the infantry divisions of the First Russian Army were practically without divisional cavalry, as the squadrons of the frontier guard, as well as the second reserve cossacks, were entirely incapable of fulfilling the duties of divisional cavalry in modern war.

During the second period of operations, cossack regiments of the second reserve arrived for each corps, but they were not much better. Infantry divisions and corps maneuvered with their eyes shut as they had only poor information of the enemy or none at all.

Conclusion

During the period of the operations in East Prussia in 1914, none of the classes of Russian cavalry (army, corps or division) fulfilled what was expected from them. They did not give information of the enemy infantry at the proper time, did not hold important localities until the arrival of the infantry, did not fight successful actions either on the flanks or in the rear of the enemy, and did not even protect satisfactorily the flanks of its own infantry, in many cases.

The poor result was due, not to the fact that conditions of war in 1914 did not allow the cavalry to perform its mission, but to a series of other reasons, the most important of which was the inefficiency of a great number of high cavalry commanders. We say today that a unit has a value equal to that of its commander. This fact was always true as regards cavalry.

The tragedy of the Russian Empire was due to the reigning regime of protectionism and class individualism which elevated, at the hour of her greatest trial, to responsible posts of command men who, in general, were insufficiently prepared or not at all fitted for modern warfare. These men were confused from the beginning by the conditions of modern warfare. The conditions were not understood by them and they exercised their command by passivity and avoidance of military action. A contrary action was necessary. Some of the commanders could not even endure the privations of the war, owing to their physical condition.

Another important reason, which made the difficult situation of the unfit cavalry commanders still more difficult, consisted in poor preparation of the Russian cavalry for dismounted fighting. This preparation was necessary to perform its mission successfully, but the cavalry could not overcome the resistance of even weak outposts and separate groups. It must be admitted, however, that the Russian cavalry was well armed and had rifles, machine guns and cannon which were as good as those of the infantry. Especially unsatisfactory were the cossacks which, even after the first encounters, avoided entering into the zone of fire. Cavalry work could be done only under such conditions.

The opinion that the morale of the Russian cavalry was poor cannot be considered correct. The spirit in 1914 was very high. Russian cavalry soldiers and officers were in a heroic state of mind and ready for quick and decisive action, which was proved by the battle of Kranishken, the marches to Vormdit and Allenstein, and by all the long and uninterrupted work during the whole operation of more than one month. The latter was nearly valueless, but only owing to the poor application of their efforts.

What conclusions can be drawn from the work of the cavalry during the operations in East Prussia in 1914 in the light of the facts mentioned above? Can cavalry still operate successfully in modern war? Has it lost its importance?

Cavalry will unquestionably preserve its importance under the conditions of 1914. These conditions will continue for a long time in Eastern Europe, Asia and probably, in many places, in America.

There are two reasons for the difficulty of using cavalry in modern war:

1. Development of heavy fire (tactical difficulty).
2. Restriction of manoeuvre, due to the great number of fortifications built quickly on the battlefields (strategical difficulty).

The first reason does not allow mounted action, but it cannot be considered a death sentence to cavalry. The cavalryman must be trained to fight on foot. Where the enemy's fire is not very strong, cavalry can still maintain its force and its power of action. That was true during the whole operation in East Prussia in 1914 and will often occur again in battles of maneuver.

The second reason makes the maneuvering of cavalry, hence its use, impossible. We must agree that as soon as position warfare begins not much can be done by cavalry. But we must not forget that position warfare is, in reality, a temporary stabilisation of forces and a delay of operations only. War cannot be successfully brought to an end without breaking through the fortified positions and maneuvering. In a very near future, means will probably be found, by using gas and tanks, to open quickly a way through fortified positions to permit maneuvering of troops.

Thus it is too early for burying cavalry, but it needs modernization; that is, it must be provided with technical means for fighting successfully with infantry in open warfare.

Cavalry assigned to an army must be provided, in addition to the rifle and hand grenade, with light machine guns, heavy machine guns, accompanying guns, tanks and artillery. It must be trained to use these weapons in battle.

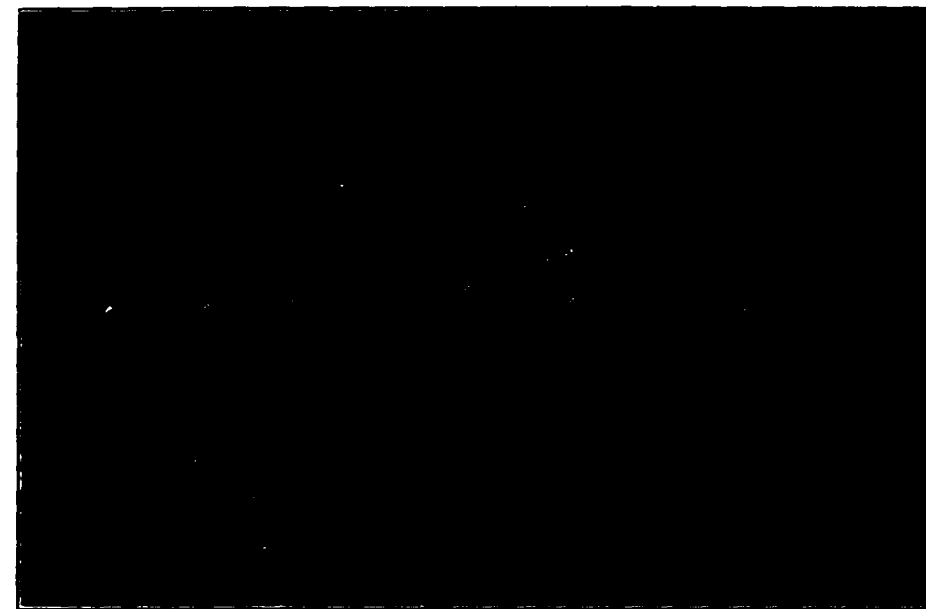
Divisional cavalry (or corps cavalry) will have to change its aspect more. It will not need the mobility of army cavalry, but it must be provided with more security against the enemy's fire. A great number of horses will be a nuisance to it. Thus it will develop into reconnaissance detachments in which, in addition to cavalry squadrons, cyclists, tanks and all kinds of motor cars and motor cycles must be used.

The East Prussian campaign of 1914 showed another important fact. Cavalry can be useful only with a well organized liaison with army staffs and in close co-operation with the neighboring infantry units.

The result would have been entirely different if, in the battles of August 17th and 20th, General Khan Nakhichevansky's corps had had a well organized liaison with General Rennenkampf and the latter had been capable of pointing out its mission on the day of battle. The same is true during the retreat from East Prussia.

If cavalry, in the course of an operation, is too far from the staff of the army, it is better to make it subordinate to the commander of the nearest infantry unit. The operations of the Russians would have been more successful, if the cavalry groups of Generals Khan, Raukh and Oranovsky had, on August 20th and later in September, been placed under the commander of the XX Corps, General Smirnov.

— o —

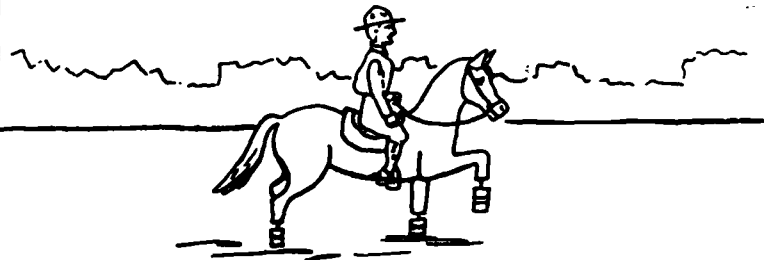


The Late Major General Leonard Wood

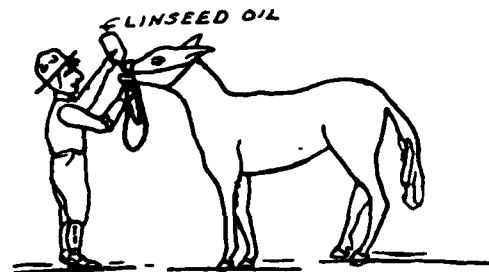
General Wood, in his early days, fought with our Cavalry in the West, commanded the famous mounted rough riders in the Spanish-American War, and all his life was an ardent advocate of horseback riding and mounted sports.

OFFICIAL REPORT OF A CAVALRY (With Apologies)

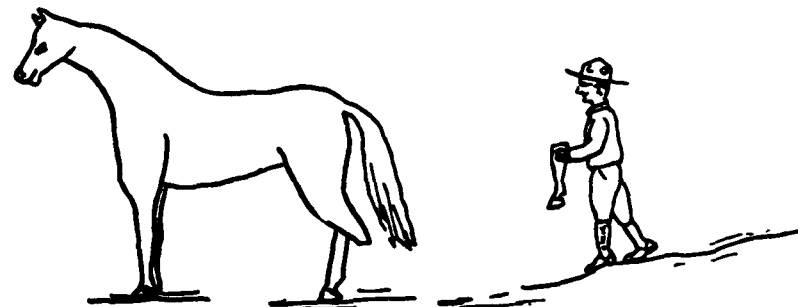
The brigade covered a total of 236,664 HORSE MILES, without the loss of a single unit of transportation.



Over 99% were hitting on all four cylinders.

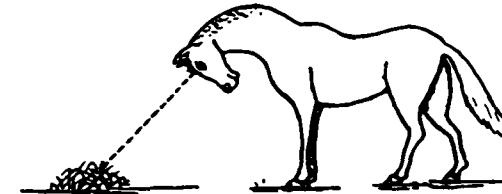


Less than 1/2 of 1% required removal of excess carbon.

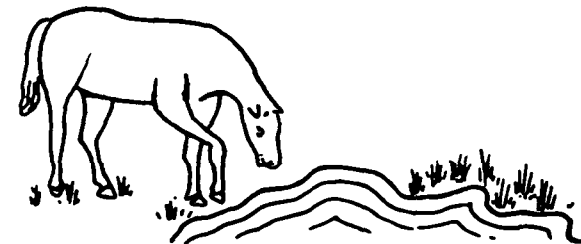


None required spare parts

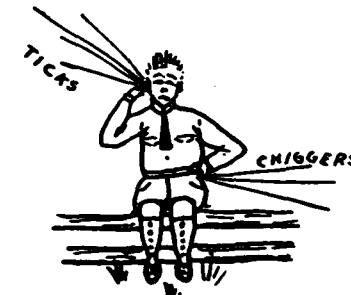
PRACTICE MARCH AND MANEUVER To the Air Corps)



In spite of the fact that local fuel was used.



And frequent replenishment of water was necessary.



The enemy was located in large numbers.



COLONEL "TOMMY" RETIRES

By

Lieutenant G. L. Brittingham, Seventh Cavalry

COLONELS WILL COME and colonels will go, but Colonel Tompkins will go on forever. Selah R. H. Tompkins is the name carried on the War Department records, but to his vast number of army acquaintances this brusque, but kind, outstanding character is lovingly known as "Tommy."

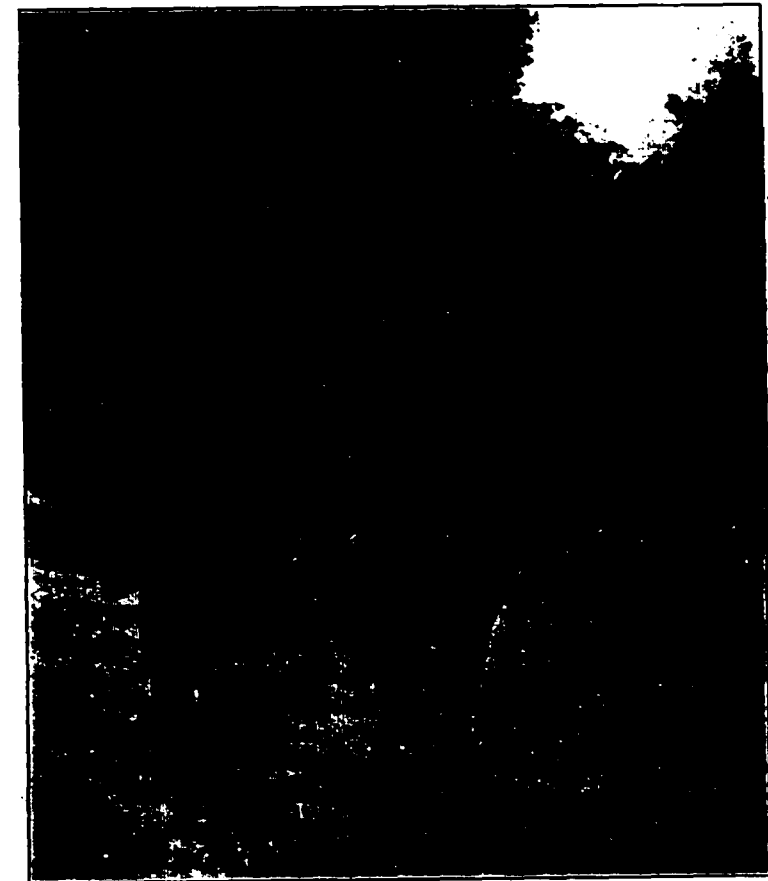
In the spring of 1893, Lieutenant Tompkins was transferred to the Seventh Cavalry, with assignment to Troop "D." In 1892, he was transferred to Troop "B" of the Seventh Cavalry and remained in this troop until his transfer to Troop "G" in 1901, at which time he received his captaincy. For ten years he served in this troop as troop commander, without a single property turn-over. When he did turn the property over, as he expressed it: "Damn if I wasn't \$117.00 short." In 1911, he received his majority, and the First Squadron of the Seventh was given to him to command.

In January, 1914, Major Tompkins was transferred to the Fifth Cavalry, and commanded the First Squadron until his transfer back to the Seventh in March, 1916. As a lieutenant colonel, he joined his old regiment in Mexico. July, 1916, came his colonelcy, which found him commanding the regiment he had joined as a "shave-tail" back in '86. He thus acquired for himself the proud and unique record of being the only officer in the history of the service who had held every grade from second lieutenant to colonel in one regiment.

The War Department granted him the privilege of serving his last week before retirement with his first and only love, "The Garry Owens." Daily, Colonel Tompkins "mounted up" and made the rounds of the regiment, then gave his horse two or three hours' exercise. On one of these rides, a small buckle on his bridle was lost. At the time, he was not even near "G" Troop, but he insisted that he return to the troop and have the buckle replaced. He did, and the excited but pleased saddler did a quick and excellent piece of work. When he had finished, Colonel Tompkins proceeded to give the saddler a real old-fashioned "bawling out." The surprised and startled saddler

626

snapped to attention and took his medicine like a soldier. When Colonel Tompkins had finished about five minutes' "cussing," without using the same word twice, he laughed, informed the saddler that he did not mean a word of it, thanked him, and rode away. The adjutant, who was accompanying him, ventured to inquire the reason for the "bawling out" he had just administered to the saddler. The Colonel informed him that he just wanted to go back to "G" Troop, which he had commanded for ten years, and give one more "G" trooper "hell" before he retired.



Colonel "Tommy" Tompkins

On Sunday morning the famous old "Garry Owen" regiment passed in review before their own Colonel "Tommy." The review over, Colonel Tompkins assumed command of the regiment, and put it through a few final evolutions on the drill field, to wind up, as he expressed it, his army career leading his old regiment.

The division commander had sent his car down to be used by the colonel for transportation off the post. Colonel Tompkins walked out of his quarters, presumably to enter the waiting automobile. Through his practically tear-blinded eyes he could not possibly have seen much of anything, but on his way to the car his riderless horse came under his gaze. He paused for just a second, and said: "Hell, I'm going out as a cavalryman should—with my head and tail in the air." And he did, mounted.

In his will, Colonel Tompkins has provided for a fund to pay the expenses of a Seventh Cavalry trumpeter to come to the place of his burial, wherever it may be, and blow taps over his grave.

THE NICE HORSESHOW

By

Captain A. W. Roffe, Cavalry

THE SEVENTH INTERNATIONAL MILITARY HORSESHOW at Nice was held from April 16th to 30th, 1927. Every performance was well attended by an enthusiastic, interested throng that was ever ready and willing to give generous applause for the many excellent performances given. The spectators were even more international than the competitors.

The setting of the show could hardly be improved upon. Little need be said concerning Nice itself, which is generally known as one of the loveliest spots of all Europe. The show grounds are on the outskirts of Nice in the direction of Cannes and on the main automobile route and the trolley line between the two cities, about five minutes by auto or taxi from the center of Nice. During a lull in the performance, without leaving his seat in the stand, one can see clearly dozens of craft on the Mediterranean, ranging in size from the little pleasure boats with a low white sail to the ocean liners.

The interior arrangement is equally as good as the location. The arena proper is amply large for any kind of a course one might desire, and the footing is excellent. It contains six fixed obstacles, three water jumps and three embankments. The stands extend along both sides and one end of the arena. They are semi-permanent, with a seating capacity of five or six thousand. In the promenades in front of the elevated stands there is standing room for another five thousand. Doctors and veterinarians with necessary attendants and supplies are always present a few feet in rear of the General's box.

Teams participate only upon invitation of the Horseshow committee, which renders substantial aid, financial and otherwise, in the transportation to and from Nice, and provides shelter and food for both personnel and animals while there.

The prizes are generous and attractive. Some classes have cash prizes only, some trophies only; and a few have both cash prizes and trophies. Ribbons for the riders and plates for the horses are given for the first ten or twelve places of all classes where no special entrance conditions are imposed,

and for the first five or six places of the restricted classes. Certain entrance conditions are imposed from day to day with a view to giving every horse and rider a chance to win some event, and preventing one or two good horses carrying away all the prizes. This principle is often disregarded in our American shows, but in my opinion it is one of the secrets of the tremendous popularity of the Nice show.

Eight countries were represented, there being teams from Belgium, England, France, Holland, Italy, Poland, and Spain, and an individual competitor from Mexico. No attempt will be made here to enumerate the winners, which would be meaningless and uninteresting without a description of the courses and the obstacles. It appeared to me that fortune favored no single individual nor team unduly, and in nearly every class each team had a representative among the winners.

The horses could be graded from fair to excellent on conformation. As a whole, it appeared to me the English mounts stood out well above the rest, but the Spanish and Italian teams were also well mounted. Many of the Spanish string were Irish bred animals, which invariably possessed inherent jumping ability and plenty of courage. All horses showed jumping ability, but in a few cases lack of experience was plainly evident.

The Polish team evidenced most uniformity in the position of the riders, all being well forward with comparatively short stirrups and very short reins. The English team showed most uniformity in the position where the rider sits flat in the saddle with long stirrups and very long reins. The French team showed the widest divergence of position; two rode in the extreme forward position, one in the extreme rear position, the others ranging between the two extremes. The Belgian and Dutch teams also lacked uniformity as to position. The Italian and Spanish teams were quite uniform in a position slightly less forward than the Poles. Riders of both extreme and medium positions won prizes, so again the advocates of both positions can find proof of their contentions.

It might be interesting to mention the fact that nearly all the English riders followed Colonel Brooke's suggestion and used standing (tie-down) martingales. When everything went well and the horse measured his stride accurately for the take-off, it worked well enough, but, as might be expected, when the horse found himself in trouble he never recovered without a fault because he was denied the freedom of his head and neck.

In ability to conduct and control their horses in the ring, it appeared the Poles showed to the best advantage. Their ability to "place" their horses for the take-off was frequently in evidence; they had few run-outs or refusals; their horses approached the obstacles collected and well in hand and jumped from their haunches, rather than from their momentum.

The ring contains six fixed obstacles, three banks, and three water jumps. Besides these there was every kind of artificial obstacle it is possible to make from hedges, panels, walls, gates, and poles, used separately or in combination.

They were rarely under four nor over five feet high, and obstacles with both height and width could be found in every course. Many of the courses were very irregular and a real test for the willingness and handiness of the horse; some were so irregular and complicated that, besides being a test for the horse, they were a memory test for the rider as well.

The score keeping system is a little unusual. It is done by a jury composed of a general, the Mayor of Nice, and a representative of each competing team (if one is present). A judge at each obstacle records the score (penalty), if any, in writing and sends it by runner to the jury stand, where each member keeps an individual score sheet and has the opportunity to examine every slip sent in by the judges. The jury can also see each obstacle quite clearly. Though somewhat tedious, the method appears to put the accuracy and fairness of the score keeping above any possible question of doubt.

CHISWELL KILLED

WORD HAS BEEN RECEIVED from Fort Riley, Kan., that Chiswell, one of the Army's most famous horses, was injured in a collision with an automobile and subsequently destroyed. The accident occurred while the veteran horse was being led on exercise. Chiswell's death removes from the horse ranks of the cavalry an animal well known both in the Army and out, by virtue of his long record of splendid performances here and abroad.

Foaled in Virginia in 1905, Chiswell was purchased in 1911, by Maj. Gen. Henry T. Allen at a cost of \$300 as one of six horses presented to the government by prominent civilians for use in international horse shows. He was trained by Colonel Guy V. Henry.

Chiswell justified his purchase by a record of winnings that began at once. In 1911 he won classes in the National Capital Horse Show, Washington, D. C., and the National Horse Show, New York. He was taken to London in 1911 and to the Olympic games in Stockholm, Sweden, in 1912. Upon his return to this country and during the next few years he won numerous ribbons in various shows throughout this country. Again in 1920, Chiswell was taken abroad to the Olympic games and while in Europe participated in shows in Cologne and Coblens. From 1921 to 1925 he was a member of the string of horses ridden by the cavalry school team in various shows throughout the country. During this time he headed the list of school horses and was ridden by the director of horsemanship. Two years ago Chiswell at the age of 20 was retired for old age to the school pastures at Fort Riley, Kan.

THE RETIRING SECRETARY-TREASURER-EDITOR

LIEUTENANT COLONEL W. V. MORRIS, CAVALRY, who has been the Secretary and Treasurer of the Cavalry Association and the Editor of the Cavalry Journal since July, 1924, has been relieved of these duties to become a student at the Army War College.

His incumbency of this position has been marked by a strictly business-like regime in the stewardship of the affairs of the Association, during which a small but safe reserve fund has been built up, and by a scholarly editorship of the Cavalry Journal. Probably his most important contribution to the latter is the publication of a series of articles on Custer's last fight on the Little Big Horn, which assures the preservation of the history of this important episode to posterity.



Lieutenant Colonel W. V. Morris

At the last annual meeting of the Association, Colonel Morris and General Malin Craig, the retiring President, were extended a vote of thanks for the efficient and masterly manner in which they had conducted the affairs of the Association.

AMERICAN LEGION CONVENTION AT FORT RILEY

THE 9TH ANNUAL CONVENTION of the Kansas Department, American Legion, was held at Fort Riley, July 25-27. This is the first American Legion Convention ever held on an Army post. It brought the largest and most enthusiastic delegation that has ever attended a Kansas convention. Two hundred pyramidal tents were set up on the lower parade ground for the accommodation of the visitors. Electric light, iron beds, and bedding were

provided. The mess was operated in the East Riding Hall by the 9th Cavalry. The arrangements of the kitchen, in the sand ring adjacent to the riding hall, and of the mess hall were outstanding features of the camp. The total absence of flies from the riding hall astonished the visitors. At reveille each morning one of the regimental bands paraded through the streets of the camp playing the old war tunes, opening each day's program with enthusiasm. Convention meetings were held in the War Department Theatre. A horse show was given one evening in the West Riding Hall and a boxing card another evening in the theatre.

Most of the legionnaires had served at Camp Funston during the war and felt as though they were coming back home. The renewal of Army associations after nine years was most pleasant and the reaction of this convention throughout Kansas will be most favorable to The Cavalry School and to the Army for many years.

JAPANESE OLYMPIC TEAM

FOUR CAVALRY OFFICERS of the Imperial Japanese Army will represent Japan in the riding events at the next year's World Olympic to be held at Amsterdam. This is the first time Japan has been represented in such an event, but the character and ability of the men selected to represent the nation will insure keen competition for the representatives of other countries.



Lieutenant Colonel Yusa on Misemur

The following officers will represent Japan, all being instructors at the Cavalry School: Lieutenant Colonel Kohei Yusa, Major Kohichi Okada, Major Shunso Kido, Captain Shigetomo Yoshida. The above team was selected after a series of try-outs in Tokyo under the supervision of the War Department. All four are outstanding horsemen in the cavalry service.

Lieutenant Colonel Yusa is considered the best horseman in Japan. The first Japanese cavalryman to graduate at Saumur, he has devoted practically his whole time since 1909 as an instructor in riding at the cavalry school. To the energy, enthusiasm, and ability of Lieut. Col. Yusa is chiefly due the remarkable progress in horsemanship of the Japanese cavalry during recent years. He has an enviable war record and was decorated with the Order of the Golden Kite for service as a lieutenant of cavalry during the Russo-Japanese War, this Order being given only for exceptional bravery in action.

Major Okada is Lieut. Col. Yusa's closest rival for honors in horsemanship. He has been an instructor at the cavalry school since 1920, at the same time being on duty in the army remount bureau. His work in the show-ring is considered most excellent, there being little to choose between him and Lieut. Col. Yusa.



Major Kido on Jiho

Major Kido has been an instructor at the cavalry school since 1914. He is well-known in France and Italy, and in 1924 won third prize in one of the events in Paris, competing against the best horsemen of France. He is especially good at the hurdles, but will take part in all open events at Amsterdam.

Captain Yoshida holds the record in high hurdles in Japan and much is expected of him in his specialty at Amsterdam. He has cleared two meters in the high hurdles and 4.6 meters in broad hurdles.

SUPPORT OF THE ASSOCIATION

ACCORDING to Article III of the Constitution, the aim and purpose of the Cavalry Association is to disseminate knowledge of the military art and science, to promote the professional improvement of its members and to preserve and foster the spirit, the traditions, and the solidarity of the Cavalry of the Army of the United States.

This aim and purpose is fulfilled by the publication of the Cavalry Journal, the official organ of the Association, and by the financial and other support of various activities of interest to the cavalry, such as endurance rides, horse shows, race meets, polo tournaments and rifle teams, and by otherwise promoting the general interest of the cavalry.

It is evident that little or nothing can be done without the co-operation, both moral and financial, of all the members of the Association.

The Association's chief sources of income are dues and subscriptions, advertisements in the Journal, and the sale of books and magazine subscriptions.

About 85% of the regular cavalry officers are members of the Association; all should be members. About 40% of the National Guard cavalry officers are members; at least double this percentage should be members. About 15% of the reserve cavalry officers are members; at least 50% should be members. There should be several times the present number of advertisers in the Journal. Many times the present number of book sales and magazine subscriptions could be handled.

Every regular cavalry officer should consider himself, ex officio, a representative of the Association. Those officers on duty with the National Guard and Reserves, especially, can assist by securing both new members and advertisers. It would be a great help to the Association if every member purchased all his books and magazines through the Association and saw to it that Regular, National Guard and Reserve organizations did the same.

With little support from its members, the Association is bound to fail for lack of funds; with about the present support, it will remain in about its present condition; with complete co-operation, it would flourish and become of the greatest possible service to the cavalry!

A SADDLE BOX

By

First Lieut. P. McD. ROBINETT

PROBABLY EVERY CAVALRY OFFICER has one saddle or more, besides various other articles of horse equipment. Because of frequent changes of station and occasional trips to horse shows or polo tournaments, he is always in need of a convenient box, or boxes, in which to pack this equipment. Even when an officer already has a box in which to pack his equipment, it is doubtful if he is satisfied with it, especially at the time of unpacking. It is usually one's luck to find the particular piece of equipment desired at the very bottom of the box.

Somewhere around the circuit of eastern horse shows there was seen a saddle box, which suggested the box here proposed. It can be constructed to accommodate any number of saddles and make it possible to remove any saddle without delay.

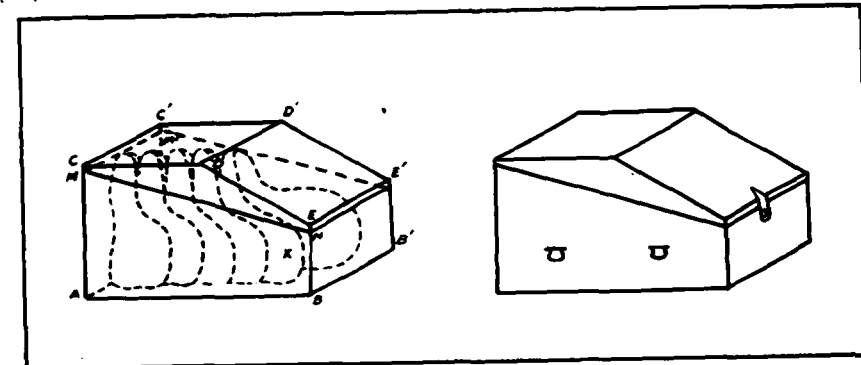
If greater accuracy is desired, a packing plan can be arranged, typed, and

tacked to the inside of the lid, which will make it possible for an orderly to take out any piece of equipment at a moment's notice.

Such a box was used by the Olympic Equestrian Team of 1924. It was designed to hold the saddles of eight officers. After this box was adopted, the enlisted man in charge of "tack" was saved a great deal of time in packing and unpacking the team's equipment.

Method of measuring equipment for the saddle box:

Assemble the saddles, resting on the pommels, the saddles pressed well up against each other on a table.



AC—Height of saddles plus 1 inch for padding.

AB—Distance between the intersection of a line dropped perpendicularly from the cantle of the saddle to the surface of the table and the extremity of the skirt of the saddle marked x.

CD—Width of the assembled saddles at cantles.

EB—Width of the saddle skirts at the widest points.

BB'—Width of the assembled saddles from outside skirt to outside skirt. The skirts should be well pressed together before making this measurement.

The bottom AB' and the rear end AC' should be padded with felt or other suitable material.

The corners of the box should be reinforced with metal and the inside of the lid, which opens along the line MN, should have a small strip of metal screwed to either side so that it will fit well down inside of the box and prevent the lid from slipping.

Two one-eighth inch hinges should be used to secure the lid along the line MM'. These hinges will have to be properly seated and bent to be accommodated to the box.

Two casket handles should be seated and screwed to each side of the box and a hasp for padlock should be attached to the front.

In packing the box, the saddles should be placed into position first and the girths, saddle bags, pommel pockets, bridles, stirrups, etc., then arranged around them.

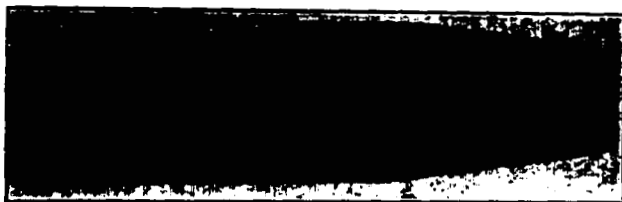
THE CAVALRY JOURNAL

MACHINE RIFLE COMPENSATOR

By

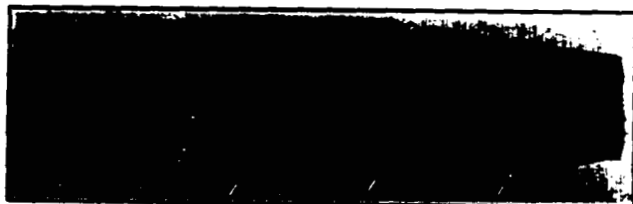
Lieut. G. B. HUDSON, 3rd Cavalry

THE USE of a device known as a "compensator" for reducing the climb and lateral vibration of the Browning Machine Rifle, has recently been demonstrated by Colonel Richard M. Cutts of the Marine Corps, its inventor. The compensator promises to make the machine rifle a more effective weapon by changing it into a gun capable of firing bursts of automatic fire with as much accuracy as the machine gun.



Side View

It is attached to the muzzle of the piece by being screwed on like the flash hider, and is a hollow cylinder made of chrome nickel steel about three and a quarter inches long, with the front end tapering so that its diameter at the front end is about two-thirds its diameter at the rear end. There are three lateral slits in the top of the rear end and five lateral slits in each side of the front half. These slits are about an eighth of an inch wide and are cut through the wall of the cylinder at an angle from front to rear.



Top View

Since the compensator tapers from the middle toward the front end, the gases of explosion are confined and forced out of the slits causing a downward reaction, and two lateral reactions toward each side in opposite directions. The climb is counteracted by the downward reaction and the piece is steadied by the lateral reactions, thus reducing the cone of dispersion to approximately the same size as that made by the Browning Machine Gun. The device also enables the piece to be fired automatically in bursts of three to five shots from a standing position, which will make the machine rifle useful against airplanes. It will work on the automatic rifle the same as it does on the machine rifle.



CAVALRY DIVISIONS AND CORPS

THE WAR DEPARTMENT has recently announced the formation of two new cavalry divisions, the 2d and 3d, and of the designation of a cavalry corps. No changes in troop stations are involved.

The 1st Cavalry Division will remain organized and located about as at present.

The 2d Cavalry Division is to be located strategically in the middle west with headquarters at Fort Riley, Kansas. It will be composed of the 3d and 4th Cavalry Brigades. The 3d Cavalry Brigade will consist of the 2d Cavalry now at Fort Riley, the 4th Cavalry now at Fort Meade, South Dakota, and the 3d Machine Gun Squadron to be formed from the machine gun troop now at Fort Riley. The 4th Cavalry Brigade will consist of the 12th Cavalry at Fort Brown, Texas, the 14th Cavalry at Fort Des Moines, Iowa, and Fort Sheridan, Illinois, and the 4th Machine Gun Squadron to be formed also from the machine gun troop at Fort Riley. The Division Headquarters, the Division Headquarters Troop, the Division Signal Troop, the Division Engineers, and the 8th Pack Train will be formed from personnel and units now on duty at Fort Riley. Other divisional units will be the 4th Field Artillery Battalion (pack) now at Fort McIntosh, Texas, the 14th Ordnance Company at Warrervliet Arsenal, the 5th, 6th and 7th Pack Trains now on the border, and the 16th Observation Squadron, and the 9th Photo Section, Air Corps, now at Fort Riley. The 2d Medical Squadron will be formed from medical department personnel at Fort Leavenworth, Kansas, the 27th and 28th Wagon Companies from personnel of the Service Detachment (colored) at Fort Leavenworth, and the 2d Cavalry Division Quartermaster Train Headquarters from quartermaster personnel now at Fort Leavenworth. There will also be an inactive tank company, designated the 12th.

The bulk of the 2d Cavalry Division will thus be located fairly close to Fort Riley, where much of the mobilization activities of the division are centered. It will be composed of units, most of which are already existent or which can be rapidly formed from existing units. The 3d Cavalry Brigade, especially, can be concentrated rapidly without reduction of the troops on the border and near large centers of population.

The 3d Cavalry Division will consist of the 5th Cavalry Brigade to be composed of the 10th and 11th Cavalry Regiments at Fort Huachuca, Arizona and the Presidio of Monterey, California, respectively, on or near the West coast, and the 6th Cavalry Brigade composed of the 3d and 6th Cavalry Regiments at Fort Myer, Virginia, and Fort Ethan Allen, Vermont, and Fort Oglethorpe, Georgia, respectively, on or near the East coast. Practically all the auxiliary troops will be designated inactive units.

All existing active cavalry regiments, except the 9th and the 13th, both on special duty at Fort Riley, will thus be assigned to cavalry divisions.

The cavalry corps, which is as yet less definite in organization than the divisions, will be effective only in time of war, and will probably consist of all three cavalry divisions, a small corps headquarters, and only those corps troops which will be needed under all conditions of warfare and which cannot be obtained from Army Headquarters.

MARCH AND REORGANIZATION OF THE THIRTEENTH CAVALRY

THE THIRTEENTH CAVALRY has just completed one of the longest marches made by any regiment, either mounted or dismounted, during recent years. The march was in connection with the permanent change of station of the regiment from Fort D. A. Russell, Wyoming, to the Cavalry School at Fort Riley, Kansas.

In addition to the length of this march—625 miles—there were a number of unusual incidents connected with it. The march was made from a cool climate of 6000 feet altitude to the hot Kansas plains of 1000 feet. The regiment, approximately 325 strong, had about 150 lead horses. Many troopers, therefore, had an extra horse to lead and care for. The surplus animals had been in pasture and were soft.

In order to harden horse and man and to acclimatize them to the great change of air and temperature the first marches were made comparatively short. After the rolling terrain of Nebraska was reached and, before the weather became too warm, the daily march was lengthened. From about the time the regiment entered Kansas the starting schedule was again followed. Marches averaged a trifle over 25 miles per day.

No marching was done on Sundays nor on the Fourth of July. These days were spent in resting animals and men, going over equipment, and in recreational activities.

The morale of the command was high due to the plans and preparations for the daily marches and camps. There was little dust and camp sites were

selected with care. The behavior of the civilian population did much to foster this morale. All communities not only displayed flags and bunting, but officially and personally were most appreciative of the troops and most hospitable.

The regiment was commanded by Colonel H. R. Richmond who, upon arrival at Fort Riley, turned over the command to the new regimental commander, Colonel Aubrey Lippincott.

The Thirteenth Cavalry has just recently been reorganized from the strength and composition as given by normal tables of organization to the following:

Headquarters and Band; 1st Squadron, consisting of Troops "A" and "B"; 2nd Squadron, consisting of Troops "E" and "F"; and a Machine Gun Troop (formerly 1st Machine Gun Troop). The peace strength table of organization is 33 officers and 690 enlisted men. The recruiting strength is 26 officers and 539 enlisted men.

The most radical changes from normal tables of organization are as follows: The addition of the machine gun troop, the squadron of two troops of 113 enlisted each, the elimination of the service troop, and the elimination of the wire section from the communications platoon. Two of the minor changes are the practical elimination of squadron headquarters and the addition of a major to regimental headquarters to discharge the duties of R-2 and R-3.

It will be noted that a great deal of the overhead of the normal regiment is eliminated, thus making a relatively strong combat regiment. Members of the regiment are enthusiastic over the new organization and are anxious to begin work with it in tactical training.

FIRST CAVALRY DIVISION MANEUVERS

AFTER AUTHORITY had been granted by the War Department for the 1st Cavalry Division to hold maneuvers in the vicinity of Marfa, Texas, the question of securing permission to use the necessary land and water in the contemplated maneuver area was a serious one. Some ranchmen gave permission to use their ranches without restrictions, others gave permission for passage of troops only, while a few refused permission to use their land under any conditions. The general feeling among the ranch owners was that, if heavy rains had not fallen by the middle of August, there would not be sufficient available water for the division.

Up to the middle of August, very little rain had fallen in the maneuver area; the country was very dry and grass was scarce. Under those conditions ranch owners were very loath to have troops maneuver over their ranches and definite plans for the maneuvers could not be made. However by the 15th of August, arrangements were made so that at least limited maneuvers could be held and definite plans made.

One company of the 25th Infantry, consisting of three officers and about one hundred enlisted men proceeded by truck from Camp Harry J. Jones, Douglas, Arizona, to Fort Bliss to garrison that post during the absence of the division. One troop of the 10th Cavalry proceeded by marching from Fort Huachuca, Arizona, to Fort Bliss and accompanied the division on maneuvers to furnish horses and orderlies for visitors. A detachment from the 2d Division at Fort Sam Houston was sent to Fort Clark to garrison that post

during the absence of the Cavalry Brigade. The 12th Observation Squadron, consisting of about five planes, was attached to the division for the maneuvers.

The entire 1st Cavalry Division concentrated in the vicinity of Marfa by marching. The division (less the 1st Cavalry Brigade) marched in two columns from Fort Bliss, leaving on September 10th and 11th. The 1st Cavalry Brigade (less the 1st Cavalry) started from Fort Clark on September 4th and the entire brigade, reinforced, concentrated at Camp Marfa on September 18th.

Maneuvers of reinforced brigade operating against reinforced brigade began on September 20th, with brigades starting about twenty miles apart; the maneuvers continued for five days and ended with the division concentrated on Alamito Creek about forty miles south of Marfa.

From September 26th to 29th, inclusive, division field exercises were conducted which included the march to Marfa. The division will remain in Marfa until October 4th, during which time a division review will be held, the remainder of the time being devoted to recreation and rest preparatory to the return march.

The Fort Bliss troops will leave Marfa on October 4th and 5th, and arrive at Fort Bliss on October 13th and 14th. The Fort Clark troops will leave Marfa on October 4th and arrive at Fort Clark on October 17th.

51ST CAVALRY BRIGADE AT PINE CAMP

THE 51ST CAVALRY BRIGADE, composed of Brigade Headquarters Troop, the 101st Cavalry, with three troops of the 1st Cavalry, attached, and the 51st Machine Gun Squadron, engaged in its tour of field training this year at Pine Camp, N. Y., from June 12th to June 26th, inclusive. The perfect weather during the entire period helped considerably to make the two weeks extremely successful.

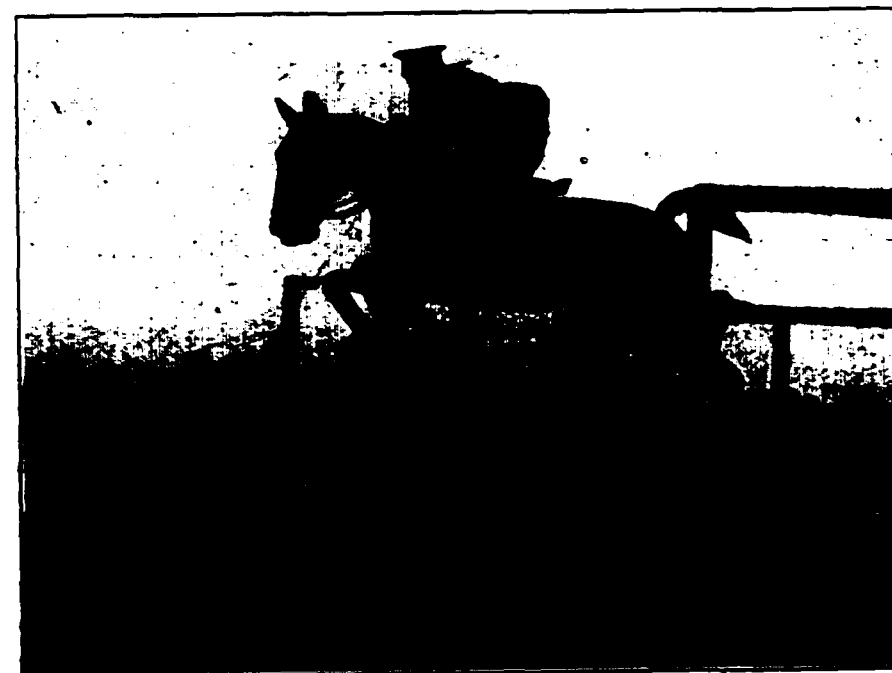
Opportunity to qualify with the saber and pistol, mounted, was offered to more men this year than ever before, due to the construction of three saber and four pistol courses. The number of men who qualified more than justified the additional work made necessary by their construction.

Formal retreat was held each evening, dismounted, the brigade forming on the camp's main thoroughfare, an excellent road running through camp, which made this formation a very impressive one. The entire brigade in line completely filled the road from one end of the camp to the other; a sight long to be remembered.

At the last of these formations, Troop "C," 51st Machine Gun Squadron, was marched to a position in the center of the brigade to receive the Point Trophy from Brigadier General Mortimer D. Bryant, Commanding the 51st Cavalry Brigade. This trophy is given each year to the troop gaining the most points in the Annual Brigade Horse Show.

After inspection and muster on Saturday, June 18th, a review was tendered by the brigade to the Regular Army Instructors of Cavalry; Lieut. Colonel Poillon, Major Clifford, Captain Holman, Captain Besse and Captain Cullinane, in appreciation of their loyal and efficient work with the various units of the brigade.

On Sunday, June 19th, the 51st Machine Gun Squadron, (Squadron A) held their annual hunt in the form of a paper chase. A field of more than one hundred enjoyed a forty-five minute run over ideal country, wonderfully suitable to the occasion, and returned to partake of a delicious hunt breakfast.



Oxford, Sergeant Young (Lieut. Cav. Res.) Up, 51st M. G. Squadron

Contributing to the success of the tour, was the Brigade's Fifth Annual Out-of-Door Horse Show held on Wednesday afternoon, June 22d. The light showers of that morning helped considerably to lay the dust. The judging was of the highest type, it having been the good fortune of the committee to procure the services of five gentlemen who came from considerable distances to co-operate and assist in making the show successful. The various classes in the show are open to officers and enlisted men of the Regular Army, National Guard and Organized Reserves. It is hoped then that there may be more entrants from such organizations in the future than there have been in the past.

The general arrangements of the camp for the comfort of the troops have been greatly improved upon since last year. Combat exercises, squadron and

regimental marches, and field exercises, in general, are made very interesting and pleasant due to the federal reservation of forty square miles of excellent cavalry country. There is no doubt that Pine Camp will soon become an ideal cavalry post.

MARCH OF THE FOURTH CAVALRY FROM FORT D. A. RUSSELL TO FORT MEADE

ORDERS FOR CHANGE of station to Fort Meade, South Dakota, reached the 4th Cavalry (less 1st Squadron) at Fort D. A. Russell, Wyoming, on June 8th.

The departure from Fort Russell was made on the morning of June 16th; the regiment marching northward over the same route it had followed the previous year on its way to Torrington and Douglas and utilizing to some extent the same camp sites. The fourth day's march took us through the city of Torrington, Wyo., where, during the previous September, we had taken part in various events at a county fair. Moving northward from Torrington, we found ourselves on dirt roads, or none at all, through what is called "Goshen Hole," where the heat and humidity were all that legend had led us to believe. Camp was pitched near the southern end of the Rawhide Buttes, after a weary march through a desolate piece of country. Late in the afternoon, shortly after the arrival of our delayed trains, we were visited by an electrical storm which was the worst that we had yet encountered, accompanied by a terrific gale which rased kitchen files and officers' tents indiscriminately, and lightning which seemed to be everywhere. However, we were able to see the silver lining before nightfall, and, but for two men unconscious from the effects of a flash of lightning, we had suffered no ill effects.

We bid farewell to the high plains of Wyoming on the sixth day of our march, passing the Wyoming-Nebraska boundry near Van Tassell. As if to make the change more apparent, we soon encountered a range of low hills covered with "honest-to-goodness" timber, which, after the buffalo-grass of our recent home, was a welcome sight. A short march brought us to Harrison, Nebraska, where camp was pitched.

The next day's march brought us within sight of Fort Robinson, nestled in a beautiful green valley. Never was oasis hailed with greater delight by weary desert travelers; after seven days of lonely ranches and inadequate water tanks, an army post amid such surroundings was a paradise.

Here, amid trees, water, and sunshine, we spent a day devoted principally to bathing, laundry, and rest for men and animals. The officers of the Remount Depot were most kind in placing the facilities of the post at our disposal, and on the day of our stop-over escorted the officers through the depot.

The march was resumed on Friday, the 24th, fortunately a dry day, over gumbo roads which in wet weather would have been well-nigh impassable for our trains. Four days of marching brought us to the Cheyenne River and to

a camp 4 miles south of Hot Springs, on a swiftly flowing stream offering excellent bathing and watering facilities which the hot weather made all the more appreciated. Passing through Hot Springs, we camped the next day just North of Buffalo Gap, a picturesque old cattle town.

Knowing that our next camp, at Hermosa, S. D., would be on the route traveled by President Coolidge between the State Game Lodge and his offices in Rapid City, we half expected that we should have the distinction of meeting him. We arrived at camp about 11:30 A. M., and had just completed pitching shelter tent camp when the President and his party rode into view. After meeting the officers, the President made an informal inspection of camp. On resuming his journey, he expressed himself as well pleased with the condition of the regiment and stated that he would observe it on the march as it passed through Rapid City on the morrow.

Rapid City was reached about 10:30 A. M. on the day following, where the President and Mrs. Coolidge reviewed the regiment from the steps of the High School Building serving as Executive Office. Camp was made at Black Hawk, about 6 miles north of Rapid City, at 12 noon of June 29th. On June 30th, the remaining distance to our new station was covered. The post was approached through the green hills and pastures lying to the south, which were in marked contrast to the barren hills surrounding our Wyoming Home.

Having made a march of approximately 350 miles, leaving behind only two lame animals at Fort Robinson and without a single case of desertion or absence, both officers and men were justly proud.

AERIAL EXPERIENCE FOR CAVALRY OFFICERS

THE CAVALRY SCHOOL is fortunate in having the 7th Division Air Service stationed at Fort Riley. Most of the officers of the post fly for both business and pleasure. During the past year, in compliance with suggestions from the War Department, Major Arnold, commanding the Air Corps troops, prepared a ten hour course in aerial experience for student officers and any other officers who volunteered to take it. Ninety officers started the course and over seventy completed the nine flights. It is believed that this is the most extensive and comprehensive course in flying ever given non-flying officers. There were no accidents. It is expected that the course this year will include an even larger number of students.

Each flight includes a problem so that the student officer is not simply taking a ride. Each problem is marked, under the supervision of the Assistant Commandant, and the student is graded "satisfactory" or "unsatisfactory" at the end of the course. Last year all except six officers completed the course satisfactorily. In addition to the regular course, many of the officers of the combatant branches make flights in connection with the combined training of the Air Corps and the ground troops which is carried on each month.

SQUADRON MARCHES IN THE PHILIPPINES

ON NOVEMBER 20TH, the Second Squadron, Major John B. Thompson, commanding, marched to Camp Seven near Mt. Pinatubo. While here the squadron cleared and repaired the trail west to Camp Nine and east to Camp Five. The squadron returned to Camp Stotsenburg on November 28th.

During the early part of December, the 1st Squadron, Major Thomas H. Rees, Jr., commanding, marched via O'Donnel, Poon Bato, Cabangan (China Sea Coast), Santa Fe and Pinatubo back to Stotsenburg, a distance of 160 miles over a very old interesting trail, rather rough in places. Many of the officers and soldiers climbed Pinatubo while the squadron was camped in that vicinity. The good work of the 2nd Squadron in repairing the trail enabled the 1st Squadron to make the trip.

On April 10th, the 1st Squadron, Major Rees, began a march to Lingayon, then to Baguio, and after camping there 10 days marched back to Camp Stotsenburg. On the march north to Lingayon it was necessary to swim the Agno River near Lingayon. At this point the river was 200 yards wide and twelve feet deep.

Many interesting side trips were made by the officers while at Baguio. Colonel Long and Captain Steiger went through to Bontoo, and to the rice terraces of the Ifugao country at Banaue and return. Major Rees and Captain Gallier followed a trail through Ambukalao and Bokod to the source of the Agno River. Several of the officers climbed to the summit of Mt. Santo Tomas 8000 feet high. The squadron returned to Camp Stotsenburg May 10th.

SUMMER TRAINING BY SEVENTH CAVALRY

THE 7TH CAVALRY handled the training of the reserve officers assigned to the 1st Cavalry Division and also supervised the training of the 111th Cavalry, New Mexico National Guard, commanded by Colonel Norman L. King.

The reserve officers were assigned to the 2nd Squadron, 7th Cavalry, and their training was under the direct supervision of Major R. E. McQuillin. The officers were assigned to the troops as platoon leaders and performed all the daily routine duties required by regular army officers. Their course of instruction culminated in their participation in maneuvers and individual tests of their proficiency. One and all expressed great satisfaction in the training record.

The supervision of the training of the 111th Cavalry was turned over to the 1st Squadron, 7th Cavalry, under Major "Terry" Allen.

The 111th Cavalry was mounted chiefly by the 1st Squadron, 7th Cavalry, the additional mounts required being furnished by the 2nd Squadron, 7th Cavalry, the 8th Cavalry, the 2nd M. G. Squadron and the 8th Engineers. This regiment arrived Sunday, August 14th, 1927. They pitched camp, drew their horses and equipment on the day of their arrival and were ready for routine drill and training at reveille, August 15th.

During their thirteen days' stay the regiment completed their rifle and pistol practice and covered some of the elementary points of troop training. Regimental schools, under the supervision of 7th Cavalry instructors, were conducted to cover troop administration, supply work, saddlery, horseshoeing, care of animals and mess management.

The borrowed horses were returned in as good if not better shape than they were turned over. This very important item of their training was due to the intelligent supervision exacted by Colonel King, and was considerably aided by the fact that each National Guard troop had a 7th Cavalry stable sergeant attached to supervise the care of animals.

In supervising the National Guard training it was the desire of the 7th Cavalry instructors to restrict their supervision to laying out courses of instruction and offering suggestions. The actual execution was handled by the National Guard officers. While mistakes were made, it is believed that greater benefit was derived by permitting the National Guard officers to rely entirely on their own initiative.

The 111th Cavalry is a surprisingly efficient organization considering the conditions they have to work under. In case of emergency they would be a suitable addition to the Army of the United States. Their co-operation and zeal gave excellent proof of the cordial relations now existing between the Regular Army and the National Guard.

MARKSMANSHIP IN THE TWENTY-SIXTH CAVALRY

RECORD PRACTICE in all weapons was completed on June 15th. The results were as follows:

ARM	PERCENTAGE QUALIFIED	REGIMENTAL AVERAGE
Rifle	95.48	283.37
Pistol Dismounted	95	77.95
Pistol Mounted	98.18	98.32
Machine Rifle	100	448.87
Saber	96.2	92.41

Troop G, Captain Pride, won the rifle cup with an average score of 290.3.

This troop also won the Cavenagh Cup for excellence in cavalry weapons, winning:

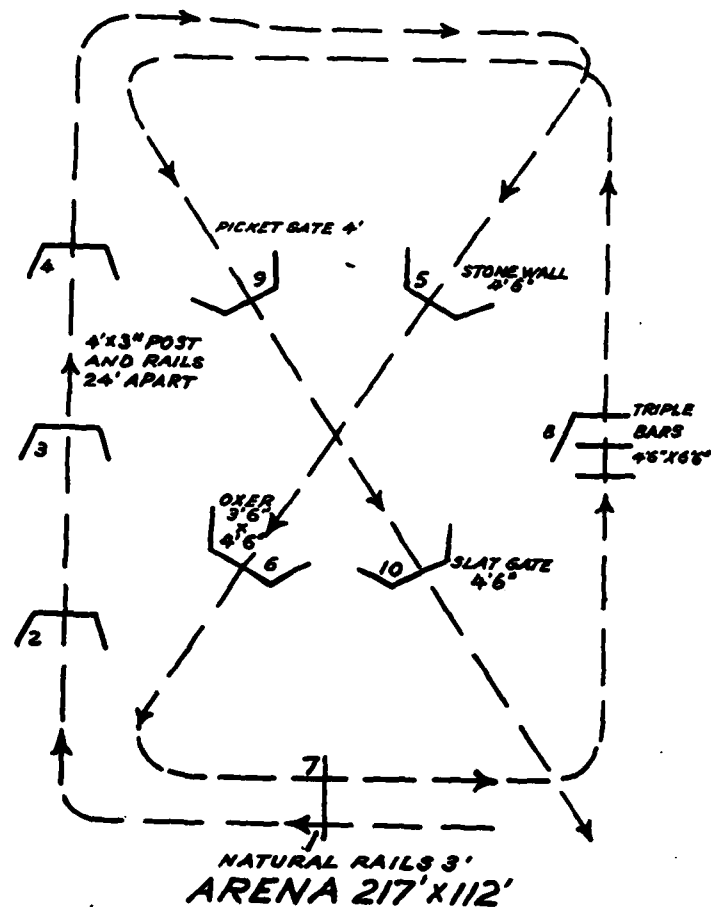
- 1st in rifle, 290.3 average score per man.
- 1st in pistol mounted, 95.50 average score per man.
- 1st in saber, 87.73 average score per man.
- 1st in machine rifle, 465.25 average score per man.

Private 1st Class Tomas Centeno, Troop B, was high rifle shot with a score of 324.

CAVALRY TRY-OUTS FOR ARMY HORSE SHOW TEAM

DURING JULY AND AUGUST, try-outs for candidates for the Army Horse Show Team were held at all regular army cavalry posts in the United States, except the Cavalry School at Fort Riley, Kansas. They were participated in by some forty-five officers, who expressed themselves as desirous of competing for this honor.

The jumping courses over which the tryouts were held were constructed identically at each post and were the same as that used in the International Military Trophy for teams of three at the National Horse Show last year, which was won by Poland, and which is to be used at the same show this fall. It is essentially the Olympia course.



The course is a figure of eight of ten jumps, most of which are from four feet to four and a half feet in height. They include two natural rail jumps, three in-and-out posts and rails, a stone wall, an oxer, triple bar, picket gate and slat gate. "Slips" of pine three feet long, one inch wide and one-quarter inch thick were laid on top of each jump end to end, with one-quarter inch intervals between "slips." Faults were scored about as usual in jumping events.

Two minutes were allowed for completion of the course, two faults being counted for each five seconds over that time. Scoring was on performance only. Each contestant rode twice over the course at an interval of twenty minutes. Five days later the same test was repeated. The second day's score was counted only in case of ties on the first day. The record of each contestant was kept on a specially prepared score card.

The five contestants making the highest scores were as follows:

	RECORD COURSE		
	Total penalties first time around	Total penalties second time around	Aggregate penalties
1. 2d Lt. Robert L. Howse, 8th Cavalry, Fort Bliss, Texas, on "Woodrow" (U. S. Government 71X2, Headquarters Troop, 8th Cavalry)	½	½	1
2. Major J. N. Caperton, Cavalry, U. S. M. A., West Point, N. Y., on "Queen's Own" (U. S. Government 70Z7, Cavalry Detachment, U. S. M. A.)	1	1	2
3. 1st Lt. H. I. Hodek, 4th Cavalry, Fort Meade, S. D., on "Monte Carlo" (Officer's private mount, owned by Lieutenant Hodes)	1	1½	2½
4. Captain J. T. Cole, Cavalry, U. S. M. A., West Point, N. Y., on "Buckaroo" (Officer's private mount, owned by Lieutenant Colonel Pierre Lorillard, Jr., O. R. C.)	2	1½	3½
5. Major R. E. McQuillin, 7th Cavalry, Fort Bliss, Texas, on "Garry Owen" (U. S. Government 17X9, Troop G, 7th Cavalry)	4½	1	5½

The following-named officers also had aggregate penalties of but 5½ each for the record course (first day's tryout):

Captain J. T. Pierce, 5th Cavalry, Fort Clark, Texas, on "Acrobat"
 Captain R. L. Creed, 5th Cavalry, Fort Clark, Texas, on "Bunkie"
 2d Lt. J. B. Wells, 7th Cavalry, Fort Bliss, Texas, on "Buster"

Due to an injury received on the first day's try-out, Captain Pierce was unable to compete in the second day's try-out and was, therefore, eliminated. Captain Creed and Lieutenant Wells each had penalties of 6½ points on the second day (which were not as good as the second day's score made by Major McQuillin, i. e., 1½). Captain Creed and Lieutenant Wells were, therefore, eliminated from the first five.

SIXTH CAVALRY SOUTHERN CIRCUIT POLO CHAMPIONS

A TEAM FROM THE REGIMENT competed in the Southern Circuit Polo Championship Tournament at Winston-Salem, North Carolina, during June. The team was captained by Lient. T. Q. Donaldson, Jr., and under his leadership emerged the victor in the tournament. The following players accompanied the team: Captain M. F. Meador, Lients. Donaldson, Culton, Ladue and Ireland.

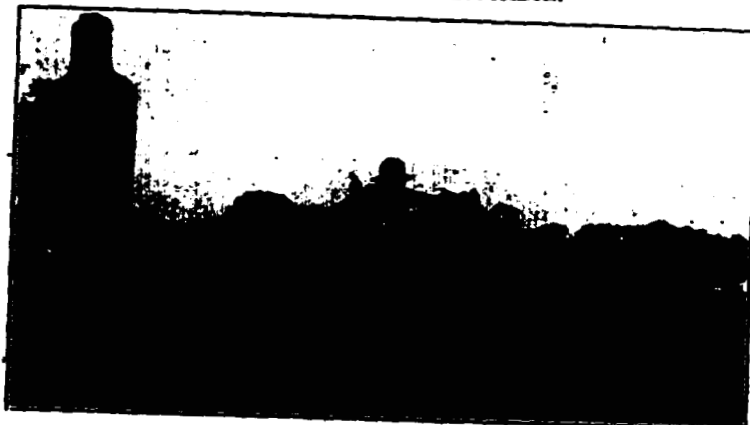
Correction

In the July, 1927, Cavalry Journal, under *Topics of the Day—Cavalry Board Notes*—there appeared on page 477 a photograph entitled *Thompson Semi-Automatic Rifle*, and on page 478 a photograph entitled *Garand Semi-Automatic Rifle*. Through error, the correct titles of these photographs were reversed. The photograph on page 477 is of the *Garand Semi-Automatic Rifle*, and that on page 478 is of the *Thompson Semi-Automatic Rifle*.

SUMMER CAMPS AT FORT MYER

THE 305th and 308th Cavalry had in August a two weeks' period of active duty with the 2nd Squadron, 3rd Cavalry, at Fort Myer, Virginia. Practically all of the personnel declared that the camp was the finest that they have ever attended.

These regiments are imbued with the true cavalry spirit. They absorbed instruction, and were real and enthusiastic horsemen.



Lieut. E. A. Towne, 305th Cav., at Pistol and Saber Work

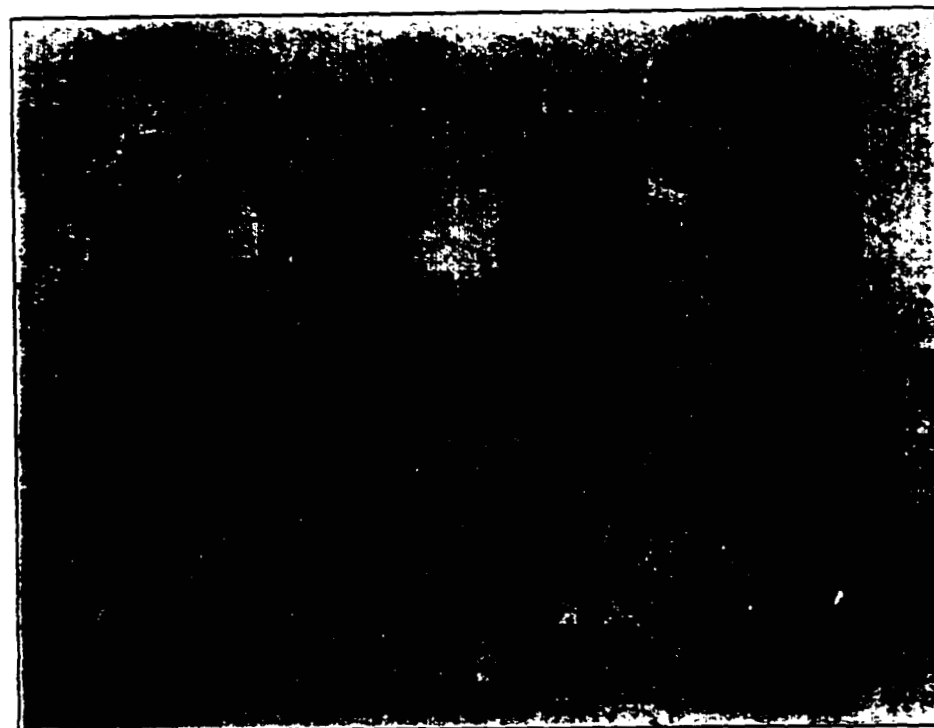
A horsemeshow was held on Saturday, August 20th, in the post riding hall. The equestrian championship for the E. E. Young Trophy was won by Capt. B. H. Minnich, 308th Cavalry, and the prize for jumping by Capt. Max Livingston, 305th Cavalry.

All reserve officers were given the opportunity to qualify with the rifle, pistol and saber, and made the most of it, as was shown by the final results. The R. O. T. C. from the Virginia Military Institute received six weeks' active duty training during June and July.

A C. M. T. C. squadron of three troops was trained at the post during July and August.

THE EIGHTH CAVALRY POLO TEAM

THE EIGHTH CAVALRY POLO TEAM was picked to represent Fort Bliss in the southwestern circuit tournament in San Antonio last spring. It was the same team which last fall won the division championship. The team not only won the circuit championship, and the circuit cup, but also won the low goal championship in the San Antonio tournament.



The Eighth Cavalry Polo Team

Left to Right: Lieut. Collier, Capt. Davis, Lieut. Thompson and Maj. Brown.

When the Fort Bliss team went east to play in the inter-circuit tournament it was the Eighth Cavalry team complete: Lieut. Collier at one; Capt. Davis at two; Lieut. Thomson at three; and Major J. K. Brown, team captain, at back.

Preparatory to going to Narragansett Pier to participate in the inter-circuit tournament, the team stopped off in Colorado Springs and picked up a couple of additional trophies, namely the Broadmoor Polo Association trophy, and the eight goal event of the Broadmoor tournament. The team later won its way to the finals of the inter-circuit tournament, in which it was defeated by a civilian-army team from Cleveland, Ohio, and won the 12-goal tournament by defeating the Cavalry School Team in the finals.

ATHLETIC GAMES AT FORT RINGGOLD

By JOHN P. SCOTT, Captain 12th Cavalry

OLD FORT RINGGOLD donned its best bib and tucker last week and proceeded to do its stuff just to show the world that age means nothing down here on the border, also to test out the co-operation of the civil and military folks in this vicinity. The result was a huge success and everyone who came to see the events was impressed with the post and the high class of sports and athletic events put on by the Athletic and Jockey Club of Fort Ringgold, under the supervision of Lieut. Col. Levi G. Brown, the post commander.

The entire week of August 7th to 14th, inclusive, was filled with interesting events, including the polo tournament and baseball series between teams from Fort Ringgold and Fort McIntosh, races, boxing and horseshow. All during the week the crowds were treated to some very wonderful stunt flying by our Kelly Field airmen.

The polo tournament, played on alternate days with the baseball games, was the best class of polo ever played on the local field and was greatly appreciated by the crowds that thronged the park daily. Fort Ringgold won both of these series after some hard and fast playing much to the joy of their Rio Grande Valley friends who came up to root for the home teams.

The boxing bouts were held at the polo field on the evening of August 12th, the ring being constructed and lighted especially for the occasion. There was not a vacant seat in the grandstand and standing room was at a premium. The fights were fast and interesting, the decisions were about evenly divided between the representatives of the two posts.

The horseshow took place the following afternoon in Ringgold's Field of Mars, which was all dressed up for the occasion. There were twelve events, consisting of the usual classes, all of which were hotly contested. The fine condition of animals, equipment and of horsemanship was commented upon by most everyone present. The cups and ribbons awarded in each class represents the hard work of those who went in to win.

The races staged on Ringgold's half-mile track were picturesque and exciting and represented the finest horsemanship in this section. The track was in excellent shape and fast. Most of the races kept the grandstand on their feet, a dark horse winning by a nose one of the handsome trophies presented by the Athletic and Jockey Club.

MOUNTED SPORTS, SECOND CAVALRY

ON JUNE 8TH, the two races that were postponed on May 30th were run. The Second Dragoons produced the winner of the five furlong flat race, Lieutenant DeBardleben winning with his black gelding *Gallant Boy*. In the three mile steeplechase, won by the Department of Horsemanship's *El Supremo*, ridden by Capt. Murray H. Ellis, Lieut. Wofford finished second on *Diplomat*, while Major Whiting's *Descendant*, ridden by Private Henry C. Baumgarten of Troop G was third.

The regimental polo team, consisting of Major Franklin, Capt. Berg, Lieut. Wofford, Lieut. Johnson and Lieut. DeBardleben, left for Fort Leavenworth, on June 9th to play in the Rocky Mountain Tournament. The Dragoons acquitted themselves creditably and fought their way to the finals, to lose by a close score to the Cavalry School team. During the week of July 24th to 29th, a team consisting of Lieut. Col. John K. Herr, Capt. Joe C. Rogers, Lieut. Paul C. Febiger, Major Elkin L. Franklin, Lieut. Wofford and Lieut. Dewey went to Kansas City to play a series of three games with the Kansas City Country Club. All three games were won by the Second.

Troops A and C put on a very interesting exhibition of silent drill and rough riding respectively while the American Legion Convention was in session here.

FORT SHERIDAN HORSE SHOW

THE ANNUAL FORT SHERIDAN HORSE SHOW was held on Friday and Saturday, July 15th and 16th, 1927, in the outside show ring on the post. The proceeds are to be donated to the Army Relief Society, for the education of soldiers' children and other post charities.

The show is a member of the Association of American Horse Shows, Inc., and the North Shore Circuit, which comprises the Milwaukee Horse Show, the Lake Forest Horse Show, and the Fort Sheridan Horse Show. It is held at the height of the season each year and is one of the outstanding events of the summer. This year's show had a record entry list, excellent attendance, and was pronounced a success in every way.

There were thirty-eight classes in all with a prize list worth in excess of \$2,000. There were harness classes for both horses and ponies, saddle classes for both three and five gaited horses, polo classes, children's classes, the usual hunter and jumper classes, and saddle, harness and jumping classes for the military personnel.

RACING IN THE FOURTEENTH CAVALRY

DURING THE PAST SUMMER, horse racing has become one of the favorite sports at Fort Des Moines, Iowa, the home station of the Fourteenth Cavalry. The races are run on a turf track laid out around the outside of the polo field and, in spite of the fact that the turns are not banked, thereby necessitating a slight check on the turns, exceedingly good time has been made. *T. N. T.*, the thirteen year old favorite of Headquarters Troop, made the four furlongs in fifty-one flat.

The races are held each Wednesday and Saturday, varying in length from a quarter to a half mile. Both flat races and steeplechases are run. Early in the season, the troops were requested to comb their outfits for possible running horses and to enter the same in the try-outs. The interest of the troopers was most gratifying. From the large number turned out, ten or twelve excellent horses have been picked. Organizations soon adopted colors and equipped their jockies in jackets and caps of the same. Enthusiasm and competition

between organizations has become exceedingly keen and, as the horses come down the stretch, enthusiasm reaches fever pitch.

In addition to the races run at home, horses have been sent to the Corps Area Race Meet at Omaha, Nebraska, and to the County Fair at Indianola, Iowa, and in both cases performed very creditably. At Omaha, Lieut. W. L. Weinaug on *T. N. T.* won first in the four furlong steeplechase and, second in the four furlong flat race on the same horse, Lieut. I. D. White on *Charley* coming in fourth in the four furlong flat. At Indianola, our horses fell into fast company, many of the entries for the Iowa State Fair which was a few weeks off "making" the county fair. In spite of the fast company, our riders carried off several places.

As a result of picking horses from line organizations for running, it has been found that the fast horses run to type. There is apparently no use picking a horse that does not run to type and action.

MOUNTED SPORTS, TWENTY-SIXTH CAVALRY

THE ANNUAL STOTSBERG SPORTS CARNIVAL was held in the latter part of the month of December. Members of the regiment won the majority of events in the horse show, gaining thereby permanent possession of the Pacific Commercial Company Cup.

During the month of February, Troop G, Captain Pride, was on temporary duty at the Manila Carnival. Their exhibition included monkey drill and saber work and it always drew a large crowd. The model camp in the vicinity of the Manila Hotel attracted many visitors.

The Army Horseshow held during the Carnival was a walk away for the 26th Cavalry. The officers team, Captains Stickman, Shafer, Hayden and Gallier, won practically all events, but first place in officers' jumping.

A polo tournament took place in Manila at the same time. Both senior and junior tournaments were won by the 26th Cavalry teams. The Easter Tournament held at Camp Stotsenburg proved to be a repetition of the previous one held in Manila.

The "A" team was composed of the following officers: Captain Shafer 1, Lt. Noble 2, Lt. Hine 3, Col. Martin 4. "B" team: Lt. Yale 1, Lt. Walker 2, Lt. Behm 3, Capt. Haydon 4.

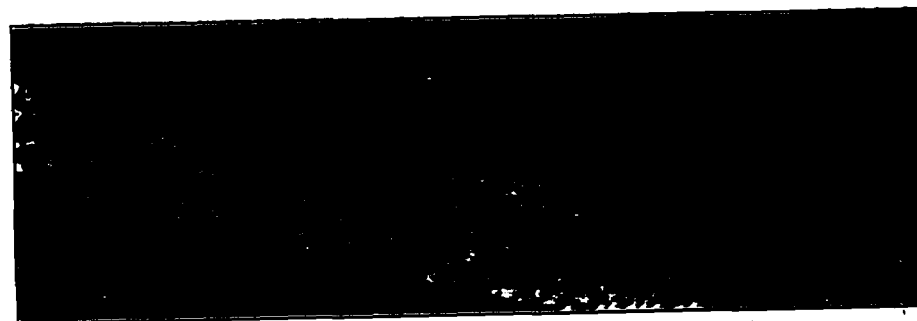
Troop F, Captain Haydon, trained the last shipment of remounts received in February. After 7 weeks' instruction, all remounts were ridden in a full pack review.

The Far Eastern Polo Tournament was held during the latter part of May and the early part of June. The Manila Polo Club defeated the 1st team, 4-3 in the semi-finals, and won the tournament by defeating the Division Headquarters Team. The "B" team lost its opening game to the Fort McKinley Greens, 6-4. The Department Team, Manila, won this tournament by defeating the 24th Field Artillery (PS).

CHICAGO MILITARY TOURNAMENT

THE TROOPS of the 1st Squadron, 14th Cavalry, played a leading role at the Military Tournament held at Soldiers Field, Chicago, Ill., on June 24th, 25th, and 26th. The "War Show" as it was called by the local press, was sponsored by the 317th Cavalry, 65th Cavalry Division, Col. Trygve Siqueland, commanding. It was a success from all viewpoints, large crowds witnessing the four performances.

Troop A, Capt. E. M. Barnum commanding, gave a monkey drill. Troop B, Capt. C. A. Pierce commanding, put on an exhibition of cossack riding, and Troop C, Capt. T. W. Ligon commanding, held the attention of the crowd with a saddle drill.



Troops of First Squadron, Fourteenth Cavalry

In addition to the regular demonstrations there were several individual competitions at each performance. These included an officers' jumping class, a polo bending race, a polo game between the officers of the squadron and the North Shore Polo Club, rescue races, Roman races and a competition for the enlisted men of the squadron on the regulation saber course. Prizes were awarded each day to the winners of the events.

The grand finale of the show was a spectacular military demonstration, depicting the assault of a German strong point. The troops of the squadron furnished the assault echelon. They were supported by 37mm and light artillery fire. The enemy was represented by troops and an enormous amount of fireworks. Smoke screens were laid, and the successive concentrations of our own artillery were most realistically shown.



Five Years in Turkey BY LIMAN VON SANDERS, General of Cavalry. 325 pp. Illustrations and Maps. The U. S. Naval Institute, Annapolis, Md. \$3.50.

Originally published in Germany in 1920, an English edition of this work is now for the first time made available through the enterprise of the U. S. Naval Institute.

Much literature has been published giving the Allied viewpoint of the Dardanelles, Palestine, and other campaigns in the Near East, but comparatively little has appeared from the Turkish side. *Five Years in Turkey* is of special interest because it is written by the commander of the Turkish forces in the Dardanelles campaign and the latter part of the campaign in Palestine.

Arriving in Constantinople December 14, 1913, at the head of a German military mission, the author was there in this capacity at the outbreak of the World War and remained until the collapse of Turkey in October, 1918.

The military mission was primarily for advisory purposes, but General von Sanders himself exercised command, and for much of the time was in command of an army. At the Dardanelles he was in command of all the Turkish land forces. His conduct of the campaign is an excellent example of the defense of a coast line. As feints were made at various points by the British, there was much uncertainty as to where the main effort would take place. The situation was met by holding the advance positions lightly and maintaining strong reserves at strategic points. Shortage of artillery and ammunition greatly handicapped the Turks, and for this reason von Sanders deserves the more credit for the masterly defense he put up. Had the British but known of the shortage of artillery ammunition and continued some of their offensives a few hours longer, the result of the campaign might have been quite different.

From March, 1918, until the end of the war, General von Sanders was in command of the Turkish army group on the Palestine front. Some accounts of the campaign might lead one to believe that it was a triumphal march for the British. Without detracting in the slightest degree from the glory of Allenby and his gallant troops, it would appear that between March 1st and September 19th, 1918, the Turks provided many a hard nut to crack.

An outstanding impression derived from the book is the military incapacity of the Turkish higher command and their disregard for the fundamental principles of logistics. Another was the constant and inept interference by the Turkish authorities with General von Sanders and the military mission. Enver Pasha, the Minister of War, appointed himself Chief of Staff, and later vice-generalissimo of the Turkish armies. Enver's egotism and the machinations of some mysterious influence at Constantinople resulted in the issue of a number of unreasonable and humiliating orders to the head of the military mission. Consequently von Sanders was kept busy resigning his command and

asking for the relief of his mission. However, his efforts to escape from an almost intolerable situation were in vain, for in cases where Enver did not countermand the objectionable orders, the German Emperor stepped in and compelled General von Sanders to retain his post.

Military operations in the Near East, with which the author had no direct connection, are described briefly but sufficiently for continuity and to show their relation to the events in other theaters.

Every library on the World War should contain this book.

We BY CHARLES A. LINDBERGH. 318 pp. Illustrated. G. P. Putnam's Sons, New York. \$2.50.

It undoubtedly required considerable persuasion to induce America's air ambassador to write the story of his life and of his great achievement. With no literary training it was probably with many misgivings that he undertook the task. He did so, and made a success of it quite in line with his accomplishment of other tasks undertaken. The matter-of-fact manner in which Lindbergh tells his story is characteristic of him, and has a charm all its own.

Those who have referred to the author as "lucky" and as "a flying fool" will have to revise their estimates after reading this book. From the very beginning of his flying career, Lindbergh seems to have undertaken every enterprise only after most careful preparation. This was the case in his trans-Atlantic flight. The unostentatious way in which he went about it, in contrast to the wide publicity enjoyed by other flyers with the same goal in mind, had much to do with the popular misconception of his temperament.

Thanks to the press, the reading public is quite familiar with the principal features of the author's life. This does not, however, lessen one's enjoyment of Lindbergh's own description of his early barnstorming days, his army flying training in Texas, his air mail adventures, and the final climax of his epoch making flight to Paris. As heretofore indicated, whether as a barnstormer he is flying a plane of ancient vintage, or is stunting in the latest type of army pursuit ship, one is impressed by his methodical preparation and his calmness in emergencies. In these respects his New York to Paris flight was an outstanding example.

To the adult this book will appeal as an interesting account of the career of an exceptional character and the description of a wonderful feat. To the youthful reader it will, in addition, be an inspiration. No one can read this story of Lindbergh's life without understanding why he has been referred to as an intelligent, industrious, energetic, dependable, purposeful, and self-reliant character.

The Services of Supply BY GEN. JOHNSON HAGOOD. Houghton Mifflin Company. \$5. Reviewed by A. J. O. Culbertson, in the *New York Sun*

"*The Services of Supply*," is one of the most important revelations in the way of a story from the inner circle that has come from the pen of an American general officer.

Following the declaration of war "the whole General Staff and War Department generally fell like a house of cards," and a new organization had to be built while the war was going on. "The bureau that bore the heaviest burden, the Quartermaster Corps, promptly collapsed."

Reshaping a workable machine was a tremendous task. But it was accomplished, and by the men who had seen and been a party to the unwieldy and futile efforts of the old organization.

After going to France with combat troops Gen. Hagood was finally made chief of staff of the services of supply. From the time he took hold there were order, regularity and a certainty of performance. Two million men were sent to France and clothed, fed and housed at a standard far above the average.

General Hagood describes the formation of the services of supply in France and the men who had a hand in it. "Were they, as has been hinted," he asks, "men of second-rate ability who were not good enough at the front, pottering in the rear, doing chores behind the lines?"

"No!" is his answer. "They were the best America had. Dawes, Atterbury, Carty, Davison, D'Oller, Straight and Thayer were not looking around for scrubs to help them out."

"In one case," General Hagood relates, "G. H. Q. asked if a certain general officer was not qualified to command a division, and the answer was, 'Yes, but he could not be spared' from the services of supply."

In support of his assertion that a great many of the men sent back to the S. O. S. from the front were condemned unjustly, the author cites the example of a colonel who was sent back to him. He was afterward returned to his regiment and given a D. S. C., and his brigade commander was relieved for having relieved him.

With the great task performed, the army central organization in Washington is pictured as having slipped back into the old ways of diversified responsibility and duplication of effort. In the final chapter the author describes the present condition of the War Department and offers a plan for a solid, authoritative and competent central organization, one which would stand the stress of another war.

General Hagood gives a remarkably clear, straightforward analysis of everything he describes. He sees things and goes to the heart of them. There are no halts for breath, no floundering, no irrelevancies. He has the laconic manner of the soldier and the style of the skilled writer.

A History of the Royal Army Veterinary Corps, 1796-1919 BY MAJOR-GENERAL SIR FREDERICK SMITH, K. C. M. G., C. B. 200 pp. Illustrated. Baillière, Tindall and Cox, London. 21 shillings, net.

The more or less indefinite status for many years of veterinarians in our service had a counterpart in the experience of these specialists in the British army, and extended over a much greater period of time. In the latter, the farrier was the progenitor of the veterinary surgeon. In addition to his duties in connection with the care of horses, the farrier had that of inflicting corporal punishment on offenders, and was informed beforehand that if he failed in his duty, he would himself be punished. In order to keep him attentive to his work as farrier, if a horse was lamed through careless shoeing, the farrier himself received corporal punishment, and was confined until the horse was sound. Such a regulation might have a salutary effect on some horseshoers of our day.

Edward Coleman, F. R. S., is given the credit for bringing the veterinary service into existence. In 1796 a veterinary college was established and provision made for attachment of veterinary surgeons to cavalry organizations. At first these had only warrant rank and for a time the class of men appointed left much to be desired. Soon it was urged that "they should be appointed in the same way as human surgeons, that they should be commissioned officers, that they should rank as gentlemen." This was done in 1797.

The first regulations dealing with the transportation of horses by sea appeared in 1818. They are interesting as introducing the sponging of the face and nostrils with vinegar in bad weather, and the giving of nitre with the food, fetishes which remained in the regulations for seventy or eighty years.

In 1818 a Register of Sick and Lame Horses was introduced, which was to be frequently inspected by the commanding officer, and produced at all inspections of the regiment.

Veterinarians at first had much to learn. One of some prominence never throughout his life recognized a case of acute laminitis; he always attributed it to an affection of the back. They also had other shortcomings. In 1828 the *Veterinarian* stated: "The type

of man sent as veterinary surgeon to some cavalry regiments was such that he was not permitted to mess with the officers." At the end of the year 1834 there occurred in India a case of two lieutenants of a native cavalry regiment striking a veterinary officer and attempting to throw him out of a window. The type of veterinary surgeons and their professional knowledge improved and they rendered very satisfactory service in the Crimean War and the Indian Mutiny. In the Abyssinian Campaign of 1867, for the first time, an effort was made to deal with casualties among animals by the establishment of hospitals.

An Army Veterinary School was established in 1880, due largely to the efforts of Major-General Sir Frederick Fitzwygram, commanding the cavalry brigade at Aldershot, and himself a member of the profession.

In 1881 the discovery was made in India by Dr. Evans, Army Veterinary Department, of the presence in the blood of horses and camels afflicted with "surra," of large flagellated organisms, since named trypanosoma. Twenty years later our service had the "surra" problem to solve in the Philippines.

At the beginning of the Boer War in 1899, the veterinary service was in a bad way. There was no provision of any kind for the care of sick animals in the field, the hospitals having been done away with. This circumstance and subsequent defective organization and administration resulted in an appalling loss of animals. This experience led to an effective reorganization after the war.

In 1903, veterinary surgeons were given non-compound rank for the first time, and promotion was accelerated.

Officers of the mounted services will find much of interest in this work in regard to the evolution of horseshoeing and the care of sick and wounded animals.

Bridle Wise A Key to Better Hunters—Better Ponies BY LT. COL. S. G. GOLDSCHMIDT. Large quarto. 157 pp. Plates by Lionel Edwards. Charles Scribner's Sons, New York. \$5.00.

This handsome volume may, as stated in the preface, "be regarded as a reasoned plea for the revival of the old system of English equitation, which insisted on balance and control, in a saddle horse, combined with the utmost freedom of forward movements." It does not pretend to be a complete manual of equitation and many of the principles laid down are old. Some are new and reasonable. Since the book covers the whole field of training of a polo pony or hunter from the unbroken animal to the finished product, it is especially useful to one who has in mind the training of a green prospect for either of these specialized functions.

Contrary to the general belief, Colonel Goldschmidt is of the opinion that a polo pony has no fondness for the game and that all ponies, even the most brilliant, play polo under compulsion. On the other hand, he states that the only work to which a horse can be put from which it derives any pleasure, and in which it takes any personal interest, is fox hunting.

As a pre-requisite to proper training, the author lays great stress on an understanding of the psychology of the horse. This feature is frequently lost sight of, and probably accounts for many animals being spoiled in breaking or training.

Chapters on the handling of the young horse, long-rein driving, mounting and dismounting, bits and biting, and teaching a horse to obey the aids, bring the young animal up to the point where specialized training for hunting or polo should begin. The chapters on these two subjects are very comprehensive. Other chapters deal with special training for the show ring, correction of vices, stable management, hints on buying horses and ponies, cruelty in training and sport, etc.

Twenty-seven full page plates by Lionel Edwards and seventy-nine drawings add much to the value of the book.

The Evolution of the Horse BY FREDERICK B. LOOMIS. 230 pp. Marshall Jones Co., Boston. \$3.00.

Reviewed by Major N. B. Briscoe

We have more or less all heard the rumor that the horse was once an animal about the size of a fox and had five toes. Professor Loomis, an authority on mineralogy and geology, has written a book that explains most interestingly the various steps in the development of the modern horse from this queer ancestor.

The ancestral lines are traced through toes and teeth. The former are sloughed off, and the latter increase in length, strength, composition and construction. In fact most of us are familiar with cups, stars, hooks, etc., but give up our efforts at aging when all the cups are gone, even when we have the horse present. Professor Loomis can tell the age of a horse that died ten million years ago by seeing one fossil tooth.

His attitude towards time is well shown in the chapter on *Where Are Fossil Horses Found?*, when he states, "On portions of the stage the climate changes from tropical to arctic, and oscillates rapidly (in periods of about a hundred thousand years) from one extreme to the other." Hundred thousand year oscillations are certainly rapid, but the account in another chapter of putting bandages on an old horse in order to get him home is particularly interesting when the age of the horse is given as twelve million years.

To those seeking names for horses the book provides a number of jaw breakers, and while the familiar "bone head" is absent we do find a "moss back."

The lessons in geology that can be learned as an incident to tracing the horse are well worth while and a number of sections well known to the cavalry in particular are described, such as "bad lands," and rim rock formations.

Fundamentalists are warned that the chapter on evolution will give them no mean job if they try to reply.

A most readable, interesting and instructive book, presenting scientific facts that should be known to every educated man, and horse facts that are useful to horsemen.

The Story of the Battles of Gettysburg BY JAMES K. P. SCOTT. 273 pp. Illustrations and Maps. The Telegraph Press, Harrisburg, Pa. \$2.00.

This volume is the first of a trilogy dealing with the battle of Gettysburg, and describes the first day's fight and the operations leading up to it. The author has for many years made an intensive study of the battle—much of the time on the field itself—and has checked his work with the official records of the Union and Confederate armies. The accuracy of his statements may therefore be depended upon.

Most readers are familiar with the main features of the battle. While the author, who was a member of the First Pennsylvania Cavalry during the war, is not an authority on tactics or strategy, his detailed account of troop movements and operations should be of considerable value to anyone making a study of the battle.

Your Money's Worth BY STUART CHASE AND F. J. SCHLINK. 267 pp. The MacMillan Company, New York. \$2.50.

This book is a plea for more scientific purchasing, especially on the part of the ultimate consumer.

One of the authors is a director of the Labor Bureau, Inc. and was formerly on the staff of the Federal Trade Commission. The other is Assistant Secretary of the American Engineering Standards Committee, and was formerly on the staff of the National Bureau of Standards. They should therefore be thoroughly competent to discuss the subject of which they write.

The increasing complexity of modern business, with its fanciful advertising, high powered salesmen, fevered competition, and even downright misrepresentation, has reduced the purchaser to the condition of a confused Alice in Wonderland, ignorant alike of what, where and how to buy.

Many "brand" products are mentioned by name as being of short weight, too high priced or misrepresented. Others are alluded to without being mentioned. Not only patent medicines, but many common household products as well, receive their share of censure.

The solution of these evils lies, according to the authors, in standardization of many articles, purchasing by specifications, extension of the work of such agencies as the Bureau of Standards and the American Medical Association, and by the education generally of the ultimate consumer, for whom a list of guides to proper purchasing is laid down.

The book is worth your money.

A Guide to the American Battlefields in Europe BY AMERICAN BATTLE MONUMENTS COMMISSION. 274 pp. Superintendent of Documents, Washington. \$.75.

This book, prepared by the commission of which General Pershing himself is, the head, is without doubt one of the most authoritative guide books ever published.

The first chapter is devoted to a very brief description of the World War to May 29, 1918. The next four chapters, which constitute the bulk of the volume and its main value as a guide book, take up in turn the American operations in the Aisne-Marne, the St. Mihiel, the Meuse-Argonne, and the Champagne regions. The remaining chapters, which are comparatively short, describe the American operations north of Paris, sector occupation by American divisions, the services of supply, the naval operations, American cemeteries in France, American monument projects, the operations after the armistice, and general information.

Each of the four main chapters referred to includes a brief non-technical description of the American operations in the region, accurate instructions with, in three cases, a colored road map of a recommended tour of the region concerned, and a list of additional places of interest in the vicinity.

In a pocket in the back of the book are found three excellent contoured maps showing in colors the operations of each of the American divisions in the Aisne-Marne, the St. Mihiel, and the Meuse-Argonne regions. A novel feature of these maps is that a sufficient number of pages have been cut from the book to allow the maps to go in the pocket without causing the binding to bulge.

The greatest care has been exercised to insure absolute accuracy in the descriptions of operations, all available official records and officers commanding in the field having been consulted either directly or by letter.

There are 500 pictures, selected from 100,000 in the official files of the United States, England, France and Germany.

The extremely low price of the book in its handsome red fabricoid cover is sufficient to defray only the actual cost of the printing.

United States Polo Association Year Book, 1927 164 pp. U. S. Polo Association.

The 1927 Polo Year Book contains a short editorial, a review of polo in 1926, short articles on grasses for polo fields and umpiring, and accounts of all the important tournaments including the intercollegiate, open, junior, inter-circuit, twelve goal, and Monty Waterbury tournaments, with scores of the principal matches in the different circuits. There is an article on army polo, and excellent photographs of the 1924 International Match, the Yale Team, the Hurricanes, the Fort Leavenworth Team, the Army Team, the Meadowbrook—Army Team, the Eleventh Cavalry Team, the Sixth Cavalry Team, the Argentine Team, the Austin Polo Club Team, and *Judy*, the best polo pony of the year.

The book also contains a list of member clubs, a diagrammatic arrangement of member clubs by circuits, a plan of a polo field, the constitution and by-laws of the Association, a handicap list, and the polo rules.

A Manual of Equitation BY THE ACADEMIC DIVISION, THE CAVALRY SCHOOL. 130 pp. Book Department, The Cavalry School, Fort Riley. \$1.00.

This is a paper covered manual which brings together under one cover the material found in Training Regulations 50-45, Instruction Mounted Without Arms, Training Regulations 380-10, Training Remounts, and the 1912 French Manual of Equitation.

The stilted English of the translation from the French is happily missing, while the material of the two Training Regulations is preserved.

Subjects, which are treated more thoroughly than in the three sources mentioned above, are articles of equipment and their use, the gaits, a table of errors and their causes in jumping, riding hall customs, and specifications for a Hitchcock pen. The keynote of the pamphlet is simplicity, brevity and clarity. Matters of a purely military nature have been omitted.

The Rasp, 1927 BY THE RASP BOARD. 314 pp. The Cavalry School, Fort Riley. \$2.50. This is the Year Book of the Cavalry School.

In addition to the usual dedications, descriptions of the classes and of the various school departments and activities, the Rasp this year contains a statement of the mission of the Cavalry School by the Assistant Commandant, descriptions of the Grant National Steeplechase by Captain Charles Wharton, and of the blue grass country by Captain C. B. Byrd, an article on conditioning ponies by Major L. A. Beard, one on conditioning horses by Captain H. N. Beeman, and a translation from the French on the education of the colt.

There is a section devoted to the activities of the cavalry service in which most of the Regular and National Guard cavalry organizations and one Reserve cavalry division are represented.

The book is replete with photographs, drawings and humorous material, mostly of a local nature. The inevitable Honor Roll is, of course, included.

The 1927 Rasp is a worthy memorial to the year's accomplishments at the Cavalry School.

The Cavalry Journal (Great Britain) July, 1927

The July issue of the British Cavalry Journal is a very excellent one and contains several articles of special interest to American cavalry officers.

Chief among these is a description of *Recent Changes in Cavalry Organization*, which include the abolition of the Cavalry Depot at Canterbury, at least in peace times, the reduction of the number of Saber Squadrons (our troops) in the cavalry regiment (our squadron in strength) from three to two, the abolition of the Hotchkiss gun (which corresponds to our machine rifle), the formation and mechanization of a Vickers heavy machine gun squadron in each regiment, and the mechanization of the 1st Line Transport. These changes were briefly enumerated under "Topics of the Day" in the July, 1927, American Cavalry Journal. American officers will find in this article at least one solution, which is now a *fait accompli* with the British, of each of the organization problems most frequently under discussion in our own service.

In Part III, the conclusion, of *Where Cavalry Stands Today*, Major H. V. S. Charleston, M. C., 12th Royal Lancers, concludes that the future value of cavalry will be found, not in its use in large bodies on independent missions, but in small bodies as a purely infantry auxiliary, in the role of infantry divisional, brigade and battalion cavalry. The author states that cavalry should henceforth be organized and trained with this end in view. Major G. LeQ. Martel, D. S. O., M. C., R. E., in an article entitled *Small Units and Cavalry*, draws a rather fanciful picture of an independent flanking movement of a completely motorized force of all arms.

A short biographical sketch of the life and career of Major General J. E. B. Stuart, the Confederate Cavalry Leader, by Colonel H. C. Wylly, C. E., will appeal to Americans. There is also an excellent and very complete descriptive article on *The Cavalry of the Italian Army*, by Colonel W. F. Blaker, D. S. O., O. B. E.

The Cavalry Action at Jaraslavice, 21st August, 1914, presents the Austrian side of the fight at Voichkovtsy, the Russian version of which is concluded in this issue of our Journal. Under the caption *The Chinese Puzzle* are reprinted several illustrations from Brigadier General H. J. Reilly's article, *Chinese Cavalry Produce a Decisive Victory*, which appeared in the January, 1927, issue of our Journal.

Revue de Cavalerie (France) May-June, 1927.

Reviewed by Major W. E. Shipp, Cavalry

In an article entitled *The Spanish Cavalry on the Eve of the International Horse Show at Madrid*, the author, Z . . . , covers the changes which have taken place in the Spanish Cavalry since the publication of the articles on this subject in the September-October, 1926, issue of the same review. The reductions made in the Spanish Cavalry for budgetary reasons have not affected the tactical employment of the arm which was outlined in the previous article.

The three regiments of chasseurs in Morocco have been consolidated into a single regiment, which will be the reserve of the Moroccan Cavalry. The loss of Spanish regiments in this territory will be largely compensated for by the formation of native units.

The twenty-seven regiments in Spain have been retained, but at a reduced cost. These regiments are divided into three types: A, B and C. The eleven type A regiments have 4 saber squadrons of 3 platoons of 3 squads each, 1 machine gun squadron of 2 platoons, and a depot squadron. The eight regiments of type B have 2 saber squadrons, 1 machine gun platoon, 1 cadre group of 2 squadrons, and a depot squadron. Those of type C have a saber squadron of 4 platoons of 3 squads each, 1 cadre squadron, and 1 depot squadron for the regiment and reserve region from which it is recruited in time of war.

Reserve regiments have been suppressed, as well as the instruction group of Carabanchel. The Royal Escort (1 squadron) has not been changed.

The Office of the Inspector General of the Peninsular Cavalry has been maintained. The five "independent" brigades, in each of which there are two type A regiments, except in the 4th Brigade (Barcelona) which has three regiments of dragoons, have also been retained.

It is probable that, in case of mobilization, the brigades will be formed into divisions, and that at least one regiment will be withdrawn from the 4th Brigade for use with mountain chasseurs.

The Sanitary Service has formed a motor section for use with the independent cavalry on mobilization. The 2nd Engineer Regiment has one mounted company in peace, which in war will be used with the cavalry.

The type B regiments will furnish the divisional cavalry for 16 divisions, and it will probably, with the assistance of the type C regiments, furnish the divisional cavalry for the second and third line divisions. In peace, the type C regiments furnish ordonnances and escorts for various headquarters.

The peace strength of the squadrons is given by the following table:

	Officers	N. C. O.'s and Men	Horses
Saber squadrons of types A and B	5	98	95
Saber squadrons of type C	6	125	122
Cadre saber squadrons of types B and C	2	20	18
Machine gun squadrons of type A	3	87	76
Depot squadron of types A and B	2	7	—
Depot squadron of type C	4	15	—

Pending the adoption of a Spanish machine rifle, the Hotchkiss is used. The allotment of other arms remains the same.

In the remainder of the article, the author treats of the reduction of the Remount Service, the promotion and discharge of cavalry officers, the excellent showing the Spanish team made at the Nice and other foreign horse shows, and at the Madrid horse show.

The Remount July, 1927

The Remount for July contains several articles of interest to cavalry officers.

Steeplechasing Around Boston—Yesterday and Today, by Newell Bent, describes some of the events of as early as 1865, as well as of the spring meeting of 1927. It is interesting to note that the meeting at the Country Club at Brooklyne, in which army officers have competed in the past, are apparently to be revived.

Mr. Louis A. Beard, formerly captain of the Army Polo Team, in *Hardy Life Necessary for Foals*, gives some useful hints to owners on the care and conditioning of future mounts.

Colonel R. Van Agnew, in an article called *Equilibrium*, takes exception to Major Smalley's ideas on balance, stating that "collection," not "extension," is the basis of all equilibrium, or balance, in horses.

The Field Artillery Journal July-August, 1927

This issue of the Field Artillery Journal contains a very interesting article on training polo ponies by Captain Wesley J. White, F. A., who has made quite a name for himself in recent years as a polo player and an efficient referee of high class polo games. The article, though short, contains many common-sense ideas on the subject, which, if faithfully carried out, should result in many fewer ruined polo pony prospects in the army.



Cavalry Members of Fort Ethan Allen Horse Show Team

ROSTER OF REGULAR CAVALRY OFFICERS ON DUTY WITH TROOPS

HEADQUARTERS, FIRST CAVALRY DIVISION—Fort Bliss, Texas

Brigadier General E. B. Winans, Commanding	
Lieut. Colonel L. S. Carson	Major J. B. Coulter
Major P. R. Davison	Captain G. E. Huthstainer
Major J. R. Hill	First Lieut. W. S. Conrow

HEADQUARTERS, DIVISION SPECIAL TROOPS—Fort Bliss, Texas

Lieut. Colonel J. E. Gaujet, Commanding	
Captain H. E. Featherstone	First Lieut. R. H. Speck
Captain W. B. Van Aiken	

HEADQUARTERS, FIRST CAVALRY BRIGADE—Fort Clark, Texas

Brigadier General LeRoy Eltinge, Commanding	
Lieut. Colonel H. E. Mitchell	Captain C. J. Rohsenberger
Lieut. Colonel A. H. Mueller	Captain L. B. Wyant
Captain A. E. McIntosh	

FIRST MACHINE GUN SQUADRON—Fort Clark, Texas

Major S. M. Williams, Commanding	
Captain B. M. Creel	Second Lieut. C. V. Morse
Captain R. R. Maxwell	Second Lieut. E. R. Tausch
Captain J. H. Irving	Second Lieut. J. C. Crosthwaite
Captain C. A. Horger	Second Lieut. G. A. Williams
First Lieut. T. E. Whitehead	

HEADQUARTERS SECOND CAVALRY BRIGADE—Fort Bliss, Texas

Brigadier General S. D. Rothenbach, Commanding	
Major C. P. Stearns	Captain G. S. Finley
Major A. H. Wilson	First Lieut. G. R. McElroy
Captain P. B. Fryer	First Lieut. C. B. Bell

SECOND MACHINE GUN SQUADRON—Fort Bliss, Texas

Major J. B. Johnson, Commanding	
Captain W. T. Haldeman	First Lieut. E. D. Yerby
Captain L. C. Frissell	First Lieut. S. Higgins
Captain H. W. Benson	First Lieut. R. H. Darrell
First Lieut. W. P. Campbell	Second Lieut. Joseph Smith
First Lieut. J. V. Gagne	

FIRST CAVALRY—Camp Marfa, Texas

Colonel C. S. Babcock, Commanding	
Lieut. Colonel O. C. Aleshire	First Lieut. H. O. Sand
Major C. L. Stevenson	First Lieut. W. L. Hamilton
Major J. P. Wheeler	First Lieut. K. G. Hoge
Major S. A. Townsend	First Lieut. W. L. McEnery
Major H. T. Applington	Second Lieut. P. G. Kendall
Major H. Polk	Second Lieut. R. T. Willson
Captain L. L. Gocker	Second Lieut. E. L. Harrison
Captain W. C. Gatchell	Second Lieut. T. Robinson
Captain T. D. Wadleton	Second Lieut. C. K. Darling
Captain H. O. Richardson	Second Lieut. G. B. Rogers
Captain D. Hughes, Jr.	Second Lieut. B. W. Justice
Captain W. H. Halstead	Second Lieut. C. B. Hutchinson

Captain F. Fabri
 Captain H. S. Beecher
 Captain H. E. Watkins
 First Lieut. F. W. McKinney, Jr.

Second Lieut. A. A. Cavanaugh
 Second Lieut. P. A. Ridge
 Second Lieut. H. M. Zeller, Jr.

SECOND CAVALRY—Fort Riley, Kansas

Colonel L. W. Oliver, Commanding

Lieut. Colonel J. K. Herr
 Major E. M. Whiting
 Major E. L. Franklin
 Major F. Gillebreath
 Captain H. deB. Bruck
 Captain W. T. Hamilton
 Captain R. W. Grow
 Captain T. E. Price
 Captain H. A. Buckley
 Captain J. C. Rogers
 Captain L. LeR. Martin
 Captain J. T. Menzie
 Captain J. B. Casseday
 Captain S. Berg
 Captain B. C. Andrus
 Captain V. W. Batchelor

First Lieut. J. W. Wofford
 First Lieut. D. Menoher
 First Lieut. P. McK. Martin
 First Lieut. J. H. Phillips
 First Lieut. H. M. Alexander
 First Lieut. F. T. Turner
 First Lieut. F. O. Dewey
 First Lieut. P. C. Febiger
 First Lieut. C. Burgess
 First Lieut. G. S. Armes
 First Lieut. H. I. Hodes
 Second Lieut. J. L. DePew
 Second Lieut. R. M. Barton
 Second Lieut. R. A. Browne
 Second Lieut. W. H. Wood
 Second Lieut. E. J. Doyle

THIRD CAVALRY (less 1st Squadron)—Fort Myer, Virginia

Colonel G. V. Henry, Commanding

Major B. T. Merchant
 Major R. D. Newman
 Captain H. T. Allen, Jr.
 Captain J. G. Boykin
 Captain J. A. Weeks
 Captain J. M. Shelton
 Captain J. W. Cunningham
 Captain S. V. Constatant
 Captain L. G. Gibney

First Lieut. C. H. Noble
 First Lieut. C. V. Barnum
 First Lieut. G. G. Elms
 First Lieut. G. B. Hudson
 First Lieut. J. B. Cooley
 First Lieut. M. A. Devine, Jr.
 First Lieut. H. B. Waddell
 Second Lieut. C. W. A. Raguse

FIRST SQUADRON, THIRD CAVALRY—Fort Ethan Allen, Vermont

Lieut. Colonel W. S. Grant, Commanding

Major J. E. Stevens
 Captain C. J. Booth
 Captain H. W. Forster
 Captain H. Foster
 Captain R. O. Wright
 Captain W. W. Cox
 Captain A. J. DeLorimier

Captain A. W. Howard
 First Lieut. R. C. Winchester
 Second Lieut. L. R. Dewey
 Second Lieut. L. A. Duffy
 Second Lieut. H. W. Johnson
 Second Lieut. N. M. Winn
 Second Lieut. F. S. Gardner

FOURTH CAVALRY—Fort Meade, South Dakota

Colonel O. Latrobe, Jr., Commanding

Lieut. Colonel W. W. Edwards
 Lieut. Colonel L. W. Prunty
 Major O. Wagner
 Major E. I. Sams
 Captain C. G. Wall
 Captain E. W. Godbold
 Captain R. N. Atwell

Captain T. A. Dobyne, Jr.
 Captain W. K. Harrison
 First Lieut. J. T. Ward
 First Lieut. J. K. Sells
 First Lieut. W. R. Mobley
 First Lieut. G. J. Rawlins
 First Lieut. A. E. Forsyth

Captain C. C. Strawn
 Captain H. H. Cameron
 Captain R. A. Isker
 Captain D. Becker
 Captain D. J. Keane
 Captain C. H. Dayhuff
 Captain J. I. Gibbon
 Captain J. A. Blankenship

Second Lieut. C. V. Bromley, Jr.
 Second Lieut. F. H. Bunnell
 Second Lieut. R. M. Neal
 Second Lieut. H. W. Davison
 Second Lieut. G. W. West
 Second Lieut. J. G. Merrick
 Second Lieut. R. H. Bridgman
 Second Lieut. J. O. Murtaugh
 Second Lieut. L. D. Pegg

FIFTH CAVALRY—Fort Clark, Texas

Colonel W. B. Saffa, Commanding

Major K. B. Edmunds
 Major J. A. Robenson
 Major E. O'Connor
 Major J. F. Wall
 Captain R. C. Wells
 Captain A. L. Baylies
 Captain C. Cramer
 Captain J. Yuditsky
 Captain W. H. Kasten
 Captain L. W. Biggs
 Captain R. S. Parker
 Captain R. L. Creed
 Captain J. T. Pierce, Jr.
 Captain F. H. Barnhart
 Captain G. A. O'Donnell
 Captain W. E. Barott

Captain H. H. Cheshire
 Captain W. S. Wadelton
 Captain J. N. Greene
 First Lieut. L. N. Smith
 First Lieut. C. Knudsen
 Second Lieut. C. D. Silverthorne
 Second Lieut. W. J. Bradley
 Second Lieut. J. H. Stadler, Jr.
 Second Lieut. H. S. Jernigan
 Second Lieut. H. W. Ketchum
 Second Lieut. C. H. Valentine
 Second Lieut. J. F. M. Kohler
 Second Lieut. F. L. Ready
 Second Lieut. R. G. Lowe
 Second Lieut. T. Kalakuka

SIXTH CAVALRY—Fort Oglethorpe, Georgia

Colonel T. A. Roberts, Commanding

Lieut. Colonel H. N. Coates
 Lieut. Colonel G. Kent
 Major R. M. Cheney
 Major W. Nalle
 Captain O. C. Newell
 Captain H. A. Myers
 Captain C. H. Murphy
 Captain M. F. Meador
 Captain W. A. Haverfield
 Captain S. R. Goodwin
 Captain G. A. Goodyear
 Captain G. X. Cheves
 Captain P. C. Clayton
 Captain R. C. Thomas
 First Lieut. T. Q. Donaldson

First Lieut. L. D. Carter
 First Lieut. H. T. Sutton
 First Lieut. A. Fulton
 First Lieut. R. E. Ireland
 First Lieut. D. Cameron
 First Lieut. F. deL. Comfort
 First Lieut. T. F. Sheehan
 First Lieut. A. S. J. Stovall, Jr.
 First Lieut. R. L. Freeman
 Second Lieut. L. K. Ladue
 Second Lieut. M. D. Jones, Jr.
 Second Lieut. J. L. Ryan, Jr.
 Second Lieut. B. L. Riggs
 Second Lieut. A. M. Miller, Jr.
 Second Lieut. W. H. Hunter

SEVENTH CAVALRY—Fort Bliss, Texas

Colonel W. M. Connell, Commanding

Lieut. Colonel H. R. Smalley
 Major Terry Allen
 Major L. A. O'Donnell
 Captain C. O. Griffin
 Captain J. M. Lile

First Lieut. J. A. Whelen, Jr.
 First Lieut. W. G. Wyman
 First Lieut. M. McD. Jones
 Second Lieut. F. G. Trew
 Second Lieut. Z. W. Moores

Captain H. LeR. Branson
 Captain H. E. Dodge
 Captain G. P. Cummings
 Captain R. P. Gerfen
 Captain C. D. Garrison
 Captain C. L. Stafford
 Captain V. L. Padgett
 Captain J. R. Finley
 Captain T. E. Voigt
 Captain A. J. Wynne

Second Lieut. F. J. Thompson
 Second Lieut. P. C. Hains, 3rd.
 Second Lieut. M. B. Crandall
 Second Lieut. A. W. Farwick
 Second Lieut. T. L. Harrold
 Second Lieut. W. H. Nutter
 Second Lieut. D. H. Bratton
 Second Lieut. S. W. Van Meter
 Second Lieut. J. B. Wells
 Second Lieut. G. L. Brittingham

EIGHTH CAVALRY—Fort Bliss, Texas
 Colonel S. McP. Rutherford, Commanding

Lieut. Colonel G. M. Russell
 Major A. G. Hixson
 Major J. K. Brown
 Major J. C. F. Tillson
 Major L. D. Beach
 Captain H. L. Jackson
 Captain W. C. Merkel
 Captain P. C. Berlin
 Captain I. H. Zeff
 Captain P. H. Sherwood
 Captain N. M. Imboden
 Captain A. H. Norton
 Captain C. R. Davis
 Captain A. H. Seabury
 Captain T. G. Hanson, Jr.
 Captain J. R. W. Diehl
 Captain T. W. Herren

First Lieut. J. H. Collier
 First Lieut. O. W. Koch
 First Lieut. L. M. Lipman
 First Lieut. B. H. Graban
 Second Lieut. C. J. Harrold
 Second Lieut. L. M. Grener
 Second Lieut. W. J. Reardon
 Second Lieut. R. L. Howze, Jr.
 Second Lieut. W. A. Fuller
 Second Lieut. M. H. Matteson
 Second Lieut. H. R. Westphalinger
 Second Lieut. E. L. Rhodes
 Second Lieut. H. A. Luebbermann
 Second Lieut. C. P. Bixel
 Second Lieut. L. L. Doan
 Second Lieut. C. W. Bennett

NINTH CAVALRY—Fort Riley, Kansas
 Lieut. Colonel R. M. Parker, Commanding

Major H. M. Rayner
 Major H. D. Chamberlin
 Captain F. H. Waters
 Captain H. G. Holt
 Captain D. S. Perry
 Captain H. R. Gay
 Captain H. B. Gibson
 Captain W. B. Bradford

Captain M. H. Ellis
 Captain J. C. Short
 Captain F. L. Carr
 Captain W. T. Bauskett
 Captain R. S. Ramey
 Captain F. M. Hyndman
 Captain A. W. Roffe
 Captain J. V. V. Shufelt

TENTH CAVALRY—Fort Huachuca, Arizona
 Colonel L. C. Scherer, Commanding

Lieut. Colonel Lewis Brown, Jr.
 Lieut. Colonel O. W. Bethorst
 Major S. Koch
 Major C. B. Hazeltine
 Major C. W. Foster
 Captain C. Pickett
 Captain B. Morrow
 Captain L. A. Correll

Captain C. M. Hurt
 Captain W. C. Steiger
 First Lieut. F. C. Thomas
 First Lieut. B. G. Thayer
 First Lieut. C. W. Fake
 First Lieut. H. G. Maddox
 First Lieut. H. F. Scherer
 First Lieut. D. G. McBride

Captain D. C. Hawley
 Captain T. M. Rundel
 Captain H. M. Rose
 Captain F. J. Matte
 Captain R. C. Gibbs
 Captain W. J. Redner
 Captain D. B. Cullinane
 Captain H. McN. Gregory

First Lieut. V. F. Shaw
 Second Lieut. G. C. Claussen
 Second Lieut. H. J. Theis
 Second Lieut. W. O. Heacock
 Second Lieut. W. H. Barnes
 Second Lieut. R. W. Curtis
 Second Lieut. M. J. Asensio

ELEVENTH CAVALRY—Presidio of Monterey, California
 Colonel L. B. Kromer, Commanding

Lieut. Colonel O. P. M. Hazard
 Lieut. Colonel J. A. Baer
 Major W. W. Erwin
 Major J. McD. Thompson
 Major D. A. Robinson
 Captain J. L. Rice
 Captain L. Patterson
 Captain A. B. MacNabb
 Captain J. I. Lambert
 Captain R. E. Blount
 Captain H. L. Coe
 Captain O. B. Trigg
 Captain F. S. Jacobs
 Captain W. H. W. Reinburg
 Captain E. A. Everitt
 Captain O. L. Haines
 Captain H. C. Kaefring
 Captain W. A. Falck
 Captain C. B. Byrd

Captain C. G. Hutchinson
 Captain F. C. DeLangton
 Captain D. S. Wood
 First Lieut. G. W. Read
 First Lieut. B. B. Vail
 First Lieut. E. N. Schjerven
 First Lieut. T. T. Thornburgh
 First Lieut. H. A. Fudge
 First Lieut. W. W. Yale
 Second Lieut. C. G. Meehan
 Second Lieut. C. L. Ruffner
 Second Lieut. J. H. Riepe
 Second Lieut. F. G. Fraser
 Second Lieut. J. P. Doyle
 Second Lieut. G. V. Ehrhardt
 Second Lieut. C. S. Babcock, Jr.
 Second Lieut. J. L. Hines, Jr.
 Second Lieut. T. J. H. Trapnell
 Second Lieut. M. H. Marcus

TWELFTH CAVALRY (less 2d Squadron)—Fort Brown, Texas
 Colonel W. T. Johnston, Commanding

Lieut. Colonel C. McH. Eby
 Major H. L. Flynn
 Captain E. A. Franklin
 Captain J. N. Merrill
 Captain C. E. Austin
 Captain V. McT. Shell
 Captain H. V. Scanlan
 Captain W. G. Ingram
 Captain S. W. Robertson
 Captain O. Porter

First Lieut. J. B. Edmunds
 First Lieut. C. I. Hunn
 Second Lieut. J. F. Willey
 Second Lieut. W. Blanchard
 Second Lieut. J. H. Claybrook, Jr.
 Second Lieut. C. Massey
 Second Lieut. R. T. Garver
 Second Lieut. G. P. Berilla, Jr.
 Second Lieut. R. L. Land
 Second Lieut. H. A. K. Perrilliat

SECOND SQUADRON, TWELFTH CAVALRY—Fort Ringgold, Texas
 Lieut. Colonel Levi G. Brown, Commanding

Major M. B. Rush
 Captain W. Tussey
 Captain W. C. Burt
 Captain J. P. Scott
 Captain E. M. Fickett
 Captain R. H. Garity
 First Lieut. F. Richardson

First Lieut. D. P. Buckland
 Second Lieut. R. B. Evans
 Second Lieut. A. Dugan
 Second Lieut. P. R. Greenhalgh
 Second Lieut. R. D. Palmer
 Second Lieut. T. F. Trapolino

THIRTEENTH CAVALRY—Fort Riley, Kansas**Colonel A. Lippincott, Commanding**

Major J. W. Heard
 Major J. Plasmeyer
 Major H. W. Hall
 Captain H. C. Minuth
 Captain G. R. Mauger
 Captain E. M. Daniels
 Captain E. A. Williams
 Captain W. R. Irvin
 Captain G. D. Thompson
 Captain A. C. Smith
 Captain C. A. Wilkinson
 Captain F. T. Bonsteel

Captain J. C. Mullenix
 First Lieut. H. A. Sears
 First Lieut. F. T. Murphy
 First Lieut. C. P. Amaseen
 First Lieut. H. P. Stewart
 Second Lieut. W. K. Noel
 Second Lieut. H. D. Eckert
 Second Lieut. R. M. Shaw
 Second Lieutenant T. C. Wenzlaff
 Second Lieutenant H. McC. Forde
 Second Lieut. L. C. Vance
 Second Lieut. D. E. Carleton

FOURTEENTH CAVALRY (less 1st Squadron)—Fort Des Moines, Iowa**Colonel J. R. Lindsay, Commanding**

Lieut. Colonel D. H. Biddle
 Major E. P. Pierson
 Major J. D. Kelly
 Captain W. F. Saportas
 Captain J. E. Maher
 Captain F. M. Harshberger
 Captain F. F. Duggan
 Captain P. S. Haydon
 Captain L. B. Conner
 Captain M. S. Williamson
 Captain P. L. Singer

Captain E. D. Campbell
 First Lieut. J. L. Lake
 First Lieut. A. N. Willis
 First Lieut. H. Engerud
 First Lieut. B. E. Shirley
 First Lieut. C. H. Martin
 First Lieut. J. B. Patterson
 First Lieut. J. H. Walker
 Second Lieut. G. W. Busbey
 Second Lieut. W. L. Weinag

FIRST SQUADRON, FOURTEENTH CAVALRY—Fort Sheridan, Illinois**Lieut. Colonel Ben Lear, Jr., Commanding**

Major W. M. Modisette
 Captain T. W. Ligon
 Captain E. M. Barnum
 Captain C. A. Pierce
 Captain J. O. Lawrence
 Captain W. C. Chase
 Captain C. A. Shannon

First Lieut. D. H. Nelson
 First Lieut. B. A. Thomas
 First Lieut. J. S. Rodwell
 First Lieut. C. H. Bryan
 Second Lieut. T. F. Randolph
 Second Lieut. M. A. Giddens
 Second Lieut. H. E. Walker
 Second Lieut. W. M. Burgess

TWENTY-SIXTH CAVALRY—Camp Stotsenburg, Philippine Islands**Colonel J. D. Long, Commanding**

Lieut. Colonel I. S. Martin
 Major T. H. Rees, Jr.
 Major H. M. Ostroski
 Captain H. W. Maas
 Captain T. B. Apgar
 Captain A. G. Olson
 Captain W. F. Price
 Captain W. R. Stickman
 Captain J. E. Selby
 Captain E. H. Gallier
 Captain W. K. Harrison, Jr.

Captain L. A. Shafer
 Captain J. V. McDowell
 Captain N. N. Rogers
 Captain J. M. Adamson, Jr.
 First Lieut. J. L. Ballantyne
 First Lieut. E. P. Crandall
 First Lieut. J. H. Stodder
 First Lieut. G. A. Bohm
 First Lieut. W. F. Jennings
 First Lieut. J. M. Williams
 First Lieut. E. C. Greiner

First Lieut. F. W. Fenn
 First Lieut. H. Knight
 First Lieut. P. B. Shotwell
 First Lieut. S. C. Page
 First Lieut. J. B. Reybold
 First Lieut. H. C. Hine, Jr.
 First Lieut. M. H. Marcus
 First Lieut. R. Edwards
 First Lieut. R. J. Merrick
 First Lieut. M. A. Fennell
 First Lieut. J. H. Healy